XENOGEARS

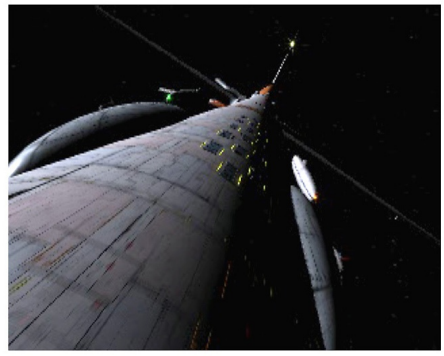
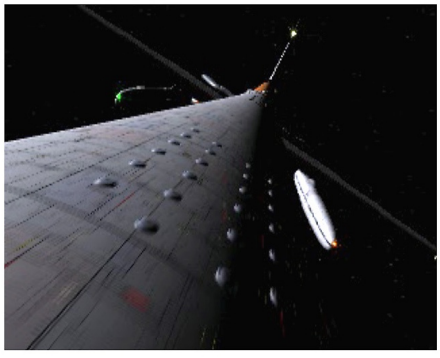
The Complete Graphical Script

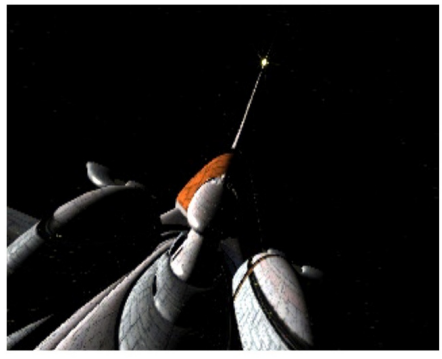
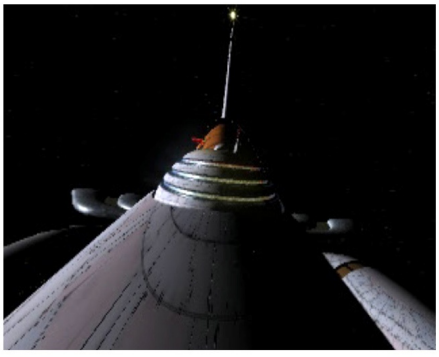
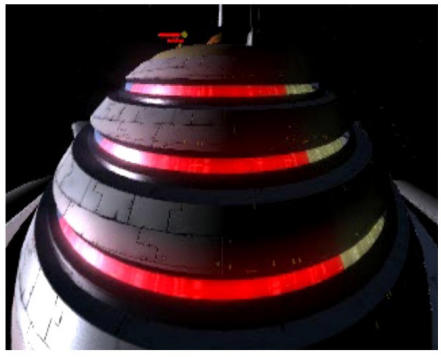
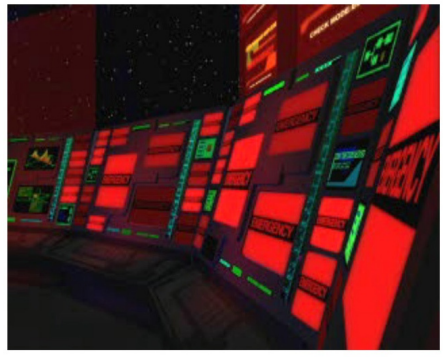
Copyright Squaresoft Co.

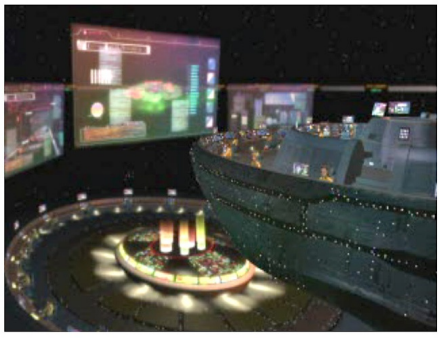
I am Alpha and Omega,
the beginning and the end,
the first and the last.

DANGER
E-5

E-5

E-5



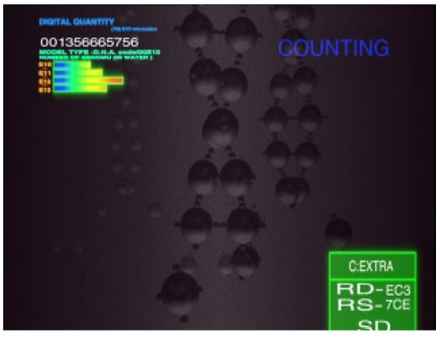




EMERGENCY



“This is an emergency, Level 1 alert.”

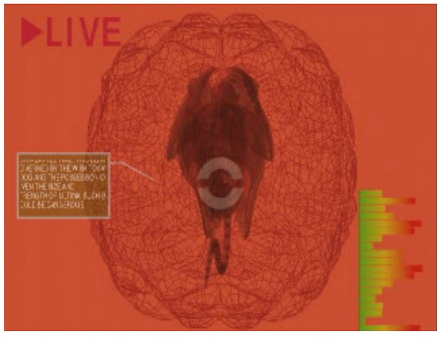
”Omega 1, restarting.”

“Alpha 1 genome restructuring.”

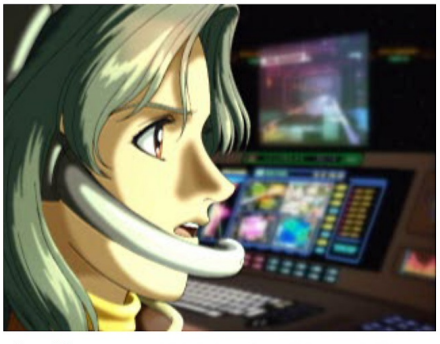


“Confirming exon replacement.”

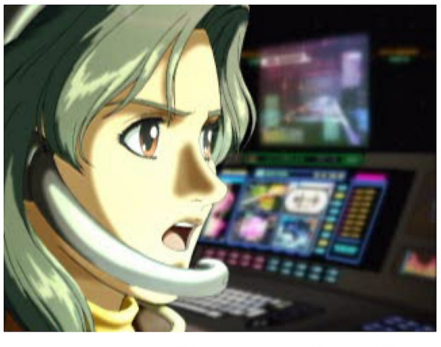
“Base code, 85 million.”



“A hundred million! Its speed is overwhelming!”

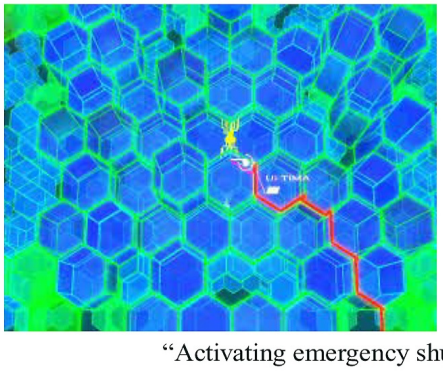


“Alpha 1 to Razael Central.

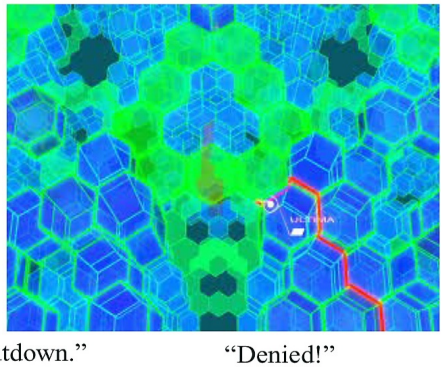


"Access confirmed.”

“Initializing fake net . . .disconnected!”



“Activating emergency shutdown.”



“Denied!”

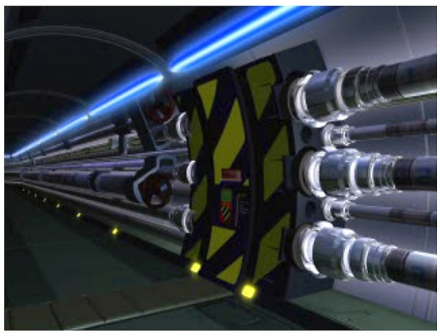
“Contamination is spreading widely!”

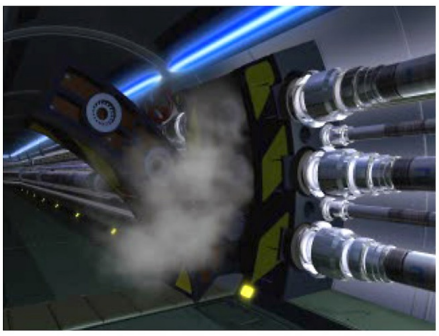
“Captain!”

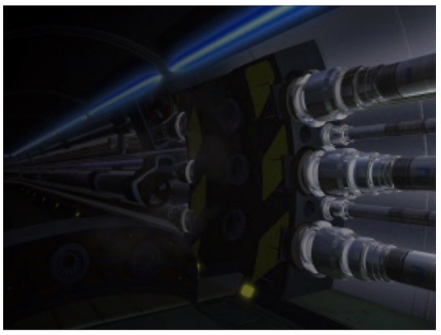
“Cut off the cables manually.”

“Roger!”

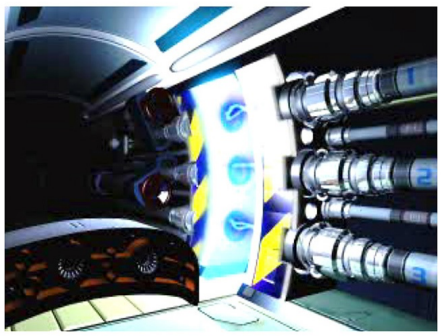
“Activating self-destruct bolts.”



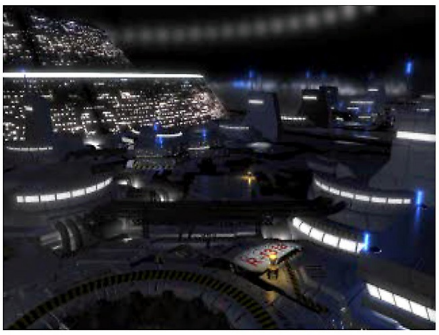




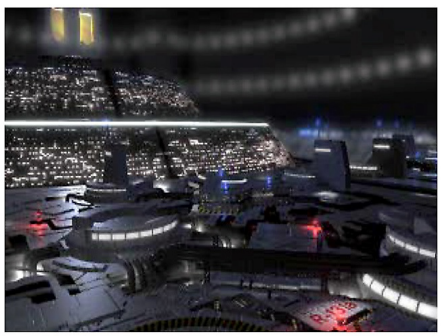
“Confirming . . .”



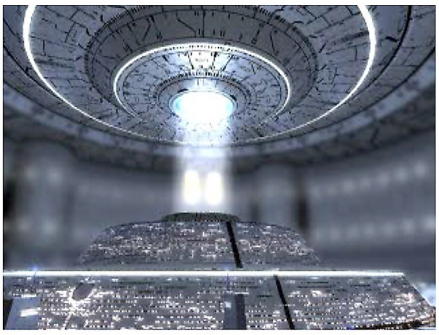
“No good. Nothing happened.”



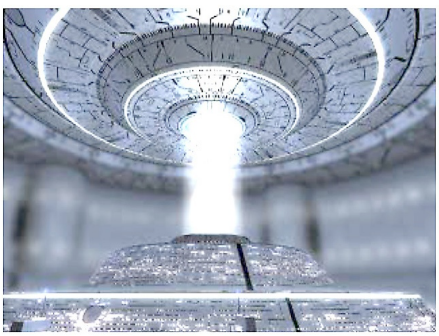
“Omega 1, they are attacking.”



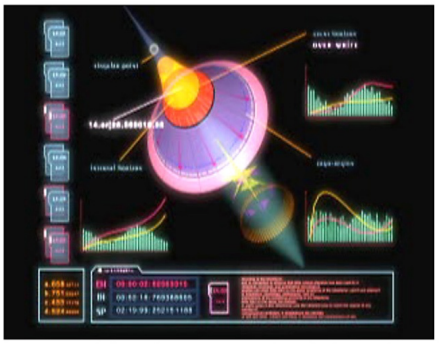
“We can’t stop them.”



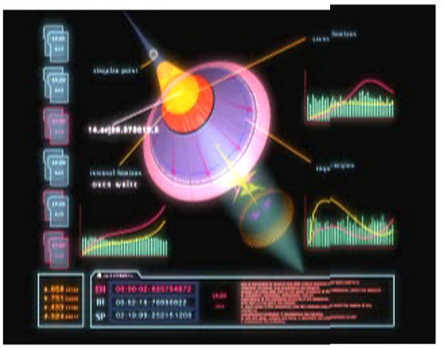
“98% of our weapons have been taken over.”



“Autopilot System Faust has been accessed.”

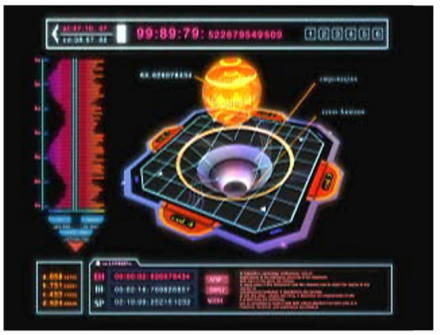


“And its phase space logic is being rewritten. “

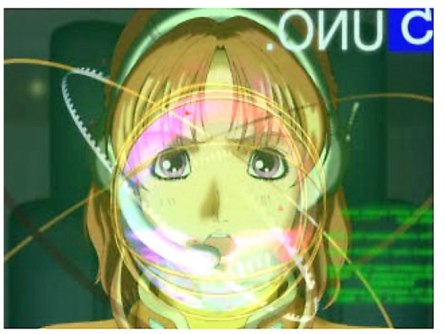


“Ergo areas increasing.”

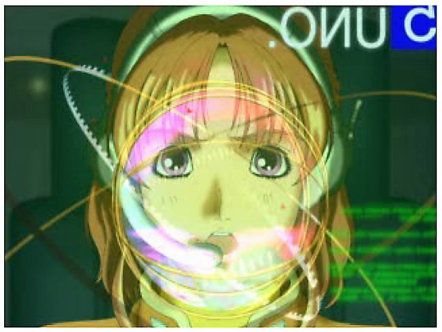
"An internal plane is forming. "



“Switching to space displacement mode.”



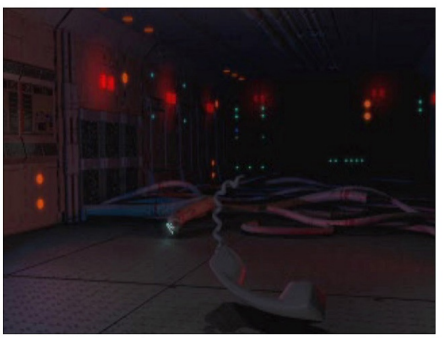
“Alpha 1 . . .”



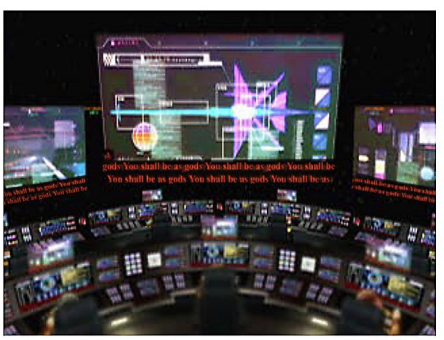
Coordinate input, coordinate NX128 - EZ061.”

“The main planet!!”

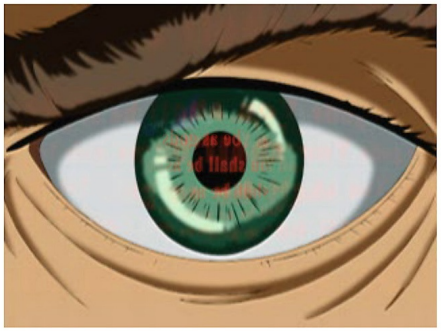
“Damn, so they’re planning on attacking . . .”



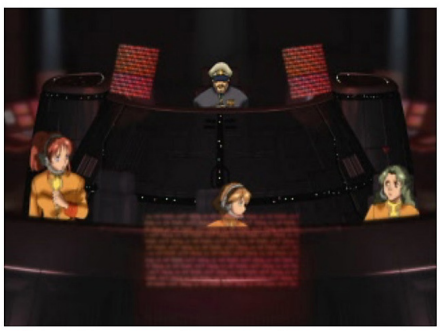
“Engine Room.”



“Autopilot System Faust has been accessed.”

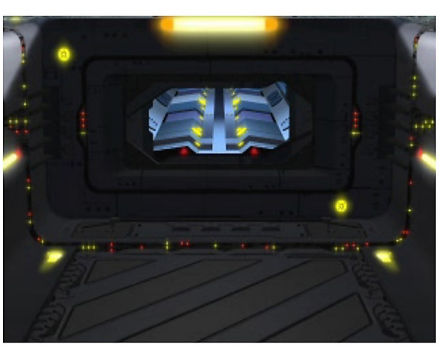
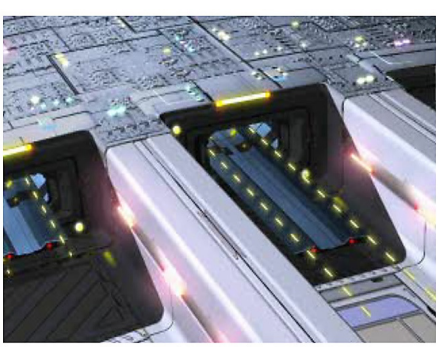
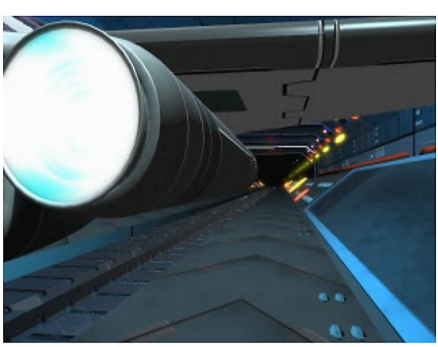


“See that all civilians and passengers are safely transported to the escape shuttles.”

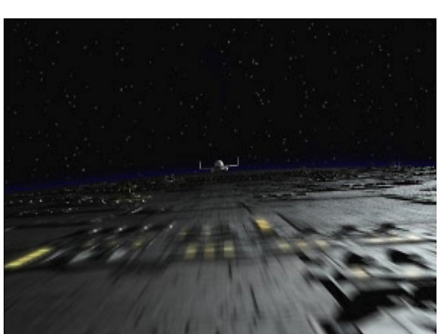
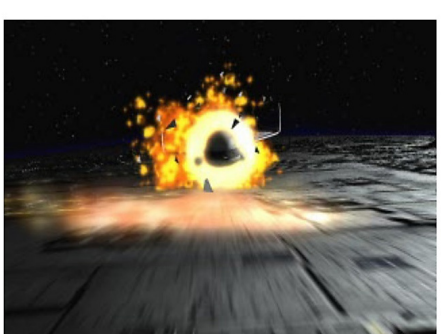


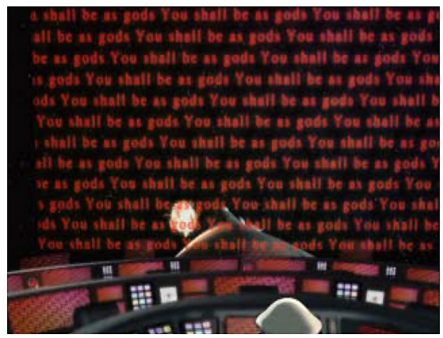
“I will send a dispatch after evacuation is complete.” “I am evacuating the ship.” “All of you, evacuate now.”

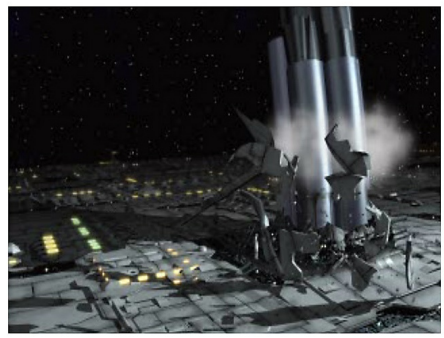
“EVACUATE" " EVACUATE”

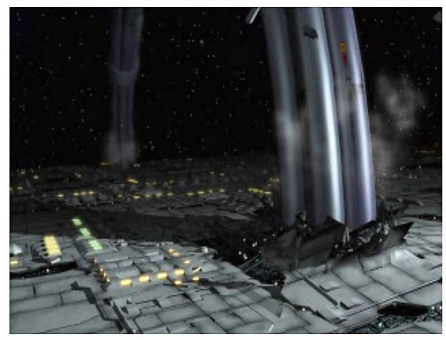




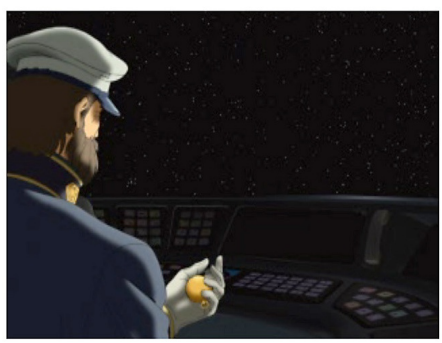
“All passengers, please board the shuttles in a calm and orderly fashion.”

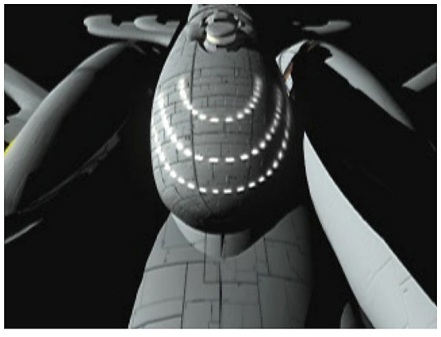



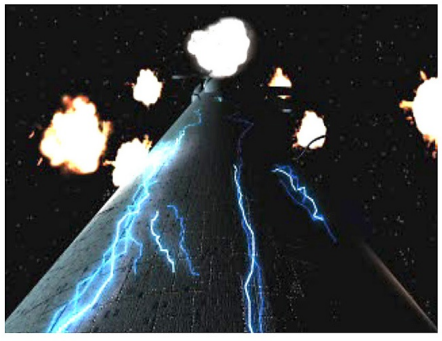

You shall be as gods You shall be as gods You shall be as gods

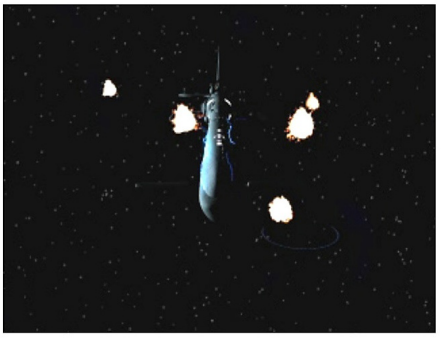


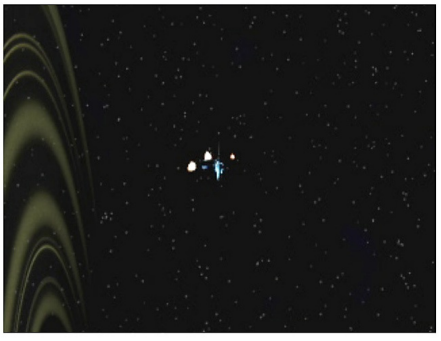


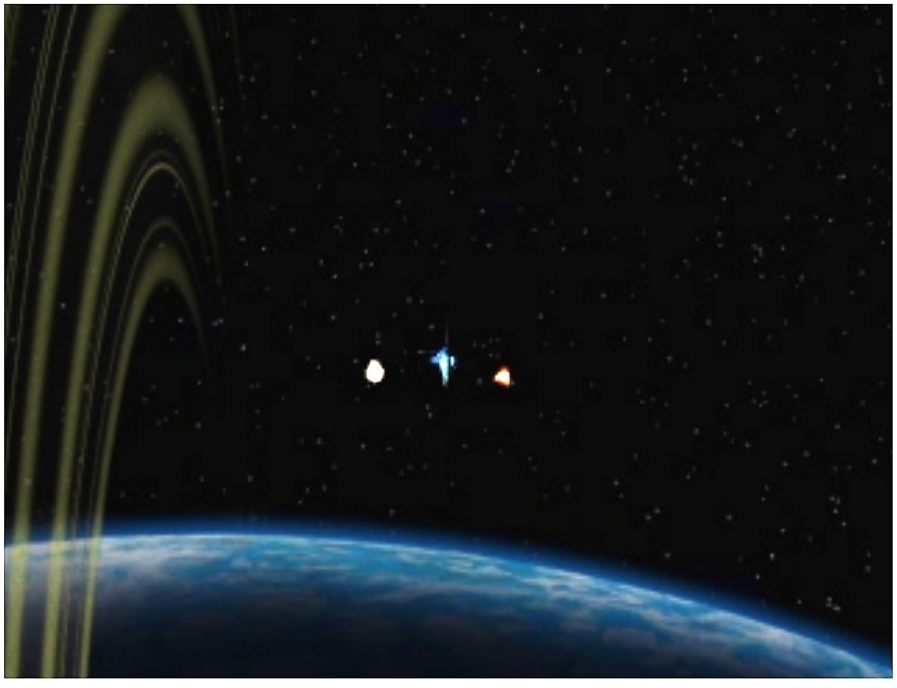


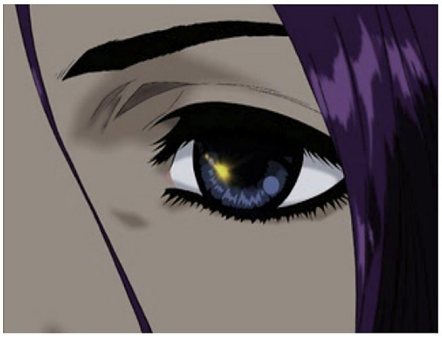


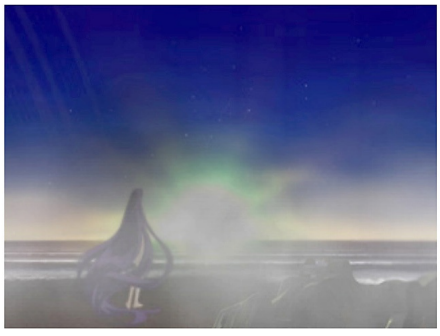
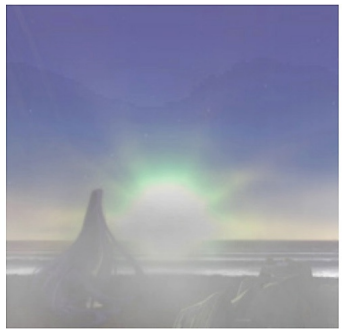
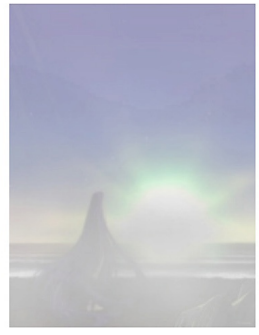










The continent of Ignas , in the Northern hemisphere of our world. On this, the largest continent a war has been raging between two countries for hundreds of years. In the north of the continent lies the Kislev empire, in the south lies the desert kingdom of Aveh. The war has gone on for so long that the people have forgotten the cause, knowing only the pointless circle of hostility and tragedy.

The chronic war obsession was soon to encounter a devastating change. This was due to the 'Ethos', an institution that preserves our world's culture, repairing tools and weapons excavated from the ruins of an ancient civilization. At once both countries excavated these ruins, and had the 'Ethos' repair the discoveries, in order to increase their military power.

The various weapons excavated from the ruins greatly changed the form of warfare.

The outcome of the battles between the two countries was no longer determined by hand-to-hand combat, but by 'Gears' - giant humanoid fighting machines - that were obtained deep within the ruins.

Eventually, after continuous swings in the state of the war, Kislev gained the upper hand. The major factor behind this lay in the enormous difference in the amount of resources buried within their ruins.

But suddenly a mysterious military force appeared in the continent of Ignas. Called 'Gebler', this force decided to make contact with Aveh.

With the assistance of this Gebler military force, Aveh was able to recover from being hopelessly outnumbered to being back on an even standing with Kislev.

Then, taking further advantage of its newly gained momentum, Aveh started to capture one territory after another from Kislev, showing no indication of slowing down in their invasion campaign.

The remote village of Lahan, in the outskirts of Aveh, near the border with Kislev.
This is where it all begins.

Fei:
(huff . . .huff) Damn you!!

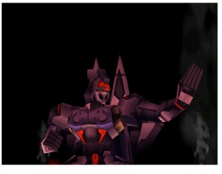
Hiyaaaa!

(huff . . huff . . .)
That's one down!?

Fei:
What on earth are you? No matter how often I knock you down you still get up!

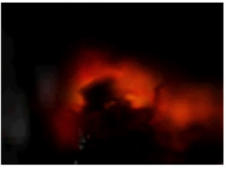
Citan: Fei! Stop! You must not fight here!

Defeats 2 Gears



Fei:
Guh! Boy are you persistent!

(huff . . .huff . . .) Damn it! How come . . .?
Why did it have to come to this?



Fei: Whew! That about does it . . .

Alright . . . Now for a short break.

Fei goes into the adjoining room

Maid: Hello Fei. You're looking well today. My how time files! Why, it has already been three years since you came to our village . . .When they first saw you brought in all bloody and soaken, to tell you the truth, they didn't think you were going to make it. And that strange masked man who carried you here that day . . .
Do you think that maybe he was your real father? Don't you remember anything? Why, they say you had terrible nightmares and constantly called out for your father.

Chief: who is it?

Wh, who are you? . . What? You want me to look after this boy ?

Maid: But now, you're so healthy and strong . . .
And it's all thanks to our village chief, Lee.
My, should you be grateful!

Fei makes his way upstairs.

On his way out, Fei is stopped by Timothy.

Timothy:
Yo! Hi there, Fei. Sorry for us all using your house like this.
But we have to talk about the big day tomorrow with the village chief.

Fei: Yeah tomorrow, huh . . .
Your wedding with Alice! Now that is a big day!

Timothy:
(nods) Yeah . . .right . . . But it still hasn't hit me as reality though.

Fei:Hey, errh, Timothy. I just want to thank both you and Alice . . . 3 years ago, I woke up in this village without a trace of my memory . . . I didn't know who I was, where I had been or what I had been doing up until that day . . .I couldn't recall a single thing . . . Despite that, you and Alice sympathized with me and encouraged me to go on. If the two of you hadn't have been there for me, I don't know what would have become of me . . . Timothy . . .From the bottom of my heart, I thank you! Now, you and Alice had better live happily ever after!

Timothy: (laughing) Hah! Quit it will ya! You don't have to go and get all mushy on me . . .Anyway, to me it feels like I've always been friends with you ever since we were kids. (nods) And we will go on being friends forever, right?

Fei:
Of course!

Timothy: Oh yeah, Fei . . .Could you stop by and check on Alice?
I still have stuff to discuss with my old man and the village chief.
But I'm sure she'll be glad to have some company.

Fei: (nods) Yeah, sure! I'll do that . . .Anyway, I'll see you later.
Oh. And I m really looking forward to the ceremony tomorrow

Turns to leave-

Dan: So there you are!
Fei, I have to talk to you about something!

Fei: Why, hello there Dan! You're lively today . . .
as you are everyday!

Timothy: Dan! Don't be so rude.
What's this barging in and all?

Dan: (Argh! Timothy's here too! Butt out, Timothy! Until you marry my sister, you have nothing to do with me at all! I just have some business here with my friend Fei! (Turns to Fei) So anyway, Fei, I errh . . .I have something to talk to ya about later . . .

Fei: what is it Dan? It sounds serious!

Dan: Yeah, that's why I can't talk about it here . . . There's a certain person listening who could cause us trouble . . .!
(jumps up and down with impatience)
It's really important! We gotta talk, seriously, one-on -one, man-to-man! I'll be hanging around outside. So I'll see ya there later, OK!
(Turns) Be seein' ya, Timothy! Take care of yourself until tomorrow . . .
(bows mockingly)

Fei: Huh . . .? What's up with him?

Timothy: As of tomorrow, I'm going to be that kid's brother-in-law . . .
Hah! That part isn't going to be no honeymoon!

Fei turns to Timothy's father
Timothy's Father: Hello there, Fei. Our Timothy is a really lucky boy to be able to marry such a beautiful girl like Alice!
I hope you come up with some embarrassing tales to tell in your speech! Hah haah haaah!

Chief Lee:
Oh it's you, Fei.We're in the middle of discussing Timothy and Alice's wedding arrangements. Hey, why don't you bring a girlfriend or two home once in a while? Just because you live with an old man like me doesn't mean you have to hold back now, you hear!? Why, when I was as young as you are, it seemed like everyday I would . . .
(ahem, ohum!) Oh, errh . . .never mind. Now, we still have important things to discuss . . . so don't get in the way now.

Alice's Uncle: I don't know whether to be happy or sad . . .Tomorrow, our little Alice is going to become someone's wife . . .I knew this day would come! . . .This is the worst part of bringing up a little girl! (Sigh)

Fei leaves, walks around talking to villagers.

Kid in shop: Oh hi Fei. The big day's finally approaching, huh . . .? Alice and Timothy's wedding is tomorrow! How bout a stamina drink or somethin' What do you think? C'mon you gotta get them a present here! We're the only shop in town, you know!?

Fei: Sure!
(buys healing medicines, etc.)

Kid in shop: Thanks!

Fei goes into the Pub

Man: Have you heard the latest rumors!? It's said that, in the southern desert of Aveh there is buried treasure all over the place! There's hundreds of people who are trying to strike it rich by digging everywhere! A single strike could make you totally rich. But then again, you never can tell how much is the truth . . . In life, if it sounds too good to be true, it usually is. Bah.

Man 2: Hmmm . . .!! Young one, beware! I can see it . . .There is a dark and icy wind that blows where you are going. A wind that nurtures grief and resentment, inviting death from which there is no salvation . . .No one will be able to escape from it! But you, and only you, must eventually face up to that dark wind! . . . Just kidding! I've always wanted to try saying that! Did I scare you? I'm really sorry! Wahaha . . .

Fei moves on further in the room

Ellen: Oh my! Welcome Fei . . . You wanna have some fun? I give the best service in Lahan, you know!? (Barkeep: Hey Ellen! Quit teasing the innocent kid!) Yeah, yeah! I know! It's just a joke . . .you blockhead! Gee, he's got sharp hearing! Anyway . . .(Maybe next time, okay, Fei!? I'll be waiting . . .Rowrrr!)

Drunk man: You gotta problem with me, hic, drinkin' at midday? How can I not be drinkin' . . .Damn it . . . You got a problem, boy?

Fei: Drinking won't help matters!

Drunk man: Shut up! What would you know!? You don't know how I feel. I wouldn't want you to know. Damn it . . .(Fei turn to leave) No . . Wait up, boy! I'll give you this, take it.

Fei:??? What is that?

Drunk man: I have no use for it . . . Don't worry 'bout it. Just take it. Nobody knows . . .In the depths of the sea . . . a tear . . .a drop . . .shed by . .a mermaid . . .(receives Mermaid Tear)

Old man: Through the Blackmoon forest, the Kingdom of Aveh lies. I should go rather than wasting my time in this little village! Beautiful girls, tasty liquor . . .Why a gentleman like myself is bound to draw the babes wherever I go! Haw-haw-haw . . . Wouldn't that be good! (nudges Fei and winks)

Young man: Gramps always makes things out to be easier than they really are! It's actually quite a tremendous feat to get through that Blackmoon Forest . . .All those dangerous beasts and fire-breathing lizards . . . I tell you, it's better if you don't go near the place!

Fei shrugs, goes upstairs

Woman: I wouldn't nee anything else if I could only live together with my family. Just the three of us . . . Why cant men understand something so simple . . .(sigh)

Woman's Daughter: 'High' there Fei! Did you know the great kingdom of Aveh lies beyond that forest? It's got a big capital city with lots of people living there. My father is working somewhere in Aveh. Soon , my father is going to pick mother and me up so that we can all live together in Aveh. Oh, father! Please come home soon . . .

Goes down, on way out talks to barkeep

Barkeep: Hey, it's Fei. How's it going? I ain't got any drinks for kids, ya know! Come back when you're older, alright!!?

Fei leaves, resumes exploring, meets up with Dan

Dan: Oh good, Fei! Ya ready to talk? As you know, tomorrow's finally the day of my sister's wedding . . . .So what I want to talk to you about is exactly that . . .Alice's marriage! Fei, to be perfectly honest with you . . .I've always wished you could have been my brother. It's still not too late. You could go steal Alice and run off with her! If you need me to help, I'd be glad to! It may be odd for me to say this, but my sister's beautiful and a good cook . . (and this is just between you and me, she's well endowed too! Heh heh heh!) So c'mon! Go for it!

Laughing at his friend's good-natured pranks, Fei agrees.

Fei: Alright Dan, you've got it . . .
I guess I'll just go sweep Alice away and make a run for it!

Dan: Really? I knew I liked you, Fei! That's the spirit! . . .
But, if only it was that easy . . .It's not like we can change their feelings . . .
And you would need to have love for her too . . . But I'm not going to forget this, Fei!
You were really willing to go that far to help me . . . Fei, you're a good guy!

Fei resumes walking around the village

Wife: -Sigh- my husband's love for the rock-paper-scissors, or 'RPS' game is ruining us . . .Just recently he said he had a dream of receiving the hero title from the 'RPS king . If only someone could utterly defeat him to make him see reality . . But he's just so good . . .

Husband: Yo! You wanna play Rock paper scissors?

Fei declines for the time being.

Old Woman: Well, if it isn't Fei. Isn't it exciting to know that Timothy's wedding is going to be tomorrow. I think you should find a girl like Alice yourself. Hah hah. By the way, do you like Lahan?

Fei: Lahan . . .I like it. The village leader, chief Lee, has taken such good care of me . . . Everyone in the village has warmly accepted me . . . Regardless of where I may have been born and raised, Lahan is now my home.

Old Woman: Ah yes. It makes me happy to hear that. (Gives money)

Training Hall

Man: When it comes to fighting techniques, I tend to become extremely fussy! I've started to study up on them recently.

Offers to show Fei some of his techniques. After a while, Fei feels he is starting to get the hang of it.

Man 2: Good day. I'm the village consultant. (But to tell you the truth, Chief Lee knows far mor than I do . . .) (However the Chief is a very busy person, so I have been placed in charge of answering some of the more mundane questions.) As a special for this week, we are lecturing about some of the 'Martial Arts'. Would you care for a lesson?

Fei learns some new moves.

Woman: Use your eyes and ears when exploring the world, you never know what you may find!

Fei goes out and talks to the villagers

Small Girl: Oh, Fei! Maybe you can help . . .Have you seen Dan?

Fei: Oh, he's just been hanging about over there . . .He's thinking about his sister's marriage and doesn't seem able to calm down. He likes to talk and act big, but he really is still just a kid . . . It's kinda cute, huh?

Small Girl: Oh really? I'm a little suspicious, though . . .Alice was saying she needed him for something . . .I bet he's avoiding me . . .

Mother:: Alice and Timothy's wedding tomorrow is the talk of the town. I guess it's to be expected though, It is one of life's biggest events. The women of the village are born, raised, married and live put the rest of their lives here. There must be some happiness in that, but . . .I've been thinking from time to time. Sometimes I wish I were born a man so I could have an adventure . . .I'm weird, huh?

Moves on to other homes, little kids ask him to play.

Young dude: Yo, Fei! Alice has sure gotten pretty, huh! Come to think of it . . .Alice, Timothy and you were always together. .I bet you also had a crush on Alice too, eh? Am I right? Hahahahahah!

Child: You know, Fei . . .Mom was saying that you might have come from a far away place . . .

If you were a bird, you could fly back to your real home anytime you wanted.

Goes back out, talks to more of the villagers.

Woman near entrance: Welcome to the village of Lah . . .

Oh. It's you Fei!? Oh. Don't worry. We already consider you a proud member of the Lahan community. So, how about finding a wife and settling down in our village too?

I'm sure if you live a peaceful life here your memory will be bound to come back one day. You have a natural ability to paint and can do martial arts rather well, I hear! I bet it's because your body remembers these things. You'll be able to breathe a sigh of relief when your memory returns to you . . . And don't you worry! I'm sure it will.

Old Man: Hmm . . .Oh, I'm just contemplating what I should plant next. It's a lot of work just trying to raise crops, but it's a good feeling, Fei. In this great open land, new life emerges. . . .I'm not saying we're doing it. It's just rain earth and sky working together for these striving new lives. We're just helping them out a bit. Pumpkinberry . . .applelily . . .radish . . . Hmm, they all seem good.

Woman:Lately my legs have been giving me trouble . . I would like to go and have Doctor Citan Uzuki take a look at them and tell me what's wrong . . .But it's a dreadful chore to climb that mountain path to visit the doctor. It must be a sign of my age.

Man: That doctor is weird! Why would anyone want to live up on that mountain peak? He should live closer to the village . . .Hey, you're good friends with the doctor. Why don't you ask him to move closer to the village!

Little Boy: Uuh . . .Sob . . .How could Alice go and get married . . .and to that muscle head, Timothy . . .!! I . . .I've loved her . . since I was a baby . . .!! What am I supposed to do? How am I supposed to live!? (ARRRGGGGGHHHHH!!!!!!) sob . . .life . . can be so unfair.

Little Girl: Hello Fei. Tomorrow is Alice and Timothy's big day. Alice will be so pretty!

Young girl: Just because Awice is getting mawwied doesn't mean you have to be sad. Fwei, when I get bwigger, I 'll be your bwide.Will you wait for me?

Fei: Sure, I'll wait (laughs)

Young girl: Weally, you mean it!? Then cwoss your hweart . . .!Hope to dwie. Stick a needwle in your eye! It's all set then . . .! Our burning love has been tied by unbweakable bonds!

Woman: Oh, hello there Fei. Come to think of it, it's already been quite a while since you first came to our village. . .I take it that you still don't remember anything prior to your coming here, though? It must be terrible not knowing your true identity and all. Oh, I'm sorry. I'm being rude . . . Please don't take it the wrong way.

After a while, Fei decides to visit Alice

Woman: Hello, Fei! Are you here to see Alice? Actually, it's customary that we don't let any men in to see the bride today . . . But you can be an exception.

Aunt: Why hello, Fei. Have you come to see Alice? She's upstairs right now. But doesn't time fly? It's already been ten years since my brother and his wife passed away . We did our best to raise two children in their place . . .But now, as far as Alice is concerned, I can finally say my job is done. I know Timothy will take good care of her from here on . . . Now all that's left is Dan . . . I'm going to have hard time raising him to adulthood.(sigh)

Goes upstairs

Fei: Hello Alice.
Is that your wedding dress?

Alice: Oh!? Fei, you startled me!
Yes it is . . .I just finished it.
It took more work than I expected.

Fei: Hmmm . . .You did a great job there!
It'll look wonderful on you, Alice . . .
Congratulations.

Alice: Thank you. . . .

Fei begins: "Uh Alice . . ."

"Oh, um Fei . . ."

Fei: What is it?

Alice: Oh, nothing . . .

Fei: I see . .

Alice: Um . . .Oh yes, that's right . . .Fei, have you seen Dan?

Fei: (nods) Yes, he's outside . . .
bragging as always.

Alice: Ugh, that kid!
I just told him I had an errand for him to run!

Fei: Oh yeah?
What kind of an errand?

Alice:It's for my wedding tomorrow... I was hoping he could go and borrow a camera and some lights from Doctor Uzuki, up on the mountain peak.

Fei:If that's all it is, I'll be glad to do it for you!

Alice: Could you? OH, but I couldn't possibly...

Fei: Don't worry! Its no problem! Anyway, it doesn't exactly make me comfortable to have Dan handle such delicate instruments. What's more, I might have a chance to eat some of Yui's cooking if I go to the doc's place.

turns to leave-

Alice: Oh . . .Fei, wait!

Fei: Huh . . .?
Is there something else you want me to get from Citan?

Alice: No . . . It's not that . . .

Fei: . . . ?

Alice: Fei . . . Have you ever thought about things this way? If . . .if you had only been born in this village . . . and if we had only known each other earlier on . . .
(Fei turns, " . . .")

Oh, it's nothing. I'm sorry . . .

Fei: . . .Well, I think I had better get going now!

Alice: Oh, OK . . .be careful and give my regards to Doctor Uzuki!

Fei leaves

Alice: . . .Is this fate . . .?
I feel so foolish . . .Who am I kidding?

Fei leaves and makes his way up the mountain path toward's Citan's house.

The Mountain Pass

Fei:
Alright!
Let's go!

Fei:
Doc Uzuki's house is over the bridge and up to the north.

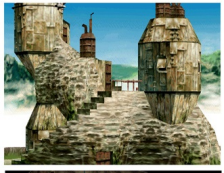
Fei makes his way up the mountain, meeting a little boy at a point where he will have to jump across.

Boy: Oh, it's you Fei!! The cliff's edge collapsed from the heavy rain we had recently. You're alright Fei, you can do a big jump to get across it . . .

Fei:
It's easy, watch me!!

Boy: Say hello to the Doctor for me!

Citan's House



Fei travels up the mountain, fighting enemies, and arrives at last to the comfortable residence of Citan and family. The signs of a mechanical genius lie strewn across the lawn, but everything is neat and clean. Fei goes to the kitchen to say hello to Citan's wife, Yui. Their child, Midori, plays nearby.

Yui: Oh Fei, welcome.

Fei: Hello, Yui. Where's doc . . .?

Yui: My husband is tinkering with his junk out in the backyard.

Fei: I should have guessed! Doesn't he ever get sick of playing with that stuff! Well, okay then, I'll go out into the backyard and see if I can find him.

Fei: Hi, Midori. It's a nice day to play outside. How about if we feed the birds later?

Midori: . . .

Fei leaves the kitchen and goes back outdoors. On the way, he notices a ring in the hedges and picks it up. Thinking it might be Midori's, he figures he will give it to her later . . He goes out to the workshop and looks around, calling -

Fei: Where are you, doc?

Hears loud explosion

Fei: W, what's going on?

Then a voice comes from above

Citan: "Ohhh! This is no good! Why do they use such inferior parts? This is why their intervention strat . . ."

Sees Citan above

Fei: Doc!! So that's where you were!

Citan: Oh, Fei! Good to see you.

Fei: Are you alright, doc? What are you doing all the way up there?

Citan: I thought I would try to restore this Land Crab. Oh, and that explosion was nothing to worry about. It happens all the time. Ha, ha, ha . . .! Could you wait a while? I am just about ready to call it a day. Oh, yes. There is something interesting in the storeroom . . . Why not take a look!?

Fei: Okay, doc, I will. But please hurry up. It will get dark before you know it.

Fei enters the storeroom, sees an apparently ordinary box

Fei: So this is what doc was talking about. Let me see . . .
what's so interesting about it . . .

Sound of grinding gears, rumbling-
Fei: Wow!? the box opens!
a haunting melody begins to play as the white figure slowly spins

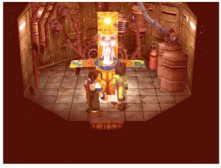
Fei: W, what is this . . .?

Fei: This music . . .? I've heard it before somewhere . . .?

Citan's voice, "What do you think? Not bad, huh?"

Fei: Doc . . .

Citan: Hello again Fei. Sorry to have kept you waiting.
(Enters, both listen, Citans says thoughtfully)
Music is a mysterious thing . . .Sometimes it makes people
remember things they do not expect. Many thoughts, feelings,
memories . . .things almost forgotten . . .Regardless of whether
the listener desires to remember them or not.



Fei: Doc, what is this . . .?

Citan: It was excavated from some old ruins, and is still under
repair. Obviously it is an audio device of some type. Long ago
people would listen to this melody, just as we are doing now . . .
At times they would have been cheered up . . . While at times they
would have been made to cry.

Fei: . . .

Citan: By the way, what brings you here today?

Fei: Oh, yeah, that's right! Alice asked me to borrow
some camera equipment from you.

Citan: Oh yes. Her wedding is tomorrow, right . . .?
(turns back to angel)Understood. Well, we had better get them ready then.
(turns to Fei, pauses, considering, arms crossed with hand under chin)
Oh, and dinner shall be ready soon. Would you like to join us?

Fei: Would I ever! I was hoping you would ask.

Citan:I still have some cleaning up to do out here.
Would you mind giving Midori some company in the house?

Fei:Okay. Take your time, doc. I'll go ahead and eat when
dinner is ready!

Citan: (nodding) Ha, ha, ha. Go right ahead. But I will not be held
responsible if you get a stomachache from eating my wife Yui's cooking.

Fei: Doc . . .I feel strange when I listen to this music . . .
I feel something warm inside . . .

Citan: That just may be because you have someone living inside of
you . . . And he too must have liked this music a long time ago before
he became a part of you . . .

Fei: " . . ."
(then leaves)

Citan: Is Timothy and Alice's wedding really tomorrow . . .
It might actually be better to live an ordinary life, in this condition . . .
As a son of man . . .(shrugs) Well, anyway. I suppose I had better adjust
the gyro at least . . .(turns) Huh?
(Music box vibrates, shatters)
This cannot be . . is this . . .an omen . . ? . . .Now, what is going to happen . . .?
(scene dissolves as doc ponders)

Later that night

Fei: Mmmm! That was good!
Fei: Your cooking never fails to impress me, Yui!
Thank you for such a delicious meal!

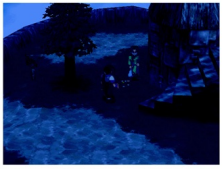
Yui: You're welcome. If you like my cooking that much,
then I'll be happy to cook for you any time, Fei!

Citan: I will bring the equipment you need to the village tomorrow
morning myself . . . It does not exactly make me feel comfortable to
have you handle such delicate equipment, I am afraid.

Fei: (turns and shrugs at the audience) . . .Where have I heard that
line before!? That's alright by me . . . Well, see you tomorrow, doc!
Good night, Yui, Midori!

Yui: Good night. We're looking forward to tomorrow's wedding.

Midori: . . .



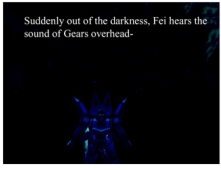
And once they are outside . . .

Fei; Well, good night doc.

Citan: Yes, good night. (Fei walks away) Oh, Fei! Please be careful . . . Ah, I mean . . . the path is dangerous when it is so dark . . .

Fei: What's wrong, doc? There is nothing to worry about.
Well, anyway, I'll see you tomorrow.

Fei makes his way back down to the Mountain Pass



Suddenly out of the darkness, Fei hears the sound of Gears overhead-

Fei: !? Giants . . .?

Citan: Fei!

Fei: Doc! Some flying objects went towards Lahan!!

Citan comes running up the path-

Citan: So you saw them too! Judging by their shadows, they appear to be a group of Gears from our neighbor country, Kislev.

Fei: Those were . . . Gears . . .?

(a bright light blooms in the distance, towards Lahan)

Citan: !!
Oh no! They are headed directly for Lahan!

Fei: The ones I just saw?

Citan: Let us make haste!

Fei: Right!

When they arrive, Lahan is already burning.

Fei: No! Lahan's . . .!?

Citan: Alice!? Timothy!!

Alice: Doctor Uzuki!? Fei!!

Timothy: Doctor! They just came outta nowhere and landed in our village . . .!

Citan: I know. What on earth are they doing starting a battle here . . .!? Are you all okay?

Alice: Yes! But it's Dan . . .we can't find him!!

Timothy:I'll go look one more time! Alice, go ahead and get out of the village.

Citan: No, Timothy, wait! You, Alice and the rest of the villagers should evacuate to a safer location!

Timothy:Doc, (pauses) you know I can't just leave Dan behind!

Alice: Timothy . . .

Citan: I understand how you feel, but leave the rest up to Fei and me! The primary thing you should be concerned with is your own safety . . . Timothy, your responsibility is to protect Alice!

Timothy: . . . But . . .

Fei: It's just as doc says. The two of you should get out of the village now! Don't worry about Dan.
Knowing him, he has already evacuated and is waiting for you!

Timothy: . . . I guess you're right . . .
Okay! Alice, let's let Doctor Uzuki and Fei handle it from here!

Alice: . . . Yes, okay. Thank you Doctor!
But, Fei . . . Please look out for Dan!

Fei: Yeah, don't worry. If he still happens to be in the village, I'll be sure to save him!

Citan: Now, both of you, hurry!!

Citan: I will go check the houses to see if there is anyone left behind. Fei, please go around the village and guide the stragglers to a safe location!

Fei: Alright! But doc . . .You be careful, okay!!?

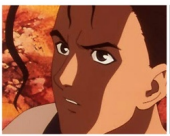
Citan: (nods) You too, Fei!

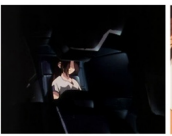
Fei: Whoa!!

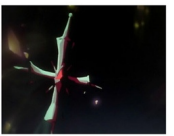
(The Black Gear moves towards him of its own volition . . . Fei is surprised)

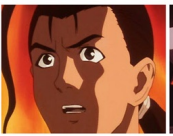
Fei: . . .Ah . . .!?

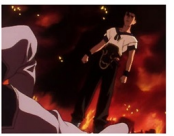
He watches as the Black Gear kneels down, seemingly of its own accord. There is the sound of a pounding heartbeat in his ears.











Looks down at the crumpled body of a soldier at his feet. He moves to the Black Gear, leaping up onto its leg – almost as if he's done this before! Down below, Citan notices what is happening

Citan: Huh . . .Fei!?

Wait, Fei!!

Fei: . . .

(enters cockpit)

Citan: Do not do this, Fei!
You must not fight here . . .!!

. . . XafjgWHdJJkgv> . . . .
Linguistic Modifier Enabled. Identified:
Lamb, Ignas dialect
No piloting Exp.
Easy Mode Set
Synchronizing
input interface
with pilot's normal
reflex time
Warning to Pilot:
C O M B A T M O D E
About to enter combat!

Fei moves towards the other Gears,
getting ready to attack!

Citan: Fei!!

The battle begins. Inside the cockpit,
Fei sees the control screen scroll across
a message . . .

Fei: Reinforcements, huh?!

Fei: On my right too!
Damn it! How many of them are there . . .?

The sound of a heartbeat grows louder in Fei's ears

Fei: I guess . . .
There's no choice . . .but to fight . . .

Citan: Fei . . .!! The way you are fighting . . .Oh no . . . This is not good!
If 'he' awakens here . . .

"Doc!!"

Citan: Dan!?
Citan: Are you alright!? What on earth are you doing here!?
Do you not know how worried Alice and Timothy are!?

Dan: I'm sorry Doctor Uzuki! I got out of the village earlier, but I
came back . . . . . .I couldn't bear to think of leaving my sister's
wedding dress behind here . . .

Citan: You returned to save your sister's wedding dress . . .!? Heh . . .
You are such a sentimental little boy . . .! Let us evacuate to a safer spot
while Fei has their attention! It appears that they are after that Gear
Fei is in . . .

Dan: !? Fei's . . . inside that monster!?

Citan: Fei is bound . . .by the dark, cruel destiny of god . . .

Dan: . . .Fei . . .?

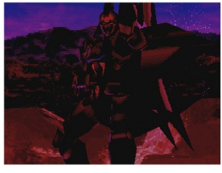
Citan: Come on now, Dan! We had better get away from here.

Tim: Dan!!

Timothy: I knew you were still in the village!
Boy, I'm glad you're okay! – Huh!?

Citan: Oh no . . .! Timothy!

Timothy: Uh . . .!



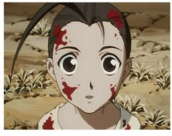
Fei: Wait! Don't shoot! Stop it!
These people have nothing to do
with you.

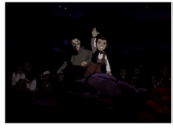
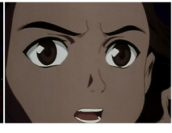
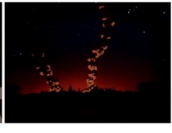
Fei: Timothy!

(is surrounded)

Out of the way, you bastards!

Fei: Stop it! I said sto – p i—t!



"Uh . . .

Uhn . . .?"

Fei: Huh . . .!
Where am I . . .!?

Fei: Doc!!

Citan: Oh, you have finally gained consciousness, Fei . . .

Fei: Doc . . .What happened . . .?
What did I . . .?

Citan: Yes . . .Well, that is . . .

Dan: You murderer!!

Citan: Dan!

Fei: . . .!? Dan (pauses) what do you mean . . .?

Dan: It . . .was because you had to get in that monster . . .Alice and Timothy . . . (pauses) The people of the village are all . . .!!
You killed everyone using that monster . . . !!

Fei: !?

"Why did you have to fight in the middle of the village . . .?"

"How do you even know how to operate such a monster . "

"Mother . . .? Where's mother . . .?

" –Owww . . .Hurts . . .It hurts . . ."

Fei hears their cries, stares at Weltall, stunned- more cries, "See, I told you so . . .I said allowing someone we knew nothing about into our village would spell disaster . . ."

Fei: Dan . . .!!

(approaches others, hears, " –Yikes . . .!" children cry in fear, "No! Keep away . . .
I'm scared . . .
Waaahhh . . .

Dan: Murderer!! My sister . . .Give me back my sister!!!

Citan: Dan . . .
There is nothing to be gained from putting all the blame on Fei alone. What is more, you know Fei had no control over the malfunction of that Gear.

Dan: (turns to Doc) I . . . I know that! But . . .But . . .!!
(turns to Fei)
I HATE YOU!! (runs off sobbing)

Fei: Dan . . .!?

Citan: It might be better if we left him by himself for a little while . . .
He does not know what to do with his grief, his anger . . .

Fei: . . .

Citan: And Fei . . . It may be a good idea for you to leave this place. There is no guarantee that reinforcements from yesterday's unit are not going to come . . .They will probably want to know what happened t their comrades. Also, if you stay here, I do not think the atmosphere is going to be very joyful . . .if you know what mean. It is probably better for both you and all the other villagers here.

Fei: I guess you're right . . . This disaster happened because I was here . . . But . . .What am I supposed to do now . . .?

Citan: (ponders) Yes, well, . . .why not go through the Blackmoon Forest and head for Aveh? I am sure those soldiers from yesterday were not from Aveh. If you can manage to get to the Aveh side, they will not be able to track you down very easily.

Fei: (nods) Okay . . .I understand, doc . . .(turns to face him)
Well, anyway . . .please take care of the rest of the things here, doc.

Citan: (nods) Of course . . .
Well, do take care now.

Fei now travels outside the confines of the simple village which is all that he remembers. He makes his way to the Blackmoon forest, shattered as a result of his actions, alone and seemingly without any hope . . .

Blackmoon Forest

Fei enters the dark forest, birds flutter by overhead in the gloom, showing Fei the way out off in the distance.The boles of the huge trees block his view, but he takes the chance that the way out is in that direction. As he battles the strange beasts which have made the forest their home, Fei tries not to think of his situation, concentrating on the battles themselves as a way of escaping.

And then . . .

"(Adenoreshka no daka nen dirae e)" Seeing he doesen't understand . . . Mysterious Woman: Throw down your weapon! Make one wrong move and I'll shoot!

Mystery Woman: Errh . . .Turn around!

Mystery Woman: I said . . .turn around!

turns his back as she moves closer-

Mystery Woman: Be quiet! . . .You don't seem to be one of the Kislev soldiers who are after me . . .(pauses) but . . .

Fei: . . .

Fei: . . .Are you shaking?

- Fei turns around

Mystery Woman: Don't move! I have orders to kill all surface dwellers, -Lambs- , I come in contact with . . .It's part of my mission. It's nothing personal.

She and Fei stare at one another, then –

Mystery Woman: I have a question for you . . .
How do I get out of this forest?

Fei: Are you . . .lost?

Mystery Woman: Just answer my question!
How do I get out of here?

Fei: Sorry . . .but I'm looking for the way out of here too.

Mystery Woman: Oh . . .(puts gun down, looks at feet)

Fei: How long are you just going to stand there like that?
If you're going to shoot me, then hurry up and do it.

Mystery Woman: (looks up) what an odd thing to say!
Don't you understand the situation you are in?

Fei: I don't care about my situation . . .I'm just a guy who's life is worthless . . . There's no point in me living anyway!

(moves forward, a step closer to woman, she brings gun back up, aiming once more)

Mystery Woman: (steps back) Sta . . .Stay back!

Fei steps forward – a shot is fired!

Fei: What are you aiming at? Here! Shoot me here! C'mon . .

Mystery Woman: Are . . .are you mocking me? (backs off, gun lowered)
You're weird! Something's wrong with you! You should at least resist a little bit!
(they stand in silence)

Then, dropping from the trees, a creature lands behind her -

Mystery Woman: What's this?
Who are you?

It knocks her down

Fei: Stop! Keep your hands off 'Elly'!

Defeats creature in battle

Fei: Are you alright!? Hang in there!

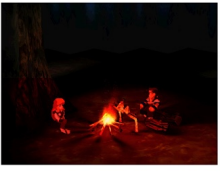
That night . . .

Fei: Good, you finally woke up!
You didn't move for so long that I started to worry . . .

Mystery Woman: . . .

Fei: Do you still intend to kill me? Then go right ahead and shoot me! But you'd better not do it while we're in this forest. Forest monsters hate loud noises, you know!?

Mystery Woman: . . .



Fei: Fine, don't talk to me if you don't want to . . .
But it wouldn't kill you to thank me for tending your wounds.

Mystery Woman: ! (looks up) Th . . .thanks . . .but you shouldn't have helped me. Don't think it will save your life, though. It really doesn't change a thing.

Fei: What are you so afraid of?

Mystery Woman: I'm not afraid . . .I'm just being cautious. It's natural for me to be cautious considering I've met such a suspicious surface dwelling –Lamb-.

Fei: Hm . . .Don't you worry, I'm not going to do anything.
Besides, you're much more suspicious than I am.

Mystery Woman: Huh . . .?

Fei: So, what's your name?

Mystery Woman: I won't give my name to a surface dweller -Lamb-.

Fei: What's with you and this "Lamb" thing? We're both lost in this forest, surrounded by dangerous monsters . . . Shouldn't we at least be cooperating with each other until we get out of here?

Mystery Woman: . . . .(thinks, then nods)

Fei: Good. So what's your name? It's going to be hard for us to cooperate with one another without at least knowing each other's names. Anyway, my name is Fei Fong Wong. (pauses) You can call me Fei.

Mystery Woman: I'm . . Elhaym. But my parents call me Elly.

Fei: 'Elly', huh? Somehow I already 'knew' that.

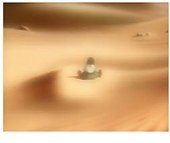
Fei: Anyway, it's too dangerous for us to travel in these parts this late at night . . . Let's wait until daybreak before we continue looking for a way out of here . . . (pauses) If that's okay with you?

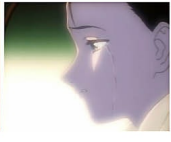
Elly: ??

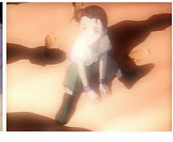
Elly: I guess we have no choice, do we?

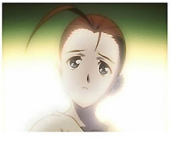
Fei: Okay then Elly . . . How about having something to eat.

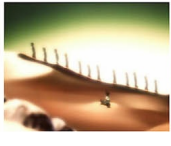
Night falls, stars glitter through the treetops, they fall asleep . . .



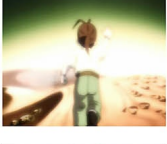


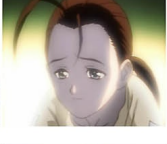


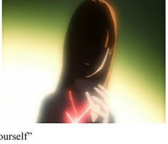




"Wait, don't leave me here! Wait!!"







"You must be lonely here by yourself"

Fei ....

Fei!! . . .

Fei?"

The next morning-

Elly: Are you awake?
They resume their trek through the forest
Elly: Fei . . .! (approaches him)
Yesterday you said your life was worthless. What did you mean by that?

Fei: Why are you asking?

Elly: Why? Yesterday you looked like you had a death wish. You think it wouldn't make me wonder . . .?
Say, how did you get stranded in this forest in the first place?

Fei: I should ask you the same question.

Elly: Huh? Well, I, errh . . .

Fei: I . . .ran away . . .from my village . . .(pause) or what's left of it . . .

Elly: Village . . .? You don't mean . . .!?

Fei: Lahan . . .It was a small village that nestled between this forest and the mountain range. I ran away from there.

Elly: That village . . .?

Fei: It was a nice, peaceful village. Everyone there treated me like family. Then, last night, a group of Gears suddenly appeared and started fighting in the middle of the place.
The village was engulfed in flames . . .I couldn't just stand there and watch Lahan be destroyed . . . So to try and save the villagers, I got in an empty Gear . . .without knowing how to operate it. I just thought maybe I could do it . . .no . . .it was more like someone whispering to me . . . Someone whispering to me . . .telling me to do it . . . But it was a disaster! The village . . .

Elly: Was it destroyed by the Kislev army? (he dosen't answer) Fei . . .?

Fei: No . . .The village was destroyed . . .(pause) by me . . .

Elly: !?

Fei: Yes. It was me. I destroyed Lahan. I'm sure of it . .

Elly: What do you mean you destroyed it?
I thought you were trying to help save the villagers?

Fei: I did try to help. I actually took out a few Gears. But then I came under heavy fire from a new group of Gears . . .
And then my friend . . .Timothy . . .was hit by a hail of bullets . . .Then I lost it . . .Everything just went dark . . .
(turns away) I don't remember anything after that. The Gear I was in went out of control . . .Well, that's what doc said.
When I came to . . .the vilage . . .and everyone in it . . .was . . .Alice . . .
She was such a . . .Alice and Timothy . . .Oh god . . .Everybody . . .
All such good people . . .

Elly: Went out of control . . .? The Gear . . .?
What about the village? Fei?

(looks up)

Fei: . . .Yes, the Gear!

Elly remembers . . .

"Damn them! They're still giving chase. We've entered Aveh territory . . .I'm not giving up now.

"This Gear's too important."

A sudden blast takes down one of the Gears

"That's done it! I'm at a disadvantage now. Van Houten! What's wrong, respond!

Elly : Sh, shrapnel . . .in my back.
My thruster's output is dropping.
I can't maintain alitutde.

"Damn it! Everyone land now! Regroup on the ground. We'll have to engage them!"

Fei: (still lost in tale) If they had never come to the village, never started fighting there . . .Then I wouldn't have tried to pilot that Gear. It's all their fault . . .Not mine! They're the ones to blame. If they had never come . . . none of this would have . . . . . .if not for them!

(pounds fist in a nearby tree) Them! (pound) Them!! (pound) Them!!!

Elly: Enough of that!

Fei: (whirling around) !?

Elly: You're a coward!

Fei: A coward? . . .Me?

Elly: Yes, you're a coward. All you're saying is 'them, them, them'. Don't talk as if you had no part of the blame, as well!

Fei: I'm to blame . . .?

Elly: Yes, that's right! Of course the direct cause of the battle was that a Gear made an emergency landing in your village. But all Kislev wanted was the Gear, right? They weren't invading or out to destroy Lahan. The real damage occurred because you climbed into a Gear and tried to fight back!

Fei: (bows head) . . .

Elly: What ever made you get into that Gear? Not just anyone can pilot them! It takes training! There is no way a civilian could hope to pilot one! Besides . . . you should have been helping the villagers flee to safety instead! How can you blame the damage on a Gear when it was your decision to fight in it in the first place? Why don't you take some of the responsibility yourself? Why are you putting all the blame on others? That's just running away! That's what makes you a coward!

Fei: Well, if you put it that way . . .Yes . . .that's right, I am a coward! I didn't realize my own strength and have been blaming what happened as a result of that on others. I'm a pitiful excuse for a man. But . . . I just felt this rush of blood in me and I couldn't help myself! Couldn't help myself . . .or help others.

Elly: Fei, I, I'm . . .

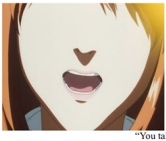
Fei: Shut up!! What do you know!? When I came to I was surrounded by piles of rubble . . . I didn't know what had happened or what I had done. I remembered absolutely nothing. All I know was that my hands could still feel what they had done. The only things that penetrated the Gear's barrier were screams . . .Screams accompanied by the stench of blood, the sound of crushing bones, and my own curses. Look! (holds out hands) Look at my hands! Can you hear their voices? Can you understand this feeling? The feeling of having destroyed your village with your own hands . . .? Of not being able to do anything for the children left behind . . .? Now they have nothing . . .I have nothing . . .I have nowhere . . .no one . . . (drops hands to sides)

I didn't want to get in it . . .I had no choice . . .There was no other way . . .

Elly walks toward Fei, her own thoughts whirling, then backs off and walks away looking back only once before she is swallowed up by the trees . . .

Elly: Why did I go and say that to him . . .?

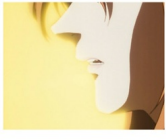
(she remembers . . .)



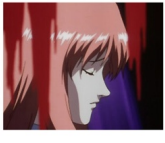
"You talk as if it's not your fault!"

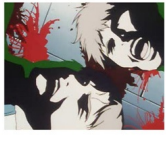
" No, I didn't do anything! . . .It wasn't me, can't you understand that!?"

"I didn't mean to do it! . . .



"I'm not so strong . . .I'm not even all that talented . . ."





"You're a coward!!"

"That's right, I'm a coward!!"

Elly: (whispering) Yes. . .that's right . . .
I am a coward . . .

-A rankar appears out of the foliage!

Elly screams-

Fei: (jumps up) Oh no!

Runs to where he heard her scream-

Fei: Elly!!

Fei: Elly! Are you alright?!
(no response) Darn! She's unconscious!

(the battle begins, it is mostly ineffectual, the beast is too strong.
Fei begins to tire, then – a voice, from above!

"Fei!!"

a whirring noise over head,
Fei looks and sees doc in the Land Crab carrying the black Gear!

Citan: Fei! I have been searching for you!
Here, you can use this!

(drops Gear to the forest floor, its cockpit opens automatically)

Fei: Hey! Hold on a second! To tell me I can use it is one thing . . .

(sees Rankar go for Elly, jaws wide)

Elly . . .Damn it! Doc, I have a favor to ask! I will defeat the monster!
But if it looks like I'll go out of control like last time, then shoot me!

Citan: Fei . . . Let us pray that that won't happen!

(ascends in Land Crab, leaving Fei to take over)

Fei, mind made up, gets in the Gear, fights Rankhar quickly . . .

After the battle is done, Citan comes over to investigate, calls up to Fei -

Citan: Fei! Are you alright?

Fei jumps down

Fei: Yeah . . .I guess so.

Citan: That fight with the Rankar was remarkable.
An ordinary Gear could not defeat that monster.
And you certainly keep yourself in good shape . . .

Fei: Why did you bring that here, doc?

Citan: This . . .? You mean Weltall?

Fei: . . .Weltall? (pauses) This is the Gear that destroyed our village. Why did you bother bringing it here? I never want to see another Gear again . . .

Citan: I understand how you must feel . . .
But in order to protect yourself you need a certain degree of strength.
Even more since we are being pursued.

Fei: I agree that a certain degree of strength is needed for self-defense.
And if it weren't for this Gear here, Elly and I'd be in that Rankar's stomach right now . . .But its power goes beyond what is necessary.
Does one really need the power to destroy everything?

Citan: . . .

Fei: I don't need that kind of power . . .I just hate Gears.

Citan: Fei, using power or being used by power . . .is that not a problem of
the heart . . .? If humans do not use their power for wrong it can be a good thing . . .
I believe such power can help us. In that respect, I know you will be fine.
It sure helped you out this time. (pauses) Am I right?

Fei: I want to believe that. But something is holding me back.
This Gear . . . .
(turns to look at Weltall, shakes head, turns back to doc)

Fei: Well, whatever . . .at least Elly is safe now.

(he and Citan walk over and look at Elly, she awakens)

Citan: She seems to have come to.

(she stands, shaking her head, trying to get her bearings)

Elly: Huh . . .?

Citan: I am Citan . . .a friend of Fei's.
You almost did not make it. If Fei had not have helped you, I hate to think
what may have happened. But I was not pleased with his rashness in trying
to take on that Rankar with just his bare fists.

Elly: Bare fists?

Citan: (turns to Fei, they both study Gear looming above them)
Well, I am glad that you were able to find a use for what
I brought you.

Elly: !!

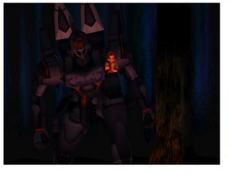
Citan: Let us say we are borrowing what the Kislev army left behind . . .

Elly: . . .Oh.
(then-) Thank you, Fei. This makes twice.

Fei: Don't mention it. I'll just put it on your tab.

Citan: (looking from Fei to Elly) It is getting dark. Let us make camp
now and start out early tomorrow. The both of you look tired and I need
to make some repairs on our friend here . . .

Later that night . . .



Citan: It is no use. The knee actuator and bypass circuit are both ruined.
The actuator can be fixed, but the circuit needs to be replaced . . .
(jumps down to the camp-site, sees Elly is awake)

Citan: Oh, having trouble sleeping there?

Elly: Yeah . . .

Citan: I imagine you would. You have had quite a day.This is
the machine Fei used when the village was attacked. There was
another machine left sitting on the outskirts of the village . . .
Ni bayer dars legus? (It was yours, right?)

Elly: !
(Citan turns, looking back at Weltall)

Citan: Just as I thought . . .
The missing pilot from the Gear that made an emergency landing in Lahan . . . . . .and the woman found wandering lost in the forest . . . are actually one and the same person. Judging from your uniform, I would also say you are with the military . . .Am I correct?

Elly: How . . .? Who are you?

Citan: I Checked the ID tags of the soldiers who died in the attack on Lahan . . . The design on their tags and the design on your uniform there is the same.

Elly: !

Citan: Do not worry, they were given proper burials. But, they may not have been too pleased to die in a foreign land.

Elly: . . .Maybe.

Citan: Does Fei know about you?

Citan: Most likely . . .
Fei knows nothing of the world outside Lahan . . .
(turns to look at Fei who is still asleep)

Elly: I don't think he has realized yet.

Elly: I see . . .So how come . . .

Citan: (turning back)
. . .In any case, it is best if we do not pry into each other's pasts anymore.

Elly: But . . .

Citan: Let us just say that I know a little more about the world than most do. Anyway, Elly . . .I have a favor I must beg you to do . . .

Elly: . . .What is it?

Citan: Go straight ahead and you will come to a road.
Then just keep going . . .
Would you please leave us while Fei is still asleep?

Elly: !?

Citan: Unfortunate things keep happening around Fei. I would like to protect him if possible . . . I do not want him caught up in any vain struggles. I am also saying this for your benefit. Elly, you do not belong here. Go back to your family.

Elly: Um . . .I . . .

Citan: Do not worry. I will not tell Fei what your true identity is.
I will . . .just tell him you went to meet up with your family . . .

Elly: No, it is not that! I did something terrible to him . . So . . .
I want to . . .apologize.

Citan: Something terrible?

Elly: Fei told me it was our fault your village was destroyed. Fei kept saying . . . 'if only they hadn't come . . .'Then I called Fei a coward because he was trying to escape from the responsibility . . .But in fact it was me who was trying to escape from taking the blame . . .If I hadn't crash-landed there, they would all still be living peacefully now. All those innocent people wouldn't have been caught up in that tragedy. But I accused Fei . . .

Citan: You are a rarity. I did not expect your people would ever think like that. To you people, surface dwellers are nothing more than domesticated animals,are they not . . .?

Elly: 'The Shepherds, -Abel-, took control over the surface dwelling –Lambs- . . .possessing the right to give life and death unto them as they see fit . . .

Citan: Exactly. Yet you seem to feel responsibility toward Fei and the villagers. Why is that?

Elly: I don't know myself . . .At Jugend I was taught that surface dwellers were stupid and base . . . . . .And that is why we have to control them . . .But . . .

Citan: But your meeting Fei, something about him made you feel differently?

Elly: Yes. He's no different than we are . . .in fact he seemed more powerful. He possesses something . . . . . .something we don't. He also risked his life to save me . . .twice.

Citan: Most of your people would feel ashamed at receiving such an act.
Yet, you are grateful to Fei . . .?

Elly: It's probably because of my father. He had an open mind to surface dwellers. My nanny was . . .a surface dweller. No one knew about her though . . .Besides . . . I am the same as Fei . . .

Citan: The same?

Elly: No, nothing. Nevermind . . .

Citan: Hmm. I think I understand. I am sorry. After just saying we should not pry . . . It is just my nature, you know? My wife says I am too persistent and that I talk too much. But, personally, I do not think I talk too much. (pause) It is probably best if you return home to your country. You really should not be here.

Elly: I'll return to headquarters. But then what . . .

Citan: You are worried . . .

Citan; Worrying is natural . . .'Even I used to worry once too, you know!?'

Elly: Yes . . .

Elly: Oh, Citan . . .

Citan: Anyway, let me handle what to tell Fei . . .You had better go now.

Elly leaves, looking back at Fei before she is gone . .

The next day, Fei asks –

Fei: Has Elly gone yet?

Citan: Oh, so you were awake?

Fei: Yes, I woke up midway, so I only heard part of what you were discussing.

Citan: . . .

Fei: Elly . . .so that's what she is?

Citan: Fei, she is . . .

Fei: I know. It's not Elly's fault. What happened to the village is all my fault. I took out all my pent up feelings on Elly. I'm the one who should apologize.

Citan: Fei, do not blame yourself. It was not your fault either. You were just trying to protect the village.

Fei: Thanks, doc . . .By the way, how is everyone from the village doing?

Citan: Do not worry, Yui is taking care of them. I told her to leave soon and take them all to a certain place.
They should be safe for a while. So you just worry about yourself for now.

Fei: Okay, doc.

Citan: Now to think what we should do next . . .shall we leave this forest and head for the desert town of Dazil?
We may learn what Aveh and Kislev are up to . . .not to mention getting some parts for Weltall. The leader of Aveh is not going to sit back and let the other night's fiasco go by unpunished!

Fei and Citan make their way out of the forest. At the edge of the trees, they hear a loud rumbling from above. Looking up, they see above the treetops a huge flying vessel. Fei asks –

Fei: What is that . . .?

Citan: I would assume it is an aerial battleship from Aveh . . .

Fei: An aerial battleship? I've never heard of Aveh having anything like that.

Citan: Of course it does not come from Aveh originally . . . Most likely it belongs to the Gebler forces stationed in Aveh.

Fei: Gebler?

Citan: Special forces from the Sacred Empire of Solaris known as Gebler. I am sure you have heard something about them. They are an organization providing large scale military aide to the Kingdom of Aveh. They showed up in Ignas several months ago. Until then, Aveh was being routed by Kislev. But with Gebler's help they have managed to regain half their losses. They are now expanding their territory and gathering resources buried in the ruins.

Fei: I've heard the village elders talk about it. . .Is Elly a part of that?

Citan: Quite possibly so. Their group has superior technology and power. It is rumored they are here solely to get the resources in the ruins. I am surprised they are using something as powerful as that ship . . .It must be to suppress the recent border skirmishes.

Fei: So they are fighting the Kislev Empire?

Citan: Yes. It seems they have found new ruins on the northern side of Aveh. Those ruins are under a five-hundred- year-old temple. Three weeks ago Kislev took over those ruins. Most likely they are fighting over that.

Doc joins Fei as they depart the forest.
Leaving the shady canopy of the trees, hot desert sunlight assaults their eyes and they make their way hastily in the scorching heat to the town they can see shimmering on the horizon.

At last arriving at the desert town of Dazil, Citan stops just within the entrance, Fei joining him a moment later. Fei looks in at the bustling activity of the town, somewhat hesitant to enter the center of such activity. He walks forward, just ahead of doc, saying -

Dazil

Fei: This is . . .Dazil . . .

(They both watch in silence at the busy people making their way through the streets)

Citan: (nods) Yes, that is right. (pauses) The desert town of Dazil.

Fei: This town's lively.

Citan: This is the center for all excavations in Aveh. People come from all over Ignas to try and find the resources buried in the ruins around here. We should be able to find out what both Aveh and Kislev are up to, here. And we also have to gather the things we need to repair Weltall.

Fei: (turns to doc) Repair Weltall . . .

Citan: (nods) Yes. We must exchange the broken parts to fix Weltall . . . otherwise it will not be able to function at all. There is an 'Ethos' workshop in the southern part of this town. Let us go there, Fei.

Fei: (nods) Yeah, okay doc, (pause) let's check this place out then.

Guard: Hey, I haven't seen you around here before. Don't think that if you cause trouble you'll get away with it! We're Aveh Army Guards! . . .Remember that!

They enter the town, go to their right to what appears to be a garrison. They speak to the guard outside.

Guard 2: This is the Aveh Guard Station.
This town is important because it's the base for excavating the ruins.
The elite of our army are stationed here.

Fei and Citan enter the station

Guard 3: This town is the center of all Gear excavating in Aveh. They take the generators out of excavated Gear to make new models. Protecting this town is essential to beating Kislev. I left my family at home to come here. I want to finish my duty here and go home.

Guard 4: The Kislev army is up to something in the land north of here. But don't worry . . .
If anything happens, Gebler will back us up.

Guard 5: This is the Dazil Guard Station. No civilians allowed. If you have no business here, please leave.

They exit, cross the street to – "Treasure Hunter Assoc. Dazil Chapter" They enter, talk to a person who looks more like a camel!

Camel man: Soon this area will be totally excavated . . .We'll have to find another place with buried treasure.

Man 1: I came here looking for fortune . . .but all the good sites are controlled by the military.
I'll have to go home a failure. What should I do?

Man 2: I wanted to try my luck at treasure hunting. I'm pretty successful. The reason is I found a good partner. Even now he's looking at a map, analyzing our next step. I sure depend on my pal.

Doc and Fei leave, get in street talking to a passerby

Guy: I'm in a 'fix' . . .The generator sensor's broken. It's not the only one that can sense buried Gear generators . . . Without that, I'm 'ruin'ed!

Grimacing at the pun, the two move on, talk to another man in street

Man: Since those Gebler forces came, Aveh's hardly ever lost to Kislev. I wish the 'Ethos' would give out some of those new powerful Gears.

Fei: (turns to doc) The 'Ethos'? what do Gears have to do with the 'Ethos'?

Citan: Only the 'Ethos' has the technology to maintain generator driven Gears. The 'Ethos' decides which Gear gets which generator in which country . . .

They stop in front of a street vendor, chat with a little boy

Little boy: There are burglars out looking for treasure in the desert ruins! . . .Brrr! . . . . . .Shivers! . . . ! . . Oh, I just wet my pants. You better be careful too.

Shaking their heads, they go to the central pylon rising out of the center of Dazil, a guard stands there

Guard : The battle with Kislev the other day in the desert ended in a complete victory for us. We need the army because they get us generators from the Gears found in the ruins. We'll never give this town or our ruins to Kislev.

They climb up the ladder to the summit of the pylon, down below a little boy says,

Boy: Gee, I wanna climb up there . . .

They come back down, go to a lady at a storefront

Old woman: Lately, there's rumors of all out war with Kislev I'm going to stock up while there're just small border skirmishes.

They go on to a sign outside a building across the street. It reads, "Lucky Avenue, A relaxing bar", they go in. There is much noise and confusion as two men struggle to shout over a third, who sits nursing his drink at the bar.

Fei: This sure is a noisy place!

Citan: Well, in a place like this you have to expect this kind of atmosphere.

Fei: Yeah, but even so . . .

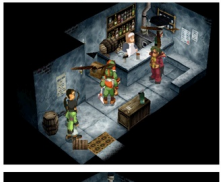
A voice rises over the rest, a green haired man, he yells, "Shaddap!" then " . . . hic . . ." he approaches the two other loud-mouths

Big Joe: Why're you all yappin' when Big Joe is here trying to drink in peace? Can't ya'll shaddup . . .? . . .Hic!

Guy 1: Who'dya think ya are? I don't care if you're Big Joe or Big Shmoe! You don't mess with me!

Big Joe: Ghahahahahaha! Yeah, you sure talk big. Can you dig for treasure as good as you talk?

Guy 1: What's that ya' say!?



Big Joe: You're so tough . . .Always lookin' for junk laying around . . . Why don't you do somethin' more productive for once!?

Guy 1: If you ask me, you're a big pus --!

Guy 2: (shuffling over hurriedly, his eye on Big Joe) Hey, stop it . . .This guy's trouble. He's lookin' wild . . .

Guy 1: Aw, shawdup! Just shut your trap!

Big Joe: Ghahahahahaha! That's right . . .Run home to momma, little boys!

Guy 1: Hicc! (Guy 2 runs out) Uwup . . .! Da – damn you! You'll keep! (runs out)

Big Joe: Hah. Cowardly little punks! (returns to drink at counter)

Citan: Why, this man sure likes to make his presence felt!

He and Fei approach Big Joe

Big Joe: . . .hic . . .You drinkin' too? Booze is my life companion! Especially in a sucky world like this. Everyone's searching for dough and dynamite . . .Ha, how unromantic.

Fei and Citan turn to the Barkeep who also doubles as an innkeeper. They decline the invitation to stay for now, they have more work to do! They make their way upstairs and talk to the two people there. The man has an obvious hangover, his wife glares at him.

Man: Bah! Those 'Ethos' fools! Just because they can fix Gears they think they can act all high and mighty. How do they expect us to pay so much?

Woman: I told him not to drown in his sorrows, but he wouldn't listen, would he . . .

They go back down, back out to the street and talk to a man sitting outside the bar on a metal drum.

Man: Hey, why the long face? Something bad happen? It's times like these you need a drink . . .or two . . . or three . . .

They go across the street the Rental Shop, entering the cool interior from out of the hot glare of the sun.

Rent man: Hm? Haven't met you before. So you want to rent out a Sand Buggy too?

Fei: Sand Buggy?

Citan: (approaches Fei) A sand buggy is a special type of vehicle designed for the desert terrain. Its tires will not get stuck in the sand . . . You really need them for long desert trips.

Rent man: Sorry, but all our buggys are lent out now. Do you want to wait for one? Some of those guys hunting for parts should be back soon.

Citan: I see . . .Well then, we will come again later.

They talk to the other customers in the shop

Customer: Civilian worker Gears have no chance against military worker Gears in excavation. But even if we had a military Gear, we wouldn't be able to operate it . . .

They leave, going out to the street once more.

They go to the next building down. Entering, they talk to the people there.

Man: I wonder who built all those ruins? Some say an ancient civilization which ruled the land long ago built them . . . But after looking at the results of the geologic tests, I have my doubts.

Lady: My hubby acts sooooo smart with his ruin theories. Why don't we just leave the ruins to the 'Ethos'?

They leave, go down one building

Little boy: Hey, are all the soldiers here to dig up the ruins? I thought they were after the bad 'Kiss – led' men . . . Guess I was wrong.

Grandma: Lately the town has become so lively. It's nice to see the children so happy.

They leave, going to an open store-front, talk to customers

Customer 1: There's a buncha thieves out in the desert called Sandmen . . .
So you gotta equip yourself properly. If you don't, you only have yourself to blame.

Customer 2: Hmm, the prices are a little high. But we need these things to cross the desert . . .
(taking the hint, Citan and Fei buy some supplies)

They enter the store owner's home

Little Girl: Wots of adults come to dig up the wuins. They all come widing in big Geeaars.

Old woman: I heard a rumor that the Kislev army attacked a nearby village . . .Is it true?
(Fei thinks ". . ." and they leave and go down to the next building south)

Old Man: The area around this town has the highest concentration of ruins on the southern part of the continent of Ignas. Aveh and Kislev have been fighting over these ruins forever. I'm old now. I just want to live in peace.

Old Woman: (trying out the faucet, it drips but no water . . .)
Oh dear, the water has stopped again! The workshop must be using it right now.

Little Girl: Lately, Grandpa's been in a 'blew' and 'gum' mood.

Fei and Citan leave, meet a pedestrian on the street

Person 1: Big profits for little work! That's the best way to make money . . .that's the knack!
We make our money selling the parts we excavate to the 'Ethos'.
The rarer the parts, the bigger the price! 'Dig it' !?
(Citan and Fei ignore that last one . . .)

They make their way to another store, entering

Man 1: I hear there are parts for your Gear that increase its performance and abilities incredibly just by equipping them on it . . .I wonder if they have any such parts here . . .? . . .Somehow I doubt it.

Man 2: I've got to improve, if only a little, the performance of my Gear with the parts bought here . . .

Shop Keeper: Sorry, my parts supplies are low so I can't sell anything to civilians.

They leave, go up on the perimeter, cross one of the bridges overlooking Dazil. Fei's attention is caught when they reach the edge near the wall . . .

Fei: Huh?

They both look over the wall at an excavation site. Huge remnants of ancient Gears are being pulled up out of the ground by teams with cranes. The entire scene is bustling with activity. Fei stares in wonder.

Fei: That's amazing. They're doing digging right next to this town too?

Citan: This is an Aveh-run excavation site. The machines and Gears found here are valuable resources that could turn the tide of the war. They are indispensable to the war effort.
(both watch as a crane rolls by)
Anyway Fei . . .Let us move on.
We have more pressing matters to do than taking in the 'sites'!

They make their way back down to the Workshop Admn. Building.

Man 1: I'll have to ask the 'Ethos' headquarters to send a machine that repair army Gears.

Guy 1: The rest of the country has an unusual interest in this area's ruins.
Large units have come to excavate all the ruins.

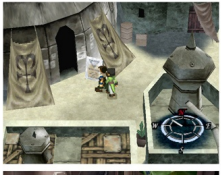
Man 2: We're out of Gear parts in the warehouse. I'm gonna have to order more from the 'Ethos' headquarters.

Man 3: If requests for repairs keep coming at this pace, we won't be able to keep up.
We should ask the 'Ethos' headquarters to expand this workshop.

Citan and Fei leave, go to next building

Man 1: This is the waterworks. All of Dazil's water comes from this pump.

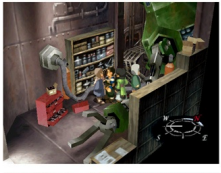
Man 2: Water is needed for the maintenance of Gears. So our waterworks was also built to provide a steady supply of water to the workshop.



They leave, heading for the 'Ethos' Workshop, entering, they see several Gears being overhauled. Fei looks around –

Fei: Wow . . .So this is the 'Ethos' workshop, heh, doc?

Citan: (nods) Yes. The 'Ethos' workshops are the only places that officially repair Gears. Let us see if we can get the parts we need to fix Weltall here. As they say, time is money! . . .So we should do whatever we can as soon as we are able to.



They approach the foreman's assistant

Assistant: please don't touch it. It's being repaired.

Foreman: Huh? How can we help you?

Citan: Sorry to bother you. Our Gear has broken down, so I would like to buy some parts to fix it.

Foreman: Tough luck, huh? Can you tell me what make of parts you are after?

Citan: Yes, we are hoping to replace an X-29 model injection bypass circuit.

Foreman: X-29 injection bypass circuit? That's only used on the latest military models. We don't keep those kinds of parts in stock here. You can only get such special parts by placing an order at the 'Ethos' headquarters. This workshop is only for the repair of civilian Gears . . .

Citan: I see. Sorry to have bothered you.

Foreman: Sorry that we can't help you.

Fei and Citan exit, once outside, Fei turns to doc, asking –

Fei: . . .Doc, do you have a moment? I need to talk to you.

Citan: (nods) Yes, of course, Fei . . .

Fei turns and nods, they make their way to the bridge overlooking the 'Ethos' repair shop, Citan turns to Fei, asking –

Citan: So Fei, what did you want to talk to me about?

Fei: . . .Well doc, it's about Weltall . . .We can't find the parts we need, so is it alright if we just don't fix it?

Citan: Do not repair it? What is the problem, Fei?

Fei: Well, we've been able to come as far as Dazil on our own . . .So doesn't that show that we don't need Weltall as much as we thought? Actually, I've been thinking that once things cool down I want to go back to Lahan and help rebuild. That's all I feel I can do now . . .

Citan: . . .I see. If that is what you want, Fei, then fine. But I think we should try and move Weltall as far away from thereas possible.

Fei: Move it away? But why do we need to do that, doc?

Citan: It is only my speculation, but . . .I suspect the incident that evening occurred because the Gebler Special Force stole a military Gear.

Fei: Special Force . . .You mean Elly's group?

Citan: (nods) Exactly. When I examined the broken Gear in the village, I realized the Gebler pilot was riding a Kislev Gear. It must have had some new technology involved in it for the Kislev army to send pursuit forces after it.

Fei: (shakes his head) New technology?

Citan: I suspect that the Gebler Force was out to steal a new experimental Gear. I am sure news of the Special Force's failure has reached the capital. They will be investigating the Lahan area to reclaim whatever parts of the new Gear that they can find.

Fei: Hold on, doc! Won't the Kislev army still be in Lahan, too!?

Citan: (nods) Most probably. And in that case, there will be a conflict between Aveh's inspection team and Kislev's pursuit troops. If they find where we have hidden Weltall . . .

Fei: (nods) The armies will fight over who gets Weltall . . . and right near Lahan, too.

Citan: (nods) So, to avoid any problems, we should move Weltall somewhere else right away!

Fei; But, we can't fix it in order to move it . . .

Citan: (shakes head) Right. But staying here will solve nothing. Fortunately, this is the center of all excavation work in this country. There is bound to be some information on where we can find parts . . .
Anyway, the fear is often worse than the danger itself . . .We should not let such fears hold us back!

He and Fei return to the streets, see a sand buggy in front of the rental shop.

Citan: This is a sand buggy . .That is it, Fei! I have thought of a good way to get the parts we need for Weltall. Let us go back to the rental shop and rent out this buggy.

Fei: What do you intend on doing, doc?

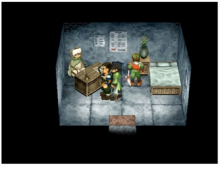
Citan: Well, leave it to me. Just you wait and see.
(enters the rental shop)

Renter: The sand buggy you were waiting for is back. Do you want to rent it?

Citan: (nods) Yes, that is right. Do you have any we can rent right now?

Renter: Of course . . .the keys are in the ignition, you can take it now.

Citan: (nodding) Well then, If I may.
(turns to Fei) Fei, I am going into the desert to search for parts for Weltall.



Fei: (turns to doc) Going to the desert?
Doc, are you going to excavate some ruins or something?

Citan: (shakes head) The Kislev and Aveh armies are confronting each other in the desert all the time. There is talk that their forces often break into battle over the ruins.

Fei: (nods) What does that have to do with that Gear?

Citan: If I search the battle-fields for the wrecks of any such Gear . . .
. . . I should be able to find the parts we need. (Besides, Weltall is a Kislev Gear, so we need parts from Kislev Gears.)

Fei: But . . .

Citan: Fei, you are such a worrier. Things have a way of working out. You do not need to worry so much. Why not go kill some time at the bar until I get back.

(he leaves, Fei watches him go, a worried frown on his face)

Fei: Doc . . .

Renter: Hey, are you letting him go out there alone? Lot's of fights break out in the desert . . . it's a real dangerous place. I've heard about a group of pirates riding around attacking people on a sand cruiser. You really shouldn't let him go out there by himself.

Thus 'reassured', Fei makes his way out to the street once more,

an idea already forming in his mind . . .

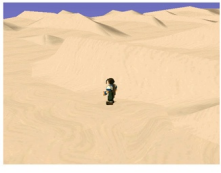
A Desert Encounter

Fei makes some last minute preparations, then goes into the desert to follow Citan. He walks in the glaring heat for hours, the sun a white hot disk over his head. Then, from behind the dunes, a sudden pounding noise comes to Fei's attention.

The mystery Gears disappear over the horizon and Fei wonders-

Fei: W, what are they? Are they Aveh Gears? . . .
I'm worried about doc . . .

(turns, thinking, hands hooked in belt. He stares at the ground a moment, then looks up-



Fei: Guess I may as well follow those Gears.

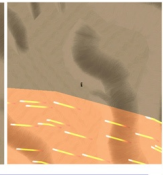
(Heads toward the direction they went, plumes of dust marking their trail in the distance)

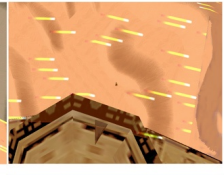
After some hours, no sign of anything, Fei pauses –

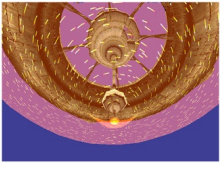
Fei: How far has doc gone? . . .And now I've lost sight of those Gears too.

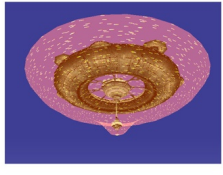
A rumbling noise breaks his reverie, he turns, ask –

Fei: What's happening?









Fei: W, what the heck is that thing?

He runs down the dune, intent on finding some answers when two more Gears pass by Fei.

Fei: A different unit?
Are they going toward the direction the saucer went? I'd better follow them so as not to lose sight of them . . .

Fei follows once more, fighting several battles with bandits and desert creatures along the way. At sunset, Fei stops exhausted, asking –

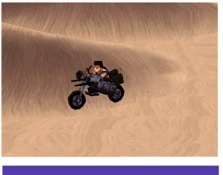
Fei: Does this desert ever end? It'll get dark soon, so I better hurry up and . . .

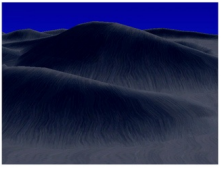
Fei turns at the sound of whining engines, motorcycles whiz by as he watches.

Fei: What's going on here? Gears, a flying saucer . . .
and now these guys . . .I hope doc's alright!

Fei makes a sudden decision-

Fei: Errh, sorry about that!
Just let me borrow this for a while!



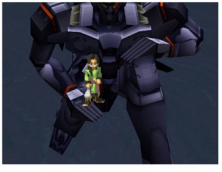


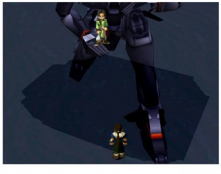
A sudden blast of wind blowing him over, bike and all. When he gets up, Gears are surrounding him!

Fei: (looks from one to the other) What's with you guys? Aren't you overreacting a little for just stealing a motorcycle . . .

A pause, then both Gears are shot down – from behind! Fei turns –

Fei: Ah . . .!





Citan: Fei! I was looking everywhere for you.

Fei: Doc! You're alright?

Citan: Yes, of course . . . (turns to left) Looks like we don't have time to chat.

Fei turns around, both Gears are rising from the 'dead'!

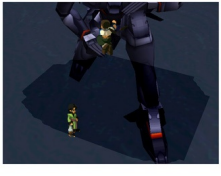
Citan: Fei, hurry!

Fei: Hurry and do what . . .?

Citan: I cannot use Weltall very well! Only you can use its full potential . . . Hurry up and get on board!

Citan jumps down to the desert sand, waits

Fei: . . .A, alright.



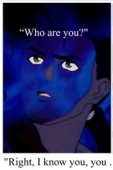
Fei: I don't know how . . . (pause) but I beat them!

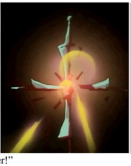
The sound of laughter penetrates the Gears armor coming to Fei's ears,

"HA, HA, HA, HA,!"

Fei: W, what the?

Man in Black: Your hot blooded desire for battle has not been tamed, I see.





"Right, I know you, you . . ." "You killed her!"

"Me . . .?"

"It wasn't me, not me . . .!!"

"Coward!"

"It was you . . ."

Fei: You're the one from . . .
Lahan . .!!

The wind howls mournfully over the desert sands.
Citan watches from below in silence. He says –

Citan: Here we go again!

Man in Black: My name is (pause) Grahf . . .The seeker of power. You certainly showed how much power you had back there in Lahan, didn't you, Fei!?

Fei: How much power I had? What are you talking about!

Grahf: A greater power . . .is what I need to fulfill my mission. I sent those Gears into that land as a catalyst to awaken the power in you . . .
To make contact with you.

Fei: As a catalyst? You mean you caused that intentionally!?

Grahf: That's right. The death of your loved ones . .
And you powerless against it happening . . .the grief, the screams from your heart born out of the tragedy . . .
There! That was the catalyst for triggering your power.

Fei: You mean you attacked my village just to get me in that Gear!?
Why!? Why did the villagers have to die . . .?

Grahf: Who cares why! It does not matter how many of them died . . .
They were wretched vermin, only living from day to day without ever fulfilling their prescribed destinies! And have you forgotten? You were the one who destroyed the village. I did not lift a finger.

Fei: No!!! I was just trying to save the village and its people!
I never intended to destroy it!!

Grahf: Is that really so? Surely you have heard it?

Citan watches all in silence, his coat flapping in the wind.

Grahf: It is the very essence of you . . .the voice of desire from within you that craves destruction.

Fei: Shut up! Even if that were true, aren't you still the one who caused it!? If you hadn't come, the village wouldn't have suffered the way it did!

Grahf: Ah, so now you resort to blame? I see . . .
That sounds like something 'you' would say. That's good.
You're basic nature remains unchanged.

Fei: Crap . . .(pause) You said you need my power?
What were you intending to do with it!?

Grahf: You know very well . . .
It is to destroy . . .mother god . . .

Fei: D, destroy god?

Grahf: Yes, we will destroy god. That is our purpose . . .
That is our destiny!

Fei: Don't be ridiculous! I won't get involved in such a thing!
If you want to destroy your god, or whatever it is you're on about . . .
do it by yourself!!

Grahf: Hah, hah, hah . . .You resemble your father.

Fei: My father? You mean my dad? You know my father!?

Grahf: That was . . .a most delightful scream. I was enthralled by it.
Nothing is more beautiful than a scream of death.

Fei: What did you do to my father!? What happened
between you two!?

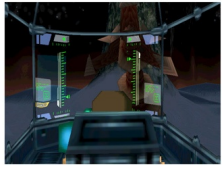
Grahf: Hmph, Do you really wish to know?
There is no use in you knowing it now.

Fei: What!?

Grahf: Your power is still beneath that needed for my
purposes. Anything unusable must be tried until it
becomes suitable.

A rumbling noise comes out of the ground at their feet . . .

Fei: What?



The sand falls away to reveal a huge Worm!

Fei: !! What in hell is that!?

Grahf: What will you do , Fei? If you die here, then so be it. You may indeed gain some
happiness from not knowing. But surely, that is not what you truly want . . .? If you want
to know the truth . . .and that is what you want, isn't it Fei . . .then this is what to do . . .
You must show me that you have attained the level of strength I require . . .
To do that you must destroy others by using your own strength! Then you will gain all that
was lost in exchange for that scream of death!
Ha, ha, ha, ha!!

He begins to fly off –

Fei: W, wait! We're not finished talking yet!!

Citan: Fei! Are you alright!?

The cockpit opens

Citan: Fei!

Fei emerges, standing on hand, dazed. Finally he says –

Fei: . . .I'm fine . . . The Gear seems to be broken, though . . .

Citan: I am so glad that you are unharmed. The Gear had only temporary repairs made on it. They were not made to survive an outright battle like that.

Fei: . . .

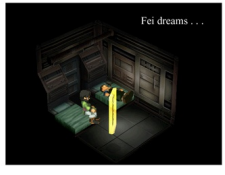
Citan: Fei?

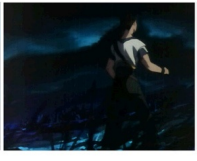
Just then, the Aveh military Gears jump down surrounding them on either side. Citan turns back and forth, exclaiming –

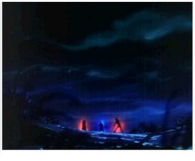
Citan: Oh no! The Aveh Military!
Not now . . .!
(turns to Fei)
Fei, I think we should remain calm . . .
. . .?

Fei: . . .

Citan: Fei?





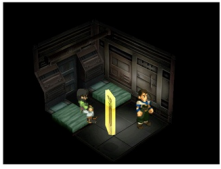


"Let us join together."

"I never thought we'd meet again though it must be fate."

"But I'll never let you have him . . .Even if it KILLS ME!!!"

Fei awakens from the dream, shaken, and moves to the porthole to stare into the desert outside. Citan remains seated on the bed and asks –

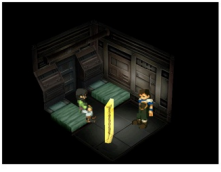


Citan: how are you, Fei? Did you sleep well?

Fei: huh? Uhh . . .well . . .sort of . . .

Citan: Sorry I messed up . . .I was careless. That Gear is a top secret experimental model from Kislev . . . It was only natural that Aveh would also be madly searching for it. Fei? Are you hurt? You do not look so well.

Fei: (pauses, face ponderous) Well . . .I suppose you could say I was hurt . . .



Citan: That man in black . . .spoke of your father's fate . . . Is that what is wrong?

Fei: (turns around slowly to face Citan, head downcast) There (pause) is that (pause) too, but . . .It's the other stuff he said . . . What happened at Lahan . . . was all planned to get me to ride in that Gear . . . Or so he claimed. That's got me worried . . .

He looks up, approaches Citan , who asks –

Citan: To get you to ride in that Gear . . .?

Fei: Doc, before the village was destroyed, I lived without doubting myself. But it's different now. I don't (pause) . . .know who I am. I've never felt like this before. . .

Citan: (a long silence, then)
Well we cannot do anything as long as we are prisoners . . .even if we wanted to. Let us rest a little. Maybe it will sort your feelings out a little.

Fei: Let's talk more . . .

Citan: Are you worried about your father?

Fei: All I know is what the maids at my home in Lahan told me . . .
One night a strange masked man carried me to Lahan. I was heavily wounded at the time . . . In my delirium I called out for my father . . .
That's all they could tell me about my background. I don't remember anything of my father or my past . . .
So I guess I'm not really all that lonely or sad . . .

Turning to doc, he asks –

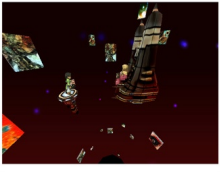
Fei: Doc, why didn't I notice that I had no memories up until now?

Citan: . . .

The two men decide to get some rest, Citan watches Fei for a moment as the younger man moves toward the window to look out one more time.

Citan: . . . (It was him! No mistake . . .That was no coincidence . . .)
he pauses, considering,
(Could it be that we are approaching . . .the –Time- of the –Gospel- . . .?)

Scene fades to that of a realm of swirling images against a deep red backdrop. This place is a mystery, it's limits unfathomable . . .
A man with the face of a skull sits upon a throne which is suspended in midair amid the creaking soughing of the 'portraits' which orbit him in his domain. Before him, a man stands on a pedestal which also floats in the midst of the slowly turning colors . . .



Emperor: Yes, the –Gospel-. We are the people expelled from paradise and forced to live on the cruel surface of the earth.
We who fill this land will once again return to the presence of god in paradise and live there eternally. That is the –Time- of the –Gospel-. That –Time- is at hand.
We the Gazel, must find god's resting place by then and resurrect him.
That is our final prayer . . .

Citan: Our final prayer?

Emperor: Our final prayer to escape from the –Fate- that was determined at our genesis.

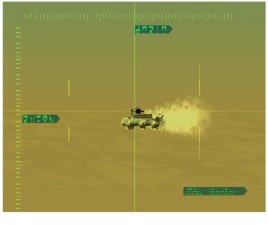
Back on board the sand crawler, day has arrived. Citan stands with his back to Fei, who is looking out the porthole once more.
He softly speaks, -

Citan: (Majesty . . .is this the end . . .?

He slowly turns and looks at Fei . . .

The Desert Pirates!

The scene begins with the image of a lens tracking the movement of the sand crawler across the desert. It zooms closer . . .A voice calls, "Bingo! Just as the report said – an Aveh transport. And look at what we have on top . . .!" The image clicks to a closer magnification. The form of Weltall is strapped to the deck of the sand crawler. The voice calls again, this time in jubilation, "No mistaking it! That's a new Kislev model! It has to be the stolen Gear everyone is after!!" The scene moves to the inside of a vessel, engines thrumming in the background as a golden-haired young man peers through a 'scope, then steps back, saying –



Young Man: Whatever the case . . .
There's no way we are going to let that Shakhan guy have it . . .

He pushes the 'scope's handgrips back up into the mechanism and the entire apparatus retreats into the ceiling. The young man calls out –

Young Man: Gunmen!

Operator: Turret A 'Anton' and Turret B 'Belta' can initiate their ectropometers twenty seconds after opening their hatches.

Young Man: Franz!

Franz: I didn't hear anything other than the flowing sound of the sand . . .
No suspicious radar activity detected!

Young Man: Marseilles!

Marseilles: Maitreya's units are on standby at the catapaults. They'll all be able to launch one minute after we surface!

Young Man: Good! Let's do it! BattCon level 1!

A bell alarm rings, the lights go to red, then it stops. A man calls out –

Operator 2: Surface combat, ready!

Operator 1: Torpedo room, ready!

Operator 3: Anti-Gear guns, ready!

Navigator: Navigation and engineering are also ready!

Behind the young man the bridge door slides open, an elderly man approaching. He says –

Elder: Y,young master! (pause) What's happening? What was the alarm all about . . .

The door slides open again, admitting another, younger man with silver hair. He rushes in, calling out –

Silver Haired Man: Not again . . .? Young master! Hold on a second!

Young Man: Battle Stations, everyone! Surface navigators, begin operating the sand pump! Prepare to fire starboard cannons upon surfacing!

Elder: Y,young master!!

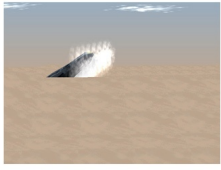
Silver Haired Man: Young master!!

Young Man: Trim to the right! The wind is strong up there and we may be blown off balance! . . .
(pause) Jerico! Hand the helm over to me!

On board the sand crawler Fei still looks out the port hole unseeing, but then Citan notices something strange . . .

Citan: Look! What is that . . .?

Citan: A sand cruiser . . .It must be those desert pirates!



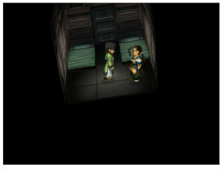
On the pirates' vessel, gun turrets slowly turn, taking aim at the sand crawler. The shots are fired in a blaze of white light!

Young Man: Alternate firing between A 'Anton' and B 'Belta'! Calculating adjustments! (looks on screen at console, shouts) Awww yeah! Switch modes over to salvos after the initial shots! Let's slow 'em down. Get ready to give them a spankin' they won't forget!

Elder: Young master please wait! It may just be a requisitional ship, not a warship . . .

Young Man: Let me handle this! Whether it's a warship or not, it's carrying a new Gear! (turns to left, orders) Gunmen! Let 'em have it!!

There is a large white light as the shot is fired. Back in Fei and Citan's room, the lights flicker as the ship bucks underneath them.



Citan: Oh – oh!
(another hit, he looks around wildly at the heaving deck, the ship beginning to cant at an angle, the sound of sand rushing in!)
Citan: Judging by the angle . . .it seems as if a gun blast has made a hole in the hull . . . We will probably sink within minutes.

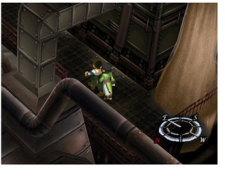
Fei: A few minutes . . .Doc!!

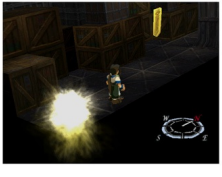
Citan goes to the door, tries it, says –

Citan: It is locked . . .Somebody free us! Arrgghhh!!
(steps back, another blast hits, door opens to a hallway already filling with sand.

Fei: Let's get out of here, doc!

Citan: There is a switch on the right hand side of the door.





They make their way through the double doors, sand right behind as they make their way throughout the empty engine room, up a ladder only to make it just in time as sand fills the recently vacated hatch.

Citan: Whew, that was close.

They make their way through the darkened storage room, running into panicking guards along the way. They fight some of them while making their way to yet another ladder leading up to the deck. Once outside, Fei stands alone on the heaving deck, calling out –

Fei: Doc!? Where did you go, doc!?

Citan: Fei! Can you hear me? I am moving the crane towards Weltall's cockpit. Hurry! Go up the crane to Weltall! We are going under fast!

Fei: . . . I got you, doc! But when you're done, you hurry up there too, okay!?

The crane begins to move toward Weltall. The sand is beginning to creep up over the sides, Fei leaps up on the crane as soon as it stops, and makes his way up slowly to the portion directly above Weltall. Once there, he slides down the rope to the Gear, pausing –

Fei: Here we go again . . .
(pause) You and I seem to have a fated relationship!

He drops down into the cockpit, fires up the Gear, standing while Citan waits on the deck below. He moves Weltall toward Citan, calling –

Fei: C'mon doc! Over here!
Hurry up!

Citan gets into the 'hand' and Fei blasts off to a safer location away from the foundering vessel. He lands in a kneeling position, in the distance a little ways off the ship already disappearing beneath the sand.
Doc says –

Citan: Wooh . . . (jumps out, staggers a little)

Citan: Whoops . . . (turns to Weltall)

Fei: Are you okay, doc?

Citan: Ha ha ha . . .Well Doctor Citan Uzuki! Feels like you have sacked your saccules, and tickled your utricles enough for one life time! Wow, dizzy!

Fei: Sorry about that, doc! I didn't have time to open up the cockpit . . .Are you really okay, doc?

Citan: Fei, I was only joking. Riding in the hand was not so bad. I can see what is so good about this top secret experimental Kislev machine.

Fei: Yeah, when I started it up, it began doing all kinds of stuff by itself . . .
The environmental response system and weight – reduction hovering kicked in straight away . . .automatically!

Citan: Really . . .? (pauses) Amazing . . .!

They are interrupted by a voice which calls out from behind them –

Voice: Save yourselves but leave your friends to sink in a sea of sand . . .
Don't you believe in comradeship?

Fei and Citan turn in surprise –

Citan: ? . . .

Fei: !!? . . .

Young Man: It's not very manly of you two to leave your platoon to die while you run away in a Gear, you know?

Fei: Wait one moment! We're not Aveh soldiers!

Young Man: Hm. Can't you make a better plea for your life? You come jumping out of an Aveh ship and claim that you are not Aveh soldiers! Stop trying to fool me!

Fei: I tell you, it's true!

Young Man: Tsk. How pathetic are you!?
Even if you're the pettiest of soldiers, how's about showing a little spine . . . . .and put up a decent fight!

Fei: Stop it! I'm telling you I'm no Aveh soldier!
I don't want to fight!

Young Man: How nauseating! Why don't you stop grumbling, leave the Gear, and run away?

Young Man: For someone who doesn't want to fight, you're quite powerful . . .I see, an all-environment model . . .so that's it, huh?
Now I want it even more!

Suddenly a rumbling erupts from the ground beneath them!

Fei: "?!?"

Young Man; Oh – no! This is not good!!

Young Man: In the heat of battle, I go get caught in quicksand! Darn. Me of all people!

Damn! It's all your fault! Boy are you going to get it later. So be darn ready!

Fei: Why!

They fall into a dark cavern, the sound of dripping water the only noise. The young pirate emerges from his Gear and stalks over to Weltall, calling out –

Young Man: Hey, come down here now! (pause) I'm not gonna kill you.

Fei jumps down, asking -

What?

All I want is for you to leave this Gear . . .huh?
(backs off, surprise in his face) Hey!?
You're (pauses) not an Aveh soldier?

Fei: (approaches him) I told you that in my intercom transmission earlier.
You're the one who refused to listen to me, right?

Young Man: Hah, ha, ha. Sorry, sorry. Yes, I remember you were saying something like that. I went off half-cocked and thought you were the enemy. Uhh, ahem . . . (pauses) My name is Bart. I'm the pirate that works this territory.

Fei: My name is Fei. I was arrested for no apparent reason, shoved into that Aveh transport ship . . .
. . .And was nearly going to be sent to a concentration camp until you went and blew the thing to blazes. Anyway, . . .I'm just glad to have been able to survive.

Bart: (walks back, studies Weltall) I see . . .
Well, I'm glad I at least helped you out a little. But I didn't expect a civilian like you would be riding in a military Gear. Besides, this Gear is a brand new model. I've never seen this type before.

Fei: Let's just say that a lot of things have happened . . .It wasn't like I wanted to pilot it!
(turns to Bart) Where are we anyway? Looks like we fell into one weird place. I've never heard of huge stalactite caves such as this existing under the desert before.

Bart: What? You don't know anything, do you? (pauses) Where are you from?
The desert only covers about 1000 sharls of the outer layer of the earth.
The stratum underneath that consists of igneous rock.

Fei: (musing to himself) From a sea of trees to a sea of sand . . . and now a stalactite cave . . . What's next . . .?

Bart: What are you talking about?

Fei: Oh, nothing . . .never mind . . .

Bart: We're in trouble . . . (pauses, looks up)
Look, the hole we fell through has disappeared. We'd better find some other way out . . . So you wanna call a truce for now? . . .At least until we find an exit and get out of here.

Fei: Yes . . .agreed. (looks up at both Gears) First, we gotta find the way out of here . . . So let's get going . . .

On board the Pirate's Sand Cruiser, people rescued from the Aveh transport mill about on the deck . . .

G1: Phew, thank god . . .I didn't wanna dry up and die in the desert . . .

One of the guards next to him moves towards the open hatch leading down into the vessel, one of the pirates notices –

P1: Hey you! I know you're tired but don't go any further than there!

G1: Shut up! You sunk our ship! Don't you forget that!

The pirate calls down –

P1: No, you shut up! Just be thankful that you were saved!

A woman approaches the others, she appears to be a medic of some sort . . .

Medic: Excuse me . . .Is there anyone who is almost dead, with no arms and legs, or in need of an abdominal operation!? (looks around, dead silence) No one . . .? Well that's depressing . . .

Watching from the upper portion of the deck, Citan stands with the silver haired man and says –

Citan: I see . . .
So your 'young one' has not just been shooting at anything and everything then, Sigurd.

Sigurd: Yes, he actually calculated this attack . . . . . .or so he says!
As you can see . . . no one has died this time, either.

The sound of a Gear approaching gets their attention.

SG: Sigurd, sir! The collection of the goods and soldiers from the Aveh transport is almost complete. We still can't locate the young master . . .General Maitreya's platoon will scout around again.

Sig: Okay. I'm counting on you.

SG: Yes sir! Since I'm part of the unit I'll also excuse myself.

Gear blasts off. Citan addresses Sig

Citan: So, what happened to this 'young one' you call 'master'?

Sig: He fell into an underground cave with that other guy in a Gear.
It's near an old excavation site, and he is riding in a Gear, so he'll probably be able to come up somehow . . . We'll try to find him for a while, and if that doesn't work, then we'll wait for him at our meeting point.

Citan: You seem to trust him a lot . . .

Sig: Trust him . . .Yeah, I trust he'll get us into trouble.

A silence, then –

Sig: But I never thought I would meet you here, 'Hyu' . . .

Citan: (slowly turns, facing Sig)
It is not coincidence. It is an inevitable consequence . . . I assume.

Sig: (turns to look at Citan, then asks)
. . .Hyuga . . .Are you saying something is about to happen?

Cuts to scene of Fei and Bart standing in the cavern. Light falls in bright shafts from holes in the ceiling far above. Once more in their Gears, they explore, looking for a way out. At last they find a cavern opening blocked by a large boulder. Both step back to take in the situation . . .

Bart: My sensors detect what appears to be a huge cave on the other side of here. If we could only do something about this boulder . . . (pauses) But I doubt we can just smash it to pieces!

Fei: I guess (pause) we could try pushing it . . . (moves forward, begins pushing, Bart calls out -)

Bart: Wait, (pause) no matter how you look at it . . .

watches as Fei slowly moves the great rock, then -

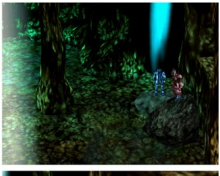
Fei: what the heck are you doing? Hurty up and help!!

Bart rushes in to push as well, rock moves faster, then slides out of the way, dropping to the floor below.

Fei: We can get by if we help each other. Let's keep it up so we can get out of here.

Both men jump down to a ledge, looking around at the new cavern.

Bart: The hydromechanic pipe for my knee joint is on the verge of breaking down. It's all because of that fall from the ceiling . . . followed by pushing this mega-colossal boulder. It won't be funny if my Gear malfunctions in a huge cavern like this.



Fei: Your friends won't come and help us?

Bart: It'd be a waste of time waiting. (pause) They probably won't come.

Fei: But, aren't they your friends?

Bart: We believe in a liberal upbringing. They'll think we can escape by ourselves.

Fei: I wonder if doc is okay.

Bart: Don't worry about the man you were with. I'm sure our guys saved him by now.

Fei: . . .

Bart: What is it?

Fei: . . . (pauses) We wouldn't have fallen in here if you had only listened to me.

Bart: Don't blame it on me! You should have surrendered instead of challenging me. All I wanted was your Gear.

Fei: Don't be ridiculous! You're the one who blindly attacked me. What else was I supposed to do? I thought I might die if I didn't fight you.

Bart: I was taking it easy on you. Couldn't you tell? (pause) Then you're a bit dense.

Fei: Don't lie to me. I know you were serious.

Bart: What! You want some!? Let's have it out! Right here! (says to Fei's back, who is turned looking around at cavern)

Fei: . . . (ignores him, blasts down to floor.)

Bart: Wait! Settling it right here comes first. I won't be able to get anything done until we settle this once and for all!

Fei: (from below) I thought you wanted a truce for now? Getting out of here should come first! Once we're out of here, then I'll fight you all you want. (pauses) Let's hurry up and move on out of here!

Bart: (jumping down to the next outcropping) I don't like you very much . . .
Damn it! I'll get you when we get outta here.

Reluctantly joins Fei who never once looked in his direction during the tirade . . . They set off, battling their way through many caves and then pass over a bridge above thundering waterfalls below. The caverns all glow with a slight greenish light. They run across a lone Gear in the middle of a cavern. Talking to it, the Gear responds:

Aveh Excavation Sight #8
Gear No.
→ Tell current situation
→ surrounding area info.

They decide to try their luck by telling their current situation. It responds, "Sand sensors have detected an abnormal amount of sand. The sand barrier southeast of 'Terrace Stones' has been sealed to prevent sand from entering the excavation site.

Bart: What's with this Gear? It's well maintained for a Gear just left lying around like this.

They ask the gear about the surrounding area. It responds: "There is a barrier wall in the southeast of 'Terrace Stones' that was built to stop the shifting of sand. Until the barrier reopens, please assemble at the shelter located to the east of the barrier wall.

They make their way through the cave entrance behind the Gear, and in the next cavern see a cave down below with a light shining out . . .

Bart: Who'd have thought there would be someone living in a place like this?
Let's check it out!

Soon they arrive and enter, getting out of their Gears. Inside, the place is a repository of objects, everything organized by an obvious system. They see a man walk towards them –

Bart: Hey, Fei! This is a surprise!
There's someone living in this place!

As the man approaches, they see that his proud face is heavily lined by age. He addresses them –

Ancient: Hmmm, it's been a while, but I thought I could hear the sound of Gears. I assume they are yours? Well anyway, come on back here and make yourself at home.

They follow the man back into the cave which is well lit and they look at all the 'odds 'n' ends' as they pass. The ancient man asks -

Ancient: It's been a long time since my last visitor. What happened? Did you fall from the surface?

Bart: I guess that's it

Ancient: I see . . .That's too bad. I can tell from the sound that you both ride good Gears . . . But the legs seem to be playing up a bit.

Fei; You mean, you can tell what's wrong just by the sound of its footsteps?

Ancient: Ha ha ha. It's easy to know what's wrong with Gears by the sounds they make. My guess is that one of them needs a new hydromechanic pipe in its joints. It's making a nasty sound. It must be hard to walk with too. Oh, by the way, the name's Balthazar, but you can call me Ol' man Bal.

Bart: (walks forward, looking on shelf behind Bal) Oh yeah? (pauses) So looks like we've got a real fanatic here, huh! (turns to Bal) What's an old man like you doing in a place like this?

Bal: (turns to Bart) I guess you can call me a 'fossicker' or a 'collector of things'. There is much to be found lying around in this here stalactite cavern.

Bart: (walks away, looking around at objects in room)
A collector, huh? Sounds interesting. (turns back to Bal)
The things on this shelf, are they some of the stuff you have found?

Bal: You mean the fossils? They're one of the things I collect. Feel free to have a look at them.

They all move to look at the objects on the shelf in the hallway.

Bal: Around here you can dig up ancient machines along with human and animal fossils. Notice anything particular on these shelves? They go from oldest on the left, to newest on the right.

Bart: Are you an archaeologist or something, old man? I don't quite see what you're talking about. They just look like a bunch of old bones to me. Fei, what do you think?

Fei walks closer, studying

Fei: . . .Let me see. (pauses) First, there are no human bones up to here. (indicating the left blank section of the shelf) Then, from here on over to the right, something is slightly different . . .I guess.

Bal: (turns to Fei) Yes, from a certain point in time, human fossils suddenly no longer appear. That point is roughly 10,000 years ago.

Bart: What does that mean?

Bal: Don't ask me. I don't know for sure . . .But my guess is, there were no humans on this planet before then. (pauses) At least it appears so.

Bart: (walks forward) How could that be?
What about all that talk about evolution?

Bal: You mean the theory of evolution as taught by the 'Ethos', right? You can't trust that! Rather, I believe in the old legends and myths.

Fei: (turns to Bal) Legends? Myths?

Bal: (looks at two for a moment) Haven't you heard of this story . . .
(walks to the back of the cave towards another room)
They say that humans and god lived together in a paradise in the sky.
(Fei and Bart follow him as he speaks, until they are standing in the old one's 'study'.)
With god's protection, there was no fear of death and natural disasters were entirely unknown. Then one day, the humans ate a forbidden fruit which gave them incredible wisdom. But god drove mankind from the paradise for their sin. Bitter at having been driven out of paradise, humans used the wisdom they had gained to make giants. With these giants, they planned to challenge god himself. But god poured his wrath down on them. All who defied god were destroyed. But god himself did not escape unharmed. Taking paradise with him, the wounded god buried himself deep beneath the ocean to sleep for eons. Before going to sleep, god used his remaining power to create right-hearted humans to live on this planet. These people are said to be (pause) . . .our ancestors.
(ending the tale, Bal shakes himself) Well, anyway I'll stop my rambling now.

Fei and Bart turn to leave, then Fei asks, remembering –

Fei: By the way, does this cave have . . .

Bal: An exit? There is an exit in the excavation site beyond the sand barrier. You can get outside through there.

Bart: Sand barrier? You mean that huge wall you can see from your entrance?

Bal: Yes, that's it. On the other side is an old Aveh excavation site. They built the wall when Aveh was excavating here to keep sand from falling in from above. But they've stopped work there now.

Fei: So how do we open such a huge thing like that?

Bart: If it's a wall, you can probably break it down.

Bal: Hold on there young'uns. No matter how good a Gear you have, you'll never break that wall down. It's much too strong. (pause) So . . .let's make a deal.

Bart: A deal?

Bal: The wall was closed due to the reaction of the 'Sand Sensors'. Thanks to that, now I can't get through to the other side either. Maybe it happened when you two fell in here. Were you boys fighting up there or something?

Fei: You seem to be able to tell everything!
Anyway, so what can we do about it?

Bal: It's very simple. You just have to turn off the Sand Sensor switches. Doing that will keep the barrier from closing again. (pause) While you are doing that, I'll open it up.

Fei: Right, got it.

Bal: The sensors are in two places. You should see their flashing red lights. Well, good luck then.

Fei: (turns to Bart) Let's go, Bart.

Bal: Oh, before you go . . . I can share some parts and fuel with you. Just tell me whenever you need something, right.

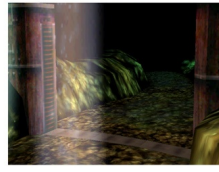
Bart: Thanks, old man. Well, we'll go and finish our part of the deal then!

Fei and Bart exit the cave, intent on finding the two sensors. They are located in high out -of -the- way places and the gloom of the caverns makes it hard to pick out their flashing lights. Eventually, after a great deal of battling (not to mention a few unsavory words!) they manage to locate both sensors and return to the old man's cave.

They enter and find Bal near the back section. He sees them and says -

Bal: Oh, good timing. I was just about to open up the sand barrier now.

He flicks a switch, outside a rumbling is heard, the wall recedes into the cavern floor. When it's done, Fei says -



Fei: Well done, old man!

Bal: Our deal is done.

Bal: What is it?

Bart: Hey, old man. There's one thing I want to ask you.

Bart: I've heard somewhere on this planet is a Gear far superior to all others. I've heard that it was called 'the god Gear' and was made in ancient times but hidden away somewhere. Do you know anything about it?

Bal: A man-made god, created with the wisdom of god! Such a Gear would have the power of a thousand Gears. In a wave of its arm, it could destroy whole cities. Its battle cries would thunder in the heavens. You must be speaking of the 'Omnigear'.

Bart: You know of it? Then perhaps it was what you were speaking about in that tale you told us of the battle with god . . .

Bal: Goodness gracious, you too, boy? Those stories were made to inspire man's soul. But they're just legends. They don't really exist.

Bal starts toward cave entrance

Bal: Anyway, allow me to take a look at your Gears. It'll only take a little while, so wait here please.

Bart steps forward, calls -

Bart: Hey, wait! Arrh, he's gone . . .

As they wait, Fei asks Bart -

Fei: Hey Bart, do you think the Gear in that story's buried in the ground somewhere?

Bart: I think that's what I've heard . . .

Fei: Could one of the Gears we are using possibly be it?

Bart: Yeah, right! What are the chances of that happening?

Fei: ?

Bart: The Gears that are excavated lately . . . . . .are usually only a few hundred years old. Nowhere nearly as old as the Gear in that legend.

Fei: Then why were they in the ground . . .?

Bart: I don't know. There are no records. (pause) Except . . .

Fei: Except what?

Bart: There must be some truth in the tales that they were buried after a great war . . . The bullet wounds covering most of the Gears' armor would appear to confirm that.

Fei: You mean that there are no records from the last several hundred years? How about before that?

Bart: None from either period. The 'Ethos' controls all the records from that time period. Maybe they have some very ancient records too . . .All we know about our history is from the little pieces that we find for ourselves.

He jumps down off his perch, facing Fei and asks -

Bart: Anyway Fei, what do you make of the old man?

Fei: What do you mean . . .?

Bart: Why would such an old man live all alone in this abandoned cave?

Fei: I don't know. (pause) Probably digging for ancient Gears or something?

Bart: (turns, thinking to himself) Right! So you think so too?

Fei: Hey! I just said that as a joke. Don't take all that stuff seriously. They're only legends, you know.

Bart: No . . .that old man (pause) is up to something!

They hear Bal's voice exclaim from outside -

Bal: This can't be . . .

Fei and Bart turn at the sound of his voice -

Fei: ??

Bart: (calls out) What's wrong, old man?

Bal stands at the cave entrance, looking at Weltall which towers overhead. He asks -

Bal: Is this your Gear?

Fei: Well, sort of . . .

Bal: Where did you get it?

Fei: I'm just borrowing it.

Bal: This is (pause) the host for the spirit of (pause) the slayer of god . . .

Bal reutrns to the cave and Fei turns to him, asking -

Fei; Wait a moment! What did you just say?

Bal: Nothing. I didn't say anything!!

Fei: No! I heard you! You said, slayer of god . . .
That's what you said, isn't it old man!!

Bal: (back turned to Fei) Your Gears are fixed. You have no more business here. This is a bad time for me. Be on your way!

Fei: Be on our way . . .? Listen here, old man . . !!

Fei and Bart are booted out and they look at each other in bewilderment as they stand outside in the cavern once more. Then they make their way through the lowered barrier, arriving at last in a huge cavern which appears to be the actual excavation site.

To their right, is a lift which will take them down to a lower level of the site. They descend to a lower level, inert cranes jutting out of the tumbled wreckage of the site. Passing through, they fight a few battles and jump up onto the opposite ledge. There, another lift waits and they take it down to a still deeper level.

Once they get to the bottom, they are able to see an opening on the far cavern wall, and - a light! It appears to be ordinary sunlight, and they take a few steps toward it, their hearts already lighter. They are almost there! Then, from overhead, they hear the sound of engines firing. Looking up, they see a mammoth Gear circle slowly, tauntingly out of range as it comes closer.

They fight the huge Gear, taking some damage, but slowly manage to stay ahead . . .finally, the Gear, Calamity, goes down in a puff of smoke and flame. Bart turns to Fei, saying -

Bart: Huh! What an idiot. Trying to scare us with all show and no power. (pause) eh, Fei!

Fei: . . . . . .

Bart: Anyway . . .looks like that's the exit. So it'll soon be adios to this old cavern!

(he turns, making his way towards the exit. Behind him, Calamity rises once more. There is a flash of red light.)-

Bart: What the . . .!?

Fei: !?

Fei hears once more the pounding of the heartbeat in his ears, his vision pulses with red, he yells -

Fei: Get out of the way, Bart!!

Fei moves towards Calamity with deadly grace, adopting a new stance. He stands, poised on one leg, then lets loose with a dark radiance which lends his blows lethal power. Calamity falls, disintegrates.

Bart: Woooh! What the hell did you just do?

Fei: . . . . . .

Bart: Hey!!

Fei: . . . .huh?

Bart: What do you mean 'huh?'!? What in blazes was that? (pause) . . . Don't you know?

Fei: . . .No, (pause) I err, (pause) . . . .I don't know.

Bart: That was incredible! You just blew that huge thing to pieces! Why didn't you use that technique a bit earlier?

There is a silence, then-

Fei: . . .I don't know that technique . . .I have no idea how I even did it!

Bart: Hmm. Oh well, I guess that doesn't matter. Anyway . . thanks for helping me out!

Fei: . . . . . .

Bart: So, now that we've got rid of that nuisance, let's get out of here, eh, Fei!

They make their way up to the ancient concrete piling leading up to the exit. Gratefully, they emerge into the daylight, blinking against the brightness. Bart pauses, taking in where they are . . .

Bart: Wow . . .I never thought we'd end up here . . .

In the distance, a light sand storm partially obscuring the view, two smallish mountains rise in the distance. They are lent a bluish tinge by the swirling clouds above through which a pristine blue sky appears in small patches. Fei asks-

Fei: Where are we?

Bart: (pointing) You see the twin mountains way over there? That's where Bledavik, the Royal Capital of Aveh, and Fatima Castle are located. Currently, there's no king living there, though. (pauses) Anyway, this is my old home town.

The wind sighs mournfully about them as they peer off in the distant horizon.

Fei: Home town . . .

Bart: I'd like to go ahead and settle our dispute but . . .considering how close we are to the capital of Aveh, we'd probably get caught.

Fei: . . .

Bart: Hey, stop looking so glum, chum. I guess I'll have to get you back to your friend soon or you'll die from fretting or somehting. Anyway, the rendezvous point with the Yggdrasil is right over there. Don't worry, you'll be meeting your friend in no time at all.

The Yggdrasil

The scene opens up with Fei standing before Weltall on a raised platform which circles the Gear on all sides. Citan stands before him and it appears that they are in a 'garage' for Gears on board the Yggdrasil. Fei and Citan are reunited . . .

Citan: Fei! I was worried about you!

Fei: Doc . . .

An elderly gentleman approaches. He is very dignified and does not fit the image of a 'pirate' at all! He draws near Fei and Citan, saying -

Maison: Welcome to the sand cruiser "Yggdrasil". We apologize for that earlier incident.

He turns at the approach of Bart, saying as he turns back to Fei and Citan once more-

Maison: I'm sure everyone has already had the courtesy to introduce themselves. But allow me to introduce the sand pirates' leader, Master Bartholomew.

He turns to Bart, asking -

Maison: By the way, may I ask, young master, did you apologize to Master Fei?

Bart: (turns to Maison) What? Uhh . . .yeah . . .
I told him I was 'wrong' . . .Right?

Fei: . . .
(as Bart turns in his direction hopefully)

The young silver haired man approaches, saying -

Sig: Just telling someone you were 'wrong' after the event isn't going to solve anything, young master.

All turn to look at the new arrival, who continues-

Sig: I'm sorry I've delayed introducing myself . . .My name is "Sigurd", the First Mate of this sand cruiser.

Maison: (turns to Fei) Well, then, please let me know if you need anything.

Bart turns to Fei and Citan, jumping around in discomfort, saying -

Bart: . . .That's the situation . . .So now, forgive me, will ya!?

Sig: (approaches Bart) Young master! Stay out of mischief!

(He pulls Bart away, Maison following as Bart yelps -)

Bart: Ouch ouch ouch!! Don't pull my ears!

Citan: Let us go and wait in our cabin until we arrive . . .
It is well-made and comfortable.

Fei: . . .

Citan: (looks closer at Fei) What is wrong? You look down.

Fei: (turns around looking at Weltall) No . . .Well . . .

Citan: Something happened?

Fei: (turns back to Citan) No, nothing.

The to men make their way through the Gear hangar until they see a small building near the exit. Curious, they question the guard standing near the door -

SL: This is the Gear shop! Look inside if you want to tune-up your Gear.

They enter and see three men, all officers are talking in the corner about . . .what else? Gears!
They approach one of the men, he says -

S2: That Gear with the slender build withstood Brigandier's rod? What kind of armor did they use to cover it?

They turn to address the officer next to him, his uniform indicating higher rank, he says –

O1: Maitreya admired your dive technique. I hear your zoom technique is flawless. Do you think you can train me on my next watch?

O2: Hey? Did you see this month's edition of "Gear Fan Magazine"? They say, 'Hovering' is all the rage right now. Until a while back, it used to be special equipment that only the young master had equipped on his Gear!

They move over to the counter, look over the wares; decide to come back later. Leaving, they once more find themselves in the huge Gear hangar. They make their way to a door nearby, talking to the man outside who directs them, saying that the door leads to the hall. Entering, go down the hall a bit until they reach the first door on their right. It is a vacant room, obviously meant to be used as a personal quarters. Exiting, they go across the hall to the door, and enter the next room. This room appears to be the communal sleeping room, a few men sit in their bunks reading, playing cards or just staring at the ceiling. They climb up one of the bunks to talk to a man that is engrossed in a novel. He says –

R1: Her-her-her (not even looking up from his racy novel)

R2: I guess there are many things in the world I've never seen. I'll probably discover them if I try hard enough on my own . . .

They make their way over to a pirate who stands thinking. He says –

Pirate: My daughter is waiting for me at the base. It's been so long since I've seen her! So we're going to spend a lot of time together.

They go over to the array of bunks near the door. Another man sits reading, he says –

R3: Helen, so courageous . . .So moving . . .

Deciding to leave him to himself, Fei and Citan approach the far door, talking to the man standing there. He says –

DM: We're almost at the base! Whew, finally we can rest!

They exit back out into the hallway, making their way to the door across the way. Inside, it appears to be a sickbay. The woman, a medic, says –

Medic: How do you do! I'm the nurse from the Yggdrasil. I'll do the best I can. So come by sometime!! (turns around, talking to herself) Hee, hee, hee. My first impression was excellent!

Sick Man: Is this wound from the battle, you ask? No, I fell off the bed next door. So pathetic . . .

They leave, go down to the end of the hallway, where they see a pirate standing outside the door, he says –

P2: What? Why am I here? Well never mind that! (It's not like I'm hiding the fact that I broke the wall or anything.)

Oh, and by the way . . .you can go through this door to the Gun Room, or go down the stairs to the Engine Room.

They enter, see Maison standing over behind the bar. This room is somewhat large, a dining table set on the far side, and a staircase descending to a lower level. They approach Maison, who says –

Maison: I hope you are not too taken back? Lately, there are too many barbaria . . .I mean . . . highly energetic lads, around the young master. So, yours truly, who is in charge of education, demanded to have this room created!!

He turns around, contemplating the far shelves, saying in a low tone –

Maison: (But, because of that, I ended up having to take a side job . . .)

He turns around once more, asking –

Maison: How may I be of service?

He offers a wide selection of items and accessories, Citan and Fei pick up a few supplies, thanking him.

Maison: I hope I can be of such service again!

The two men look around, several guns decorate the walls, as well as a wall hanging which bears the same crest as the nose of the vessel. They descend the stairs to the lower level, ignoring the rooms along the hallway for the present. They head toward the Engine Room. Arriving, they see two technicians hard at work at the console. One of them calls –

T1: Once again, final checks! Every second counts! The young master forever!

He turns, seeing the approach of Fei and Citan, and says –

T1: When we had engine trouble a long time ago, the young master jumped in to fix it. Sigurd tried to help the young master and they both ended up injuring one eye.

T2: (turns to add) We are proud of the young master, but . . .he sometimes rushes into things. The chief thinks it's all his own fault.

The two technicians return to their work. Fei and Citan make their way around the perimeter of the engine. It thrums with a deep basso roar that only hints of the incredible power contained and controlled within. Both see the chief Engineer above on the ledge. They climb up the ladder to talk to him, At their approach, he barks out –

Chief: Amateurs don't belong here. So get lost! (as they draw closer, he finishes) Nobody touches this machine here except myself. Even the young master! (he turns around, groans in guilt -) Uhh . . .Young master . . .

Fei and Citan leave the man to his thoughts, returning once more to the ground floor as they make their way back to the Gun Room, exiting from there into the hallway. Turning to their right, they see a man looking at a potted plant. He speaks softly –

Man: Grow bigger! Grow . . .! (he turns at Fei and Citan's approach, saying -) This tree was planted when the young master was born. It grew along with the young master. With it, our hopes and dreams grow to fruition too . . . Anyhow, the door next to you is the elevator.
Use the switch inside to go up or down.

The get on the elevator which takes them up to the anteroom outside the bridge. To their left is the ladder leading up to the hatch. They go to the door leading onto the bridge and enter, seeing Bart standing with Sig at the helm. They approach Bart, who says –

Bart: We're almost at my hideout!

They go down below, talking to the crew, making their way around the bridge to the right. The man on their left says –

Cm: That Jerico! He lets the Yggdrasil drift, so that the time and routes we take end up being off . . .

They move on to the ship's chart keeper, who asks –

ChrtM: Do you want to see the ship's chart?

They accept and see the map which shows the ships position relative to the continent of Ignas. At this time, they are somewhere between Dazil and the western mountain range.
They move on to the next man.

C1: While under the sand, there is nothing but static . . .As a matter of fact, there is nothing to do either . . .

C2: It's a lot harder to control the ship after the young master steered it. He is so reckless . . .

C3: I had a competition going on with the young master the other day to see who could tip the boat further. Old Maison literally was white as a sheet, saying all the teacups were detroyed . . .

They move on to a dolphin, who turns in surprise at their approach, saying –

Franz: Oh, sorry . . .I didn't realize that you were there! Wanna hear some hot sounds that I have recorded?

They agree to listen, hear some of the sounds which Franz has 'collected' over the course of several years. Then they move on to the gunman, who says –

G1: When it comes to cannons, you don't know where the shells will fly until you've actually shot 'em. But, they're suitable for the pirating trade because they're cheap yet intimidating . . .
On the other hand though, torpedoes blow everything to blazes and are downright expensive too . . .

They move to the man in the rear, who informs them –

H2: This ship uses innumerable effect wings to pulverize sand and wade through it. If our balance is lost, we roll over in the desert. It's all up to our skill!

Fei and Citan climb up to the helm once more, addressing Sig, who says –

Sig: We're almost at the hideout . . .We'll probably stop there for a while for supplies and repairs.

The scene fades to a view of the Yggdrasil from overhead as it glides through the desert. It heads northwest, rounding a range of mountains until it arrives at the hideout. The hideout appears to be a jumble of ruins as they approach. Sinking beneath the sand, they tunnel up under it, rising into a huge landing bay. The Yggdrasil ascends slowly, a clamp securing it in place. A group of people await its arrival on the platform as the pathway is extended.

Bart's Hideout

The group of people includes three children who bounce on their toes in excitement. At last, the hatch opens, and Bart comes out first, the children jumping in glee. Fei is out next, he looks around at the vaulting roof of the landing bay, which stretches way overhead. Then Citan and Maison emerge, looking around as well. The children shout, 'Bart good to see you back!" and "Welcome back! Bart!"
the other people on the platform are obviously thrilled, all shouting, "Welcome back!" One of the children, a little girl, approaches Bart and asks –

Girl: Bart! What did you bring us?

Bart: Well . . .I've got a new model Gear and two people that we helped out.

A little boy jumps up and down, saying –

LB: Ehh! Gear . . .how boring! Don't you have anything more interesting?

Bart: (turns around briefly) I thought you'd say that . . . (turns back around) Look! This is amber I found in a stalactite cavern under the desert. It's rare to find one with a bug in it! (walks forward, gives it to them)

Kids: Wow! Thanks Bart!
LB: We got some amber!
Lb: What's that?
LB: Let's go! We gotta show it off to everyone!

They run off, Bart turns to Fei, says –

Bart: Well then . . . (pause) I'm gonna tune up my Gear a little . . .
Why don't you two go have some tea with Old Maison.
(turns to Maison) Thanks Old Maison.

Bart goes back down into the Yggdrasil. Maison steps forward, saying –

Maison: Please walk this way.

Citan and Fei follow Maison as he leads them off the Yggdrasil and on to a waiting lift. It then takes them up into the hideout. Once they arrive, Maison turns to them, saying –

Maison: this is the residential section.
(He gets out of the lift) Walk this way.

Fei and Citan follow Maison into what appears to be a dining hall of some sorts. There are diagrams and models around the perimeter of the room, and in the center are a few tables. Maison stands at the entrance waiting for them. He says –

Maison: This is the dining hall. I'm sorry it is so gauche.

Maison: Please take a seat.

They choose seating behind the 'range' and Maison sets out two cups and a pitcher of tea. He asks –

Maison: Perhaps you would like some of my famous tea? Master Fei? Good Doctor?

He pours them each a cup, and Citan takes a sip. Maison walks over to the side a ways, says –

Maison: Young visitors are rare indeed, the young master must be very happy. If things were normal we wouldn't be living in the desert, but rather back in the royal palace . . .

Citan: Royal palace . . .?
You mean that young one is connected to the old Fatima dynasty?

Maison: (turns to Citan) Pardon?
(pauses, walks away towards the display of the Yggdrasil on the far wall for a moment, then says, shaken –

Maison: N,no . . . I'm just a senile old fool who talks too much . . .
Pay no attention to what I just said . . . (pauses) Hahaha . . .

Citan: But . . .that one-eyed youth does have a certain bearing.

Maison: (rushing over to Citan) Oh . . .oh . . .oh . . .! (pause) Well spoken Sir! Awfully good of you to notice!
(turns his back to Fei and Citan once more, considering) If I may . . .I would like to tell you. The young gent is the last forgotten remainder of the once proud Fatima dynasty. . . .That is, before it was destroyed by Shakhan's minions . . .
(he turns back around to face Citan and says with stately pride)
Prince Bartholomew Fatima.

Citan: Bartholomew? Edbart IV's successor . . .I am sure they announced Bartholomew died of an illness 12 years ago . . .

Maison: Officially, yes. However in reality, we rescued the young prince from Shakhan's evil grasp.

Citan: Then why must the prince, the rightful heir, resort to piracy . . .?

Maison walks away from Fei and Citan, looking at nothing in particular . . . he says –

Maison: Since fleeing here, we have had only one wish . . . . . .that the young master would grow up to be a great man . . .

Citan: Not to . . .(pause) reclaim the throne?

Maison: That is correct. Of course, to say we have absolutely no desire to restore his rule . . . would be a lie. We have plans for that as well.

Citan: And part of those plans would include piracy . . .?

Maison returns to the table, faces Citan and Fei once more, and says –

Maison: Well, yes . . .But there is a reason for that . . .

Maison: both Aveh and Kislev are devoted to excavating the ruins. Each country's strength is increasing daily. Even if we could get the help of all our comrades to start a revolution . . . . . .the combined strength of all of us would still not be enough. We would certainly be suppressed by Shakhan's guards in no time at all.

Maison: We needed power. We tried excavating the ruins using the Yggdrasil but it didn't work as well as we expected.

Maison: Excavating requires tremendous amounts of time, labor and capital. The best we can do with our sand cruiser is find small items in the sand.

Citan: And the piracy . . .

Maison: Regardless of who gains the ruins' technology, one thing is certain . . .Both Kislev and Aveh will simply use that power to oppress the other. I agreed with the young master's idea of creating a new power to balance things out a little.

Citan: I see . . .It is far more effective to plunder from the shadows, than to excavate the technology for oneself.

Maison: (stops) Of course pillaging is an unpardonable act. However . . . for Aveh, for Ignas, to continue like this . . . (turns once more to Citan) I'm sorry if it sounds rather self-righteous.

Citan: That is something which outsiders like ourselves cannot comment upon. From what you have told me, I feel that the result of what you are doing will be good. Seeing your children here tells me that.

Maison: I am much relieved by your words.

Another cup of tea?

Citan: Yes please. Thank you.

Maison pours him a cup, he sips it then continues -

Citan: You mentioned you had plans. Why have you not put them into action?

Maison: With Miss Margie imprisoned, we dare not do anything.

Citan: She would not happen to be (pauses) Nisan's . . .?

Maison: You are well informed, my dear doctor. She is the Great Mother Marguerite of Nisan . . . (pauses) and the young master's cousin, as well.

Citan: Why would Shakhan take her captive?

Maison: For the 'Fatima Jasper'!

Citan: The Fatima Jasper that is said to show where great treasure is?

Maison: (turning around in surprise)
My, good Doctor! You do know an awful lot. I am most impressed.

Maison moves over to pour Fei more tea, sees his cup is untouched- "!" and asks -

Maison: You do not like my tea, Master Fei?

Fei: No . . .I'm just not thirsty now!

Maison: (turns to Citan) Well, we have no idea what the great treasure actually is . . .
But it is said to be strong enough to save our kingdom if it is ever in plight!

Citan: And Marguerite has the Jasper that tells the location?

Maison: Only half of it, to be precise. The young master and Miss Margie each have half. Only by combining the two halves will anyone know where the treasure is.

Citan: What exactly is the Fatima Jasper? When you say a half of the Jasper, I imagine some kind of necklace . . .

Maison: Only the heirs to Aveh and Nisan know what it really looks like.

Citan: I see. (pause) So that is why they have her locked up. My guess is that when they do find out, her chances of living are not . . .

Maison turns, walks away towards the far wall once more. Citan calls out -

Citan: Ah, I apologize. I simply, I mean . . .I was only supposing the worst case.
(pauses) So please do not take it to heart . . .

Maison: (still turned) No, that is a terribly realistic scenario.

Citan: . . .(pauses) Ahem. What exactly do you mean by great treasure . . .?

Maison turns back around, saying -

Maison: Well, I haven't the foggiest . . .

"The Gear . . .! He means the Gear! It has to be it!"

They hear the dining hall door swish open. Bart makes his way up the steps towards their table, facing Citan and Fei as Maison asks -

Maison: Young master . . .are the Gears alright?

Bart: (turns to Maison) Yeah . . .Even though they were sealed, sand's gotten into the joints. It's a pain in the neck to fix, so I'm having the crew take care of it now. My job is just to pilot them anyway. Besides, I'm bad with machines, so I'd just get in the way.

Bart turns to the sound of Maison's voice as he says, "Young master . . ." Maison pours him a cup of tea as Bart looks at all of them and says -

Bart: Anyway . . .What were we talking about?

Maison turns to look at Bart, is silent. Citan says -

Citan: Whether the great treasure could be a . . .Gear?

Bart: (turns to Citan) Oh, yeah. You know, something like that is drawn in one of the Aveh picture scrolls.

Citan: Picture scrolls?

Bart turns around for a moment, " . . ." then he turns back around, saying -

Bart: Well, if you're interested (pause) then let's go to the planning room . . .I'll show you what I mean . . . since you're my special guests.

Citan: That sounds interesting.

Bart leaves, Citan following. Fei slowly gets up from his seat. He talks to Maison,who says -

Maison: Master Fei, please relax.

Fei goes out into the hall, passes the lift and goes to the door opposite the dining hall. Sig stands off to the right, working at a console and the room bustles with activity. Several operators are hard at work and the room is full of the sounds of machinery. Citan says -

Citan: This place is incredible! They probably do not even have equipment like this in the capital.

Bart: (turns, smiling) Heh heh. Surprised? All this technology is thanks to Sig.

Bart walks down to the recessed floor below, the others following. Bart walks to the other side, turns, and says -

Bart: Hey, Fei! Don't stand on the screen. We won't be able to see!

Fei moves off, Bart turns to the machine operators working above, calls out -

Bart: Alright men! Display my special file on the main screen.

The three watch as an apparatus slowly descends from the ceiling. Then, the screen below lights up with a picture . . .

Citan: What is this . .?

Bart: A picture scroll, nearly 500 years old. This is King Fatima I . . . 'body cloaked in flames making a blood oath with giants'. They say he used the strength of the giants to found Aveh.

Citan: It is amazing that such an ancient scroll exists . . .and in such good state too! I thought the 'Ethos' controlled all such things as these . . .

Bart: Normally, yes. But this was one of my father's prized possessions.

Bart: (turns to operators) Next!

Bart: After founding the country, Fatima forced the giants into slumber . . . . . to protect his Kingdom's people if needed in the future. (pause) But we don't know where they are hidden. In another record, one of the giants is called the 'Great Fatima Treaure'.

Citan: What about the 'Jasper"?

Bart: Hey . . .(pause) you sure know a lot. Perhaps you're one of Shakhan's spies?

Citan: Of course not. It is only an intellectual interest.

Bart: Just kidding. It appears the Jasper is the key to finding our treasure.

Citan: A Key . . .(turns to Fei) Could that be what Shakhan is looking for?

Bart: Not just him. Gebler is also looking for it.

Citan: Really? Then we must rescue Marguerite as soon as possible.

Bart: You're telling me!

He turns from Citan and Fei, then walks away toward the far wall. He asks -

Bart: Since we helped you . . .(pause) I was wondering if I could, in turn, ask you a favor?

Citan: Would that be . . .for us to help you rescue her . . .?

Bart turns back around, facing him once more as he exclaims -

Bart: Bright boy! That's exactly it.

Bart: I heard from Sigurd . . . it seems that both Aveh and Kislev are after you! So we can help you and you can help us . . .(pauses) How about it? It's not much to ask.

Citan: Well, if it pays for my room and board then I will help in any way I can . . .

He turns to Fei, asking -

Citan: What do you think, Fei? You have not said anything for a while . . .

Bart: Yeah. You were great back there in that stalactite cavern. Your strength alone is greater than ten or twenty of Shakhan's guards.

Fei turns his back

Fei: . . .

Bart approaches him, saying -

Bart: I'd love to have your power on my side!

Fei: Why does everyone want to make me fight?

Bart: H, huh . . .(pause) What's wrong with you all of a sudden?

Citan: Fei? (softly said)

Fei: (moves up stairs towards door) I just don't feel like it! 'Love to have my power'? I don't have any! What's wrong with you , doc, everyone . . . You're driving me to the brink. Then there's that Gear . . .Grahf and my father . . .I don't have the time to help you out with your problems when I've got enough of my own!!

Fei stalks out the door, Bart turns to Citan, asking -

Bart: What's with him? Is he always that short-tempered?

Citan: (walks towards Bart) No, that is not it . . .I am sorry. Things have happened so fast that he has not had time to deal with it all yet. Try to understand.

Bart turns around to the door, thinks, " . . . "

Outside, Fei stands in the hall and watches two kids come out of the door on the right. One, a little girl, turns in his direction, saying -

Lg: We're gonna help service Gears now!

Both kids jump up and dow, shouting - "Yeah!!!" The little girl says - "Let's go!" and they both enter the lift, going down below as Fei thinks, " . . .". He goes to the room they have just left, Entering, he sees that it appears to be some sort of 'bunk' room and he talks to the man on the right.

M1: You wanna rest in a place like this? You've gotta be kidding . . .

Fei says maybe later and goes to two people at the table in the center of the room, a medic treating a pirate. The medic says -

Medic: When you are sick, just tell me. I'll give you a big shot and fix you up right away.

Pirate 1: . . .Sigh . . .This injury is so pathetic . . . (pause) I can't let the Master see me like this. (he jumps up) Owww!! Please be more careful.

Medic: Good medicine always tastes bad. Everyone knows that. Next is your shot!

P1: Yipes, you're glaring!

Fei goes down to the right hand side of bunks, talks to a man sitting there

M2: You gotta rest when you can so you can act when you gotta. Knowing when to do what is important.

Fei moves to the left hand side of the bunks, talks to two men playing cards -

C1: I can't seem to get any. (I mean cards, you fool!)

C2: Hey, do you have Margarita's card?

C1: Nope, I don't, but I have Beth's.

Fei climbs a nearby bunk to talk to the man at the top.

M3: We were just one step from peace between Aveh and Kislev. Then, it is said, Bart's father, Edbart IV, was assassinated by Shakhan. (man turns to wall) You won't get away with this, Shakhan!! (turns back to Fei)
He makes my blood boil!

Fei exits and goes down to the planning room once more. Down on the screen, which is darkened, he sees Citan and Sigurd talking quietly. He approaches Citan who says -

Citan: Fei, there is no reason to be mad at Bart. Just forgive him.

Fei turns to Sig who asks -

Sig: What do you want to know?

Fei: Who is Margie?

Sig: Margie is Mother Marguerite of Nisan. But Shakhan of Aveh has locked her up and is looking for the Fatima Jasper now. Bart may not look it, but he's very worried.

Fei: Who is Shakhan?

Sig: Shakhan was the Prime Minister of Aveh. But he is the de facto leader now. His rule is what has put our Aveh in turmoil.

Fei: What's a Fatima Jasper?

Sig: Margie has half of the Fatiam Jasper. Shakhan wants it because it tells the location of the great treasure.

Fei then asks about Nisan

Sig: Nisan is a small, sacred country in the west of Ignas. In its center is a huge cathedral beautifully ornamented. The country was founded by Sophia. She is called the 'Mother of Knowledge' by her followers, the -Kahal-. She was also Nisan's first Mother.

Thinking, Fei goes back up the steps and talks to some of the operators -

O1: 12 years ago Sigurd fled Aveh with the young master. We've been good friends ever since.

O2: I wonder if Margie's alright? I hope she's not hurt? We're only operators but we still worry. We can't do anything. (pauses) . . . Sniff . . .

Subdued, Fei leaves the room, making his way out into the hall and going to the dining hall once more. Entering, he sees a little girl walking in circles, she says -

Girl: Me, I'm waiting for my dad to get back. But I'm not gonna cry! Pretty good, huh?

Fei: That's really good . . .

From behind, a pirate enters, the girl shouts -

Girl: Daddy! (she runs to him and he picks her up in his arms. Setting her down on the floor, he listens to her as she says -)

Girl: Welcome home, Daddy!!

He kneels down, asks -

Pd: There, there. Have you been a good girl by obeying the nice lady? (she jumps up shouting, "Yes!!" she approaches him, asking. -)

Girl: I was good, so . . .where are my presents?

Pd: (standing up) Presents!? Look, here's a pirate dress up kit!!

He gives her a package and she shouts -

Girl: Wow! Thanks dad!!

Fei leaves them to be reunited in peace. Moving over to a lady behind a counter, she says -

Ls: You look tired. Maybe shopping will perk you up. (Even though they're Bart's friends I have to charge them!)

She offers a selection of items which Fei looks over, but he declines, she says -

Ls: If you want anything just let me know.

Fei moves up the steps to the eating area. He sees an elderly lady and a child. Old lady says -

Old Lady: Well now aren't you Fei? Bart dear said he made a 'big strong friend'.

Fei: . . .

Old Lady: Be friends with Bart. He's such a sweet child.

Fei: I know.

Old Lady: I'm counting on you, Fei dear.

The child says, "Hey, Granny." as Fei moves around the tables to two men who are conversing. One of the men turns and sees Fei, saying -

Mc: You from Aveh? Oh, you're not. well I was an Aveh soldier. Aveh's Prime Minister, Shakhan, has so much military clout that he can send us students off to war. I wasn't happy with Shakhan. So I got out of the army and became a pirate. (he turns to wall) I wonder if Francois is doing well at home . . .? (turns back around) What? No! Yuch . . She's not my girlfriend. She's my dog.

Fei moves to the other guy, he says -

P1: Hey, newcomer! Where ya from? Lahan? Don't know it. Hey, I was a Kislev soldier. I didn't like the way they did things in the army so they kicked me out. The young master's got lots of power and ambition, just like me. (pauses) This guy was once an Aveh soldier. You just can't predict destiny, can ya? We used to fight each other but now we're pals sharing a meal together. How about that, eh . . .!? (turns) Speaking of food, I'm hungry . .

Fei goes over to a man standing in front of a model of the Yggdrasil.

M1: This model is really nice. Just look at the detail work . . .Hey Fei! Don't you think this is great?

Fei: It's pretty cool!

M1: It is pretty cool, isn't it? There's a story behind this model. Let me tell you about it . . Twelve years ago, Sigurd took Bart out of Aveh. They stole Aveh's most powerful warship and totally remodeled it. They renamed it the 'Yggdrasil'. This is the Yggdrasil before the improvements. I have it here to remind me of the hopes I had then. (turning, he speaks in a low voice) Heh heh . . .it was worth the work that the first mate and I spent on it.

Fei goes to another man, who sits eating at one of the tables.

M2: Do you know why such a small child is here? She is a war orphan . . .She was found crying in the desert. They brought her here in the Yggdrasil. We must stop the fighting from making any more orphans like her.

On they way back down to the exit, Fei talks to the pirate and his daughter once more.

Pd: Oops . . .I'm so embarrassed. But this is how I am with children . . .

He turns to the girl, saying –

Pd: It's been a long time since we last had fun. Let's play in the sand!

L.g: Dad, this is the desert!

Pd: Wahahahahaha! You got a lot funnier since I saw you last!!

He turns to Fei, Well, see ya!! (he and the girl exit)

Full of thoughts, Fei exits also and sees a door in the far right corner. Making his way around the lift, he sees a sign on the door:

My Room:
Enter and Die'
Bart

Fei decides to grab the lion by the tail . . .he enters, sees a well furnished room. On the table at the far wall, he sees a picture. Looking more closely, he says –

Fei: Who is this picture of? A little boy and girl . . .

He moves over to the bed, accidentally bumping the alarm-clock which rings very loudly. Fei winces, heading for the door. Before he can leave, the door opens and he bolts to the corner, ducking out of sight as Bart enters. Bart goes over to the table with the picture. He asks –

Bart: Boy! What's up with this Fei guy? I try and become his friend and he suddenly explodes in anger . . .
(still unaware that Fei is in the room, he turns to the other wall)
Well, looks like he's got a lot on his mind. I don't want to force him.
But he would be fun to fight . . . (pauses) Maybe I'll ask again.
(he makes his way to the door, saying)
If I lie in wait under the elevator . . .(he exits)

Fei: . . .

Fei waits until the coast is clear, then he leaves and makes his way over to the lift. It takes him back down to the dock where Yggdrasil is still being serviced and refueled. Fei steps onto the Yggdrasil and Bart comes up out of the hatch below. He asks –

Bart: Can I have a second?

Fei: Sure.

Bart: Citan told me all about your story. Do you want to talk about it?
(pause) Why didn't you tell me? It sounds pretty rough.
(Bart turns, makes his way up to the helm. His back still to Fei, he says -)
Bart: Listen . . .I'm sorry for being a jerk . . .just now . . .(he turns)
Forgive me, will ya?

Fei: (turns) . . .

Bart jumps down from the helm, shouting, "Whoa!!"
He lands on the hatch cover and says –

Bart: Anyway . . .Sorry to bring it up gain, but . . .
There is a pause, then Fei says –

Fei: No!

Bart: (turns around) What?

Fei: I don't like fighting like you do. I only got into that Gear because I had to. I'd rather not ride them. If you want that Gear so much then you can have it! I don't want it!

Bart: You think I like fighting? (pause) . . .Is that it?

Fei: (turns to face Bart) Don't you? Sure looks that way. It looks like the only thing you do enjoy is fighting.

Bart comes down off hatch, saying –

Bart: I can't let that slide. Who likes fighting? Take it back. Like it or not, I fight because I have to. I got my reasons, but (pause) you wouldn't understand.

Fei approaches Bart, saying –

Fei: Well I don't have a reason to fight! I don't want to fight. I just want to live in peace and quiet. But you people keep on hounding me to get into a Gear? Why don't you just leave me alone!?

Bart comes over to Fei, saying –

Bart: It's because I see your skill (pause) and think . . .

Fei: Well I hate it! Whenever I get in a Gear people get hurt. If I fight, people die. I don't want to hurt people! I don't want anyone to die! I hate it . . .(pauses) can't you see that?

Bart and Fei stare down one another silently, then Bart walks off to the side, facing away from Fei as he says –

Bart: Yeah, I know the feeling (pause) of just wanting to run away from reality. But do you think the kids left behind in your village would understand?

Fei: . . .

Bart walks around to stand in front of Fei, he continues –

Bart: Citan told me what happened in Lahan. Would it have been better if you had done nothing? Sure, that happened because you were in the Gear. But even if you hadn't, people would have died . . .Right? You weren't the reason. War . . .no, the people who started the war are the reason. And unless you get rid of the reason, nothing will change. I fight to get rid of the reason . . .Right now there is no other way so I have to fight. But that doesn't mean I enjoy it.

Bart walks to the edge of the lift. His back turned to Fei, he says –

Bart: I understand why you would feel guilt toward the kids in your village. And I know why you don't want to harm others. But if you want to make it up to those children, don't you have to fight?
(Bart turns to face Fei's back once more, saying -)

Bart: You do have a reason to fight. (pause) A reason you must fight. But as long as you ignore it and continue to run away, those kids will never forgive you. (pauses)
Just remember that.

Bart thinks for a moment, then says –

Bart: And another thing, I'm not saying that not helping me is running away. You don't have to help. This is my own problem. I don't wanna get you in this against your will. But, if I had your skill I could bring all of this to an end . . .And make it up to those kids. (pause) At least that's what I think . . .

Bart leaves, walking around the perimeter, calling over his shoulder –

Bart: Anyway . . .sorry to hold you up. The mechanic wanted to talk to you about your Gear. You probably don't care now, but at least hear what he has to say.

When he is gone, Fei turns and thinks –

Fei: . . .

Full of thoughts, Fei makes his way to the other side of the lift, around the perimeter, where he reads the bulletin on the status of the Yggdrasil. It says: Current supply status >>> 40% He sees a man shouting orders at the men down below, he turns to Fei saying –

Dm: Oh, Fei! You can take the elevator down to the Gear hangar. Why don't you check on Weltall and do whatever maintenance you feel like doing?

Fei goes to the lift, takes it down to the Hangar, sees Weltall and climbs up to the pathway circling the Gear. He talks to the mechanic, who says –

T: Looks like someone really knew how to tune up your Gear . . .Attack, defense, Ether amplification . . . an exceptionally balanced machine. But we don't seem to be able to dismantle some parts to see what they do . . . I guess you could call them . . .black boxes. There are quite a number of them in this machine . . . Do you have any idea what they actually do?

Fei: (slowly) No . . .

Fei walks over to Weltall, he is eye-level with its chest. He studies it, thinks –

Fei: . . .

Off to the right, he hears – "Fei!" turning, he sees Sig and doc approach. He asks –

Fei: Sigurd, doc . . .What's up . . .?

Sig: We would like to have a word with you . . .

Fei: (pauses) Oh, okay!

He follows them up the lift. At the top, Sig looks at each, then walks down the perimeter, Citan and Fei following until he stops midway. Turning, he says –

Sig: Look over there . . .

They all turn and look out towards the edge of the Yggdrasil. Standing there, looking out over the darkness, is Bart.
He speaks quietly-

"Hey, dad . . Can you hear me? Ever since I first looked in Fei's eyes I knew . . .(pause)
He's the same as me. He'd understand me . . .
Or so I thought . . .Did I just imagine it?
I have no confidence. If I follow after you, dad . . .
It'll just be like I'm some decoration.
At the moment, I can't even carry out your will, let alone rescue Margie . . .
I told him he was only running away but (pauses)
I'm really the one who wants to run away . . ."

Back up on the perimeter, the three watch in silence, then Sig says –

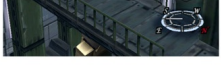
Sig: The young master asked me to apologize to you. Pretty strange, huh? He knows it's best to apologize in person . . .But the young master isn't all that good at this sort of thing . . (still looking out at Bart, Citan looks over at him) He may not look it, but he's really quite lonely . . .He's always searching for a friend. We, his minders, can't become his friends. Even if we wanted to, he just wouldn't see us that way. He knows that. Why you ask? It's because of the burden that he bears. It must be difficult for one so young to carry so heavy a responsibility. But he does try to do his best, you know? That is why we stick by him . . . It has nothing to do with him being the prince.
(Sig approaches Fei) Fei, I sense you too are carrying a heavy burden. This might be a selfish request, but . . would it be possible for you to help the young master? I'm not asking you to burden yourself with his problems or responsibilities. But could you two . . .with whatever it is only you two each know, help the other? Please . . .

Fei turns his back for a moment, saying –

Fei: I'm sorry . . . I need time to think.

Sig: Of course . . .take your time. It is completely up to you. Whatever you decide, we will be leaving early tomorrow morning. After you've finished preparing for tomorrow, you probably should get some rest. You can use the bedroom in the residential area above.

Citan: I wish to speak to Sigurd some more . . . so you go ahead and get some rest.



Citan and Sigurd move off down the perimeter, Fei turns, thinks, "…" as he looks out at Bart once more. Then he makes his way back to the lift down to the Gear Hangar to look at Weltall and clear his head a little. Once down there, he explores the Hangar, seeing a new Gear . . .he approaches the tech nearby, asking about it -
Tch: This Gear is called Heimdahl. It was excavated together with Brigandier. But we could never get it to run very well. Three test pilots were injured in trying. I guess no one can tame it.

In the next hangar, Fei sees Bart's Gear Brigandier. He asks the tech about it –

T2: Brigandier is a star of hope for us pirates. The bright red body-color represents Bart's ambition. But since Bart always overdoes things, maintenance is a pain.

At the next hangar, Fei sees a red soldier Gear. He asks the tech about it –

T3: This is a mass produced model based on Bart's Brigandier, that's simplified to reduce costs. If you tune them up they're pretty good. That's when we can really show our skills.

Fei decides to return to the perimeter, he sees the bulletin reads: Current supply status >>>60% He goes up the next lift to the hideout, making his way to the bunk room. Entering, he decides to go to sleep –

Fei: I'm . . .so very . .tired . . .(sleeps)

Scene cuts tothe inside of the hideout's landing bay. A drill shakes the picture, then the lens moves up to view more of the bay, swiveling from side to side. A meaty, blue haired man named Broyer, says –

Broyer: Confirmed! It's their base, alright.

Helmholz: That rock was easy to break through. I thought it would be a little harder . . .

Stratski: These surface-dwelling –Lambs- sure live in a nice place . . .

Renk: Look at that . . .! They built this place far better than the facilities at Bledavik. It's probably a hidden fort built when their old king was still around . . .

The scene changes as the floor rises up to meet them, a sound of engines firing as they land

Vance: Who cares . . .? Let's just get this over and done with!

Blue camera lens pans to the left, Stratski says –

Stratski: Over here?

Helmholtz: To the right! There's a hangar!

Pans to the right, Stratski says, "!!" They see the hangar and pound over there, panning to view the soldier Gears.

Vance: found them!!

Helholtz: These are 'Deurmods'. They're standard pirate Gears.

They back out, more pounding, Vance says –

Vance: Ha! Ignore those! We can take them out last.

Stratski: Why not take a few? Even if we only got those, it was worth sneaking in.

Renk: Alright! Schpariel is now in place at the back! Get ready to take out anything that gets in our way!

Stratski: OK over here!

Helmholtz: Prep complete!!

Broyer: Anytime is fine!

The camera backs off, Renk says – "GO!!"

The sound of engines revved as they speed towards wall, then a bright white light . . .huge explosion. Fei wakes up as everyone rushes around, the floor shaking, he hears, "What was that crash?" Sirens begin to blare, he hears an announcement, "Gears have entered the Yggdrasil's dock! 5 Gebler special force Gears, and one single unidentified large Gear. All pilots report to the Gear Hangar!" Fei rushes out, goes down lif explosions come as he reaches the bottom. Then, another announcement, "All noncombatants, go to the Yggdrasil! Immediately!" Fei watches as people run for cover, children screaming, "Wahhh, I'm scared!!" Fei walks off the lift, more explosions rock the place, he goes up to the helm, hears, "Fei!!" He turns and sees Citan on the perimeter near the lift leading to the Gear Hangar.

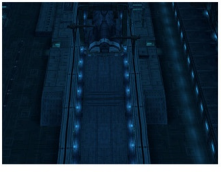
Citan: Fei! Quick! Get to Weltall now!!

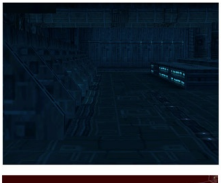
Fei turns his back

Citan: Fei!? (he walks forward) Bart and the others are already fighting! Aren't you going to do anything? (pause) Do you still think it has nothing to do with you?

Fei says nothing, his back still turned –

Citan: . . .(then goes to lift, disappearing below





Fei: I . .(pause) I . . .What am I?

He is oblivious to the explosions, says -

Fei: That old man . . .he called me . . .the slayer of god . . .

Fei stares off into space, says –

Fei: I don't want that kind of power . . .
(he leans on helm, thinks -)
My strength . . .(lets hands drop from helm)
My . . .home . . .

A white light envelops all and the scene switches to where Bart is prepped for battle in his Gear with two soldier Gears. He says –

Bart: How many Gears are there!?! I think I took out most of the small fry, but . . .!

O1: There are at least four, maybe five of them left! Their performance and technique is far greater than any of the ones we faced before!
O1: Young master!! They're approaching!!

Bart: Dammit!!

Bart and the two officers battle the Gear called Swordknight. They win after a few rounds.

Meanwhile, in another part of the Gear dock-

Citan: Maison, does this Gear work?

Maison: Pardon? Yes, it works but . . .

Citan: Alright!
(runs to the side, Maison calls after him -)

Maison: Out of the question! It is still under maintenance.

Citan appears on the pathway surrounding Heimadahl as Maison continues –

Maison: It is nowhere near operational . . .
(Citan disappears behind the Gear)

Sigurd appears from the right, says –

Sig: It's alright, Maison.

Maison turns, says –

Maison: Master Sigurd! But, for a gent like the good doctor . . .?

Sig turns to look at Heimdahl, says –

Sig: It's fine. He'll be okay. It may not even be enough for him.

Maison: Master Sigurd . . .?

Both men watch as the restraints rise, freeing Heimdahl. Citan says –

Citan: Well . . .It has been 5 years since I last fought . . .I hope I can still remember . . .

Fires up Heimdahl, gets ready to fight, says –

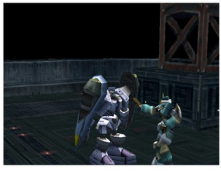
Citan: Oh, a wild stallion, eh? Well then, it is high time someone broke you in . . .

He faces an enemy Gear, Broyer, who shouts, "Eeeaaarrrggghhh!!"

Citan: Reinforcements!?

(lands in a few blows, the new Gear is powerful!)

Broyer: H,hey, that hurts!!



Citan: Compared to the pain my friends are going through, yours is nothing . . .!! I cannot allow people like you to persist in tormenting those who cannot fight back. I will take you on in their place. (pause) Come on!

Broyer: ?? (pause) What are you talking about!?

Citan responds with his 'fists'! The Aegisknight gives up, flies off. Citan pauses, says -

Citan: I know I am a little rusty . . . There is a limit to what I can learn seeing as I started so late in life. Even so, I hit that guy hard and he did not go down. They must be using 'that stuff'.

Citan calls over to Bart -

Citan: Young one! They are using -Drive-! They are battle enhancement drugs. Normal attacks will not hurt them!

Bart: Are you serious? So that's how they keep at it, huh? Crap . . .This'll never end!
They see they are surrounded, Citan calls -

Citan: Fei!!

Bart: It's okay! We'll get by without him!

They face two enemies, They win quickly, waiting for the next wave.

Meanwhile, in another section, two kids run in terror, they see a huge Gear overhead, one says -

"Sis . . .!!"
They look up, frozen in fear.
Vance is in the Gear and he says -

Vance: Where do you think you're going?

Child: St,stop it . . .

Vance: How admirable. Now what kind of sound will you make when I do this? . . .
(he reaches forward, the kids scream, then he is suddenly upended from behind. He says, "Wha!?" Righting himself, he sees -)

A black Gear! A voice asks him over the intercom -

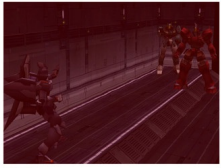
Fei: Why are you fighting?

Vance: You, what are you doing!?

He sees that Fei is battle-ready!

Fei: What does fighting get you? What if this was your home!?

Fei begins the battle, fights! Clawknight goes down. Fei turns, sees Bart and Citan.



Citan: Fei!!

Bart: I knew you'd come round!!

Fei: We'll talk later! We've big trouble coming down on us now!

Later in the Gear Hangar, Citan, Bart, Sig and Fei stand in front of Weltall who is safely ensconced once more. Bart stares out over the railing at the Hangar, says -

Bart: . . .Th, th, thank . . .
(turns to face Fei) Thanks . . .Fei.

walks off toward the exit. Fei turns, calls out -

Fei: Bart . . .

Sig: Thank you, Fei. Don't know how we could have done it without you.

Fei: (bows head) I . . .still don't know what I should do.

Sig: Fei . . .

Fei: (lifts head) What Bart's doing isn't for his own gain. He walks the path he believes in, one step at a time . . . . . .wishing only for the happiness of those around him. I, on the other hand . . .

Sig: . . .

Fei: I thought I didn't have a path that I could take laid out before me. But like he said, that's just running away. I must find my own path. Right, doc?

Citan nods, Fei turns to Sig, says -

Fei: If Bart wishes, I'll cooperate with you guys. That's all I can do now. But I think I'll find the path I should follow as I help others like you. Moreover, I can't turn my back and ignore what such a terrible group of people are doing to others.

Sig: Thanks Fei.

Later . . .

Maison: We must infiltrate Aveh and rescue Margie now! Gebler has discovered this base. So we should leave a small garrison and evacuate while we still can. Fortunately, the Yggdrasil is undamaged, so we are able to evacuate immediately. The crew's preparations are complete. Whenever you are ready, Master Fei and good Doctor, please accompany the young master to the bridge.

Maison turns to go down the hatch, faces Citan and Fei once more, saying -

Maison: Doctor Uzuki, Master Fei, I thank you from the bottom of my heart. I would truly appreciate it if you would be so kind as to stay with us and help us out on our rescue mission!

Bart jumps up and down, exclaiming -

Bart: Hey, alright, alright. Let me say goodbye to the women before we go.

Maison goes down the hatch, the three men make their way back up the lift into the hideout once more. In the planning room, the operators wish them well.

O1: We'll forward the latest info. on to the Yggdrasil. Good luck rescuing Margie!

O2: We are praying for a successful rescue.

O3: Good luck!

They make their way to the dining hall. A few people remain. Up in the eating area, the old lady says -

Old Lady: Oh! Fei dear! I believed in you. You said you'd help Bart. And thanks from me too.
(she turns to Bart) Bart, dear, you don't find many friends like this! So you'd better be nice to him, now!

Bart: (turns to old lady) Yeah. the next time I come back here, it'll be with Margie . . . So I'll be expecting you to make something good.

Old Lady: Alright dear, you just leave it to Granny!

The little girl jumps up and down exclaiming -

Lg: Fei dear, . . .thanks.

They walk to the other side, see the man with the model of the Yggdrasil

M1: In that earlier commotion, my model got broken . . .

Bart: Are you still here? Get going!

They go back down towards the exit, talk to the lady behind the counter -

Sl: I hear you all did a good job in protecting us . . .I'm sorry I can't give you a break, but I just can't.

They buy a few things, and turn to go. She says -

Sl: Come back when you rescue little Margie! Good luck, Bart dear!

Bart: Got it! Hold down the fort for us now!

They go back down to the Yggdrasil, go to the bridge. They approach the helmsman near Sig who says -

Bingo: Yahoo! He'll let me be apprentice helmsman! My name is Bingo, the apprentice helmsman. Sigurd has been teaching me how to operate the Yggdrasil! Do you want to see my notes?

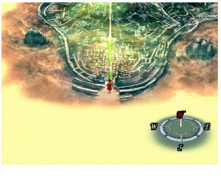
They agree and he informs them of the mechanics of operating the Yggdrasil and the other 'perks'. They go over to Sig, who says -

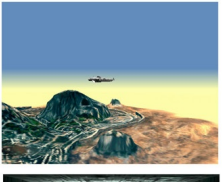
Sig: It's time to sneak into Aveh at last. First of all, our party should inspect the town and work out a plan of action. Currently anchored at the hideout . . .

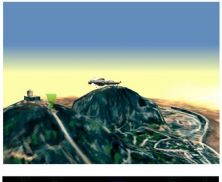
They choose to leave the hideout. They make their way to Aveh, leaving the Yggdrasil when they come close to the city so they can approach on foot.

Aveh

Off in the distance as Fei and the others approach, is a bustling city out in the middle of the desert. The two mountains appear to be twin azure jewels offset by the golden radiance of the sands. As they get closer, the sounds of revelry, singing and the babble of many voices at once touches their ears. The come towards the entrance and notice a huge ship fly slowly past the larger mountain. It descends to an opening on the other side of town.







O1: Docking complete.
O2: Hull, all sections secure.
O3: Gravity distribution normal. Shutting down propulsion system.
O4: Begin docking procedure.

Ramsus: Cancel the alert status. Begin repairs and resupply immediately.

Miang: The Prime Minister and General Vanderkaum are here to see you, Commander.

Ramsus: Hmph, what a dismal welcome.

Miang: What do you expect? We're on the 'surface'.

Ramsus: (turns to Miang) Miang, let's disembark.

Miang: Yes, sir.

They both make their way to the exit. Scene changes to the huge landing bay as they walk across a narrow stretch of metal above the bay. They approach the welcoming party. A man in a red robe walks towards them as they approach, saying -

Shakhan: Well, well, Commander. You've only just taken control and already you are achieving splendid results. You dispatched those irksome Kislev units in a matter of days . . . I'm very impressed.

He is ignored by Ramsus who approaches the other man standing behind him, saying -

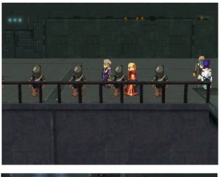
Ramsus: I can't believe you were beaten by such a small force . . .I have only just taken over my post and already you have embarrassed me!

Vanderkaum: I am sorry Commander. They were more persistent than we anticipated. They had a new model Gear that was very mobile. I couldn't get a lock on it with the main gun . . . Otherwise there would have been no way we could have been beaten by such . . .

Ramsus: Fool! Know when to use that big gun, and on whom! You failed because you try to solve everything with force. You have muscles instead of brains.

Vanderkaum: Commander!!

Ramsus: Dismissed. Go polish your beloved 1200 sem cannon.



Ramsus and Shakhan begin to walk away towards the left, Miang remains behind a second to talk to Vanderkaum. Shakhan says -

Shakhan: Tomorrow is the 500th anniversary of this country. Please come to the dedication ceremony.

There is a silence, Shakhan continues -

Shakhan: There is a customary Tournament after the dedication ceremony . . .

Ramsus: What about the incident in that report?

Shakhan: What? Oh, you mean the 500-year-old mobile weapon excavated from the ruins?

As they approach two large double doors, Shakhan continues -

Shakhan: Thanks to the help of the 'Ethos', the repairs are complete. (the three enter the doors) I thought we could announce it on the day of the dedication ceremony . . .

Ramsus: Toys like that should be given to Vanderkaum. I'm talking about the 'Fatima Jasper'.
(They arrive at the next set of doors at the end, enter, and Shakhan says -)

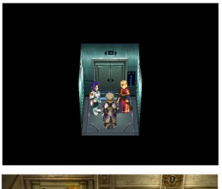
Shakhan: I already have obtained one half of the crest. But I haven't been able to get her to tell me where the other half is. She is a rather strong-willed girl . . .

In the lift, Ramsus turns to Shakhan and asks -

Ramsus: You're not being rough with her, are you?

Shakhan: Of course not. I know how you despise vulgar acts like that.

Ramsus: You said the girl is the holy Mother of Nisan . . .(pauses) Is she upstairs?



Ramsus: Miang, could it possibly be a 'Relic'?

Shakhan: Yes, in the east tower.

Miang: Yes. But there is still no response. There seems to be a barrier or something. However, we do know from the 500-year-old records that one certainly exists in this vicinity. It's probably well preserved too.

Ramsus: . . .Let's meet her. I want to talk to her directly.
Miang, you come with me.

Miang: Yes sir.

The doors open and they step out, following Shakhan as he makes his way down a hall to a door on the right.

Shakhan: Open the door. Commander Ramsus is here to see her.
(door opened by guard, Shakhan turns to Ramsus)
Commander, please.

Ramsus and Miang enter, they see a young girl over by the bed near the window. The girl has auburn, brown hair and bright blue eyes.
She asks -

Girl: Who are you?

Ramsus and Miang enter the room, Ramsus answers the girl's question as she gives a start upon seeing them.

Ramsus: I am Ramsus, she is Miang. We would like to ask you some questions.

Margie: I'm Margie. Actually it's Marguerite. What do you want to know? My favorite food? I like cake, Chiffon Nisan is my favorite. I haven't had it in so long . . .

Ramsus: Marguerite, we want to ask you about the Fatima family treasure . . . I'm talking about the 'Fatima Jasper'. You see, I'm keeping the piece you had in a safe place. But I don't know where the other piece is. Do you?

Margie: Nope. The one I had you took from me. You didn't even give me anything for it. Hey, the next time you come, could you bring some Chiffon Nisan? I used to eat it every day in Nisan. I don't think they make it here in Aveh. Aveh used to have such good bakers, but I guess they must have all died in the war.

Ramsus: That is too bad. I don't know much about cake, but I'll see if I can find some for you next time.

Margie: Thank you Ramsus. I'll be waiting.

Ramsus: Is there anything else you need? If there's something you want I'll bring it next time.

Margie: No. I just want to go back to Nisan. They must be worried about me.

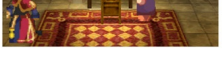
Ramsus: I'm sorry but please wait a little longer. We want you to stay here until we find the other half of the 'Fatima Jasper'.

Scene changes to a screen in which the three are depicted as they converse. The camera pulls back as Shakhan's voice says -

Shakhan: I'm amazed she talked that much.
He can handle woman as well as he says.

Pr: Is it all right?

A picture is lowered over the screen, hiding it from view. Now, it appears to be only a dressing table. Shakhan responds -



Shakhan: I can't prevent them from meeting her. Not when it's him we are talking about . . . (Shakhan walks to the side, turns to face the other man, says -) Besides, Marguerite isn't talking anyway. So there's no need to worry . . .(he paces) But where did the leak about the Jasper come from . . .? . . .The 'Ethos'? Ridiculous . . .! Hmmm, if this continues my plans will be . . .(stops) We had better find out who is leaking out information immediately.
In the meantime, we'll have to administer some truth serum to our guest, Miss Marguerite. We must find the other piece of the 'Fatima Jasper' as quickly as we can.
(turns to the other man)

Pr: But . . .

Shakhan: However spineless the last commander, Vanderkaum, was . . . . . .this time Gebler has sent their highest commanding officer. His country is throwing all their weight into this. And, there is nothing we can do about it!

Scene fades to Fei, Bart and Citan as they enter Bledavik. They pause for a moment, looking down the main avenue which is thronged with pedestrians. Shopping, looting and other activities all go on in the chaos. They walk forward and a woman confronts them -

L1: Welcome to Bledavik! We're having a festival celebrating the founding of our country, Aveh. There's a martial arts tournament too. It's been a while since we have had so many visitors. (she recommends a hotel, saying they may use her name to get a discount.

They make their way through the crowded street to a ledge which leads to the residential area of the town. They enter the door of the hotel the woman had indicated. Citan says-

Citan: Let us borrow a room here for our planning session.

(a lady approaches, saying-)

Lady: Ah . . .Excuse me but . . .(looks at Bart)
Aren't you Prince Bartholomew?

Bart: . . .And you are?

Lady: I was sent here by the Nisan Sect. (pauses) I'm here to check up on Mother Marguerite. Prince Bartholomew, I knew you would come sooner or later . .

Citan: Well, (pauses) let us not just stand here chatting. Shall we use a room?

Lady: You must be tired. I'll be in my room, please come by later. (she indicates her room at the end of the upstairs balcony on the right)

She leaves and the men follow to the second floor. tThey reach the door of the lady's room. They enter and she says to Bart -

Lady: Excuse me but who are they . . .

Bart: Oh, this is Fei and Citan. They're going to help rescue Margie.

Lady: Thank you for coming here in this desert heat. I am a servant of the Nisan Sect. Ever since Shakhan took Mother Marguerite I've been looking into ways to get her back. I've been trying to find out where she is being held. I've been busy listening to workers talk about the comings and goings from the castle . . .And giving food to the guards who are preparing for the tournament to loosen their lips too. Finally yesterday, I got some information . . .Margie's in the citadel. The problem is how to slip into the castle . . .I thought about it a lot but it looks pretty bleak. I'm sorry.

Bart: No big deal. At least we know where she is now. You just relax, we'll find a way to slip into the castle.

Lady: My apologies. If there is anything else I can do to help just ask . . .Do you have any good leads?

Bart: Not yet. We're gonna hit the streets for info. now. Then we'll think about the rest later.

Lady: I see. I'm very relived that you are all here. Please come see me again if you hear anything new.

The three leave, looking around the hotel before they go outside to the street once more. They meet a man in one of the occupied bedrooms who says-

M1: I came from far away when I heard about the festival. But this town's so uptight! Everyone looks at outsiders like me so suspiciously! It was getting to me, so I shut myself up in my hotel room. But, now this tiny room is starting to get to me too.

They go outside and down to one of the street vendor's booths and talk to a customer.

C1: Oh no, you raised the prices again . . . (turns to store owner) Hey, give me a deal.

S1: I'm sorry. The army just comes and confiscates whatever it wants. So I'm a little short of stock.

C1: I hope this war ends soon.

The three men make their way through the crowds of people. Children shout at one another as vendors hawk their wares, their voices mingling with the light music and tambourines in the distance. Fei, Bart and Citan talk to an elderly lady vendor who says -

Ov: Wanna buy a radish? They're from Lahan, the hottest you can find. You'll be spitting fire. Try one. (they buy one) Thanks. (he walks away, comes back) Hey! Don't burn yourself breathing fire.

They move on, bumping into an elderly man on the street, who says –

Old man: Huh?! (he comes closer, looks at Bart and says) Hmm, who was that? (pause) I forgot . . .(pause) Oh yeah! I remember! Prince Bartholomew?

Bart: Hey, that's pretty good, grandpa!

The old man turns for a moment, says –

Oldm: My, how you've grown . . .Your Highness probably doesn't remember me, but I used to work in the castle kitchen. You would always come in and taste everything. You used to dress up and say, 'I'm a pirate! Give me your food!' . . . Ah, the good old days . . .

They talk to the old man some more, and he says –

Oldm: Life's been hard since the old king died. Not that an old man like me has much longer to worry about that . . . But my children and grandchildren are still young. I wonder if it'll ever get any better?

The three make their way to the lady behind him, she owns the store front. She asks –

L1: Are you all here for the Tournament? (they ask "Huh?" and she responds) What, you don't know? It's only the biggest martial arts tournament in the world! I came all the way to Bledavik just to see it. You'll be sorry if you don't go.

They go across, see a lady selling berries and run into an elderly lady who says –

OL2: Whew, keeping up with my granddaughter is tough.

The child hurries by shouting –

Lg1: Grandma, hurry hurry! Finish shopping so we can go to the festival.

They move on down the line, see buyers and sellers of all types, children playing games. They see a little girl standing alone, she says, "Get off my back, I'm looking!" and the three watch as she waits for the store owner's back to be turned. Then, a whispered 'Hurry' from the shadows gets her scrambling to lift an item. While Fei talks to the storekeeper about the Festival, she turns just in time, shouting – "Hey, you!" she goes over to the girl and says, " Show me what you're hiding! Give it back now and I won't tell your folks." The girl responds, "What are you talking about, lady? I'm not hiding anything! Do you wanna see?" she spins, holding out her skirts. The shopkeeper says, "That's strange . . ." The girl jumps over to a nearby stairwell, says –

Lg2: You can't accuse people without proof! C'mon lady! (she goes up the stairs)

Fei and the others follow her up the narrow stairwell, emerging out onto a roof. There are a few kids here. A little boy asks –

Lb1: We're playing hide-and-seek. You wanna play?

They agree, the kid says –

Lb1: When you leave, I'll hide, the you gotta find me.

Bart snickers. This is going to be easy! Another child, a girl by the wall, says –

Lg2: Hey! Hey, man! Will you feed us?

They agree. She asks –

Lg2: Then lend me 1000G.

Wincing, they agree . . .Who wants to see kids steal food? The children all "!!"

Lg2: Wow, thanks . . .You're really nice man . . .I mean, 'mister'.

Lg1: Thanks for lending me money. I'll stop stealing. The two of us will work hard till dad comes back. (the other girl agrees)

Lg3: I promise I'll return it when my dad comes back.

They leave, going through a doorway which leads into a cheerful kitchen. They talk to the woman who is bent over the stove –

W2: Ever since my oldest son was drafted, I've been so lonely. My younger son is up on the roof looking north. Ahh . . .I hop my boy comes home safely . . He's such a gentle child, I'm worried how he'll make it in the army. He used to arrange the flowers upstairs. but now I make them as I pray for his safety.

They go up the stairs, passing through the flower room to the roof outside. They see the little boy looking north. He says –

Lb1: My brother has gone off to fight . . .to the north, by the border. (pauses) I pray every day that he will return home safe . . . . . .And that he'll beat up lots of Kislev guys too! When I get older, I wanna be a Gear pilot and shoot Kislev guys too. If we don't fight they'll take over and kill or make slave of everyone. Right?

They decide to level with him, saying, "Not really."

Lb1: Those Kislev guys are real bad! (pause) And . . .They killed my dad. I hafta get 'em.

Subdued, they go back across the roof and make their way over a narrow strip to a balcony where there are tables laid out for a meal. They enter nearby and find themselves in a posh restaurant. Everything is neat and clean and they notice a huge aquarium on the wall. They talk to the waiter nearby who is looking in it –

Wf: Fish are pretty. I could watch them all day.

They respond, "You said it!"

Wf: I thought I'd go to the sea after the war. (pauses) I don't mean the sea of sand either. Just water, spreading on forever like a desert . . .A sea of water full of pretty fish.

They move over to a nearby table and talk to some customers –

C2: Even my good for nothin' kid gives me less to worry about than this wacky world . . .

The man across from her says –

C3: All the young men in town have been drafted. They wouldn't take me because I'm an alcoholic.

The three go down a fight of steps to a bar. They see two soldiers, one says –

S1: Hey! (pauses) Who d'ya think made it so you can enjoy this festival in peace? Soldiers! It's 'cause we're out there risking our lives. Did you know that?

The barkeep calls over –

Bk: I'm sorry, all his friends were killed in the battle at the ruins. He's a little wild. Forgive him.

They talk to the other soldier who says –

S2: We're fighting to the end. This isn't for peace or justice or for the government, it's for my fallen comrades.

They exit, going out on the ledge to another door. Entering, they see two men talking over by the far wall.

M1: . . .That makes 5 mining Gears and 10 miners. And make it quick! I need some miners without families. (he is asked why) Well . . .(pauses) When guys with families get killed on a dangerous job, I have to pay compensation to the families. It's a real pain. So that's it. (pause) If you find some tell me. I'm counting on you.

The man finishes speaking, the other man in a red robe leaves barking at Fei to get out of his way. They go talk to the other man. He says –

M2: Since the war started you can really tell who is stupid and isn't. The stupid ones have been forced out of business. But if you change your view, war can be good business. When there aren't enough people or goods, you can sell at a higher price.

Duly 'instructed', they go up the stairs to the right. They enter a bedchamber where two girls are. One older than the other. The little one says –

Lg: My, my sister is getting married to someone named Vanderkaum!

The older girl by the window turns, asking –

Young woman: Stupid! Why would I do that? With that old creep? I'd never be used as a tool for that old fart's business.

They approach the young woman, she says –

Young woman: When will I ever be able to leave this dump!

They go back downstairs, out the door to the ledge running above the street once more. They make their way past the hotel to a building with the 'Ethos' insignia on it. Entering, they talk to a woman who sells them some Gear parts. They go into a door on the right and look down through a glass partition into a workshop which is servicing Gears. They go back out onto the street, crossing over to the other residential area. They run into a line of three little boys who are marching around. The leader says –

B1: Company halt! We are the Raider Boys! Joined together to protect Aveh's peace!

B2: Yeah! B3: Hey! B1: We protect the people of the desert from the steam heads of Kislev.

B2: Yeah! B3: Hey! B1: (looks at them) You're not from Aveh!

The others shout somewhat the same thing, then the leader shouts –

B1: Shut up! I'm the Captain and I'm talkin' here! B3: Yeah, I wanna be Cap'n too!

B2: Don't be bossy! It's not fair, your always Cap'n.

They argue amongst themselves, first boy says –

B1: Shut up! Right, starting tomorrow we'll switch off. That's good?

They yell agreement

B1: Let's return to patrol! Forward (pause) march!

As they leave, one says –

B2: Kislev steam heads! We'll kick their . . . B1: Twist their noses till they come off!

B3: They're Kettle – heads with steam for brains!

Fei and the others decide to go into the weapons shop on the right. They enter and see only a small girl behind the counter.

Sg: This is the weapons shop. I'm helping out while my dad's away in the army. (she offers wares, the look and buy a few things)

They leave, going across to a doorway, entering a storage room. They go to a bedroom, see a girl who says –

G1: My brother is such a child, always playing hide-and-seek. What a laugh. I wonder where he's hiding now?

They move to the next door, enter a shop, the lady offers them armor and they buy a few items. They exit and make their way down the ledge to another door. They enter and an elderly man offers some items for sale. After browsing a bit, they leave and go through a narrow doorway to an enclosed section, a tiny section of blue sky peeking overhead. They go to the door on the left and enter a house full of cats! They speak to the woman, who says –

W1: I must apologize. There are so many cats here it's hard to walk. My daughter collects them.

They hear a voice from behind.

G1: I'm back.
W1: Hi . . . (pauses) Hey, come here!
G1: Wh, what? I'm not hiding anything.
W1: Just come here . . .

The young girl approaches, says –

G1: I did . . .can I go upstairs now?

A cat jumps out of her skirt.

W1: ! That child . . .what did she bring home now?

G1: But . . (pauses) it's so sad. I have no father, but at least I have a mother. This kitty has neither parent . . .I feel lonely cause my dad's not here. But just think how my poor kitty friend feels. So . . .I told her she'll have lots of friends at my house . . .and she just followed me home . . .

W1: . . .Recently they started calling my house the cathouse.

G1: Sorry.

W1: You're gonna have to take care of it.
G1: Okay.

Fei and the others make their way up the stairs to a bedroom full of cats. They go out on a balcony and jump back down to the enclosed area where they run into a little boy who says –

Lb: I wonder . . .where's he hiding?

They go up a short flight of steps to a well and see an old man sitting nearby while an old woman washes clothes.

Wl: I've been doing laundry here for 60 years . . .The water is the only thing that hasn't changed. There's a spring flowing beneath the castle. I was worried that when the king died, the water would stop too, but it didn't. That old guy down there in charge of the water won't budge an inch even for Shakhan.

She turns to the old man, saying –

Wl: Yeah! He's a great guy! My childhood friend.
Old man: It's cool here. (pause) Cool air blows up from the grate.

They move over to look down the grate.

Oldm: No good, no good. You won't open it without the key! Many years ago a child got lost down there. I think it was the kid from the armor store . . .

They walk down, through another aperture and go through a door near the weapons shop. When they enter, an old man sees them –

Oldm: ! (comes forward) . . .hmph . . .I thought my son came back.

The old woman on the bed behind him says –

Oldw: You . . .

Oldm: My son's fighting for the country. He won't be back soon . . . (pauses) It must be a tough job. Yep, I'll bet he's a general by now.

Oldw: sorry, he's gone a little senile . . .You see, our son 'went on holidays' to get out of joining the army. But we haven't heard from him in 10 years . . .

The three men leave and go down in the street looking for the hide-and-seek kid. They find him near the northern exit.

Hk: Ah, you found me. You found me here too. Next time's for real. Huh? You wanna hear about when I went down the well? It's been a while since anyone asked me about that. Everyone wanted to know about it back then . . .Well . . . cough . . .I was still a kid when I hid in there. Actually, I got lost . . .pretty embarrassing! At first, I thought I could follow its current out, but the grill stopped me. So I swam against the current. The speed of the current is always changing so if your timing's off it's really tough. I hear it's the opening and the closing of the flood gate that changes the speed of the current. But if you keep going against the current you'll end up right under the castle. I was scared stiff by the manager guy there . . .(pause) The lid to the well's been locked since then It was a great place to hide, but it's no place for amateurs. Huh? The key? The old guy who is always sitting on the bench by the east well has it.

They make their way back to the old man , who says –

Oldm: The well key? I've got it. I'm in charge of the waterworks association. What are you gonna do with the key?

They answer, 'Rescue Margie'

Oldm: What!? (pauses) You wanna clash with Shakhan? Hah! This is great! This is great! I like you guys. I'll lend you the key. You get that Shakhan for me!

They get the key, decide to look around some more. They leave the business area, go north to Shakhan Square, a tiny park where some of the festivities are going on. People picnic under trees, vendors hawk their wares, children play in the fountain. There are many kinds of people, some drawn from far away lands, including some odd looking ones called demi-humans. They seem to be half animal, half human. They hear one kid ask –

K1: Hey daddy, buy me one of those toys.

D1: No, nope. Wait till the Tournament is over. I'll buy you something better then.

They talk to the kid, who says –

K1: I want the toys in that store . . .I wanna play army.

They move around the square until they see a guy sitting on a carpet, odds-n-ends strewn about him. He asks –

M1: Hey, have you ever seen a flying saucer?

Fei nods, not sure what to expect . . .

M1: Yes, that is the country of the great ancients. They came from a star farther than heaven and created us. They ruled this land as gods. But, man gained knowledge and strife erupted everywhere. The ruins are proof of those struggles. The descendants of the gods fled this land of conflict making their place in the sky. It was a peaceful place, with a civilization far more advanced than ours. . . .Are you listening? They are still alive. Have you noticed that sometimes people disappear? They're taken by what I call Sky People. They are trained as soldiers to rule over the earth again. The time is near. God's army will appear out of nowhere. Haven't you heard? Don't defy them, you can't win. They will make a paradise on earth again. That's what my research has shown about the Sky People and the saucer.

They move on to a woman nearby who says –

W1: Hey, you're not from around here. How do you like Bledavik?

They say they like it –

W1: Well, great. Enjoy the festival.

They talk to a little boy

Lb: I'm going to the Tournament. Fighting is a man's game.

Another woman warns them –

W2: Be careful. There are lots of strange shops at the festival.

They look in briefly at the fortune teller's and malt-liquor shop, then talk to some old men –

Old1: . . .hic . . .It's been a while since I last drank outside.

Old2: Hic! Drinkin' Bartweiser in broad daylight . . .Thash my favorite part of festivals!

They make their way up the north steps when –

Bart: Fei! (Fei pauses, waits) The castle's up ahead. If I go, it'll cause problems. If you're going to go, the two of you should go by yourselves. I'll wait here.

Citan: Fei, what shall we do?

Fei: Let the two of us go.

Bart: Okay, be careful.

Citan and Fei move on up, climb the mountain to Fatima Castle. As they enter the courtyard, a man approaches them, asking –

M1: Yo, dude! Try and pick the champion?

Citan: The champion of what?

M1: Huh? The Champion of the 'Tournament'!

Citan: Do they bet on this 'Tournament'?

M1: What? (pause) What are you talking about? Tournaments ARE gambling! Why do you think people even come here? To bet on who will be champion! Duh!

Citan: Excuse us, we have only just arrived and know nothing of the Tournament.

M1: Oh, tourists, huh? Well let me tell you about the Tournament. Every year they hold a big martial arts tournament here in Aveh. Fighters from all over the world gather to see who's strongest. It's like a big brawl. Everyone goes wild over guessing who'll win. So, wanna give it a try?

Citan: Betting on the Tournament . . .Is that allowed at such a grand event?

M1: You bet. The soldiers are crazy about it. If Kislev attacked tomorrow Aveh would be dust. "!" What are you gonna do? Registration's not over yet, but all the strong ones have signed up. The rest are only after the consolation prizes anyway . . .

Citan: Let us wait and see. Some strong ones might still register.

M1: Ha! What a buncha cowards.

The man leaves, Citan turns to Fei, saying –

Citan: Fei, we can use this to our advantage! If you create a stir at the Tournament, the guards will be watching you rather than their posts. It will make it easy for us to sneak into the castle and rescue Margie. What do you think, Fei? Will you enter the Tournament?

Fei: Who . . .me?

Citan: While you draw the guard's attention the young one can sneak into the castle. Surely you see that it is the only way we will get in? (Fei nods) Right . . .Let us go sign you up. And Fei, do not use your real name, make another suitable one.

Thay make their way around, talking to people

Lb: My cousin's friend is gonna fight in it. pretty cool, huh!

M2: To enter . . .Or not to enter . . .That is the question . . .

A woman by the fence area says –

W1: This is the best place to see the action for free. I'm saving my space now!

M3: Shoot, can't get any decent customers today.

Oldm: I'm ready already . . .What's taking so long?

They move on to the guard blocking the entrance –

G1: You can't go in here. This will be spectator seating tomorrow.

Another guard by the gate says –

G2: If my guy wins . . . (pause) I'm going to the bar and order the most expensive whiskey they have. Then I'm gonna ask that waitress out! I wonder what to get her for a present.

They go to the Registration Booth, the guard there says –

G3: This is the Tournament Registration Booth. (Will they 'enter the Tournament'? Yes -) Please sign in here.

Fei chooses 'Wandering Youth' as his name.

G3: You're the Wandering Youth, right? You are signed up. The Tournament begins tomorrow. Please make sure you are here.

They leave the courtyard, making their way back down the mountain. When they return to the square, they meet Bart who says –

Bart: Well, let's go.

They return to Bledavik, back to their hotel and go to the Lady's room to update her.

Lady: Any new information? Good ideas?

Bart: I just remembered where Bledavik's water supply comes from . . .Spring water rises up from under the castle and flows to the town via a series of underground waterways. We can sneak into the castle by going through these underground waterways. We can get into them from the town's well. The waterways should lead right up to the castle's reservoir. If we are able to get that far, we should be able to sneak into the other rooms of the castle from there.

The others turn to Citan as he says –

Citan: Tomorrow Fei will be in the Tournament at Fatima castle. We will put on a good show to distract the guards. Then Bart will infiltrate the castle through the underground waterways by way of the well. I will accompany Fei to the Tournament. I will also help work the crowd and secure our escape. (pause) Preparations for our plan are complete. Tonight we will stay in the hotel and start out tomorrow. We are free to do what we like for now. Let us have a look around the town.

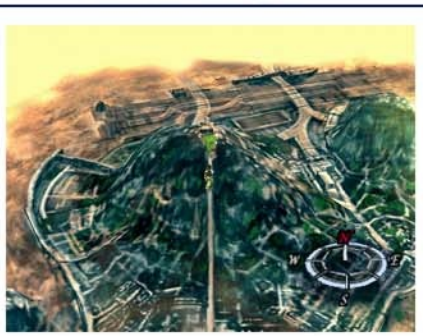
Fei goes to Bart who says –

Bart: Well, I'm all ready so I'm gonna get some sleep. Man, I'm beat. More sightseeing in Aveh?

Fei: Let's rest

Bart: Yeah, tomorrow will be tough for both of us.

Rescue Margie!



The scene opens as, newly rested, they convene once more in the Lady's hotel room. Citan says –

Citan: Good morning. Operation 'Rescue Margie' is now underway! First Fei and I will prepare for the Tournament at the arena. When the Tournament starts, Bart will enter the waterway through the well and head for the castle. If you swim against the current, you should reach the castle. I am certain there will still be some guards there, so please dispose of them quietly. We will make a good show at the Tournament to draw the guards' attention as long as possible. During that time, you can rescue Margie. Any questions? (they shake their heads) Then let us go. Be careful, young one!

Citan and Fei make their way to the exit, leaving Bart behind. They go through the town and up the mountain to the palace. They talk to some people in the courtyard.

M1: Hey, are you gonna fight? Hmm(long pause) . . .I'd say about 20 to 1.
M2: To watch inside . . .Or watch outside . . That is the question.
They go to the fence, see a woman looking through
W1: Oh, hey! Those guys in front are in the way! That gets me so pissed!
The guard at the entrance says –
G1: Participants? Okay, go on through.
They go through to where the ring is set up and talk to some people –
M3: Get ready! It's starting soon!
W2: Hey, are you for Joe too?
M4: Joe's great 'cause he's kinda shady. Kids like you wouldn't understand.
M5: you wanna join Joe's fan club? If you join, you can come to our weekly coffee. We have a dinner show on the second day.
W3: Hey are you fightin'. Give it up. No way you can beat Joe.
G2: Recently the fighter have been boring. It was better when the king was around.
They go around to the side of the ring, talk to some people –

Lb1: I come every year. This is my third time. I only have to see 'em once to know who's the strongest. Are you fighting? You look pretty strong. Um, maybe a semi-finalist. Good luck.
M6: I hate war and fighting. What? Oh I'm writing a book on the folly of mankind.
G3: These martial arts tournaments are okay . . .But what if Gears, not people, fought it out? I'd like to see that.
W4: My son's in it! I hope he doesn't get hurt. (pause) I'm so worried he's going to get hurt.
They make their way over to a cluster of guards, talking –
G4: Who's sarge betting on?
G5: Me I'm for Big Joe.
G4: no way, bad choice. He's all hot air. Believe me, Wiseman's going to win.
G5: Shut up! I was right last time, I'm not gonna listen to you.
G6: Wow! You picked the champ the last time? You musta got something like 50 to 1 . . .
G5: Yep, that's the sarge. He's a man's man.
they go over to an old man

Oldm: I was born and raised in Dazil (pause) but this is my first tournament.
They go around to the left side of the ring. See an old man and a boy who says –
Lb2: Hey, granpa . Let's bet on someone too.
Gp: (turns) No, betting's for losers. I brought you here because I want you to grow up and be a strong man. Strong enough to fight in the Tournament some day.
Lb2: Man, how lame.
M7: Woo-hoo! This is gonna be HOT! I love the sound of folks smackin' each other!
Oldm3: If I was only 10 years younger . . .cough . . .hack . . .I'd whip 'em all . . .cough.
W8: I want to see what kind of fighters came. The best men all joined the army.
W9: I'm for the ones that pay out big. Don't know much about martial arts though. I sure could use a little extra house money.
They go to the entrance to the back. Guard says –

They go to the entrance to the back. Guard says –
G7: Only participants are allowed in here. Your friend will have to sit in the spectator's area.

Citan: (stands before Fei) Well then, I will be over here cheering for you. Do not beat him too soon. The better you do, the easier it will be for Bart to sneak in.
Fei enters and goes into a tent on the left. One man says –
C1: Aren't you nervous? I've had to pee a couple of times already. I have to go again . . again . . . (he leaves)
C2: I am strong . . .I am strong . . .I am strong . . .
Fei turns and sees a familiar face –

Big Joe: Do you know my name?
Fei tells him
Big Joe: That's right . . .I am the one and only . . .'Big Joe'! (he strikes a pose)
Fei goes over to a woman in a corner, she asks –
Cw: Do you think women are weaker than men?

Fei: Not really.
Cw: You're just saying that to impress me.
Fei leaves and goes to the tent on the far side. Entering he sees more contestants.
C3: Everyone is so excited . . .Isn't there a big festival or something? Isn't there?
C4: The human body is weak. I always fight against rock and metal! There is no way I can lose!
Fei notices a hooded, masked man and a boy in the corner. He talks to the boy –
Boy: !!

Fei: Dan . . .(pause) Dan! What are you doing here?

Dan: . . . It's your fault that Alice . . .I'll never forgive you. I'm gonna kill you!

Fei: . . .Dan . . .
A guard enters, saying –
G8: Attention all participants. We will be starting soon. Please enter the arena.

Dan: You're the enemy of everyone in Lahan! I'm gonna kick your butt in front of everyone! And don't be runnin' away either!!

Dan turns to go, exits with the others. Fei calls –

Fei: D, Dan . . .

The hooded man turns to him and asks –

Wiseman: Hey Mister, are you from Lahan?

Fei: (turns in surprise) ??

Wiseman: Seems like you and that boy have some kind of problem . . .

Fei: Who do you think you are? Mind your own business!

Wiseman: Ha ha ha . . .

Fei: What's so funny?

Wiseman: Nothing . . .Just wondering what kind of fight you will have with that boy . . . Well, I'm looking forward to it, 'Fei'.

Fei: Huh!?

He watches the man leave and speaks to himself –

Fei: (How does that guy know my name . . .? I didn't enter my real name . . .)

At that moment, Bart stands at the window of the lady's room, watching. He says –

Bart: It's about to start! I guess I better go get ready too.

Lady: Is this plan really going to work?

Bart: It's already started. If something's wrong now, then that's tough! What're you worried about? Fei'll do okay. Besides Citan's with him, too. Now, all I gotta is sneak into the castle through the well. No problem.

Lady: I pray so.

Bart: Well, I'm going. Margie's waiting in the citadel.

Lady: Well then . . .do be careful. And thank you for helping Mother Marguerite.

Bart: No sweat! You'd better get outta Aveh now too. Things are gonna get outta hand soon.

Lady: Thank you.

Bart makes his way down and out into the street. In the alley nearby, he opens the grate over the well and enters.

At that moment, Shakhan gives a speech from a balcony overlooking Fatima Castle courtyard.

Shakhan: . . .Brave young men are spilling their blood on the front lines. Our army is the best, but the tides of war are uncertain. To protect the tradition of Aveh and preserve peace in this desert, we must all have unshaking resolve.

The desert is a precious treasure passed down to us from our ancestors. Here we can forge our minds and bodies into one. Our teachers are the sun and wind. We are gathered here today, with our strong bodies forged by the desert. The sun above us is the same as that which burns over our fathers at the front. The wind blowing here is the same as that which whisks our resolve and prayers to our sons at the front. This Tournament raises our spirits and renews our blessings from the desert we live in. Brave ones, warriors, fight well and do not shame our brothers at the front. (pauses) Let the 338th Tournament begin!

Cheering from the crowd, scene changes to that of the inside of the balcony overhang where Shakhan watches below. He turns –

Shakhan: Hmm . . .a moving speech if I do say so myself.

He turns in surprise at the approach of another –

Shakhan: Oh, Commander Ramsus. Sorry to have kept you waiting. This way, please.

Ramsus: I'm afraid I do not have the time for such gay revelry. I just dropped by to bid you farewell.

Shakhan: What a pity. You do not like our entertainment?

Ramsus: (turns to watch below) I find it boring.

Miang: Oh, let it be Commander. Shakhan is only trying to show hospitality . . . I personally find martial arts quite interesting. I look forward to seeing the Tournament.

Shakhan: To say this event is a tribute to you, Commander, is no understatement. Your gracious help in our time of need enabled us to celebrate the country's founding today.

Ramsus: (turns to Shakhan) Founding, how impudent. It's not even your country. Hmph, do as you like.

Ramsus turns to go, Miang and Shakhan watch as he leaves.

Shakhan: (turns to Miang) Miang, how about the Tournament? Will you grace us with your company?

Miang: Yes. It would be a pleasure.

Shakhan: (turns to look out once more) Oh, it's starting!

Miang turns as well and the scene shifts to a view below where a man strikes a gong and an announcer calls out –

Announcer: The first match . . .Gonzalez vs. Wandering Youth.

The crowd cheers

Miang: My . . .what a handsome boy!

The fight begins! Mindful of doc's admonition not to defeat him too quickly, Fei baits the man for a while, then finishes him with a series of deathblows. Fei wins and the scene cuts to Bart as he descends a ladder to the water below. He swims through the long tunnels against the current and finally sees a metal gate ahead.

Bart: That's gotta be the floodgate . . .

He swims up to it and treads water, waiting for it to rise open. It does and he swims through just in time before the current can carry him off. As he makes his way into a huge room, a voice calls from a bridge overhead –

Old man: What!? Playing in the reservoir again? Get up out of there now, boy!

Bart makes his way over to a ladder and hauls himself up as the old man makes his way over –

Old man: Kid, how many times must I tell you . . .hmm? (he pauses) How many years has it been? Well, haven't you grown up? Are you really the child I used to play hide-and-seek with? Is this some sort of joke . . .? Well, answer me!?

Bart: What're you babblin' on about? Old man, even back when I was a child you used to ramble on and on. But I see it's gotten worse.

Old man: What!? Ramble!? Did you say I rambled on? Why you little brat. The only people who I ever allowed to call me a rambler were my late mother and the young prince. His Highness . . .what was his name?

Bart: You mean his Highness 'Prince Bartholomew'.

Old man: Yes, his Highness Prince Bartholomew! Boy, you certainly know a lot. If Bartholomew was still alive he'd be just about your age . . .Did you know that both he and his family were killed by that Shakhan? You won't beat me, Shakhan. I'll protect Aveh's water till I die. In remembrance of the kindness of the king and the young prince.

Bart: Really? Thanks old man. Father would be glad.

The old man pauses, "?" then asks –

Old man: . . .Whaddaya mean, father? Are you the son of an acquaintance of mine? Wait wait, I remember . . . (Bart watches the old man begin to place him) ! No, no, that's not it. I don't recall the king having any secret sons.

Bart: Sorry but I don't have time to explain. You'll remember. See ya!

Old man: (to himself) Who was that . . .?

Scene cuts to Big Joe vs. Fei! Joe panders to the crowd, they yell, "Hey, it's Joe time!" Fight begins and Fei lands in a heavy blow. The fans all throw stuff at him, injuring him a little. This might be tougher than he thought! He taps Joe a couple of times, working his way up to a series of blows, letting Joe wear himself out. Fei decides to end it after a while, winning with another series of deathblows.

Back in the well room Bart climbs up the ladder to the inner couryard, pausing behind the fountain as he watches the guards pace the perimeter. He dashes for a nearby opening into the shadowed interior of the first floor balcony, making it just in time. To his left, a door is locked and he cautiously makes his way down the hall, looking around the corner. He sees a guard and considers the noise a fight will probably make, so he waits until his back is turned, then runs towards a set of double doors which may lead to the next floor. As he approaches them quietly, he hears the guards nearby say –

G5: Hey, what is it we're guarding here?
G6: We're here to chase out anyone from the Tournament who gets lost in the castle.
G5: Babysitters huh? (pauses) Well when it gets to the pre-semi-finals we'll go check out the Tournament.
G6: Yeah, let's do that.

As Bart enters the door, scene cuts to Fei who is fighting against a man with pills in a bag. This guy proves to be a nuisance, always throwing pills to do his work for him. Fei puts up with it for as long as he can stand it, then wallops the guy hard. He goes down, Fei wins, soaking up the cheers of the crowd. The scene cuts back to Bart who makes his way up a huge flight of stairs carefully, getting caught once or twice by the guards. He fights them swiftly and goes to another set of double doors leading out onto the second floor balcony. He makes his way down to a door on the left. Entering, he finds himself in a library and talks to the librarian, who says –

LB: We must rewrite all false history books on the monarchy. We also must get rid of any books that might cause problems.

A man near the shelves, says –

M1: Do you know the history of Bledavik?

Curiosity piqued, Bart says 'No, I don't."

M1: This city was built on a desert rockbed. This was partially to escape sand erosion, but that's not all. An underground water basin wells up here. The rockbed is made of limestone, so the water level continued to rise to its present level. Fatima Castle was originally built to protect the water source, but gradually the desert people started to live here. They were soon joined by a steady flow of people from the northern lands. That is the story of this city, Bledavik.

Bart climbs a ladder and reads some books. One is called – "Aveh's True History' he reads –

"In the dark days of the Fatima rule, the people had little to eat and even less to be happy about. Their hardships peaked during the reign of Edbart IV . . .Using the people's fury as his power base, Shakhan, the Prime Minister then, lead the armies that broke the tyranny of the Fatima dynasty. Those heroes have become the nucleus of Aveh's current armed forces . . ."

Bart leaves and makes his way down the hall to another door, entering he stumbles onto a conversation taking place in the other room between two men.

GA: Due to our confusing orders, we were not able to do well in our prior campaign against growing patrols around the ruins! So we must immediately restructure our system of giving orders. Have you any ideas?
A1: General, the problem is that pushy Major Vanderkaum. He . . .
GA: Hold your tongue! (pauses) I understand you resentment towards Major Vanderkaum, but we don't want any bad feelings with Gebler.
A1: I'm sorry, what about that new guy, Ramsus? What about him?
GA: I've heard he is rather talented . . .He shouldn't trouble us like that Vanderkaum.
A1: That surprise attack was amazing.
A2: But, he is an outlander. You can't trust him!

Bart sneaks out, makes his way down the hall to another door. Entering, he finds himself in some sort of weapons hall. A maid stands in front of a huge cannon-like gun. She says –

Md: Oh my, Major Vanderkaum! Bringing this thing into the room . . .It's going to be so difficult to clean with this here.

The scene cuts to the 'Semi –Finals' . It's Fei vs. Dan!

Fei: What are you doing here, Dan!?

Dan: Hmph! I escaped from Yui's place! I'm here to avenge my sister's death!

Fei: . . .Please, Dan. Stop it!

Dan: Shut ya mouth! I will never forgive you . . .You murderer!!

Fei: Ergh . . .What do you want me to do . . .?

Reluctantly, he begins to fight Dan, who yells –

Dan: I'm gonna take you down!

After a battle that is both painful and bitter for Fei, Dan is defeated.

Fei: Dan . .I . . .

Dan: Shut up! I don't want to hear your stupid excuses! Fei, you're such a bastard!!

Scene cuts to 'Tournament's Final Bout' Fei is in the ring with the masked man from earlier. He tries to land in a blow and fails. This one is fast! Again and again Fei ties to hit this man and misses. The crowd shouts, "What a wimp!" Fei tries again and still does not hit him. The man has simply dodged all his blows, not hitting him once. After a while the crowd shouts, "Boo -! Boo -! Booooooooring! C'mon, fight properly!!

Fei: (This is not good. At this rate . . .)

Wiseman: . . .Just as I thought.

Fei: ??

Wiseman: You, where did you learn that technique?

Fei: Who cares where . . .Come on, now . . .Put up a serious fight!

Wiseman: Hmm. So then why do you fight? For yourself? Or for the sake of others?

Fei: Why do you ask that for?

Wiseman: Doesn't there have to be a reason or a goal, for a person to fight?

Fei: My reasons for fighting are none of your business!

Wiseman: So, you are fighting for no reason or goal?

Fei: Would you shut up! I'm in the middle of finding for my purpose!

Wiseman: . . .Then forget it! For there's no way you could find such.

Fei: What!?

Wiseman: You appear to be looking forward . . . . . .but in reality, you are only looking downward! You're only looking at yourself. Like that, you will find nothing.

Fei: How would you know . . .?

Wiseman: I know . . .By exchanging blows with you, I can tell a great deal . . .

Fei: Argh! Shut up!!

Fei makes another attempted blow, which Wiseman dodges –

Wiseman: Weak, weak . . .you won't even graze me with those kinds of attacks . . . But superficially, at least, it seems you've matured physically.

Fei: ??

Wiseman: You've done well in recovering from those wounds, (pause) Fei . . .

Fei: !! How do you know my name!? I deliberately didn't use my real name when I entered this contest. And that thing about me recovering from my wounds . . .! (pauses) You aren't who I think you are!?

Wiseman seems to convulse for a moment, says –

Wiseman: . . .Hm!?

Fei: ??

Wiseman kneels to the ground, says –

Wiseman: Oh my . . .Is it already that time . . .?
. . .I guess it can't be helped . . . I've got to be on my way!

Wiseman bounds off the ring, Fei shouts after him –

Fei: !! Wait! I want to ask you . . .!

Fei kneels to ground, spectators " . . .grumble grumble . . ." Then the referee announces: " . . .Uhh, ahem. It appears that the competitor Wiseman has forfeited . . .The remaining competitor will automatically be awarded victory!" The spectators shout, "What!? Are you serious!? Booo! Booo!! Yeah! I won the bet!!"

Fei: Wiseman . . .

Scene cuts back to Bart on the second floor balcony, where he makes his way to another set of double doors, seeing a large stairway leading up to the third floor. Knowing he's getting closer, Bart fights some of the guards, wins and notices a door in the wall over to his right. He cuts down this guard as well –

Scene fades to Bart as he stands in a hallway. He goes to the left to the door at the end, fights the guard and opens it, seeing Margie who "!" and jumps off the bed, saying –

Margie: Bart!

Bart: Let's go home Margie!

She rushes over to him, says –

Margie: I just knew you'd come for me!

Bart: I'm getting you outta here! C'mon, follow me!

Margie: Okay.

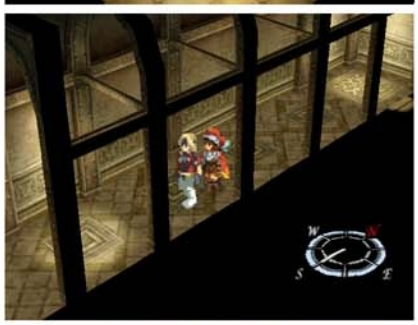
Bart turns to go, Margie speaks –

Margie: Oh, wait a second.

She runs over to a pink stuffed toy on the sofa and picks it up, saying –

Margie: I really like this.

She joins Bart, they leave and head for the exit, but they are stopped when two people come through the door – Miang and Ramsus!



Margie: Bart! Look!

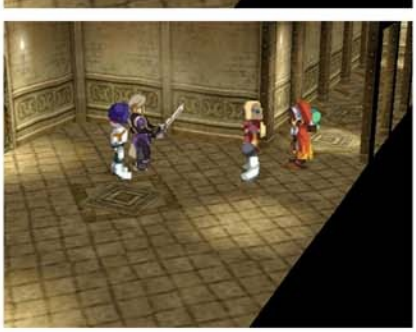
Bart: Crap! Gebler!

Ramsus: Looks like we have rats. Where do you plan on taking that girl, boy?

Bart: Boy? Hah, boy!?! Let's see you try and call me that again! Who the hell are you anyway?

Ramsus: You do have spunk. But I don't need to give my name to rats like you.

Bart: What?



Ramsus: Now hand over the girl. She is a very important guest. Until she tells us where a certain piece of the Fatima Jasper is, we can't allow her to be taken away.

Bart: Gimme a break! You think I'm gonna hand her over just 'cause you say to? Pull your head out, you Gebler geek!

Ramsus: Hmm. I assume you know where such abusive language will lead you.

Ramsus draws his sword, Bart steps forward. They prepare to fight and Miang says –

Miang: If you truly want to protect that child, then surrender . . . Prince Bartholomew!

Bart: Oh yeah? You know about me, huh? Heh! It's not such a bad feeling having your name known by someone as beautiful as you.

Margie: Ba –arty!

Miang: You may have had your problems with Shakahn, but we won't treat you badly. Concerning Shakhan, it really doesn't matter 'either way' to us.

Bart pauses, eyes both, then says –

Bart: That's nice to know. But I can't accept it. See, for me, 'either way' is bad.

Ramsus: . . .Then it's decided. (raises sword)

Bart: Tch . . .Margie! Hide back behind there!

Margie: No! I'll fight too!

Bart: I don't care, just hide!

The fight begins, Ramsus is a tough opponent, Bart is hit and Margie heals him saying, "Good luck, Bart!" Ramsus is also healed by Miang as the two men duel. Bart lands in a few blows, then unleashes a series of deathblows and Ramsus slumps. He hears a call from above –

Fei: Bart!!

Fei lands in the fray and whams Ramsus with a deathblow and he sags to his knees.

Fei: You okay, Bart?

Bart: (turns to Fei) Glad you're here Fei! (turns back to Ramsus)

Ramsus: Fei?

Fei: What's wrong, Bart? I thought this was just a simple rescue.

Bart: Shut up! This jerk butted in and slowed me down!

Ramsus: (The way he attacked . . .It reminds me of someone from my past . . .)

Ramsus: Enough talk! Battling will reveal the truth about you.

Ramsus moves towards them, sword raised –

Bart: Careful Fei! This Gebler jerk's pretty strong.

They battle Ramsus and Miang once more. Fei and Bart build up deathblows, unleashing them all at once. They win and Ramsus slumps to the floor once more, says –

Ramsus: (He looks . . .completely different . . .and there's no response. Is it just my imagination? But that technique was indeed his . . .What's more . . .the name Fei . . . where have I . . .)

A bright light once more consumes the view, Ramsus hears –

"Fei . . .That is my child's name . . ."

The scene returns to hall, Ramsus thinks "!!" sees briefly the image of the flame colored man super imposed over Fei. Fei jumps over to Ramsus and lands a roundhouse blow.

Ramsus: Gah!

Margie: Leave the rest to me!

Bart: Margie?

Scene opens in the hall once more with the sound of a door hissing open, an officer emerging further down the hall. Fei looks up, shouts –

Fei: Now!

The blond man looks up in surprise "!" as Fei, Bart and Margie race to the open door, shoving him out of the way. Ramsus stands with Miang in hallway, asks –

Ramsus: (Is it 'him'? Or do I only want to think so . . .If it is 'him' . . . I . . . I am . . .)

Words appear in his mind – a memory?

" . . .Worthless . . . . . .a reject . . ."

Ramsus: GUARD! Double the guards on both shifts. Don't let those rats in here again.

The scene shift to Fei, Bart and Margie in a lift as it descends.

Bart: (turns to Fei) Hey, Fei! Do you know where this elevator goes?

Fei: I don't know. Where does it go?

Bart: I'm asking you! This thing wasn't here before. (looks at Margie) Don't worry. We'll get you back home . . .somehow!

Margie: I'm not worried.

Bart: (turns to Fei) Hey Fei, how did the Tournament go?

Fei: Uh, I won . . . I guess . . .

Bart: That's what I thought. I knew you could do it.

The lift doors swish open and Fei steps through, the others following. They make their way down a metallic corridor to the door at the end. Stepping through, they find themselves in a huge landing bay. Fei says –

Fei: That's . . . . . .Gebler's aerial battleship!

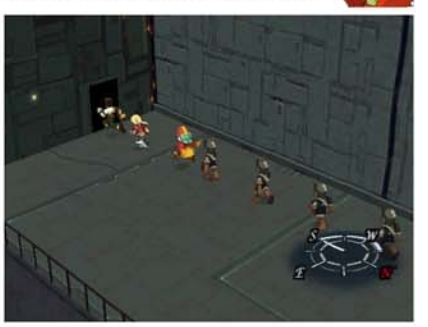
Margie: Yeah, but look what's coming out of it . . .

They see a contingent of guards running across the ramp suspended from the ship to the dock – coming after them!

Bart: Are you guys in the mood for another battle?

Margie: Bart, we better get outta here . . .and fast!

Fei: Quick . . .run!



They run to the left as the guards begin to close in. They make it through the door and –

Scene cuts to Elly in her quarters as an announcement and alarm comes through: "There are intruders in the base!" The announcer continues, "There are three intruders . . . . . .presently heading for the dock area. The two men may be killed . . . . . .but do not harm the girl."

She chooses to leave her quarters at just that moment -

Fei, Bart and Margie make their way around the corner, guards ot on their heels. They bump in to Elly, she thinks, "!" as does Fei.

Elly: Fei!

Fei: You're . . .Elly? What are you doing here?

Elly: I should be asking you! (pause) Don't tell me you're the intruders, Fei?

Fei: Huh?

Bart: If she's in the way, just . . .

(he moves towards her and Fei says -)

Fei: Wait a second, Bart! She . . .Elly is not an enemy!

Bart: (turns to Fei)
Not an enemy? Are you sane? Look at her uniform! She's a Gebler officer!

Fei: . . .

They all turn as they hear the doors open, guards coming through, saying "They ran in here!" Down behind the corner, Fei thinks, "!" then Elly moves into her quarters, saying –

Elly: Hurry! This way!

They all run in and the door closes behind the. They all listen in tense silence as the guards pass by. After a near eternity, Elly says –

Elly: It sounds like they've gone . . .

Bart: Fei, can you explain to me how you know a Gebler officer?

Fei: Well . . .

Bart: I don't know where you met her, but no matter how you look at it . . .she's a Gebler officer! Not a enemy? Where do you get off saying that?

Fei and Elly turn to look at each other, she says –

Elly: Yes. Special Forces of the Sacred Empire of Solaris . . .also known as Gebler . . .I'm Lt. Elhaym Van Houten of the Ignas Army's Third Assault Division. And . . .while returning from a mission to capture the newest model Gear from a Kislev military factory . . . . . .I was attacked by pursuing Kislev Gears and crash landed in your village . . .

Fei: . . .

Elly: I wanted to tell you, but I just couldn't bring myself to . . .When I heard what my crash-landing in your village had caused . . .I couldn't tell you . . .

Fei: . . .I knew.

Elly: !? Fei . . .

Fei: I overheard you talking with doc.

Elly: Then why?

Fei: It was . . .all my fault. But I lashed out at you with my own feelings . . .I'm sorry.

Elly: No it wasn't . . .

Fei: Just forget about it. You couldn't help it . . .You had your own problems.

Elly: But, Fei . . .why are you with them?

Fei: I'm cooperating with Bart and his crew. We came to rescue Margie who was taken prisoner in the castle here.

Elly: I see . . .

She turns and opens the door. Bart calls out –

Bart: Hey! Just a minute! Where do you think you're going?

Elly: (turns to Bart) You want to get out of the castle, right? In this confusion you can escape through the Gear launch door.

Bart: Great idea! But . . .do we really buy that? I don't think so! She talks sweet, but she's probably planning to turn us over to that old bald geezer. It's a trick, Fei!

Fei: . . .

Margie: (turns to Bart) Wait Bart! She's not a bad person. She said she'd help us, so let's go with her plan.

Bart: (tuns to Margie, they face one another) You're always like this! Can't you see . . . she's in Gebler!? Don't be so damn trusting!

Margie: (turns to Elly) That's not true . . .is it, Elly?

Bart: Oh yeah? Look where your ability to judge characters got you . . .! (turns to Fei) Fei, what about you? Do you believe her?

Fei: (still looking at Elly) I made up my mind long ago.

Elly: (turns to Fei) Fei . . .

Bart: Gah! First you, now her! The whole lot of you can go jump off a cliff for all I care!

Elly leaves, the others follow. She stands in hall, looks both ways, says –

Elly: Wait here a second. (she turns to crossway, looks around) The coast is clear! Quick, follow me!

The run after her as she makes her way to a door at the end of the hall. Entering, they find themselves in a Gear hangar. She leads them to a service Gear, saying –

Elly: This is the Gear's start up code. You can start any standard Gear with this code.

Fei: Elly?

Elly: This is all I can do for you. The rest is up to fate . . .

Bart and Margie move towards Gear, pause and Bart calls out –

Bart: Alright! Let's go, Fei!

Fei stares in Elly's eyes . . .

Bart: What are you doing? Hurry up!

The scene goes quiet as the two speak, lost in a world of their own.

Fei: Elly! Come with us!

Elly: !?

Fei: You're not the type of person suited to a place like this!

Elly: Fei . . .

Bart: (cuts in) You're just wasting time talking! They're coming! We're gonna get caught!

Fei: (still looks at Elly) Elly . . .

Elly: (shakes her head) Thanks, but it's impossible. I'm . . . a Solaris soldier . . .This is where I belong. I can't go with you.

She turns to leave, Fei calls after her –

Fei: Elly!

Elly: (without turning) Fei, the next time we meet . . .we'll be enemies.
(she runs off as Fei stares after her. Then, slowly, he goes to Bart and Margie)

Later . . .

They enter the Gear, fire it up and 'walk' to the launch pad where they blast out into the blue sky.

Scene cuts to inside the Gear garage where Ramsus is standing with Miang before the assembled troops. He hears, "Commander!"

Ramsus: Miang, get my Wyvern powered up now! I must pursue them . . .

He turns at the sound of the voice and the messenger says in a low tone –

Messenger: (Commander . . .I've a message from Hyu . . .)

Ramsus: What!?

There is silence as the message is relayed, then –

Ramsus: (turns to others) Stop the power up! Recall all men back to base and wait for further orders!

He speaks to himself –

Ramsus: . . .That fool. What is he doing down here now . . .?

On the Yggdrasil . . .

The Yggdrasil sails through the sand, the azure sky overhead. Sig, Maison, Margie, Fei and Bart stand near the helm. Bart looks out over the helm as Sig says to Margie –

Sig: Well, Marguerite, now that we have saved you, may we ask you one thing . . .? Why did you go up against the enemy by yourself?

Margie: Sorry . . .but . . .I heard a rumor in town that day . . . It was said that the Sect's sisters who were captured by Aveh were still alive . . .

Sig: Obviously a groundless rumor started by the enemy in order to lure you out.

Maison: (turns to Sig) Please, don't be so hard on her . . .The Nisan Sect is Marguerite's home. It's perfectly understandable.

There is silence, then Bart turns around, saying –

Bart: Then . . .you thought you could save them alone!? That was stupid!!

Margie: I believed it! So what!? I was wrong. (pause) But . . . (she turns to look out over the sand) grandma and mom were already executed . . .

Sig: Marguerite . . .

Maison: At any rate, Marguerite is here unhurt. That's the main thing! Before luck runs out, let's take Marguerite to Nisan. We can talk more there. Now, I'll go prepare Marguerite's room . . . Miss Marguerite, may I ask you to accompany me?

Maison goes down the hatch, Margie begins to follow, when Bart turns to her and calls –

Bart: Margie!!

She turns slowly, facing him.

Bart: Next time, let us know!! We'll go for you!

Margie: Yeah . . .I'll do that.

There is silence, then she goes down the hatch, disappearing below.

Sig turns to Bart, saying –

Sig: Marguerite is straining herself. Young master, you should be kind to her.

Sig turns to leave, Bart is silent, then he joins Fei and they go down the hatch. In the anteroom, they see Margie's stuffed animal in front of the door to the bridge.

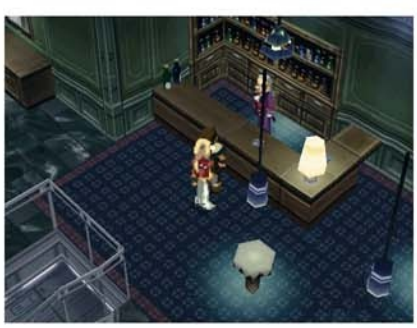
Bart: That Margie . . .! Leaving a strange stuffed animal in a place like this! Because of this, we can't get into the bridge.

They hear "It's not strange!" and a small sound.

Bart: Hey, Fei!! Stop the funny voices, will ya!?

Fei: (turns to Bart) Huh? I (pause) didn't say anything.

Bart: . . .That's weird . . .Anyway, let's ask Margie to get rid of it.



They use the lift, going down to the hall. They find Margie in the room down at the left end. Entering, they see Margie and ask –

Bart: Hey, Margie! Get rid of that strange stuffed animal sitting in front of the bridge. It's in our way.

Margie: It's not a 'strange stuffed animal'! It has a name. Her name is J'ora!! (she looks around) but that's weird. It was just here, where I put it, a moment ago . . .

They are interrupted by the sound of the door opening behind them. The 'stuffed animal' bounds through and says –

J'ora: Nice chu meet chu!! I'm J'ora! (she looks at Fei) I fell in love with you when I first saw you in Bledavik!! Wherever you go, I shall go chu! (turns, faces wall)
Oh my . . .I just declared my love!! (turns back to others)

Bart: What we thought was just a stuffed toy is actually a living animal! Weird!

Margie: No wonder it felt strangely lukewarm!

Fei and Bart turn to look at each other.

Fei: Wha, what!?

Bart: Looking good, Fei!!

Fei: Shut up!!

Bart: (turns to look at J'ora) It's all right. I, as the captain, give you my permission!

J'ora: (jumps up and down) Yeah, yeah!

Fei: . . .Suit yourself!

Bart: Ha, ha, ha! Well, I don't want to interrupt you two, so I'll wait outside!

Bart leaves and Margie watches, then says –

Margie: . . . (pauses, then turns to Fei) Thank you for your help at the castle. I heard you really riled it up at the Tournament. Bart was bragging how you're both buddies and all.

Fei turns to Margie, stumbling out –

Fe: . . .Re (pause) . . .really?

Margie: (turns to the wall) I'm so ashamed . . .I want to be of help to Bart but I ended up owing him again. (she turns to face Fei once more) Fei, have you seen Bart's back? He's got scars all over his back and it looks so painful. Long ago, when the two of us got caught by Shakhan, Bart protected me from getting beaten . . .(turns to wall once more) At that time, I decided to be his follower . . .to serve and protect him! But, he is the one who's always protecting me . . .

Fei: . . .

Margie: (turns back to Fei) Uh, so sorry . . .Anyway, thanks a lot for saving me!

Fei leaves and is joined by Bart. They make their way to the Gun Room and speak ' to Maison.

Maison: . . .sob . . .sob . . .Oh to think that Marguerite has now returned . . .Come to think of it, this is the second time we have had to flee from the Royal Capital. It seems an awful long time ago . . . That night that I took them with me to escape . . .

Bart: Yeah, and on top of that he was bold enough to steal this ship along the way. You know this used to be the kingdom's flagship?

Maison: Yes, it was all Sigurd's doing. So courageous of him even at such a young age. Anyway, this Yggdrasil can be considered as a keepsake of the late king for the young master.

Bart: It kinda feels like you're stuck to me for life. Even though you used to be my personal knight, right? Now I'm just a kid pirate!

Maison: But eventually you will become a proud lord.

Bart: I gotta hurry up and grow up or I'll never be proud of myself. And I won't be able to win against him!

Maison: . . .

They buy a few items, then make their way to the hall, entering the bunk room.

M1: Marguerite's become stronger since the last time I saw her. She is indeed the true Great Mother of Nisan.

They speak with one of the pirates

P1: Hey? That professor dressed in green isn't with you?

They make their way to the bridge, Sig says –

Sig: Young master, according to Margie, there's quite a troublemaker in Gebler.

Bart: Yeah . . .So, who the heck is he?

Sig: Kahran Ramsus (pause) of the Holy Solaris Empire's Special Foreign Affairs Agency . . . In other words, he's the commander in chief of Gebler. It seems that Gebler isn't just after the excavation sites around Aveh after all.

Bart: You mean, they're not after the Jasper?

Sig: If that's their only goal they wouldn't need to send an important man like him! Young master, this could become unexpectedly complicated . . .

Fei: Doc hasn't come back yet, has he?

Sig: . . .(pauses) Hyu . . .I mean, 'doc' . . .No need to worry about him. He'll join us soon.

He changes the subject, explaining their next move –

Sig: We shall have to enter into Nisan through the secret road. Let's keep on the lookout for a lone tree in the desert as a sign of where theroad lies buried . . .! Shall we launch the Yggrasil?

They tell him to go ahead and the scene switches to a view above the ship as they travel. They find the tree after a while to the north and the Yggdrasil sinks below the sand, crossing the narrow strait into the next land.

View shows a landing bay, then to the room below the Gun room where Sig and Citan are deep in conversation. Sig stands with his arms crossed and says –

Sig: . . .Now I see why you came down to the surface . . .Alright, I understand you. But Kahran Ramsus . . .taking over the post of Aveh is pretty annoying.
(he lets his arms drop)

Citan: (ponders) The home country might have had some special reasons.

Sig: (shakes head) Yeah . . .obviously.

Citan: (looks up) But perhaps there is still a chance of success . . .You and I, who used to be called 'Elements' at the commander's training school 'Jugend', are both here!

Sig: Hope you are right . . .

Citan: By the way, she is still . . .?

Sig: According to Fei, there was a female aide on Kahr's side . . .
And he said that she had indigo blue eyes and hair. . . .
So it must be her . . .

Citan: So all the old 'Elements' members are on the surface world now . . .

Sig: (turns to wall) I guess so . . . (he walks to the left) Hyuga . . .To be honest with you . . .she scares me. She supports Kahr and is kind to anyone, I know that very well. But sometimes I felt a strange fear in her. That bothers me more than Kahr being in this land.

Citan: (walks toward Sig) That cannot be true . . .Not in her . . .

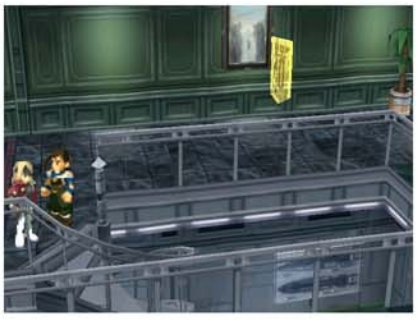
Sig: (turns to Citan) Yeah, I don't want to believe it, either . . .But don't you remember how I could always sense these things quite accurately?

Citan: Right . . .(pauses) By the way, have you told the young one yet . . .?

Sig: (shakes head) No, not yet. I don't want him to worry until we know exactly what Solaris' objectives really are. But I have to tell him eventually though . . .Anyway, Hyuga, have you gotten any information?

Citan: (shakes head) Not really . . .I left there before going into the center section . . .

The scene changes to a view above the two men, where Fei is eavesdropping near the banister. He hears, "(Fei!!)" and jumps. Bart approaches Fei who says –



Fei: (Oh, it's you Bart!? Don't scare me . . .!)

Bart: (Sorry – dorry. It sounds like Sig and your doctor friend know each other pretty darn well . . .Sig . . .
Damn, I thought I knew everything about that guy!)

Fei: (When did doc get back . . .?)

Nisan

Now in the docking bay the Yggdrasil rises to the docking clamps. People wait as it arrives. View changes to view Maison, Bart, Citan, Fei and Sig as they stand on top of the Yggdrasil preparing to disembark. Sig says –

Sig: I'll complete the remaining checks onboard. I'll leave the rest up to you, Maison.

Maison: (turns to Sig) As you wish . . . I will have the honor of accompanying the others.

He looks at Bart who nods and turns to those waiting on the dock. He walks forward and is greeted by a man who says –

E1: Bartholomew, healthy as ever I hope?

Bart: (nods) Yeah. How's the town?

E1: Since we got word several days ago that there might be an army advancing from the Royal Capital the Sect's representatives have been in discussion.

Bart: What have they come up with?

E1: For now, they just plan to improve the local defenses. Also, anti-Shakhan people have been gathering here . . . probably because they heard about what's going on.

Bart: That's reassuring.

E1: Yes. However the residents are starting to feel uneasy. People are starting to take refuge up north in the mountains.

Bart: (shakes head) Can't blame them.

E1: By the way, how's Marguerite . . .?

Bart: Better than we thought. But I know she was in a lot of grief.

Bart turns and stands aside. Margie comes forward.

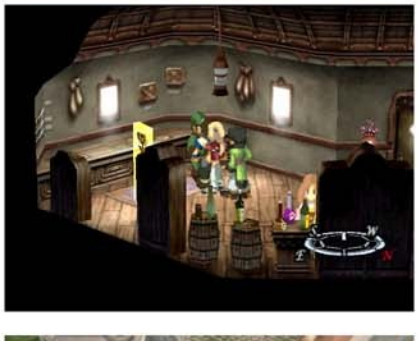
E1: Marguerite! I'm so glad you're safe.

Margie: Thanks.

E1: All the townspeople are overjoyed by the Great Mother's return.

Margie turns to Bart who nods.

The party makes its way from the Secret dock to the town. It lies along the edge of a crystal blue lake, the waters shimmering in the brightly shining sun. Mountains cradle the blue oval of water. Rising from the center of the lake is an ornate cathedral, a small thin bridge leading from it to the town.



They walk into town with Maison and Margie, who looks around and says –

Margie: Wow! It's been such a long time since I left here.

They turn and watch as she goes down the street. Citan says –

Citan: Well . . .First of all, we should accompany Marguerite up to meet the sisters!

Bart turns around, looks at Maison and says –

Bart: . . .Huh? What is it old Maison?

Fei and Citan turn around and Maison says –

Maison: Sniff . . .Goodness gracious me . . .! To think that little Miss Marguerite was finally able to return here . . . . . .It is so awfully moving!

The three men look at each other. Bart says –

Bart: H . . .hey! Pull yourself together, old man!

Maison: F . . .forgive me. How terribly embarrassing! I couldn't help it . . .(pause) I . . .I should go back and give instructions to the men left on the ship. Please, young master, go ahead and escort Miss Marguerite up to see the sisters. . . . Excuse me now.

He backs off, turns and walks away. Fei, Bart and Citan stand watching for a moment, then look at one another and team up. They make their way through the town, speaking to some children on a nearby bench.

Lg: Mr. Pirate! Will you let me ride in your ship someday?

Bart: Hahaha! Maybe when you get a little older, kid!

Lg2: Margie has come back!

They enter a building across the street, which appears to be an inn.

Innkeeper: I'm very sorry but we're all full. As an apology, please accept this . . .(they get some tea)

They go to the room on the left, find an Aveh guard.

G1: Is the rumor that there are pirates in the Royal Capital true?

In the right hand room, another guard says –

G2: Through a special arrangement with the town representatives, we're getting lodging.

They go back out on the street, take a left hand fork and talk to a man who says –

M1: If it isn't my young lord! I hear you gave them quite a show this time!

Bart: (Shhh! Keep it down! My true identity is supposed to be a secret! What if a spy from the Royal Capital snuck in here and heard you?)

M1: (Oh . . .I hadn't thought about that!)

They enter a building on their right, see an older lady at the counter and Bart says –

Bart: Hello, grandma . . .

Grandma: Hey, aren't you the young master? (turns to shopkeep) Hey you!

Shopkeep: Huh? (turns) Huh! (walks over to them) It's Bartholomew! Are you doing well?

Bart: Good enough!

Shopkeep:: Don't try to overdo it. Hey, are those your friends back there?

Bart: Yeah. Fei and Citan.

Shopkeep: Friends of the young master are friends of ours. Take your time and look around.

Bart: Thanks.

They walk around the shop, talk to the customers –

Lc: This place has gotten to be a pain. My family is fleeing north to the mountains. I'm here to buy supplies.

They see one of Bart's officers, he says –

O1: Young master, that old man from the Gun Room sent me here for supplies. If you want, I can also get Gear parts you may need. Just tell me.

Bart: Whoa, good preparations! If that's the case, please get the parts we need.

They buy some Gear parts and leave, talking to an old man in the street who says –

Old man: So you're going to make your move eh, Bartholomew? But somehow I don't think that man's just going to stand by and let you do as you please, though.

Fei: (turns to Bart) That man?

Bart: He means 'Shakhan'!

Old man: Yes. It's alright to try and avenge your father . . . . . .but I don't think things will be that easy, though!

Bart: I don't want to hurt anyone. I want you to know I'm always thinking about that.

Old man: Do your best!

They move on and see a large building to their left. They approach, thinking, " . . ." and look through the window, listening to the meeting. One man stands in the center addressing the others and says –

E2: How's Bledavik?

E1: It's under martial law so it's gotten progressively harder to contact our agents in the city. According to the info we finally got just a while ago, there's no major activity. We think they've found some reason to attack and are getting ready now . . .

E2: The possibility exists.

E1: However I've heard that Shakhan's power base in the capital is eroding away. He's probably weaker than we thought. (turns to another speaker)

E3: Anyway, it's happened and we're committed now.

E2: (steps down and walks to panel) I feel the same way. Now that I think about it, 12 years ago . . .

E4: Ever since the coup d'etat by Shakhan, there's been a lot of tension in our country. With Marguerite back now, I agree that the former dynasty should be returned to power.

A lady rises and speaks, the others turning to look at her.

LE: Everyone feels the same but we must look at reality. Do we have the strength to do that now? Now I hear Bartholomew, the one who brought back Marguerite, has started moving around out in the open. I'm certain Shakhan is preparing a large army.

AncientE: Shakhan may be coming here soon . . .

They silently exchange glances, thinking " . . ." Then another man rises, asking –

E5: What's gonna happen to us if he captures this area? Will anyone be killed?

E6: I seriously doubt that. (pause) Even he won't want to risk provoking any kind of outrage with the citizens. Especially in this situation, he will definitely want to avoid putting himself in a compromising situation.

E1: We should set up a hiding place just in case . . .Maybe there . . .(turns to look out)

Scene fades to street once more, Bart says to Fei and Citan –

Bart: Please, don't either of you talk about this in front of Margie . . .She's only just got back from her long time in captivity . . .I don't want her to have to worry . . . I want her to be happy for a little longer.

Citan: You should not be overly worried yourself! You have just got to think about what is best for the future of this land . . .What is done is done! You only did what you believed was right . . .Put the past behind you.

Bart: Huh . . .I'm alright!

They make their way down the street to an old man on a bench near the western gate. He says –

Old man : I've had enough troubles. I just want to live life peacefully.

They turn and go down some steps to the lower area. They see two nuns, one says –

N1: Neither of us serve heaven within the Nisan cathedral . . .But we pray here daily, as ones who have lived here for many years.

N2: the town representatives have been in discussion at the assembly hall since this morning. (They look over to hall) I hear they're talking about a plan to deal with the troops from Aveh. Some of them think the return of Margie is a nuisance.

N1: I can understand why everyone is worried. But shouldn't we be counting our blessings that the Great Mother resides in Nisan?

They go to the studio next door and see a man in the room to the left. He says –

A1: . . .Sorry, but please don't talk to me now. Yesterday morning's view from the lake.(pauses) I'm remembering the sensation of that light.

They go to another room, and a man says –

M1: Actually, Nisan is a pretty popular place among the artists. Part of the reason is the scenery, but it's mostly because of the portrait of the Great Mother that is said to be in the cathedral. Unfortunately, the public is not permitted to go see it.

They go back out into the street, see an old man –

Old man: It does the heart good to see the innocent play of children. (three kids play nearby, screaming, "I'll get you!" and "Outta the way! Outta the way!" They see a young woman on a bench, she says –

W1: Oh, so you're 'the ones'? Everyone in town is talking about you! Something about the Great Mother returning . . . Since they call her the Great Mother she must be really old and frail!

They see Margie standing with some other people over by the North gate. She says –

Margie: These are the people who took care of me when I was small.

They talk to the nun next to her, who says –

N3: I'm so glad you're safe!

They talk to the elder by the gate, he says –

E1: Oh, Bart! I'm glad you're well.

They turn as an old man says –

Old man: The people at the hidden port contacted us just before you came into town.

E1: I've already contacted the monastery. Please take Margie up there as soon as possible. She'll be so happy . . . Not to mention the sisters!

They step aside and Margie rushes forward, saying –

Margie: I must hurry and see the sisters.

The three follow Margie across the narrow bridge to the cathedral where she waits. She leads them in and they find themselves in an enormous space with vaulted ceilings, a beautiful stained glass window with beams of light streaming through. Nuns are in procession by the altar and the sound of lovely singing permeates the peaceful atmosphere.

One of the nuns turns, and exclaims, "Margie!" The song stops as, one by one,the others turn and race towards Margie. She stands at the entrance where they surround her.

The Mother Abbess approaches more slowly. One of the nuns hugs Margie, saying –

Agnes: Margie!

Margie: I'm back, everyone!

The abbess approaches her, says –

Abbess: Oh, Margie . . .We're so glad you're safe . . .

Margie: Yes, it is all thanks to Bart and his men.

Abbess: We just received word . . .So we were singing a hymn of praise and joy. We're so happy . . . Oh, what a relief!

Next to Margie, Sister Agnes says –

Agnes: Welcome back, Margie. We had faith that you and your cousin Bart would one day return safely . . .We and your other friends have been waiting for you.

Margie: (hugs Agnes) Sister Agnes!

Agnes: Unfortunately, your mother and the blessed Royal Mother . . .

Margie: I know, Sister Agnes . . . (pauses) I heard about it at the Royal Capital . . . . . But at least I have made it back . . .I'll never go anywhere, or leave you from now on! I won't make you all worry anymore . . .ever again!

Agnes: (turns her face) Bless you my dear . . .

After a moment, Margie says –

Margie: Sister Agnes, this just isn't like you at all! Here I am back safe and sound. Can't you rebuke me just a little, for old time's sake?

Agnes: (turns back) Ha . . .I'm sorry . . .But I'm just so happy that I cannot help but . . .

N2: (turns to her) Sister . . .

Agnes: . . .There is no reason to be so solemnly quiet . . .(pause) Well, everyone! (she turns and addresses them all) To celebrate the return of our dear sister Margie . . .and to express our joy to heaven, let us finish singing our hymn.

Margie: . . .Thank you, and bless you all! (remembers something) Oh, yes, Sister . . . May I go upstairs? It's been oh so long, so I want to have a look around up there too.

Agnes: (turns to her) Oh, but of course, dear! Don't even think of holding back from anything . . . Except for one thing . . . Never stay away so long like that again.

Margie: Ha, ha! I knew you'd say that. Now that's the Agnes I know!

The nuns begin returning to their song, Nun 1 says to Margie –

N1: Margie, I am so glad.

She joins the others and the song begins as Bart comes up beside Margie looking out over the cathedral. He says –

Bart: It's been a while since the last time I was here. (turns to Margie) . . .? Something wrong, Margie?

Margie: (pauses) . . .Nothing. It's just . . .(turns to Bart) I guess I got a little emotional . . . Heh, heh, heh . . .

He looks at her for a moment, then approaches, saying –

Bart: . . . Anyhow, take it easy for a while. . . . . .You've put up with enough, okay.

Margie: . . .If you are trying to make me cry, you'll fail. (then turns to Fei and Citan) Oh yes! I'll show Fei and Citan around our cathedral . . .Follow me!

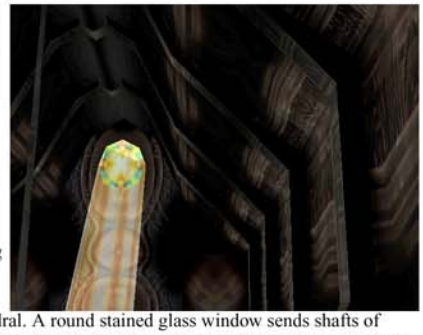
She leaves and the three stand for a moment, then Citan says –

Citan: What a strong girl she is . . .It is obvious that she really wants to just break down and cry . . .

Bart: (turns to watch her go) Yeah, you're right . . .that's just the way she has always been. For all her talk, she understands her position well . . . Maybe there are a few things I could learn from her too.

He and Citan join Fei and they walk around the huge cathedral, listening to the soft hymn. They see Margie waiting for them at a door on the right side and approach.

Margie: We go up to the gallery on the second floor from here . . .



She turns and goes through the door and begins climbing a large flight of stairs. The three follow to where she pauses at the door at the top, the she leads them through, out onto a balcony which over looks the wondrous cathedral. A round stained glass window sends shafts of multi-colored light to the ground, permeating the air with a soft radiance. This mingles with the hymn to create an effect which is truly breathtaking. They stand with Margie for a moment, looking out over the cathedral.

Citan: . . .How magnificent!

There is a small silence, then Margie says –

Margie: If we ever got scolded for pranks as kids, Bart and I used to hide here.

They turn to her and Bart says-

Bart: Hey, stop telling those old stories. It's embarrassing!

After a moment, Margie begins walking along the balcony, saying over her shoulder –

Margie: But to me, Bart hasn't changed much since then.

Bart: What!? You mean that you think I'm still a kid!?

They follow her around to the balcony which faces the altar. There she says –

Margie: I like the view from here the best.

Citan: (after a moment) Yes, this is breathtaking! Light from outside shining through the stained glass of the cathedral's front . . .What a brilliant piece of artistry this is.

There is silence, then Margie turns to them, asking –

Margie: Did you know that the two great angels only have one wing each . . .? (she turns back to look out at the altar, beginning -)

According to a legend handed down in Nisan . . . God could have created humans perfectly . . .But then, humans would not have helped each other . . . So that is what these great single-winged angels symbolizes . . . In order to fly, they are dependent on one another.

They look out over the cathedral, towards the two shapes. Citan says –

Citan: Ah, so that is the reason for it. I see . . .On further inspection, the left angel looks somewhat masculine . . . . . .while the right one looks somewhat feminine. (he walks to the right, looks out once more) Now that is an unusual feature, is it not? Usually these depictions are not gender-specific. But these angels are clearly distinguishable as having opposing genders. (a silence, then he walks over, studying the pair)
And the space between them is the path from where god advents . . .(Margie looks at him)
Or could it be the path leading to god? Well . . .I do no know, it could beeither, or even both.
(As Margie watches him, he pauses, then) . . .Now I see! (Bart turns to him)
This all coincides with the teachings of Nisan.

Bart and Fei turn to each other, Fei shakes his head as Margie says –

Margie: Ha, ha, ha,! Why Doctor Citan Uzuki! You are an amusing fellow!

Citan: (turns to Margie) Oh! Excuse me. It is a habit of mine . . .

Fei: (turns to Margie) The doc knows a lot about a lot of things . . . Sometimes I can't even understand what he's talking about . . .

They all turn out and look once more. After a moment –

Bart: . . .Hah! Forcing them to fly together . . .? It would be less bothersome if they could fly on their own, don't you think, Fei?

Margie: Bart! You miss the deeper meaning and beauty of it! (she turns back to the angels) Someday I wish I could be of help to someone like that . . .

There is a silence, then Margie remembers, saying –

Margie: Oh, we haven't visited the 'Room of Sophia' yet, have we? You're really supposed to go through some procedures before you can see it . . . But this time I think it will be alright if I make a special exception.

The three turn to her, Fei asks –

Fei: Sophia?

Margie: Yes, Sophia. She is revered as the founding mother of the Nisan nation . . . and the founder of the Nisan religion who set forth its teachings. There is a special room upstairs that has a portrait of Mother Sophia in it.

Citan looks out over the cathedral, as Fei looks over at Bart. He says –

Citan: I would definitely like to view that! Fei, let us go have a look at it!

They follow Margie as she goes around the balcony to a door at the far end. She waits, then leads them up a long flight of stairs. She pauses at the top and they open the door –

They enter a room with light streaming from a window above, painting a soft pattern on the red carpet . . . They walk in, down a short flight of steps into the recessed area. There is a long moment of silence as they stand in front of the portrait . . .

Citan comes forward –

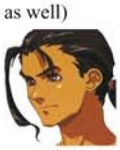
Citan: Oh my . . .What an exquisite portrait! And the beautiful young lady portrayed is quite beyond comparison too . . . (he is silent, then) What is more . . .this looks rather familiar . . .! (he turns to Fei) What do you think, Fei?

Fei: Yes, I was just thinking the same thing. The hair is a different color, but the atmosphere or personality about her is exactly the same.

Citan: What? (pause) Hair color? What do you mean?

Fei: What do I mean? Look . . .! It's the girl I met in the forest . . .(turns to Citan) It's Elly! I mean . . . there's something about her that's just like Elly . . .(turns back to the portrait) You don't think so . . .?

Citan: Yes, now that you mention it . . .She does resemble Elly. (turns to Fei) But that is not what I was talking about . . . I meant that the brush techniques and overall style used in this picture is similar to yours. (he turns back to portrait, then Fei does as well)



Fei: . . .Really?

Fei steps forward and drinks in the sight of the lovely woman before him. She is dressed in creamy colored silk, a pendant lies between her breasts and the expression in her face is beyond words, the love in her gaze almost tangible.

Scene moves back as Fei walks to the right, studying it. He asks –

Fei: Does it . . .? (He turns to the others) First of all . . .I'm nowhere near as good an artist.

Citan approaches portrait, looks at Fei and says –

Citan: No . . .it is very similar to your style. (he looks from Fei to the portrait) But somehow I can sense an atmosphere of sadness in this picture.

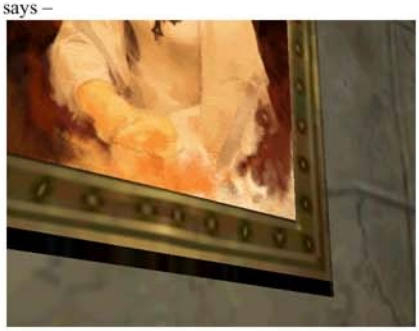
Fei looks up at the picture, Citan continues –

Citan: She is smiling, but in a way, gives the impression that she is anxious. (looks at Fei) Perhaps the picture is reflecting her inner self? (Citan looks out into space, Fei watches him) Or perhaps it is the inner feelings of the artist being conveyed.

Citan moves back to the portrait, says –

Citan: Ahh . . .If you look closely, you will notice that the painting is not completely finished.

Citan: The artist put his brushes down when it was near completion. (Bart comes forward, and Citan turns, addressing Margie) . . .Why is that?



They all turn to Margie, who pauses –

Margie: I don't know . . .But my grandmother might have known about it . . .

There is a silence, then Margie approaches, saying –

Margie: Oh! What if we ask Agnes? She may know something.

They approach Margie, who says –

Margie: Alright then, I'll be with sister Agnes.

Bart: Well . . .shall we head back to the town for now?

Citan: Yes, alright . . .But this painting has caught my curiosity. Do you mind if I speak to Sister Agnes before we head back to town?

Bart: Yeah, okay . . .We'll stop by her room on the way out.

Margie leaves and Citan and Bart follow. Fei turns to go, then looks back once more at the portrait –

- A flash of white light –

It is the same room in which a painter works . . . The light from the stone cut-out bathes him in a warm glow as he works on the portrait. Then he stops, turns to look at a woman sitting in a chair nearby.
A voice is heard "Lacan . . ." and light fills all-

-And Fei is once more back to his senses, Citan stands behind him as he shakes his head and asks –

Citan: Is something wrong, Fei? You look like you are daydreaming . . .

Fei: (turns to Citan) Huh? No . . .It's nothing . . .

They leave and make their way back down the stairs. They go out onto the balcony and go down to a door on the right. Entering, they see they are in a kind of library, the nuns hard at work at a table in the center. They go to Sister Agnes who sits with Margie on the far side of the room near a window. She says –

Agnes: I understand you were shown Sophia's portrait. The lady portrayed in that picture is Nisan's great founding mother . . .Some say that it was painted at least 500 years ago.

Citan: 500 years ago . . .(pauses) Now that is quite amazing. Personally, I find it intriguing. Do you have any historical material from that period?

Agnes: In our hands, there are no such records left intact. All records and materials concerning Sophia have been lost . . .the portrait is the only thing left. We too do not have much knowledge about her.

Citan: That is too bad! So there really is nothing left at all!?

Agnes: For someone who has helped Marguerite, I would have loved to have shared them . . .But unfortunately I am unable to help here . . .

Citan: Oh well, none the matter. Please do not worry about it. I was just inquiring. (Fei turns to Citan) But, it does seem somewhat strange . . .If such a majestic building as this survived history, then it is likely a scroll or two would remain too. (Fei turns back to Agnes)

Agnes: According to tradition, Sophia was present about 500 years ago . . .She sacrificed herself for the people and has been summoned to be with god. That's all I can tell you.

Citan: . . .I see. (pauses) So everything was lost in the darkness of history.

They turn to leave an make their way over Margie who says –

Margie: I wonder what kind of person Sophia was. I would have loved to have met her.

They go over to the nuns at work, one of them says –

N1: (. . .pauses) Somewhere . . .(pauses) it must be somewhere . . .the truth we have not yet come to know.) She turns to them, saying –

N1: Oh!? That scared me.

Fei: You're very devoted.

N1: Uh, well sort of . . .(pause) It's just that after sneaking into the capital, I started to think about a lot of things . . . And I've come to realize (pauses) the world isn't right the way it is right now!

They go to the next table, talk to a nun –

N2: Why does war never disappear from this world? To me, it is clear that it is meaningless . . .Perhaps it is our fate to be forever at discord with each other?

A nun walks back an forth from shelves to the table. She says –

N3: The road we must take is out there somewhere. A way out of the confusion we are now facing . . .The sister sitting diagonally across from me, is desperately looking for that answer.

N4: We're transcribing scrolls. Scrolls over 100 years old get worn, so we renew them. It is one of our daily tasks.

They exit and go down the balcony to the original door, descending the stairs. On the ground floor, they talk to a nun –

N5: I want to see with my own eyes what will become of this country.

They approach an Aveh soldier, who says –

S1: As a matter of fact, the guy next to me and I were born here. Years ago, we both got tired of the peaceful but boring life here, so we ran away from home. But we both ended up enlisting in the army. It's not that we have any particularly happy memories or whatever here . . it's just that, after all, this is the land of our birth, so well y'know . . .

The man next to him wears a purple robe and he says –

Pr: Preparations should be starting near the border of the sect's country for the charge by the Royal Capital's army. But a miscalculated move directed on the enemy is certain to backfire on us, so we'll be taking covert action for a while. I'm on the way there now, but I thought I'd offer a prayer before I go.

They leave, making their way across the narrow bridge to Nisan. As they walk through town, Bart suddenly stops, saying –

Bart: Ah!

They all turn and see Maison standing at the door of one of the buildings, calling –

Maison: Yo –ung ma – ste –r!

They make their way over to him, he says –

Maison: The people of Nisan were most generous to allow us to rent this house. So there will be no need to seek lodgings at the inn for a while. Also, Master Sigurd wishes a word with you regarding your next move, if he may . . .

Bart: Alright . . .So where is Sig?

Maison: The good Master Sigurd is waiting for you inside.

Bart: Okay, thanks Maison.

Maison steps aside and they enter the 'villa', see Sig over by the right. He says –

Sig: Whenever I come here it always calms my heart. (he walks around the table, turns to them)
Anyway, young master . . .I want to work out what our plans from here on are.

Bart: Alright. But before we do that . . .there is something I want to ask you.

Sig: . . .Me?

Bart: Yeah.

Bart moves to the room on the left, after a while, Sig follows. Citan stands near the doorway. A moment of silence, then –

Bart: Sig . . .What's up with you and that Gebler officer? What's the connection between you and him . . .? You know, (pause) you sure know a lot about Gebler for some reason!

There is a moment of silence as Sig walks over to him, then turns, looking at Citan in the doorway. After a moment, Citan enters and nods once. Fei comes up to stand behind him.

Sig: (turns to Bart) . . .Alright. (pauses) I'll tell you.

Citan enters the room, walking over to Sig's left as Sig says –

Sig: Me and . . .(pause) Citan, here . . .We used to live in Solaris.

Bart: (pauses) Solaris . . . . . .You mean (pause) . . .where Gebler's from?

Sig: That's right.

Maison stands in the other room, he turns and listens.

Sig continues –

Sig: Solaris . . .calls foreigners 'Lambs" . . .They are used as manual labor. Basically it's slavery.

Bart: Slavery? (he turns to look at Fei in the doorway, then faces Sig once more) Is that where you met him?

Citan: Yes, it was there.

Sig: We worked for the Solaris government for a short while . . .
But we learned to dislike their methods and escaped the first chance we had.

Bart looks over at Fei, walks a few steps, then turns to Citan and Sig once more.

Bart: . . .You were friends with these people? (There is silence and Bart walks back to stand in front of Sig) I met you when I was a kid and we've been together ever since then . . . So this would have had to have happened even before then. (They watch him as he walks back, facing Sig) I probably wouldn't have understood this if I had heard it earlier but . . . . . .Why didn't you think I could deal with it now? Surely you could have told me about this? Especially when you had something to do with the people who are backing that Shakhan idiot! (he turns his back) I wish you'd told me sooner.

There is a silence, then Sig speaks –

Sig: . . .(pause) There's nothing I can do about that now. (He turns to Citan) But, there's one thing I want you to believe . . .We left Solaris on our own will and for our own reasons. Now they've appeared before us, we can't just sit back and do nothing. If need be, I will give my life to stop them.

There is silence as Bart bows his head, then he turns, walking back to face Sig once more. Sig looks at him and Bart turns, walking towards Fei, then he stops and shakes his head, coming back to face Sig one more.

Bart: Alright. I understand. But can you elaborate a little more?

Bart sits at the edge of the bed and asks –

Bart: What bugs me is this (pause) 'Surface Dwellers' thing . . . It's as if Solaris is in another location. Like up in the clouds or something?

Sig: Yes, well . . .

Sig: Etrenank, the capital of the Solaris empire is located in the skies above. Solaris is separated from the land by dimensional distortion fields known as 'Gates". Passing between the two requires special means of transportation . . .(pauses) such as an airship. To get to Aveh we stowed away on a regular flight to the surface.

Citan: I came much later than Sigurd did . . .But I also escaped in the same way.

Bart: What are Lambs?

Sig: That is the word Solarians use to indicate those who live on the earth. As I said before, such 'surface dwellers' or 'earth dwellers' are used for manual labor there.

Maison stands in the other room, looking towards the doorway as Sig continues –

Sig: Manual labor could be anything from soldiers to administrative jobs. Solaris gathers its workforce from the land dwellers. Jobs are divided up by who is most suitable. Sometimes people are brainwashed.

Bart: Brainwashed!?

There is a silence, then –

Sig: I . . .(pause) When you, young master, were still an infant . . . I was used as a test subject. There was probably something they valued inside of me.

There is a moment of silence, then Fei asks –

Fei: You too, doc?

Sig and Citan turn to Fei, Citan shakes his head, saying –

Citan: No . . .I was born in the lower city levels. It is not a complete secret . . . But I guess I am a Solarian . . .

Sig and Citan turn back to Bart as Citan continues –

Citan: You see . . .You still need people to run a country . . . . . .No matter how scientifically advanced you are, you have no support without people.

Sig: Pure Solarians are rare. They would not even make up a quarter of Aveh's total population. So, they support their country by stealing surface dwellers.

Bart: Who is that man?

Sig: His name is, Kahr . . .(pause) Kahran Ramsus. As you know he's the Gebler Commander.

Bart: Ramsus . . .?

Sig: We call him Kahr. In Solaris there is an officer training school called 'Jugend'. He became the commander after leaving there.

Citan: He is a lower level citizen, the same as me. However, with his amazing abilities . . . After graduating, he rose through the ranks with unparalleled speed.

Sig: That man had one ideal. To achieve a consolidation of all his colleagues. Even land dwellers, if they had talent were brought into the army.

Bart: So you two were picked by Ramsus . . .?

Citan: No, we were not picked by him . . .we aligned ourselves with him.

A minute pause, then Sig says –

Sig: At that time . . .we agreed with him.

Citan: At the time, Ramsus was our hope. He had high ideals and wanted to change the system in Solaris. To us test subjects and lower level citizens, he was truly all that we wished for.

Bart: A benefactor?

Sig: Yes. . .even I, a test subject, was changed by his ideals.

Bart: So why was it that you wanted to flee from Solaris?

Sig: We were placed in key military positions by Ramsus . . .And thanks to that, we came to know a relationship between Solaris and the surface dwellers.

Bart: The . . .(pauses) 'Lambs' . . .right?

Sig: They weren't just using us 'Lambs' for slave labor . . .They also selected some of us, like me, to be used as subjects in experiments to refine their drugs . . .Drugs that change people's personalities, to make them more aggressive and to draw out their latent abilities. They were using us as human guinea pigs to test their psychological alteration drugs!

Bart: Human guinea pigs . . .!? Experimenting on humans?

Sig: Yes, for example . . .

Sig: 'Drive' That drug, and all others like it that are used now, are by-products of human experimentation . . .

Citan: However, the role of such experimental subjects was not limited to just that!

Fei: This 'Drive' drug is something that anyone in the Solaris army can use?

Citan: (turns to Fei) At least anyone in the Gebler forces who is sent to the surface . . .

Bart: (turns to Fei) You're worried about her, huh?

Fei: (turns to Bart) . . .!

Bart: I saw some . . .in her room.

Citan turns to Bart as Fei says –

Fei: No . . .

Bart: (turns back to Citan) . . .Anyway . . .using slaves as guinea pigs . . .How low are these guys . . .? Damn! (pauses) Hmm . . . I think I get most of it. (turns towards the door, calling -) Old Maison! Go reserve the town hall for us. We'll finish talking there. I'm going outside to get some air.

He leaves and Fei turns to watch him go, then looks at Citan and Sig. Then he approaches Citan who joins him and they talk to Sig who says –

Sig: I should have been honest with him sooner . . .

Citan: It is best not to worry about it. You did all you could at the time. The young one will understand.

They make their way into the other room, talk to Maison who says –

Maison: I am sure the young master would never have dreamed of such a tale.

Fei: . . .(pause) I guess you already knew?

Maison: Well, now that you ask . . .yes I did. However, when Sigurd was telling his story I thought it was best to stay quiet. Please try and help the young master come to terms with all that he has just heard.

They leave the building and look for Bart. They find him on the bridge overlooking the town, deep in thought. Bart says –

Bart: I had no idea Sig had such a past . . .

Citan walks to the other side of Bart and asks –

Citan: Are you still suspicious of Sigurd . . .?

A silence, then –

Bart: Well . . .I mean . . .it was just so sudden, I kind of expected to hear something different . . .like that we were childhood rivals or something . . .But that's nothing compared to the story he just told us, is it?

Citan studies him for a moment, then turns, looking out over the town.

Citan: Hmm. So hearing his story has you confused because it was not so simple . . . There was a time when he was cooperating with some of Gebler's generals . . . Furthermore, behind Gebler was a country you had never even heard of . . .

Bart: (turns to Citan) Hey, what are you picking on me for?

Bart turns back to look out over the town once more as Citan responds –

Citan: No I am not picking on you or blaming anything on you. What I am saying is this . . .If you think about how he feels, then you should see why he could not talk about this with you till now.

Bart turns to look at Citan as he continues –

Citan: Looking at the activities of Solaris toward other countries up until now . . . . . .It has never gone beyond simply maintaining their own empire, or 'self-preservation'. And as you have seen, their military power is immense. So Sigurd was probably thinking ahead . . .First he was probably concentrating on taking care of the problems here on the continent of Ignas. Once they were settled here, it would give him a stronger foundation to deal with Solaris later. Which is a much better plan than rushing straight into a war he knew we could not win. Quite logical, really.

Bart looks at him a moment in silence, then turns to look out over the town.

Bart: Sounds like you understand one another pretty well.

Citan: Well it is not like we are newly acquainted, is it? And we had talked about a lot of things up until we decided to escape from Solaris.

There is a pause, then Bart asks –

Bart: Speaking of that . . .Why did you leave? That Ramsus guy was supposed to be a 'Star of Hope' or something, wasn't he?

After a silence, Bart turns to Citan who says –

Citan: Yes, I certainly thought so at first. But then I realized his way of thinking was not that much of a change from the previous system. Basically, the only difference was whether they stressed people's rank and class, or their skill. The words had changed, but it was still no different from what Solaris itself had been doing until then. He had no intention of bringing everyone a better way of life.

Bart: (turns to look out over town) In other words, he's an elitist. I don't think I like him much either.

There is a pause, then Bart asks –

Bart: So, Citan . . .do you think I can beat Gebler?

Citan: (turns to Bart) Why? Are you planning on fighting them?

Bart: As long as they're working with Shakhan, there's no way around it. The way things are going, I'm sure we'll have to fight them sooner or later.

Citan: (turns back) Hmm . . .I suppose so, but . . .Even if we were to defeat the Gebler forces here, there is still Solaris to deal with. If we are not careful, it is possible that we may get involved in a longer war than that with Shakhan. Do you not agree that continuing the way we have been going is rather hard on everyone? I think it is time we try to get help from a greater number of people.

Bart: So defeating Shakhan's not going to get rid of the likes of Gebler . . . (turns to Citan) I know what you're trying to say . . .'To vanquish Gebler, first gain thy throne!' . . .Right?

Citan turns to look at him for a moment, then turns back to the view once more and says –

Citan: Hmm . . .You could put it that way.

Bart: (turns to look out over town) What do you mean . . .'You could put it that way'? But then again, maybe it's time I did something about that.

Bart joins Fei and Citan and they go to the meeting hall. There, Maison and Sig await, Sig says –

Sig: I went to the toolshop to borrow a table. The owner said . . . 'if we need anything for the young master, just ask for it.'

Bart, Citan and Fei stand around the table, Bart says –

Bart: I'm grateful. (there is a silence as Bart walks over to the wall, stares at a picture) When I was a kid, I borrowed stuff from there and got in big trouble. They all turn to him, Fei asks –

Fei: Borrowed . . .(pauses) What did you take?

Bart: (pause) A toy boat. . . .I think that's what it was. I put fireworks in it and let it float on the cathedral's lake. I always used to play, 'navy'! (he moves to study the next picture) I'm not sure, but I think I pretended the lake was the open sea . . . . . .and I was the fleet commander.

Bart turns to them and says –

Bart: Anyway . . .forget those old stories. (pause) We should get started.

There is silence and he makes his way to the table where there is a map. He begins –

Bart: First . . .Gebler is the big problem.

Citan nods and says –

Citan: Yes, Ramsus is headed towards achieving his goals. That he is now the commander of Gebler is proof of that. A normal man could not progress so quickly through that country's organization. And now he is presently located here in Ignas. (turns to look from Sig to Bart) Frankly, the situation is not very favorable. We need to somehow find a weak spot and attack it with all our might.

Bart walks away, crosses his arms and bows his head, thinking. He drops his arms and paces to the left, looking down with crossed arms once more. Then, looking up, he says –

Bart: First, let's just concentrate on Shakhan. Once he's out of the way and Aveh is safe again, we can think about how to deal with Gebler. With our present strength we should be able to hold off the royal guard forces. The problem is how to deal with Gebler in the meantime . . .They will most likely move at Shakhan's request. They're not just gonna sit by and watch quietly.

Citan turns to Sig, asks –

Citan: . . .May I have a look there please?

Sig moves over and Citan stares at the map, pondering, then looks from Sig to the others, saying –

Citan: In short, we want Gebler to leave for a while . . .At least until we are able to take back the Royal Capital, Bledavik.

Scene cuts to a map of Ignas and the border with Kislev. There are yellow markers indicating the various troop installments. Citan says –

Citan: These are the Gebler units currently in Aveh, correct?

The view focuses on the garrison near Nisan.

Citan: The western guards . . .

To the south is –

Citan: The Royal Capital defense force . . .

And at the northern border –

Citan: And . . .units along the front line at the border with Kislev.

View pulls back, Citan says –

Citan: There are three main groups. Each is made up of a mix of Gebler and Aveh forces. Only two of these are very large.

The markers at the Kislev border and Aveh flash –

Citan: The Royal Capital's defense units and the Kislev border units. The western guard along Nisan's border are little more than a surveillance team.

The southern marker blinks, Sig says –

Sig: In order to recapture the Royal Capital . . . . . .It will be necessary to draw these defense units away from Bledavik.

Citan: We have some Kislev made Gears, correct?

Bart: Yeah, we captured some earlier.

View returns to the western post.

Citan: What if we use those Gears to make a raid on the western guards . . . . . .here at the border with Nisan?

A blue marker appears near the yellow. Bart says –

Bart: I see. We'll draw them out by making it look like Kislev is invading Aveh.

Scene returns to the others as they stand around the table.

Sig: but the problem is . . .will attacking the border guards be enough to set the center in motion?

Citan: To be sure then, Nisan will just have to appear to align with Kislev. If they see it that way, they will certainly make a move.

Bart: (turns to Citan)You're saying that you intend to use Nisan as bait?

Fei: Doc!?

It is Sig who responds, saying –

Sig: Shakhan is very sensitive to Nisan's and Kislev's actions. If Nisan starts moving he will probably leave it up to Gebler, but . . .

Citan shakes his head, saying –

Citan: Of course I do not wish to do that from the beginning. But looking at the situation, we have to be willing to go that far.

Bart turns to Sig, says, "Hmm . . ." then walks over to the map, arms crossed.

Bart: First we infiltrate into the capital. To take out Shakhan, we'll have to meet up with our agents already in the city.

Citan: (turns to Bart) We are forgetting one thing . . .The front lines along Kislev's border.

Bart: (turns to map) . . .!

Scene cuts to map and view of northern border. A red marker appears near the top, then moves down to the forces arranged along the border.

Citan: The main strength of Aveh's fleet is the battleship Kefeinzel. It's been in service since the reign of the last king. Because of its firepower, the whole unit is nicknamed the 'invincible fleet'. I recall yesterday's intelligence report said that the ship is near the border.

Scene returns to the men as they stand around the table. Bart walks off to the left, shaking his head –

Bart: Damn . . .(pause) That puts everything in jeopardy!

Citan: Don't feel so down. I simply wanted you to see the current distribution of force in the area. Even in the worst case that they do come, it will not be such a great problem.

Bart: (turns to Citan) What do you mean?

Citan: I have additional information about Aveh's border fleet. The former Aveh supreme commander was transferred there. Not really transferred, (pause) more like (pause) demoted . . . His name is Vanderkaum.

Sig: Vanderkaum . . .(turns to Citan) You don't mean the Vanderkaum that was in Jugend?

Citan: (turns to Sig) The very same.

They both turn back to Bart, and Citan says –

Citan: Young one, he has not been able to adapt to the change in tactics . . . particularly following the introduction of Gears . . .He is a man who will never stray from his dependence on large naval guns.

Bart: You mean, he's stubborn. He is all size and no real military power. An excellent target for pirates.

Maison: (turns to Bart) Young master! This is not going to be an act of piracy!

Bart: (turns to Maison) Just kidding. (then turns back to Sig)

Citan: Actually, the number of Gears assigned to the fleet seems to have been reduced. (shakes head) Even with that . . . how gallant of him to be so self-righteous.

Bart: Is he that much of a muscle head? It'll be fun taunting him.

Maison: Young master!

Bart: I know! I know! Anyway, Citan, do you think he can strike our Gear forces?

Citan: It is not a problem. Even with Vanderkaum, we have enough forces left to pull off the feint. However, it would not be wise to underestimate our opponents.

They return to the map as Sig says –

Sig: Apart from our main unit heading for Bledavik . . .we must keep the fleet at the Kislev border from returning to the capital.

A blue marker intercepts the yellow.

Bart: So you're suggesting we have another unit?

Citan: A few effective soldiers to hold the enemy at bay . . . A small force is best.

Sig: A small force . . .?

Citan: What if Fei leads a group of Gears there?

Scene cuts back to the table and they all turn to look at Fei, awaiting his response.

Fei: (looking back and forth) Me. . .?

Sig turns to Citan and says –

Sig: Hold on now! There's no reason to involve you all in this!

Sig turns to look at Fei who says –

Fei: . . .I'll do it. Yes, let me do it. When do we leave?

Bart walks over, looks at Fei and asks –

Bart: . . .Are you sure?

Fei: (turns to look at Bart and nods)
We've come this far . . .Hey, we're friends to the end, now!

Sig turns to look at Bart who nods once. Citan says –

Citan: Speed is everything. We should do this as soon as possible.

Citan turns to look at Sig and Bart says –

Bart: Alright, tomorrow!

Sig looks from Citan to the others, then says –

Sig: I am truly grateful . . .(pause) Fei . . .(pause) Citan.

Sig turns to look at Citan who nods once and comes around the table.

Bart: Yeah! (he looks at each of them) There's no way we can lose!
No one will die in vain!

Maison: (steps forward) Well put, young master!

Bart turns to nod at Maison and scene fades.

The Mountain Pass Operation

Dawn paints the town of Nisan in rosy shades of pink. Inside the rented villa, Bart, Citan, Fei, Maison and Sigurd stand in the main room as a door opens. Margie enters and calls out –

Margie: Good morning! (she comes in and stands near the table)
What's with the long face? Not feeling well? Or are you feeling sad about saying goodbye? Or maybe you're just nervous?

Bart faces her over the table and snaps –

Bart: Shut up, stupid! Don't bug me!

Margie: Hee hee. (she turns to look around at the others)
Well . . .it's almost time.

Bart: Yeah , yeah . . . (turns to others) Is everyone ready to go? I'll be waiting here so let me know when you are through preparing.

Fei and Citan go to Sig who says –

Sig: There's still some time until we leave. Why don't you make preparations?

They turn to Margie who says –

Margie: Bart told me. You're helping out with the plan too? So you're caught up in this now as well?

Fei: I've come this far, so I might as well stay till the end.

Margie: Thanks. I know you'll do a good job!

They make their way to Maison who says –

Maison: I have been waiting for this day for a long time.

They leave and both men stand outside for a moment.

Citan: There is a new wind blowing today . . .

They make their way down the street and talk to a man who says –

M1: You're friends of my young lord, right? Since you're friends with him, I'm sure you already know, but . . . He'll be the leader of this country one day! I had a chance to take care of him when he was small. That's why I call him my 'young lord'. Please look after him for me!

They make their way to the general store and speak to the shopkeep –

SL: Lately, this town has gotten lonely. But I'm stubborn, I won't close up shop!

They buy a few items and leave, talking to a lady in the street who says –

W1: So it has finally begun. My late father always said, "Don't miss the greater happiness by being misled by minor sufferings"! It hurts to see our children placed in danger. But if it moves our country in the right direction, then it's in their benefit.

They go around the town and others wish them well. The young woman on the bench says –
Yw: I had no idea . . .Why, the Great Mother is younger than I am!? I'm new here so I don't know much . . . I don't know exactly what is going on, but let's just avoid any trouble now, okay!?
An old woman by the exit tells them –
Ow1: Most of the families with children have evacuated. They were afraid of getting caught up in a battle here. It's so lonely now. How I miss them . . .

They go back to the villa, speak with Bart –

Bart: Are you ready?

Fei: Alright!

Scene opens at the Secret Dock, where Bart, Citan and Fei speak with Sig as Margie and Sister Agnes look on.

Sig: Our comrades in Nisan will hit the western guard in Kislev uniforms (pause) as planned. We'll wait for the right moment, then head for the palace in the Yggdrasil!

Bart: (nods) Got it. But avoid any unnecessary deaths. This especially goes for the Aveh troops (pause) and the people from Gebler.

Sig: Yes. (pause) We understand.

Fei: I guess I'm going to raise some hell in my Weltall then.

Sig: (turns to Fei) We're counting on you!

Fei and Bart both nod once and turn to Margie. Bart steps forward and she says –

Margie: Next time we meet, I won't be able to call you 'Bart' or 'young master'. Maybe, (pauses) 'Your Majesty' . . .?

Bart: Cut it out. Bart's fine . . .Great (pause) Mother (pause) of Nisan!

Margie: Hey . . .! You know I hate that title!

Bart: Ha ha ha!
There is a moment of silence, then Bart says –
Bart: Well, we're outta here!
Margie: Okay. Good luck!

Bart nods to her and scene cuts to the Yggdrasil as it descends into the sand. Sister Agnes and Margie look on and Agnes says –

Agnes: Marguerite and Bartholomew . . .Seeing you two brings my hopes up. (Margie turns to her) Long ago before the Fatimas of Aveh were called Fatima . . .The royal brothers and their wives oversaw many prosperous reigns or eras. I'm looking forward to the day, when as the Great Mother of the Nisan Sect . . . you will take your place on the throne as Bartholomew's wife.

Margie: (approaches Agnes) What!? Hey, hold on! I hate talking about queens and romance . . .! Bart and I are best friends!

Agnes: (turns to Margie) Ha ha, (pauses) marriage IS the best friendship.
(she begins to walk away as Margie stands behind, continuing)
Well Marguerite, at the rate that you are maturing into a beautiful woman . . .
. . .I don't think Bart will be able to ignore you much longer.

Margie: (turns to look at Agnes' departing form) Stop it, (pauses) you're embarrassing me!

She follows Agnes and scene cuts to Fei, Bart and Citan as they stand with troops in the Gear Hangar near Weltall. General Maitreya, says-

Maitreya: Each squad of Gears take off, in order, from here to avoid being picked up. We'll meet at the Rockies by the border tomorrow at 1200. Got it?

They respond "O. K. !" , another says – "The time has finally come." One waves his arms in the air, "I'm pumped!"

Bart: Though the warship is outdated, you're only going in as a small unit. It's going to be a tough fight, but you could change Aveh's future. I'm counting on you. (he nods once)

Maitreya: Leave it up to us, young master! We'll drag Vanderkaums' tail around and around! (turns to Fei) Right, son!?

Fei: (turns to Maitreya) . . .Don't call me 'son'. Cuz you sure aint my pops. (turns back to Bart)

Maitreya: Huh? Ha, ha, ha, ha . . . (turns to Bart) Well, young master . . .we promise to make something out of this battle!

The troops march off and Fei looks for a moment at Bart, then he turns and leaves. He stops as Bart says –

Bart: Fei, it's odd for me to say this since I'm the one who got you involved . . .but . . .be careful, okay!?

Fei: (turns to Bart) You too . . .

Bart: If . . .anything happens to me . . .take care of Margie and them for me!

Fei turns away and says –

Fei: . . .Don't jinx yourself! (pause) It's not like you . . .But . . .I'll take care of them. Don't worry.

He walks away silently and scene cuts to the Yggdrasil's launch pad as it opens to the desert, and Weltall blasts off.

That night . . .

Scene opens in the Gun Room as Citan walks in. Maison asks-

Maison: Oh, aren't you going to rest up a little?

Citan moves over to talk with Maison –

Maison: (turns to wall) At last we are heading to Bledavik tomorrow . . .Though he is the prince, our young master doesn't know the Royal Capital very well . . .I'd always felt that was an awful pity. But despite that, I tried my best to raise him as Crown Prince. However, looking back, I might have put too much of the 'burdens of kingship' on him too early in life . . .And it might have been too much for a child with a future like his to handle . . .I must be the most terrible minder ever!

There is a silence, then Citan says –

Citan: My dear Lord Maison . . .(pauses) I hardly think that is right! The young one would have taken the burden off of himself had he not wanted to bear it any longer! He is a fine man now . . .far capable of handling any such burdens or pressures. And I believe you are the very ones who have given him the strength to do so.

Maison: (turns to face Citan) Oh my good Doctor Uzuki . . .

Citan goes to the bridge, sees the helm is empty. He goes into anteroom to the ladder and climbs up.

Scene cuts to a view of the red moon, then moves down to Bart standing at the helm looking out. Sig comes to stand next to him, asing –

Sig: Why such a glum face? Tomorrow is our first return to your castle in 12 years.

Bart is silent, then says –

Bart: Returning to the castle . . .After we get the royal palace back, I guess I'm going to be the king . . . . . .I'm not very suited for it, am I?

Sig: You'll get used to it.

There is another silence, then Bart says –

Bart: Listen, (pauses) Sig . . .

Sig: Yes?

A pause, then –

Bart: I guess it really . . . (pause) doesn't matter who the king is, does it? As long as it's a symbol of hope, right? It doesn't have to be me.

They stand silently for a moment, looking out over the desert, then Sig says –

Sig: I was kidnapped by Solaris and brainwashed for use as a human guinea pig. (a silence, then he turns to Bart) But, even they couldn't erase my desire to return home. Then, I remembered you and Marguerite, not as the royalty of our country but as just normal children. I don't care about rebuilding a dynasty. I want to regain this kingdom because it belongs to you . . . Because it's your home!

Bart: (turns to Sig) Because it's my home?

Sig: Yes. For that, we must take Shakhan down tomorrow. Am I correct?

Bart sort of nods and says –

Bart: . . .Right. Then, let's do it!!

Sig: But first . . .I think you need to take a bath!

Bart: A bath!?

Sig: You don't look like a king at all!

The scene pulls back to view Citan who listens, pondering, below. Sig continues –

Sig: You are facing the enemy's leader . . .so you must have a noble appearance!

Bart: Hey, you just said it didn't matter whether I'm a king or not!!

Sig: That is that, this is this!

Citan says –

Citan: That someone was waiting for you . . .That one thought was all it took for you to regain yourself . . . You are a great man, (pauses) Sigurd . . .

Citan turns to look up at the red moon overhead.

View shifts down from the moon and back into a bedroom in Fatima Castle. A large canopy bed is occupied by the sleeping forms of Miang and Ramsus.

Ramsus: He's out of control! Stop him!
(the officers all look at him, asking frantically-)
I don't care how, just stop him!

As they watch, the Red Gear flies forward and engages the officers in their Gears. They are defeated and Ramsus looks up into the glowing visage of the Gear, saying –

Ramsus: (Th, this can't be . . .)

More Gears come forward to attack, they are annihilated. The Red gear runs forward to stand above Ramsus who looks up with sword drawn. He says –

Ramsus: (Ugh! H, hel . . .)

The Gear rises into the air, a white light consumes everything and Ramsus screams –

Ramsus: (Uaaaaahhhhhhh!!)

A sudden crunch, red dissolves the scene and Ramsus sits up in bed, heart pounding. Miang rises, asks –

Miang: What's wrong? You look like you have just had a nightmare . . .
It wasn't the same dream again, was it?

Ramsus' heart subsides and he responds –

Ramsus: No . . .It was nothing.

He rises, gets out of bed. Miang calls –

Miang: Kahr . . .

He leaves, shutting the door behind him and Miang calls out –

Miang: Peeping is not very becoming, you know . . .!?

An electric hum sounds for a moment, bathing all in blackness for an instant, then flashes. A figure stands in the shadows. Miang says-

Miang: Heh heh . . .I saw the boy that you are after fight in the Tournament . . . I could tell right away. He resembles you greatly.

There is a silence, then –

Grahf: You used the influence of the Ministry to set you up with that man . . . I don't know what you are up to, but don't you dare think about plotting against me. You stay out of this!

He disappears with an electric blackness.

Miang: Oh, I see the news has already reached you . . .As usual, you're the first to hear about everything. But don't worry . . .I won't steal your 'prized possession'. I'll cooperate . . . (pauses) Besides, you and I go back a long way . . .

Scene cuts to bridge of the Yggdrasil where Citan, Bart, Maison and Sigurd stand at the helm. Franz says, "Oh . . .?"

Bart: What's up?

Franz: No . . .for a moment, I thought I caught some unnatural sounds . . .

Bart: We're near the capital. It's probably just some kind of ship from there.

Franz: But it's not from the surface . . .It's from under the sand!

Bart: Under the sand? (pause) This is the only sand cruiser in all of Aveh!

Sig: We haven't heard anything about a new ship even from the spies at Aveh Naval HQ. Franz, can you try again and confirm what it is?

Franz: (tries) . . .I can't catch it again. It could have been a sand-whale . . .

The crewman to Franz' right calls out –

C1: Young master! I'm detecting an increase in the use of F band! That's the Royal Capital's defense force's frequency!

Franz: There . . .On the surface layer! I'm detecting sounds of anchors being weighed in and engines being activated! The Royal Capital's defense fleet must be departing . . .!

C1: We also intercepted a transmission from the patrol at the border with Kislev! They're requesting immediate backup from the Royal Capital! Looks like we've really raised some hell at the border!

Bart nods emphatically and says –

Bart: . . .Alright! We'll start! Ready the shuttle boats!

Sig turns and begins to walk to the exit, Bart turns around, calling after him –

Bart: When we land, hide the ship!

Bart walks forward, passes Maison who says –

Maison: Y, young master! I have an awfully bad feeling about this . . . Do be very careful!

Bart: It's alright, Old Maison.

Bart bows head in a nod, departs.

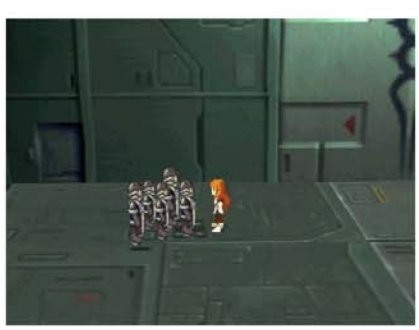
At Gebler Headquarters . . .

Renk: What? This little girl's our commanding officer?

Broyer: She's said to be an elite from out of Jugend.

Stratski: She returned single-handedly from the Kislev infiltration operation.

Helmholz: And 'empty – handedly' I hear! No souveneirs for the Commander, huh?



Renk: Yep, what a pretty face. She's not the soldier type.

Elly calls out –

Elly: You there! Is that how you address a superior officer? Remember you rank!

Renk: Oh, scary!

Vance: We don't care much for rank . . .and we don't care much for Renk either! But just because you're beautiful doesn't mean you have to be cocky.

Broyer: Ha! This jerk's just jealous.

Vance: What? I'm much prettier! How could I be jealous?

Stratski: Hey, shut that perv up! He gives me the creeps.

Renk: And that's how it is . . .(pause)
So don't get in our way, 'Miss Lieutenant'.

Elly: . . .

She walks away, leading them towards a very sophisticated looking Gear which is shot through with shades of pink. They pause in front of it and Renk says –

Renk: . . .Anyway, let's just get this thing moving.
Can't tell what it can do just by looking at it.

Stratski: What kind of machine is this? I've never seen it before.

Renk: It's a new model Gear, called Vierge, that's for officer's use only. It's said that people with normal mental power can't operate it.

Stratski: So, she's still a 'Jugend' regardless of having no ability?

Vance: Hah, this looks like fun. Let's see what she can do!

View pulls in on Vierge, fades out.

Scene cuts to Fei in Weltall in the mountains with the other red soldier Gears. They pause, looking up at the entrance way above. Maitreya orders –

Maitreya: Head for the mountain pass. There's no time to waste. Deploy!

The soldiers move on out, Weltall makes his way up to the entrance, fighting a few battles along the way. They enter a new cavern, make their way up to the top, where Fei runs into a lone Gear who says –

Rb: I seem to have become a little lost in here. Oh and I saw some really strong – looking Gears flying around above here. By the way, I found these things during my travels. See anything you like . . .?

Fei buys and refuels, Rb says "I hope to see you again." He makes his way to the exit to the left, battling enemies along the way. He emerges outside and his alarm suddenly goes off, bathing the cockpit in red. Fei hears, "Fei A Gebler Gear unit!" He turns to the left, asking –

Fei: What?

Looks up and sees enemy Gears fly through the crevasse towards him. He says to the soldier Gear on the cliff.

Fei: Let me handle this!

Sg: B, but . . .

Fei: We don't have time! While we're wasting time here, Bart's team is already on their way to the castle. Hurry!

Sg: R, roger.

The soldier Gears make their way above. Scene cuts to Elly, who sits inside her Gear, watching the proceedings. Her troops rush in and she says –

Elly: That Gear!? Don't tell me it's Fei!?

Broyer: Hey, is that him? The guy from before?

Renk: Yep. That's him alright.

Broyer: Good. It's time for a rematch. Don't fall behind, sister.
(he blasts off)

Renk: You're in the way. Why don't you stay over there and just watch.
(blasts off, another Gear approaches)

Stratski: Yeah, yeah. We can take care of these guys on our own.
(blasts off as another approaches)

Helmholz: Sorry about this.
(another comes near)

Vance: Get outta the way.

Elly: Y, all of you! Hold! I haven't given out any orders to attack yet!

Scene cuts to cliff side where they are all arrayed against Fei. Fight begins! After many rounds, Fei defeats all five and scene cuts to Elly as she watches Fei, the voices of her officers coming over the 'comm.

Renk: Vance! Helm!
You two okay!?

Helmholz: Graaaah!

Vance: Uuaaaaaah!

Vance: Oh yeah!? I just need more! I need more 'Drive'!!

Elly: . . .(pauses) I can't do it. I can't . . . fight Fei . . .but . . .

Elly: The only thing left . . .is to use the 'Drive' . . .

Scene goes red and she says "But" and begins to remember –

Scene cuts to a view of Elly running down a hall which tilts crazily in all directions. Her footsteps sound hollow in her ears and she views all with a red haze. She hears as if from a great distance "W, what are you doing?" and "Don't worry. It's just the 'Drive'." She hits a dead end, two closed doors block her way. A bluish white light begins to overwhelm her senses. It goes to white and she is once more running down the hall, her footsteps a dull clatter as the entire hall swims in her vision. She hears more voices, one of them her own from far off, "The 'Drive' will just readjust your balance." She says, "I don't want it!" and the other voice continues, "and make you feel good." She continues, "I, I don't want to use it!" She hits the dead end once more, looking frantically for a way out. Again the white light and her mad dash down the floating hallway. She hears the voices say, "You think we're going to make an exception – " She calls out, "Please! Go away!"

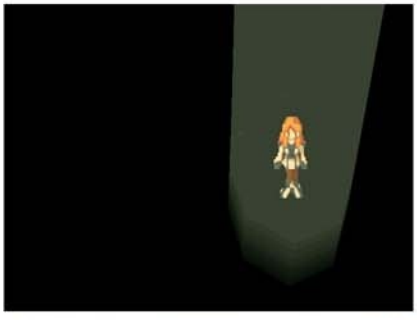
They continue, "because your father's top brass?" She hits the double doors, turns in the hallway to face something, white light once more consumes her senses.

Scene cuts to an image of Elly in a cylinder of light from above as the events in the hallway unfold in the background. She sees herself face a contingent of men who have cornered her at the end of the hallway. She hears a voice ask, "You have no recollection?" Another voice responds, "There were no records on mental enhancement drug use up until now." The first voice says, "Then it was sudden." The second says, "She's probably a type that can't handle the 'Drive'.

That probably caused her lapse into delirium." The other voice asks, "And her loss of self control?" The second says, "You mean an unconcious burst of pent-up antipathy? But everyone has that."

Elly sees herself backed up against the doors by the approaching men and the voices continue, "Is that why the innate ability is so high?" The second responds, "Yes . . .What did the Commander call those girls again? It's probably higher than they are" The first says, "Then it's an instantaneous jump in numerical value." The second responds, "But we can't use her as a test subject in front of Erich." The first says, "It's a pity we can't manage it . . .since there is so much potential." View changes to Elly alone in darkness as she stands in a circle of light. The voices continue, "We'll leave you to the bureau." The second says, "Stay at your residence until further notice."

The first says, "Don't worry! You have power worthy of the chosen one's. It's those weak people's fault for not being able to withstand your powers."



The scene fades away back to Elly in the corridor as she backs away slowly from the men who approach. She hears her voice, "Please! Stop it!" then a sudden bright white light with the sound of shrieking metal, a brief image of her head clasped in her hands as she stands in the blood soaked hallway, bodies strewn everywhere.

Scene cuts to mountain gorge once more, Elly in her Gear as Renk says –

Renk: Don't! Any more 'Drive' and you'll waste your mind!!

Vance: I don't care! I'm already messed up as it is!!

Elly: Stop this now, Vance. (pauses) . . .I'll handle it.

Scene shift as a dull thunk is heard. Elly's face is obscured by her console. Abrupt distancing as a white haze consumes everything and she enters battle with Fei!

Scene cuts to Weltall on ledge where he faces this new Gear. Fei calls out –

Fei: . . .That voice!? . . .Elly? Elly, is that you!?

He faces the new Gear and after a moment, Elly responds. Her face is wildly different, her voice odd –

Elly: Fei . . .What're you doing? You shouldn't be here!

Fei: Elly!? Your face . . .!? What's wrong? Don't tell me you're using that personality-changing drug that Bart told us about!?

Fight begins and Vierge rushes forward to attack, misses and Fei calls out –

Elly: It has nothing to do with you. And would you quit trying to be so friendly!

She rises in the air, her Gear arcing it's back as tiny ovoid shaped fly out of its wings, they erupt in laser bright burst of flame, damaging Weltall. The others look on in amazement, Broyer says –

Broyer: Wow! Did you see that!?

Vance: Aerods?

Renk: Those were aerods!

Helmholz: Animum Ether Response – Offensive Drones . . .Commonly known as Aerods . . .Within Gebler, there are only a handful of people capable of using them . . . From what I hear, it should only be people from the Elements Class.

Stratski: B, but isn't it like, a side effect of the 'Drive'? It's no big deal, right . . .?

Renk: . . .No, the Drive can only draw upon the potential that already exists in her. You're looking at . . .the real thing boys!

The fight continues, Fei lands in a few heavy blows, knowing time is of the essence.

Fei: Elly, stop it! Why must we fight!?

There is a pauses, then she answers –

Elly: Why? It's obvious. It's divine providence! We are the chosen people, the Abel . . .Our purpose of existence is to subordinate the earth dwelling 'Lambs'. . . . . .Those who stand in our way must be eliminated!

She rushes forward, hits him, he uses a combo-maneuver on her, she rises up once more, seemingly unharmed and Fei calls out –

Fei: Elly, snap out of it! Your emotions are being controlled by the drug!

Elly: This is my true nature! There is no other!

Fei: That's a lie! You once felt responsible, blaming yourself for causing the incident in Lahan by landing there. You were considerate of me when I was troubled . . . The real you would never say anything like that!!

Elly: You talk as if you would know . . .Yet you know nothing!

She rushes forward, lands a heavy blow and Fei responds with a hard hit. They exchange a few more blows, then –

Elly: Hahaha! Writhe! Dance!! Die and rot in obscurity here!

Fei: . . .Argh! Elly . . .Must I fight you!?

He lands in a heavy hit, she responds with a multiple deathblow and Fei rises slowly, knowing he must finish this. After a strong deathblow by Fei, he kneels down and Elly calls out –

Elly: It looks like it's over for you. I'll put you out of your misery now!

Scene switches to a view of Vierge as Elly continues –

Elly: Fear not! In return for treating me so kindly, I will kill you painlessly. Farewell, (pauses) Fei . . .

A red light appears, washing over the scene and an electric buzz is heard, causing Elly to moan in agony. Vierge convulses and Elly's voice comes over the 'comm where she is hunched over in pain –

Elly: Uhh! . . Aagh . . .Ah . . . M, my head . . .

Fei watches, slowly rising to battle stance, unsure. He says –

Fei: . . .What happened? There's something wrong with Elly. I can probably stop her now!!

He rushes forward while her guard is own, pinning her to the ground. He calls –

Fei: Elly! Wake up and snap out of it!

She struggles beneath him.

Elly: Ugh! . . .Silence! Impertinent fool! I will not listen to a Lamb . . .

She makes vain struggle to rise, Weltall pinning her shoulder –

Elly: !! (pauses) That's (pause) . . .not . . .true (pause) I . . .No . . . I . . .don't . . .want(pause) this . . .Guh!

She struggles to rise once more, unsuccessfully. Fei asks –

Fei: Are you okay!? Elly! What!? Are the effects of the drug wearing off?

Elly: Uuahh!

She attempt futilely to rise, gasping in pain.

Fei: Is that it? Elly! Is that what's happening!?

She struggles, says –

Elly: Sh, shut up! I've no need for outward appearances of compassion. . . .
I, I , . . .erh (pauses) F . . .Fe . . .i . . .H, hel . . .p . . .Th, this . . .isn't . . .
This isn't . . .me . . .

Fei: Hang in there, Elly! Don't let go of your true self!

Elly: No - - -!

A scream, then she rises, a white light consuming everything . . . Scene cuts to Vierge standing as electric bolts crackle around it, Elly shouts –

Elly: Nooooo!!

The struggle ends abruptly, Elly sinking to her knees. Fei gets out of Weltall, running towards Vierge –

Fei: Elly!

Later as they stand outside their Gears which kneel dormant on the stone. Fei asks her –

Fei: Elly, why . . .?

Elly: (head drops) I warned you . . .I said the next time we met we'd be . . .enemies.

Fei: But, there's no reason for you to do this to yourself just so you can fight. There's no reason for you and I to fight . . .
None at all.

She looks up and says –

Elly: There . . .was no other choice . . .I'm a Solaris officer . . .I can't turn my back on my unit, the mission . . .

Fei: Why did you have to use the 'Drive'?

Elly: I didn't want to . . .When I use it, I change. I feel like I'm dominated by some unknown power that I never wanted . . .There's a power in me I don't want to admit. But . . .(pauses) I want to protect my allies . . .So, I had no choice but to use . . . (pause) the 'Drive'.

Fei: . . .Elly, you're the same as me.

Elly: The same? . . .Probably. I felt I knew you ever since I first met you . . . Probably because our problems were so similar.

Fei steps forward –

Fei: I'm here for you. It may not be much, but at least I can relate to how you feel, Elly.

Elly: What? Are you saying we lick each other's wounds?

Fei: No, that's not . . .(pauses, looking down a moment)
Well, I guess I am . . .Sorry . . .

Elly: (looks up, shakes her head) . . .I'm sorry. I'm not being fair, am I . . .?

He looks up as she drops her head once more.

Fei: No, I'm just pessimistic sometimes. But . . .even so, it's better than worrying about it (pause) by yourself.

She looks up at him, says –

Elly: Fei . . .

They look at each other a moment, then Fei turns his head, saying –

Fei: You won't change your mind . . .?

Elly: Please, don't look so sad. I have no choice. It is my only home . . .

They are silent a moment, Then Fei turns away, saying –

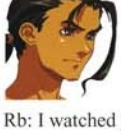
Fei: . . .I have to go. My 'friends' are waiting for me.

Elly nods and he walks away. Then he stops, turning to her as he says –

Fei: If you can, get out of the army, Elly . . .That look doesn't suit you at all.

She watches him mount Weltall's knee, then her head bows as he enters the Gear. It rises and the scene fades to –

-Inside of the next cavern, Fei says –



Fei: I gotta hurry . . .

He speaks to the repair bot.

Rb: I watched you from the shadows. You're very powerful!

He offers fuel and parts, Fei refuels and quickly makes his way up to the exit, fighting more battles. He approaches a bright pool of light at the top and looks up, saying –

Fei: Looks like the mountain peak is right above here!

Scene cuts to the Gun Room where Maison is polishing some glasses. The tinkling sound of broken glass is heard and Maison says –

Maison: The young master's cup . . .

He turns around, saying –

Maison: Is something bad going to happen to him . . .?

Meanwhile . . .

Scene cuts to the inside of the waterworks below Fatima Castle. Citan, Bart, Sig and a handful of pirates discuss their next move. Bart says –

Bart: . . .Sig and I will take two men and head for the top floor. Citan, you take the two remaining men and open the castle gate to let in our main force. If we can catch Shakhan we are sure to succeed.

Citan: Right. When you capture Shakhan give the signal. It is probably best to open the gate at that time.

Bart turns to address the other men –

Bart: Above us is the Castle Bailey. The keep must fall quickly. Shakhan should be on the top floor.

Sig turns to Bart and says –

Sig: . . .In the room that used to be used by the young master's father. Try not to damage the castle, avoid all needless combat, and above all, remember –speed!

Bart: That's why there are so few of us. Our objective is Shakhan! So ignore the Gebler and Aveh soldiers.

Sig turns back to the men and Bart looks around, saying –

Bart: Alright, let's move on out!

Bart turns to Sig who says –

Sig: Young master, don't try to be a hero . . . just get the job done.

Bart talks to Citan who says –

Citan: This time when the government changes, the implications are huge. We must succeed at all costs.

He sounds the men –

P1: Damn Shakhan . . .When I get a hold of him I'll swing him around by his hair . . . after I've given him a hair transplant.

P3: Soon I'll return to the castle! I wonder if the old man from the dining hall is still alive?

P4: Let's not fight with our cousins in the Aveh army and finish this.

P2: Pull yourself together.

Bart approaches the old man near the ladder.

Old man: Could this be . . .His Highness Bartholomew? (pauses) It's been a long time. You were still a child when your father, the King, passed away. How I miss those days. I am glad to see that you are still alive!

Bart: Old man, that was then but this is now. When things calm down, I'll come back.

Bart climbs the ladder and –

Scene cuts to a view of the fountain as Citan, Sig, Bart and the four pirates emerge. Bart says –

Bart: Let's go!

Bart, Sig and Citan all step forward as one and stop, thinking, "!" The double doors open before them and Miang and Shakhan step out. Bart calls out –

Bart: You've saved us the trouble of finding you, Shakhan! Now get ready!

Shakhan: We've been expecting you!

Bart: What!?

All around, an army of Aveh guards appears along the balcony. Sig, Bart and Citan look around as they pop into view, guns drawn. Sig says –

Sig: Crap! An ambush!

Citan turns to Miang and says-

Citan: Oh –oh . . .! (pauses) Where is Kahr . . .?

Miang: I see you are quick to catch on. Ramsus shall be taking care of all your divided forces out by the Nisan border as we speak. Ramsus easily saw through your plan to use a feint attack by Kislev long ago. Don't underestimate us . . .Hyuga, have you lived down here so long that your mind has slipped? And Sigurd, who would have thought you would have joined the last survivors of the royal dynasty . . .

Sigurd: Damn it . . .why are you still backing Shakhan? What does it matter to you who the king is?

Miang: Hah! You suggest the son of murdered King Fatima? He refused to cooperate! You mean to say that now he wants to be our puppet all of a sudden? That I don't believe . . . even coming from the mouth of a traitor like you. Ha ha ha . . . Besides, stupidity in puppets has its advantages.

Shakahn turns to her, asking –

Shakhan: Stu, stupidity!? Miang, what's that supposed to mean?

Miang turns to Shakhan, says –

Miang: Minister Shakhan, I'll let you handle this. You must protect your own position. We don't care who is sitting on the throne. Any obedient sheep would be fine. However, isn't there something that you still have to do? If you will only do that, then we'll help you as much as possible.

Shakhan turns to the side, says –

Shakhan: Yes, you don't have to tell me. One must take care of one's own country's criminals personally.

Miang turns to look at the others, says –

Miang: Then, with your permission I shall take my leave . . .

Bart calls out –

Bart: Hey now! Wait a minute!

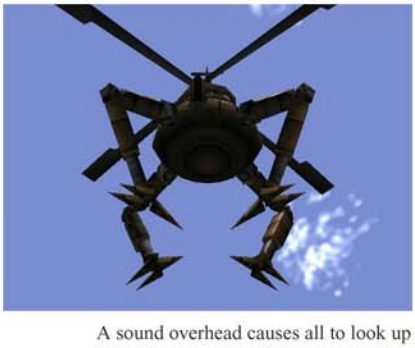
Miang: Goodbye . . .(pauses) boys.

She walks away into the shadows and Shakhan says –

Shakhan: You pirate . . .no you're just a sandworm. You've caused me enough shame. But this is the end. You didn't know your place and now all that awaits you is annihilation. Prepare to fire . . .!

Something causes Shakhan to exclaim –

Shakhan: What!?



A sound overhead causes all to look up as a giant rotating blade comes into view, followed by another. It's the Land Crab! It descends, landing before Bart, Sig and Citan. Maison is visible in the machine. He calls out –

Maison: You wretched rebel, Shakhan! Make one move and this gatling gun shall be spitting fire!

Bart calls out –

Bart: Old Maison!

Maison turns to Bart and says –

Maison: Reinforcements have arrived, young master. Please come aboard.

He causes the Land Crab's legs to fold, it descends further so that all can get in. Sig, Bart, Citan and the pirates all get inside and Maison says-

Maison: Shall we depart?

Bart: See ya! You bald geezer! We'll settle this later!

As the blades begin spinning faster, he calls out –

Bart: Till then . . .go get your head waxed!

The Crab rises, preparing to depart when a sickly sound is heard from one of its engines as the blades slow down. Citan says –

Citan: This . . .is not good . . .

Smoke begins pouring out of the rotor's machinery and as the Crab goes back down, the blades disappear in a cloud of belching smoke and flames. Shakhan watches non-plussed and asks –

Shakhan: Is this some kind of joke? (pauses) Hmm, it seems sandworms can't fly after all. Just surrender. Thanks for the laughs . . .I almost hate to have to shoot you.

Bart: Crap! I guess we're gonna get mauled . . .

Maison: Everyone . . .please get down.

Bart: Do you have plan, Maison?

Maison: Leave it to me!

They duck down inside and the Crab begins making its way around the perimeter. Bart says –

Bart: Maison, you're just walking around in circles.

The crab pauses, gets ready –

Maison: just leave it to me.

It springs off the far wall, lands on the fountain, goes over the edge of the castle walls, disappearing from view.

And Shakhan?

Scene cuts to Gun Room, where Bart, Citan and Maison stand with the pirates. Bart, his head lowered, says –

Bart: Thanks for saving us, Old Maison!

Maison: Please raise your head. My duty is to protect the young master. I'm sorry it took me so long to help you.

Bart shakes his head, saying –

Bart: I feel bad you had to get involved . . .I appreciate it . . .But I had no idea you could operate such a thing.

Maison: It's a trick I picked up long ago . . .It's nothing special. I'm no expert on it. I'm actually a bit embarrassed about it.

The sound of the door swishing open behind them causes Bart to turn as Sig approaches.

Sig: Young master! The Royal Capital's armies are returning! We were the ones who took the bait. We must escape before we get caught! Head for the bridge as soon as you are through with your preparations!

He leaves and Citan and Bart go to the bridge –

Scene cuts to a view of the mountain's top where Fei and the soldiers peer over the edge to the desert ground below. Fei asks –

Fei: Is that . . .Vanderkaum's border fleet . . .?

View shift to a wider angle so that the long plumes of sand disturbed by the fleet are visible as they make their way.

Maitreya: Our job is to slow them down. (pause) So how do you want to do it?

Fei: . . .Simple, we do this.

Strides forward and blasts down as Maitreya looks on. He says –

Maitreya: . . .He might even be more gung-ho than the young master.

He calls to the others –

Maitreya: Fallon! Follow the kid! The rest of you, stay with your unit but follow me! Don't fall behind the kid! We're going in too!

Scene cuts to the inside of a vessel, red light bathes all, sirens blaring as an officer reports -

O1: Bogeys incoming
Vector 3-3-6! 2 groups, about 7-8 machines, distance 2000!

Behind him a robed man responds -

R1: Relay to all ships! Fire at will, begin evasive action! But, don't let fire support positions collapse!
O1: Roger. Flagship to all ships . . .You are free to fire at will! Let's dance!
O2: All rapid Fire Control Systems . . .commence operation!

R1: Lay aerial mines. Projection pattern, mark 3!
O1: How many machines are on air patrol!?
View shifts to include another man who says -

Vanderkaum: Aviation Officer, wait! (turns to O1) Comm Officer! Change of orders. Contact Von Hipper . . . Have the second destroyer squadron approach the enemy flank. Open the fleet's side and bait them into entering the Kefeinzel's main gun's firing arc.

There is a pause and the robed man turns to him, starting -

R1: Huh? (pause) It's stupid! There's no way the flagship's gun can hit speeding Gears . . .

Vanderkaum: Fire control! Gunnery chief! Ready the type 3 shells. Pull back the deck gunners and prepare the engage the Kefeinzel's main cannon . . .I'll annihilate them into pure energy . . .

He flings his arms about and the robed man approaches -

R1: Admiral! What are you doing pulling the anti-Gear gunners back!?

Vanderkaum: (turns to R1) Quiet down, Aviation Officer! Thanks for your valuable opinion but I am in charge, not you! What use are pea shooters and 40 sem guns? (turns away) Discussion over. Captain! Not too fast! We don't want to leave the enemy behind.

View tilts to the forward screens as the robed man mutters -

R1: (Your plan will never work . . .!)

Scene cuts to overhead view of Weltall as Fallon calls over -

Fallon: Aim for the flagship heading west. (Weltall makes his way forward) Don't engage the destroyer! I'll back off and help out!

Fei moves forward and sees many small obstacles, anitgear guns and mines. He maneuvers through them, fighting a few battles. Fallon calls over once he's clear -

Fallon: Get away from the destroyer! I am going to use reactive shots!

There is a bright flash of light as Fei moves west.

Scene cuts to the bridge of the Kefeinzel -

Vanderkaum: That moron, Hipper! Pursue them, they're just playing with him. You're not good enough to be my dog!

R1: Our mobility is different . . .

Vanderkaum: Fire control! Gunnery chief! It hasn't fired a shot yet! Range for type 3 is within 500. Don't fire till you see the whites of their eyes.

R1: Gears at battle speed can move at 2000 per hour.

Vanderkaum: This whole ship! (pauses) all of you are morons!

R1: (You're the biggest moron!)

O2: Black enemy Gear, inside units, stick to your escort!

Scene cuts to Fei as he hovers before an intimidating line of mechanized Gears and mines. Fallon says -

Fallon: Just past this line of ships is the flagship Kefeinzel!

Scene cuts to a view of the Kefeinzel as it plows through the sand. Fei blasts towards it as a shot hits it in the side.

Scene cuts to the rattling bridge, Vanderkaum shouts -

Vanderkaum: Fire control! Gunnery chief! What are you doing? You're not even close, are you blind?

An officer reports -

O2: Destroyer Iltus' engine is down!

Another calls out -

O3: Flash signal from Luveh! 'Luveh, ruder out, rudder out, end'.

O1: 3 remaining -

Vanderkaum: Idiotic! Idiotic! What is this mess . . .?

The robed man now walks towards the exit, disappears from view and an officer reports -

O1: Enemy Gear above! Enemy Gear diving from above!

The entire bridge is shaking and Vanderkaum shouts -

Vanderkaum: Go down, dammit! (pauses) Or Ramsus will have my hide.

The sound of a Gear landing on the hull is heard and scene cuts to where Weltall confronts the Main Gun. In a race against time, Fei finally defeats it before it can charge up with a countdown. He wins and scene cuts to the Kefienzel's bridge once more, sirens blaring as the crew dashes about. Over the intercom -

Intercom: "All personnel, evacuate! All personnel, evacuate! Abandon ship! Repeat, evacuate!"

Vanderkaum stands immobile on the bridge, distant explosions sounding all around him. He is flanked by two Aveh guards. One turns to him, saying -

G1: A, admiral . . .

The lights flicker and the other says -

G2: Forget this!!

They rush off and more explosions are heard in the background as Vanderkaum stands there mutely. After a while, he says -

Vanderkaum: Right . . .(pauses) I still have that . . .I still have that . . .

He slowly turns to face the exit.

Vanderkaum: Yes . . .I still have that . . .I still have that . . .yes. I still have that . . .

Scene cuts to a view of the Kefeinzel where it belches smoke into the desert. One of Bart's soldier Gears approaches Fei in Weltall, saying as the black plumes of smoke rises into the sky -

Maitreya: Yess! One for our side!

Weltall is in a kneeling position, Fei responds after a moment -

Fei: Yeah . . .(pauses) and it's all due to your support. Thanks.

Maitreya: Stop the border guards? Hah . . .we destroyed them! Well, we've done our job! I hope the others do OK!

Fei: Bart and his team . . .(pauses) He's probably okay . . . Any word from them?

Maitreya: Nothing. They say no news is good news I guess. My Gear doesn't have very good comm equipment. They probably did fine though.

Fei suddenly stands, thinking and looks towards the vessel.

Fei: . . .

Maitreya: What's wrong?

Scene cuts to large Gear once more as the main turret shifts and a beacon of light appears from its center.

Scene returns to desert as both Fei and Maitreya turn toward the Kefienzel, waiting -

View moves closer and there is a flash, then a thread of light pierces the hull of the vessel and another blast is seen, more streamers of light shooting out as something emerges.

Scene switches to view of Weltall and soldier Gear as a bright blast shakes the ground and scene cuts to view of Keifeinzel as a fireball emerges from the fuselage, the entire ship rumbling as the huge Gear comes forward, rising up out of the wreckage as it shoots several volleys. Vanderkaum says from inside -

Vanderkaum: I (pause) will (pause) kill (pause) you!

A howl is heard and the battle begins!

They pound the tank-like Gear and several rounds pass before the hulk is at last defeated.

Scene cuts to an overhead view of the Dora as Vanderkaum says –

Vanderkaum: Uh . . .I . . .

He is interrupted by a white flash of light and a sound of striking metal. He hears a voice ask him –

"Do you want the power?"

The light disappears and Vanderkaum asks –

Vanderkaum: Wh, who are you!?

From above, out of the azure sky, a Gear descends with lightning swiftness, the wind of its passing a dull roar. It halts its plummet effortlessly before the Dora and hovers before it, arms crossed. It's Grahf! A red glow appears at his back, reminiscent of red flames and he says –

Grahf: I am Grahf, the seeker of power. Doth thou desire the power?

Vanderkaum: The power . . .

Grahf, arms crossed, responds –

Grahf: Yes, the power.

View shifts to the Dora as Vanderkaum says –

Vanderkaum: P, power . . . . . .the power . . .I want it . . .I want the POWER!

Grahf: So be it!

A white flash, he stretches out his hand and the red radiance travels along his arm, gathering force in his fingers as he stretches them towards Vanderkaum. He says –

Grahf: My fist is the divine breath!

He repeats his outstretching movement, says –

Grahf: Blossom, o fallen seed, and draw upon thy hidden powers!!

Shift to view of Grahf from above as he reaches out a third time, the glow in his hand seeming to catch fire as he says –

Grahf: Grant unto thee the power of the glorious 'Mother of Destruction'!

The fiery radiance shoots towards the Dora with a loud roar and envelops the Gear. Inside, Vanderkaum screams –

Vandekaum: Urrgghhhrrhh . . .

All fades in a white light -

Scene cuts to the Yggdrasil's bridge, where Bart strides towards the helm and bows his head briefly as Citan comes up behind him. He says –

Bart: We'll go back to Nisan!

Sig approaches from behind, saying –

Sig: It's useless! Young master!

Maison approaches from behind, saying –

Maison: Y, yes . . .young master . . .I hear when they attacked the fort at the border, the Gebler, led by Ramsus, routed them. We'd better withdraw for now, and reconsider . . .

Bart: Margie and them are still there. We'll go back! We have to! That reminds me . . . What about Fei and his guys? If they're alright, we could . . .

Franz calls over –

Franz: We've had no contact since we confirmed their order to charge . . .

Bart: Dammit! This can't be happening!

He bows his head and Maison says –

Maison: Young master . . .

Scene shifts to a side view of Bart and the others and the young man says –

Bart: Behind . . .?

He raises his head, calling out to the crew –

Bart: Something's coming from behind! Jerico! Give me the helm . . . No, you keep it! Just hurry up and pull either way!!

A rumbling begins to shake the deck. Sig asks –

Sig: Young master . . .?

Franz calls out –

Franz: Aft of our stern! 300! I'm picking up the sound of torpedoes being readied! A sand cruiser!? It's big! Speed 60! Relative route 0-0-0! They were hiding behind some baffles!

Sig turns to Citan and says -

Sig: Kahr!

Scene shifts to view of bridge behind Franz as a pinging begins to sound. He calls out –

Franz: I'm picking up some high speed propulsion, breaking away from the enemy's ship! Torpedoes!? Two of them! Speed 87! Torpedoes confirmed with the sonar. They've shifted over to active homing!

Bart turns to crew, calling out orders –

Bart: Battle stations! Deploy the maskers! Ready the noisemaker!

An alarm rings briefly as the lights go to red and a voice calls out, "Battle stations, everyone!" One crewman reports –

C1: Open jammer! Noisemaker, 2nd, 4th tube . . .Standby!

Bart: Emit noisemaker! Prepare to stop the engine!

A distant 'fwash' is heard twice and Bart turns to the navigation office, saying –

Bart: Helm . . .NOW! Steer to the opposite direction as far as you can! Stop the engine! Crash alarm!!

A crewman calls out –

C2: Stop the engine! Crash alarm!!

An alarm rings once more as the deck begins to tilt at an angle, still shaking as they attempt to evade the torpedoes. Franz calls out –

Franz: Torpedoes . . .1, still pursuing! Dammit! Impact in 3!!

A loud crash is heard and the scene dissolves in white, shifting to a view of the bridge on another vessel. Ramsus and Miang stand at the helm and an officer reports –

O1: Confirmed, vessel destruction noise. . . .followed by a rapid blowing noise. Enemy vessel is probably floating rapidly to the surface.

Another officer reports –

O2: Fluid state around enemy vessel is decreasing. Sand maneuverability of enemy vessel down 60%. . . . Looks like the main engine and the effect-fins have been disabled.

Ramsus: Once their effect-fins are destroyed they will remain buried and unable to move. Surfacing was a smart move. Sand-Torpedo Chief! Well done on lowering their fighting power. Brilliant!

O2: Sorry to trouble you.

Ramsus: Well . . .what shall we do with them . . .?

He crosses his arms, leaning his chin in his hand as he ponders. Miang says –

Miang: Oh? It's unusual for you to get lost.

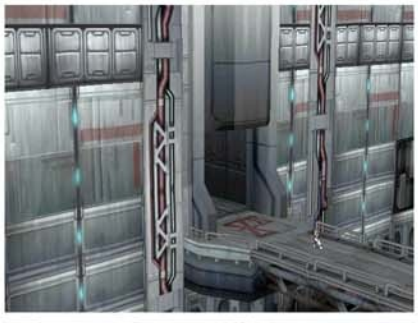
He looks up and says –

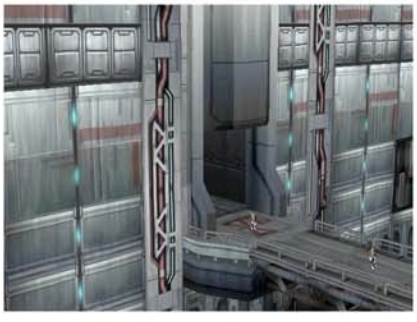
Ramsus: I promised an old friend . . .I must take it easy . . .

There is a silence, then he resumes –

Ramsus: An old . . .friend . . . . . .

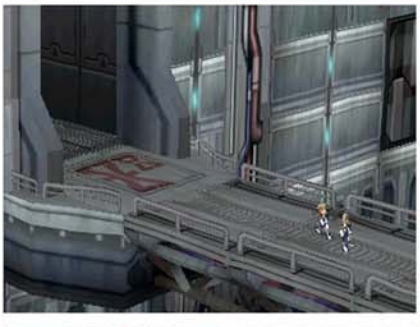
He lowers his head, pondering once more as he remembers -
Scene cuts to the inside of a landing bay as a lone form strides forward. A voice calls out –





Ramsus: Sigurd!

The form pauses and another runs out from the opening behind, rushing to him –



Ramsus: Why are you abandoning this country!? You were supposed to help us create an ideal nation!

The man before him, Sigurd who possesses both eyes and wears the same uniform, responds without turning to look at him –

Sig: I'm not abandoning it. I've been living here to steal this country's technology from the beginning. Besides, there's someone waiting for me. Don't be bitter.

Sig turns to the side and continues –

Sig: It wasn't too bad going after the same ideals with you, for that short time.

Sig turns to go, making his way down a path which leads to the blue sky ahead while Ramsus looks on. As the view pulls back, Ramsus calls out –

Ramsus: . . .You traitor!!!

Scene returns to the bridge where Ramsus looks out into the distance and shakes his head. He calls out –

Ramsus: Comm officer! Use my name and urge them to surrender. Tell them to surrender if they desire the safety of Nisan.

He pauses then calls out –

Ramsus: All divisions cease fire, but remain on alert! If any enemy vessel attempts to attack, shoot it individually!

Scene fades, cuts to overhead view of Yggdrasil which has surfaced and is plowing through the sand, clouds of black smoke rising from a flaming hole in its side. The view pulls back and scene fades to Fei and Maitreya in the desert, the breeze softly blowing as they stand. Maitreya asks –

Maitreya: . . .What was that? That guy just now?

Fei: . . .It's them . . .(pause)
Why them . . .? What did they do?

Scene shifts to view of Dora in the sand as Fei and the two soldier Gears look on. Pillars of dark smoke rise to the sky behind it and a small flicker of light prompts one of the officers to day –

O1: . . .Huh? What!? Huh? . . .Oh-no!!

He turns to Fei and Maitreya and calls out –

O1: General! General Maitreya!! We have an R code message! I'm not sure, but it looks like the young master is in trouble!! We don't have time for this junker!!

A flash of white light and the ground shudders beneath them. A beam of white light plows into the officer and his Gear goes down, exploding. They watch in horror as the Dora regains life, a bluish light writhing behind it as it waves its pincers once more. Vanderkaum calls out –

Vanderkaum: You there . . .What're you doing ignoring me and messing around . . .?

View shifts to the central gun turret and he continues –

Vanderkaum: I'll kill all of you!

He begins shooting white beams of light and view shifts to inside Weltall where Fei watches in cockpit. Next to him, Maitreya starts towards Dora, saying –

Maitreya: . . .Fei, gather the wounded up and return to the young master. Hurry! My unit will stay behind and try to buy some time. All operational Gears left will provide cover as per their commander's orders, and retreat in set order.

Fei shakes his head, saying –

Fei: Don't be stupid! I'm staying too!

Maitreya turns to him and says –

Maitreya: Shut up and listen, boy! You're the young master's guid. I can't let you die here.

Maitreya: (turns to face Dora) . . .The young master . . .
What he really needs is your strength. Please help him. (pause) I beg you.

Fei: But . . .

Maitreya calls out to the others –

Maitreya: Farrant! Vind! Let's move out!!

They blast towards Dora and Fei begins to hear the heartbeat as he watches. They are torn from the ground, flashes of white light, the beat intensifies as Fei sees them destroyed, the pincers empty once more.

Fei: . . .Uaahh . . .St . . .stop it . . .

The heartbeat pulses steadily –

Fei: . . .St . . .op . . . . . .Uahh . . .

He leans towards console, a flash of light bathes the scene in a red wash of light, then green as view shifts to his profile and he says –

Fei: Ah . . .

The beat continues with intermittent flashes of light. View pulls back and a distant clash is heard, the red appearing once more and then a bright white light consumes all . . .The sound of slashing metal.

Scene cuts to another part of the desert where several vessels are escorting the Yggdrasil, Bart standing at the helm in Brigandier. He calls over the 'comm –

Bart: Surrounded, huh? How are the repairs?

Engineer: The main engine and the effect-fins' oscillators are mostly unharmed . . . . .but the electrical connections between them are wasted. We are bypassing the main connection and trying to scrape together all the energy we can. But it will only give us 70% of our usual maximum power at best. The propulsion – drills are not damaged, but if the sand can't be granulated they might as well be. We'll make battle speed 3 . . .only barely.

Bart: Sig! What has Gebler's 'Mister Puniverse' got to say?

Sig: He's been quiet since the first surrender demand.

There's silence as Bart sails the vessel, then –

Bart: . . .All personnel to battle stations. Break through is planned after the connectors are up.

Sig: Young master!

Bart: Sig! Listen! Surrendering isn't going to change Nisan's fate.
We'll lose the Yggdrasil, core of our power in saving Aveh and Margie.
I know it looks bad, but you can still count on us!

Maison calls out –

Maison: Well said, young master! This old man will follow you to the pits of hell!

Bart: Sorry, Old Maison, I'm not dying today!!
Besides they don't look like they're gonna hit us.

Sig: It sure looks that way . . .Perhaps they have political motives that involve Margie or the young master . . .

Bart: That's probably it, Sig! But they're forgetting one thing . . .
It's harder to bring in an animal alive than dead!

Engineer: Young master . . .emergency connections are complete. Use the engine as you wish.

Bart: Thanks!! Alright, let's . . .(pauses) go get those fools!!

Back on the bridge of Ramsus' vessel, an officer calls out –

O1: Confirmed, one enemy Gear engaged. Direct course. Enemy vessel engine noise increasing . . .
Speed increase, steering noise confirmed, course change . . .Taking evasive action.

Miang: Commander? . . .Ha,Ha,Ha.

Ramsus turns to her, shaking his head as he says –

Ramsus: . . .Can't help it, eh?

He turns, calling out an order –

Ramsus: All divisions, holding pattern canceled! . . .
Resume attack.

O2: Bow torpedoe tubes 1 – 3, Namthal missile, Set 1 and 2 for homing, 3 for anti-radar. Tubes 4 – 6, Makar MK5 sound torpedoes. After acquiring target, set all to passive homing. All units, begin defensive fire. Aim for the main ship.

Another officer calls out –

O1: W, wait!! Explosions along the perimeter of the fleet, confirmed. Multiple vessel destruction noises! High energy reactions . . .What kind of gain is this!? Commander!! I can't believe this! This . . .Gear . . .? It's like reactive rounds are flying around . . .

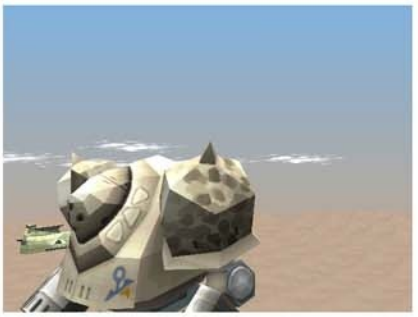
Miang: Calm down. (pause) Put the analyzed picture on the monitor.

O1: Y, yessir . . .

View shifts to Ramsus' profile as the screen comes on –

Ramsus: Ah . . .That is . . .!!

Scene cuts to desert where vessels are escorting the Yggdrasil. A Red Gear flies by overhead and the ground erupts in a trail of white fire in their midst.



Scene cuts to view of Bart in his Gear on the Yggdrasil as he pilots it through the sand. He turns at the sound of the explosions and asks –

Bart: W, what happened?

View shifts to view Brigandier from the front, he asks –

Bart: Is it heading . . .here?

A red haze, another bright flare of light as another explosion is heard. White light consumes all and scene cuts to bridge where Ramsus stands. He says –

Ramsus: Th, that Gear! No mistake! It's him! Demon of Elru . . . (pauses) Miang! Let's go!

He rushes to the exit and she turns, calling after him –

Miang: Commander! Please wait! Commander!!

She walks forward a step, turns around to the screen once more –

Miang: Ha, ha . . .

Then she also makes her way to the exit –

Scene cuts to a view of Brigandier, the Yggdrasil's engines rumbling as the view slowly shifts up to the Red Gear as it hovers before him. Bart hears a voice –

"Are you strong?"

The mystery Gear has a bluish glow at its back, what appear to be wings of energy emerge from the Gear's back. View shifts to Bart as he asks –

Bart: . . .What? Who are you . . .?

View pulls back as the Gear's voice comes to him once more –

"I asked, 'Are you strong?'!"

A ball of energy bursts from the Red Gear's face and it flings it at Bart, the light consuming all –

Bart: (Behind me!?)

He pauses, then asks without turning around –

Bart: . . .What are you suddenly attacking me for!?

The view draws closer to the Red Gear as the voice responds, -

"Heh heh, fine. Then play dumb!"

A pause, then continuing, -

"You, strong . . .Huh?"

He turns at the sound of Gears blasting towards him .

A golden Gear with a sword is accompanied by a pale white Gear with black trim. It's Ramsus and Miang!

Ramsus hovers in the air, his sword held out before him as he asks Bart –

Ramsus: You there . . .pirate boy!
Do you know him!? That's right . . .
Weren't you with that punk, Fei?

Bart turns to Ramsus, saying –

Bart: No, I don't know 'him'! . . .
But even if I did, I sure wouldn't tell you!

Ramsus enters battle stance and says –

Ramsus: Good! Then you won't mind if I take care of him.
(pauses) I owe 'him' greatly!

Scene cuts to battle between Ramsus in his golden angelic type Gear and the Red Gear. He says –

Ramsus: I've finally found you!
Now, I must challenge you!!

The Red Gear charges him, shearing off one of his Gear's arms with a single blow and lifting him off the ground. Ramsus calls out-

Ramsus: Guaaah! This can't be!
You m, monster . . .

The red Gear drives him into the sand, Miang looking on. The heartbeat is heard once more as the Red Gear pulls him out of the sand, holding him high overhead.

Ramsus: . . .Guha! (pauses)
D . . .damn you . . .If it weren't for you . . .

The Red Gear kicks him to the ground and the view draws close to the malicious 'face' of the Gear, then pulls back to where Bart stands, watching the entire thing. The Red Gear rushes towards him and he says –

Bart: Tch! Keep back!!

Scene cuts to where Miang stands over what remains of Ramsus' Gear and she says –

Miang: Commander . . .
let's pull out!

As she kneels, gathering him in her arms, he calls out –

Ramsus: Don't do anything unwarranted, Miang!
I still have one arm!!

She rises to a standing position, and says –

Miang: We're pulling out! . . .
That mad dog seems to have a new toy to play with.

She blasts off, the heat of her afterburners causing the sands to shimmer, then the view shifts to Bart who stands before the Red Gear. As they face each other, the voice says –

"Well, now that my motor coil's warmed up . . .
. . .let's start the main event!!"

As Bart faces the mystery Gear, he says –

Bart: Today's my unlucky day.
Why does this have to happen now?
Oh well . . .Let's get it over with!

They begin to fight, the Red Gear simply standing there as Bart lands in some heavy blows. Then the Red Gear rushes forward, slamming into Brigandier's chest with blows that emit a black radiance.
Bart goes down-

- and scene cuts to bridge of the Yggdrasil, where Sig and Maison stand at the helm, watching.

Sig: Young master!!!

Sig rushes to the helm, barking out orders –

Sig: Engine, ready for full power!! Jerico! Give me the helm over here!

O1: But first mate! Now with the effect-fins out of order, if you run at full speed, the ship wouldn't be able to stand the friction!!

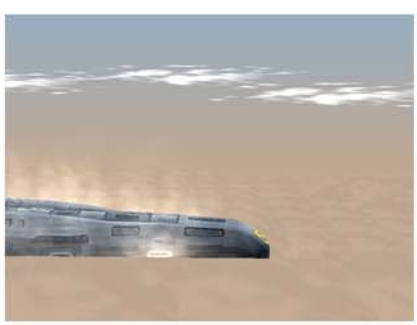
Sig: It can 'jump' due to the Bernoulli effect on the wings' surfaces instead!!

O1: First mate!!

View shifts to the helm face-on as Sig says –

Sig: Never mind that! The Yggdrasil is nothing without the young master! Full power!! Maximum speed!!

Scene shifts to a view of the Yggdrasil from above as the engines kick in, sand rising in billows as it gains speed, canting to starboard. The nose lifts out of the sand as they increase velocity.



Scene cuts to Yggdrasil's bridge once more, Maison, Citan and Sig at the helm as the deck heaves from the stress, a dull rumbling filling their ears. Sig shouts –

Sig: Eeeeeaaaaarrrrgghh!!!! Come on, GO!!!

A white light consumes everything and scene cuts to overhead view of the vessel as it races through the sand.

Shifts to Bart and the Red Gear as the rumbling increases. The mystery Gear looks over to the side and Bart leaps out of the way as the bulk of the Yggdrasil descends. The Red Gear thinks, "!!" and –

Scene shifts to a side view as it goes under the vessel which lands with a crash, Bart leaping to the side. After the shaking subsides, Sig calls –

Sig: Young master! Are you okay!?

Bart: Don't over do it, Sig . . .(pause) Trying to make our ship 'fly' . . .!? When we get back it'll take a month to get this heap of junk working again.

He hears Sig over the comm -

Sig: Ha . . .ha ha . . .(pauses) You seem to be okay!

Bart: . . .Shees!! (pauses) What was that monster anyway?

A dull rumble is heard and the ground shakes as a section of the ship bends slightly.

Bart: Sig! What's going on?

Sig: What . . .the ship? The engine should have fallen out, but . . .

A deep basso rumbling shakes the ground beneath them and Bart looks on as the Yggdrasil begins to rise, energy shimmering about its hull. Sig asks –

Sig: What in the hell?

With eerie serenity, the ship rises and a hand appears beneath it, the Red Gear rising from the ground as it levitates the entire ship! Its wings blaze at its back and sand drifts down into the depression in the sand.

The red Gear holds the ship held above it by sheer force of will as Bart looks on. Then, the vessel begins to bend under it's own weight with a ponderous groaning. The voice says –

"That was pretty interesting."

There is a silence, the wind blowing, then he says -
"But dropping a warship on me is cheating . . .Take it back!"

He rears back, flinging the vessel at Bart, who stands frozen. It slowly descends and the view pulls in to Bart as he calls out –

Bart: Sig!! Maison!! . . .Uah . . .

The scene fades in blackness –

Cuts to bridge where sirens are blaring and the deck is canted at an odd angle as it heaves. An officer calls out –

O1: The sand pump, effect-fins and propulsion drills are all out of commission!!

NA: Main engine, support engine, engage the auto scram, Switch power to batteries. Output ratio 0.5, operating time . . .500!!

Franz: The third bridge . . .it's ruined!!

Another crewman reports –

C1: The hangar section, the armament section, and even the pressure shell have been destroyed!! We can't stop the sand from flowing in!

Sig calls out –

Sig: Close each section down completely and commence independent operation!!

Franz: Then, damage control won't be able to move!! The hole won't be covered!!

Sig: That's alright!! . . .Either way, it's impossible to save the entire ship. Our priority is to secure the bridge!! Gather everyone into the bridge immediately!

Sig turns to Citan and says –

Sig: . . .Hyuga . . .No . . .you're Citan now. You need to get out. I'll have Maison guide you to an escape-pod.

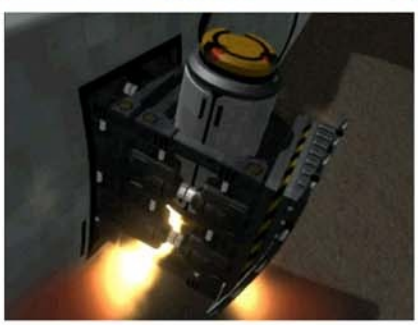
Citan: I cannot leave you all like this . . .!?

Sig: We have no right to keep you here and get you involved. . . .
If you see Kahr and Miang, make sure you pay 'em back for me.

They look at one another for a moment –

Sig: Maison . . .Please show him the way.

Maison: This way, please.



Scene fades as they stare a moment longer, then a view of an escape pod as it is launched –

Scene cuts to inside of a Gear cockpit, where Citan calls out –

Citan: Sigurd!!!

Scene fades with a sound of engines blast. A sound of machinery is heard, then a white light. It fades and the view is of Citan as he watches the landscape pass by from inside the cockpit. He says –

Citan: . . .I am being carried by the wind to the vicinity of the border . . .
. . .What is (pause) that?

Scene cuts to a view of the smoking debris that was once the Dora. Citan approaches in Heimdahl to investigate. Twin pillars of smoke rise into the sky and Citan says –

Citan: That . . .is . . .the . . .Dora. It was stationed here? That was careless of me . . .
But (pauses) the condition . . . . . .(pauses) . . .It is just like the others that 'he' destroyed . . .

Scene opens in a room with an organ, a song is being played by an older man. In the next room, a door opens and, admitting an officer of some kind. He walks into the room and addresses the man –

Associate: Kaiser, we have some news.

Sigmund, the Kaiser, continues to play and says –

Sigmund: Yes.

Associate: We investigated the course of the recent explosion at the southern Aveh border. Our data showed a large amount of radiation was released at the epicenter. It was probably caused by an overload of a battleship class slave generator. The cause of this is still unknown. The shockwaves from that explosion took out two thirds of the Aveh and Gebler forces combined. Now, Aveh is in the process of regrouping their reserve units, but that should take at least several days. Concerning your order, the scouts have arrived at the area you requested . . .

Sigmund: Found it, eh . . .?

Associate: Yes, sir.

Sigmund: I see.

Associate: We know the Gear found was stolen from the 11th base by the Gebler unit in Aveh. And in the investigation of the machine, we also caught the unconcious pilot. The seized Gear has been transported to the capital. From the circumstances, we believe information was leaked to Aveh.

Sigmund: how can you say that?

Associate: All the Gears except this were destroyed at Lahan. Judging from the ID signal, this one wasn't with Aveh but was part of a pirate group.

Sigmund: Pirates? You mean the young prince?

Associate: Yes, sir.

Sigmund: Uh huh . . .

Associate: We're now analyzing the combat data. However, we've discovered some black boxes which are likely to delay the analysis.

Sigmund: Black boxes?

Associate: That Gear wasn't made by us. The stock body was brought in by 'them'.

Sigmund: So that's it . . .

There is a silence as he continues to play and at last the Associate asks –

Associate: . . .Uh (pauses) . . .Kaiser?

Sigmund: What?

Associate: Shouldn't we begin an assault on Aveh?

Sigmund stops playing and asks without turning –

Sigmund: Are you trying to destroy Kislev?

Associate: Huh?

Sigmund: Indeed it would be easy to take down Aveh.
But it would exhaust our resources also.

Associate: But we can't afford to miss this chance . . .

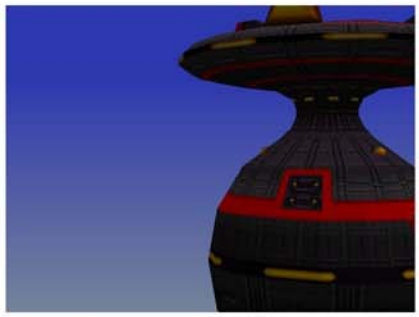
Sigmund: Even if we beat Shakhan, Solaris would only replace him with another puppet.
What if we exhausted our resources and found ourselves under attack?
Anyway, we must still be concerned with Nisan. There is nothing to gain by doing anything now.

In the other room, the door swishes open and an officer calls out –

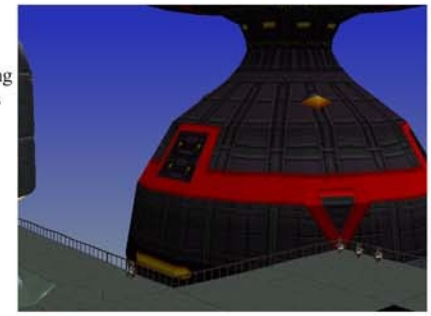
O1: Excuse me!

He enters the room and faces the Kaiser who stands from his chair, turning to the side as he says –

Sigmund: It seems 'they' have arrived . . .



Scene cuts to an image of a large ship. It floats ponderously in the blue sky as it approaches a landing bay, the tiny figures of men scurrying below. It docks and the mechanical hum of a path being lowered is heard as the view shifts to the landing bay below as two Gears unload a large metal box.



An entourage emerges from the vessel, heading to where Sigmund waits.

Sigmund: Is that it?

The masked woman responds –

Masked Woman: Yes. If you use that, you can pass through the barrier. You will be free to go where and when you please.

Sigmund: That man . . .what was it? Grahf? Is he around?

Masked Woman: He's rather busy now. I was assigned to be his representative.

Sigmund: I will ask you this once. Why do you help us? Who are you people?

Masked Woman: I've told you before. I simply wish to observe what is in store for the world. There are so many things you people must know. I am merely your guide. I cannot directly assist you. How you use it is entirely up to you.

Sigmund: So you're telling me you do not require any recompense?

Masked Woman: Let me see . . .Well then, how about this . . .?

She approaches him, whispering something in his ear, then returns to her former position once more, saying –

Masked Woman: Well, I must go . . .

She and her attendants depart and Sigmund watches them return to the black ship, saying –

Sigmund: . . .But, what a strange thing to ask for.

Associate: (turns to him) What did she say?

Sigmund: They want me to transfer that Gear we captured and its pilot to D Block . . .

Associate: D Block? I wonder why?

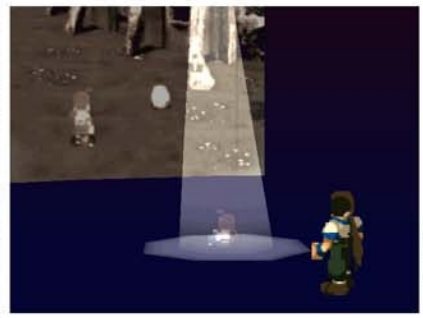
Sigmund: I don't know either.

The masked woman and her entourage disappear inside the ship as he says –

Sigmund: . . .But, we still owe them a favor. We just can't deny them. So see to it!

Associate: (turns to look at ship) Yes, sir . . .

Scene cuts to Fei as he runs in darkness-



Scene cuts to a cottage in the woods, a soft lullaby plays, a flash of light, -

This time a young boy is seen, playing with a ball on the grass nearby. A woman stands before him and she pushes the ball in his direction.

Cut to an image of an old movie reel as it plays the scene over and over, the image faded. View pulls back to Fei as he watches, a little boy in a shaft of light before him sits watching the movie, rapt. He hears a voice -

"Where . . .am . . .I . . ."

He turns and sees another boy, he says -

"You shouldn't be here."

One by one, the movie disappears, then the boy seated before it and finally Fei himself.

Scene cuts to a room in a rough hewn wooden structure. Clothes hang on lines across the bunks and Fei rises from one of them, asking -

Fei: Wh, where . . .am I . . .?

A woman notices him and says -

Doctor: Good, you've finally woken up! . . .You have been unconscious for four days, so I had begun to fear the worst.

Fei: . . .Who are you? And where am I? How did I get here . . .?

He pauses, then -

Fei: Ah, urrruugh . . .!

Doctor: You've only just gained consciousness, so don't push yourself too much! I am a doctor. (pauses) You are in Nortune, the imperial capital of Kislev. This is the detention area for criminals . . . commonly known as 'D block.'

Fei: Detention area for . . . . . .criminals?

Doctor: You are now in a living quarters for prisoners in D block . . . Judging by the way you were brought in here under the heavy guard of the Kislev army, you are no ordinary criminal . . .!

She gives a start - Doctor: Huh!?

She turns as some men enter the room. One speaks -

Suzarn: Uh look, what good timing! Prince Charming has woke up! This may be sudden but you have to come along with us!

Doctor: Not the 'Baptismal Ceremony'!? This patient has only just awoke! It is unthinkable that you would try and suddenly carry out your 'Baptismal Ceremony' on him!!!

Vargas: (laughing) Come off it! Just a sec! That guy's been thrown in 'ere as a crim, ain't 'e? You should be thanking us for 'aving the kind and compassionate 'eart to let 'im rest up a few days!

Heinrich: Yeah, that's right! As long as he's come here as a crim, he's gotta follow the rules!

Leonardo: That's the way it is! So without further ado, we'll borrow him for a little while. Don't worry, we will return him to you straight away! Once we're through with him, that is!

Suzarn: You don't have a choice in this! If you oppose us, the fair doctor will cop it too!

Fei: . . . . . .Okay. I'll do what you want!

The doctor steps aside as he moves forward to join them, saying -

Doctor: I am so sorry! I can't go against the Battlers! Please forgive me . . .

Suzarn: Oh, what a sensible lad! That saves us a bit of trouble. Anyway, come along now, the 'Champ' is waiting! And don't worry! We'll let you return here soon. (pauses) Hurry up then . . .

They escort Fei and Suzarn calls out -

Suzarn: Fo - rwa - rd ma - rch!

Scene cuts to the inside a sumptuously furnished room where the boys lead Fei. A huge, orange haired man stand with his back to them as they approach.

Suzarn: Champ, we've brought him to you.

The 'Champ' turns and says

A man called 'Champ': Thanks Suzarn. Hmm, so you're the new inmate . . . We don't know or care what you did to get put in here, but welcome to D Block . . .So what name do you go by?

Fei: . . .I am Fei Fong Wong. And what's your name? I know it's not really 'Champ'? I at least have the right to know that much . . .

Suzarn turns to him, saying -

Suzarn: Why you . . .!? How insolent!!

Rico: (nods) Calm down Suzarn, I don't mind . . .The name's Rico. Kid . . .
It's good to have guts . . .if it's the real thing . . .We know it's a bit sudden, but we need to see how strong you really are . . .(turns to look at each of the men) Heinrich! Vargas! Leonardo! Suzarn!

He turns his back for a moment, brandishes his fist and continues -

Rico: Let's begin his 'Baptism'! Take him outside!

They lead Fei down the stairs and scene cuts to a multitude of rooftops, a permanent gloom settled over them and Fei is lead to a darkened area. Rico says -

Rico: Kid, you're up front.

Fei turns and moves over to the wall and Rico continues -

Rico: Now, I think you've got the idea, but I'll tell you anyway . . .All the criminals sent here are each given a rank. Deciding what rank you are is easy . . .You get your rank by fighting these four Battlers. (he nods) Relax, the fights are one on one. By now you should've realized . . .Results are everything! If you can defeat these four Battlers, you'll be promised a certain amount of freedom . . .(pauses) Then let the fights begin . . .(pauses) That's what I'd like to say, but even we have some compassion. We'll give you some time . . .Even though it's one on one, you still have to fight all four. You should get prepared for the battle. And one more thing . . .Don't even think about trying to get away from here . . . After all, that's an impossibility.

Fei prepares, then moves forward.

Fei: Let's rock.

Suzarn: Hey, are you ready?

Fei moves over to the far wall and waits. Suzarn says -

Suzarn: . . .Champ. He's ready . . .for his 'Baptismal Ceremony' .

Rico: Hmph, then (pause) let it begin . . .Your first opponent will be Leonardo.

Fei fights him and wins easily. When it's done, Leonardo says -

Leonardo: To have lost to someone who's just recovered . . .Sadness.

Rico nods, asking -

Rico: Hmph. How's the next one?

He fights Heinrich who is a little tougher. Wins and

Heinrich: Guh, uuhh . . .How could I have . . .

Rico nods and says -

Rico: Hmmm, entertaining. How's the next one?

Fei fights Vargas who is tougher yet. After a few rounds he wins and Vargas shouts -

Vargas: Huh! I'll get you for this some day.

Rico laughs and says -

Rico: Not bad. No one's defeated Vargas since Suzarn . . .Now for the last one! You think you can win?

Fei fights Suzarn who is very tough. At last he goes down and Suzarn says -Suzarn: R . . .ridiculous . . .Even I lost to you . . .

Rico nods in Fei's direction, saying -

Rico: You've defeated all 4 . . .(pauses) Hah, this is an unexpected outcome. Let me give you the special treatment. I, myself, will be your final opponent.

Fei: Enough! There's no purpose in doing this! I have nothing to do with you!

Rico: No need for a reason. This is the D Block tradition! We must determine the pecking order.

Rico: Get ready!

He moves forward as Fei steps back and fight begins!

Rico starts off by ramming Fei's face into his chest and he holds his neck at an awkward angle. Fei remains passive and Rico asks him -

Rico: Is that all you can do? What? Don't you want to fight!?

Fei: Guh . . .gah . . .

Rico: What's wrong? If you don't resist, I'll end up breakin' yer neck!

Fei manages -

Fei: N . . .,no . . .

Rico: Hm? What's that? I can't hear you!

Fei: No . . .I . . .won't . . .fight!

Rico: Hmph. Well then, this is the end!

Fei: Guh . . .uh, (pause) uh . . .

He slams his fist into Fei's face -

A single red heartbeat and a voice, "Outta the way!"

Rico: What!?

There is a flash of light and Rico goes sprawling to the ground. Fei rises, panting and says -

Fei: . . .I . . .I . . .

Rico groans in pain, then rises, saying -

Rico: Hah hah hah. That's more like it . . .
You're quite good. You're the first to ever injure me. Now I don't have to hold back. I'm looking forward to this!

Fei lands in a deathblow, Rico casts Steel Body which brings his defense up. Fei launches another attack, landing in another deathblow. Rico casts Steel Fist which raises attack and Fei throws another death blow at him. The another. Finally, Rico responds and the results are devastating. Fei goes down after several hits, Rico says, "Huh, that's what I thought."

Scene cuts to the alleyway once more. Fei lies prone on the ground and Rico and his thugs look on as Rico says -

Rico: . . .A bit tough. Well, a win is a win. Your rank is A.

Fei: . . .

Rico: . . .Didn't you hear? Take him back to his quarters. (he turns to one of them) . . .And don't forget that one thing . . .

Rico walks away and the thugs surround Fei as the view pulls back to the corrugated metal roofs surrounding them.

Scene cuts to the sickbay once more where Fei lies on the bed with something around his neck. The doctor paces the floor, then turns at the sound of Fei's voice -

Fei: Uuugh . . .? (pauses) Where am I this time?

Doctor: . . .You're in the same place, just in a different room! You've had a rough day, heh?

Fei turns his head to look at her and says -

Fei: Ah! . . .Oh it's you? It looks like I needed your assistance again, huh . . .?

Doctor: Yes, but don't worry. I don't mind - it's my job! (pauses) Anyway, how do you feel?

Fei: Hm? Aaah . . .I'm in a bit of pain, but nothing I can't cope with . . .Lately, I've been getting used to this kind of thing. Aaah . . .! The last thing I remember was those guys speaking of what 'rank' they think I am worthy of.

Doctor: Oh, I think I better tell you about that . . .

Fei: What? You know what rank I am?

Doctor: You're quite strong, aren't you!? To defeat four people in your condition . . .it's no wonder they gave you rank A! But to go up against the Champ . . .? It's amazing that you came back alive at all!

Fei covers his face with his arm as he lies back and says -

Fei: The fight was meaningless. I had no reason to . . .(pause) I didn't want to fight . . .

Doctor: . . .What happened? You look a bit pale.

He drops his arm and turns to her once more, saying -

Fei: It's nothing. Don't worry . . .By the way, what's this thing around my neck?

Doctor: Oh that? It's a bomb . . .The moment you leave the vicinity of the Imperial Capital, that collar goes, 'BOOM'! Too bad, but while you have that on, you will never be able to escape form Nortune. Apart from the civilians of D block and a select few Battlers, everybody has to wear them . . .

She turns and looks towards the door as she says -

Doctor: . . .Here in D Block, that is the only chain that binds the prisoners.

The view rotates and Fei says, his arm over his face -

Fei: Hmh, a bomb. Then I guess there's no way I'll ever escape from here.

The doctor turns and looks at him once more, saying -

Doctor: Anyway, you should try and get some rest today. You'll have to get used to life in this town too.

View pulls up towards roof and Fei rests. He wakes in the bunk next door and makes his way through the room to the sickbay. The doctor asks him how he feels and he moves on to a door near the stairwell leading up. Inside is what appears to be a shower room. The man says -

M1: The shower room's out of order permanently. . . .Actually, it's broken. Someone to fix it? I wish.

Fei goes back to the other room and makes his way up the stairs to what appears to be a mess hall. All sorts of individuals live the tables, their voices a comfortable chatter. He goes to the table nearest the door next to an ordering window where a line of blue haired Battlers sit. He speaks to them -

B1: There's talk that recently the Champ himself conducted a 'Baptismal Ceremony'. I don't know whether it's true, but I feel for whichever prisoner received it! (he turns back around in his seat and continues) Hmm . . .but then again . . .it might have been Suzarn. Or, hold on, was it Vargas?

He moves to the next person, he says -

B2: I'm a Battler in training, with prisoner rank C! Looky here, today's menu is . . .wooh! 'Stamina Uppen'! Wha how! If I eat this I'll increase my stamina and before you know it, I'll be a Battle Master! . . .I hope that happens!

He goes around the table to a pink haired lady -

A1: Our food is famous throughout the Imperial capital! Especially our dishes cooked according to Ether theory, like 'Boosta Limit' and 'Heavy Weighter' . . .We provide according to rank A or B, so you can only have one or the other. And it differs with the individual, but they are said to bring about remarkable effects!

At the next table, a green haired man says -

B2: . . .Soon they will start the Battling Imperial Games that will be watched by the Kaiser himself . . .Right then's . . . (pauses) Yeah . . .errh . . .right then's our chance! We'll use a Gear . . .and make it look like an accident . . .

He notices Fei and thinks ,"!?"

B2: What's with you!? Get lost!!

His buddy, a pale haired man says -

B3: Today's earnings weren't so great . . .Boy I wish there was a whole nest of monster somewhere, then I'd have it made! Huh!

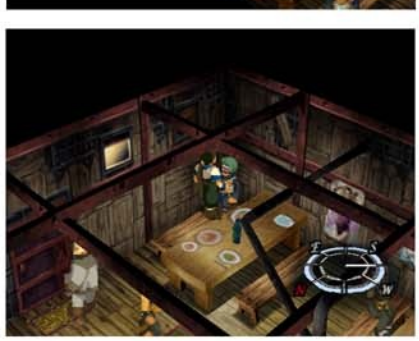
Fei goes to the guy across from them -

B4: I'm glad you spoke to me! See I'm nice to new inmates. So ask anything you want to! What's bothering you?

Fei asks -

Fei: Where's the 'supplier'?

B4: . . .Supplier? Oh, you mean Hammer! He's probably at the bar. You'll know him when you see him! Go out the east door, turn right and keep going straight ahead. The place with the neon sign is the bar!



Fei: What's up with the sewers?
B4: Ohh, the 'Kislev Sewers'! Why not see for yourself? Go out the west door and climb the ladder . . .Then once you're on the roof, the ladder you can see to the northeast descends into the 'Kislev Sewers'! You'll know it by the guy standing watch near the entrance. That's his job!
Fei goes to the east door and speaks with the large man -
Lm1: This door is under repairs. Sorry, but would you mind using the door to the west. It's not that difficult a problem! We'll have it fixed in a little while!
In the corner of the room is a small T.V. and Fei talks to the golden haired battler who stands before it -
A2: In this town, when you take proof of extermination of sewer monsters to 'B - info.', they will exchange it for G. the currency of this world. It'll pay to remember this!
He goes to the window and one of the women says -
C1: Has monsieur decided what he want from 'ze menu yet?
Fei . . .What menu?
C1: 'Ze menu is on ze pillar to your right. We 'ave two coursez: ze daily specialty and ze dishes al la rank!
Fei declines and makes his way to a door across from the kitchen. Inside, it appears to be a storage room and a man says -
Lm: Wh, who are you!? Don't get in the w-way of my job. I k-keep this room o-orderly.
Fei leaves and goes across to the kitchen, the three women are busy.
W1: Cooking requires love that is deeper than the sea. And enticing the partakers of our food to the peaks of bliss is the job of cooks like us!
The second woman repeats what she says, and the third -
W3: (does not turn) Why do you leave food on your plates? If you can't eat all of it . . .then don't order it! Haahh!! (she turns to Fei) Oh no you don't! The kitchen is off limits to prisoners!

He leaves and goes out the west door. He find himself in a grimy street, the sound of metal being struck ringing from the roof above. Curious, he climbs the ladder to his left and finds a man repairing a hole in the roof. He says -
Rm: I don't have much strength, but I know I won't lose to anyone in the manual dexterity department! So I'm doing the perfect job for me, fixing the roof. It pays almost as well as working the sewers!
Fei sees a stack of crates leading to a tower at the right. He climbs up and finds an old man patrolling at the top of the wooden tower. He says -
Gramps: Who're you? Only the operations manager is allowed here!

Fei: It's not written anywhere . . .
Gramps: . . .(speaks fast) Even so that's the way it is!!
Fei shrugs and shakes his head, saying -
Fei: Jeez, you don't have to get so mad. I didn't know. So hey, tell me something, (pause) what is this?
Gramps: . . .Might as well. It's the Observation Tower.
Fei: Observation Tower? What are you watching?

Gramps: Hmph, you'll find out . . .in just a minute.
A pause, then he says -
Gramps: . . . . .It's coming! There!
They both turn at the sound of a whistle as a light near the tower goes green. A large train rumbles by and disappears in the tunnel further down. The light goes red and the view turns up to the tower where Fei stand watching with the old man. He says -

Fei: Wow, that's amazing.
Gramps: . . .Well, I'm the operations manager. But there's no one to manage. It's perfectly automated. I'm only the operations manager on paper.
As Fei continues to look in the direction where the train had gone, he asks -
Fei: Perfect? Is anything in the world perfect . . .?

Gramps: . . .Hmph. the only weakness is the detection equipment . . .If it detects a heat source it'll shut the whole thing down to prevent any accidents . . .
Fei turns to go, then the old man says -
Gramps: I've some advice for you, youngster! Jumping form the tower is illegal!! Even if I know you, I'm gonna fine you! Better not forget it! I'm no pushover! Beyond those tracks over there . . .There's some special equipment in the tunnel. There was a group who tried to escape and didn't know that. The bomb collar went BOOM! Yes, see ya . . . . . .As long as you have that bomb collar on, it's impossible to escape!

Fei climbs back down the ladder and makes his way along the roof to where he has been told the entrance to the sewers is. A man stands there and says -
G1: This is the entrance to the Kislev sewers. There's a ton of monsters down there so don't go unless you're good. Those stupid Battlers and bounty hunters are always coming and going.
Fei decides to take a peek, fights some of the monsters and figures he'd better go find the supplier before he continues. He exits and drops off the roof to the street below, making his way to the building across from the prisoner's barracks. Entering, he finds a family and speaks to a man in a blue shirt. He says -
Bl1: . . .I should've known it was a mistake. (he turns to Fei) . . .Huh!? Who might you be? That's awfully rude to come in my home. I guess it'd be useless to tell this to a criminal . . .Now, please leave.
He turns and sighs. Fei speaks to the other man nearby, he says -
M1: It's true that this house itself isn't bad . . .but was it really necessary to build it in the prison block?
Fei goes into the next room where a soldier sits in the bed. He says -
S1: I'm finally an imperial soldier. I was a burden on my parents. But I'll make it up to them by working hard. Someday, I'm gonna live in A Block. (pauses) And get a beautiful bride . . .and a close family . . .Hey! What're you making me say!?
The little girl who sits on the bed behind him says -
Lg1: They only let me out to play when we go to church on the weekends . . .I'm bored cooped up in the house . . . . . .I wish I could go out and play with the church folk. (she begns to spin like a top)

Fei leaves the house and moves down the street to the next door. Entering, he find himself in a church, of sorts. There are some children being cared for by nuns and he speaks to them -

Lg1: This place . . .? It's a Nisan facility. Who are you?

He goes down to the center of the room which is lined by nuns and speaks to one of them -

N1: During the riot in the Empire, homes and families were lost . . .Those fragmented memories still remain as scars to many of the children.

Next to her, a girl says -

Lg2: I'm . . .not lonely . . .Even without a mother or a father . . I have a lot of friends here. Even the sisters . . .Sob . . .

He speaks to a child on the pew behind her -

Lg3: I hate . . .fire, I hate everyone . . .Papa and mama were . . .eaten by the fire! Water . . .if there were only lots of water . . .

He speaks to another child -

Lg4: The fire enveloped everyone. Papa, mama, my home . . .everything. I don't know . . .after that . . .I was here.

He goes to the end near the makeshift altar and speaks to the head nun, who says -

HN: 15 years ago, in the Empire, there was a great riot. There were many casualties . . .

Fei goes back and sees a doorway leading into a tiny room, where a little boy sits on the bed.

Lb1: Um, did you see my brother outside? I'm . . .always the one left behind. (pauses) They won't play with me. They say it's too dangerous for me to go outside . . .

Fei leaves and goes up a nearby flight of stairs. On the next floor, he sees an eating area and a ladder which leads up to the roof. He goes through the door to the left and sees an empty sleeping chamber. He goes back out and up the ladder to the roof which overlooks the grungy streets below. A little girl stands near two potted plants and she says -

Lg5: Even in this smoggy town, if you take special care and water the plants, flowers will bloom.

He looks around for a moment at the chimneys which belch out gray smoke and returns down the ladder to the room below.

Making his way down the stairs, he leaves the building and goes down the street until he sees a door with a neon sign. He figures this must be the bar and enters the somewhat crowded establishment. To his right, a pretty woman with pink hair mans the bar and she says –

Latina: Welcome to 'Latina's Bar'. Make yourself comfortable!

He speaks to a fat man nearby who sits on one of the stools. He says –

Fm1: Latina's lookin' good as always. She's our block's Venus. Don't you think so to? And on top of that, she's a certified Amazoness . . .(pauses) I wouldn't mind being beaten up . . .only if it was by Latina!

The man next to him says –

M1: Tina . . .Latina . . .hic . . .Gimme anudder drink , , ,

Fei turns around and speaks to a soldier who says –

S1: you look like you're new here so I'll give you some special advice. Around here, if you don't work, you're not gonna earn your day's keep, 'If you don't work, you don't eat', is how it is! That's where prisoners like you come into things . . .Your job is to clean up the sewers. It's not like there aren't any other jobs . . .Oh yeah, don't get me wrong. When I say cleaning, I don't mean you use a mop to polish the floors, or whatever . . .Here is D Block, 'cleaning' is what we call exterminating all the monsters that live down in the sewers. As long as you get rid of the monsters down there, you shouldn't have a problem makin' a living around here. The rest is up to you . . .By the way, I'm no prisoner. I'm a freelance profiteer you can find almost anywhere. Even if you're just a prisoner, you can always exchange items for money here.

He turns back in his seat and Fei moves to the fat man seated next to him. He says –

Fm2: If you're sent here, you're pretty much sentenced for life. . . .I'll probably never be able to set foot on my home-land again . . . sigh . . .

Fei moves further into the room and he catches the eye of a demi-human who looks something like a camel. He says –

Demi-human: Ah!?

Fei goes over to him, curious, and he says –

Demi-human: Oh, allow me to introduce myself . . .They call me 'Hammer – The Supplier'. It's been a long time since such a powerful criminal has been sent to D Block! Hah-ha, so that makes you pretty famous in this town. In other words, you're the center of attention, bro!

Fei: . . .Could you stop calling me 'bro'? My name is Fei!

'Hammer – The Supplier: . . .What's wrong with it? It's not like I'm putting you down. What, would you prefer me to call you 'sir' or something?

Fei: . . .Oh, do whatever you wish.

'Hammer – The Supplier: then it's decided. I'll continue to call you bro from now on! By the way, bro, I hear you're really strong. Not many get rank A, you know! I'm pretty impressed! . . .And what's more, bro, you seem different from the other prisoners.

Fei nods once and says –

Fei: . . .Different, huh? Well you don't look so normal yourself!

'Hammer – The Supplier': (shakes his head) It's not meant to be an insult . . . Just a feeling I have. No deep meaning! Oh, and if you have any problems, talk to me! Since I'm a supplier, I've got all the connections!

Fei talks to him and he says –

Hammer: Bro, doesn't it seem like there's something missing here in D Block? Something, or things, that you could find elsewhere, but can't find here? Yeah, yeah? Don't you think so, bro?

Fei: Come to think of it . . .

Hammer: Yeah, what's missing are item shops, and don't forget the weapon shops . . . You need anything, bro?

He offers a variety of selections and Fei buys some of the goods. when he is done, Hammer says –

Hammer: It's too expensive elsewhere! Yep. You know its' gotta be 'Hammer's Ether Bag'!

Fei talks to some of the patrons and one of them says –
Fm3: I kinda fell like I'm getting' ripped off by Hammer. Are his items really that cheap . . .? Hmm.
He goes over to the guard nearby –
G1: I used to be in charge of security in the civilian area . . .But because of a minor mistake, they shipped me off to look after D Block . . .(he turns away and says to himself) Maybe I'm . . .not cut out for this job?
Fei goes over to one of the tables where a prisoner sits –
Fm4: You're an unfamiliar face. But then again, I don't care much for remembering each and every face I see anyway . . .
The man across from him says –
Fm5: I know you shouldn't drown your sorrows in liquor . . .I know . . .but I can't stop!
Fei sees a staircase leading up and goes to the next floor. He recognizes the chamber as the one Rico's sidekicks had brought him to to see Rico before the 'Baptism'. It is empty and the one door is locked.
He goes back down and leaves the bar, making his way down the street until he sees two kids. One says –
Lg1: Above the cross, a goat's horn, east and west, the ruling god's throne, the one possessing, the red seal, here and there, digging up, treasures of the past, or so . . .they say. (she turns to Fei) That's the song I wrote. It's about the B – Info. store. We sell machine parts for Gears from the ruins all over the world. I know a lot, huh?
The boy (with a toy gun) behind her shouts, "Whoo-whoo!"
Fe speaks to him and he says –
Lb1: This is such a dangerous town! They even steal the shirt off your back. But since he's my bodyguard it's no problem!
Fei moves to the Battler nearby, who says –
B1: I'll tell you one thing. Things posted up on walls, like that, on that wall . . .They have some stuff written on them, There are lots more than that one too.
Fei looks at a sign on the wall, it says:
"Information, finding items, trouble, we can help you with anything. Come on by 'Latina's Bar' in D Block! I know when there's a customer for me just from their face. Legal or other, anything's OK! 'Latina's Bar' is the building with all the flashy lights. – Supplier Hammer"
Fei sees an Ethos sign above the door across from him. He enters and speaks to one of the uniformed ladies behind the counter who tells him the current prices for exchanging beast trophies.The next lady gives out the money. He moves on to the booth behind him and speaks to the lady in a brown uniform.
L1: 'Battling' – that's what Nortune is famous for! Need parts to customize your Gear? The best Gear parts are found here at the Imperial capital's 'B – Info. Center'! . . .I'd like to help but prisoners don't have Gears, do they!? Come back when you become a 'Battler', OK!
Fei enters the door to his left and finds himself in a room which overlooks the workshop below. A man and woman wait and the woman says –
W1: He's more interested in his Gear than me. Argh! Gears need parts, fuel and are harder to handle than woman.
The man says –
M1: I can't tune up my Gear even if I want without 'G'. It'll just have to stay wimpy for now. Guess I'll go work in the sewers . . .
Fei looks through the window at the Gear below as it is repaired. He returns to the other room once more and speaks to a man behind the Gear parts seller. He says –
M2: Ah, should I earn my living in the sewers? Or should I follow my true calling in life? Ooooh, I'm so confused!
Then Fei turns and makes his way back to the street once more, heading towards the exit when he is stopped by the guard there –
Eg: Hmm, so you're the new guy? The Imperial Committee is looking for you . . .They heard something about you and the champ's men . . .They should still be somewhere in D Block. They decided to visit you . . .This is a good chance for a prisoner like yourself!
Fei backs off and makes his way down to the western entrance of the dorms. On the way there, he talks to a pink haired Amazoness who says –
A1: The crowd on the bar never changes. But the upper level of the prisoner's dorm is full of Battlers. This isn't like a bar. The dorm is full of people coming and going, it's ever changing.
He goes into the dorm and asks around in the eating area. Some Battlers sit before a T.V. A gray haired man says –
Gm1: Nortune, the capital of the Kislev Empire, is made up of five blocks. D Block is just one of them. It serves as a giant prison.
The guy next to him says –
I'm a wandering Battler. I came here to participate in the Battling matches they will be holding here soon. It seems I got here a tad bit too early! Sooo, now what am I to do?
the Amanzoness next to him says –
A1: In 'Battling', men and women are called different names. Generally, males are called 'Battlers', while females are called 'Amazonesses'.
Over at one of the tables, an Amazoness says –
A2: . . .The Champ's strength is incredible. If only someone would defeat the Champ . . .then I might have a chance.
One Battler says –
B1: . . .The Imperial capital's Battling Committee members? Hmm, don't see them here now. There was a group of three people who came earlier, but they've left.
He goes back out into the street and makes his way to the bar. He enters and turns around, looking as he says –

Fei: . . .Not here either . . .Must have left already?
Then –
Fei: Huh?

He turns as two guards in blue coats come down the stairwell, followed by a robed woman who says –
Mystery woman: . . .I finally get to meet you. you're Fei, right? (pauses) . . .And, uh, outta the way!!
The two guard turn, "!?" and simultaneously say –
Woman's subordinate: Uh, forgive us, Ms. Cohen!!
Woman's subordinate: Uh, forgive us, Ms. Cohen!!
They jump out of the way and the woman strides forward. He robe is cream colored and lined with green at the ends of the sleeves, bodice and hem. She says –
Woman called Ms. Cohen: You men are hopeless! This is why I didn't want to come with you two. Huhmm, allow me to introduce myself. I'm Rue Cohen from the 'Imperial Battling Committee' in B Block of this, the Imperial capital.

Fei: . . .Imperial Battling Committee? What do you want with me?

Committee Member Rue: . . .I'll cut to the point. We want you to participate in the Battling tournament.

Fei: . . .Battling?

Committee Member Rue: It's a recreational sport, where Gear fights against Gear, or even Gear fights against monster depending on the program. Currently, there are no regulations for eligibility. And we, the committee, rarely interact with the participants directly. You should be honored. You are in luck that your little incident with the 'Champ' caught our attention so soon. . . .So how about it? (pause) Better as Battler than a prisoner . . . It's not a bad deal at all.

Fei shakes his head and says –

Fei: . . .I'm sorry, but I don't like Gears. I have no interest in such recreational tournaments. And above all, I don't even have a Gear, so even if I wanted to participate, I can't. You ask too much!

The guards exclaim simultaneously –

Subordinate: Indeed, we ask too much! Subordinate: Indeed, we ask too much!

Rue turns to them and says –

Committee Member Rue: Oh, shush! You two keep quiet!!

They respond in unison –

Subordinate: Uh, sorry, Ms. Cohen!! Subordinate: Uh, sorry, Ms. Cohen!!

She turns back to Fei and says –

Committee Member Rue: Hmm, forgive me . . .But do not worry about the latter problem. the Gear you require for the Battling will be provided by the committee. . . .So, will you participate then?

Fei shakes his head and says –

Fei: Don't make me repeat myself. I hate Gears and I'm not interested in that kind of stuff!

Committee Member Rue: If you won't change your mind them you'll . . .(pauses) Well, you're still new here. I'll give you more time. Perhaps we may have been too pushy . . .But please, think about this offer seriously. I'll be looking forward to a favorable reply.

She prepares to leave, saying –

Committee Member Rue: Well then, hope to talk to you again . . .soon!

Fei moves out of the way and watches as they depart and says –

Fei: Gears, huh . . .?

He walks towards the door himself and is surprised when Hammer comes through.

He jumps back, saying – He backs off as Hammer enters and says – Fei: Whoa!

Hammer: Why did you do that, bro?

Fei: Ha, Hammer!?

Fei: Wait, Hammer. What are you talking about?

Hammer: I overheard it all with my own ears! Why did you reject their invitation? It's truly a rare occasion for the committee to personally make contact! It's still not too late! Do it, bro. We can still make it, right? You'll be a Battler . . . A Battler!!

Fei puts his hands on his hips, looks down and says -

Fei: Oh, that . . .If you overheard, you should already know. I don't like fighting. And Gears, well . . .! (pauses) Moreover, there is no reason for me to do it.

Hammer shakes his head, then says –

Hammer: If you become a Battler, you can leave the prison and live in luxury! Power is everything here! The powerless . . .the weak are just oppressed!! So c'mon, give it a try!

Fei: . . . . . .Is that all?

Hammer: Huh? What do you mean?

Fei: (looks up) . . .Are you done?

Hammer: . . .Done?

Fei: (nods) You've said enough . . .Now could you move out of the way? Hammer, sorry, but I doubt my feelings will change . . .(pauses) Fighting and Gears, I hate them both. So too bad!

Hammer moves out of his way as he leaves, saying –

Hammer: Oh, . . .bro.

Fei makes his way back to the dorm. Entering, he sees Hammer rush in, saying –

Hammer: Bro, I have news! News! The new doctor who was appointed today has just arrived!

View rotates as Fei says –

Fei: Hammer, you were supposed to have been in the bar . . .

Hammer: Oh, bro! You shouldn't worry about such little details! If you just rely on me, the forefront of information, then you will know it all! So about this doctor . . .

Fei: . . .About what doctor?

Hammer: What? You didn't know bro? The previous lady doctor got transferred to look after the civilian sector of town! Makes you envious, huh! So we get a new doctor to look after D Block. They say he just got here!

Fei: . . .The new doctor, eh? So, what on earth has this new doctor got to do with you, the great 'supplier'?

Hammer: What are you talking about bro? Of course I have everything to do with him! If I become chums with him, I can expand my connections by establishing black market medical treatment routes!

Fei: . . .So that's it, huh? Oh, Hammer, what will we ever do with you?

Hammer: Whatever bro, whatever. Anyway, let's go say hello to him, shall we?

Fei: Well, yeah, I suppose we should at least say hello.

Fei goes down the stairs and Hammer follows. He goes into the sickbay which is empty and looks around for a moment. As Hammer enters, Fei says –

Fei: You say a new doctor has come, but . . .there's nobody here!

Hammer crosses his arms, saying –

Hammer: Huh? That's strange . . .according to my sources he should be here . . .!

Fei: Too bad he's not here, huh Hammer! Looks like you'll have to forget about those black market medical treatment routes you were . . .

He stops as they both turns at the sound of a door opening. They both look over and Hammer says –

Hammer: The sound of an opening door! It seems that the new doc was in the next room!

Citan walks in and Fei exclaims –

Fei: D, d, doc? Citan? What are you doing here!?

Citan: I monitored Kislev's radio communications . . .I heard them talking about a Gear they recovered in Kislev that fit the description of Weltall. The said they transported it to their capital, so I came here on the off chance I might also find you here!

Hammer asks –

Hammer: Huh? You wouldn't by any chance know this doctor, would you bro?

Citan walks towards Fei, nodding and asks –

Citan: So anyway, Fei, have you taken any action yet?

Fei bobs his head, asking –

Fei: . . .Taken any action? What do you mean by that, doc?

Citan: You cannot stay in here forever, can you? Are you not going to escape?

Fei: Escape?

Citan: Fei! You are not intending to spend the rest of your life here are you? You do not mind breaking your promise then?

Fei: What promise . . .?

Citan shakes his head, saying –

Citan: Oh my! How could you forget such an important thing as that? You promised Bart that you would protect Margie and the people of Nisan if anything happened to him!

Fei nods and begins –

Fei: Oh that? I did promise that, didn't I . . .!? But . . .has something happened to Bart?

Citan: I am afraid to say so. He fought bravely against the enemy's new forces . . . But it was in vain! The Yggdrasil was badly damaged and sank to the bottom of the sea of sand. Just before the ship sank, I jumped in an escape-pod and jettisoned out of there so that I was not engulfed. Since then, I regret to say I could find out nothing of the other's whereabouts or fates . . .

Fei shakes his head slightly, saying -

Fei: Who would have thought . . .What was I doing . . .?

Citan: What in the heavens happened, Fei?

Fei turns away and walks towards the bed, bowing his head as he says -

Fei: Once again . . .I lost all memory . . .and all sense of time . . .While I was fighting that Vanderkaum guy, he, Grahf, appeared . . .Then I realized Bart and the crew's plight. The other guys with me were defeated by Vanderkaum and his giant-sized Gear . . . After that . . .After that . . .it was like Lahan village over again! When I woke up, I was in Nortune's prison block . . .

He looks up and turns to Citan asking -

Fei: Doc, what happened to the squadron at the borderlands? What is the meaning of my being here and Weltall having been recovered in Kislev . . .?

Citan shakes his head, saying -

Citan: . . .That squadron was annihilated! There was also the wreckage of a giant-sized Gear . . .the likes of which I have never seen before!

Fei bows his head, thinking -

Fei: . . .

Citan walks towards him and shakes his head, saying -

Citan: Come on now Fei! Nobody is pointing their finger at you! It might have been caused by something else!

Fei looks up at Citan and shakes his head, saying -

Fei: It's alright, doc. Little by little I've been coming to understand it.

He raises his hands, studying them and says -

Citan: Oh, Fei . . .

Fei: Just maybe . . .No . . .most surely . . .I've done it again . . .

Fei drops his hands and looks up, nodding as he says -

Fei: I'll keep my promise . . .Otherwise I'd never be able to look at Bart in the face again . . . Cause Bart and them are alive somewhere . . .I just know that they are!

Citan nods, asking -

Citan: So that means . . .

Fei nods and responds -

Fei: I'm gonna do whatever it takes to get out of here! Will you help me out doc?

Citan nods, saying -

Citan: Of course. It will be my pleasure!

Hammer comes forward and says -

Hammer: No, bro, I doubt it!
Any thought of leaving here is just a dream!

Citan and Fei turn to him and Citan asks -

Citan: Why do you say that?

Hammer indicated the orange metal collar around his neck and says -

Hammer: Cause of these things! They're explosive collars!
As long as we are wearing them, we'll never be able to set foot out of here!

Citan: Explosive collars . . .? That is dangerous of them, is it not!?
Allow me to have a little look at it, please.

Citan starts towards Hammer and examines the collar, musing -

Citan: . . .Let me see . . .Hmm . . .well, well . . .Ah, ha . . .Ohhh . . .Humph . . .

He backs off and turns to Fei, saying -

Citan: We might just possibly be able to do something about these.

He nods and Hammer exclaims -

Hammer: Re, really!? . . .Even mechanical engineers gave up on these in despair!

Fei nods in Citan's direction and says -

Fei: Doc was always good at tinkering with machines. So I guess there's hope!

Hammer shakes his head slowly, saying -

Hammer: I don't know, bro! Let's leave them alone! No matter how good he is . . .
One tiny mistake and it's BOOM! BANG! Game Over, man! Get Hammer's drift, bro!?

Fei shakes his head, saying -

Fei: . . .It's alright. I believe in doc!

Citan nods and says -

Citan: . . .Well then, shall we give it a try?

He approaches Fei and asks -

Citan: Are you absolutely sure you want to go through with this, Fei?
Do you not want to think it through first? (pauses) Just to be sure, I mean!
(pauses) Though you can trust me . . .I hope!

Fei puts his hands on his hips, bows his head and says -

After a moment, he decides to let Citan try, somewhat nervous. Hammer says -

Hammer: . . .Oooh, brooooo!

As Citan comes forward and shoves his glasses up on his nose, saying -

Citan: Well then . . .let us give it a go . . .

Citan begins fiddling with the collar, Fei hears, " . . .RATTLE! RATTLE!" Citan says -

Citan: Mmm . . .This is . . .harder than . . . I thought!
More sounds are heard, " . . .CLATTER! CLATTER! . . .CLANG!" then "CL . . .ANK:
Citan: Ah! . . .Oh, dear!

Hammer turns to Citan and says -

Hamer: Th, th, that part is . . .!

A white light consumes all as Citan raises his arms in a protective posture. Fei sees the town below grow more distant as he rises, then the white light consumes all once more and he is once again in sickbay, shouting -

Fei: WWWAAAAAAARRRRRGGGGGHHHHH----!!!

Citan shakes his head, asking -

Citan: Fei!! What is wrong!?

Fei shakes his head and asks -

Fei: Errh, arrh, . . .doc? Wh, wh, what just happened? Wh, what was that?

Citan nods and says -

Citan: You scared the heck out of me, suddenly shouting like that. Is everything O. K.?
Anyway, are you absolutely sure now? I will start removing the explosive collar then . . .

Fei: (shakes head) Let's not do this! I've a bad feeling about it.
Sorry, doc . . .

Citan turns and walks away, facing Fei once more as he says -

Citan: . . .I can understand that. There's no reason to try something so dangerous yet!
We have not explored all the other possibilities. There may be another way!

Hammer: Oh, I forgot to tell you! There is a way of having these collars removed . . .
It requires you winning a 'Special Pardon' in the Imperial Games, though . . .

Citan turns to him, asking -

Citan: A 'Special Pardon'?

Hammer: Yes. Every year they hold the Imperial Games of Battling. The Kaiser himself watches over the Battling matches and cancel any sentences the winner is serving. Also the winner is given a position as a military officer as an added bonus!

Citan nods, turning to Fei as he says -

Citan: Well then, all we have to do is win at the Games then! Do we not, Fei?

Citan turns to Hammer as he says -

Hammer: I am telling you it is hopeless! To do that you will have to defeat the current champion, Master Rico! But our bro here was totally beaten by that very person just days ago! And this time we're talking about Battling! With Gears, bro, Gears! There's no assurance of your safety. He could very well kill you by pretending to cause an accident!

Fei: . . .

Citan turns to Fei and asks -

Citan: Really?

Fei nods and says -

Fei: Yeah . . .but last time I didn't have the desire to fight them . . .
Yet if I were to come up against him seriously . . .I am not sure whether I could win or not.

Citan: Is he really that much stronger than the other four Battlers, this Champ chap?

Hammer shakes his head, saying -

Hammer: Put it this way . . .He's the undefeated king, reigning at the summit of the Imperial capital's Battling Tournaments! With a history of 40 bouts ending in 40 K. O. s, most of which occurred within 30 seconds from start time . . .If he wins this year's Imperial Games then he'll be the reigning champion for three years running!

Citan turns to Hammer, asking -

Citan: Just one second! Is this person a (pause) prisoner?

Hammer: Yes he is.

Citan: That is strange . . .The winner is supposed to receive a pardon, right?
Why is he still a prisoner now then?

Hammer crosses his arms and responds -

Hammer: That's the thing! Master Rico could have said goodbye to prison life by now! But they say he turned down his pardon. I guess he must like fighting a great deal . . .!

Fei shakes his head, saying -

Fei: Well we can't just stand round here talking about it. I don't care whether it is Battling or whatever! If there is a chance then I am going to try and take it!

Hammer: Are you serious?

Fei: (nods) Yes, I am.

Hammer: Do you think you can win?

Fei shakes his head, saying -

Fei: No, I don't. But, for now, I can only give it a try!

Hammer: Well . . .If that's how it is then I'll just go off and register you now!

He rushes off and Fei turns to watch him go, saying -

Fei: That Hammer . . .He looked very pleased all of a sudden!

Citan turns to him, pondering as he asks -

Citan: . . .But are you alright about this? As we spoke about before . . .
Whether you are forced to or not . . .you did not want to do this, right?
Fight with Gears, I mean!?

Fei bows his head -

Fei: . . .

Citan looks at him, saying -

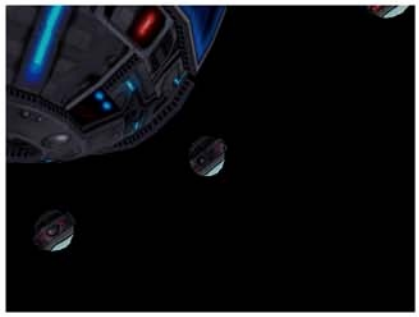
Citan: There are most probably other ways to get out of here. Fei, I do not want to push you into anything you do not want to do!

Fei nods, saying -

Fei: I know doc. I still don't like Gears. That much hasn't changed. When I pilot them, I become aware of how unstable my very 'being' is . . .even if I don't want to think of it! But at the same time, it is also a connection with some lost 'part' of me. If that's the case then, recently, I decided I would stick with it to the end. Elly also had been troubled by the same thing. And if I just stay depressed about it, nothing will improve!

Citan nods and says -

Citan: Is that how you feel . . .?
I think I understand you better now, Fei.
Anyway, let us get some rest today. We are going to become very busy!



Scene fades to image of a round sphere, floating in blackness. Multicolored screens line its surface, some with faces on them and the entire thing rotates slowly. It is orbited by a series of smaller orbs which emit a low hum. The faces are old and strange. There is an air of finality about them . . .The first speaks -

Faster than we expected . . .

The awakening of the untouchable one . . .

It has been three years since we heard any news. According to the memory cube, 'he' is currently in Nortune the Imperial capital of Kislev.

Detestable . . .Vexing . . .Cursed . . .

If only 'he' did not exist, the Lambs would not have been turned into the 'Animus'. It has been 500 years since our fall in the 'Days of Destruction' that 'he' caused . . .We would not have had to do this in such a troublesome manner, as we do now.

The excavation of the 'Anima Relics' in each area is proceeding as planned. It's too late to change things now. But in the future, we'll shape what will be.

Fade . . .Vanish . . .Disappear . . .

Although, we do not know which route it flowed from . . . . . .we're fortunate the 'gate keeper' was activated.

From the 'Ethos'? Or . . .

It doesn't matter. Although . . .

So are you saying that we mustn't break Ignas' equilibrium?

Well, it is the surface . . .and that land is unclean!

That is merely an excuse.

It's a justifiable reason. Even Cain would not object.

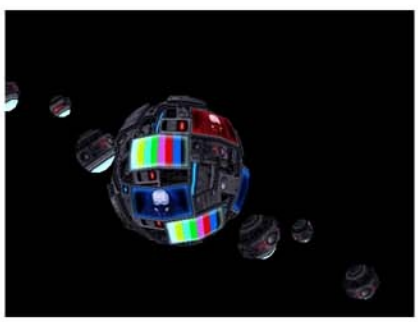
But we can't use the 'Gaetia Key'. Not until the proper time comes.

There's a third fleet in Bledavik. Their reserve units will do.

Oh, his fleet. Your orders?

To purge. Give no motives. If he knew our motives, it's obvious he'd do something unpredictable.

But, wouldn't we need more men to raze the entire area of Nortune?



There is an ancient reactor in Nortune. We'll use that. The half - life fallout will be 1000 years. Nothing will be able to live within 300 kelts of the explosion. However, they've lived through that before. They won't perish that easily.

But, we must at least eliminate 'him'.

Yes. There's nothing we need from there. So be it, take care of it.

If it is a direct hit . . .

Well then . . .

Your orders are given.

Scene fades

Scene cuts to Fei in the dorm as he make his way over to sickbay but finds that Citan is gone. He goes up the stairs and turns to the east door as Hammer comes through, approaching him and says -

Hammer: Huff, huff, huff . . .I just finished signing you up!

Fei: Gee . . .That was quick! Is it really that easy?

Hammer: Normally it isn't so easy! But a woman called Rue from the Battling Committee seems to have done some pushing and pulling on your behalf!

Fei: The Batlling Committee . . .? Oh, you mean those three?

Hammer: Well anyway, thanks to them, the enrolling process went like a breeze! Hey hey! This means you can start Battling whenever you want to, bro!

Fei: But besides that, Hammer, since yesterday, you've seemed a little too happy! Is there something strange going on behind the scenes that I don't know about?

Hammer: . . .Huh? N, n, no! N, nothing! N, n, nothing at all! The mechanic of champions, me, has had his sins wiped clean so there is nothing to be suspect of! Hahaha!

Fei: Hmm, really?

Hammer: What do you mean? I told you there is nothing at all! Oo oh! I've got a lot to do, so I'll go on ahead of you!

He rushes out and Fei starts forward, saying -

Fei: Oh . . .! Hey . . .! W, w, wait . . .! (pauses) What are you up to. Not saying where you're going to . . .

Hammer turns around at the east door and says -

Hammer: Oh, I forgot to tell you! The Battling Arena is on the outskirts of D - Block. Talk to the guard and he should let you pass. Bye!

He exits and Fei says -

Fei: . . .The outskirts of D - Block?

He starts towards the door and then turns at the sound of voice -

Citan: Fei! Hold on a second!

Citan approaches him and Fei says -

Fei: What is it doc? Last night you said we should act separately . . .

Citan: Yes I know I did. But there is something that I am curious about! I shall join you in going to the Battling Arena. Is it not too late to split up after that?

Fei: . . .? Well . . .whatever! Anyway, let's get going!

Fei and Citan use the east door, making their way out onto the street. The guard at the exit stops them and says -

G1: Hey, you . . .huh? (pause) Oh it's you! I heard from the Imperial Battling Committee . . .I can let you thru, but as long as you have that bomb collar on it's no use trying to escape . . .! If you don't wanna die, stay away from the off-limit areas, such as the civilian section, okay!?

He stands aside and the two men leave D - Block. As they make their way to the Arena, they see plumes of smoke rise from the stacks all around. In the center of town is a large red building which looks kind of odd . . .Entering the Arena, they see a long counter to the left with two women in uniforms standing behind it and a section to the right for waiting. As they walk in, Fei pauses and looks around, nodding as he says -

Fei: . . .So this is the Battling Arena.

Citan nods once and says -

Citan: . . .Or the reception area to be exact.

Fei: . . .Hmm!?

Fei gives a start as the two guards step out of the waiting area, followed by Rue. The view switches to one of Fei and Citan form the front as they speak with the Committee. (It is interesting that the faces of the Committee are obscure . . .Coincidence or does it have something to do with who they are? And Citan was curious about something . . .) Rue says -

Rue: Welcome to the Battling Arena . . .Fei, Sir . . .Several days ago you were adamant about not piloting gears . . . Has something happened in the last few days to make you change your mind in such a large way?

Fei nods once and says -

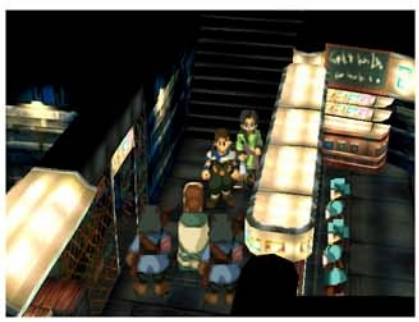
Fei: Living the rest of my life with sewer monsters is not that bad . . .it's just, well . . .there are many factors. Then there's this collar! It gets in the way so much!

Rue: Your collar . . .? (pauses) Hahahmm . . .You're amusing! Are you intending to aim for victory despite it being your first day at Battling?

Fei: (nods) . . .Is that strange?

Rue: No, no! Not the least . . .Please excuse me! You seem to have quite some confidence in fighting with Gears . . . I'm looking forward to . . .

She stops, "!?" then -



Rue: Oops . . .excuse me! Well, I guess I'll show you the way to the paddocks. We don't have much time . . .

Fei: (nods) The paddocks . . .?

Rue: What, you're thinking that you're going to fight with flesh and blood? . . . Hahahmm, not that I wouldn't mind seeing it, but . . .(pauses) We told you before that the committee would prepare a machine for you . . . What did you forget?

Fei: (shakes head) Oh, err . . .The Gear I'm going to pilot will be, err . . .

Rue: Well, come on now. Walk this way . . .

She turns and there is a silence, then Citan pushes his glasses up over the bridge of his nose and says -

Citan: Hold on! We are not ready yet . . .Can you spare us a little time?

Rue turns and says -

Rue: . . .Understood. But we don't have much time to spare, so please hurry up now . . .

She goes into the waiting area and the two guards stand to either side of the entrance. Fei and Citan go in and talk Hammer who says -

Hammer: I'm a mechanic, so I took the liberty to set up shop here for a while. Let's not waste time, bro, care to make a purchase?

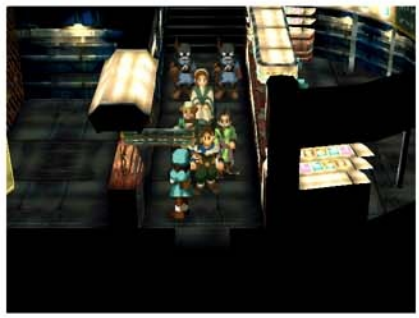
Fei makes a few purchases.

Hammer: The procedures were quite sudden so the approval for servicing Gear parts won't make it in time for the first bouts. Oh and bro, you haven't been allocated a Gear yet . . .I wonder what Gear they willprovide you with . . .?

They speak to Rue who asks -

Rue: Are you ready?

Fei: You bet!



Rue: Very well then . . .Over there please . . .

Fei and Citan move out to the entrance area where the two guards block the exit. They hear Hammer call -

Hammer: Yo, Bro~! You forgot your mechanic! Wait up a little!

He rushes over to stand with them and Rue follows after, saying to them -

Rue: . . .It's that way!

They look over to where another uniformed woman blocks the door and they approach her, Rue bringing up the rear. Rue says -

Rue: Beyond there is the Gear paddock . . .Not much time till the first bout. You had better hurry . . .

They enter as the attendant steps aside, Hammer looking at Rue for an instant before he follows.

After they are gone, the view pulls in to a closer image of Rue and her cohorts as they come forward. The both ask -

Subordinate: Rue, ma'am, what shall we do?

Subordinate: Rue, ma'am, what shall we do?

Rue responds -

Rue: Report to the officials. Pilot confirmation complete. Suggest first bout opponent to be the black Gear . . .

They respond simultaneously -

Subordinates: Yes, ma'am!

They back off and exit, the view pulls back as they leave. Rue stands in the hallway and scene fades -

Scene cuts to the interior of the Gear paddock where Fei, Citan and Hammer stand before a familiar Gear - Weltall! View pulls in for a close up of the awesome Gear and Fei asks -

Fei: Hey, is this . . .!?

Hammer: This must be the Gear that was furnished by the committee!

Scene returns to view of Fei, Citan and Hammer as Citan says -

Citan: . . .My this IS a surprise.

Fei shakes his head, turning to Citan, asking -

Fei: Doc!?

Citan ponders and says -

Citan: . . .Hmm. I do not think this is coincidental . . . . . .I am simply assuming, but they probably intentionally furnished you with Weltall to collect some data.

Citan looks up and Fei asks -

Fei: Intentionally?

Citan nods and says -

Citan: Battling itself serves as one of Kislev's plans. From Battling, they can obtain the various combat data . . .

. . .and talented Battlers which can be used for the military.

Fei turns back to look at Weltall and asks -

Fei: Exactly what kind of data could they get outta him and I . . .?

Citan shakes his head, saying -

Citan: I would not know.

He nods once and continues -

Citan: But I can assume that this has something to do with that incident with Aveh . . .

He turns to Weltall and view cuts to an image of the Gear as he says -

Citan: Well, regardless of what the empire is up to, this is good for us. You are able to get the Gear you are most used to. If you think about it, this just enhanced our probability of escaping . . .

Fei: . . .

Scene fades and Fei is offered a brief tutorial which he accept, learning the basic concepts of Battling. At last he is ready to try his lick at the real thing and says "Begin Battle"

Informationist, "About to start a bout! OK?"

Fei: A' bout time!

He fights with Leonardo, in his Gear who says -

Leonardo: Hm! Not bad. Have it your way then . . .

Playtime is now over! Let's get serious . . .

Something begins to change in Weltall and Fei asks -

Fei: ?? What's going on?

Weltall explodes in fire.

Fei: My Gear? . . .What's going on!? . . .

Weltall burns and scene cuts to the sickbay at night, where Fei mumbles in his sleep.

Fei: Uuuh . . .Aaah . . .Gasp . . .Uuuugh . . .

View pulls up and cuts to scene in sewers where two of Rico's subordinates walk around. One turns to the other and says -

Leonardo: Heh heh . . .Jerk . . .he's probably in bed somewhere now.

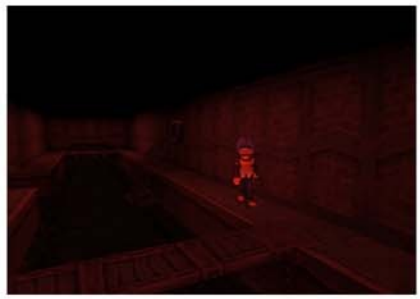
His buddy, Heinrich asks -

Heinrich: Wasn't that a bit too much? If Champ finds out, we're done for!

Leonardo: Hmph, I don't get it. Let's just get this over with. Tonight's creepy, the rats are restless.

Heinrich: What, this isn't like you . . .Alright, then you take that one . . .

They split up and Leonardo says -



Leonardo: Oh man, (pauses) this is bad . . .The hairs on the back of my neck are all standin' up. Something weird's out there.

View dissolves and cuts to scene where Heinrich walk across the bridge to another section of the sewers. He hears a distant thrashing noise and says -

Heinrich: Umph . . . (turns) Hmm . . .must just be my imagination.

He begins walking away and scene cuts to a red hazed vision of the interior of the sewers, a heartbeat thudding as the 'thing' moves along the waterways. Heinrich appears around the next corner, oblivious and it gets closer. He turns at the last moment and shouts, "What!!"

Scene cuts to Leonardo who turns at the sound of a distant scream. He says-

Leonardo: Tch! So you came out!?

He rushes over to where he heard the noise and scene cuts to the red hazed vision once more as the 'thing' moves along the waterway. It rounds a corner and Leonardo at the end sees 'it' and says -

Leonardo: What the!? (As 'it' rushes forward, he says -) Crap . . .this . . .monster's . . .

He tries to runs and turns, stuttering -

Leonardo: St, sta . . .stay away . . .

Leonardo slowly backs off, eyes glued tot he thing which pursues him and everything goes dark as he screams, "Uwaahhhh"

Scene cuts to the sickbay where Fei lies resting on the bed, his arm thrown over his face. He wakes up and says -

Fei: . . .Where am I . . .Oh, the infirmary?

Citan walks in and says -

Citan: Well hello, Fei! Are you wide awake yet . . .?

Citan strides forward and Fei drops his arm, looking at him as he asks -

Fei: Doc . . .What happened to me . . .? How did I get here . . .?

As Citan begins, Hammer walks in -

Citan: During the Battling match . . .there was a sudden explosion . . .remember?

Fei covers his face with his arm once more and says -

Fei: . . .That's right . . .In that explosion . . .I lost conciousness!?

Citan: It was a large explosion, but you were fortunate the Gear was Weltall . . .! Any other Gear and I would hate to think . . .(pauses) Anyway, you are safe, that is what matters!

Fei: Thanks to . . .(pauses) Weltall, huh?

There is a silence, then Fei looks up at Citan, dropping his arm, and asks -

Fei: . . .Doc. How many days have passed since then?

Citan: Only a day has elapsed since the accident. Your injuries were relatively minor, so . . .

Fei: Only one day . . .

Citan: What is the matter, Fei . . .?

Fei covers his face with his arm and says -

Fei: I had an awful dream . . .I can't remember it, but . . .I just know it was awful . . .

Citan: A dream . . .?

There is a silence, then Fei says -

Fei: . . .It was nothing, I guess. Don't worry about it, doc.

Citan: . . .

Then Fei looks up and says -

Fei: Doc, I've got to get this explosive collar off of me as soon as I can.

Citan: Fei, how is your health holding up? I do not want you to push yourself . . .

Fei: There's no use saying that. time is not going to wait! You can't just do nothing . . .

Citan: . . .I suppose you are right. I understand what you mean, Fei. We have got to try and get out of here as soon as we possibly can. But that does not mean you have to over-exert yourself again, straight away! Take time to rest up a little more . . .

Fei: You're the doc . . .doc! I'll try . . .and get . . .a little more . . .rest . . .

Scene fades as he sleeps and cuts to the inside of sickbay once more as he wakes, fully rested. He speaks to Citan, who says –

Citan: . . .(pauses) (For the time being I am a doctor and you are a prisoner . . . We should split up and act separately!)

He turns to Hammer who says –

Hammer: How are you feeling, bro? All this running backwards and forwards is killing me! I know it's a bit sudden, but how about buying something?

Fei does and makes his way up to the mess hall, where he gathers some news . . . One Battler says –

B1: I'm a wandering Battler. This town's in a tumult over a sewer monster. they say that to expert Battlers got killed! It seem they were well known around here too! And to think they both got killed! Must have been some kind of creature! Ohh, heaven forbid!

He makes his way up on the roof to the sewer entrance to ask some questions and he sees two kids up there near the rails. One boy says –

Lb1: There are rails here. Occasionally a train comes through here! . . .So I put a coin here as a test.

The girl next to him says –

Lg1: Hmmm, according to my theory the coin should get bigger . . .So it'll be worth more!

Fei moves over to the man near the entrance to the sewers but he has no new information and he goes across the rails to talk to the two guards on patrol.

G1: Hahaha. That kid's at it again. Do you know the kid's story? If he squashes that coin it'll be worthless. Well, ignorance is bliss . . . . . .Besides, he's never been successful. Gramps always gets mad at him. Happens every time . . .

G2: There are no prisoners locked up in here like you, who became a Battler in such a short time. Hahaha, won't be able to take my eyes off the match this year . . .Well, good luck. I'll be rooting for you, I guess.

He goes down to the street and sees signs advertising payment for sewer monster extremities. there is a warning of 'no work, no food.' and Fei says –

Fei: No work, no food? . . .Hmm. guess I'll be down in the sewer . . .

He goes to the bar and Latina says –

Latina: That explosion incident at the tournament really surprised me. That was no accide . . .A, never mind . . . Are you feeling better?

He makes his way down the street to the exit and the guard there says –

G3: From prisoner to Battler. Well good luck . . .

He goes over to the Arena, enters and speaks to Hammer who says –

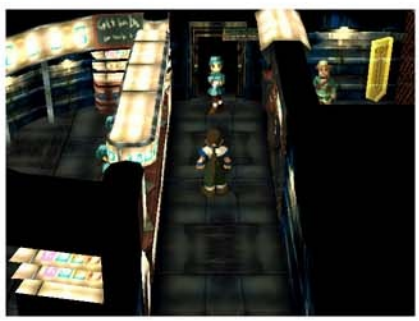
Hammer: I'm a mechanic, so I took the liberty to set up shop here for a while.

Fei buys some Gear parts and when he is done, Hammer says –

Hammer: OK, now for the Battling. Do your best, bro! For Hammer's future t . . .

Fei thinks "!?" and Hammer continues –

Hammer: Forget it!



Fei goes over to the counter where the woman on the left says –

Informationist: Nothing learned nothing gained. Ask and you shall receive . . .perhaps. Anyway, 'Battler', what do you need to know about the Battling Contest?

He learns the basic controls once more and turns to the Receptionist who says –

Receptionist: Due to sudden mechanical trouble, your competitor for yesterday, Leonardo Sniper, has had to drop out . . .Heinrich Clive has also had mechanical problems and has pulled out. This means you, Fei, win by default and can compete in day 2's bouts! If you win 2 matches today, the second day of the games, you can progress on to the third set of bouts. Do you want to enter the bouts for day two?

Fei: Let me enter!

Receptionist: I have confirmed the entry of pilot 'Fei'. One moment please . . .

He turns towards the entrance to the Gear paddock as a bell is heard and the entire place shakes on its foundations as a mechanical grinding takes place. there is a pounding noise, then it subsides and the uniformed lady at the door says –

L1: The Gear 'Weltall' has been sent to the storage paddock. Standby for boarding!

Another grinding as the place rattles once more, then a hissing noise as the lady steps aside and a siren begins wailing. She says –

L1: Pilot Fei, please proceed to the competitor's paddock!

He moves forward and the battle begins! He wins after two outs against Tin Robo, easily defeating him and the receptionist says –

Receptionist: Wow, you're sooo stroooong! Boy, was he ever outmatches! Ooh, I get pins and needles at your over-whelming power! Here's the prize money paid to winners of a Battling bout. It's well earned!

He receives some money and she continues –

Receptionist: Oh and Supervisor B will pay you a special bonus. Keep up the good work!

He talks to her and she says –
Receptionist: It's the last bout for day two. Win this to qualify for day threes' bouts. Do you want to enter the day's final bout?
Fei: Go for it!
She confirms his entry and the Gear is loaded once more. Fei enters into Battle. He wins after two rounds and returns to the entrance where the Receptionist says –
Receptionist: Hmm, not a bad battle! Keep up the good work!
The matches over for the day, he leaves after receiving his prize money and makes his way back to D Block to thedorm. He talks to Citan who whispers –

Citan: . . .(You are doing well Fei. Now go to bed and rest!)

He does so and awakens on day 3 ready to go! He returns to the Arena and the Receptionist says –
Receptionist: Today is the third day of the games. Win two bouts and you qualify for tomorrow's semi – finals. Do you want to enter day three's bouts?
Fei: Let me enter!
She confirms his entry and the Gear is brought up. He enters the bout and wins, noticing the difficulty is slightly higher. He wins and the Receptionist gushes over his performance, paying him his money and he enters the next bout. the Receptionist says –
Receptionist: It's the last bout for day three. Win this to qualify for tomorrow's semi – finals. Do you wish to enter the day's final bout?
Fei: Let's do it!
She confirms his entry and he enters the next bout. He wins after moderate difficulty and receives his prize money. The Receptionist says –
Receptionist: Today's Battling matches are all finished. Please come again.
He leaves and returns to the dorm and sleeps. The next day he rises and says –

Fei: Huh? Someone's coming downstairs . . .I guess it'll be Hammer!

He moves forward and Rico appears, turns to him , saying –

Rico: . . .Long time no see, huh, kid!
Fei: Hey, you're . . .(pauses) Rico!? What are you doing here?
Rico: Calm down, kid! I didn't come here to fight with you . .
Fei: Then what purpose do you have here? What other reason could you have?

The view shifts to Fei from the front as he faces Rico and Citan asks –

Citan: What is going on out there? This is a place for rest! Can you be a bit quieter . . .
They both turn as Citan comes out and he continues –
Citan: Why, it is only you Fei! And . . .the Battling Champion? (turns to Rico) What would the likes of you have to do coming to a prison barracks? There must be some special reason for you to grace us with your presence?

Rico turns to Citan and says –

Rico: Yes there is . . .I came in regards to the incident of the explosion during the first rounds of the Battling contest.
Fe nods and asks –
Fei: Explosion incident? . . .Oh, you mean what happened the other day!

Citan: The explosion accident that Fei was enveloped in during that bout? What has that got to do with you?

Rico: . . .I'm sorry. That 'accident' was set up by my subordinates! After the results of your 'Baptismal Ceremony', it seems my men didn't come to like you very much . . .
Citan: So they made it look like an accident but it really was meant to kill Fei . . .But why tell us now? Did they come clean and confess the crimes they committed?
Rico: . . .They're no longer with us! You're the doctor, don't you know what's been happening? What's going on here in the Imperial capital's D Block?

Citan nods and says –
Citan: You mean the series of mysterious murders that happened in the sewers!?

Rico: . . .Yes. A line of skilled Battlers have been murdered one after the other! All of the victims that have been killed were my subordinates . . .
There is a silence, then he turns to Fei, saying –
Rico: Kid . . .I mean, Fei . . .!
They were the very people who had set that trap to kill you!

Fei: So what are you trying to say? That their deaths are connected to me somehow!?
Citan ponders and says –
Citan: Let us see . . .The murdered Battlers had set a trap to try and kill Fei . . . When Fei comes to know of this he has good reason to kill them . . .Out of hatred of his would-be killers, he plots revenge on the Battlers. And turns to 'murder'!

Citan looks up and Fei asks –
Fei: . . .People think I am the killer?

Rico: Exactly! This morning there was yet another victim . . .the fifth! It's not unusual for people to die in the sewers. If you become weak, you die . . .that's providence!
But 5 Battlers were killed in a row! That this is unprecedented alone casts doubt on you. To say that I don't doubt you would be lying, but I don't think you are guilty, either. the only thing that can prove your innocence is if there is any truth in that story going around . . .The story of a monster in the sewers that is strong enough to kill 5 Battlers!

He pauses, then says –

Rico: For the sake of my men too, I am about to check out the sewers. I've said what I wanted to say . . .

He begins to walk away when Fei shakes his head, calling after him –

Fei: Wait up! Let me . . .Let me go with you! I want to prove to you that I am innocent myself!

Rico turns at the foot of the stairs and says –

Rico: You want to tag along, huh? I don't care. But you've got to look after your own neck!

Citan ponders once more and taps his foot, saying –

Citan: It's up to Fei himself to prove that he has been falsely suspected . . . . . .There is no alternative then. (pauses) please allow me to accompany you in solving this sewer murder case!

Rico turns around and says –

Rico: . . .The doctor too? I don't take any responsibility if anything happens to you . . .!

The Sewers

Scene fades and cuts to the dorm's mess hall where the three men make their way over to one of the tables and talk to a battler –

B1: There was another victim in the sewers. That makes four! He wasn't a direct subordinate of the Champ, but he was a skilled extermination worker!

Another Battler says –

B2: Another murder in the sewers! This time it was Vargas . . .! What in blazes is going on!? (he turns to look at Fei) Say, didn't you . . . . . .Nothing, forget it!

The guy next to him says –

B3: A body of one of the Champ's immediate subordinates was found in the sewers! Knowing that a monster big enough to do that is lurking below us . . .sure is scary! It gives me the shivers!

The informer says –

Inf: Hey, what's the trouble?

Fei: Any new information?

Inf: The new medical doctor who just came is quite skilled. Have you seen him yet?

They leave and make their way up on the roof to the sewer entrance. The guy standing guard stands there as usual and they go down. On the way down the ladder, Rico stops as the Battler guard says –

Bg: Hey, what . . .the? Y, you're the Ch, Champ!

Rico: Thanks for watching the sewers. I'm going down there now . . . Don't let anyone besides these guys in.

Bg: Yes sir, Champ!

Scene fades as he goes down below.

Scene cuts to a green tinged view of the interior of the sewers, a sound of heavy breathing as the 'thing' makes its way along the waterways. It pauses, looks up at the ladder leading outside and turns around going back where it came from.

Scene cuts to the inside of sewer as Fei, Citan and Rico come down the ladder. They walk a bit to the left and Fei pauses, turning as he asks –

Fei: Where is this place?

Rico: Let's look for it. We'll talk more if we really find it.

Fei shakes his head, asking –

Fei: Do you really doubt me?

There is a pause as they stare down one another, then Citan walks a distance away, saying –

Citan: Shh, quiet!

They both turn and Fei thinks – Fei: ? . . .

Rico moves towards Citan who is looking out into the darkness and asks –

Rico: What's wrong . . .?

Scene cuts to a green tinged view once more, the sound of heavy breathing as the 'thing' edges to the right slowly just enough to get a view of Citan. Then it backs off and turns around –

Scene cuts back to the three men and Citan turns to Rico, shakes his head –

Citan: . . .!? Well . . .let us look around.

They join Fei and explore the first level of the sewers, fighting many battles. They run across one of the murder scenes and they look at it as Fei asks –

Fei: Here . . .?

Rico nods and says –

Rico: Well, this is the murder spot.

Citan moves forward and ponders as he studies the wall. He says –

Citan: . . .Something is (pause) written on the wall . . .(he reads aloud)
Re . . .Red . . .monster . . . This must be his dying message.

Rico: Must've written it as he was dying.

Citan: A red monster . . .

He turns to Fei and ponders, foot tapping as he muses –

Citan; Very interesting.

Fei: . . .?

He looks up and Fei thinks –

Rico turns around and looks at a puddle of green slime nearby.
He asks –

Rico: Hey! What's this slime? What (pause) a mess . . .

They move on, fighting monsters and they run across another patch of blood with a white chalk outline around it. Rico nods once and says –

Rico: Looks like he got it here.

Fei kneels and looks at the ground, asking –

Fei: !? What's this slimy stuff?

Rico: It's over by that drain too.

Fei stands and Citan moves off a little ways, saying –

Citan: Look here!

They all turn and look down at a drain pipe with a thick slime deposit underneath it.
Rico says –

Rico: More of the same . . .

Fei: Something the monster left?

Ctian turns to Fei, pondering as he responds –

Citan: Still . . .we cannot be sure . . .but it is very likely.

They begin moving through the darkened sewer passageways once more. They find a map of the sewer and make their way down a ladder to a lower level.

Scene cuts to Fei, Citan and Rico as they go down the ladder and make their way to the right before stopping at the sound of a distant ringing noise.

Citan: . . .!?

Citan moves forward and stares out into the darkness and Rico asks –

Rico: What's wrong, Citan . . .is there something here?

Citan: A tinkle sound . . .(pauses) I heard some kind of a tinkle sound!

Fei comes forward, asking –

Rico: A bell! (pause) A bell . . .?

Fei: A bell . . .?

Both Citan and Fei turn to look at him and Fei asks –

Fei: Do you know something?

Rico nods slightly, saying –

Rico: Now that you mention it . . .
There is a rumor of a strange ringing sound down here . . .

They join Fei and begin exploring this new section, fighting even tougher monsters. After some time, they run across a tiny inert machine and Fei asks –

Rico: This is a rat-sweeper machine.
We call them the 'Catless Rat Removers'!

Fei: What's this?

Citan ponders as Fei thinks, " . . .". Citan says –

They look at it and Rico shakes his head, saying –

Citan: What is this?

Rico: No . . .It's not broken . . .(pauses) Why isn't it moving?

Rico bends his head down, saying –

Rico: Lemme see it.

They investigate the machine ad Fei exclaims –

Fei: . . .!?

Fei: Ha! There's something inside. !? What's this?

They receive Keys. Rico says –

Rico: !! . . .These were Vargas' pass keys to the sewer. They must've got caught up in this thing. That's why it wasn't moving?

Fei: I wonder what these keys are for?

Rico: These are the keys to the sewage treatment plant.

Citan: Sewage treatment plant?

Rico: That's where all the sewage ends up.

Citan: That is strange . . .Where is it?

Rico: From here its' northeast through the door and near the furthest waterfall.

Fei nods and says –

Fei: Let's go and see.

They continue through the sewers, fighting more battles. They find a tiny green mutant, named Gramps, who asks –

Gramps: Who're you?

Rico: Hey gramps! What are you doing here? I thought the entrance was blocked off.

Gramps: Hmph. I've lived here a long time.

Rico: All by yourself? In a spooky place like this?

Gramps: As you can see I'm a mutant. So the monster never bothers me. But lately, my new neighbor's been going around bustin' things up.

Rico: What, really? We're looking for him.

Gramps: Oh? Would you get rid of him for me? If you need to know anything ask me. I'll help you.

They show him the key –

Gramps: That's the passkey for the sewers. You can get into the room beside the waterfall with it. Take care of yourselves.

They move on past him and go down one of the passageways, fighting more battles. they run across another murder scene and Fei says –

Fei: Here too.

Rico walks off a ways and says –

Rico: there's slime in this drain too.

Citan turns and asks –

Citan: Where does this drain connect to?

Rico turns to him and responds –

Rico: Everything should connect to the sewage treatment plant . . .

Citan turns and thinks, "!! . . .!? . . ." and scene cuts to –

A green tinged view of them and the ledge from a distance, the 'thing' watching from the waterways. It backs off and goes down one of the ways to a pipe with slime beneath it.

Scene cuts back to them as Rico says –

Rico: Hey, this is . . .

Fei turns to him and says –

Fei: (nods) Yeah.

Citan nods once and says –

Citan: There is something lurking around here, I am sure of it. (turns to Rico) This is certainly the strangest. Do you know where these drains come together?

Rico nods once and says –

Rico: Hmm. From here it's beside the waterfall furthest to the east of here.

They rejoin Fei, and the party makes its way once more through the gloomy passages. They find another murder scene and Citan looks down and says –

Citan: There is always slime near the murder scene. Looks like it only happened once.

As Citan looks up, Rico asks –

Rico: Whaddaya talkin' about?

Citan ponders and says –

Citan: They say it will not return to the same place . . .I wonder?

Fei: !? . . .

They make their way through the sewers, at last arriving at the door near the waterfall. They stand before it and Fei says –

Fei: Hmmm, this is . . .

He tries one of the keys –

Fei: . . .Damn. No . . .It must be this one . . .

Tries another, then –

Fei: . . .What?

Rico: . . .hurry up . . .

Fei turns to Rico, shaking his head as he asks –

Fei: Why are there so many keys?

Scene cuts to the interior of the pipe – filled room on the other side of the door, green tinged view as the thing moves around, breathing ponderously. Then it drops with a thud to the grate before the closed door as Rico's voice comes through, saying –

Rico: Maybe this one . . .

A click, then Fei says –

Fei: Not that one . . .

View fades as he continues –

Fei: Um, this one . . .

Scene cuts back to view of the three men as they stand before the door. Fei shakes his head thinking –

Fei: . . .!

Then he says –

Fei: Whew. Open!

Rico nods once and asks –

Rico: Are you ready?

Fei nods once, looking at the door and says –

Fei: Okay, let's go.

They all turn towards the door and Fei says –

Fei: One-two!

They enter together and stand in the room – which is empty!

Fei: What!?

Rico: It's not here . . .

Fei turns and says –

Fei: Look up!

View tilts to look at the dark recesses of the tangled pipes leading up into darkness. Returns back down and Rico shakes his head, saying –

Rico: It moved . . .

Fei: (shakes head) It's not here . . .

Citan moves around the perimeter of the grate and looks down as he says –

Citan: It appears it can move outside through these sewage drains.

Rico moves forward and says –

Rico: Damn! (pauses) We should of found it here!

They rejoin Fei and look around the room, noticing something in the corner –

Fei :!? . . .

Receives Bell amulet. He looks down at the object, asking –

Fei: What's this?

Rico looks at him and says –

Fei: Why would it have this?

Rico: Wait! (pauses) We can lure it with this thing!

Citan: Hmmm . . .it does not look like it will show up now.

Rico turns to him and asks –

Rico: Where can we use it?

Citan: Let us think about what we know so far.

Fei: . . .??

They explore the rest of the chamber, climbing up the slippery pipes to look above, but they find nothing. They make their way out to the sewers once more and pause by a nearby drainpipe as Fei says –

Slime in the drain . . .There should be several places like this.

Citan nods and says –

Citan: Yes. This must be the one drain it comes and goes from.

Fei turns to him and nods once, exclaiming –

Fei: That's it! (pauses) We'll use the bell there to lure it out.

They try it and Fei says –

Fei: (looks down) Try and use this . .

Citan shakes his head and says –

Citan: No, there is a murder scene near but this is not it.

They move on, looking for other likely places and fight more battles along the way. They talk to Gramps who says –

Gramps: And you can lure it with this bell.

Fei: Ring it here?

Gramps: Uh – huh, that's it . . .there is always slime near the drains it uses. And he never returns to the same site twice.

Fei: So we need a drain with slime nearby and no murder site.

Gramps: Right. I think . . .(pauses) there's one on this floor, north of here.

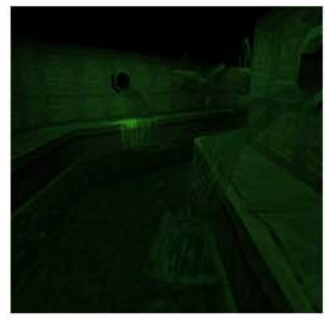
They move to the north and find a drain with slime but no murder scene. They look at it and Fei says –

Fei: . . .! Here!!

Citan nods once and says –

Fei: Alright. Got it!

Citan: I am sure. This is the only drain with slime and no murder site nearby.



Scene cuts to the green tinged view of a waterfall and the 'thing' turns and begins moving down a waterway.

Scene cuts to the three men as they stand. Fei says –

Fei: Umph!

Scene cuts to green tinged view as the thing moves faster through the sewers, breathing heavily.

They all turn and Citan exclaims –

Citan: It is here!

Cuts to a green tinged view as the thing rushes through –

Cuts to the three as they stand, Rico shouts –

Rico: Outta my way!

A spray of water from the pipe behind them and Fei thinks –

Fei: . . .!!

With a roar, the creature flies with lightning speed, unseen to the water below and Fei turns shouting –

Fei: Behind you!!

They all turn and Rico says –

Rico: What!

Enter battle! The creature is a frightening parody of a human being. Bright red, with arms of protruding bones, he is a fierce opponent and the three have a difficult time killing it. They win and the scene returns to the three as they stand, staring at the water.

Rico: What the hell was that . . .?

Fei looks down and asks –

Fei: Why did it . . .(pause) have a bell . . .?

Citan nods once and says –

Citan: . . .It had a normal, human-like intellect. (he turns, shaking his head as he says to them) No. It is better to say . . . 'had left remaining'.

Rico: What!? Whaddaya mean? (pauses) No . . .

Fei turns to Citan and thinks –

Fei: !? . . .

Citan nods and turns, looking down in the water as he responds –

Citan: . . .It is really, (pauses) rather sad . . .

Scene fades and returns to the entrance of the sewers as they make their way to the ladder. They stand at its foot and Rico says –

Rico: I'll see you later . . .I'll wait at your dorm.

He turns and begin climbing the ladder, when he suddenly stops, clutching his arm.

Rico: Ugh . . .

Fei shakes his head, saying –

Fei: Hey . . your left arm! (pause) In that fight you got . . .

Rico turns to the ladder once more, says –

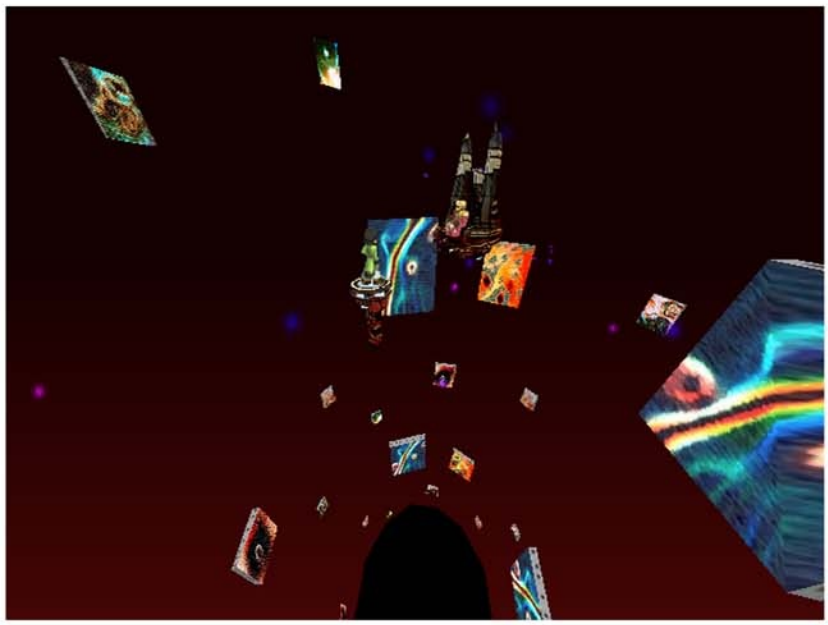
Rico: It's nothing . . .

He climbs up and disappears. Citan says –

Citan: I wonder if he will forfeit the Battle because of that injury?

Fei turns to Citan and thinks –

Fei: ? . . .



Emperor: Has he awoken . . .?

Citan: Yes. Twice . . .no . . .three times to be exact. May I ask you this . . .? Why would he be moved to a place like this . . .?
(pauses) Was it the elders?

Emperor: Nay. They're hoping for a more immediate disposal. I don't blame them. They have a deeply etched fear of him.

Citan: Then . . .

Emperor: Yes. Probably . . .

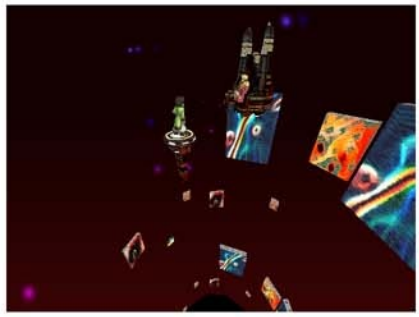
Citan: It would be hasty to dispose of him now. I do not think it is too late to wait until we find out his purpose . . .

Emperor: If that is your judgement, then, so be it.

The view begins to pull back out as Citan says –

Citan: Your will is my will, your Majesty. Well then, allow me to . . .

Emperor: Wait a moment . . .



View begins to move closer as he continues –

Emperor: . . .I see . . .

Citan: Yes . . .?

Emperor: Their judgement . . .has been handed down . . .

Citan: . . .(pauses) What is it, then . . .?

View pulls back once more and scene fades –

In the darkness, the response:

" . . .A purge!"

Scene cuts to a briefing room, a long table is in the center and Elly sits near the head with her troops as they await their next orders. A blond officer stands at the head of the table and says –

O1: . . .The number one gate generator is 200 kelt southwest of Nortune and 4000 sharl underground. It's interference waves makes guided weapon use impossible in this area. So up to the last minute the Hecht must be piloted manually. After canceling stealth mode, you will provide direct escort for the Hecht inside the enemy defense zone. Any questions?

Elly speaks up –

Elly: Well . . .

O1: Yes Lieutenant?

She rises out of her seat and continues –

Elly: I understand our escort orders but what is our main objective?

O1: That is classified.

Elly: But without knowing our objective, our response to any orders will be slow. Even if we're just ordered to provide cover. We need to at least know the attack objective . . .

O1: The objective will be issued during the mission. It will be relayed directly to the Hecht's pilots.

Elly: But . . .

O1: Your only concern is to protect the Hecht from the enemy's anti-aircraft weapons. (pauses) Any problems with that?

Elly: . . .No . . .if that's the case . . .

O1: Anything else?

She sits back down and he says –

O1: . . .Then this ends the main briefing. Confirm terrain, weather and enemy defense details with the information at hand. The mission starts at 1700. Until then wait in your assigned units. I shouldn't have to remind you that this mission is a purge. Remember, we have complete authority over the Lambs. (pauses) Dismissed.

The officer exits and Elly rises, followed by her troops as they move away from the table.

Stratski: This sucks Lieutenant. How can we go along with this? What's he mean the objective has nothing to do with us?

Elly: Be quiet! I'm thinking!

Stratski: Don't snap at me.

They all turn and begin moving towards the door as Vance says –

Vance: I hate hysterical women.

Elly pauses and Vance turns to her as she says –

Elly: Are you ready to take the consequences for that remark?

Vance: Uh . . .

They are out in the hallway and move to the lounge area of the Aveh base. Elly says –

Elly: Whew . . .

She turns to Renk who stands behind her and asks –

Renk: What's wrong? Something bugging you?

They begin to walk towards the lounge as she says –

Elly: Sorry I'm so edgy. Those self-detonating bombs are just air units with Kief class bombs on board.

They enter the lounge where the others are sitting. She continues –

Elly: I don't see why they need to use them all of a sudden . . .There are just too many. One of those alone would have enough firepower, but 8 of them is overkill. They haven't told us our target yet, and we're not just going to drop them for fun. You bet I'm worried.

Helmholz: Maybe to purge the Lambs?

The others turn to her as she says –

Elly: They're human . . . the same as us, right? They have to give us a reason. I can't go along with this just because it's an order.

Renk: Hmm . . .

She turns to him, asking –

Elly: What?

Renk: Nothing . . .(he pauses) Even though we are called Solarians, we are 3rd Class Citizens or 'Worker Bees'. Us 3rd Class Citizens have our origins in the 'Lambs'. I can understand us having doubts in such orders . . . But you, you're different. You're a pure 1st Class Citizen and come from a good family. I've heard your father has a lot of pull in the military . . .

Elly: My family and father have nothing to do with it.

Renk: Well, if you ask me, a 1st Class Citizen thinking like this is . . . a little unusual.

Elly: Not really . . .It's quite natural.

Helmholz: . . .So, how about it? Are you gonna do it?

Stratski: The army will demote us all back to being 3rd Class citizens!

Elly turns to him and says –

Elly: Don't worry. I'll just do my duty. But I'm only escorting the Hecht. I won't help with anything else.

Helmholz: . . .But, what if something happens?
You're just painting yourself into a corner.

Elly bows her head and says –

Elly: . . .Can't be helped, I guess . . .

Renk: Well, either is fine for us. Just do what you're told.
Nothing else matters.

Scene fades and cuts to outside of sewer entrance. Fei and Citan make their way back to the dorm and as they enter, they see Rico waiting for them. He says –

Rico: You're late! You made me wait for ages!

Fei: Oh, errh, sorry! (pauses) Later, the doc said he wanted to pay the courtesy of burying the monster . . . so I waited outside.

Rico: . . .Is that so? Oh well, at least the murders have been brought to an end!

Citan: Yes, that is right. And Fei has been proved innocent as well!

Rico: . . . Then he says –

Rico: And I guess the out-of-bounds order on the sewers was lifted straight after that too . . .
Anyway, my allying with you ends here . . .The next time we meet, Fei, we will be opponents!
C'mon, try and beat me! I'd enjoy seeing you try to settle your scores with me!

Rico turns and begins making his way to the door when Fei calls after him –

Fei: Hey, what about that wound to your arm? You can't try to Battle in that state!

Without turning, Rico asks –

Rico: . . .Can you really afford to worry about your opponent?

Fei: . . .But, Rico?

Rico: Worry about yourself before others! Don't hold back now! Give me your best fight! (he turns and continues) If you don't do your best, you could be the one who dies . . .

Fei: . . .Understood. . . .

Rico: Right. That's good . . .

He turns and walks away and view shifts to Fei and Citan as Citan says -

Citan: Right, now that that matter is resolved, I have done all I can do to help . . .What is left is up to you, Fei. You must settle this other problem with your own hands.

Fei still looks towards the door where Rico had exited and says -

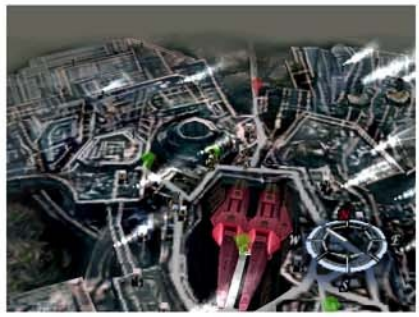
Fei: . . .I guess so.

Citan turns to him and asks -

Citan: Does his arm wound bother you that much?
Fei, you realize we do not have . . .

Fei: I know doc . . .we don't have much time to spare! What's more, what he says is right- you shouldn't hold back in a battle. Etiquette dictates a true fight!

Citan: It seems I was overly concerned. Anyway, let's rest up now.
Remember, you must win up to the Finals League first.
And the Champ is not the only one you have to beat!



Scene fades and cuts to Fei in the dorm once more and he make his way to the Arena to begin the day's battles. He speaks with the girl at the counter.

Receptionist: Today's the semi-finals. Win 3 matches to qualify for the Finals League. Do you want to enter the semi-finals?

He accepts and she confirms his entry. His Gear is brought up and the Battle begins!

The Battle is tough but he wins and moves on to the next one.

Receptionist: . . .2 matches to win before you qualify for tomorrow's Finals League.

He enters and she confirms. He battles the tough opponent, wins and goes on to the Receptionist.

Receptionist: Its' the last bout of the day! Win this to qualify for the Finals League! Do you want to enter the day's final bout?

He accepts and she confirms, bringing up Weltall. The Battle is fierce and the opponent tricky. Fei creams him and when he returns to the Receptionist, she says -

Receptionist: Wow, you're sooo strooooong! Boy, was he ever outmatched! Ooh, I get pins and needles at your overwhelming power!

He gets his prize money and Hammer comes forward. View changes as he approaches Fei and says -

Hammer: Bro, you did it! You won! You're the Battling Champ! . . .or . . .close enough anyway! Victory is in reach! If you just win tomorrow's Finals League we'll have our names cleared and be released!

Fei shakes his head and puts his hands on his hips, looking down as he says -

Fei: But Hammer, you know my opponent is no pushover! His power is incredible . . . He's been Battling Champion for three years straight! Beating him's going to be no easy task . . . Up till today I've managed to win somehow, but tomorrow is another matter! I doubt I will win.

Hammer: . . .If that's your attitude you'll lose even if you could have won! Come on bro, show some fighting spirit!

There is a silence as Fei looks up, then he starts laughing and says -

Fei: . . .Hahaha, I didn't think you'd be the type to say something like that!
He turns, shaking his head then nods and says -
Fei: You're right! I'll never win with these pre-battle blues. Thanks Hammer! Well then, let's head back to our lodgings now.

Hammer: I'd like to be able to say 'no problem', but tomorrow's Finals League is important! Don't you think you should take care in servicing and customizing your Gear? Our fates depend on it!

Fei: . . .Gear servicing, heh? Leaving it just to one mechanic worries me a bit. I'll ask the doc to give us a hand also!

Hammer: A bit of a worry? That's not so Bro! This here mechanic is doing the best he can, y'know!

Fei turns to him, shaking his head, then nods, saying -

Fei: I didn't mean it that way, so don't get all upset now, Hammer! Anyway, let's go back to our barracks and call the doc, shall we!?

Hammer: You finished the day's Battling safely, hey, bro? Why not return to your quarters and rest up a bit?

Fei leaves and scene cuts to the interior of the Gear paddock, Weltall in kneeling position as Fei stands on his bent knee, working on him. Down below, Citan and Hammer stand watching. Fei stops his work, shakes his head and asks -

Fei: . . .Is that all?

Hammer: Yep. This is the best that can be obtained around here.

Fei turns and looks down at them, asking -

Fei: You think I can win with these crude parts?
Citan ponders and responds -

Citan: You have got a point. Compared to the Champ's Gear, the quality just does not match up.

Hammer: There's nothing we can do. Master Rico's Gear is a special make of Gear provided by the Committee. From maintenance to parts, it receives the best of everything. As long as money is involved, the Champ will go all out. That's one of the reasons he's so powerful . . .

Fei starts to shake his head, then jumps down from Weltall, asking -

Fei: Cant' we get better parts? This . . .

They hear, "Hah ha ha ha ha!"

Citan looks up as a mysterious voice says -

Mysterious Voice: As usual, you haven't learned anything have you?

They begin looking around them as Fei calls out -

Fei: Who's there!?

View shifts to the balcony above Weltall, and then further up to the support pylon. There, watching from above, is Wiseman!

Wiseman: Long time . . .Fei.

Fei: You're the one . . .from the Aveh tournament . . .

Fei throws up his arms, asking -

Fei: What do you want? I'm busy right now!

Wiseman: Hmph. No matter how high quality your Gear may be, you won't be able to defeat him.

Fei drops his arms, shakes his head and asks -

Fei: Wh, what are you talking about!?

Wiseman disappears into thin air, becoming insubstantial quickly an Fei looks around wildly thinking, "!?".

Scene cuts to a view of the ground floor once more as the three look around. View shifts off to the right and circles slowly, pausing to the left as a shimmering form appears. It's Wiseman! As Wiseman becomes more tangible, Hammer backs off, saying -

Hammer: Yipes!?

Wiseman reappears and strides forward, saying -

Wiseman: You still do not understand do you? Then let me show you.

Scene cuts to a fight - with Fei! Fei asks -

Fei: Why do you suddenly want to fight for? Are you angry or something?

Wiseman: Enough talk! Take this . . .!

Wiseman lobs some bright blue fire in Fei's direction. Fei exclaims -

Fei: Whoa! Y, you're serious?

Wiseman: Of course! So put up a good fight! Cause if you don't your life is mine!

Fei begins to land in deathblows, taking him at his word. Wiseman manages to dodge some. After a few rounds, Wiseman leaps forward, shouting, "What a wimp!" and lands in a fierce blow. Fei stumbles back, then rises and lands in some more blows. After a couple of more rounds, Wiseman hits Fei with a fall of blows and Fei goes down. Rising up on one knee, Fei pants out -

Fei: Ugh . . .uhh . . .That's the same technique as me . . .!
How come . . .?

Scene cuts to the Gear paddock once more, as Wiseman says to Fei -

Wiseman: Fighting brute strength with brute strength is a sign of a great fool. It's obvious that a lighter body such as yours will always be at a disadvantage in a head-on attack. I just gave you a good example. That minor difference between you and I had this outcome. Now, someone else with a mass several times as you, like Rico, the outcome becomes highly apparent. this applies to Gears as well . . . Even if you were to get parts comparable to Rico's, there is still that difference in mass. To make up for this, one must commit to a single final strike that thrusts at the opponent's fissure.

Fei bows his head, thinking -

Fei: . . .?

Then he looks up as Wiseman turns away -

Wiseman: I have given you the hint. It's up to you to figure it out through experience.

He begins to walk away and Fei starts after him, calling -

Fei: Wait!

He shakes his head and Wiseman stops. Fei continues, asking -

Fei: Why is it that you have the same fighting style as I!?
And, how do you know my name!? Tell me!

Wiseman turns and says -

Wiseman: Hmph . . .fine.

Fei nods and Wiseman walks a little distance away, his face turned as he says -

Wiseman: It was 3 years ago . . . The one who took you, in your mutilated state, to that mountain village was none other than myself.

Fei: You're the one who brought me to Lahan!?

There is a pause, then Wiseman responds -

Wiseman: . . .Yes. At your father's request.

Fei: My father's . . .!? What's your relation to my father!?

Wiseman turns and begins walking forward as he says -

Wiseman: Khan and I were fellow students.

Fei turns, watching him, and asks -

Fei: . . .Khan? Is that my father's name?

Wiseman: Why do you ask for your father's name?
(pauses) You haven't lost your . . .?

Fei: Yeah . . .So tell me anything you can. (pause) Will you?

Wiseman: I see . . .In your injured state . . .I wouldn't have been surprised . . .

Fei: Wiseman.

Wiseman: . . .Khan Wong. That is your father's name. Since our youth, Khan and I studied the martial arts together . . .

Fei: Father and you . . .?

Wiseman: . . .Yes. Eventually, your father became an officer of a certain country. There he met a young woman. She was about 20 years old. Her name was 'Karen'. She was like a flower in full bloom.

Fei bows his head and says -

Fei: Flower . . .?

Citan nods and speaks up -

Citan: He means that she was extraordinarily beautiful.

Fei turns to him and says slowly -

Fei: I, see. Then she's . . .?

Fei turns to Wiseman as he responds -

Wiseman: Yes, your mother. Khan married your mother, and I left on a journey to strengthen myself.

Fei shakes his head, turns to Wiseman and asks -

Fei: Then my mother? Where is my mother now?

Wiseman: You do not remember that either? . . .I see. . . .
According to Khan, when you were but a child, she passed away.

Fei bows his head once more and says -

Fei: Oh . . . . . .

Wiseman turns toward Fei and continues -

Wiseman: Time passed. During my journey, I received a letter from Khan.
The letter said that his son . . .was taken away by a man.
Khan once said you had special powers. The man who wanted that power took you.
That man was (pause) Grahf.

Fei looks up, shaking his head and asks -

Fei: Grahf!? He took me away!?

Wiseman turns to him and asks -

Wiseman: You've (pause) met him?

Fei nods and responds -

Fei: Yeah . . .three times.

Wiseman: Its amazing you are still in one piece.

Fei shakes his head saying -

Fei: It seemed to Grahf, that I was still not powerful enough to achieve his ultimate goal . . . Anyway, let me hear more about this story.

Wiseman walks a little distance off -

Wiseman: Khan wished to go find his son, and if possible, he wanted my help . . .I agreed to Khan's request and began searching for you . . . . . .and that man. Then came that one fateful night 3 years ago. There was a violent storm. The storm felt as if it was thrown at us through sheer rage. That night, Khan notified me that he had located his son. So I headed for that location, as if I was drawn to it.

Wiseman shakes his head, continuing -

Wiseman: You and Khan were wounded badly. I have no idea what had happened between you two and Grahf. By then, Grahf had already gone. I don't know why, but probably he was driven away by Khan. Khan decided to pursue Grahf and left me to care for his son. I provided you with the necessary first aid and left you in the custody of those village people. then I followed after Khan. You probably lost your memory when you were injured then.

Fei nods once and asks -

Fei: Why did my father pursue Grahf?

Wiseman shakes his head, saying -

Wiseman: I do not even know. Just that he said it was not only for the sake of his son, but also for the sake of the world, that that man had to be disposed of . . .He added that if something were to happen to him, I would have to take care of the rest . . . I haven't seen or heard from him since.

Fei bows his head and says -

Fei: Grahf said that my father was (pause) dead . . .

Wiseman shakes his head, then says -

Wiseman: Hmmm . . .If Grahf has been appearing in your presence . . . then that is a possibility . . . (pauses) that is truly unfortunate . . .

Wiseman: Do you remember anything about your fighting techniques?

Fei looks up, shakes his head and says

Fei: Huh? No . . .nothing . . .

Wiseman: Hmmm, your fighting skills were probably taught to you by Khan. Khan and I both studied under the same master. that is why my techniques are similar to yours. (he then shakes his head, saying) Well then, I must be off.

Fei: To where?

Wiseman shakes his head, then says -

Wiseman: I will go find him. (pauses) I need to pinpoint what his intentions are. (turns to the side) . . .
And also, for Khan's sake.

Fei nods once and asks -

Fei: Just tell me one thing. What country was my father an officer for?

Wiseman: Are you going there?

Fei: (shakes head) I don't know. There are other things I have to take care of . . .

Wiseman: Yes.

Wiseman: The floating land which tries to hide behind a wall, protected, as if to conceal their failure. That is Shevat. (pauses) That is your father's country.

Fei: Shevat . . .? The . . .floating land?

Wiseman walks away, stops and says -

Wiseman: Farewell.

He disappears into nothingness.

Fei: Hey!

Citan and Hammer come forward and Citan says -

Citan: . . .What a mysterious person. Is this the second time you have met him?

Fei strides forward, stops and looks off in the distance. Then he nods and says -

Fei: Huh? . . .Yeah. Since that tournament in Aveh.
He sure is a mysterious person . . .

Fei and Hammer both speak at once.

Fei: I probably won't understand straight away what he meant today . . .

Hammer: What was that all about!? He disappeared like the w, w, wind!

Fei: But I think I get the general idea. I might be able to do something in tomorrow's final round . . .

Hammer: I've only known you since you arrived here! What is this Aveh tournament? What is going on!!

Fei: The differences in the performance of the Gear parts are not going to influence the outcome . . . . . .Well, not as much as I thought before.

Citan shakes his head, then ponders, saying –

Citan: Never underestimate the situation. You might lose pretty badly if you think you can just win by getting a grasp of the concept.

Fei: I know, doc.

Citan looks up and says –

Citan: Well, let us return to our quarters and rest, Fei . . . Your fate lies in the outcome of tomorrow's competition. You need to preserve your strength.

Scene fades and cuts to the dorm where Fei awakens. He makes his way to sickbay where he talks to Citan who says –

Citan: . . .(Finally, it is the last day of the Games . . .the finals!
Remember what you-know-who taught you! So, be on your way . . .
I must stay here but I will be praying for a good fight!)

Fei makes his way out to the street and out to D Block. He goes to the Arena where he talks to the Receptionist.

Receptionist: Today's the last day of the games . . .The Finals League! You get to challenge . . .Ricardo Banderas!!! Do you desire to enter the Finals Laegue?
Fei: Let me at him!

She confirms his entry and the Gear is loaded. The Battle is fierce and Rico is tough in his Gear, Stier. After a long arduous fight, Fei wins after the third round.

Scene cuts to the small waiting area near the entrance and Rico stands with two henchmen. One of them says to Fei –

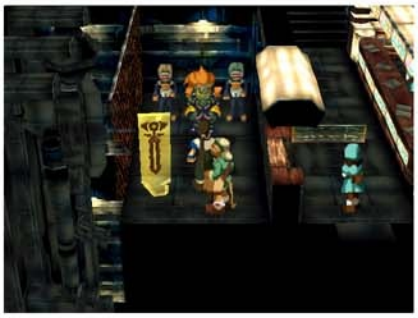
Rico's Henchman: Hey, your machine has been rigged! I'm gonna tell the Committee on you!
Rico's Henchman 2: Yeah, he's definitely had his gear equipped with parts that are in violation of the rules, or somethin'!

Rico turns his head to look at the second guy and says –

Rico: Shut up!!

They both back up a step and he shakes his head, saying –

Rico: . . .Don't embarrass me any further . . .
How could such special parts exist in the Imperial capital anyway!?
Espacially since you can't leave the Imperial Capital with these collars on!



Henchman 1 comes forward and asks –
H1: B, b, but, Rico . . .then . . .!?

Rico turns his head to him and says –

Rico: I thought I told you to stop! . . .
Keep quiet!

Hammer: That's right! Its' impossible! Bro won on his own strength!
Stop trying to trump up false accusations!

Rico's second Henchman says –

H2: Uh . . .bro . . .

Fei: Enough already, Hammer!

Rico turns to look at Fei as he shakes his head and says –

Fei: I won because of luck . . .and because I had a good teacher!

He shakes his head again, saying to Rico –

Fei: . . .Also the wound to your arm hasn't completely healed yet, has it?
If it wasn't for that wound I am sure you would have won instead . . .

Rico turns his face away and says –

Rico: Defeat is defeat . . .My wound is no excuse. The Battling Champion is . . .you!

Fei: . . . . . .

Rico turns back to face him, then looks up for a moment.
He looks at Fei again and says –

Rico: . . .Well, I have something I must see to. I'll be off now.

Rico turns and leaves, his Henchmen following after him, calling –

H1: Champ! Wait up! Let us go with you . . .

Rico stops in his tracks and says without turning –

Rico: I am no longer the champ! You guys will just get in my way! Don't follow me! OK!?

H1: In your way . . .? But Champ!
H2: . . .Ri – co --!

Rico walks to the exit without looking back and Fei bows his head. Hammer goes to him and says as the scene fades –

Hammer: This means I am acquitted! I am cleared! Oh, how the –

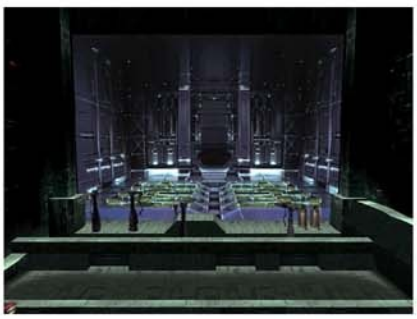
Scene cuts to the Gear paddock as Rico strides forward. He stops and says –

Rico: . . .Stier. this is the last . . .
Hang in there with me!

View cuts to a rising shot of the massive Gear. It is tan and dark green in color. Rico's voice carries up to the Gear –

" . . .Get him, myself . . ."

Scene fades and cuts to the interior of a landing bay as Elly and her troops stride out of a door. They pause, looking out over the bay and Renk says –



Renk: Hey look, check this out. . .

View switches to the dock where several ships are visible.

Stratski: There's only one control ship . . .The other 7 are all Ether guided. Just who the hell is controlling all them?

A voice comes to them, saying –
"I never thought you'd be the escort commander."

View switches abruptly back to the troops and Elly says as a woman strides out from the door –

Elly: Dominia!?

Helmholz: . . .Dominia, who's that?
(pauses) Hey, not the one from the Elements . . .?

Dominia strides forward and the troops jump out of her way as she approaches Elly. She says –

Dominia: It's been a long time Elhaym.
The last time was Jugend, wasn't it?

Elly: What are you doing here?

Dominia: This is a vital mission, ordered from central. I already have Ramsus' orders. The Hecht is not to be piloted by a common soldier. I will take the Hecht.

There is a pause as they look at each other, then Dominia continues –

Dominia: I didn't even need an escort, but this was also part of the plan. This will be a good fight.

She brushes past Elly and moves forward. Elly calls out after her and she stops, turning back around.

Elly: Wait! Tell me what our target is! You should know.

Dominia looks off to the side and responds –

Dominia: That's restricted . . .(pauses) but I guess I can tell. The electric generator in the eastern sector of Kislev's Imperial capital. The target is a reactor left there by an ancient civilization.

Elly: The reactor!? If you attack that then Kislev will . . .

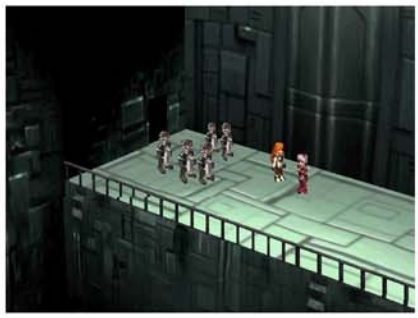
Dominia: Probably most of it will be destroyed.
The rest will be uninhabitable for hundreds of years.

Elly: Why are you doing this?

Dominia: To purge, why else? You may know this already, Kislev has the Gatekeeper. The original gate is controlled by those vulgar Lambs. This land barrier was made by our predecessors. The Lambs are trying to destroy the gate. Are you going to allow that?

Elly: That may be so . . .(pauses) but do we have the right to get involved?

Dominia: Does that bother you? Since when did you have a conscience? War, strife, betrayal, deceit are all that are on the Lamb's minds. Surely you should know that by looking at the fools in this country. Just let them loose and see what they'd do. They would pillage and loot our world acting as if they owned it. Advanced knowledge or tools aren't necessary for common house pets. We must lead them where they belong.



Elly: You were originally a land dweller. So why . . .?

Dominia turns to Elly at last and says –

Dominia: I was chosen by the Commander!
Don't look at me the same as those stupid Lambs!

There is a long pause, then Dominia turns to the side once more and says –

Dominia: Yes, well . . .You've shirked the duty that was instilled in you since your Jugend days. Arguing with you is a waste of time.

Dominia turns, strides away, then turns back to Elly, saying –

Dominia: I was a surface dweller myself, but I'm going to purge the –Lambs-. I want you, the Shepherds, -Abel-, to see with your own eyes what I can do.

Scene fades and cuts to an overhead view of Aveh as the view pans over the town towards the open landing bay doors. Ships glide out, one by one, and begin to make their way to the north.

The Gear Dock Raid

Scene cuts to the opulent room which had once been the Champ's. Fei stands there with Hammer, Citan and Rue with her retinue. Citan stands over by one of the portraits across from the stairs, studying it and Hammer stands near Fei by the sofa, looking at another. Fei says to Rue –

Fei: . . .This room!? This is the Champ's . . .?

Rue: Yes, the room given to the Champion . . .Is it not to your satisfaction?

Fei shakes his head, not turning to look at rue, then nods, saying –

Fei: No, it's not that. What about Rico . . .?

Rue: . . .Rico? He's the 'ex-Champion' . . .Now you are 'the Champion'!

Fei: But, what happened to him . . .?

Rue: After the Finals League, during the group league bouts, his Gear went out of control. The out of control Gear crashed into the Kaiser's box seat, and was damaged. Nothing has been heard from the former Champion, Ricardo, and no one has seen him since the incident . . .

Fei: . . . . .

Rue: There are no Battling competitions for a while so you can rest up a bit. The explosive collar has been removed. How about taking a walk around 'A Block' – the civilian area of Nortune?

Fei turns and says –

Fei: . . .'A Block . . .civilian area?

Rue: The southeast part of the Imperial capital . . .It is called A Block or the ordinary civilian area . . .Well then, we should take our leave . . .

Her subordinates leave and she continues –

Rue: Anyway . . .this room is yours to have. Next door is your bedroom. Oh . . .and, Fei. Now you will be given the title of Champion as well as special S Rank privileges.

She backs off, starts to exit, then turns –

Rue: Well, congratulations on winning the Battling Championship . . . We were able to take some very good data . . . Ha ha hm. One more thing, good news. Kaiser Sigmund would like to meet you, Champion Fei. Please stop by the Central Administrative District. Well . . .good bye.

She walks down the stairs and Citan makes his way over to Fei, nodding hid head once as he says –

Citan: So, you are now free in both name and . . .(pauses) reality, right?

Hammer: So, what are you gonna do now, bro? Leave Nortune?

Citan nods once and says –

Citan: We are not yet finished. There is one thing left to do here.

Fei turns to him, nods once and says –

Fei: . . .I know. It's Weltall, right? We can't just leave it here. We have to get it back somehow . . .

Citan: (nods) It is best if we assume Weltall has been moved to a different dock . . . (nods at Hammer and says) So, I guess this is where you come in, . . .Hammer!

Hammer: Got it, doctor! I'll find out where your Gear is . . .I'll bet my name as the 'Imperial capital's No. 1 Supplier' on it!

Fei looks from one to the other –

Fei: Okay then, let's work separately. I'll work by myself, while you, Hammer and doc, work together . . .

Hammer: Bro, don't you trust me or something? I work better alone! Nothing against Citan, but he'll just get in my way, bro.

Hammer goes to the stairs, pauses –

Hammer: So then . . .just leave it to me, OK!

He leaves and Fei turns to Citan, saying –

Fei: That Hammer . . .

Citan looks up and says –

Citan: . . .We should make a move too.

They move over to look in the bedroom, then go down the stairs and talk to some patrons in the bar below.

P1: Hammer's gone. Without him around . . .you know, it's kinda lonely in this bar.

A guy at one of the table says –

P2: . . .Who were you again? Huh? . . .Battling Champ? I have no interest in such things. By the way, is that stuff good?

The freelancer near the bar says –

Freelancer: Oh, if it isn't . . .you! Hey, aren't you the Battling Champ? I, is there something I can do for you? Please forgive me for any disrespect in the past.

Latina says –

Latina: I knew your power was genuine! You even took out the Champ. It explains why I couldn't win against you. Figures.

As they move towards the door, she says –

Latina: Oh, Fei, wait a sec. Hammer just went but he left a message for you. He wants you to meet him at the 'Wildcat' bar, in the civilian part of the city, once you've taken care of everything. You got that!?

Fei makes his way out and goes to the exit of D Block, the guard there halts him and says –

G1: This is the main town. D Block prisoners like you, what? You're . . .? . . .Excuse me! Please go on through.

He moves out of the way and on the way to the Central District, Fei speaks to an Imperial guards, who says -

IG: The Battling Champ. I was in awe when I watched your title match. Please forgive my past discourtesy to you. The single stretch of road going northeast and south will take you out of the Imperial capital. The middle is the Central District and to the southwest os the Imperial A Block.

Fei goes to the red structure at the center of town. Entering, he finds himself In a red carpeted foyer with a door at the end, guarded by two men in Imperial uniforms. On the double doors behind him, there is a strange symbol etched in the metal. It is the same as the symbol on the door across from the entrance . . .it looks like a key . . . the first of the guards, on the left, says –

G1: This is the Kislev Central District. Only authorized perso . . .Huh? Well, if it isn't the Battling Champ, Fei.

G2: The Kaiser's waiting.

They move aside and the first one moves to the door and waits. He says –

G1: Please, come this way.

Fei and Citan are escorted through the door –

Scene cuts to a view of the main entrance as Rico rushes in.

He pauses, looking around him in bewilderment, and says –

Rico: No one's around. (nods) I thought so. Security's been lightened to lure Fei.

He strides forward, stops at the door and says –

Rico: Hmm . . .I suppose knocking on the front door's out?

He looks up and around, then moves off to the side, craning his head back to look at the ceiling as he says –

Rico: Guess I'll get in through that air duct up there.

He moves back a step and then leaps up, and climbs out of sight.

Cuts to Fei and Citan as they head to the elevator and ride it up to the next floor, entering and making their way down a corridor to the right and to a door guarded by two men. They say –

G1: This is the Kaiser's wife's room. No one's been allowed in ever since she disappeared. Please leave.

They go to the left, down the hall left and up a long flight of stairs to a doorway. Entering, they find themselves in a library of sorts and speak to the lone elderly man there.

Elder: Sigmund made it this far on his own even after the loss of his wife. But, not a day goes by that he doesn't think of her. . . .It is so sad . . . . . .sob . . . sob . . .

They move over to the door on the left and enter a room filled with a pipe organ. Seated before it, is Sigmund, who asks –

Sigmund: Who are you?

He turns and rises, saying –

Sigmund: !! I see . . .So you are Fei . . .Welcome.

Fei: You . . .? How do you know me?

Sigmund: Ha ha hah. Excuse me. I am the Kaiser of Kislev, Sigmund. This may sound sudden, but would you like to join forces? I need your assistance.

Suddenly, something drops with a loud thud in the next room. It's Rico! He rises off the floor as Fei turns and says –

Rico: Ah!

Sigmund: !? Huh . . .? It's YOU! Rico!

Rico: Not good!

Rico starts towards the door, pauses –

Rico: Coming again! Laaaater.

As he leaves, Sigmund calls out –

Sigmund: . . .Mutant! Security!! Arrest this intruder!

Fei turns to Sigmund as he asks –

Sigmund: He wasn't with you, was he?

Fei: (shakes head) Uh, no. . .we weren't . . .

Scene cuts to the staircase outside as Rico rushes down. He pauses at the elevator, says –

Rico: No. Down's not good . . .

He runs over to the room blocked by two guards on the right and says –

Rico: I'll hide over there for now.

He starts towards the guards and says –

Rico: Hey! The Kaiser's calling you.

G1: What! Is that true?

As he begins to leave, the other asks –

G2: Hey! Is it okay?

G1: (turns) . . .Yeah. This door won't open for anyone except the Kaiser and his wife.

Rico watches as the two scurry off, then approaches the door. It opens and he says –

Rico: Hey, it does open.

He enters the lavishly furnished room. A bedroom for a queen . . . He says to himself –

Rico: Huh? What's this room . . .?

Then –

Rico: !? . . .This smell . . .

He stands in the center of the room and the view pulls in to Rico with several flashes of white light –

Scene cuts to a dim wavy image of the dressing table in that very same room, and Rico says slowly –

Rico: . . .When was . . .it . . .

Scene slowly fades into a room in a cabin. Rough hewn walls, simple furniture. A voice is heard as the view slowly clarifies, a lone woman standing at the window.

" . . .ther."

The view brightens and a small brown haired boy comes through the door and turns to the woman.

" . . .other."

The boy comes towards her, asking –

Boy: Mother, why does Jenny have a father but I don't?

She turns to him and the scene fades as she haltingly says –

Mother: Well (pauses) that is, your father is . . .So . . . that's . . . why . . .

Scene fades, cuts to image of the room once more, the angle is on the boy's face as he faces the woman. He says –

Boy: . . .ther.

He continues –

Boy: . . .other. . . .You have to rest.

Mother: Now listen to me! Your father is a great man . . .Someday, you'll follow in his footsteps . . .

She moves on to the right, hunched over –

Mother: . . .cough . . .cough . . .

The boy turns to her –

Boy: !! (pauses) Mother, mother . . .

Scene fades and return once more to the room, the mother stands on the corner as the boy calls –

Boy: . . .ther.

He comes in and says –

Boy: . . .other Mother . . .

He approaches her, she doesn't turn around –

Boy: . . .I'm, different from the other kids.

She turns as he continues –

Boy: . . .Miyo from across the road keeps saying I'm not human and that when I get older I'll become a demi-human.

He comes closer to her and says –

Boy: I'm . . .not human? . . .Then you're not my mother? . . . No, I don't want that . . .

As the scene fades, the mother says –

Mother: Oh god . . .please . . .have mercy on this child . . .

Scene returns to the same room as both boy and woman look out the window.

She screams –

Mother: . . .Get out!! Go away you mutant child.

She turns away to the right –

Mother: Uuuuuhhh . . .

And lurches, bending over as she is wracked by coughs.

Mother: Cough cough . . .cough

The boy rushes towards her, saying –

Boy: !! Waaaahh! Mother, mother is . . .

Scene fades and returns to the room as the boy stands alone before an empty bed. He hears her voice from a memory as she says –

"Here, listen . . . carefully . . .from now on . . .you're going to be by yourself . . .

He whispers –

Boy: . . .Mother . . .I'm . . .

I'm? I am . . .?

Image of the boy fades and is replaced by Rico.

Rico: Is . . .that kid . . .me?
My childhood memories . . .
I've forgotten . . .

Scene fades and returns to the opulent bedroom once more. He stands in the center and says –

Rico: . . .Why, (pauses) am I remembering this now . . .
This room . . .? That faint smell . . .

A voice comes through the door –

Fei: Hey! You in there? Open it up . . .

Rico turns and makes his way to the door. He opens it and Fei and Citan enter. They stand near the center of the room and Fei asks him –

Fei: What're you thinking, breaking into the Central District? This isn't good . . . . . .!? What?

Rico's back is turned. He turns around, faces Fei, shaking his head as he says –

Rico: Forget about it . . .

He joins Fei and the three make their way out of the room after they have found a memento locket in the dressing table drawer. Once outside, they are confronted by Sigmund and two guards. Fei thinks –

Fei: . . .!?

The three stand before Sigmund as he asks –

Sigmund: You . . .(pauses) How did you get in here?

Rico: Nothing . . .I just came in through the entrance.

One of the guards starts forward and says –

G1: Ridiculous! It shouldn't open unless it scans the right DNA. It couldn't open that easily!

Sigmund: . . .It was probably a malfunction. (shakes head) It doesn't matter . . . Arrest the intruder. The Battling Committee is after him for breaking his contract. Let them deal with him.

They chorus, "Yessir!" and move forward, escorting Rico away. Rico turns to Fei and says –

Rico: Well . . .I'll be seein' ya around sometime.

As he is rushed off, Sigmund shakes his head as he looks after them, saying –

Sigmund: . . .No . . .can't possibly (pause) be . . .

He turns to Fei and Citan –

Sigmund: that man was suspected of trying to assassinate me. The police are looking into the matter now. Well, I have some sudden matters to attend to, so if you'll excuse me. Please tour the district at your leisure. Oh, and about my proposition . . .I'll be awaiting a positive response. (nods) Good day.

He walks away down the hall back to his room and Fei and Citan make their way down the corridor, exploring the establishment. They eventually make their way up the stairs to the organ room and see that Sigmund is not there. A woman stands nearby, she says –

W1: His wife was carrying a child when she left. If it were a boy, he would've been the heir.

They leave and make their way back down the stairs, choosing the door across from the elevator. They enter and find themselves in a large, white metal chamber. A dais rises out of the center where several people are busy at work and some guards stand near the small steps.

G1: Hey! The train outta be comin' round now.

G2: Oh, Gear maintenance . . .? I quit that job.

G1: Why?

G2: I don't wanna go to D Block. I got bad memories there. Anyhow, they'd send me back if they found out I made it this high up.

As G2 turns back around –

G1: Oh yeah . . .You were in D Block, right?

They talk to G2 who says –

G2: Even nameless soldiers have lives to live. Remember that. . .

They move up the steps and see people hard at work on consoles. At the center , a man sits on a high seat and says –

Captain: When will we be able to use our real power . . .?

They talk to one of the men at the consoles behind the Captain –

C1: The 'Ethos' has been using a human rights movement to usurp political power. In a recent parade, there was an attempt on the life of the Kaiser. Fortunately, they failed, but we don't know when they might strike again . . .

The guy next to him says –

C2: Ever hear of a red Gear? I hear it took out a Gebler unit. If only he'd be our savior.

They move to speak to the men in front of the Captain. The first says –

C3: Kislev and Aveh almost had a truce once before. But the relationship worsened due to Gebler.

The next man is garbed in a brown robe. He says –

O1: Why do you think we have a bridge here? Hah hah hah?

The man next to him says –

C4: The power of the 'Ethos' still exists as string as ever in Kislev . . .But many ordinary citizens died trying to oppose the influence of the 'Ethos'.

They go down the steps on the other side where two guards stand and one says –

G3: A Gear decimated an elite unit of Gears in Lahan.

G4: Actually, there was one survivor from Lahan. But he seems to be going through a mental breakdown. What happened there . . .?

They move around the perimeter below the dais and see another of the banners, red cloth hanging from the front of it with a symbol like a key on it. Another guard nearby says –

G5: Never knowing when you may get a mission can drive you nuts. If I knew it was gonna be lie this, I woulda stayed at the docks fixing Gears.

On the other side, a guard says –

G6: I'm going on a mission soon. I may not make it back, but I'm still ready for it.

They go back out to the hallway and down to the Kaiser's wife's room once more where the two guards are back at their posts, facing each other. One says –

G2: No one knows what happened to his wife. Even now, the Kaiser doesn't know.

G1: The Kaiser is in this room.

They go to the lift, down and talk to the guards nearby –

G1: Good. Above us is the bridge, the Kaiser's room and other related facilities.

G2: Good job. On the right hand side, you can get to the third pathway in the basement.

They go to the door on the left and the guard there says –

G3: Nice work. This is the tactical command room.

They enter and find themselves in a room dominated by a hologram of a vessel in the center. Several guards surround it.

Fei and Citan move around asking questions –

G1: There's some suspicious activity in Aveh. they could attack anytime.

G2: I saw your incredible Gear in sub dock! What's it called?

The hologram rotates over a map of the area which is lit up in several places.

G3: What's the Kaiser thinking? Now's the only chance to strike at Aveh.

G4: This is the new battle ship, Goliath! With its completion, Aveh and Solaris will have to submit to us.

Up at the edge of the room, more guards watch –

G5: I'm doing some Gear maintenance at the dock . . .But, they're only battle Gears. A lot of people go in an' out without authorization. It's good money.

G6: I'm prepared to fight even if I'm the last one.

Across the room, near a map on the wall are more guards –
G7: Currently, Aveh is a puppet government. Ramsus, a Gebler officer is the one who holds the true power.
They look at the map on the wall. Most interesting! It appears to be slightly out of date, showing landmasses that are no longer there . . .Or is it? the speak to the next guard –
G8: Aveh and some pirates clashed at the border. Something serious happened there.
They leave and go down the hall to a door at the right of the entrance. Entering, they go down a dimly lit stairwell and see someone at the bottom, beneath the steps in the shadows, with a dog –
M1: Don't tell anyone I'm keeping a pet down here. I found him on the outskirts of Lahan on the verge of death. But, look at him now.
The dog gives a friendly bark and they move on through a door nearby, finding themselves in a wide hall. Several chickens scurry about and a woman dashes after them. A guard stands nearby –
G1: Aghh . . .sob . . .uuuhh . . .He was such a good guy . . .Who woulda ever . . .What am I supposed to say to his family . . .?
The woman says –
W1: Kyaaaaaah! Someone catch it! It's tonight's dinner.
They go down to some double doors and enter a large storage area. Above, the ceiling is threaded with pipes and a crane. A man in a ragged outfit stands near a device and says –
Cm: The crane is out of order. Once it starts moving, it won't stop until it hits something. It'll move by that panel to the left, but you'll only be able to move it left or right.
They go through the room and a guard says –
G1: He's back, I know it. But his soul's not . . .(pauses) or his . . .hands . . .legs . . .It's horrible . . .
G2: Is that old man in charge of the railway in D Block still there? I owe him a big favor.
A man operating a back-ho says –
G3: Damn, why isn't it moving? How am I supposed to get this cargo out? If we move the crane up here, maybe we could use it as a step so we can get in further.
The room is filled with huge metal boxes and steel bars, wedges and odds n' ends. They leave the room and go down the hall to another door. Entering, they find themselves in a kitchen and speak to the lady at the stove.
L1: So busy, busy. (turns to them) A war? Its' war all the time in here. (turns back) We're undermanned here.
Another woman says -
L2: Why, do you know anything about the battle . . .in Lahan? No one's telling me anything . . .(turns back) . . . He'll come back, I know he will . . .
There is a cow in the corner! It moos placidly. A child says -
Lg1: My daddy went to war . . .I wish he'd come back.
They move on out, back up the stairs and to the main entrance. They leave the District building, passing through a red scanning room on the way out. They talk to the two guards in the red carpeted exit.
S1: Fei, will you be leaving? (The two move out of the way and he continues) Come back anytime.
S2: Come by and visit us anytime. We'll be waiting.
As they approach the doors, Citan says -

Citan: Hammer should have been able to get that information by now.

Fei turns to him as he shakes his head -

Citan: Let us go check out the Wildcat.

They leave and scene cuts to a street in another part of Nortune as Citan says -

Citan: The meeting place was in the 'Wildcat', a bar in the civilian area, was it not? Well then, let us go!

They move forward and hear Hammer shout -

Hammer: Bro - - - -! With these ears, I've picked up the latest information on your Gear!

Hammer rushes forward and stops as they turns to him -

Hammer: Hee - hee, I've pinpointed where your Gear is bro!

Fei shakes his head and says -

Fei: . . .Hold on a second! (Don't you think it's dangerous to talk about that stuff around here!)

Hammer: Huh? What's with you, bro?

Fei jumps forward, approaching him as he continues -

Hammer: I have some info on your Gea . . .

Fei brandishes a fist and Hammer squeaks -

Hammer: EeeK! Wha, wh, what the!?

Citan waves a hand and says -

Citan: I will explain later! Just move it, O.K.!

Fei drops his fist, nods once and begins making his way down the street past Hammer. Citan follows and Hammer stands where he is then turns, calling out -

Hammer: Wai, bro -! Do, doc, Cita-n? Where are you going? Hey, are you listening?

He turns around, lookng, then hurries off in their direction saying -

Hammer: Waaaaaiiiii - - - -t!

View rises to rooftop, then fades, returning to the three as they stand up on a deserted roof, chimneys sending out gray smoke all around. Fei says -

Fei: It should be safe here. Now Hammer, tell me where my Gear is.

Hammer: As the doc predicted, bro, your Gear has been moved to another dispatchment dock.

Citan nods once and asks -

Citan: So, where on earth is Weltall?

Hammer: not 'on earth' , but under the earth! It's in an underground dock in D Block! I've checked into it and found out that there are two routes we can use to sneak inside. The first one requires us to enter via the Battling arena grounds.

Fei bows his head and says -

Fei: Well there's no way we can sneak in via the Battle Arena! What's the second?

He looks up and Hammer responds -

Hammer: The second way is a little dangerous as it involves the supply train tunnel. You have to get into the tunnel's ducts and follow them right through till they lead to the docks. But I couldn't find out the duct's layout . . .(pauses) Sorry, bro.

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: . . .Oh that tunnel, huh? Well now that we have the bomb problem off our necks, we might be able to make a go of it!

Citan ponders and says -

Citan: Yes, but we are still left with not knowing the times that the trains pass by on. Will a supply train pass by at a time that is of any use to us?

Fei turns his head to look at Citan and says -

Fei: Not all of this has to be decided now. Let's take our time and plan it carefully! (nods once) Firstly Hammer. I'm sorry to put you out, but . . .Could you find out the days and times that the supply train operates on for us please?

Hammer: I'll get right on it, bro. Well then, I'll be off!

He rushes off and Fei turns to watch him as Citan says -

Citan: Shall we also return to D Block for the time being?

He joins Fei and they decide to take a look around A Block. Not much different form D Block, it's just as dismal except for the guards posted all around. They go down the stairs off the roof and down to the streets. A woman near the stairwell entrance says -

W1: This city's other name is "the town of steam" because steam is being blown out of everywhere the eye can see. Due to this, whenever you go out of your house you come back black all over! It also roughens your skin!

They meet a lady with blue hair out in the street, she says -

Bl: They say the world's a big place, but there's no other town nearly as big as our capital city, anywhere! They say there's an even bigger city in the skies above, but I ask you, who's ever seen a floating city?

They go to a large building in the center and a lady near a door with a weapon's insignia says -

L: We have gathered together a selection of many types of accessories to protect you from all sorts of damage!

They enter and find a sizeable shop with displays all around. A customer says -

M1: . . .A decent selection. Oh yes, the accessories are all treasures, so buying them's no loss. But remember, I don't work for the store though.

A woman nearby says -

W1: He's traveled various countries looking for his ideal weapon. I'm just a woman attracted by his ardor . . . He said he'd continue on until he found this weapon. His journey may never end. We've traveled through most of Ignas . . .When will he ever look at me, and not these weapons . . .?

The man says -

M1: All these weapons, and none that fit me. Guns are too dangerous, and swords are heavy and bulky . . . Sigh . . .isn't there a weapon that's safe, light and easy to use? This is it, . . .the ideal weapon.

They buy a few things from the amazoness proprietor and leave, moving on down the street where they see a couple of kids.

Lg1: Children should play outside for their own health. That's common thinking . . .Right!? But in this town, covered in dirty steam, it's probably not that good for us . . .

Lg2: you know, my bug sister has a friend called a 'fiance'! He didn't have any hair, but he was sooo kind!

Fei: . . .A fiance? With no hair . . .? Hmm. Where have I heard that before?

Lg2: Our house is just over there!

They go to the home indicated and enter. Inside is a cheery place an they speak to a robed woman -

Gm: This war will never end . . .Before I die, I want to see the face of my grandchild.

A woman by the stove turns and says -

W1: The war will end, grandma. It's almost over . . .So don't say 'before I die.'

W1: When the war is over, he'll come back . . .He didn't leave because he couldn't bear the war. I know . . . he'll be back.

Next door, a girl says -

Lg1: 'W - a - r'. I'm not sure what it really means, but I think it's just beating the enemy, right?

They exit and go across the street to a certain establishment - The Wildcat! They enter and see many people. Some are at tables, other milling around. They talk to some soldiers -

S1: So . . .cute. Kniqupine. Its' too much for me! Don't you think so? (pause) Oooh . . .too cute.

A Battler across from him says -

B1: I heard there was a title match. Man, I could've shown off my graceful Gear fighting and take down the infamous -

Interrupted by a waiter who says -

W: Uh, excuse me. Could you please move? You're in the waaaaay!

B1: - Champ but . . .When I reached the Empire, the tournament was already over. It seem s I arrived after the infamous Champ was already taken down . . .oouuhh.

At another table, a guard says -
G1: Afte being a mercenary for Aveh, I was gong to make money at the Imperial Battling . . .But the Battling's been stopped for now. (pauses) . . .It's too bad for me.
They go over to the bar where a soldier dressed in green says -
S2: If the enemy capital is called 'Desert Fortress' . . .then our Imperial capital, Nortune, would be the 'Fortress of Steam and Steel'.
The odd looking mole-man next to him says -
Mole: that sounds . . .pretty impressive . . .boss.
They speak to the man, dressed in green breeches and a red coat. He appears to be a demi-human.
Mole: B, boss . . .I, my heart . . .P, pp, please listen.
There is a silence, then he says mournfully -
Mole: I see, this is a surprise . . . It's that . . .You've fallen in love with someone haven't you? I . . .I . . .
S2: (says fast) . . .I'll permit it!! Do what you have to do.
Mole: wh, whatever . . .I have to do? Right now, I don't think I could . . .
S2: . . .Okay I will. We'll take it long, slow and imminently . . .right?
Mole: Yes . . .sir.
They see an odd person with a long pointed tail at the far side of the room. She says -
Dragon: Hunh? Who are youuu? Me? I'm a child of the dragon tribe. In the dragon tribe, when you get older, you become something incredible! (pauses) Of course you know that though!
They speak to the bartender who says -
BT: Welcome to the 'Wildcat'. Make yerself comfortable. (pause) And leave the cat alone!
They speak to the annoying waiter who has interrupted more conversations than . . .
Waiter: I'm trying to work, could you get out of the way? By the way, I'm tired of that kind of stuff.
There are some cats and kittens throughout the establishment. They look around, then notice a jukebox in the corner.
" . . .A jukebox. There's only one disk . . ."
-See if it works? They decide to listen, and "the disk seems broken." The bartender notices and says -
BT: You know, that disk is broken. The box itself is as good as new. All we need is a new disk so we can listen to it . . .
They leave and go around the block until they see a shiny silver car. The guard nearby says -
G1: Because of the long balance in power, I let myself get out of shape . . .So now I am trying to build up my physique by running around in circles. But . . .it feels a little futile.
They notice an Imperial guard near a doorway and speak to him -
IG: This is the Kislev Imperial capital barracks. Entrance without permission is prohib . . .Hey aren't you the Battling Champion? Permission? Why, you don't need that! You're the Champ!
He steps aside and they enter. The room is full of soldiers and Battlers. To the left is a kitchen and they talk to a chef's aide -
ChfA: Argh! I failed again. Hmmm, there's just something not right with this special sauce. Ether cuisine has a lot of depth to it. (turns to Fei) Failure is an important step to my path to success! It's my dream to become like that first Ether chef over in D Block.
They speak to the army cook -

Army Cook: I'm the cook for the Imperial barracks. I can get into trouble for having you guys in here. If you have no business her, please leave. Moreover, you aren't even soldiers. I thought I told them strictly not to allow civilians in. Man . . .what am I going to do.
Over in the corner is a blue garbed soldier -
S1: I'm a new recruit for the Kislev military. I just graduated from Imperial officer school as an elite! So, why did they put me in A Block working under the chief cook?
They go back out into the main room and speak to a Battler at a nearby table.
Bsoldier: The lecture's about to begin. Although it's short, it's such a bother. Please don't talk to me right now.
A soldier stands at the head of the table and he says -
LS: For today's lecture we will discuss the movement of Gears on the world map. I understand most of you are ex-Battlers and are well acquainted with Gears, but it should be no loss for you to re-learn the basics. First, the limits to the area of movement of Gears . . .It is impossible to walk through dense forests in a Gear! Instead of being hasty, simply dismount from your gears, Once you pass through the forest, you may once again get on your Gears! That is all for this lecture . . .Any questions? . . .If there are no questions, class is dismissed. Oh yes, I forgot one thing . . .This is common sense, but movement over water is not possible.
He moves off and they speak to the Battler Soldiers -
AmazonS: Argh, this sucks. He thinks it's a lecture but all he does is say the same thing everyday. Compared to this, I was fighting a lot more in my Battling days. Now that was living. Maybe I should quit the military . . .
The other echoes her sentiments and they go over to speak to the Lecturer -
LS: Whew, it was another wonderful lecture today. I'm even awed at myself . . .I'm sure looking forward to tomorrow's lecture.
At a table nearby, a Battler says -
B2: Just a while ago I was pretty active in the Battling tournament. Then those people from the committee scouted me out. Heh, it's good to be a soldier.
At another table, a soldier says -
S1: In the northern part of the capital, in the industrial block lies a relic from an ancient civilization . . .a giant 'reactor'. That reactor produces power beyond our ability to control. It's something man will never be able to wield . . .
Another soldier, in green, says -
S2: there's been some information that suggests Aveh is doing something suspicious. This balance we've had with them isn't going to last . . .
They go through a door on the far wall and enter a sleeping area. They talk to a soldier who paces back and forth -
S1: Now we're training for the Kaiser Sigmund defense parade . . .and . . .hey, who're you? There are a lot of high officials in this room, we want to impress them and get promotions. So beat it. (speaks to others) Now, start again! Hey, out of the way!
An officer in the corner says -
O1: Hmm, that young one over there . . .It's a shame to keep him a private . . .But, that one over there's been sitting there all this time. Who is he?
Curious, they talk to the soldier seated on the bed -
S2: Hmm, no matter how much I sleep, it's not enough. I still feel weak . . . The more I sleep the more lethargic I get. They say sleep makes strong children . . .is that true?

They bump into an irate soldier who says -
S1: Damn! Why's his rank higher than mine, just because he's good at Gear combat? I'm still his senior. . . . Life isn't fair. What's so great about Battlers!? Dammit!
They enter the small bedroom nearby and see an Amazoness who says -
A1: Probably doesn't want to lose to anyone else. Well, it doesn't matter to me. If you keep taking those people seriously everytime, it's not going to be worth it . . .
The Battler seated near the edge of the bed says -
B1: He's got too much pride. It's not like we've ever been overly proud of him.
Fei and Citan leave the barracks and move on to explore more of A Block. They talk to a man in the street who says -
M1: What's with you, huh? I'm just passing by . . .O.K. so don't bother me. See ya!
They notice a door in the central building but it's locked. Curious, they decide to look for another way in, eventually climbing up to the roof to get a better look around. There's something odd here . . .a gap in the railings near a chimney which has no smoke . . .Interesting. Taking a gamble, they leap into the dark hole and find themselves in a tiny, darkened room. They make their way out the door into a cheerfully lit house. They go to a woman who says -
W1: Hey, wait a minute! Where did you . . . . . .
View shifts as Citan and Fei stand before her. She says slowly -
W1: Uh, huh? You're the one (pauses) from D Block . . .
Fei nods once and asks -

Fei: . . .? Do you know me?

Citan bows his head slightly and asks -
Citan: Fei, you did not . . .with this woman while I was gone?
Fei whirls around, shaking his head as he says -

Fei: Wa, wait a minute, doc!? I didn't do . . .
The woman interrupts, laughing as she says -
W1: Heh, haha. You probably can't tell by the way I'm dressed.
Fei turns to her, rapidly shaking his head and thinks, "???"
He puts his hands on his hips and bows his head as the woman says -
W1: Come on, it's me, the doctor from D Block. Don't you remember?
Fei looks up, nods and asks -
Fei: . . .!? You, the one from D Block!

W1: Yeah, now you remember. Long time no see Oh, you got the collar off?
Citan nods and says -

Citan: Yes, he became the Battling Champ. He is no longer a prisoner.
W1: Then you're the Battling Champ? Wow! That's great! I knew you were strong. (she turns to Citan) And you might be?
Citan nods and says -
Citan: Oh, excuse me, we have never met. I am Citan Uzuki. (pause) You could say that I am his guardian.
Fei turns around and says over his shoulder -
Fei: G, guardian . . .?

Citan nods and responds -

Citan: Presently, I am the doctor in the Imperial D Bock . . .
She thinks, "!?" and comes forward, again, "!?" and Fei steps back as she approaches Citan and says -
W1: Hold on!!
Citan backs up quickly and fumbles -
Citan: Huh? Uh, well . . .that is . . .
W1: Sigh, what's going to happen if someone gets injured now!? Who's going to look at the injury? Don't you feel an obligation as a doctor to . . .Dr. Uzuki, (pauses) don't you (pause) have any responsibility!?
Citan bows his head and says -
Citan: I, I am extremely sorry.

Fei look from one to the other of them and bobs his head, saying -

Fei: . . .Uhmm, mind if I (pause) interrupt?
W1: What?
Fei: You're the doctor in charge here? That's what I heard from Hammer.
W1: Aaahh, that. Following the request of the empire, I agreed to be in charge of this part of the city, but now they're telling me they already have enough doctors . . .
Citan looks up and begins pondering, foot tapping as she continues -
W1: Who do they think they are? So, for now, I'm just on standby. As long as nothing really big happens, I think I'm going to be here for quite a while . . .
Fei: (shakes his head) . . .I know I'm in no position to ask you, but do you think you could return to D Block?

W1: Isn't Dr. Uzuki in charge of D Block? I can't just do that.

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Well its' about that, . . .We're leaving the capital soon. Of course (pauses) doc will be with us. So . . .it would be good if you could take care of D Bloc.

W1: I see you've got your own problems . . .Okay, leave D Block to me. And also, if you have any other problems, come to me. I'll try to help in any way I can.

Citan looks up and says -

Citan: I am sorry about this. Please take care of everyone.

Fei: Thanks, I owe you one.

There is a nun in the tiny bedroom next door and she says -

N1: Hang in there.

Before leaving, they talk to the Doctor -

W1: I too have been thinking of leaving the Imperial capital . . .But then I came to think that if I try harder things will get better . . . . . You too try your hardest, OK!

As they go to the door, she calls out -

W1: Oh, yes. Next time, please knock! Then I will open the door for you. If you come through the toilet . . . . . .you . . .you know! It might be at the wrong time.

Fei lowers his head and looks down for a moment, then looks up, nodding as he says -

Fei: . . .Uh, yeah. You're right . . .I understand. And, how many knocks?

W1: Hmmm, let's say . . . . .'2,1,2' . . . .Would that be okay?

Fei: Got it. 2,1,2 . . .right?

W1: Uh huh, yes. Well then, good luck.

Fei and Citan make their way back to D Block. On the way back they are stopped by three Battlers who come out of the east door of the dorm. Fei looks form one to the other, nods once and asks -

Fei: Who are you?

B1: don't be so cruel. We've been waiting for you.

Citan shakes his head and asks -

Citan: Waiting? (pauses) For . . . . .us?

B1: Please, come with us . . .

Fei: . . .This isn't going to be another stupid 'Baptism Ceremony' is it?

A1: Hey, hey, wait a minute!

The two Battler turn to her as she says -

A1: We're not trying to pick a fight. Keep talking like that and there's bound to be a misunderstanding. Leave this to me . . .

Fei shakes his head and the Battler at front says -

B1: Right, sorry.

Citan: . . .Well, I assume you are not hostile . . .

Fei: . . .

The Amazoness turns to them and says -

A1: . . .Not here. Let's go somewhere else. Come, follow me.

She begins walking down the street, the two Battlers following. Citan nods once and says -

Citan: It seems we have no choice. Shall we go Fei?

Fei nods once and scene cuts to the Champ's room as Fei sits on the sofa, the Battlers before him and asks -

Fei: So . . .what do you want with us?

A!: The Champ . . . no I mean . . .Rico needs your help.

Citan nods his head once and asks -

Citan: Help the Champion . . .?

Fei: Hang on, what do you mean?

B1: Y'know what just happened . . .The special broadcast on the dorm's vid by the Committee!

B2: Yeah, y'know, the broadcast said somethin' like this . . ."This evening, the former Champion was found guilty of attempting to assassinate the Kaiser, as well as breaking Imperial Code section B . . . Thus, a public execution will be held at the arena . . ."

Fei: Yes, I know he got caught, and was arrested . . .But, what's this about an attempted assassination of the Kaiser!?

B1: Those committee members . . .The Champ probably got in their way somehow . . .

Citan nods his head and asks -

Citan: . . .The Battling Committee?

A1: The Battling Committee is made up mostly of people form the 'Ethos' They used to have a lot of pull in the government . . .But the current Kaiser, Sigmund, ousted almost all of the 'Ethos' influence from the government.

B2: On top of that, these past few years . . .In order to strengthen the military or something, the Kaiser has started to interfere with the Battling operated by the 'Ethos'. The Kaiser probably got in the way of their operating the Battling smoothly. So, they used the Champ . . .

Fei: Why Rico . . .?

A1: Rico was originally born in this town . . .But because Sigmund whipped up anti-demihuman sentiment Rico was chased out of this town when he was young. So Rico hated the Kaiser, the capital Nortune, and the whole Kislev Empire.

Fei: And that's why they went after Rico . . .

B2: In the past, the Champ has had many chances the kill the Kaiser. That the earlier crash into the box seat was disguised as an accident . . .

A1: But that failed too. The committee, fearing being exposed, used Rico . . .
B1: The Champ is being manipulated by the committee. Please, Fei! Help the Champ.
B2: Now, you are the Battling champ, but he is . . .

They are interrupted by Hammer as he calls -

Hammer: B, b, bro - !! Are you he - re?

He comes up the stairs and says -

Hammer: The supply train times, dates and destinations! I got them all . . . no prob!

He sees the company and says -

Hammer: . . .Wha? Hey bro, what are you doing speaking with them?

Fei: Hold on a minute. Hammer, tell me about the supply trains.

Hammer: Huh? Is it . . .alright? With these outsiders . . .?

Citan nods and says -

Citan: It is alright, they are our friends.

Hammer: Oh, really? Well, okay . . .The next supply train's operating date is . . . tonight! But . . .If that's too soon, then the next one is . . .

Fei: Hammer, did you say that a supply train will pass by here tonight?

Hammer: what? Tonight? Well there are trains passing through . . . Um, but bro . . .we need a thorough plan. Tonight is impossible!

Fei jumps off the sofa, exclaiming -

Fei: The situation has changed, and so have our plans. We move tonight!!

Hammer: We move tonight . . .? What the. . .? Are you serious?

Both Citan and Fei nod and Citan ponders, asking -

Citan: . . .Did you hear any interesting tidbits of information outside?

Hammer: Well . . .the dorms are in an uproar over that Master Rico thing . . .

Citan:Do you have any details? Rico is to be executed at the arena, tonight, right?

Hammer: Master Rico's going to be executed . . .is this true?

Citan nods once and Fei turns to Hammer, asking -

Fei: Didn't you say there was one more route?

Hammer: Huh? Oh yeah, you mean via the arena, right . . . Bro! You're not thinking . . .

Fei: Yes I am thinking exactly that! You said it may be possible to get out through the Battling arena, right?

Citan taps his foot and says -

Citan: I see! Then we can probably help the Champion . . .

Fei turns to Citan -

Fei: Doc.

Citan nods once and says -

Citan: Hmm . . .It might just work!

Hammer: Wait a minute! Might just work . . .?
You don't intend to just go bursting into the arena, do you?

Fei looks down, his hands on his hips and says -

Fei: Either way, we are going to escape via the arena, so it's on our way . . . right!?

A1: then that means . . .?

Fei looks up at her and says -

Fei: No problem. It's just one more thing to do on the way to getting my Gear back . . .

Citan taps his foot, pondering as he says -

Citan: Leave the rest to us. And I would like you all to go to the arena tonight. We will leave Nortune, but if they think you were all involved with us I do not know what they might do . . .

B2 turns and moves towards the stairs, saying -

B2: We're counting on you . . .for the Champ's sake.

As he exits, the Amazoness begins moving down as well –

A1: Sorry, we had to ask you to do this . . .

She leaves an B1 approaches Fei and says –

B1: we really appreciate what you're doing . . .Here . . .please take this.

Gives them 2000G! then goes down the stairs. Fei turns to Hammer and says –

Fei: Hammer, you hide yourself somewhere.
When we get into the arena, I'm just going to go wild in my Gear . . .
We'll play it by ear from there to escape the Imperial capital . . .
You got it, Hammer?

Hammer: I got you, bro! Show them your stuff for me too, bro!

He leaves and Fei says –

Fei: There is still some time until the train passes by . . .

Citan taps his foot, pondering and says –

Citan: Well, if everything is ready then, why not take a light nap?

Fei nods once and they go down the stairs and out into the street. it is already dark and they make their way to the dorm. They talk to the Battlers in the mess hall and one seated, says –

B1: There's a rumor that, behind the scenes, the 'Ethos' is actually involved with the 'B – Info. Center'. Officially the 'Battling Committee' is run by the Imperial capital, but it too is rumored to be an agent of the 'Ethos'. Of course that is all just gossip!

At another table, a Battler says –

B2: It seems that after the bout, the former Champ's Gear moved on its' own accord and crashed right into the Kaiser's stand! The pilot, Rico, was not found within the Gear, so they put it down to the machine going out of control!

B3: I am glad that the sewer monster affair is over. Now I can get back to work!

The Informer says –

Inf: The new doctor that came after that lady doctor got put in charge of civilians, barely works here anymore! It's got to the point that if you get injured you have to buy Aquasol with your own money and cure yourself! Where did he go to? Oh, and don't you think he looks a lot like the guy that hangs around the Champ?

They go down the stairs to the bunk room and Citan says –

Citan: Hey, Fei. Are you fully prepared now? There is no turning back after this!

Fei turns to him and says –

Fei: Well, I errh . . .

He nods and Citan says –

Citan: . . .There is still some time before the train comes . . .Let us rest here a little!

The scene fades and cuts to the dorm at night, all is quiet. They make their way outside and Citan points to the tower. View shifts to the tower from above, an Amazoness standing where the old man had been. Citan says –

Citan: The tower we want is over there. Hurry, Fei!

They make their way up to the roof, up the ladder to the tower where the Amazoness says to them –

A1: . . .Sorry. I . . .can't go in the arena. No matter what you say , I can't. Well it's time . . .
Tonight's train will be coming through here . . .I wish you success. Maybe . . .we can meet again.

They see the light go green and hear the train's whistle. They jump at the right moment and land on top as it chugs by. The train enters the dark tunnel and a loud crash is heard, shaking everything up. Fei shouts –

Fei: Whoa!! What the?

Scene cuts to the train as it roars through the dimly lit tunnel, Citan and Fei standing atop one of the piles crates. Citan says –

Citan: Whew, that was a close one! We almost got thrown off.

Fei: It's all because of those mischievous punks!
When the old man's gone they always do this. Oh well.

Citan turns to the side and says –

Citan: Kind of odd hearing that from a mischievous 'you know who'.

Fei turns to him and says –

Fei: Huh? You say something?

Citan turns to him and responds –

Citan: Well, anyway we should be alright if we take this all the way. As for the mission, so far so good.

They hear a clatter and both turn –

Fei: What's that sound?

The view shifts to the space just in front of them as Citan says –

Citan: The connector . . .! Fei, hurry up and jump off!

They both jump to the next car as the other slowly drifts away.

Citan: This train is almost falling apart. That was another close one.

Fei: What if it derails before we get to the Gear dock . . .

Another rumble and they both turn, "!!"

Citan: This car is unstable too. Let us get to the front!!

They make their way to the front car.

Citan: One disaster after another . . .

Fei: Pretty unreliable train . . .

Citan: The entrance to the ventilator shaft that leads to the Gear dock should be coming up soon.

They wait, then Citan says –

Citan: Here we go!!

They jump off and scene fades to a gray metal storage area, boxes everywhere. They stand in the middle of the room and notice two doors. They try the one and it's locked and as they approach the other, Citan says –

Citan: Someone is approaching. We should hide.

They scramble back behind some boxes as two men come in. One wears a brightly colored uniform and the other appears to be a guard of some sort. The brightly garbed man says –

BrM: Everyday, work, work, work. Doesn't anything fun ever happen around here?

G1: No doubt. . .That last Champion looks like he's been matches with the beast.

BrM: Now that's something. Let's get this works done and go check it out.

G1: Yeah. we need to do that, we've been workin' too much lately.

The brightly clothed man touches the keypad at the locked door and they go through. Fei and Citan check it out after they are gone, but they get a 'no key' message. They decide to forgo the other door after hearing the sound of people on the other side and look for another way . . .They jump up the crates to an opening above and find themselves in a ventilation shaft. They fight some battles. They reach a dead end after a while and look down the grate. They see a bustling Gear dock as Gears are moved around. They catch a glimpse of something familiar . . .

Fei: Hey . . .

It's Weltall! It is slowly revolved within the storage mechanism and disappears from sight once more – but he knows what he saw! Scene cuts back to shafts and they make their way rapidly through, now that they know for sure they're on the right track. They find another storage room and they try the door first. When they see that it's locked, they move a crate over to a far wall to climb up to the next entrance to the shafts. As they travel through, the find another ventilation grate and look down into the Gear dock as Gears are loaded onto lifts. They find another opening, but are blocked as they try to move through.

Fei: !

They hear people on the other side of the door. A bright uniformed guy and a guard come into the room from the other side and Fei hears their conversation.

O1: Hey, make sure you return the Master Key back to the shelf.

G2: Yes, sir.

Fei hears them move to another room close by and the guard's voice comes to him –

G2: This should do it . . .

He goes back to the officer and another guard comes in, saying –

G3: Heeey, did you hear? The battle between the ex-Champ and the beast is about to begin.

O1: Oh, it's already starting. There's no way we can miss this.

They file out of the room and as soon as they are gone, Fei and Citan step out into the hallway. They explore the small room and its adjoining chamber, finding the Master Key on a shelf. Citan strides forward, saying –

Citan: Hey . . .Fei, wait a minute.

Fei: What's wrong, doc?

Citan turns to him –

Citan: This is a part that allows a Gear to recover 30% of its HP. If you have this equipped, you can activate his during battle. It is a highly useful item but the drawback is that you will use fuel, so you must use it with caution.

Fei: That really doesn't matter unless we get back the Gear, doc. There's no one here so let's hurry up and get out of here.

Citan shifts and says –

Citan: Uh, oh yes. My usual habit . . .
Well, we should take it anyway since we have the chance.

They move on to the next door, and go through to another darkened hallway with stairs leading down. They find themselves in the Gear dock which they had seen above and they begin looking for Weltall. The entire place is empty and they walk around in order to get their bearings. They go to the slot where they had seen Weltall and begin cycling the Gears through. They find Weltall after the second has gone around and Fei mounts his Gear. They set off for one of the lifts, rising up as the scene fades.

Cuts to Rico as he runs through the night darkened sands of a desert, saying –

Rico: Who woulda thought I'd be Battling with only my body . . . . . .
He pauses and looks around, then a slow rumbling begins under his feet.

Rico: . . .? . . .Must be my imagination.
He walks forward and the rumbling returns, shaking the entire area.

Rico: That's not my imagination . . .What's . . .this vibration?
He walks forward, then stops as the shaking returns, intensified. View switches to him from the front as he says –

Rico: A Gear doesn't vibrate like this . . .It can't . . .be.
As he walks towards a dune, the entire place rocks and he looks over across the desert and stops, saying –

Rico: That's a . . .Rankar!?

A large beast lumbers toward him and the entire place heaves under its weight. The Rankar pounces before him and pauses as he exclaims –

Rico: Crap! You gotta be kiddin' me! I'm supposed to fight that without a Gear?

View switches to one from above as the Rankar looms over Rico. He hears a noise –

Rico: Huh?

As a dark shape slowly descends, he says –

Rico: . . .that sound . . .a Gear in flight!?

The shape lands on the ground – It's Weltall! It lands with a rumble and races forward as Rico says –

Rico: A black Gear . . .Him . . .!?

Weltall rushes towards the beast, Fei shouting –

The Rankar howls at Weltall, the entire place shakes and the battle begins! Fei wins easily after a few rounds and scene cuts to the desert once more as Fei stands on Weltall's outstretched hand as it kneels in the sand. He jumps down and faces Rico, whose back is turned to him. Rico looks out over the desert and asks –

Rico: . . .Why? Why are you here?

Fei: To get this back. It's not that I came here to save you . . .The elevator I happened to use to escape put me in the arena. I saw you were getting attacked. That's why I saved you . . .nothing more than that.

Rico: For a coincidence, that's a convenient story . . .

Fei shakes his head, then nods once as he says –

Fei: It's up to you what you think of it . . .
So, (pauses) what're you gonna do now?

Rico: . . .Do what?

Fei puts his hands on his hips, head bowed as he says –

Fei: I barged into the arena. We're also fugitives . . .that's why we must escape. If you stay, they'll probably make you fight that monster again. This time you're gonna die . . .

Fei looks up –

Rico: . . .

Fei: Is that what you want?

Rico shifts and thinks –

Fei holds out his hands as he says –

Fei: Even you must have things left to do here! But in your state of mind . . .

Rico turns around and brandishes a fist.

Rico: Silence! Shut up! Twice. That's twice you've . . .

Fei bows his head as he says this, then Rico turns and continues, his back to Fei –

Rico: . . .If you want to escape from the Empire, do it now. I have no intentions of leaving. Even if this is going to be the end for me!!

The place begins to shake lightly and Fei looks up, asking –

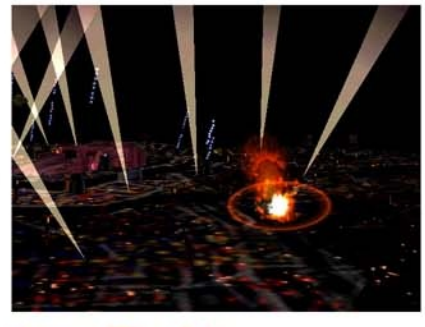
Fei: A . . .rumbling? What's this vibration?

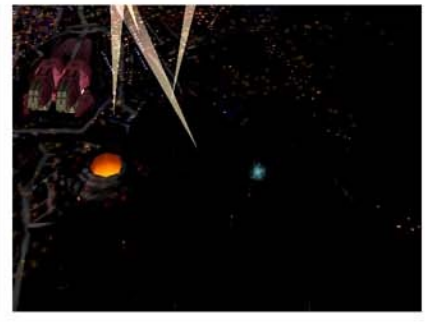
Rico shakes his head, saying –

Rico: This vibration . . .That's . . .no? It's not coming form the ground. (pauses) Is it the . . .vibration in the atmosphere?

Fei looks around, then up as a new sound intrudes. It is a deeper noise.

Fei: . . .Whoa. That doesn't sound good.





Scene cuts to a view of the sky from the arena as another ship moves by overhead. The beams of light sweep the sky and the underside of the vessel is lit up by the arena's glow. Fei says –

Fei: What is that?

View tilts downward to where Fei stands on Weltall's hand as it kneels beside the heavy metal wall of its barrier. Citan rushes up –

Citan: Fei, it is an aerial attack by Aveh, or should I say, Gebler! They really are intent on attacking the Imperial capital . . .

Fei turns to look down at Citan –

Fei: What!? What about the civilians!?

Citan turns away to look up at the sky and says –

Citan: They plan on directly attacking the Imperial capital, Nortune . . .

. . .oh my god!

They view shifts to look up into the sky once more as a ship glides slowly across the field of view.

Citan: That ship is heading . . .to the power plant! Oh no! That is a nuclear reactor! Most likely that ship is their main line of attack! If they drop something on the reactor . . .the whole Imperial capital will . . .!

The place shakes from a distant impact and view tilts down once more as Fei says –

Fei: . . .Be blown away!

He turns to Citan –

Fei: If we can change their course, will that help?

Citan turns to him and says –

Citan: Yes, however . . .

Fei: Doc, I'm gonna try. We can't just . . .(pause) turn and run away.

Citan: . . .(pauses) Alright. Be careful now.

Fei jumps back into Weltall and it rises to its feet. Citan moves off a distance and stands watching as Fei blasts off, turning to look up at the ascending Gear. Another impact shakes the place and Citan turns to the wall, saying –

Citan: If those civilians do not hurry and get out . . .

Citan run off to the right and after he is gone, Rico strides into view, turning to look after where he had gone. More impacts shake the ground and he turns to the wall, thinking –

Rico: . . .

View pans up to the ships overhead once more and scene cuts to the cockpit of Elly's Gear a she sits at the controls. Her troops are around her as they fly through the night sky. Broyer says –

Wha? Who's that? Aren't those the Aveh pirates?

Elly: !? That's . . . . . .Fei! What the . . .!?

View shifts to Elly's left side from the rear, her other troops visible against the gleaming backdrop of the Hecht nearby. Stratski-

Stratski: Hey, this is Kislev! What's he doing here?

Helmholz: He seems to follow us everywhere!

Vance: What's with this guy? A little too persistent, perhaps?

Elly: . . .

Broyer: Third time's a charm! Let's get 'em!

As her troops blast off, Elly calls –

Elly: Ah! Wait!

View cuts to one from behind as a Gear fills her forward viewscreen. She says –

Elly: Renk!?

Renk: From our last incident, I can tell that you're friends with that Gear's pilot. But, there's no way we can stop. It doesn't matter that we're escorting the Hecht. I wanna fight him, not as enemy soldiers, but as rival competitors . . .We're the Gebler special forces and we won't be beaten!

Elly: . . .

As Renk prepares to leave, he says –

Renk: Sorry. I'm gonna have to kick his butt. Any objections?

He blasts off and view switches to Elly's profile as she says –

Elly: I . . .

Scene cuts to the interior of Weltall as Fei shouts –

Fei: You're in the way!!

A bright yellow flash shakes the Gear.

Fei: MOVE!!

Another yellow flash and Fei says –

Fei: We must change the rear ship's course or . . . . . .!!

. . .What . . .you again!?

View shifts to one from behind as Fei approaches the ship. He fights the first enemy and wins.

Fei: This is . . .meaningless!

As he flies over the ship, the next one blasts forward and fight begins! He wins after a few rounds and scene cuts to the flame brightened streets as people dash madly in the red glare. Citan rushes down a street, calling to others –

Citan: Everyone, over here! Hurry!

Hammer rushes to him and says -

Hammer: Master, there're people over there that can't get out!
We're doomed!

Bright flashes as things explode. Citan says –

Citan: Don't give up, Hammer! Fei is fighting too! Fei no longer wants to watch innocent people lose their homes, their town, those that are important to them . . .

View pulls back as people run about until Rico is visible, looking up the steps at Hammer and Citan.

Rico: My . . .(pauses) . . .town?

There is a pause, as more people run around him –

Rico: Hmph, don't make me laugh. who gives a damn about this crap town . . .

He turns, watching the chaos and hears –

"Even you must have things left to do here!"

A flash of light as something else explodes an he turns to lookup at Citan and Hammer, then looks around at the people rushing about. He says –

Rico: . . . . .I'm, (pauses) crap too.

He runs off down the street and scene cuts to Fei in the cockpit once more as he says –

Fei: Arggh . . .I've had it!

View switches to one from behind, the Hecht swinging into view as he rises towards it. Another of the troops attacks him and battle begins! He wins and view returns to his forward screen as he approaches two more enemies. He lands on the hull and –

Fei: Only two . . .enemies, huh?

Suddenly, a Gear blasts in from behind and Fei sees Rico's Gear hovering off to the side! His voice comes over the 'comm –

Rico: Hmph, what a joke . . .Wasting time on a couple of guys like these.

Fei: Rico?

Rico: I don't need a reason to beat the crap out of anyone who pisses me off. (pauses)
And of course this means you too.

Fei turns to look at Rico as he says this, then turns back to his console, saying –

Fei: That's also, (pause) one reason.

Rico: Shut up, let's go.

Battle begins! they win after several rounds and Fei calls over the 'comm –

Fei: OK, now to change the last ship's course . . . . .

View cuts in to a lone Gear up ahead, a close up of Elly in her Gear as she faces them.

Fei: Elly!

View cuts back to Fei's cockpit from the side as he says –

Fei: . . . . .Rico, sorry, but you go on ahead.

Rico turns to face him.

Rico: What!? You've come this far and now you're scared?

Fei: I'll catch up, I promise . . .Please.

Rico: . . .Well, even without you, I can make do by myself.

Rico turns his Gear back to face forward –

Rico: Then . . .I guess I'll go on ahead.

He blasts off and view switches to front viewscreen as Elly floats against the backdrop of the ship.

Fei: . . .

Scene cuts to a battle. Fei and Elly face each other over a starlit plain. Fei says –

Fei: You're kidding? What are you doing here, Elly? I thought you agreed to get out of the military!

Elly: That's asking for too much! I'm an officer of the Gebler forces!

Fei: Then, you're saying this is also one of your duties!?

Elly: Yes! My duty is to escort the Hecht. And to eliminate all enemies that get in its way . . . So you better get out of the way . . .Cause if you don't move then I'll have no choice but to eliminate you!

She rushes in to land in a blow which fails to hit and he says as she returns to her spot –

Fei: Are you serious? You do know what you're doing, don't you!? How can you say that knowing where that ship is headed and what the outcome may be . . .?

Elly: . . .

Fei: C'mon, Elly! Say something!

She loses her defensive posture and says –

Elly: I know! I do understand what I'm doing!

Fei: Then . . .

Elly: Change. How I wanted to change . . .I've thought of changing, but I couldn't . . . I don't have the freedom like you do!

Fei: Freedom? Me?

Elly: Yes! Am I wrong? To be able to choose where you belong . . . To be able to fight alongside those who believe in their own cause . . . Even if you have much more anguish to deal with . . .At least you have the freedom to choose your own path! Unlike me . . .!

Fei: Then why don't you do that too, Elly!?

Elly: If I could, I would already be doing it! But I can't . . . This is my place. And that's how it is here!

Fei: Elly . . .

Elly: . . .So . . .please, understand . . .

Fei: I don't have a place I belong in either . . .

Elly: Huh?

Fei: . . .Bart and crew, even their whole ship, are all missing . . .
They disappeared after the battle with Gebler. So, I don't have a place to belong to anymore . . .

Elly: Really . . .Then, why are you fighting now? Who are you fighting for . . .?

Fei: . . .Do you enjoy this?

Elly: ?

Fei: Barging into someone else's country, and destroying the place . . .Dragging innocent people into becoming victims . . .Do you enjoy fighting that much!?
Is it that much fun for you to watch people die!?

Elly: Don't be ridiculous! I would never find pleasure in that!

Fei: If that's the case . . .then come with me!

He glides towards her and takes her by the arms –

Elly: Wha!? What are you doing!?

Fei: Just forget everything and come with me!!

Scene fades as he carries her off.

Fei: Let's go!

Elly: Ouch! What?

Fei: Just come!

Scene cuts to a flame reddened view, as the two dismount, walking over to the edge of the roof in the red glow, heat causing all to shimmer. They look out over the chaos as people run and buildings burn.

Fei: Look at this town! Take a good long look! This is what you've done? Does the word ,'duty' justify all of this? Does it!?

He turns as she begins to walk away –

She faces him and says –

Elly: But that's all that was left!

Fei approaches her and says –

Fei: You're still saying that!?

She bows her head and he raises a hand as if to strike her, then lets it drop.
She looks up and they stare at one another.

Fei: . . . . . .It's just not like you. If you don't want to then don't do it. You shouldn't have to force it just to have a place to belong . . .

Elly: . . .

Fei: What was I fighting you for just now? . . . . .You wanted to know?
I don't really know. I know I was helping Bart and the others. But I still don't know what I should do. Maybe I'm just looking for a place to fit in. But I think it's better to fight than do nothing. If fighting helps you or your friends even a bit, then it's worthwhile. That's . . . .
(pause) . . . .not nothing. . . . . .it's something.

Fei turns and begins to walk off. Elly turns around and calls after him –

Elly: Fei!

Without turning, he stops and says –

Fei: I'm going.

Elly moves forward and exclaims –

Elly: No! You can't! Dominia is not like the other soldiers! She is an elite within the Gebler elite. She's one of the Elements, Ramsus' personal guard! You won't stand a chance!

Fei: Still, I have to stop this.

Elly: Fei . . .

A white blast of heat explodes in the background.

Fei: Citan and Hammer have nothing to do with Kislev . . .but they're trying desperately to get the civilians to safety. Even Rico, who must hate this town, still stays with me. That's why I have to go.

He walks away and she stands staring at the spot he had just left. She turns to watch as he mounts his Gear and fires up the engines. He blasts off and and she follows him with her eyes, whispering -

Elly: Fei . . .

Another blast explosion, white heat as she stands there, then scene cuts to a battle, the underside of the Hecht going by as Fei and Rico prepare to fight. Rico asks –

Rico: What the hell were you doing, Fei!? Were you expectin' me to do all the dirty work of clearing away these punks for you, alone?

Fei: Sorry about that . . .Oh, but I see you've made a girlfriend . . . If we can defeat her, we should be able to change the course of this ship. Let's go!

Dominia: Hmph. Just one more extra runt isn't going to allow you to down the 'Ship – Bomb Hecht'!

Fei: Of course not! We're not gonna take 'this ship' down. We're gonna take 'you' down!

Dominia: Hah! What insolence! But what do you expect coming from Lambs . . .!

The battle begins! It is extremely difficult and Fei and Rico take a lot of damage. Finally they defeat her and the turret explodes, the Gear disappearing in a ball of flame as she cries –

Dominia: Eeeeeaaahh! . . .Guh . . .Why you . . .Remember this . . .
One day I'll pay you back for this . . .I promise!!

Scene cuts back to interior of Fei's cockpit as he calls out –

Fei: There's no time! Rico, hurry and change the course.

View switches to Fei's profile and the rumbling increases, shaking the cockpit. Rico's Gear is visible as they both come behind the Hecht, pushing and they shout –

Rico: NOOOOO!!

Fei: Whoooooaaaa!

Fei: Damn!! There's too much mass!

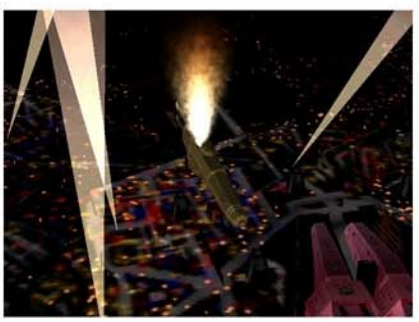
Scene cuts to a view behind the Hecht as Fei turns at the sound of an approaching Gear – it's Elly! She rises up to lend her strength as Fei jumps backward.

Fei: Elly!? You . . .

Elly: Hold on! We can avoid a direct hit on the reactor with three Gears.

Fei: Ah, ahhh.

He begins to push and scene cuts to a view of the foundering ship as it falls over Nortune, the beams of light waving below and the city lights still twinkling. View shifts as it passes over the Central District, a trail of smoke pouring from its side and scene cuts to the interior of Rico's Gear as he calls over –



Rico: OK, we've steered it away from the power station. Let's bail out! Fei!

Fei: But, now it's heading right for the residential district!

Elly: He's right! We need to bring it down somewhere where it won't cause so much damage.

View switches to the three as they push the end of the ship, engines blazing. Rico says –

Rico: Impossible! We can't change its course anymore than we have!

Fei: No! We've got to hold it up as long as we can!

Rico: What are you, deaf?

View pulls back as they push, then Rico says –

Rico: Huh!? We're overheating!

Fei: Damn! Not now!

Rico: There's nothin' more we can do! Hanging on anymore will just be suicide!

Fei: But . . .

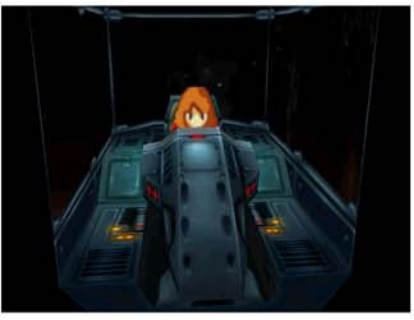
Rico: That's it. I'm bailing out! C'mon!

Scene cuts to the two men as they drift away from the ship, watching as it descends. Then –

Fei: Elly!

He sees that she's still pushing at the end –

Fei: Stop! What're you doing? If you do that . . .



Cuts to the interior of Elly's Gear as she says –

Elly: Don't worry. My Gear is from Solaris. It's still . . . all right.

Fei: Elly! What are you doing? If you keep going you'll . . .!

Elly: But . . . . . .what else can we do? At least it will reduce the damage. . . . . Sorry. It's better than doing nothing.

Scene fades as camera pulls in on Weltall as Fei shouts –

Fei: Elllllly!

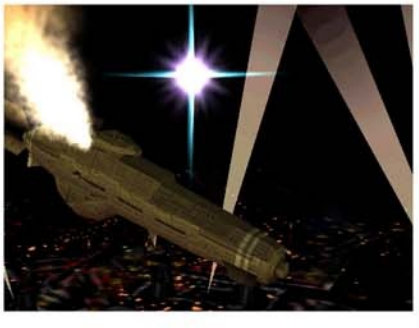
Scene fades and returns to Elly's cockpit as the shaking intensifies and a dull rumbling is heard. She says –

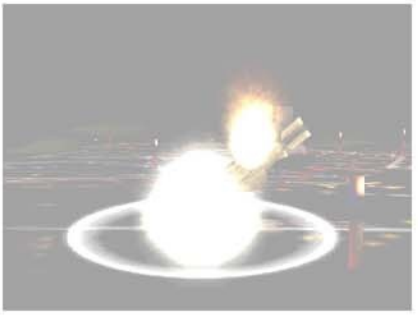
Elly: . . .Just hold on a bit more! Please!

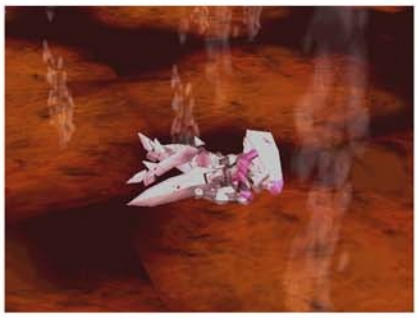
View cuts to the outside, where her Gear is pushing the Hecht, the red horizon far off and stars overhead. Her engines flare, then go out and in the cockpit, Elly says –

Elly: . . .! Is this . . .it . . .?

Scene cuts to the outside as Elly lets go and slowly falls to the ground below . . .







Scene cuts to where Elly lies on the ground in Vierge as flames erupt all around her. As the whiteness grows, the winged Gear swoops down and spreads his wing over her and scene fades with white light.

Fades in slowly to the interior of Elly's cockpit as she says -

"I'm . . .alive? . . .?"

All is dark outside her viewscreen and view slowly flashes into an image of the mystery Gear as it stands over her, in the midst of the red glare of the flames, wings outspread.

"Who . . .are you? Why me?"

He rises and turns, flying off.

Fades back to her darkened cockpit as she says, "Wait . . ."
Scene fades and in the darkness she hears -

" . . .Elly, Elly . . ."

"Who . . .?"
View slowly resolves, revealing Weltall as he bends over her. She hears,

" . . .Elly!"

View goes black, she says, "You're . . ."
View of Weltall returns and she asks –
"Fei?
View dissolves and scene cuts to where Weltall picks up Vierge, the smoke of flames rising all around them. Fades to Elly's cockpit-

Elly: Fei?

Elly: . . .Are you . . .(pauses) crying? . . .sorry.

Fei: . . .Stupid . . .foolish . . .

Fei: . . .It's okay.

Elly: Can you . . .(pause) . . .forgive me?

Fei: . . .It's not your fault, Elly. It's not your fault . . .

Elly: Fei . . .

Scene fades to a view of Weltall holding Veirge in his arms as Fei says –

Fei: Elly, let's go back.

As his engines rumble, scene slowly fades back to her cockpit as she says –

Elly: . . .'That person' (pause) where . . .

Scene fades.

Scene cuts to the interior of the female doctor's hideout in A Block as Citan, Fei and Elly stand facing one another. Fei outs his hands on his hips and bows his head, saying –

Fei: . . .First we save the Empire, now we're being chased by them.

Citan ponders, tapping his foot and says –

Citan: We cannot make a move with security this tight . . .

Fei drops his hands and looks up, saying –

Fei: Hammer's our only hope . . .He's awfully late though.

They hear the secret knock and Fei looks over, saying –

Fei: Look's like Hammer's here.

He opens the door and Hammer comes in –

Hammer: Bro, Citan! I got the key info that should help us get outta the capital!

Fei: So what's the info?

Fei nods and asks –

Hammer: The empire's new super airship, . . . 'Goliath'. This is it, bro.

Citan taps his foot and says –

Citan: The empire's new creation . . .the super airship 'Goliath'?

There is a pause, then Elly asks –

Elly: . . .Super airship. Is it really that big?

Hammer: Tsk tsk, it's beyond big! !? . . .

She nods and says –

Elly: . . .It's Elly.

Hammer: !? . . .As I said, it's beyond big, Elly!

She nods once and he continues –

Hammer: The 'Goliath' is of extraordinary magnitude! It's said that the 'Goliath' can even make a Gear look like a pea. It's rumored that it can even decimate the Aveh capital, Bledavik, all by itself.

Fei shakes his head, saying –

Fei: By itself, annihilate Aveh!? It must be a monstrous battleship.

Hammer: According to my reliable sources, it's located north of Kislev in an underground dock of some military facility . . .

Elly thinks, "!?" and steps forward, shaking her head as she asks –

Elly: . . .The military facility . . .north of the capital . . .

Fei turns his head to look at her and asks –

Fei: Elly, what's wrong?

Elly nods once and says –

Elly: I know that facility. I've talked to you about it before. The Imperial facility . . . I infiltrated . . .I never knew that something like that was in the basement . . .

She bows her head and Citan asks –

Citan: . . .Elly, do you think you still remember . . .how you infiltrated the base?

She looks up and turns to Citan –

Elly: Yes, Citan.

She turns to the north and points –

Elly: Way north, beyond the Kislev Imperial capital . . .beyond the 'carved out portion of the mountain peak' lies the Imperial city's military facility.

Fei: Good, let's take that . . . . . .before the empire decides to launch a counter-attack against Aveh.

The three make their way to the exit and Hammer says –

Hammer: Oh, yes! I forgot to tell you about Master Rico, bro.

Fei: (nods once) You've seen him?

Hammer: Yeah, and I brought up our plan to escape from the capital . . .
(pauses) Says he can't help us though.

Fei bows his head and says –

Fei: . . .I see.

Citan nods once and says –

Citan: Fei, he has his own path he must take. Now . . .let us go.

Elly: . . .Fei, we must hurry to Aveh . . .

Fei looks up and shakes his head slightly –

Fei: Huh? Uh yeah . . .I know, Elly. We have to hurry . . .If we go through the front gate we might have to fight the guards . . . Hammer, once we break through, fall in behind us.

Fei turns his head to look at Citan as Hammer responds –

Hammer: That's my specialty. Leave it to me, bro. And put up a good fight!

Fei nods once and says –

Fei: Doc, Elly. Let's go. Our destination is the Imperial military facility up north.

They both nod and start to move, when Hammer comes forward and says –

Hammer: Ju, just a minute! There's something I have to tell Elly.

Elly: Tell (pauses) . . .me?

Hammer: Yes'm! It'll be real quick.

Elly shrugs and Fei nods. She moves off to the side with him and scene fades. Returns as she goes back to Fei and Citan –

Hammer: All right!

Citan: (ponders) . . .All right?

Hammer: (says quickly) Uh, nothing!! (he rushes)
Good luck in breaking through the front gate, bro, and you Citan!

Citan nods once and he and Elly join Fei. In the next room, they talk to the nun –
N1: You know, she's keeping that promise she made with you . . . . . .She's in D Block, so don't forget to go see her once in a while.

They talk to Hammer who says –

Hammer: I gave away all my items to the people who were injured by the Aveh attack. I, I didn't take any money for it though! I woulda never done that before . . .Who'd have thought I could do such a thing? . . . Heh. It's probably because of you, bro.

The three leave and scene cuts to the street outside. They talk to a man who says –
M1: They say that flying battleship crashed in the north-west area of D Block . . .Luckily we escaped a direct hit. Boy am I thankful it wasn't near our civilian area!
A woman further down says –
W1: The attack by our enemy kingdom Aveh on our Imperial capital was really scary! If that happens again, I'm out of here! Perhaps I might move to Nisan!
Thy go to the 'Wildcat' and a soldier at a table says –
S1: Argh . . .damn Aveh. Because of the attack, Josephine was crushed under a chair . . .You okay . . . Josephine? (a pause, then) Oooh . . .Alright . . .alright.
A soldier near the far end says –
S2: The attack on the Empire by Aveh is sure to start a war . . .A mercenary like me can't make a living without some conflict. Kislev and Aveh . . .which one should I suck the blood from . . .
The man at the bar with the mole says –
M1: I was surprised by the Aveh attack, by I was lucky my comrade was from the mole tribe.
Mole: I'm embarrassed . . .boss.
They leave and make their way down the street, towards the three guards at the exit. One says –
Imperial City Guard: . . .Hey! Isn't he the guy in the 'wanted' poster . . .perhaps?

I2: . . .Yeah, they say that everyone has two or three people that look exactly like them in this world . . .
I2: Besides, even if he was that 'wanted' guy, what chance would mere guards like us have against him? He's the ex-Battling champ!
IG1: Let sleeping dogs lie, huh!
IG2: Exactly! So even if we were to see him here, then we'd just pretend that we haven't seen him, O.K.!
The third guard rushes forward and says quickly –
IG3: Hey, that guy! He's the ex-Champ who broke out of the arena with his Gear and is now 'wanted'!
IG2: Are you stupid!? (quickly said)

Fei: Damn! We're done for!

They choose to try and break through. The three prepare for battle and Fei says –

Fei: We've got to give it a try! Doc! Elly! Let's try and force our way through here!

Citan: . . .So it is the only thing we can do, right?

Elly: Wait a second! Do you really intend to do this?

IG1: Oh no! They're serious!
IG2: there's no way we can beat the Champion!!!

The third speaks as Rico rushes forward from the side –
IG3: Hahaa! You'll be our greatest achievement!
Rico begins howling and lays into the guards. They scatter, shouting –

IG2: Egads . . .!
IG1: D, didn't I tell you that . . .
IG3: Oh, our reputation . . .
They disappear and Rico stands as Fei says –

Fei: Hey, you're . . .Rico! What are you doing here?

Rico turns to him and says –

Rico: . . .I changed my mind. I'll leave Nortune for a while until things calm down. You plan on seizing the new mega-battleship 'Goliath'? Well, I'll give you a hand . . .up to the city limits.

Fei: (shakes head) . . .You don't want to fight together with us?

Rico: . . .Make no mistake here! I don't intend to become friends with you guys! (turns his back) I have something I have to do and I have to do it on my own . . .! When we leave the Imperial capital's precincts, you can let me out anywhere that is convenient, O.K.!

Fei: (bows head) . . . . . .

Citan: Well, at least until we escape from the city area we have got a secure ally. That is good enough for us, is it not!

Fei raises his head and Citan turns to him –

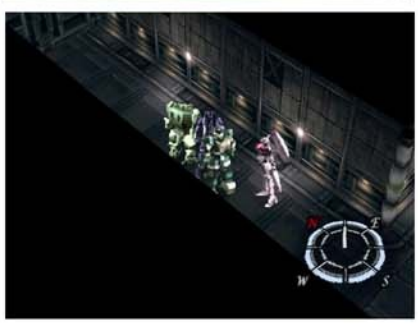
Citan: Don't you think?

Elly nods and says –

Elly: Well . . .yes . . .I suppose so.

Rico: We have no time to dawdle around here! We better get out of here before other guards who have heard this scuffle come causing us trouble! So our destination is the 'north lands' of the outer Imperial city area, right! Then the Kislev Imperial capital's military facilities await us! We had better make haste!

They go out of Nortune and travel through the mountains, fighting many battles until they reach the facility. They enter the gray metal structure and find themselves in a huge corridor. They get in their Gears and make their way along until they find a strange Gear, who says –



Hammer: Muahahahah! Hey bro. I went ahead and opened up the lock for you. What? The Gear? Hah, don't worry about the details. I'm the information man! There's nothing outta my reach. But bro, there aren't any enemies though. Something's suspicious. Oh yeah, you can even shop.

He offers them services and they upgrade their Gears. As they turn to leave, he says –

Hammer: Go get 'em. I'll catch up with you later.

They open the first set of double doors and move forward into a warehouse with a conveyor belt humming overhead. They are attacked by enemies waiting in the alcoves on either side. They go through another set of double doors and find themselves in another corridor. They make their way to another storage warehouse area, fight battles and find a conveyor belt which takes them to another section of the facility.

They make their way through the corridors to the crossroads and this time, they chose the one leading south. Scene cuts to a view from behind as they progress in almost total darkness. They emerge out into a landing bay of sorts, dimly lit and they go forward.

They being a fight with a large Gear that has a key symbol on its shield. After a somewhat difficult battle, it goes down and they follow the ramp. Scene cuts to the bridge of a vessel. Citan, Fei, Elly, Rico and Hammer all walk in and stare around them for a moment at the new and shiny surroundings.

Rico: Get a load of this! I can't believe they'd make such a thing . . .

Citan: . . .Shall we see if it works?

He strides forward and Fei follows, then stops, asking –

Fei: Doc, do you know how to operate it!?

Citan turns to him and responds –

Citan: Not really . . .(pause) But, Fei . . .you were not thinking of stealing this big thing without knowing how to operate it, were you?

Fei: Errr . . .

Citan: Well, anyway . . .

Citan goes over to the main console and examines it. Fei goes over to Elly and speaks to her.

Elly: So they were this close to having it up and operational . . .

He goes over to Rico who stands off to the right.

Rico: . . .

Behind him, Hammer stands and says –

Hammer: Bro, this thing is incredible . . .Boy is this exiting.

Citan turns around and calls over –

Citan: I think we can do this.

Fei goes over to Citan who says –

Citan: Well then, shall we go?

Fei: Yeah, let's go.

Citan: Well everyone, this could be dangerous, so please be seated.

Scene fades as they seek out seats, returns to a view of Citan who is at the helm and he sits ready, asking –

Citan: Is everyone ready? It will . . .

The entire vessel shakes as the engines roar to life.

Citan: shake a little

It bucks again, a dull rumbling heard outside. View shifts to Rico and Hammer who sit nearby –

Rico: Couldn't you tell us . . .

Hammr: . . .a bit sooner . . .

The darkened bay comes to life, lights coming on which they can see through the forward windows. View shifts to a propeller as it begins spinning, the rumbling intensifies. They begin to move steadily forward. The vessel picks up speed. Cuts back to the bridge for a second where Fei and Citan sit, the craft shaking as it goes faster. Then to an overhead of the Goliath as it soars out into the deep blue sky, the sun flashing off its spotless finish as it flies over the dark water of the ocean below.

This is a moment of true victory! Scene fades and returns to Citan where he sits at the controls. He says –

Citan: The shaking has subsided. We should be in good shape for now.

Fei approaches from the right and Hammer from the left. Hammer asks –

Hammer: Bro, what're we gonna do now? Go to Aveh as planned?

Fei turns to Hammer as Citan calls out –

Fei: Yeah . . .

Citan: !! Fei!

Fei turns to the forward window and asks –

Fei: What happened, doc . . . . . .!!

View shifts to the forward window as a shape emerges and floats in the blue sky before them. It's a Gear . . . The magnification is increased and after the third shot, Grahf is depicted, standing on his Gear's shoulder. View cuts back to the bridge as the others come to stand before the screen. Elly says -

Elly: Th, that's . . .

Fei: . . .It's him.

Fei turns and begins to rush off as Elly says –

Elly: Fei, where are you going!?

Fei: (without turning) I'm going out with the Gear . . .
He turns to go and Elly calls after him –

Elly: Fei!

Rico strides off, following and Hammer turns –

Hammer: M, Master!?

Elly runs off after them and scene cuts to a view of Hammer as he turns to watch where they have gone, the blue screen behind him.

Hammer: Even Elly . . .

He turns at a deep rumble and Grahf's Gear fills the view as he rushes forward. He passes by overhead and scene cuts to the top of the vessel where they prepare for battle. Grahf stands alone, outside his Gear and challenges Fei, Rico and Elly.

Fei: Grahf!?

Grahf: The Goliath wasn't built for you to use. You must remain on this land a little longer. I can't allow you to leave . . .

Grahf launches a volley of super powered energy bolts at Fei and Rico, The results are devastating. They know they must hit hard and quick. After using many deathblows he groans and sinks to his knee, saying –

Grahf: So, you can now draw upon more of your power . . .
If that's the case then . . .

Citan calls out over the 'comm –

Citan: Fei! Hold on tightly now!!

The engines' noise rises sharply in pitch.

Grahf: Huh!?

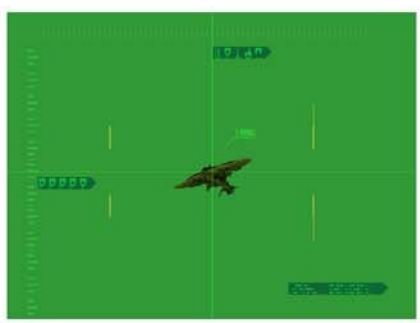
The plane tilts at a sharp angle and view closes in as Grahf begins to slip towards the wing's edge. He flies off, then his Gear tumbles after him. View cuts to the interior of the bridge which is shaking and canted at an odd angle. Hammer shouts –

Hammer: I'm slippin'

The plane swerves backwards and forwards as Citan attempts to regain control. Hammer comes up to him and shouts –

Hammer: Aaaaah! Looook ooout! Master Citan!! It's alright to throw the black creep, but bro and Master Rico as well . . .?

Citan: If it is them, they are okay. Nevermind that, Hammer, go to that trigger!



Hammer moves off to some controls on the left –

Hammer: Trigger . . .? You mean this? What do I do with . . .

Citan: You must fire. Look, it is coming.

Hammer: ?

View shifts to the forward screen in front of Hammer as the black Gear is silhouetted against the blue sky while it rises into attack position. Hammer sings out –

Hammer: The ~ y're he ~ re!

He runs around in circles cuts to the front as Citan stands at his post –

Citan: Hammer! Calm down and concentrate. It is heading straight at us. All you have to do is aim well, pull the trigger and fire.

Hammer: Aiming . . .

He moves forward and touches the controls. A red bull's eye appears on the display and he moves it over Grahf. He pauses for a moment, the target on the black Gear's chest. He asks -

Hammer: L, like this?

Citan: Good, keep it there and do not move your aim. Get ready to fire in . . .

View cuts to forward screen as Grahf gets closer and Citan shouts down –

" 5 . . .4 . . .3 . . .2 . . .1 . . ."

As the Gear gets closer, Citan shouts –

Citan: Fire!!

View at forward screen as red flames erupt before the approaching Gear. A glowing white hot blaze hits Grahf in the chest and he raises up his arms reflexively as he is pushed back in a blaze of white light. View cuts back to Hammer near Citan as he says –

Hammer: Y, ye, ye, aaaaaaaawwww yeaeeaaahhh!!!

He goes over to Citan and says –

Hammer: Master, sir, did you just see my MAD SKILLZ !? I just might be a genius! . . .

Wha? He looks around, then asks –

Hammer: By the way, what's up with bro and the gang? You don't think they fell off?

He turns to Citan and says, as Rico comes up behind him –

Hammer: Well, at least you still got me. It should be a piece o' cake with me around. Right, Master, sir?

The view goes black as "SMACK!" is heard! View slowly returns with Fei, Citan, Elly, Rico and Hammer back on the bridge. Fei speaks to Elly –

Elly: That person . . .(pauses) wasn't aiming for me. Why . . .?

He goes over to Rico who stands with his back to Hammer.

Rico: . . .

Hammer: Awww, Master Rico . . .please don't be mad. It was just a joke. Master Rico, it's because of you that I am what I am. C'mon. . .

Rico whirls around and shouts –

Rico: Shut up!!!

Hammer backs off hurriedly, saying –

Hammer: Yiiiiikkkkeesssss!!

Fei goes over to Citan at the helm. View switches to one from the front as Fei says –

Fei: . . .Doc. I don't know how to say this but . . .I've got a bad feeling.

Citan turns to him and asks –

Citan: Are you thinking of that man in black? Thinking about him will not get you anywhere. First of all, it is not like you . . .

Fei: It's not that. It's not like . . .It's like this feeling of uneasiness that I've had before . . .

Citan: You too!? Well, to tell the truth, I am getting a terrible feeling of déjà vu . . .

Fei: And I feel like we're being watched . . .

Scene cuts to a green targeting screen as the Goliath comes into view. It is centered in the crosshairs and a voice says –

"Bingo! Our information was correct. It's Kislev's . . .It's huge . . .It appears to be a . . ."

View cuts in to a higher magnification and the Goliath is readily visible, propellers whirring, engines rumbling. The voice exclaims –

"That's it! The Goliath! The one from the underground facility we've heard so much about!! Crap . . .they're taking revenge! Bet they're going to bomb Bledavik!"

Scene cuts to – Bart! as he rises from peering through the scope. He stands on the bridge of a familiar vessel, his crew at their stations. He says –

Bart: Either way, no need to let him go so fast . . .right . . .?

He reaches out and flips up the sides of the scope and it disappears up into the ceiling. He calls out –

Bart: Gunner!

Gunner: Gungany . . .No. Bart Missile, fueling! It'll take fifteen seconds from opening the hatch to engage their illuminator!

Bart: Franz!

View pulls back as Bart strides forward and the whole bridge become visible as Franz reports –

Franz: I don't hear anything other than the surface wind waves and our own engine. Threat is minimal from looking at the radar and sonar.

Bart leaps from the helm and goes over to the gunner's post, saying –

Bart: Here we go! BattCon level 1!

The lights dim and go to red as an alarm rings. The view switches to the door as Maison comes through. He says –

Maison: Y, young master! What is happening? What was the alarm all about . . .?

The door opens once more and Sig comes through.

Sig: Young master! Again!!?

View tilts to look at Bart who hasn't even turned around. He calls out –

Bart: Battle stations, everyone! Surface navigation! Close the vents! Blow the main tank! Prepare for anti-aircraft battle upon surfacing!

From behind, both Maison and Sig speak simultaneously –

Sig: Just doesn't know when to give up . . .

Maison: Y, young master! The Gungany missiles . . .you need permission from more than half of the crew members to . . .

Bart ignores them and turns to the left, calling out –

Bart: Surface – combat! Stand by with the anti-aircraft guns. Gunner! Give me the trigger for the Bart Missiles!

Scene cuts to the bridge of the Goliath where Fei and Citan stand watching the forward viewscreen. Elly walks by and stops, asking –

Elly: What's wrong?

Fei turns to her and responds –

Fei: Oh, it's nothing.

Elly: Okay . . .I'm glad . . .(turns to Citan) Anyway, Citan is it okay? We're flying in such a large ship. What if Kislev or Aveh finds us . . .

Citan turns to her and responds –

Citan: We are fine. I thought ahead and picked a course over the sea. There are not any military units stationed out here. Even then, this thing is not something that will go down so easily . . .

A sudden crash shakes the bridge and a bright light is seen. Citan and Fei turn to the front and Citan says –

Citan: this cannot be right!?

As the glow fades and intensifies by turns, the entire bridge heaves and he asks –

Citan: Are we being attacked!?

Fei: Enemies!?

Citan: I do not know. But I did not think they would be submerged here . . .

Citan walks back and forth over to the console and Elly asks –

Elly: Are we okay!?

Citan: (turns to her) . . .Unfortunately, there is no way we can avoid descending. Fei, Elly, get out first. I will follow later.

Citan turns to him –

Fei: But . .

Citan: We have no time for a debate now, Fei!! Do you think you have the skills needed to keep the Goliath in the air as long as possible!?

Fei: . . .

Citan turns to the front viewscereen and says –

Citan: Then hurry up and get out.

Fei nods once and he and Elly move off. Citan stands at the controls and says –

Citan: Now then . . .

Then he turns to Hammer who is still panicking –

Citan: . . .And you too, Hammer! You are going too!

Hammer: Y, yy, yessir!!

He looks around for a moment and Rico comes up behind him and says –

Rico: Argh! Quit dawdling. We're going.

Rico strides off and Hammer says –

Hammer: Yessir!!

He moves off and Citan turns back to the controls, saying –

Citan: Now . . .where did they . . .

As the deck heaves beneath him, red light bathing the bridge, after a moment Citan says –

Citan: !! That ship . . .

He begins to ponder and says –

Citan: Sigurd . . .I think you need to rethink your method of disciplining . . .

Scene cuts to a view of the Goliath as bright gouts of flame erupt from it. As it descends, view pulls back to the helm at the top of the Yggdrasil where Bart leaps up to the steering mechanism. He turns to watch the fiery display above and view cuts to one facing him as he crosses his arms, leaning his chin on his hand as he shakes with laughter and says –

Bart: Hah hah hah!! That's the power of the Bart Missile!!

He flexes his arm says –

Bart: Even Kislev's prototype can't stand up to it!!

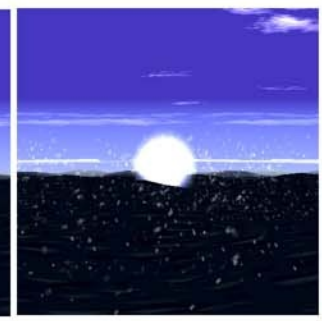
After a moment, he drops his arm and gives a start, saying –

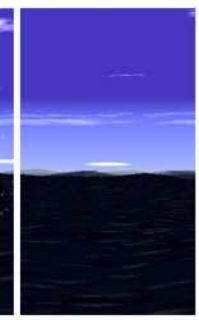
Bart: . . .Uh, hey . . .

He steps off the ledge –

Bart: S–stay back . . .Keep away!!

Scene fades as he jumps off the helm and starts running . . .





Scene fades and cuts to a bridge of a vessel where Ramsus and Miang stand at the helm. They hear one crewman report –

C1: We have the coordinates of those recent dimensional vibrations. N24, E92, Ignas, in the Lahan region, the northwest ocean. From the wave pattern, it's definitely a Gatekeeper.

Another crewman reports –

C2: There are no regular mainland flights.

Ramsus: Could it be Shevat's Aphel Aura?

C1: No. The mass is different. It's a much smaller pattern.

C2: I can't believe that the Lambs have a ship equipped with a Gatekeeper.

Ramsus: It's probably Kislev's. The last purge was not complete.

Suddenly a red flash, the dark electric hum and then darkness. Once more the lights slowly come on as all turn, looking around wildly. Behind Miang and Ramsus stands Grahf. Ramsus says –

Ramsus: Damn you . . .

A dark radiance causes the light, on the bridge to pulse with a strange rhythm and Grahf asks –

Grahf: Shouldn't you pursue?

Ramsus: What?

Grahf: The one who caused you so much pain and grief is on that ship. And it's headed for Aquvy.

With an instant flash, total darkness, then light returns and Grahf is gone. Ramsus turns back around, and Miang remains staring at the spot Grahf had just vacated. Ramsus says –

Ramsus: Put all the crew members on emergency alert. we're attacking the Kislev ship.

Miang turns to him and says –

Miang: We can't, Commander! We don't have orders from the capital yet. If we move from here . . .

Ramsus: I don't care! I won't allow them to escape!

Miang stares at him a moment, then turns and makes her way to the exit. She goes through and scene cuts to a hallway. As she reaches the halfway point, there is a flash of darkness, then red and Grahf stands before her. The light is mysteriously dimmed here, too. They face one another as the view shifts to their profiles. He says –

Grahf: I believe I already said your tricks will do you no good.

Miang: I'm just trying to help. Didn't I help get those 'shackles' off? Now, you know the 'vessel' will only respond to the chosen one. They don't know this. But . . .he's necessary for Kahr. He's the very meaning of Kahr's existence.

They stare at one another and, after a moment, she says –

Miang: Yes, I must thank you. After all, you did help me didn't you?

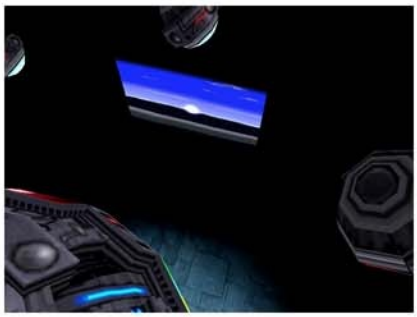
Grahf: . . .

Miang: Was it for me? Or for him?. . .Or . . .for yourself?

C1: We will take the boundary between gates 1 and 2, it's the shortest way to Aquvy.

Ramsus: Fine.

C2: Message from Kelvena. Dominia is withdrawing in Haishao. She will pursue the aerial battleship.



SE2: Disobedience . . .Ramsus' orders are to excavate the 'Anima Relics' in Ignas . . . and to watch over the Lambs. What is he . . . . .

SE1: We can recover the 'Anima Relics' anytime. Moreover, we learned that 'he' was on the transferred ship. Ramsus was probably after 'him'.

SE4: . . .So it was the trauma.

SE8: Nay. In this case, Knigret . . .It was the severe external wounds.

According to the memory cube . . .we've found multiple subjects around 'him' that possess the 'Animus' factor.

Is it –Sufradi-, the subject of the M Project?

Yes.

Coincidence?

Nay, it is beyond that. They were either attracted to 'him' or . . .

Unexpectedly, it's developing into the same condition as 500 years ago.

That does not rule out the possibility he planned it this way intentionally.

The transfer point is Aquvy . . .It's near the Thames.

If it is Aquvy, Krelian's headed that way.

Krelian? Himself? What for?

It seems they've found it. For over 4000 years he searched for Zeboim's legacy.

Legacy . . .Is that the technology he was talking about?

The screen before them suddenly flashes into darkness and the image is replaced by the visage of the Emperor. He speaks –

Emperor: Yes. Molecular engineering . . . . . .nanotechnology. The land of all creations, the capital of Zeboim culture . . .resting beneath the ocean of Aquvy. For 19 years, the 'Ethos' kept it secret.

Is this acceptable, Cain?

Emperor Cain: Yes, it will do for now.

19 years . . .That coincides with the time when the earth shifted . . .

Indeed.

But, I don't understand. That technology doesn't seem that crucial to us . . .

He is still a Lamb. Giving him the ability to do as he wishes is questionable.

There are times when even we do not know what he is thinking.

Emperor Cain: Let it be. I will take responsibility for that.
On another matter . . .
Weren't you all going to . . .'eliminate' it?

It's just by chance.

It is probable the location is Ignas.

Anyway, I never believed it would be eliminated so easily.

The purge was a failure. This shall never happen again.

If the 'Animus' are together, it is all the more reason.

Yes.

SE1: Cain, why are YOU so concerned about it? To us, 'he' is insignificant . . .

SE5: It could only be a poison to us. It could never be a remedy.

SE2: 'Annonelbe' . . .You don't still believe that, do you?

SE3: That is merely an illusion. Not even an ideal.

SE4: The result . . .is what I am now. It is as you see it.

SE7: Or rather . . .Is it the 'emotion' you have long forgotten?

Emperor Cain: . . .

SE1: Cain, (pause) we are 'gods'.

Scene fades.

The Thames

Scene cuts to a brightly lit ocean as Elly lays on a rusty vessel, floating on the clam waters of the sea. She rises slowly and says –

Elly: Uh, ooooh . . .

She looks around and asks –

Elly: Where am I . . .? I was with Fei, heading for the rear block . . .Fei . . .!
Where are you, Fei?

She begins to walk along the rough plated metal surface, looking for Fei. She hears a rumbling from a rusty metal hatch and she goes over to investigate. It opens and Fei jumps out. He turns to her and says –

Fei: Elly, you are awake.

View moves closer as she responds –

Elly: Am I awake . . .? What were you doing!?

Fei: I was looking around inside here. There's less than (pauses) 2 days worth . . .

Elly: Of what?

He turns to the hatch and says –

Fei: Food. We're lucky we even found any.

Elly: But, where is everyone!? Are we the only survivors?

Fei turns and looks out over the water, hands on hips as he says –

Fei: We gotta do something. Guess I'll go catch some fish.

Elly: Fei!

Without facing her, Fei responds –

Fei: . . .(pauses) They're okay.

Elly: What?

Fei walks over to the edge and stares out over the ocean as he says –

Fei: They're okay . . .(pauses) doc, Rico, Hammer, everyone . . .They're all going to be okay.

View tilts up to the sky and fades. In the darkness, a voice is heard –

"Hammer, Rico . . .Wake up!"

Scene cuts to the inside of a room where Rico and Hammer stand looking wildly around them, Citan in front of them as they ask simultaneously –

Hammer: Where are we?

Rico: What is this place?
Something smells.

They stand in a familiar looking room, metal walls, blue covered beds . . .
Citan responds –

Citan: We are inside the ship of Bart and his crew.
They rescued us after we were shot down in the Goliath.

Rico turn to Citan and asks –

Rico: Who the heck are 'Bart and his crew'?

Citan pauses, then says –

Citan: Let us say . . .they are bandits . . .robbing Aveh. Bart is their leader, though he is still a young man.

Rico turns away and says –

Rico: A robber in this day and age? (pauses) A man with an attitude. I like it!!

Citan: . . .Do you want to start off by going to meet Bart?

Rico turns and nods once, saying –

Rico: Hmm . . .You read my mind!

Hammer turns to Citan and says –

Hammer: I'm staying here!

Citan and Rico make their way out to the hall below the Gun Room and climb the stairs. They speak to Maison –

Maison: Oh! Doctor Uzuki. I'm sorry to put you out so much . . . We should've stopped the young master . . .I am truly sorry!

He turns to the wall and says –

Maison: (Uh . . .uh . . .uh . . .! My chronic lumbago has gotten worse since I hustled in Aveh . . .)

They make their way to the bridge and enter. They see Sig and Bart and speak to Sig –

Sig: Forgive me, Hyuga . . .I couldn't save Fei and Elly . . .

They move over to speak to Bart who turns and says –

Bart: Well if it isn't Doctor Citan Uzuki and . . .errh, his very big friend! I see you've finally woken up. I am terribly sorry about what happened . . . Please forgive me . . .

There is a pause, then Rico says –

Rico: I have a name, you know . . .It's Ricardo Banderas . . .But everyone calls me Rico! So, what are you apologizing to us for?

Bart: . . .I suppose I had better stop beating around the bush . . . I'm not usually this frank or apologetic but, well . . .

Citan turns to Rico and says –

Citan: What he is trying to say is this . . .The people who shot us down, and the people who saved us, are one and the same . . .this ship's crew!

Rico turns to Citan and asks –

Rico: . . .? You don't mean . . .That Goliath which we were riding in was shot down by . . .?

He runs to Bart as the young man says –

Bart: Yes, you're a bit slow there . . .errh, big friend! Actually our Yggdrasil II did a good job in shooting down that monster of an airplane!! It was great!

Bart turns away and says as Rico turns, hunching over a clenched fist –

Bart: You should've seen it! Wow! My 'Bart Missiles' sure were awesome . . .!!

Bart turns and scene fades as Rico jumps the young man, shouting –

"AAAAAARRRRRGGGGHHHH!!!! I won't forgive you so easily!!

Citan turns away . . .is he laughing?

Scene cuts to the craft which Fei and Elly are floating on, the hatch opens as she says –

Elly: I knew it . . .I thought this thing was floating unusually . . .

Fei jumps around in the gulf between the two pieces of the craft, shouting.

Elly: But even knowing that, there's no way we can them out . . .right? They're right under us, but covered by water and a thick wall.

Fei shouts, "Hold it!" and jumps.

Elly: It's probably Weltall and Vierge.

Fei shouts, "You little . . ." while jumping again and she continues –

Elly: For better or worse, they have stuck by us this far . . . But, they are useless now at this point though.

View tilts to the open hatch as Elly jumps out and says –

Elly: It appears our Gears are underwater here, Fei. But, we can't move them . . . . . (pauses) What're you doing, Fei?

View moves to include Fei who stands on a ledge and looks around –

Fei: What am I doing? Can't you tell . . .? I'm trying to catch a fish! This one's been jumping up and down right in front of me, trying to make me look like a fool . . .

Off to the left, the fish leaps out of the water, then disappears as Fei turns –

Fei: You little punk! I see you!

He jumps down into the gulf and view swings over to Elly as she asks –

Elly: Uh, uhmm, you're not going to catch it and eat it are you?

Fei: If we don't eat, we're gonna die . . . (pause) . . .Alright!! I gotcha!!

Elly jumps back as he flings the fish onto the deck. She says as he jumps up on the ledge –

Elly: You're joking. You'll get sick.

He jumps over to her section of the craft.

Fei: You're not gonna eat? Let me see . . . We need something to cook it with.

Elly: . . .

He moves forward and disappears down the hatch as the fish struggles on the deck.

She turns and says down to him –

Elly: Hey, come on, stop it. I'm not to blame if you get sick and die.

Fei: Don't worry. Once it's in your stomach it's all the same.

Elly: I'm not going to . . .Fei! Look, there . . .

Fei jumps out of the opening and asks –

Fei: What!? Did the fish get away? (he looks around) What're you talking about? It's still there . . .What the . . .!? . . .That's . . .!

View tilts up to the gleaming azure sky as the sun glances brightly off a round shape, floating far above. It occludes the sun for a moment, then passes on and the view returns to Fei and Elly.

Fei: That's . . .that thing I saw in the desert. It's flying a lot higher this time.

Elly: It's Shevat . . .That's its usual altitude.

Fei turns to the side and muses –

Fei: Shevat . . .Where have I heard . . .Yeah, that's right . . .That weird masked man! He said my father was in its military . . .So that saucer is what doc and that masked man said was the country my father and mother lived in?

Elly turns to him and says –

Elly: Really? I wouldn't know . . .It's a country outside the reach of Solaris. Shevat uses the same kind of barrier that Solaris does, so you can't reach it by conventional means.

Fei: How can something that flies that high in the sky be a 'country'?

Elly: Yes. I don't blame you for being so surprised. It usually hovers over the region known as the Aquvy islands area. You probably saw it on some sort of special mission. That's why it was flying so low . . .

Fei turns to look up once more and view pans upward as he says –

Fei: Shevat . . .

View stops as it reaches the glowing disk as it floats calmly in a sea of blue above. The view pans down once more and Bart is revealed, standing up on the Yggdrasil's helm outside as he watches.

Bart: . . . Ouch . . .

Then he bows his head and says –

Bart: I guess the Bart Missiles weren't such a good idea, huh . . .We were able to save you and your friends, Citan . . .But I wonder what happened to Fei and Elly . . .

He looks up once more and says –

Bart: I'm sure . . .(pauses) they're alive somewhere . . .And, once again . . .

He turns around and shakes his head –

Bart: Man! The sea breeze stings my eye . . . So this is what they call the sea . . .

There is a pause and then he says –

Bart: First of all, I have to apologize to those two.

He walks off towards the hatch and makes his way down to the bridge. He talks to Sig who says –

Sig: Young master . . .You should apologize to the two of them . . .

He makes his way off the bridge and down the lift to the Gun Room. There, Maison says (fast) –

Maison: Oh, young master . . .! If the young master doesn't come here more often to receive an education fit for a prince, then Old Maison, who is in charge of his upbringing, will disgrace the very memory of King Edbart IV . . .god bless him. Typical of the young master not to even listen to me! The king was peace-loving, a very generous person . . . On the contrary, not only does the young master put his name on a missile, but goes and shoots an unknown airplane with it. To make the matters worse, his good friend Fei and company were onboard it . . .

Maison then pauses and continues at a more normal pace –

Maison: Anyway, one must apologize to Doctor Uzuki and his friend Master Rico, right!? They were on their way toward the Gear Hangar . . .

Bart leaves and makes his way down to the Gear Hangar. He goes over to the shop first and he sees Citan standing there, facing the wall. He goes over to him and Citan says –

Citan: Oh, young one. Did you want to talk to me?

Bart hunches his shoulders slightly and says –

Bart: Um . . .About my shooting down the Goliath . . .
I'm, errh, really, errh . . .

Citan turns around and faces the wall –

Citan: Oh, is that it? I guess it could not be helped . . .But, jumping the gun is your bad habit. A king should always keep calm and judge carefully.

Bart raises his head and says –

Bart: (Maison says the same thing.)

He nods once and says –

Bart: Yeah, I know, I know! By the way,
I have something to ask you . . .

Citan turns to him –

Citan: Oh? That is unusual.

Bart: Well, it's about this warship we're on . . . . . .which is the same type as the Yggdrasil. Years ago, my old man told me it was scrapped because the peace talks with Kislev made progress.
So I knew it existed . . .

Citan: Hmm. Then, what is bothering you?

Bart: The symbol on the ship . . .It's not our Royal Crest!
Look at this.

Bart approaches and shows something to Citan who says –

Citan: This is . . .

Bart: I thought you knew it. Whose crest is it?

Citan: I am not positive but it looks like Shevat's.

Bart: Shevat? What do you mean?

Citan ponders, foot tapping and says –

Citan: The Yggdrasil may not have been made by your father. At that time, much of the potential technology was not understood and hence, was hidden. Maybe your father might have been scared of its power and so sealed it away.

Citan looks up and Bart turns, leaning his chin in his hand, as he looks down and says –

Bart: Hmm, I see. So this may not have been ours from the start.
If so, I wanna meet the guys who made this amazing baby.

Citan turns to the wall and says –

Citan: Actually, they may be closer to you than you suspect . . .

Bart's head snaps up and he turns around, asking –

Bart: Huh? What did you say?

Citan turns and says –

Citan: Anyway, enough worrying . . .But I do think you should apologize to Rico. You may get more than a bruise this time though.

Bart: (hunching his shoulders) Yeah.

He goes around the Hangar to Rico's Gear. Scene cuts to a view of the Gear from behind as Rico confers with the technician. Bart approaches, then stops, saying –

Bart: Y, you know . . .

After a moment –

Bart: Hey?

Rico: . . .

Rico still does not turns around and Bart says –

Bart: Quit the silent treatment! I came here to apologize!

Rico turns and thinks –

Rico: . . .

Rico: What's your problem!? I thought I dealt with you a while ago. I'm not the type to dwell on the past.

Bart: . . .

Rico turns to his Gear and continues –

Rico: I'm more concerned about those two Gears there . . .Who the hell are you? I'm amazed you tune them to run so well! I thought Fei and I were the only ones who could work Gears that well . . .

Bart: Wow you really are the Battling Champ . . .Oops, I mean ex-Champ . . .
I'm amazed how you can tell how good a Gear is just by looking at it.

Rico turns to Bart and says –

Rico: I guess you can't learn all about the world inside a dark prison. Really interesting. I was gonna move on but now I've changed my mind . . . Let me join you, boss.

Bart nods and says –

Bart: I guess it's alright . . .

Scene fades and cuts to an image of the sparkling blue ocean water at might. A voice is heard –

" It . . .seems like we've drifted further off."
Another voice says after a moment –
" . . .Constantly drifting . . .Sounds like me right now."
"What do you mean?"
"I've just been drifting around . . .being lead by circumstances."
"No . . .that's not right. In Aveh, you helped Bart when he needed it. And in Kislev, you gave your all to defend, (pause) to save everyone. You've even shown concern for me many times."
"No . . .I'm just no good."
"Why?"
"Probably deep inside, I'm not really trying to help. Somehow, I get the feeling that all I've done I did is because I wanted to be needed. That if I did something for them . . .then maybe, I'd have a place to belong . . .There's a side of me that comforts itself like that. That doesn't mean I don't want to help. But, that doesn't mean I really want to help either. It might not be 'nothing', but it sure isn't the 'whole' either. I'd been drifting, led around until I met you, Elly. Now, we're stranded out in the ocean. I'm sorry . . .I got you involved."

Elly: It's okay. Don't worry about me. I've been thinking why I'm here. I could've just gone back. But for some reason I didn't . . .Probably because you said it's better to so something than nothing. I think that's why I felt I had to do something. It's OK not to feel 'whole'. Even if you only feel partially complete, if you repeat that enough, eventually it'll be 'whole'. A part . . .is better than zero.

View pulls back so that Elly and Fei are seen as they sit together, looking out to sea.
Fei responds –

Fei: You're right . . .I'm sorry . . .

They are seated together at the corner of the floating remnant and Fei asks –

Fei: If we're saved . . .will you go back?

Elly: I probably won't go back to my squad. Right now, I really don't want to be there . . . Besides, I could probably do something else . . . I don't have to be in the army. So, I'm thinking of going back to my country.

Fei: Is that possible? But what about the army?

Elly: It's not like anyone knows what I did.
They've probably already classified me as MIA.

Fei: Hmm. I hope at least you'll survive.
I'm sure you'll find what you want to do in your life.

There is a silence, then Elly turns to him and says slowly –

Elly: You said . . .something about . . .(pause) being comforted.

Fei: Yes.

Elly: Don't be too hard on yourself. Everyone wants to be needed at times.
All of us want to give something inside ourselves to others to be accepted. . . .
Even me. Remember how you forced yourself to eat those emergency rations?

Scene cuts back to Elly who stands beneath the blazing sun on the deck of the craft and she hears –

"UUUURRRGHH!"

She runs over to the edge and asks –

Elly: Hey . . .are you okay?

View moves to Fei as he leans over the edge –

Elly: I told you not to eat such a gross looking animal.

Fei turns to Elly and says –

Fei: It tastes horrible. The last time I had food this bad was doc's cooking.

Elly: ?

View switches to one overhead as Fei says –

Fei: But unless we do something we're going to die.

Elly: I guess there's no other way. I was hoping to save this a little longer . . .

She approaches Fei and pulls something out of her pocket, handing it to him –

Elly: This should hold us for another day . . .But it's only for emergency calories so I can't promise how good it'll taste.

Fei comes closer, reaches out and takes it from her. He looks down –

Fei: Huh!? What? It's dry and crumbly?

Elly: I thought so . . .You don't like it, do you?

Fei looks up and shakes hi head, saying –

Fei: Wha? N, no . . .It's good. Yeah, ah, it's great. Whatever you'd share with me couldn't be that bad, could it?

Scene fades and returns to the nighttime sea as Fei and Elly sit at the edge. Elly stares out to sea and Fei turns to look at her.

Elly: You forced yourself to eat those rations earlier, didn't you? For me to survive, it would have been better not to share it. But, watching you eat it even though it tasted bad comforted me. I felt glad that I shared it with you . . .It made me feel a little better.

Fei: For your own sake?

Elly: Yes, for my own sake. Selfish, I admit. But, I think it's okay to be that way at first. But little by little you learn about your own happiness . . . And someday you are able to share that important part of you with someone else. Some . . .(pause) day.

View switches to one facing them and she stand up, turning to look out and says –

Elly: Ah . . .

Elly shakes her head, then says –

Fei: What's up?

Elly: . . .Nothing. It just felt as though I've told you the same thing long ago . . . It must be my imagination. I couldn't have said it to you before, because we've only just met, haven't we?

Elly: Yes, it's probably just my imagination . . .

Scene fades and returns to the daylit craft as it floats and Fei jumps up over the ledge and calls out –

Fei: Elly! Hey, Elly! Wake up!

The hatch opens and Elly jumps out, saying –

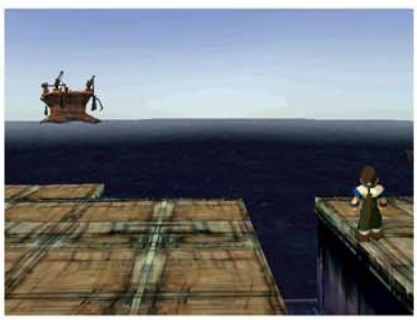
Elly: Good morning, Fei. You're up early.

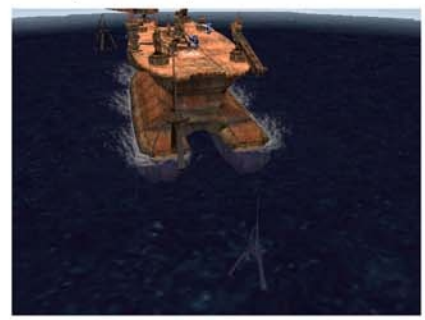
Fei: No time for formalities. Look at that!!

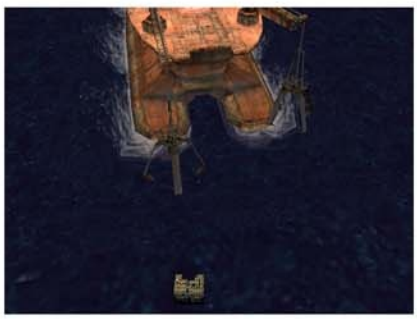
Fei turns to look out at sea and Elly says –

Elly: Huh?

One of the claws descends and picks up their piece of debris, bringing them up as the view switches to one of the side of the massive ship as Fei and Elly watch as they rise.







Scene cuts to a brightly lit section of the stranger vessel's deck as Fei and Elly are addressed by a dolphin –
Dolphin: I was so surprised there are people afloat on the vast sea. On top of that, you were with two Gears. That's unheard of.

Elly strides forward and says –

Elly: Thanks. You helped us out . . .

Dolphin:You better thank the Captain. The one who gave the order for us to pull you two floaters out was the Captain o' the Thames.

Fei: Thames? Captain . . .?

Dolphin: The Thames, the city at sea. That is where you are now. The captain here is a bit of a strange old chap. You'll see when you meet him. That's not to say he's a bad old blighter.

Elly: Um . . .What about our Gears?

Dolphin: Don't worry about it. We put them inside the Thames through the supply dock. Sea water got inside so it'll take some time to fix them.

Fei: You're repairing them for us?

Dolphin: Pretty strange for us to be so nice, I bet that's what you're thinking. But really, we had no choice because it's the Captain's orders . . .(there is a pause, then he says) Well, I have to go now. I'm a busy guy, y'know! Come to the bridge after you've looked around the ship for a while. I'm sure the Captain would want to meet you.

He strides off and Fei turns to watch, after a silence, Elly asks –

Elly: Fei, what's wrong?

Fei: I feel like I've seen that guy somewhere before . . .Never mind.

Fei and Elly make their way around the sun heated corrugated metal surface of the deck, moving from oasis to oasis of shade made by the colorful umbrellas. They talk to a little boy who says –

Lb1: Hey, have you met the Captain yet? He is sooo cool! I wanna grow up to be just like him!

The boy abruptly steps back, flashes to the right, "I am!" then to the left, "A man!" – then . . .He muffs the last part as he says –

Lb1: of the sea . . . . . .Hey wait? Oops.

He looks around in confusion, then jumps, saying –

Lb1: It's over here. I still need more practice.

Lb1: This maneuver requires finesse – and practice!

They move beneath one of the umbrellas and a Battler with pink hair says –

B1: It's so . . .hot.

The other Battler repeat his sentiments and they go over to another of the shade spots and speak to a man.

M1: Hey! If you need something form my store, go talk to my stupid son.

They go beneath the tent and the man says –

M2: Hey, come on in.

They buy a few items and as they depart, they notice the store has some interesting 'decorations'. One appears to be a bell. As they look at it, the irate man outside walks over to them and says –

M1: Hey! You've got your eyes on something good . . .Damn. You know what this is?

He pulls the string and the two halves of the device part and come together with a loud "BONGG!!" He turns to them and says –

M1: . . .is what it is. Pretty cool, huh?

Fei: . . .

M1: Hey, wait a moment. This isn't for sale. Sorry, I can't sell it.

They notice something else, a A propeller? Off to their right and the man says –

M1: Hey! I'm damn sure you'll like this. This is . . .

He presses a switch and a rotor begins spinning. He is pushed back by the thing's wind and he says, "Oh?" and "Ohhh?" as he is pushed further back. Then the blade slows down and he returns , saying –

M1: . . .is what it is. Isn't this just great?

Fei and Elly think, " . . ." and the man says –

M1: Hey, wait a minute. This is not for sale. Sorry, I can't sell it.

Before they leave, they notice one other thing, a box with an orange and blue square set into the side. The man says –

M1: Hey! For being young you have good taste. Damn. This is . . .

The two screens flash and one is certainly reminded of a trend in the 80's . . .He says to them –

M1: . . .is what it is. Isn't it just bad?

Fei thinks, " . . ." and the man repeats his earlier 'no sale' lecture. Then his son rushes forward and says –

M2: Damn!! You dumb old man. All you make is useless crap! Why don't you make something that'll sell!?

M1: (turns to him) Whaddaya saying? Stupid kid!! There ain't no way you could ever understand the soul andromance of a Thames man!

M2: What the? The soul of a Thames man!? If they were all as dumb as you, the Thames'd have gone under long ago!

He walks off and Fei and Elly go about exploring. They find another shop in the shade and the proprietor says –

M3: Hey, welcome. Rare find from the sea bottom on parade.

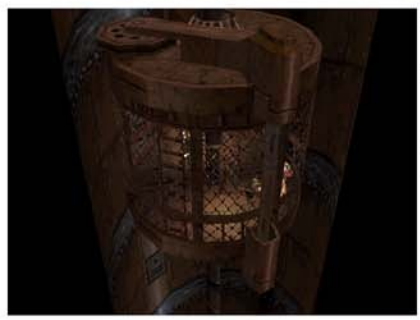
They browse and then climb up the ladder to the roof of the shelter and see two kids. A girl says –

Lg1: My big brother is a real wimp, he's scared of heights . . . Pathetic. Just calm down.

Lb1: My lil' sister pushed me. She always picks on me. I'm so scared.

They climb back down and go over to a group that is dancing on some crates nearby. One man says –
M4: Queenie is so beautiful.
M5: Queenie is so strong.
The two turn to the woman at the highest crate and she says –
Queenie: Wow, you suck. Why don't you come back when you've gotten a little better! You'd better practice somewhere other than Thames. What? You don't know what I'm talking about? Hah! I KNOW you know what I'm talking about!
Nonplussed, they leave and range out over the vessel in the hot sun, looking around and they make their way over to the Supply Entrance. As they enter, they see many people and all are bustling around as crates are loaded and machinery hums. A man near the door says –
M1: This is the supply entrance. This is where all the treasure, armor and other materials are brought up from the sea.
They see a man walking in circles around a steel drum with a fire in it and he says –
M2: This new job the 'Ethos' sent me on is my first BIG job. I'm a little worried whether I'll be able to do it or not. They want me to go down deep and get something unimaginably big. Something awesome's down there.
They go down to the main floor and make their way among the crates, and speak to a little boy who is looking at a large gun which ids leaning against the wall.
Lb1: This gun is totally coool! With this, I can blow away any bad guy! BAM! BLAM! BOOM! Just thinking about it gives me a rush!
They move up a ramp and another boy teaches them a card game for 'men of the sea'. Fei tries the game, but it's tricky and they lose. They move off and find a Gear parts seller. They make a note for the future and see a little boy off to one side. He asks –
Lb2: Hey pal, will you listen to my problem?
Fei: Sure.
Lb2: Until recently, I've always wanted to be a seaman and navigate the Thames! That was my plan . . .But, lookin' at all that treasure and stuff bein' moved around . . . . . .Well, it makes me wanna become a master crane operator so I could control that machine at my will . . .What'ya think I should do?

Fei: Become a crane master.
Lb2: Yeah, you're right . . .a crane master.
Over by a fire is a dark skinned man who says to a fat man with a bottle –
M2: Ya know, a while ago, I found treasure that's thi - - - -s (moves in a wide circle) big.
The dark skinned man says –
DarkM: What're you talkin' about? I found one that's thi - - - - - - - -s big! (running around in a wide arc)
M2: Oh yeah . . .(runs around) I found one that's . . .(disappears, comes back) . . . - - -s . . .pant . . .pant . . .big.
They move to a little boy over by the corner. Below is a little girl with blond hair.
Lb3: They say that girl is crazy about treasure. Someday, I'll become a world renowned treasure hunter and give her all my treasure.
Down the stairs, the little girl says –
Lg1: This supply entrance has 4 treasure boxes. They're in plain view, but can you get them all?
They leave the supply entrance and go back out on the deck, making their way toward the Screw Elevator. The enter its cool interior and find a man lying on the inside, clutching his stomach. He moans –
SM: Oh, I feel sick. Oh please don't spin it don't spin it . . .
They press the controls and to go to the supply entrance and the man says -
SM: Don't spin it!! Uhhh!!



They move out after it has spun and, wound up to the upper level. They look around, then enter once more and chose to go to the beer hall. Entering, they find themselves in a wood-paneled, high ceiling room bustling with activity. Several people sit at tables and kids romp around. One little blond girl says –
Lg1: Men are stupid. They're so happy with that crap.
Over by the huge glass window, a dark skinned man stands looking out to sea. He says –
M1: I've never been on dry land since I was born. Think about it. You have dirt on your feet. How can you do that?
A little boy in a hat over by the taps turns at their approach and says –
Lb1: Nope. I'm not trying to drink.
A large gray haired man stands by one of the tables at the windows. He says –
M2: There's nothin' betta than a drink after work.
The man across from him says –
M3: Hey, hey, I've never seen you workin' around here.
M2: Huh? Well, don't worry about the details too much.
They talk to the man across from him at the table who has a bottle.
M3: Awww man! I'd die for this glass of booze.
M2: Hey, how many times do you plan on dying?
M3: No kidding.

They move over to an old man with long hair who stand near a table and sasy –
Om1: I am (pauses_ the maste ~ r the best (pause) maste ~ r thames maste ~ r.
A guy with a bottle slurs –
Drunk: Hey, I'm nosh drunk.
Over at the center table, 3 people sit. One with dark skin says –
M4: Hey, do something about this old drunk.
Another guy across form him says –
M5: Kids these days are such wimpy drinkers.
The old man nearby, drunk with a bottle, says –
M5: Hey, are yush lishenin' t' me . . .!

They notice a little boy up on the drinking tap and they climb up the ladder to talk to him –
Lb1: Hey man, I've got a good cure for drinking too much.

He gives them a mentsol and they go back down and enter a door off to the right.. They find themselves in a smaller room, the windows open to let the sea breeze play with the white curtains. It appears to be a place of rest, whole areas partitioned off and a bed visible over in the corner. They speak to the man –

Doctor: What, are you injured?

Fei: No.

Doctor: Then you have no business here. Out, get out! Jeez, only drunks and bullies come here . . .

They see a man sitting on a bed near a window and talk to him. Nearby, a little girl looks out at the sea.

M1: When I'm drunk, I don't get any further than this bed.

Lg1: The wind . . .is calling my name . . .Sigh . . .

They go back out into the Beer Hall and go across to a door to the left of the elevator. Entering, they find themselves on the bridge and several people are hard at work. Off to their left, two large windows provide an excellent view of the sea.

They move over to the red coated man who smokes a pipe near the telescope and he says –

Captain: You're the two winos who floated in with the Gears.

Fei: (after a pause) I don't really like wandering around . . .

The Captain turns his back for a moment, laughing heartily and faces them once more and says –

Captain: Gahahahahaha. Well, don't take it so badly. For us, anything we pull out of the sea is treasure. And you're a really big important treasure, We were really careful.

Elly moves and says –

Elly: Um . . .Thanks for helping.

Captian: (turns to her) What a pretty lady. Oh, don't make that face. I won't bite. I'll return your Gears to you squeaky clean.

Elly: Why are you being so kind?

Captain: That's because . . .

He pauses and whirls to the left, arms outspread and says –

"I am!"

Whirls to the right –

"a man!"

Over to the side . . .!

"of the sea!"

They think, " . . ."

Captain: Gahahahaha . . .(turns to them)
You're probably starved. I'll get you some food.

He looks over their shoulders, shouting –

Captain: Haaaaaaaaaaaans! I'll welcome the guests! You take care of he rest.

Hans turns to face them and says with an air of long suffering –

Hans: Yessir. Just don't overdo it.

Captain: Of course I know that. How can you be so calm?

Hans: The captain and everyone are so irresponsible.

As Hans turns back to his post, the Captain mutters –

Captain: Hmph, yeah yeah.

The Captain turns and goes down the steps towards the exit, then stops and faces Fei and Elly, saying –

Captain: Lemme go and get things ready.

He walks off and Fei and Elly turns to watch him go. Fei asks –

Fei: What? Who's that?

Elly: They don't look like . . .such bad people.

They go over to Hans near the bay of windows at his post and he says –

Hans: Let me introduce myself. I'm Hans, the ship's first mate.

Nearby is a lone drunk with a bottle and he says –

M1: Huh? Isn't this a beer hall?

Nearby, a light haired man looks out the window at the sea. He points at a series of pipes rising from the floor.

M2: you can talk to other areas aboard the Thames through that intercom

They turns to a bird-like demihuman who says -

BD: I remember seein' a high tower a long time ago. It was called Babel Tower. Even I can't see the top of it, and my eyes are good! They say the Reapers called Wels come from there.

The old man next to him says –

Om1: I've held on to this seat for 30 years. I'm not losing it to some young upstart.

They go back out into the Beer Hall and pause to look out the large windows at the Gears as they work on the deck below. They see the Captain over at one of the tables and speak to him –

Captain: Took you a while, but things aren't ready yet.

He shifts forward and calls out –

Captain: Hey, hurry it up! Don't make our guests wait.

He turns back to them and says –

Captain: Sorry. There's no place to sit around here.

Then he turns to look out at the sea and says –

Captain: But, isn't the view just splendid from here? This beer hall is Thames' pride. You probably think it's a wee bit peculiar having a beer hall right next to the bridge, but tis fine by me. If you don't take time in life to enjoy a drink, you will be swallowed by the waves of anxiety . . . . . .But we don't have that problem. Thanks to this beer hall, everyone here is too sloshed to worry!

Fei turns to look out at the hall and says –

Fei: Are you always wandering the seas like this?

Captain turns to Fei and says –

Captain: Well, normally. There is that crane that fished you out. We use that or the Gears to pull up treasure from the sea. We're Salvagers. Recently however, there has been almost no treasure . . . just little things. Since we've started the big job, well, that's all we've found.

Elly: Big job?

Captain turns to her and says –

Captain: Oh, that's a job for the 'Ethos'. The 'Ethos' is planning a really big salvage next. I don't know the details but, looks like we'll be searching for some buried treasure.

: Why is the 'Ethos' involved . . .?

The Captain turns to look out at the sea once more and says –

Captain: Who knows . . .But, we're dependent on the 'Ethos' to buy our stuff. So, it won't look good if we turn the job down.

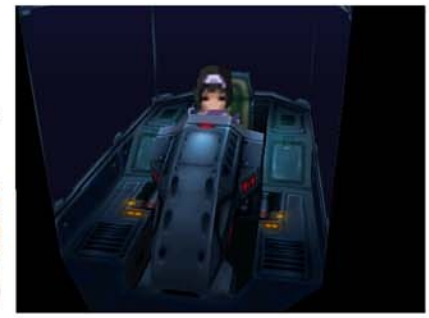
Captain turns to look over at the door –

Captain: Well, dinner's finally ready. Let's eat.

Scene fades and cuts to the interior of a Gear, blue on all sides and the young woman seated at the console, her hair dark blue. She speaks –

Woman: We've got sonar. . . . . .

Woman: That's not it. This type . . . It matches with the Aveh pirate ship, Yggdrasil.



Scene cuts to the view of a red and white colored Gear, shaped like a fish of some sort as it hovers beneath the waves. The view pans to the left where Dominia sits at another console and says –

Dominia: Yggdrasil? Wasn't she sunk in another battle?

View goes back to the right –

Woman: There's no record of its sinking. We were too busy fighting that red Gear to try to confirm it.

View fades to Dominia as she says –

Dominia: Then, there is a chance that it did not sink . . . I believe the data shows the Yggdrasil was the carrier for that Gear.

View fades to the other woman as she says –

Woman: One moment . . . . . .Yes, that is correct.

Dominia: Excellent. Give me the controls.

View shifts back to the woman who says –

Woman: Excellent? What are you planning on doing?

Dominia: Sink it, of course. She will never trouble the Commander again.

Woman: Wait. The Commander's orders were to investigate the disappearance of that flying battleship. We can't deviate from our mission. Besides, we are low on fuel andneed to refuel.

Dominia: We have enough. I'll take her down.

Woman: . . .Groan . . .Once you start, there is no stopping you is there? I hope you know that fighting in water is totally different than fighting on land. (fades to Dominia)

Dominia: Of course. Sorry, Kelvena.

Scene cuts to the large Gear as it swims in slow gliding movements through the deep blue water, its long tail waving.

Scene cuts to the beer hall once more where Fei and Elly sit with the Captain at a table near one of the huge windows. Elly says –

Elly: I know you haven't eaten for a while
but how can you eat so much?

Captain: Gah ha ha ha ha . . .This is great, this is great.
I like how you eat. You weren't drifting around for nuthin' . . .

He adopts the 'stance' once more and whirls to the right with a flare –
"Men have!" To the right – "Courage!" To the center! "and have Appetites!"
Fei and Elly both think, " . . ." as the Captain shakes with laughter –

Captain: Gah ha hah . . .

There is a slight movement of the deck beneath their feet, Elly asks –

Elly: ? Did we just shake?

The Captain turns back around and Fei says –

Fei: You're just imagining it.

There is a pause, then a vibration comes again, slightly longer than the last –

Elly: I don't think so!

A man appears from the right –

C1: Captain, your first mate is calling you.

Captain turns to him and says –

Captain: Got it. I'm on the way.

He looks from Fei to Elly as the man goes back to the bridge. He says –

Captain: Looks like something's up. Sorry, but I have to return to the bridge.
(turns to Fei) But please, enjoy yourselves.

View swings around as Fei turns to look out the window and a larger shaking occurs.
He moves towards the window and asks –

Fei: Elly, is that a water spout?

Elly turns to look out and says –

Elly: It's too far, I can't see very well. But it looks like . . .a battle!

There is another rumble and Fei turns to her and says –

Fei: Let's go to the bridge too.

Elly: (turns to him) Okay.

They go to the door leading to the bridge and scene cuts to the weathered metal of the hull framing the windows through which the Captain looks as he exclaims –

Captain: They've got guts starting a fight
next to the Thames! It gets my blood boiling!

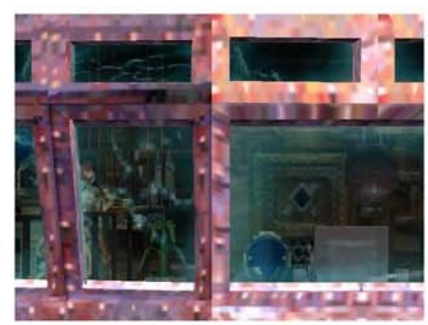
He turns to Hans and he says –

Captain: Hey Hans, I haven't fired
the big gun in a long time.

As the vibration comes again, he continues –

Captain: How about we take a shot or two?

Hans: Are you kidding? Why get the Thames involved in a fight between sides who are neither enemies nor allies? And that big gun is nothing but a useless piece of junk you tacked on to the Thames in a drunken stupor!



Scene cuts to the interior of the bridge, where the Captain stands by his telescope and says –

Captain: You just don't understand the code of the men of the sea . . .

As the deck shakes again, Fei and Elly go over to the Captain
and Fei asks –

Fei: What are you doing?

Captain turns to him and says –

Captain: It seems like a submarine is under attack.

Fei: Submarine?

The Captain moves out of the way and Fei goes over to the telescope to look for himself.

The view fades and returns to one of a vessel in the sea as the view moves closer. As it slowly becomes more clear, eruptions on either side of it in the water, a symbol is visible on the nose. The entire scene shakes once more and he says –

Fei: Hey, that's . . .

Scene cuts back to the Thames' bridge as Fei says to himself –

Fei: ! That ship!

Elly: (turns to him) What? What's wrong?

Fei: That's the Yggdrasil!

Elly: Isn't that Bart's ship?

Fei turns to her and says –

Fei: Yeah! He's still alive. Alright! We can't just sit here! Let's go!

Fei begins to rush towards the exit and Elly turns to him, asking –

Elly: Go where?

Fei: (turns to her) To help, what else?

Elly: Without a Gear?

Fei: Hmm . . .

The Captain calls over to them –

Captain: Hold yer horses.

He walks over to the intercom –

Captian: Deck, this is the bridge! How are our guests' Gears?

The response crackles through –

"The repairs will be done shortly."

Captain: Two minutes.

"Huh?"

Captain: Finish in two minutes! Then take them out through the supply entrance to the deck!

"Y, yessir!"

The Captain turns to them and says –

Captain: Your Gears are being moved to the deck. Go get 'em. If you need to you can buy equipment at the supply entrance shop.

From the side, Hans approaches and asks –

Hans: What are you saying Captain? What if we get bombed while we're caught up in the middle of a fight?

The Captain turns to him and says –

Captain: Be quiet!! Our guests are fighting to save their friends. Don't get in the way! If we don't help, it'll tarnish the men of the sea's good name!!

Hans: . . . . .Yessir. But the Thames itself will not join in any fights.

Hans turns back to the helm and Fei says –

Fei: Thanks. That's more than enough.

He and Elly move onto the elevator, taking it down to the supply deck.

Scene cuts to the deck as Fei and Elly move over to their waiting Gears. They mount and make their way over to the edge. Fei says –

'ei: Okay . . .Let's go.

He blasts off and Elly says –

Elly: W – wait . . .

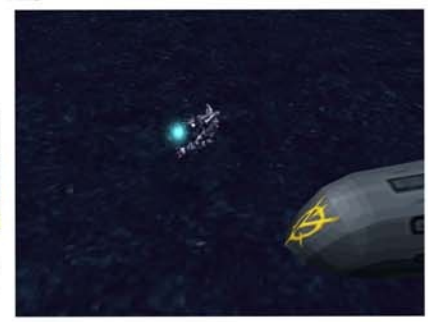
And -

Rico: Oh come on, Citan. Just when I thought we were saved, now we're gonna be turned into Swiss cheese.

Citan: We are not, (pause) particularly liked here, are we?

Then he turns –

Citan: !



View pulls to the left as Fei and Elly fly in from the side and land on the Yggdrasil's hull. They approach the two –

Citan: Fei! Elly! You are all right.

Elly: Somehow.

Rico: This is no time for tearful reunions.

Fei: Yeah . . .Where's Bart?

Citan: He is fighting below. He said he was going to hold them back until the depth charges were ready. But he left without the proper hydropreps . . .We are busy trying to ready the depth charges. Your Gears should be able to handle underwater warfare to some extent. Go help him out.

Fei: Got it. Elly, let's go.

Fei moves over to the side and jumps into the water, Elly following. Scene cuts to an underwater battle in the dark blue ocean waters between Haishao and Bart. He faces the large Gear and says –

Bart: Dammit! I can barely maneuver and you're movin' all over the place . . .

He is joined by Fei who comes to his left and Elly who goes to his right. Fei says –

Fei: Looks like you're having a tough fight, Bart.

Bart: Fei!? You're alive!?

Fei: Hey, that's my line.

View shifts to the right as Elly turns to the Gear. Cuts to the inside of her cockpit, facing the enemy as she asks –

Elly: What about that Gear?

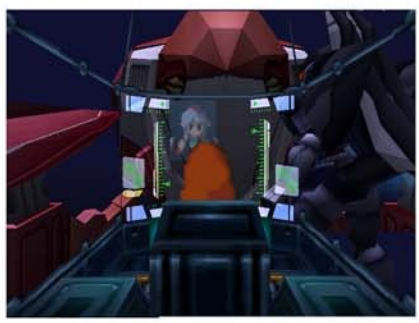
View cuts to a forward image as the Haishao draws closer and it rams into Elly's Gear. After a moment, Dominia's face appears on the forward viewscreen and she says –

Dominia: Elhaym! What are you doing here?

Elly: Dominia!? Why are you here?

Dominia: Why? We Gebler need no special reasons to sink an enemy ship! It is our divine duty to rule those crass land dwelling Lambs.

Elly: But why? How are they different form us Shepherds, the –Abel-?



Dominia: To me –Lambs- and –Abel- are the same. The only definite difference is personal ability. The ignorant must be led by the wise. That is our job. Look what you've gained as an Element, Elly. Why do you even question? Your superiority is obvious!

Elly: . . .So the wise harming the weak is a sign of ability? I didn't want that . . . (pauses) That's all!

Fei arrives off to the right and faces Haishao as he calls over –

Fei: Elly, are you alright?

View cuts to the interior of Dominia's cockpit as she says –

Dominia: That Gear, you're the one? Hah! So that's how it is. How amusing, Elhaym. All this for a man? I guess that story was true after all. You were born of those lowly Lambs.

Elly's voice comes over the 'comm –

Elly: Stop! Don't say another word!

Dominia: Hmph, what are you going to do about it, mongrel!? Are you going to use the power you used in that incident on me now? Go ahead. Show me. Show me your true power!

Elly: . . .I will. If you Gebler are wise . . .then (pause) I'd rather be a fool!!

Dominia: Then so be it. Then you shall be dealt with as the traitor you are.

Battle begins! –View cuts to the waving tail of the Haishao as Dominia calls over –

Dominia: Come on, Elhaym! (pauses) Show me your true self!!

Dominia hits them with a powerful water attack. After a few rounds, they hear Sig's voice call over –

Sig: Young master! Depth charges will be dropped! Please stand back!

Dominia: Hmph! That was nothing. Come on, come on!

Then another voice, Kelvena's says –

Kelvena: Enough already! Dominia! Retreat!

Dominia: Tch! I was so close. But . . .don't think I'll be leaving empty handed, now!

Haishao glides towards Vierge and Elly says –

Elly: Wh, what!?

The Gear lands in a heavy blow to Vierge and Elly screams –

Elly: Aaaaaahhh!

The Haishao swoops her up and rises to the surface and view tilts to Bart and Fei as they watch.

Fei: Elly!?

Scene fades.

Elly's Return

Scene cuts to an overhead view of the Yggdrasil once more, as Bart and Fei rise from the water and land next to them. Citan looks from one to the other –

Citan: Fei, where is Elly?

Fei: The enemy . . .(pause) took her.

Bart turns to look out over the water and says –

Bart: Heh, I doubt that . . .

Fei goes towards Bart, stops and asks –

Fei: Bart, what do you mean!?

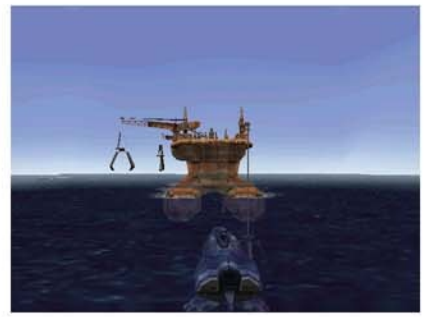
Citan: Stop it!! Fei! This is no time for bickering.
For now, we must find a place to finish repairing the Yggdrasil.

Fei: (turns to Citan) . . . . . .Don't worry. The ship that saved us is nearby. They call it the Thames, and it's about the size of a small city. Their Captain can help us.

Rico turns to look out over the sea and asks –

Rico: That's . . . . .the Thames . . .?

View tilts to the left as scene fades and returns to the Thames, cranes delving as the Yggdrasil approaches it beneath the waves.



Scene cuts to the inner landing bay as the Yggdrasil rises up to the dock, lights flashing and windows ablaze with light. After it is locked into place, the hatch opens and Fei, Citan and Bart step out and look around. Bart turns to Fei and says –

Bart: Sorry about what I said earlier . . .

Fei turns to him and shakes his head, says –

Fei: It's alright. I was at fault too. I haven't seen you in such a long time. We shouldn't be fighting.

Bart turns and shakes his head, slowly –

Bart: Sigh . . .(then turns to Fei) The Yggdrasil II was constructed so quickly we had no time to ready its depth charges. Also it was my fault we didn't have depth charges because I prioritized the Bart Missiles over . . . . . .everything else.

Fei: Bart Missiles?

Bart turns away and fumbles out –

Bart: Oh uh . . .um, well, they're not that great anyway.

Fei: ? Anyway, I'm glad you're okay. I always knew that you'd be alive.

Bart turns to him and flexes his arm –

Bart: Of course. I'm Bart the immortal. Whaddaya trying to say . . .? But this time I got reamed by a red Gear monster.

Fei: A red Gear . . .

Bart turns and crosses his arms, then turns back and says -

Bart: Yeah. He beat me and then left us to sink in the sand. But this next part sounds wild. We sank into this huge cave under the sand! And then a sand cruiser just like the Yggdrasil was there! We replaced the useable parts and the bridge and remodeled it.

Citan turns to them and says –

Citan: Frankly, I do not believe it myself. It looks the same but it can float. Most likely it is the Yggdrasil's prototype.

Bart: People lived there long ago and they had many weapons. That's how we got them.

Citan: Bart already showed me. Those weapons are most likely . . . from Shevat.

Fei: Shevat . . . . . .you mean the aerial . . .

Bart turns to Fei and says –

Bart: More importantly, we should go say 'ahoy' to the captain.

Fei: . . .Yeah.

They leave and climb back up the hatch, making their way across the creaking metal dock to the screw elevator. As they go up to the bridge, they speak. Bart says –

Bart: I . . .didn't want to get her involved.

Fei: You mean Margie . . .Sorry, I know I promised . . . that if anything happened, I would protect Margie and the people of Nisan.

Bart: You're worried about that? It's okay, you've had it tough too. I made it okay. That's my job. When the Ygg's fixed, I'm going on straight ahead . . .

Scene fades and returns to a view of the elevator from above as it slowly rises. Bart continues –

Bart: Of course I know Nisan's in danger. But since everything's messed up there, I thought now would be a good time to sneak in there. I didn't plan on taking her along. As long as I knew she was safe there.

Citan: But I certainly doubt Shakhan will just stand by and do nothing . . .

Bart: That's what the people from her Sect said too. But it's still risky, so they say they want me to stay close to her and protect her.

Fei: Really . . .And you're okay with that?

Bart: . . .(pause) Yeah.

Scene cuts to the bridge as they emerge from the lift and the Captain turns to them –

Captain: I see you've brought along another strapping young lad.

Bart walks forward –

Bart: I'm Bart. Thanks for letting my ship dock here.

Captain turns and laughs, saying –

Captain: Gahhahahahaha. That's great. Ya come to ask about the ship?

He turns back around as Bart responds –

Bart: My submarine, Yggdrasil, was damaged by an enemy attack . . .
It'll be out of operation for a little while . . .

The lift door opens and Citan and Fei turn around as Margie strides through. She says –

Margie: Bart! You're terrible. You went on without me!

Bart turns to her and says –

Bart: Aw Margie? Just when I'm starting to sound like a captain.

Margie: I get away from Nisan but then I'm stuck on the Yggdrasil.
I'm sick of it. Captain? Hi, I'm Marguerite.

Bart: Awww man! Look, we're having a man to man talk here.
So Margie, why don't you go back to the Yggdrasil?

Margie bounces up and down on her toes and says –

Margie: You're terrible! You're starting to sound like Sig.

Bart: What! Me, like Sig?

Margie: You're always so thoughtless, Bart. Fei and the
others were floating around because you fired on that
craft impulsively.

Bart: Whoa, st, stupid, you're not supposed to . . .

Fei turns to Bart –

Fei: Bart . . .?
You . . .didn't . . .No . . .you didn't . . .

Citan: It is true, Fei.

Bart turns to Fei and says –

Bart: Couldn't be helped. How could I have known you were . . .

Fei turns and bows his head –

Fei: I'm so disgusted, I don't have anything to say . . .

Bart: Don't get so mad.

Bart turns to face the Captain and bows his head, clapping his hand to his forehead –

Bart: Tch. I shouldn't have brought you out of Nisan.

Margie bounces once more and says –

Margie: I heard that, you big jerk!

Captain laughs and says –

Captain: Gahahahaha. Great, great. It's great to be young.

As Bart looks up he asks –

Captain: Hey, kiddo. You supposed to be some kinda pirate?

Bart begins to speak, waving his arm –

Bart: Oh yeah. A man of the sea! I was a man of the desert but . . .

Captain: Alright!! Even better. Yes, man of the sea!
Bart, right? I'll show you to our famous beer hall.

Captain goes to the door and Bart follows. Then the Captain pauses and turns to Margie –

Captain: My lady, may I borrow this fellow?

After they leave, Margie says –

Margie: What a weird guy. (turns to Fei)
Fei, are you mad about Bart?

Fei: (turns to her) No that's not it . . .

Margie: . . . . . .About Elly then?

Fei: . . . . . .Yeah.

Margie: It'll all be okay. If you're so worried, why don't
you go rescue her? (she turns to the door where Bart had gone)
Just like . . .Bart helped me out.

Fei: . . . . .

Scene fades and cuts to a cloudless blue sky as the Gebler aerial battleship flies on by. Then cuts to an interior hallway where Dominia and Elly face each other. The sharp sound of a slap is heard andElly goes sprawling.

Dominia: Cease your naïve utterances!

Elly looks up at her form the floor and says –

Elly: I've said nothing wrong!

View switches to one facing Dominia as she draws her sword and says –

Dominia: I have no intention of discussing this matter further with you!
Your traitorous actions are already apparent! I will beat you down right here!!

A door swishes open and a voice is heard –

"Stop it at once."

Dominia turns as Miang walks forward and she approaches Elly, kneeling down to her –

Miang: Are you okay?

As she help Elly to stand, Dominia says –

Dominia: Miang! What are you doing!? She is a traitor!

Miang turns to Dominia and says –

Miang: Such actions will not be allowed on a ship under Ramsus' command . . .No matter the reason! I have examined the records of the battle between the Haishao and Vierge . . . From what I can tell, it was you who attacked first, wasn't it? She had no choice but to defend herself after you took it upon yourself to attack without permission. Above all, you were meant to be under Kelvena's command. Were you obeying Kelvena's orders?

Dominia: . . .

Miang: You are not to prosecute any soldier for treason without proper authority. Even if you both are Elements. Further . . .Isn't your attitude towards the lieutenant, nothing more than your own personal prejudice . . . Or am I mistaken?

Dominia steps towards Miang and says –

Dominia: What!? I would never . . .

Miang: Thus far, we still cannot determine whether or not she is guilty of treason. To investigate the truth of this matter further, I am placing the lieutenant under my supervision. Is that clear?

Dominia: How dare you! By what authority!?

Dominia steps forward and a shimmering light flashes for a brief second, with a resonant hum and Dominia steps back, then again.
Miang turns to Elly and says –

Miang: Let's go.

Miang walks off to the right as Dominia stands. Elly starts to follow, pauses, then hurries after Miang as Dominia remains fixed. After they have gone, Dominia turns to the right where they had gone, slowly shaking her head and says –

Dominia: . . .(pause) Wha . . .what was that? (pauses) Those eyes . . .

Scene fades and cuts to a small room where Miang faces Elly who sits on a small pedestal. She says –

Miang: . . .I see. So that's what was going on.

Elly: . . .

Miang: Since I have other matters to attend to, would you mind staying here for awhile?

Elly: Not at all.

Miang: You don't have to worry about a thing. Leave the rest to me. What you need is to recover from your fatigue.

Miang steps closer, and once more, there is a shimmering flash of light with the soft hum. She steps back and turns around, saying –

Miang: Crystalline, blue . . .like the surface of a lake . . .

Elly: Uh . . .excuse me?

Miang turns to her and says –

Miang: Your eyes . . .They're beautiful.

Elly: What?

Miang turns and steps away, pauses, then exits and scene cuts to the bridge where Miang approaches Ramsus at the helm. He turns to her and she says –

Miang: Here is the engagement report between Haishao and the enemy Gear.

Ramsus: !! This is the . . .

Miang: I am sure of it. It's currently at Thames. If not, somewhere in the ocean nearby.

There is a pause, then Ramsus turns forward and says –

Ramsus: Change course! Head for Thames . . .

Miang: Wait. Their mother ship Yggdrasil seems to be able to submerge. If they submerge, they'll have the upper hand on Haishao. Any attack we might make would just be wasted since they could simply dive. But if we eliminate that function first, it's still not too late. I've already made the proper 'arrangements'.

Ramsus: Arrangements?

Miang: Yes, sir.

Ramsus: All right.
We'll try it your way.

Miang: Thank you, Commander.

There is a moment of silence, then –

Ramsus: By the way . . .What happened between you and Dominia?
She was livid.

Miang: I'm sorry. It had to do with that Yggdrasil incident earlier. Those girls work hard. Especially for you . . . It's my job to be hated.

Scene fades and cuts to the rear of the vessel as a Gear blasts away – It's Vierge! Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as Sig says to Fei –

Sig: Fei, the young master hasn't come back yet. What's he up to? Would it be too much to ask for you to go and call him for me?

Fei: No problem! He's probably wining and dining with the Captain of the Thames!

Fei leaves the bridge, climbs up and put of the Yggdrasil and goes up the swinging deck to the lift, which he takes up to the bridge. Finding that the Captain is not there, he makes an educated guess and goes into the beer hall next door. He sees Bart over by the table at the windows as he tells the Captain a story, gesturing to illustrate –

Bart: They came out . . .

Fei walks over to join them –

Bart: one after another . . . (crouches) slam, bam, crash . . . that's how it happened . . .

Fei speaks up as Bart raises his arms to continue his yarn –

Fei: Hey Bart, Sigurd was asking about you . . .

Captain: Gahahahaha. Of course, if you're not strong, you can't be a man of the sea.

Bart turns to the Captain and says –

Bart: Yeah, check this arm out . . .

Bart flexes his arm and both he and the Captain whirl to the left, saying –

"Proof!"
To the right! "Of the men!"
Again with finesse!
"Of the sea!!"

View slowly pans down as Fei watches, thinking, " . . ." and both Bart and Captain –

Captain: Gahahahaha.

Bart: Wah ha ha ha.

Bart laughs, arms crossed for a while, as one of the Captain's men comes over –

C1: Captain your first mate is calling you.

Both Captain and Bart turn and Captain says –

Captain: Oi, he's interrupting our men of the sea story.
That Hans, he's such an unrefined chap. What does he want now?

C1: Our Lady seems to have returned . . .

Fei turns around and says –

Fei: Our Lady . . .(pauses) Oh, you mean Elly!

Captain: Fool! Why didn't you tell me earlier.

C1: Well . . .

Fei: Well, let's go.

They all follow the crewman back to the bridge and scene shifts to the beer hall door as it opens, Fei, Bart and Captain coming through. The Captain goes up to his dais and Fei turns to Hans –

Fei: Where's Elly?

Hans: (turns to him) She's seeing to the Gear. She will be along any time now.

Bart: You mean . . .she was able to escape?

Captain turns to Fei and says –

Captain: Well it's good for you. Right, Fei?

Fei turns to Captain and says –

Fei: Ah, yeah.

The lift door opens and view swings around to face Elly as she steps through. All turns to her and Fei asks –

Fei: Elly, are you okay?

Elly: . . .Yeah.

Bart: . . .

Elly: What's that submarine?

Fei: Oh, you mean the Yggdrasil? It took a bad beating, so now it's here, at Thames, for repairs.

Elly: I see . . .Can I rest for a while? . . .I'm exhausted.

Fei: That's a good idea.

Bart turns to him and says –

Bart: Fei, it's my ship.

Captain turns to Bart and says –

Captain: Oi, oi. she said she's tired. Let her rest.

Elly: Well, I'm going.

She turns and exits and Bart crosses his arms, bowing his head as he says –

Bart: . . .I don't like this.

Fei: (turns to him) Bart you're still . . .

Bart drops his arms and shakes his head, saying –

Bart: It's not like that. She won't backstab us. I was raised around thugs and charlatans. I can tell just by looking in her eyes.

Fei: Then you accept Elly . . .

Bart shakes his head, saying –

Bart: That's why I can't. She may be okay with it. But what about her family back home? Do you think she can live with that? Can she do that? Just get rid of her family? She has to decide. She . . .Elly is probably worrying about that. We can't involve people who have attachments.

Fei: Bart . . .

Bart turns his back to Fei and says –

Bart: Hmph, well do whatever you want.

He joins Fei and they speak to the Captain –

Captain: Everything's okay. The lady came back unharmed.

He and Bart make their way back to the lift, down to the dock and back to the Yggdrasil. On the bridge, Sig asks –

Sig: Young master, where did you go while we were so busy . . .?
An international goodwill visit with the Thames?
Well, whatever . . . Now about those supplies for the submarine . . .

There is a pause, then Bart says –

Bart: Oh, that? Let me see . . .order an additional 16 torpedoes!

Sig: Yes, sir.

Bart and Fei make their way to the lift and down to the bunk room. Entering, they speak to a man near the door.

M1: Elly is resting in the medical room across from here. I bet she can't sleep in a shabby place like this.

Nearby, one of the pirates says –

P1: Elly was acting strangely. Did she have a fight . . .? Being young is great. I used to be like that when I was your age.

They leave and go down the hall to Margie's room. They speak to J'ora –

J'ora: This place isn't chu familiar. But it doesn't matter because I didn't know muchu about Aveh in the first place chu.

Margie: I was the only one who escaped Shakhan's grip by fleeing Nisan with Bart . . . I wonder if the sisters are all right . . .The young master will help them too, won't he?

She turns to the wall an says –

Margie: Even though it was the sect's wish, it still left a bitter feeling . . .

Then go back down the hall to sickbay. They see that Elly is gone.

Doctor: Elly was lying down till a moment ago . . . (she looks around)
Now that you mention it, I wonder where she went.

They speak to the sick man nearby.

Sick man: There was (pause) something wrong with Elly.

They leave and go down to the Gun Room. Entering, they see two soldiers at one of the tables and the first says –

S1: Phew! I no longer have to listen to the roars of the old man any more.

S2: The engine's restoration is finally finished. Why don't you go down the stairs to take a look at our beautiful engine.

They go over to the bar to Maison, who says –

Maison: Y . . .young master! I heard all about it. International amity with the Thames!? Indeed . . . (turns to wall)
(. . .Sob . . .sob . . .This old man's efforts weren't all wasted!)

They go down the stairs to Rico's room and he says –

Rico: That girl had (pause) the eyes of a prisoner.

They leave and go down the hall to the engine room.

Scene cuts to the engine room as Elly walks around the perimeter of the machinery. The dull thrum of the engines in the background, no one notices she is there except for the dog, who barks and the Chief Engineer above looks down and says –

CE: Whaaaat's up? Martle? Eh? (pauses) Huh?

He sees Elly down below.

CE: Hey, Miss. I heard you got caught. Are you okay?

The dog barks again and he says –

CE: Easy, Martle! It's just the Solarian girl. You don't need to bark!

Elly turns to him and says –

Elly: It's just an animal, so it can't help it.
By the way, the first mate wants to see you.

CE: (turns) . . .Oh? Oh, I see. Sorry.

He turns and walks off and Elly makes her way back around to the controls. Suddenly, a hissing sound is heard as one by one, the components around the edge begin to send out plumes of steam, their tops erupting with a red glow.

All around the engine room, the devices overheat and view switches to one from behind Elly where Fei and Bart stand. Fei shouts –

Fei: Elly!!

View pulls in to Elly at the controls and she slowly turns at the sound of his voice and says –

Elly: . . .(pause) Fei . . .?

Then she sinks to the floor as the engine's noise increases, the entire room shaking as it intensifies. View switches as Fei rushes to her and kneels down beside her, saying –

Fei: Elly!!

The dull rumble of the engines is joined by ear wrenching groans as the laboring engine starts to overheat, small explosions sending out a red glow.

Bart comes down the steps and approaches them and stops. Then he says –

Bart: I knew it all along . . .This moll's a mole!

He walks over to the control panel stares at it for a moment, the entire room shaking, then he crosses his arms and bows his head.

Bart: Damn it! What the hell did she do!? What am I gonna do!!

He looks up and shakes his head as Citan comes down the steps and approaches the controls. He ponders for a moment, and Fei turns to him, asking –

Fei: Doc! What is this . . .

Without turning from the controls, Citan says –

Citan: Wait! Do not worry about her. Stopping this is our priority.

There is a pause as the room shakes some more, then Citan reaches out and toggles a switch.

Citan: There . . .How is this . . .

View switches to one of the entire room as the bright red engine parts glow and crackle with heat, the rumbling intense. After a moment, it subsides and the red fades from the machine as the tops sink back into their components. Then, all is silent, except for a dull hissing somewhere in the background. View switches back to one of the side as Citan kneels down to Elly. Fei talks to him.

Citan: . . .She was given some strong hypnosis.

Fei: Hypnosis . . .?

Citan: It is a special hypnotism that makes a person behave in a pre-programmed way. A special condition serves as a switch to act . . .but until then no strange behavior can be detected. She looked strange when coming out of the medical room, so I followed her.

Bart: . . .Citan, if you thought it was suspicious, you should've stopped her.

Citan: Well, if you forcibly stop the behavior while imprinting, occasionally it destroys the mind . . .
But it is true that I reacted a little late . . .

He turns back to the controls and Fei goes over to Elly. The Chief Engineer comes down the stairs and looks around, saying –

CE: Wha, what's going on? Young master, have you done it again?

Citan: It may take a while to fix it . . .

Fei speaks to Bart, who turns to the side to the controls and says –

Bart: It broke again just after getting restored.
What am I gonna do . . .

He goes back over to Citan who kneels down beside Elly once more and says –

Citan: Anhow, we will take her to the medical room first. Fei, go to the room when you are done here. No need to worry. The hypnotist must have been a good one. There are no mental scars.

Scene fades and cuts to the Gun Room as Bart and Fei go up the stairs. They speak to Maison who says –

Maison: Miss Elly . . .What kind of spell was used on her?

They go down to sickbay and see Elly sitting at the edge of the bed. They speak to Citan –

Citan: She was able to get up just now.

They both speak to Elly who says –

Elly: I, I . . .How in the world did I get here?

There is a pause, then Fei says –

Fei: Elly . . .

The view rotates to face Sig as he comes in and says –

Sig: Young master, the radar has picked up a huge Gear!
It's headed right for us!

Bart: What!? Them again!?

Sig: That shape looks like . . .!

Bart: Alright! I owe so much to the Thames. I can't let it turn into a battlefield. Launch the Yggdrasil immediately! We'll go out in our Gears!

Sig: Yes, sir!!

Sig turns and leaves and Bart faces Fei and Citan –

Bart: Fei, Citan, I'm counting on you!

Suddenly, Elly says –

Elly: Wait!!

They all turns to her and Citan says –

Citan: Elly should rest here. We will . . .

She gets up and faces him, shaking her head –

Elly: Wait!! Because I came here this all happened . . .This is my responsibility! So . . .let me go too!

There is a silence, then Fei asks –

Fei: Elly . . .?

Bart shakes his head slowly and says –

Bart: What the hell are you talking about! Don't you remember what you just did . . .!?

Citan turns to Bart and says –

Citan: Young one!

Then he faces Elly and ponders, foot tapping as he says –

Citan: Elly, our trust in you depends on this battle. For your honor, you should fight!

Bart turns to Citan and says –

Bart: But Citan! I . . .!

Citan turns to Bart and says –

Citan: Young one, please trust Elly this time.
(turns to Elly, arms crossed)
Elly, if you try anything suspicious, I will be the one to shoot you.
Is that clear?

Elly: (nods once) Yes.

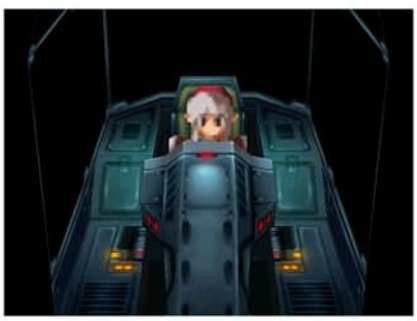
Citan turns to Bart and asks –

Citan: Is that okay with you, young one?

Bart nods once slowly and looks at Fei and Elly as he says –

Bart: . . .Alright. Fei, Elly, let's go!!

They both turn to him and respond –



Elly: Yes!

Fei: Yeah!!

View pulls up to the ceiling, fades and cuts to the inside of a Gear cockpit as she says –

Dominia: If you hadn't . . .

Dominia: . . .been around . . .

Dominia: I'll never forgive you . . .

Dominia: You . . .

Dominia: TRAITOR!!

Scene fades to Elly, Fei and Bart as they stand on the Yggdrasil's hull, looking out to sea, waiting.

Bart: Here they come!

Elly: Hey, that's . . .

View pull back as Dominia's Gear enters form the right, engines blazing and battle begins! Bladegash is truly powerful, capable of lightning quick maneuvers and Ether as well. She manages to dodge some of theor blows and her weapon infused with magic causes a great deal of damage. They defeat her at last and scene returns to the Yggdrasil as Fei and Bart turn to Elly.

Bart: . . .Whew. She doesn't know when to quit.

There is a rumble and a geyser of water erupts from the ocean nearby. They all turn and it shoots up from the other side. Elly says –

Elly: Wh – what?

Fei turns to look out and says -

Fei: Below!

He jumps down into the water.

Bart: Is it what I think it is?

Bart joins Fei and Elly thinks –

Elly: . . .

She jumps down as well and scene fades to a battle – with Ramsus and Miang! The Haishao is back, accompanied by 'Miang's Gear' and Ramsus asks –

Ramsus: Miang, is that him?

Miang: Yes, he's in the black Gear in the center there.

Ramsus: Right! I've got him!

Ramsus: I have been looking for you! My arch rival!!

Fei: Uh! You again!?

View switches to one from behind Weltall, facing Haishao as Ramsus says –

Ramsus: . . .I see you have a different machine . . . So, what happened to your 'other' Gear!?

Fei: What are you talking about!?

Ramsus: Not to matter . . .(pauses) At any rate, until I eliminate you, there will never be any 'light' for me!!

Battle begins! It is fierce and Miang heals Haishao now and again though she doesn't enter battle herself. The three hold nothing back, knowing time is of the essence and after a particularly heavy deathblow by Weltall, there is an explosion as the Haishao heaves.

Ramsus: Tch! Is that all you have to give!! Well too bad! No matter what . . .I can't let you live!

The Haishao rushes forward and begins to blast away at Weltall. After one blow, he goes down and rises, again and again Haishao lands in heavy bows and he rises once more, then finally he falls and screams –

From inside the cockpit, he see a warning flash on his console

Fei: Uuaaaahhhh!

Armor breach
Water flooding cockpit!
Pilot's vital signs are declining . . .

Scene cuts to Weltall where it lies on the ocean floor and swings out to Haishao as Ramsus says –

Ramsus: And now for the 'coup de grace' !!

View pulls in on Vierge as Elly shouts –

Elly: Fei!!

A series of bright flashes in rapid succession then she rises and sends out an Aerod attack on the Haishao. After the tiny pints of radiance have exploded, Ramsus says –

Ramsus: Wh, what!? Aerods!?
Who the . . .!?

There is a multiple explosion and Ramsus says –

Ramsus: !! Uuuooohhh!

View cuts to Weltall where it lies and Ramsus says –

Ramsus: Tch! My main tank . . .I almost had him!
Dammit! . . . We have to retreat, Miang!

View swings around to Vierge near Weltall as Elly shouts –

Elly: Fei!!

Scene fades.

The Ethos Headquarters

Scene fades into a side of the Thames, where a window gives view to Citan as he stands pondering. near him, is a doctor and Bart is visible in the background. He says –

Citan: . . .I don't know. But for now he's on life support . . . . .

He stands next to a man and after a moment, he says –

Citan: . . .You mean . . .He will be alright . . .?

Doctor: . . .I guarantee nothing. I don't know why he's like this in the first place.

As view pans to the right, Bart thinks –

Bart: . . .

And Elly becomes visible through another window as she sits at Fei's bedside. She says slowly –

Elly: . . .(pauses) My fault? . . .I . . .

From the other partition, the doctor's voice comes to her –

Doctor: . . .Then there is hope . . .at the infirmary in the 'Ethos' headquarters.

Elly jumps up and turns around, thinking –

Elly: !

View switches to one inside where she stands near a partition and she turns and runs around it to ash the doctor –

Elly: Fei . . .Can you save Fei?

Doctor: I cannot guarantee it. But if we were to take him to the 'Ethos' headquarters' hospital . . .

Elly: Then could we save him?

Doctor: I think then that he would most probably pull through alright . . .But unfortunately, ordinary citizens are only allowed into the main hall at the 'Ethos' headquarters. You would have to become a monk, or be introduced by someone in the 'Ethos' . . .

The doctor turns to the side and Elly thinks, " . . ."

There is a silence, then the doctor turns to them and says –

Doctor: Ah, I just remembered. I heard that the Etone, -'atoners of sin' -, are coming to the Thames from the 'Ethos' H. Q. . . .

tan turns to him and asks –

Citan: What purpose do such Etone from the 'Ethos' have here?

Doctor turns to Citan and responds –

Doctor: They're coming here to do some type of investigation.

The doctor turns to him and responds –

Bart: Etone . . .What are they?

Doctor: They are religious people from the 'Ethos' who cleanse away the 'Reapers' or –Wels- that appear here in Aquvy.

Elly: So why don't we ask them?

Doctor: (turns to Elly) I'll ask them if they can help us, but I don't know if they will . . . I guess there is no harm in asking though . . .

Elly: Alright. Let's go look for them.

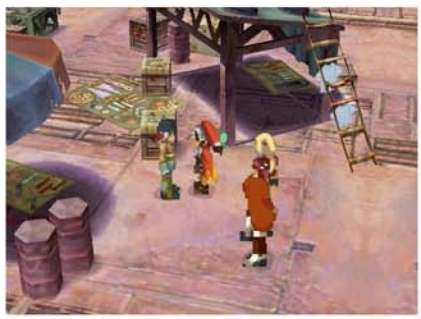
Citan: I will go with Fei and the life support machines to the Yggdrasil. Bart and Elly, you two go look for the Etone.

Bart: . . .Right.

Scene fades and cuts to the beer hall as Elly and Bart make their way through. They go to the bridge and talk to the Captain –

Captain: The Etones? Oh, those guys who were here earlier . . .They left saying they had to go investigate something. They might be on the deck near the supply entrance.

They leave and go down the screw elevator to the deck and make their way across to the armor ground where they see Margie talking to a man who says –



M1: Etone? I saw him earlier but he left.

Bart starts forward, Elly right behind him as Margie asks –

Margie: Really? Where'd they go?

M1: I don't know . . .

Bart: What're you doing Margie?

Margie turns to Bart and says –

Margie: Hi, Bart. I just heard from Citan. I also was looking for that Etone. This person's seen that Etone before.

Bart: Really?

They hear a commotion off to the left and someone shouts –

"Hey, quit resistin'!!"

Elly turns and says –

Elly: Bart!! Look!!

They all turn and view pans to the left where two rough looking Batters have a little girl in a blue dress trapped and one says –

B1: If you wouldn't resist, I could sell you for more.

The little girl thrashes around and Elly runs up to them, saying –

Elly: What are you doing?

B1 turns to her and says –

B1: What the? Who are you?

The other turns as well and says –

B2: Instead of the brat why don't I sell you off?

Bart approaches with Margie and says –

Bart: What! You want some!? Come and get some ya losers!

B2: (turns to Bart) You think you're all that!?

There is the sound if a bullet being fired and the first jumps back, saying –

B1: Wha!

The little girl rushes to Elly who kneels down to her. The two Battlers turn and one says –

B2: What the!?

View swings to the right where a lone man with gray hair and a trench coat stands with a gun slung over his shoulder. He walks forward and the other two confront him –

B1: You! What're you doing!?

The second man turns to him and says –

B2: Wait, this guy's . . .

The first backs off and says –

B1: Oh no . . .Jesiah!!

They both pause, turning to look at one another, then run off, saying –

"Damn, I'll remember this!"

Jesiah turns and walks over to Elly, pulling out a gun and aiming it at the back of her head, clicking off the safety. Bart exclaims –

Bart: What do you think you're doing?

Jesiah: Don't move.

Margie: No, wait . . .

Jesiah: Shut up, you dog of Solaris.

Elly: . . .

A voice comes from behind –"Wait!!" and Citan rushes up, saying –

Citan: A carbine rifle, that gun technique, you must be Jesiah.
No Jesiah, you are misunderstanding. You always rush into things.
She was only helping the girl.

Jesiah: What? Butt kissin' talker, is that you Hyuga . . .

The girl moves towards Jesiah and looks up at him, her soft brown eyes appealing –

Girl: . . .

Jesaih puts the gun away and turns to her, saying –

Jesiah: Yeh yeah, I know, Primera. My misunderstanding.

He turns to Elly where she still kneels and says –

Jesiah: Sorry, young lady. Please, stand up.

Elly rises and turns to face Jesiah who says –

Jesiah: Looks like you were just trying to help. That's what she says.
Sorry about the misunderstanding. This is Primera. My daughter. I am . . .
Call me Jessie. It's enough that the little brats call me Jesiah.

Prim turns to Elly and –

Prim: . . .

Elly turns to look at her and thinks, "?"

Jessie: She says thank you. Something happened to her and she hasn't
spoken since then.

Citan: . . .Is this the girl that brought about your shotgun wedding?

Jessie turns to Citan and says –

Jessie: That's a damn rude thing to ask! Look at how old she is.
Primera is my second child. That other kid is already 16.

Citan: Please excuse me. How is your wife?

Jessie: . . .She's dead. I wasn't even there for her when she died.

Citan: I see . . .What are you doing here?

Jessie: I have to go shopping sometime. Besides my son has some unsavory
business in this area . . .

A man approaches from the left and says-

M1: Ah . . .That Etone you were looking for has just arrived.

Bart turns to him, asking –

Bart: What!? Where?

View shifts over to the left as a young man with pale hair and a blue coat walks towards them with the Thames' doctor and scene fades, returning to a forward view of the young man as the doctor says –

Doctor: . . . . . .is the reason why, so somehow, we need your help.

The young man says slowly –

Etone: I see . . .

Jessie: Quit beating 'round the bush and just help.

Citan walks over to make room for Jessie and Primera who walk towards the young man who says –

Etone: Fa, father? And Prim too?

Jessie turns to the others and says –

Jessie: This is my son Billy.

Billy: Where have you been until now? Things are pretty serious at the
headquarters.

Jessie turns to him and asks –

Jessie: What do you mean serious?
What's wrong with going out shopping with my daughter?

Billy: I don't know the details but you have been labeled as an
undesirable element. What did you do this time? Fight? Gamble?
Go after someone's wife again!?

Jessie: Humph, that's just a rumor about me. A rumor.
Don't you believe that. Ever since you went into the 'Ethos
you've become such a stiff.

Billy: . . .

Jessie: This lady prevented Primera from getting kidnapped.
Why don't you just help out?

Elly steps forward and asks –

Elly: Well . . .can we get an invitation to the 'Ethos' then?

Billy: Oh yes, please excuse my rudeness. I didn't know you saved my sister. Let me contact the medical department at my headquarters. I have other matters I must attend to, considering I am not only a priest but also an Etone . . . So I cannot make any promises.

Elly: Then you'll introduce us?

Billy: Yes. Let's stop by the 'Ethos' headquarters after this.

Margie turns to him and says –

Margie: Hmm. A priest and an Etone at the same time . . .Isn't that unusual? The 'Ethos' is obviously very different from my Nisan Sect.

Billy turns to her and says –

Billy: Your Nisan Sect. Are you from Nisan?

Margie strides forward and responds –

Margie: I'm Marguerite. Nice to meet you, Father.

Billy steps forward, saying –

Billy: The pleasure is mine. I've never had a proper chance to speak to others about their religions. Can we talk later?

Margie: Sure, that's fine. But I can't take that much time. I'm a little busy now.

Billy: Thank you. (pauses) Hmm . . .Marguerite? Where have I heard that name before?

Bart comes forward and pushes Margie back as he says –

Bart: Forget about it, relax . . .I came here to talk to the 'Ethos'. Let's get moving.

Billy turns to Bart and says –

Billy: What an impolite fellow. (Bart is looking at Margie) You should learn how to speak a little more politely.

Bart turns to him and says –

Bart: Why you!

Billy turns to the others and says –

Billy: Well everyone, (pauses) I'll go tell the 'Ethos' headquarters that you're coming. When you've taken care of business here, please come by the 'Ethos'.

Bart: I know, I know. Let's go.

Jessie strides forward and says to Billy –

Jessie: Hey Billy, I have some business to take care of. If you're going back to the headquarters can you take Primera back to the brat house for me?

Billy: . . .(pauses) . . .Alright. Let's go Prim.

Billy walks off and Prim starts to follow, when she stops, turning to Citan and the others before following once more. Jessie says –

Jessie: Alright, well I've got to get going. Later Hyuga. I know I'll be seein' you around.

They all turn to look at Citan who says –

Citan: Uh, who knows.

Jessie turns to look at the others and says –

Jessie: Well, whatever. See you ladies later.

He strides off in the opposite direction which Billy had gone and there is a moment of silence. Then Citan turns to watch him go, saying –

Citan: He never changes . . .

Citan turns to the others and says –

Citan: Sigurd said he would be done with the Yggdrasil soon.

Bart: What, really? Alright, this time we can really leave port.

Elly turns to him and asks –

Elly: Are we returning . . .(pause) to Aveh?

Bart: (turns to her) Are you kidding? We've go to take care of Fei first. That smart aleck kid said he'd introduce us to the 'Ethos". So I guess we'll just have to go to the 'Ethos' headquarters then . . .

Elly turns to Bart, nods once and says – Elly: . . .Thank you.

Bart turns his back to her and says –

Bart: Why do I have to get thanked by you?

Margie turns to Elly and says –

Margie: Heh, that's right, Elly.

Elly turns around and nods once, saying –

Elly: . . .Yes, you're right.

Scene fades and cuts to the outside of Thames as they make their way to the screw elevator. They go to the bridge to speak to the Captain –

Captain: Feel free to come back to Thames anytime.
There's always room at our dock for your ship.

They go back down to the dock and back onto the Yggdrasil. They make their way to the bridge and talk to Sig –

Sig: It appears the 'Ethos' headquarters is located to the north of the Thames. We must hurry up and take Fei there . . .(pauses)
That reminds me . . . Margie says that she has something to talk to you about.

They leave the bridge and go down to the Gun Room where Maison says –

Maison: Miss Elly . . . and then Master Fei . . .
Why do we continue to have misfortunes like this?

They leave and go down the hall to the sickbay. Entering, they speak to the doctor who says –

Doctor: Fei . . .(turns around to look over at him) Is he alright?
The sick man nearby says –

ScM: Fei looks terrible . . .If I didn't have this wound I'd . . .

They leave and go down to Margie's room and enter. They talk to her –

Margie: I'm glad we've met up with such nice people. Anyway, I'd better hurry and get back to my church! I'm not good enough to fight with Bart and his comrades . . .But I can be a manager! Let me know when you want to change party members!

They leave and go down to the Gear Hangar to service their Gears. Entering the Gear shop, they talk to the officer near the back –

O1: When I come here at night I sometimes hear Maitreya and them talking and laughing. But when I get closer, the voices disappear. (pause) I'm sure they are lonely, too.

They go to the lady and buy a few Gear parts, then leave and go up to the bridge and speak to Sig who asks them if they want to leave. They say 'Leave the Thames' and he says –

Sig: So this is your first time to see our new Yggdrasil II . . .Let me show you our reborn vessel's improved performance!

Scene cuts to an over head view of the Yggdrasil as they leave the Thames and sail in the dark blue ocean. After they have sailed for some time, they decide to take a look at the map and scene returns to the bridge once more as they go around talking to the crew members. The first along to the left –

C1: Jerico has been careful lately, so navigation has been made easier.
C2: I got a new map!

They look at the ship's chart and determine where to go from there. They go around the line, speaking to the crew.

C3: We increased the antennas, but now I can't keep track of everything because I don't have enough selector channels . . .Drats!
C4: Hmmm, the rudder doesn't work as well as it did in the sand . . .It doesn't feel secure or seem to be reliable at all!
C4: Hmm, so in water the rudder has to be gently engaged before trying to turn. Guess I learned something.

They speak to Franz who offers some sounds for them to listen to and the next crewman says –

C5: Water torpedoes are built much more simply than sand torpedoes. Thanks to that, their power is double that of our previous ship's arms. But they're expensive.

Off behind them is a crewman who says -

C6: I don't have to delineate effect wing movements anymore, but it's harder to keep balance than it was on sand.

They go up tit he helm where Sig asks –

Sig: Shall we launch the Yggdrasil?

They say yes and the view cuts to the overhead of the vessel as it sails through the sea. They make their way to the north where they had seen the Ethos headquarters on the map and fight many battles along the way. They find an island with a sandstone temple at the top of a promontory overlooking the sea and land the Yggdrasil on the beach nearby. They approach and enter. They find themselves in a ornate anteroom and beyond a gilded partition ahead, they see a church of sorts. They go over to a man in a purple robe –

E1: This is a practice hall. This facility was built for us Etone.

Elly: Can't we go inside the cathedral?

E1: No. Only 'Ethos' members or those with known identities can enter the cathedral and its related facilities. The same thing applies to the practice hall, but the bishop made an exception for brother Billy.

They go over to a man on the left in a greenish robe, he says –

Pr1: The 'Ethos' was created to save people – to save people's souls and revive lost technology. We wish happiness to all people of the world.

They go down the central aisle to where Billy is waiting and he approaches them –

Billy: We have been waiting for you. I received permission to treat Fei so long as it is in the practice hall's infirmary. Let us 'Ethos' staff take care of the rest.

Elly nods once and says –

Elly: Please, take care of Fei for me . . .

Scene fades and cuts back to the practice hall as Billy says –

Billy: The brothers form the 'Ethos' are looking after Fei in the infirmary. Let me take you there. Please follow me, (pause) this way.

He walks over to the gold gilt partition and goes through the door as they follow. View tilts to one facing Billy as he says –

Billy: This way

He turns at the sound of the door behind him opening and a young man in a red robe steps through –

Verlaine: Billy, I hear your father has been rather active again.

Billy: . . .

Verlaine: It is said that there was an attack on an excavation site which injured many of my 'brothers' and workers.

Verlaine turns partway to the side and continues –

Verlaine: Well, you're such a fine Etone – destroying Reapers and proving the justice of the 'Ethos' to the world. But your father is. . .

Billy: We are father and son in blood only! I have nothing to do with that man . . .

Verlaine faces him once more and says –

Verlaine: Don't get me wrong. I don't suspect you, our good 'brother'. I just wanted to inform you about your father.

As Verlaine leaves, Billy bows his head and says –

Billy: . . .That father of mine . . .I wish he'd think about my position before acting.

He raises his head and makes his way over to the door on the far wall. The others approach him as he stands before it –

Billy: The infirmary is this way. Let's go.

Above the door is the goat's horn sign and they follow Billy into a wide hallway, brightly lit as he says "This way." And leads them down past several doors to a stairwell leading down.

Billy: The infirmary is this way. Let's go.

They go down the steps and emerge out into a streamline meal corridor. They see Billy at a door on the right –

Billy: The infirmary is this way.

Scene cuts to the clean and high tech infirmary where Fei lays on a bed with a medic nearby. Banks of computers line the walls nearby and Elly, Citan and Bart stand before the bed as Billy asks –

Billy: How is he?

Medic: The patient hasn't regained consciousness yet, but we see no abnormality with his brain. The low water temperature lowered his metabolism and saved him. One false step and he could've suffered from brain death.

Bart bows his head slightly and says –

Bart: That means . . .

The medic turns to him and says –

Medic: Yes, don't worry. (pause) However, we need to conduct more tests for a while. After that, he can be treated at your medical facilities.

Elly asks slowly –

Elly: . . .Will Fei ever regain consciousness?

Medic: (turns to her) The reason why he hasn't regained consciousness is physical exhaustion. He overworked himself. It'll probably take him a few more days, but don't worry, he'll wake up.

Elly walks towards Fei's side and bows her head, saying –

Elly: . . .I'm sorry, Fei. I caused the engine room to lose control . . .

Citan steps forward and shakes his head. Then he says –

Citan: Elly, that is not true. You cannot resist being hypnotized. More importantly, you saved Fei. Fei could not have been protected from Kahr without you. Is that not correct?

Elly: Thank you . . .

Elly raises her head and says –

Bart turns to the others and says –

Bart: Hey, we don't want to disturb his recovery. Let's take a little walk. It may take a little longer to finish treating Fei.

Elly turns to Bart and Citan and says –

Elly: I . . .would like to stay a little while. Is it okay?

Citan nods once and responds –

Citan: I agree. Fei will feel at ease that way. Please let us know when you finish treating Fei. We will leave the rest up to you.

Citan and Bart speak to Billy who says –

Billy: All we can do is wait and see.

Medic: He is in stable condition. His treatment is almost complete.

Bart and Citan make their way out to the corridor and they try to open a door to the left of the stairwell.

Citan: It appears to be locked.

They go back up the stairs to the hallway and choose a door further down, leading into a library. They speak to a man in a green robe.

M1: Do you know about the huge tower called Babel Tower? They say it's built by people who tried to reach a god in the sky. According to tradition, god became angry with their disrespect and his thunder destroyed the tower.

They go up the ladder nearby and make their way around the perimeter to another green robed man who says –

M2: People who built Babel Tower were so afraid of god's revenge they ran away to the sky. That place is Shevat, the 'house of sinning hermits'.

Another man in a dun colored robe nearby says –

M3: I've been assigned to go to the excavation site in Dazil. I'm to review the technical information of the ruins once again.

The go back down the ladder and speak with another purple robed man near the far wall.

M4: There are tons of books collected by the 'Ethos' stored in this library. It's a real treasure house of information.

They leave the library and go across to a dining hall which id empty. They enter the room off to the side and find a cheery kitchen with a lone chef at work. He says –

Chef: B, busy, busy. (pause) Many more refugees came. We need to feed them well to cheer them up!!

They leave and make their way down the hall to a door on the far right. Entering, they see a purple robed man and another in pale gray over by the window. The purple robed man says

M1: the Bishop's been worried about Reapers, refugees, Etone, the faith . . .

They go over tot he Bishop who says without turning –

Bishop: (. . .too many Wels are out there now. More than we can handle . . . What are 'they' thinking?)

They leave and go to a stairwell leading up. They enter a long hall with a door at the end and go through, finding themselves on a suspended path above the cathedral. They make their way across and enter another hall. They go through the first door on the left and enter a small bunk chamber. A purple robed man says –

M1: Plundered by war and salvagers . . .Destruction by the Reapers . . . We must meet the people's expectations toward the 'Ethos'.

M2: Reapers are humans turned into things by god to pay for their crimes. They're sealed in the cursed land of the heavens, Shevat.

The green robed man near the window says –

M3: They say Babel Tower is connected to Shevat. The exit is under close watch by our people. In spite of that, cursed Reapers continue to appear in this land. That's why the Etone are here to eliminate them.

They leave and go through the next door down. Entering, they see the same type if room and speak to the purple robed man –

M1: people belonging to the 'Ethos' must act modestly with generosity. To do that we often read from the sacred script to returns to a purer soul.

The green robed man near the window says –

M2: We, the Etone, are the swords and shields of the 'Ethos' so to speak. We fight with enemies such as Reapers and thieves to save people with faith in god.

They leave and go to the next room down. Entering, a purple robed man starts towards them, saying –

M1: Aha! You! (pauses) Ask Billy if his dad holds a grudge against the 'Ethos' or not. They say his father bombed the 'Ethos' supply dump. Oh, my head hurts.

They speak to him further –

M1: Why does Jessie attack the 'Ethos' buildings? I heard he was once an amazing Etone . . .

They leave and go across the hall to a door which leads into a bunk room with some kids. There are two adults, one purple robe –

M1: This room was prepared for people who have no one to turn to. We hope to save their souls and give them hope to live.

They speak to a little girl nearby –

Lg1: Um . . .someone from the 'Ethos' got in a huge Gear and saved me. Some man named master attacked us . . .It was very frightening.

An old woman near the window says –

OW1: Everyone . . .Everyone died . . .

A little boy looking out the window says –

Lb1: Mom . . .

They leave and go back down the hall, across the suspended passage and back down the stairs to the first level once more. As they step out into the hall, Elly approaches them and Citan asks -

Citan: Elly, how is Fei doing?

Elly: Yes . . .It looks like he is going to be alright.

Bart: (nods once) Come on. Let's go to the infirmary.

They join him and make their way down the hall to the steps leading down to the metallic corridor. They go to the infirmary and the medic turns to them and says –

Medic: Hello, everyone. His treatment is finished.

Citan ponders a moment, then looks up and asks -

Citan: Did Fei regain consciousness?

Medic: Unfortunately, the patient hasn't regained consciousness yet. But there's no need to worry. When he recovers physically, he'll also regain consciousness. You can take him to your ship now.

Bart nods once and says –

Bart: Thanks a lot!

Medic: Please don't worry. I did my job as a clergyman.

Elly walks forward and nods her head once as she says –

Elly: Um . . .Where is Billy? I'd like to thank him . . .

Medic turns to her and says –

Medic: Oh yes, brother Billy . . .He went back to the orphanage. He was worried about the children left behind.

Citan nods once and says –

Citan: We are in Billy's debt. We should go thank him.

Bart turns to him and shakes his head, saying –

Bart: First, let's take Fei to the Yggdrasil. We can go thank him afterwards.

Scene fades.

The Orphanage

Scene cuts to the sickbay on board the Yggdrasil as Bart, Citan and Elly stand beside Fei's bed. Elly approaches him and looks down.

Elly: . . .

Then she says –

Elly: Fei, I'm sorry . . .

They go to the doctor who turns to Fei and asks –

Doctor: Fei . . .You're alright,, aren't you? Oh, I'm so happy! It's wonderful to be a nurse!

They leave and go to the Gun Room. They go over and speak to Maison who says –

Maison: For people from a heathen nation like us to receive such charity . . . My word, god is so very, very tolerant . . .

They make their way out, up the lift and into the bridge where Sig says –

Sig: I see. So, Fei'll recover if he continues to rest. I'm relieved to hear that. It seems the orphanage is located to the southeast of the 'Ethos' headquarters. Shall we launch the Yggdrasil?

They respond, "Go ahead!" and scene cuts to an overhead view of the Yggdrasil as it leaves the Ethos HQ's island and makes its way out into the ocean once more, heading southeast. On the way, they see a huge tower off in the distance and approach,curious. They disembark in their Gears and draw near the massive structure. But their entrance is blocked by a glowing seal with the Ethos symbol on it. They look up to where the top is lost in the clouds and view pans to the right and the left, revealing the ancients structure's ruined state. Even so, it stands proudly and view drops back down to them once more. When they approach the seal, great flashes of light are emitted and the retreat. They leave, for now there is nothing to be done here. Once more they sail in the Yggdrasil, fighting battles as they make their way through the waves until they see a small island with a little house with a red roof and a windmill. They land the Yggdrasil on the beach nearby and enter. They find themselves in a wide yard with toys and children who are playing about. They speak to one little boy near the entrance who says –

Lb1: Can't see the flying saucer today. Aa ~ h! Wanna know about the flying saucer? Then just ask me!

They say "Tell me" and he launches into his 'speech' speaking rapidly –

Lb1: Ahem!! Actually it was along time ago. About 50 years ago an old man, Henry Mingas, said he was taken by the saucer and his body was altered. Well, no one believed him, but afterward it's said he had amazing knowledge and skills he never had before. Then 10 years ago, strange circle shaped marks were found in many places. You must've heard about it. No? Well anyway, they were called mystery circles. So this guy spread rumors that they were saucer landing sites, and when others began to disappear, there was even more talk. But there were other things than the saucer landing site explanation, such as the Naughty Stories, Dragon Scrolls, or Plasma Legend. So there was no real proof. But real disappearances did happen.

He takes a huge breath, then says –

Lb1: Oh, I forgot to mention, the saucer was called 'Shevat'. There are even people who worship it. So, was that of any use? Ahem.

They go up a ladder to the windmill where a little boy sits.

Lb1: Why's the air so salty? Isn't there any fresh air around here? If there is I want to inhale it till I'm full.

They go over to a swingset and a see-saw and see a little boy alone on one of the see-saws while two little girls play the one nearby.

Lb2: Huh? 'Why aren't you playing with them?' Don't be silly . . .! I can't play with girls!!

Elly: Well then, are you saying that I can't play because I'm a girl?

Lb2: You're okay! Hey hey get on this!
They play on the see-saw a moment, then move on around the house where they see a strange little green girl counting –
Dg1: . . .eight, nine, ten!!
She looks around and a spotted tail becomes visible. She asks –
Dg1: Where is everyone hiding?
They go around the side and see a little boy standing on a wooden barrel, looking towards the wall. He says –
Lb2: It's like something's in there, but you can't go inside. Some kind of haunted house? . . .shiver . . .
They go back around to the front of the house and see a sign with the Ethos insignia beside the door. Entering, they find themselves in a homey chamber with a loft above. Billy stands over by a table near the window which appears to be an altar of some sort. He turns and says –

Billy: Oh, how are you? How is Fei doing?

Elly: Very well. He hasn't regained consciousness yet, but he should come around soon.
Billy: Really? That's good to hear.

Elly: Um, Billy. I don't know quite how to thank you for helping Fei.

Billy: Don't mention it. We may believe in different gods, but none of us can leave people in need.

Elly: Thank you very much. By the way is this your orphanage . . .?
Billy: Surprised there are only children?
Billy turns around and says –
Billy: My sister and I haven't had parents since we were infants. So I opened an orphanage so kids without anyone wouldn't have to go through what we did.
He turns back around and continues –
Billy: They're all healthy and obedient to the teachings of the 'Ethos'. They're all good kids who even help me with work.
They hear the door open behind them and view swings around as they all turn to face Sig, who says –

Sig: Bart!! Yggdrasil's radar picked up an image of a huge ship!!
The three approach him and view swings around to one of the side as Bart asks –

Bart: What? Gebler again?
View pans over to the left to Billy briefly, then back to the right as Sig responds –

Sig: I don't know but it's moving at 10 repsol/hr to the south. Let's head to the bridge.

Bart: Got it! Be right there!

The door across the room opens and Jessie strides through, as they all turn . He asks –
Jessie: Hey you, in the black and white. Are you Sigurd?

Sig: Is that any way to speak to someone? Who do you think you are?
Citan turns to Sig and says –

Citan: Ah . . .He may not look it but he is our senior.
Sig: Senior? Jessie?
From the left, Billy approaches and looks from Jessie to Sig.

Billy: Siggy?
Bart turns to Billy and says –

Bart: He said Siggy?

Jessie: A silver haired man with amber skin. I'd say that's rare. What are you all doing here?

Citan is still looking at Sig who faces Jessie as he says –
Citan: It just sort of happened.

Sig: A lot's happened . . .
Jessie begins to make his way around the table towards them, saying –

Jessie: Well, let's talk about things over some drinks.

They all have turned at his approach as he asks –

Jessie: So . . .Why are you all here?

They all turn to Billy, (except for Sig who looks at Jessie,) he says –

Billy: Siggy, it's been a long time . . .(pause) What's with the eyepatch?

Sig turns to Billy and says –

Sig: Billy . . .(pauses) you've grown up. With that smile you look just like Racquel.

Bart begins to bounce on his feet, saying –

Bart: Hey! Hey hey hey! Who are you? Get all cozy with my officers, huh? And what's with all this 'Siggy' stuff? Don't get cute, kid!

Billy turns to Bart and says –

Billy: What's with you? Why are you so arrogant to Siggy? Who do you think you are?

Jessie speaks up –

Jessie: Billy. Don't yell at Sigurd's people. It's bad form, boy.

There is a pause, then Sig says –

Sig: Bart, this was my senior when I was a candidate for Elements in Jugend. I rented a room in his house.

Bart turns to Sig and Jessie says –

Jessie: Back then he was still in diapers . . .and he's still a whiny little brat now.

Billy: You're probably still in diapers, aren't you?

Bart turns to him and says –

Bart: You punk! What's your problem?

Jessie: Well . . .then, shall we go straight off and drink ourselves under?

Sig turns to him and asks –

Sig: Where do you plan on going . . .?

Jessie: What do you mean? There has to be a bar or two on board your ship!

Sig turns around and says –

Sig: I have a slight headache . . .

Jessie: What? That's OK. We'll get rid of that headache with a good drink.

Jessie walks out the door and Citan turns to Sig, asking –

Citan: What are you going to do?

Sig turns to the door and says –

Sig: I can't just say no to him . . .

Jessie calls back –

Jessie: What are you doin'? Let's go!

Sig: Hey now . . .

Citan says –

"Oh – no – ho – ho . . ."

Sig leaves and Citan follows a moment later. Billy says –

Billy: I'm not going . . .Go ahead and have a good time.

Bart and Elly watch him move to the door across the room and exit. Then Bart says –

Bart: What's this huge ship Sig was talking about?

After Rico joins them, Elly and Bart make their way through the rest of the orphanage, speaking to more children.

They go back down and enter the orphanage. They go through the door across from the entrance. They find themselves in a bunk room, toys and clothes everywhere. A small tan colored dragon boy jumps up and down on the bed and asks them if they want to sleep. They decline and move over to two kids by the window. Each says -

Lg1: Don't listen! Lb1: Don't listen!

They go up to a male demihuman child up on the top bunk nearby. He says -

Mb1: Hey, read me this book . . .

They say "Alright!" and he jumps up, shouting "Ye ~ y!! He pulls out a book and hands it to Elly, she reads -

Elly: Long, long ago there was a woman named Zephyr. She wanted to be a god so she built a tower that reached up to heaven. Then she built a city at the top. But god got mad and destroyed her tower. So she then had to live in a 'hideout for sinful hermits'. After that she never returned to the earth again . . .The end.

Mb1: Is there really a 'Hideout for skinful termites'? It sounds scary!

He turns and puts the book back on the shelf and they make their way down and to a door across from the bunks on the right.

They enter and find a cozy bedroom with two kids, Prim and another little boy on the bed. They talk to Prim and she says -

Prim: . . .

Her eyes are very expressive and there is a small smile on her mouth. Maybe she's trying to tell them . . . something?

They go over to the little boy. He turns from where he stands on the bed and a bell ringing is heard. He says -

Lb1: Sounds good, huh? My dad gave me this bell so I would never get lost. But my dad has no sense of direction and gets lost a lot too! So he also has the same kind of bell. He went to the 'Ethos' headquarters but never came back . . .He must have gotten lost on the way . . .He's so silly!

The sound of a bell and Prim turns to watch as he asks -

Lb1: What? That bell . . .How did you get that? Hey, you didn't happen to meet my dad, did you? Where is he?

There is a pause, and Rico thinks -

Rico: . . .

One whispers (Oh - no! That wasn't . . .his father!? . . .!?) then Rico says -

Rico: Listen son! Your father's gone to a faraway place . . . Here, this is his bell!

The bell rings once more and the boy bows his head -

Lb1: My father's a liar!! He said we would go away and live by ourselves . . .just the two of us . . I've waited . . . so long . . .Oh, Daddy . . .why? Boo - hoo - hoo!

Over by the far wall, Prim says -

Prim: . . .

And the little boy continues -

Lb1: Sob. sob . . .But . . .thanks. Thanks for bringing (pauses) Dad's bell back. It'll cheer me up . . .!!

The boy turns around and the bell rings twice. He says -

Lb1: As thanks I'll give you my dad's favorite book.

They get the 'Ethos Doctrine Book'. They leave They leave and go to the door at then end. Entering, they find themselves in a study and something about the wardrobe looks funny . . . they push it and it slides away, revealing Billy who thinks, "!!" and walks into the room, asking -

Billy: What do you need?

Then he walks forward and says -

Billy: Excuse me, I must go and greet some people. Please don't go searching through other's rooms.

He goes to the door behind him, leaving and scene cuts to the outer courtyard as a robed man strides forward. He stops before some metal plating on the ground and one of the children jumps and "!!" then says, "Wow! Uncle Stone!!" He rushes forward and the other children all run over to the man, crowding around hi as the view pulls in closer. He asks -

Uncle Stone: Hello, are you all happy?

One of the children, a reddish dragon child, jumps up and down, shouting, "Yeah!" and the others all jump up, responding, "Yes!" "Yeah!" and the view swings around to one of the door as Billy and Prim come out.

Billy: Bishop Stone!!

Bishop Stone: Oh, Billy my son!

Billy strides forward, across the metal plating, and Bart, Rico and Elly appear, making their way over to the side as Prim remains behind, watching as Billy says -

Billy: Sorry to bother you when you're busy.

Prim thinks, " . . ." and Bishop Stone responds -

Bishop Stone: And who are these people?

Prim turn to him as he says this, then turns around and goes back inside as Billy turns to the three -

Billy: they are travelers from another country.

Bishop Stone turns to Billy and says -

Bishop Stone: Oh . . .By the way, about your earlier message . . .

Billy turns back around and says -

Billy: Yes, (pauses) about work . . .

Bishop Stone: Yes. The 'Ethos' transport ship that went missing finally turned up. But, there's no reply . . .

Billy: What does it mean?

Bishop Stone: Hmmm, perhaps Reapers again. Billy can you do the usual?

Billy: Right, no problem. Leave it to me, Bishop.

Bishop Stone: Thanks. It's to the northeast from here. Please be careful. It's a dangerous area. There are some pretty fast sea currents and it's best to stay away from the Salvagers. You'd better go in a big ship . . .

Behind them, Bart asks -

Bart: Hey, is that the massive ship Sig was talking about earlier?

Billy turns to him and responds -

Billy: I don't know if that was it or not.

Bart: From what I hear. It's a place where the currents are really fast. It's supposedly very dangerous for small ships. But the Ygg will be safe there. No matter how big the wave or swell, it's no problem. Besides, we have help from Fei. Let's get aboard. I'll see you off to there. What, we could even help you finish your job!

Elly: I agree. You saved Fei. It's the least we could do.

Billy: Thanks but this doesn't involve you. Just me is enough.

Elly: But isn't that place dangerous? If there is anything we can do to help . . .

Bily: I don't want to get you involved . . .

There is a pause, then Bishop Stone says -

Bishop Stone: Billy, my son, don't waste their good intentions. That ship is theirs, no? Why don't you cooperate with them . . .

Billy turns to him and asks -

Billy: . . .But, Bishop!

Behind, Bart flexes his arm and says -

Bart: Yeah, it's no fun to travel alone. Let's help.

As Billy turns around, Elly nods and says -

Elly: Billy, it's best to go with friends!

Billy: . . .Well if you insist. Thank you, I appreciate it.

Bishop Stone: I thank you deeply. Billy, take care of these people. Report back to headquarters after you get back.

Billy: Yes, Bishop.

Billy turns to him and responds -

Bishop Stone walks off and Billy turns to the three and says -

Billy: Thank you. Let's see what tomorrow brings. I'll come as soon as I'm finished preparing for tomorrow. Go on ahead. I'll tell you more on the way there . . .

Billy walks back to the house and the children scatter, returning to their activities. Bart, Elly and Rico speak to some of the kids. A red dragon boy says -

Db1: We love Uncle Stone!!

Another little boy asks -

Lb1: Why doesn't Primera play with Uncle Stone? He's sooo interesting . . .

A little red haired girl near the fence says -

Lg1: Billy says he respects Uncle Stone. I guess I should too.

The green dragon girl moves along the yard and says -

Dg1: I wonder if Uncle Stone will come back and play?

They make their way outside and back to the Yggdrasil. Once there, in the anteroom, Elly says –

Elly: They can't launch the Yggdrasil because Sigurd isn't there . . . He must be in the Gun Room or somewhere.

They go to the lift and make their way down to the Gun Room. They enter and view rotates to one facing the door from across the room at the small table near the back of the room next to the bar. Jessie stands and slowly turns as Citan and Sig watch. The Jessie turns to Sig and says –

Jessie: I see. This is the place you begged to return to, eh?

Sig turns to him and responds –

Sig: Well, yes . . .

Jessie turns away form Sig and says –

Jessie: After you left, Billy cried a lot.

Sig: . . .(pause) I'm sorry.

Citan turns to Sig and says –

Citan: When you left Solaris, the same thing happened. Kahr was quite upset then.

Sig turns to Citan and says –

Sig: I didn't mean to betray him . . .

Citan: His misanthropy has gotten even worse because of that.

Then Citan turns to Jessie and says –

Citan: Now, enough about old times, old friend. I did not expect to find you loitering in this land . . .

Citan then turns to the three at the door, saying " Everyone!"
They go over to speak to Citan who say –

Citan: No one can stop our old friend now . . .!

Jessie moves form Citan to Sig, laughing and says –

Jessie: Ha, ha, ha!! I haven't hit the booze for a long while!
It's all cause my son doesn't let me drink!
This is a great bar you've got here . . .old codger!

Maison at the bar turns and says –

Maison: Why . . .errh, thank you, my good man.

Jessie: This old codger, has good character . . .like his booze!
I like him!! Ha, ha, ha!!

They speak to Sig who -

Sig: . . .

They go over to Maison who says, while Jessie's laughter resounds in the background -

Maison: A mature yet modern atmosphere . . .That is what I offer you . . . A bartender's life isn't all that bad you know!

Citan: No one can stop our old friend now . . .!

Jessie is still moving around, laughing.
They speak to Sig who turns to them and says -

Sig: . . .Oh, yes . . .It's time for you to depart, right. I'm sorry, old friend, but I have a job I must do . . .

Jessie walks towards him and says -

Jessie: Oh god, is it that time already? Well then, before we go let's do the usual . . .
You know . . .the 'paint the face on your stomach and dance around trick' . . .?
The three of us together!

Citan turns to him and says -

Citan: !! Well, actually, we are in a hurry so, errh . . .
We will talk about that some other time . . .

Jessie turns to him and says -

Jessie: Oh? Is that right? Well then, I oughta get outta here too, huh!

As Jessie begins to walk towards the exit, he stops as Citan says to him -

Citan: There is something I want to ask you too . . .
So let us get together when we have more time . . .!

Jessie draws his shotgun and points it nowhere, saying -

Jessie: Yeah. I hope I live to have the opportunity . . .

He puts his gun away and walks off as Citan thinks -

Citan: . . .

As the scene fades a "CRASH!!!" is heard. Elly shouts -

Elly: AAAAAHHHH!! Sigurd is . . .!

Citan: Again!? Sigurd gets drunk so easily . . .!
Well that blows it! We cannot leave today, perhaps tomorrow . . .

Scene cuts to the orphanage main room at night and view pans down form the ceiling as Jessie enters and jumps up and down -

Jessi: . . .HIC . . .!! I'm back. Where's Billy?

The door across form the table opens and Billy enters, saying -

Billy: Keep it down! What time do you think it is?
Be quiet when you come back, or you will wake up the children.

Jessie: If you'd come you'd have heard a ton of good stories.
Sigurd's stories were hilarious.

Billy walks over to the small table with two candles and turns his back to his father, saying -

Billy: You know Siggy doesn't drink and you made him?
Even though you're a holy man's father . . .

Jessie: Hey hey, why don't you open up your eyes.
You need to quit bein' a priest.

Billy turns to him and says -

Billy: I don't want to hear that from someone without a shred of faith.
Stay out of my life.

Jessie walks forward a few steps and says -

Jessie: Stay out? Do you have any idea how much trouble your little butt is in?

Billy turns his back and says -

Billy: What? How would you know?

Jessie steps towards him, saying -

Jessie: !? You . . .!!

Billy: I still don't believe you're even my father.
You're not the person mother loved.

Jessie: Whaddaya mean . . .(pauses)
You think I'm a fake?

Billy: Ask yourself.

Jessie turns and walks away, thinking -

Jessie: . . .

He turns and faces Billy, saying -

Jessie: You're right. I guess there's no way to prove it . . .Fine, you still don't understand the truth. What those guys really are, where you are going . . .

Billy turns to him and asks -

Billy: Father, what are you saying . . .?

Jessie: I'm saying Racquel died in vain.

Billy: !! You have no right to say mother's name!

Jessie: . . .I see. That's the way it is. Fine. Anyhow, quit your job. Consider it a piece of advice from a man who is but a stranger to you.

Jessie turns around and walks to the door.

Jessie: Later!!

Then he leaves and Billy thinks -

Billy: . . .

Scene fades.

The Ethos Transport

Scene opens up in the bunk room of the Yggdrasil as the three wake up from a night's rest. They make their way to the Gun Room where Mason says –

Maison: Master Billy is waiting for you over yonder . . .

They go around the table to the end of the room where Billy stands with Citan. View shifts to one facing Billy as he says –

Billy: Good morning. they said you were still sleeping, so I went ahead and came in.

Bart: You're dressed lightly. Is that enough?

Billy turns to him and says –

Billy: We Etones have some rather unique equipment. Let me explain about the equipment since we're going to be working together. (pause) First of all, my basic equipment are guns. There're three kinds . . .'Handgun', 'Ether-gun' and 'Big-gun'. The handgun is the only one that can be replaced with other versions of the same kind. I made the other two kinds of guns myself, so there are no others to replace them with. You can power-up a gun's attack force by changing the 'ammo' or 'bullets' with more powerful ones! (he lets them know what to watch out for) But now that I have said this, note that the Ether-guns do not have such a limit. Well, that's about it . . .Did you understand?

Bart: I understood it roughly.
But it's a bit complicated, isn't it?

Billy turns to a gun on the wall and says –

Billy: . . .This is a fine gun indeed. I'm sure it has a significant history.

Bart: Of course! It's the famous rifle 'Machiganater', handed down in the Fatima family.

Billy turns to him and says –

Billy: What a waste . . .It's too good for you who just brandishes a whip . . .

Bart: Hey! (jumps up once)
Why are you getting sharp with me!?

Billy turns to the side and says –

Billy: Oh, sorry . . .It's just . . .I didn't think you would have an interest in guns.

Elly shakes her head and says after a moment –

Elly: Well anyway . . .Billy . . .I'd like to know why you became an Etone . . .

Billy turns around and Bart whispers – "(I'm not interested . . .)"

Billy: . .Hmm, I see . . .Etones help out strangers, so I suppose that would make you curious . . .

Elly shakes her heard and says –

Elly: No, I don't mean that. I'm curious about your own intentions, personally. I don't know . . .I just didn't expect you to be an Etone at all . . .

Billy: . . .

Then he turns, saying –

Billy: I see . . .Well, since our job is rather unusual, I'll tell you about that too as I explain . . .

Scene fades and cuts to the inside of a wooden house, with a table and chairs in the foreground. Billy begins –

"How old was I . . .? I don't remember. Maybe 8 or 9."

"About then, dad taught me how to use a gun."

Jessie appears from the left, walking towards the door and he leaves. Billy says –

Billy: One day dad disappeared.

Scene shifts to include two pale haired children as they walk around the room. One is Prim and the other must be – Billy! They mill around and Billy says –

Billy: He just ran out on us.

Scene shifts to include a young woman and Billy continues –

Billy: He never came back.

The scene changes and both Prim and Billy chase each other around the table as the woman sits quietly.

Billy: Even so, I stayed in his room alone after. Dad's gun, Dad's smell. Those things were all I had left to remind me of him.

The view changes, the woman is still seated, but the children have disappeared and Billy says –

Billy: But that happiness didn't last long . . .

The woman turns and backs off as a creature approaches from the left.

Billy: When I was 12, my house was attacked by Reapers and mom was killed.

Another creature appears off to the right and the woman turns to it as the door opens behind her.

Billy: They were looking for dad but mom wouldn't talk.

Another Reaper appears through the door and the woman backs off. As the three Reapers close in on her, Billy says –

Billy: I can still hear it . . .The sound of the bullets slowly firing three times . . . I even remember the sound of the empty shells hitting the floor. After that, the Reapers screamed and I heard someone fall.

Scene shifts as the woman fades away and a lone man strides for ward and fires three 3 shots, hitting the Reapers. Billy runs to him and Prim follows. The man turns to the two children. Billy says –

Billy: Bishop Stone was the one who helped us then. Meeting him changed my life from then on.

Bart asks him –

Bart: Hey, hey, wait a sec. Do Reapers talk?

Billy: Yes. They're not just monsters. Some of them are more intelligent than humans.

Scene shifts to just Billy and Prim as they stand by the door facing each other and then Prim turns and walks away. Billy says –

Billy: Primera and I hid in the shadows escaping death, but she hasn't spoken a word since.

Scene shifts to the two as they stand side by side at the table and the door opens behind them, admitting Bishop Stone. They turn and Billy jumps up and down as the Bishop faces him. Billy says –

Billy: Like a godsend, kind, strong, Bishop Stone gave me an example to follow.
I wanted to help save someone in need like he saved us. I didn't want there to be any more children like Primera . . .So I began training at the 'Ethos' to become just like Bishop Stone.

Scene shifts as Billy and Primera face each other by the window, Bishop Stone behind them and Billy backs off hurriedly from her, following Bishop Stone out the door. He says –

Billy: I left Prim in the care of the 'Ethos' and entered the monastery.

Prim walks toward the closed door and stops, then walks back towards the window as the scene fades . . .then Billy says in the darkness –
"Many years passed . . ."
Scene returns to Prim who stands in the room by the window, but she is older and Billy, all gown up walks in through the door. She turns, and, seeing him, jumps into the air. Billy says –

Billy: I finished training at the monastery and became an Etone.

Scene shifts as Billy stands at the small table with the candles and Prim walks over to him. View shifts to the right as he faces her.

Billy: I returned home to open the orphanage . . .

They both turn as the door opens and Jessie comes through.
Billy: And he . . .had unexpectedly come back.

Scene shifts as Billy stands before him, then walks away. He says –

Billy: But he was different. Some terrible accident changed him.
Billy walks back and stands with back turned.

Billy: Not only his looks, but his character and manner had entirely changed too. I remembered him as a quiet man . . .But . . .more than that, I thought maybe I didn't really remember him . . .That's why . . .I can never think of him as a father . . .
Scene shifts as both Primera and Billy stand before the altar and Jessie strides into view off to the left. Prim jumps and turns, making her way towards him as he leaves and she follows. Billy turns around and his voice is heard –

Billy: But Prim needed a father, and she'd become attached to him. Deep in my heart, I too thought I wanted a father. But . . .even now I just can't believe he is my real father.

Scene fades and cuts to the Gun Room as Billy faces the wall and says –

Billy: Hah! This is going to sound pathetic, but . . .I almost went so far as to sell my body to support Prim, since we only had each other for so long . . .
Despite that, Prim still prefers the father that she never knew . . .
The one who suddenly appeared out of nowhere . . .

Bart: 'Almost sold your body'!? Don't you know, kid . . .!?
There're things you can get back once sold, and there are things you just can't! Couldn't you see that!?

Billy turns to him and says –

Billy: Of course I refrained.
But they said they'd give me 3000G for one night . . .

Bart jumps up once and exclaims –

Bart: You fool! Listen . . .Next time you and your sister need help, come to my ship. We're self-sufficient, so at least you don't need to worry about food and a place to sleep! Now, don't you ever say 'sell your body' in front of me ever again . . .! You understand!?

Billy: Could this be . . .?
Maybe you are a 'nice guy' after all . . .?

There is a pause, then Bart says –
Bart: Why don't you just come out and say 'thank you'? Geez!

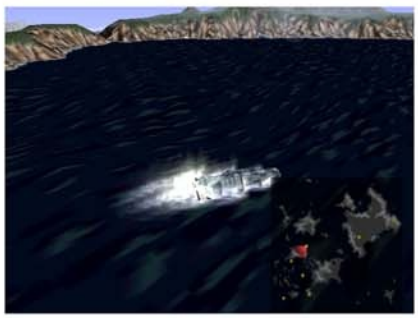
Billy says haltingly –

Billy: Uh . . .errh . . .well . . .you haven't taken care of us yet, so I won't say it!

Bart turns his back and says –

"Cute, kid, REAL cute!"

Scene fades and cuts to an overhead of the Yggdrasil as it makes its way northeast through the waters in the direction of the Reapers' ship. View swings around as a lighthouse on a promontory comes into view until it is facing the Yggdrasil. (tracks to a point somewhere south of the north continent)



Scene cuts to the Gun room as it shakes, then gradually subsides. Bart says to the others –

Bart: . . .Looks like we've made it already . . .

Billy: Can it be . . .? The transport ship's being attacked by Reapers . . .

Bart: . . .

Citan joins them and they go over to Maison who says –

Maison: Do be careful now . . .

They leave and go down to Margie's room and see someone new over on the bed next to the door. It's Primera and Billy climbs up on the bed to talk to her while Bart and Citan look on. Billy asks –

Billy: Prim! Why are you here!? Stay at the orphanage . . .

Prim turns her back and thinks –

Prim: . . .

Billy bows his head and asks –

Billy: Prim . . .won't you listen to your brother?

He raises his head as Margie says –

Margie: Billy, Primera followed you here because she's worried about you. Can't you see!? Let her stay a little while, (pause) okay!?

Billy turns to Margie and thinks, " . . ."

Then he turns to Prim and says –

Billy: . . .Well then . . .Don't you go anywhere, okay?

Without turning, she –

Prim: . . .

Billy turns to Margie and says –

Billy: Margie, please take care of my little sister.

They speak to Prim again and she –

Prim: . . .(and hold up a note)

'Primemo' there are three types of guns that are standard equipment for you . . .Handgun, Ether-gun, Big-gun. the only gun that can be re-equipped is the handgun. You can power-up guns by upgrading their respective 'ammo' or 'bullets'.

Goes on to instruct how to equip and how to watch out for limited supplies.

They leave and make their way up to the bridge where Sig says –

Sig: We have arrived at the transport ship. Be careful now, Billy . . .

They go into the anteroom and up the ladder to the outside. They climb a ladder from the blue sea to a rough green metal door. They enter the darkened interior, the sound of the wind and moving machine parts is heard all around them.

Citan: It is dark . . .

Bart: Woo, something stinks . . .

Billy: This unusual smell is that of the Wels.

The dimness fades and recedes and there is the vague impression of boxes and pipes all around them.

Billy: It sure looks like they attacked . . .One more thing.
On the room's middle wall is a red switch. Push the switch to turn on the lights.

Citan: Is it scary?

Billy turns around slowly and shakes his head –

Billy: . . .No . . .Just a little.

They join Billy and move on ahead into darkness. They push some boxes out of the way and see over to the right a glowing red switch. They flick it on and lights come on, revealing a crude metal chamber loaded with boxes and odds and ends. Wels come out and they fight several battles as they make their way in the bluish light of the lamps overhead. There are two doors and they try the east, but it won't open.

They try a ladder behind them and go out onto the deck above. They face east and the ocean spreads out all around them. Above where they stand on a ledge over the entrance is a huge gun. They make their way past the hatch they had used and find another. They drop down into a room that has bundles of something tied to the ceiling. They are hit by some of them as they move through and press a switch in the wall, opening a door on the opposite end of the room, dodging the swinging bundles . . . it's almost like a meat locker in here!

They find themselves in a narrow hall with a series of doors on the right and left.

Opening each, they find a shower room and Billy turns the handle. Red liquid pours out – Billy gives a jump, saying after a moment –

Billy: Looks like blood . . .what happened on this transport . . .(pause)
No wait, this is . . .water with rust in it. Let's hurry on ahead.

They leave and the door across leads to a storage room with a Cabin key, which they take. Another door leads to a small bunk room and the next to the same. They find another bunk room and leave, going to the door at the end of the hall, trying it –It's rusted shut!! They run up against it a few times and it flies off after the third or fourth try. They enter a room with a table in the center and move on to another door across from it. They see a ladder in the next room and climb up, emerging out onto the deck once more.

From this perspective, it appears as if the ship doesn't float on water, but uses several suspension modules to levitate it above the sea. the head toward the front and see below them a bridge suspended between two sections of the ship, leading from one door to the other. A hatch opens at their approach and they go down cautiously, dropping down to the floor below.

The view swings up to face them as something approaches from behind! A creature like the one in the sewers rushes them and they enter battle!

The fight with Bloody is fierce. He goes down after several rounds and as he lies on the floor, he mutter, "Um . . .I'm counting on (pause) you." He begins to sink into the floor and disappears. Billy walks over to the side and bows his head as he whispers –

Billy: (It's my buddy!! I'll call him over here.)

He nods once and the others join him and make their way through the control room, looking at posters of women tacked up on the walls, then they go to the door near the ladder.

Scene cuts to the roof of the orphanage where a red headed boy stands on top of the bell tower. He thinks, "!!" and jumps up, saying, "Billy's signal . . .!!"
He turns and begins ringing the bell as he calls out, "Hey everyone!! It's shift G!!"

View pills back to the boy on the windmill and he turns, calling out, "Wind direction, OK!!
Target coordinates – x1020, 2303!" The boy at the bell tower says, "Roger!! Engage auto pilot!"
He turns to the side and call out, "Catapault, ready!!"

The view swings down to the metal plates embedded in the ground as someone shouts, "Look out!" View pans over the metal as chickens squawk and over to several children on the see-saws, working furiously as they say, "Yeah, great!!" and "Push, pull!!"

View swings over to the metal plates once more as they slide open, revealing the outlines of a Gear! It rises out of the depths and with its blue and silver trim and flaring cape, it is truly wondrous.

It raises its arms as its engines begin to roar, sending out a shower of dust and the kid at the bell tower says, "Standby OK!!" then as the Gear thrums with life he says, "Ready?" he jumps down off the roof and onto a lever, shouting, "GO!!" with the other kids as the Gear springs up into the sky!

View switches to the blue sky as its afterburners recede into the distance overhead and he shouts , "Go get 'em!!" as the Gear becomes smaller with distance. Another boy says, "Today's launch was so-so."

Scene fades and cuts to a side view of the suspended bridge on the transport ship as Billy, Bart and Citan walk across, a creature lumbering up from the depths off in the distance. As it comes closer, Billy says –

Billy: Just as I thought. This transport's infested.
I must go to the 'Ethos' and tell Bishop Stone . . .

As they look out to sea, the view swings around to view them from behind as Citan says –

Citan: Huh? Something behind . . .

Bart turns to the side and says - (Citan faces monster)
Bart: There's nothing there but some fish jumping around. I love the sea. The cool breeze . . .so different form the desert. From now on I'm a man of the sea.

Citan turns to Billy and asks –

Citan: Billy . . .who is 'buddy'?

Citan turns to look at Billy who stares out at sea and responds –

Billy: . . .Hmm, it's probably its brethren. A giant Wels.
An entity we wouldn't stand much of a chance against by ourselves.
But don't worry, they're pretty slow. Even if that Wels called it, it probably won't reach us in time. But I called for my Gear anyway just to be safe.

Before them, the creature rises out of the sea in a spray of water as it raises its arms and moves forward as Billy says –

Billy: . . . . . .Faster than I expected. Well, here it comes.

Bart gives a jump and turns toward him –

Bart: Hey! What now? Didn't you just say that we wouldn't stand a chance against that by ourselves?

As the monster draws near, Billy says –

Billy: It should be any time now.

As the monster rears back, a flash of something goes by and the bridge is suddenly empty! The monster stares at the torn and dangling ropes where the bridge had once been.

The Yggdrasil crashes down into the ocean behind it. It turns to look and view pulls in closer on a lone Gear which lands on the hull, awaiting the creature's approach. As the beast comes forward, Billy says –

Billy: Great timing on the part of the kids. I owe them one.
Well, get ready cause here it comes.

The Giant Wels waves it arms in rage and scene cuts to battle! At first, their hits do little damage and the Wels attacks are mostly fule stealing. Billy hits it with an ether attack an it enlarges, its attack going up but its defense down. They hit upon an idea and hope that it works as they pump the creature with magic, watching it get larger and larger. At the crucial time, they return to physical attacks and at last the beast goes down.

Scene cuts to the Yggdrasil's bridge as Billy says to Bart and Citan –

Billy: Thank you for helping me, everyone. To be honest, that was too dangerous for me on my own. I couldn't have done it without you . . .

Bart: Is your job always this dangerous? Hah, I never thought you would call a Gear!? But, what in hell is the 'Ethos' thinking anyway?

Billy turns to him and says –

Billy: !! . . .We Etone are merely fulfilling our divine mission!

Bart: Sorry . . .It was wrong of me to say that. Don't take it so seriously! So, you're going to report back to the 'Ethos' about your job's results, right? Well, if you like, we shall give you a ride to the 'Ethos' H.Q. . . . It's on our way.

There is a pause, then Billy bows his head, saying –

Billy: That would be great, so long as it doesn't put you out . . .I have something to give you as a sign of my gratitude. So please accompany me into the 'Ethos' headquarters. Let's go . . .

They turns to Sig who asks –

Sig: Shall we launch the Yggdrasil?

They respond, " Go ahead!" and scene fades to an overhead of the vessel as it makes its way through the sea.

Return to the Ethos Headquarters

They make their way through the deep blue waters to the southwest around an island and towards the Ethos HQ., fighting enemies along the way. They land on the island and enter the Headquarters, finding a scene of devastation. Billy walks ahead of Bart and Citan and stops in the aisle, looking around slowly at the scattered bodies lying around. He stumbles out -

Billy: Th, this is . . .! What, what happened here?

One of the men on the floor begins to move towards him, calling -

Pr1: B, Billy . . .

Billy goes over to the fallen man and, kneeling down, asks -

Billy: Are you alright? What happened?

Bart and Citan walk forward as he responds -

Pr1: I don't know . . .Suddenly, I heard a gun shot . . . . .

He goes silent and Billy says -

Billy: Hey, hang in there! Hey!

Citan shakes his head and says to Billy as he kneels down -

Citan: . . .Unfortunately, he passed away.

Billy: Why . . .Why did this happen? . . . . . .This is . . .?

Billy starts and continues -

Billy: This is father's shell casing . . .Dammit . . .Don't tell me he stormed into the 'Ethos' headquarters in desperation?

Bart nods once slightly and says -

Bart: It's possible with him.

Bart and Citan join Billy and they check the other fallen men. All are dead. They make their way through the gold filigreed door to the cathedral and find another corpse. They go through the door leading into the hallway and see a creature attacking one of the robed priests who shout, "Wagggh!" and is taken down. Billy calls out -

Billy: Don't move! Who are you?

The creature turns around and says, " There are still survivors?" Battle begins! They win after fighting the Assassins and Billy asks -

Billy: Who . . .are these guys? Why're they attacking the 'Ethos'?

Bart shakes his head slowly and says -

Bart: Watch out, Billy. These guys are professional assassins.

Billy turns to face him and says -

Billy: What! Then, everyone . . .

Citan nods once and says -

Citan: Billy, pull yourself together. There must be people who could not escape. Let us go help them.

They join Billy once more and begin making their way through the monster infested hallways. They go through the dining hall to the kitchen and see the chef who says -

Chef: . . .wah, wah . . .(pause) Suddenly some men in black cam and killed everyone. I hurried and hid, so they didn't find me . . .

They leave and returns to the hallway, making their way across to the library where they find a few robed men sprawled on the floor. One moves and Billy kneels down to check on him. After a moment, he says -

Billy: . . .No good. He has passed away.

They look around and up on the balcony, but the others are all dead and they make their way back to the hallway, going across to the stairwell to the left of the dining hall. They climb up and see a creature at the end of the hall who says, "You're Etone! All that awaits those with the 'Ethos' (pause) is death!!" He strides forward and battle with the Assassins begins. They win and Billy asks -

Billy: What's going on? Are these guys in black gonna kill all of us who are with the 'Ethos'?

They move to the door at the end of the hallway and go across the suspended pathway above the cathedral, past another corpse. The go through the door and find the next hallway littered with corpses.

Across from them is another stairwell leading down and they choose the door to the right, entering an empty room. They fight more battles and leave, going down the hallway to the door at the end and find a room with one dead man. The wardrobe has been pushed aside, revealing a secret passageway and they go through, finding a stairwell leading down. At the landing, Billy sees a Bishop and kneels down.

Billy: Bishop! Are you alright?

The Bishop responds haltingly -

Bishop: O, oh . . .Billy . . .(pause) You're safe . . . . . .(The purge . . . has begun . . . We sinners . . .have brought god's judgement on mankind . . .

Billy: God's judgement? What do you mean, Bishop?

There is silence and Billy stands and says -

Billy: He's gone. What was he trying to tell me? Purge, (pause) I wonder what he meant?

They go down the remaining stairs and enter a blue metallic hallway. At the end of the hall, they go through the metal doors and see the pontiff at the end of the hall, surrounded by assassins and he says -

Pontiff: What is all this about!? Who are you all!?

Assassin1: You're still pretending you don't know anything?

Assassin2: You may be the leader of the 'Ethos', but you don't know when you're beaten.

Pontiff turns to Assassin 2 and asks -

Pontiff: It's been exposed?

Assassin3: Rebelling against us will cost you your life.

They charge him and he screams -

Pontiff: Ghaaaaaa!!

Billy and the others approach as he goes down and Billy calls out -

Billy: The Pontiff!!

He rushes forward and shouts -

Billy: Damn you . . .!!

The Assassins leave the bloody corpse behind and rush forward to meet them. Battle begins. They win and move off to a door on their right, entering the sickbay where the doctor says -

Doctor: W, what's happening? Those men in black are killing the 'Ethos' people indiscriminately!

They leave and go through a door to another section of the hallway. They take the left branch first and find a series of small cubicles which they check out. The first is empty, but in the second, they find a robed man. They approach him and he says -

M1: . . . . . .

Billy: Are you alright! Please answer me!

The man responds slowly -

M1: I . . . . . .don't . . . . .know . . . . .anything . . . . . I can't . . . . . talk . . . .anymore . . . . than . . .this

Citan: Pull yourself together! (pause)
Do not worry. We are on your side!

M1: . . . . ? . . . . . ! (pauses)
She . . . vat . . .Got . . .to . . .contact . . .Shev . . .vat . . .

Bart: 'Shevat'!? Did he just say . . .'Shevat'!?

Citan: This is a terrible wound. His life is in danger.

M1: . . .

Bart: Let's call my crew on the Ygg to come and help him out.

After a moment, they speak to the man and Billy says -

Billy: I contacted the Yggdrasil to come and help him.
So, he's taken care of. Let's hurry.

They leave and in the next cubicle, they find -

They leave and in the next cubicle, they find -
He walks forward and continues -

Big Joe: Oh, my best buddy!

Big Joe: You came all the way to save me, eh? Well done, well done. Someday, you'll brag about saving me! Adios amigos!

He walks past them and exits. They leave as well and make their way down the hall the next door which they go through into another section of the hallway. They go to the next door and enter a large cavernous chamber which slopes downward. Nearby is a lift which they use and find themselves in another metallic hallway. They go through a door across from them and scene cuts to a room filled with computer banks, glowing displays lighting its walls. Billy looks around and says -

Billy: Judging from our position, this room is right under the cathedral . . .Which could mean that this is the 'Ethos' (pause) data bank?

Bart: The 'Ethos' data bank?

They decide to get the others to come over and take a look at the situation. Elly comes forward and says -

Elly: I am sure of it! This has to be the 'Ethos' data bank!

Billy turns to her and nods once, saying -

Billy: This data bank holds all the information concerning the 'Ethos'. From the past to the present . . .everything! This facility is strictly off limits to us. Only the Bishop class can enter this area.

Bart shakes his head and says -

Bart: Yeah, but even then . . .this place is damn well equipped. Look at it!

Citan: I say . . .a facility of this magnitude would even be hard to find in Solaris. Why would the 'Ethos' have such a set up?

Elly shakes her head and says -

Elly: . . .Wait a minute! . . .This is Solaris' equipment!

Bart turns to her and says -

Bart: So, Solaris!?

Elly: Don't act so surprised! No matter how vast this world is, such advanced equipment as this could only come from Solaris.

Rico: The 'Ethos' has been assaulted by someone . . .And in the basement . . .we find a Solarian facility . . .

Citan ponders, then says -

Citan: Hmm . . .the plot thickens . . .

Bart turns to Billy and asks -

Bart: What's going on here? What is this place? Hey, Billy! You know anything about this!?

Billy turns to him, shakes his head and says -

Billy: Don't ask me . . .How would I know . . .
This is my first time in here . . .!

Rico: Then let's investigate . . .!?

Scene shifts to view party from the side as they look at the various holographic displays. They are seen through some of the ephemeral blue lights and Bart asks -

Bart: Citan, what is that being displayed there?

Citan sits before a console, Elly another and he says -

Citan: It looks like some transmission record from somewhere . . .We might be able to find some clues here. Wait one moment . . Alright . . .Now I am able to transmit it to the main displays.

They turns as the display shows:
1. IGNAS CONFLICT STATUS:
37th arms supplement - upgrading Aveh's
2. Report No. 50224 from Nortune's D
3. Transferring all Battle data. Also transferring to Solaris all data concerning A class Battlers' health conditions and estimated adaptation rates for type Y demihuman deployment . . .
1 cont - Gears from level D2 to D3. Monitor Kislev Gears at level D2.
Current balance = 4: 6 . . .
REPORT BY BISHOP SHAKHAN
OF THE IGNAS DIOCESE:
Due to the intervention of an uncertain factor, correction is needed. Progress of the operation has declined by 30% . . .

When it finishes, Bart says -

Bart: What the heck is this!? Why's the 'Ethos' looking into this kinda stuff? (then rushes out)
On top of that, that Shakhan's a bishop!? Wasn't he excommunicated from the 'Ethos' 17 years ago!?

Rico: That can't be the case if he's been sending in regular reports.

They all turn, Citan looks at his console as Elly exclaims -

Elly: Look, here! The destinations of all resources collected by the 'Ethos' through trade with each area . . .All the resources are being sent on to the Solaris homeland.

Billy shakes his head, then says –

Billy: B, but, why would the 'Ethos' be sending supplies to Solaris!?

Elly: I don't know . . .

Bart strides forward to another console nearby and says –

Bart: There's a terminal switch over here too. . . .Huh? What's with these letters? I can't read this.

Elly gets up and takes a look, then says –

Elly: This is the Solarian language, but it's been encoded. Hold on . . . . Um . . . .What is this . . . . .? . . . . .

Bart turns to her and says –

Bart: C'mon, hurry up!

Elly: Hold on! It's hard to translate this stuff! Umm . . . . . 'Lambs' . . .great war . . .collapse . . .re-education . . . . . .postwar rehab plan . . . . . .based on . . . . . .schedule for building 'Gate' foundations . . .'Lambs' . . .02 – 04 to Ignas . . .05 – 08 to Aquvy . . .11 - -16 to be uniformly distributed . . .Put into practice . . . . . 'Ethos' established as an organization . . . . . .Supervision by elders . . .conference . . .supervision by the Gazel!? The 'Ethos' is . . .!?

Rico: It's all a front! The 'Ethos' is really a subsidiary organization of Solaris.

Bart: Huh?

Bart turns to Rico and asks –

Bart: So . . .what does this all mean?

Billy and Bart turns to Elly as she says –

Elly: In short, it's like this . . .500 years ago, there was a great war that occurred between Solaris and the land dwellers. It's not clear what the outcome was, but after the war, Solaris feared another land dweller revolt . . .So Solaris built a 'Gate', or barrier, that separates Solaris' land from the rest of the world's land. The land dwellers who lived within this Gate were made to dwell as separate races and were thus supervised. To carry out the actual supervision, Solaris established the 'Ethos'. So the 'Ethos' is actually controlled by the 'Gazel Ministry', or Solaris' highest governmental body. So, yes, the 'Ethos' is really a 'front', or a subsidiary organization, working for Solaris! Excavation findings, goods and natural resources from the surface are transported to Solaris by the 'Ethos'. This also includes 'human resources', or people used for manual labor and so on. Basically, this here is the window between the planet's surface and Solaris up there in the skies above. According to these records, there's been an enormous amount of goods and people transferred to Solaris!

Rico: So the 'Ethos' has been manipulating us, heh. (pause) Anything else?

Elly turns to him and responds-

Elly: The rest is mainly about population distribution and excavation records. The amount of detailed information about races and their biological data kind of concerns me though . . .

Citan speaks from the other console –

Citan: Here is a relatively recent record . . . It also indicates that there has been a large amount of people sent to Solaris . . .The majority of them were people who had come to the 'Ethos' seeking help or spiritual salvation.

Billy turns to him and shakes his head, exclaiming –

Billy: This can't be! I've heard nothing of the sort!

Bart turns to Billy and Rico asks –

Rico: So what happened to all those people you've seen coming here for help?

Billy turns to Rico and says –

Billy: They became Etones . . .like me . . .

Bart: Surely not all of them? What happened to the ones that didn't become Etones?

Billy: Well . .arrh . . .?

Bart turns and gives a partial bob of his head and says –

Bart: It's all becoming clear then, eh . . .How about it, Elly?

He turns to her and she nods once –

Elly: There are facilities in Solaris for accommodating surface dwellers . . . I know! The 3rd class citizen level – Earth dwellers of various races are regularly sent there as manual labor.

Rico: So this is the source of their labor supply.

Billy: But that's impossible . . .! How could that be . . .

Billy: Even if that was the case, who would kill all those 'Ethos' people, and why!?

Citan: This could be your answer . . .

Billy turns to him and asks –

Billy: What?

Citan: The 44th salvage plan.

Bart turns to him and asks –

Bart: The 44th salvage plan? Isn't that what the Captain of the Thames was talking about?

Citan: This is the only plan that is not linked to Solaris . . .It must have been initiated by the 'Ethos' itself, as a completely independent project. It was commenced about . . .19 years ago. (pause) Allow me to display the data . . .

On screen they see –

" . . .Completed investigation of the Zeboim city which sank to the bottom of the sea approximately 4000 years ago . . .After over 100 test digs, the city center has been ascertained . . .Excavation planned to begin . . ."

Citan: So, from this, it appears that under Aquvy lies an ultra-ancient civilization. They have been doing a huge number of test-digs and obtained a vast supply of resources from the ruins. Biological weapons . . .reactive weapons . . .Hmm . . . I see, so this must be their intention . . .My assessment of the circumstances is that the 'Ethos' is attempting to break away from Solaris . . .And once freed from its master, it is likely to attempt world domination on its own.

Rico: Attempt a breakaway . . .and attempt world domination . . . That's rather ambitious!

Citan: Yes, but the real intentions of the 'Ethos' are quite obvious . . . The fact that they are not reporting the results, let alone the site's very existence, gives it away . . .The 'Ethos' is planning to revolt by monopolizing this ultra -advanced civilization's resources! Actually, such rebellions have been quite common . . .

Elly: So, do you think Solaris is responsible for this attack on the 'Ethos'?

Citan gets up from his seat and walks over partway, then turns to the screen and nods once –

Citan: Yes, that is probably it. (pauses) Shall we move along? There could be more to find yet!

There is silence and Billy stares off into the distance. He speaks –

Billy: The 'Ethos' . . .My 'Ethos' . . .My faith . . .

Bart turns to him and says –

Bart: Hey, Billy! How long you plannin' on being like that? Get a hold of yourself!

All turn to Billy and Citan says –

Citan: This is all just speculation based on circumstantial evidence. It would be best for you to confirm what is the truth with your own eyes.

There is silence, then Elly says –

Elly: You go on ahead. Rico and I will take the 'Shevite' back to the Yggdrasil.

Scene fades and returns to the computer room where Bart, Billy and Citan make their way out to the hall where Billy pauses, shaking his head as he says –

Billy: . . . . .I . . . . .still can't believe it. The 'Ethos' was that dubious an organization . . . What was it that I believed in . . .all this time?

They hear a voice from down the hall –

"Isn't that the very reason why I told you back then . . .that you belong with us . . .?"

View shifts to two robed men, and Billy turns to them, saying –

Billy: V . . .Verlaine!?

Verlaine: You're defiled, (pause) Billy. You left the 'Ethos' and kept company with dregs who have no faith at all. And you lost sight of what it means to be defiled. I didn't expect it out of you . . . You who used to live only for your faith. (pause) You should have remained like us. But fear not, Billy. I shall cleanse you. You'll live within me. You will become one with me in death . . .

There is a sound of a whizzing bullet and the purple robed man goes down. Verlaine turns to the side and exclaims –

Verlaine: What!?

Jessie appears from the left and Verlaine slowly backs away, saying –

Verlaine: Y, you . . . . . .

Billy: Father! How could you do that!?

Jessie turns to him and laughs, saying –

Jessie: What are you getting so flustered about, (pause) boy? It was a stun bullet. He's just taking a nap. You should've been able to tell by the sound it made! Besides, these murderers are not (pause) from the 'Ethos'!

He walks towards Verlaine, saying –

Jessie: Look!

View swings around to face Billy as he exclaims –

Billy: That symbol . . .!

Jessie crosses his arms and nods once, then says –

Jessie: Yes, that's right. They're agents of Solaris! Probably an assassination unit under Stone's command! I got word that they were exterminating all 'Ethos' members, and hurried here. But I was too late . . .All 'Ethos' affiliates have already been killed, except for those on some sort of salvage mission.

Billy: You claim Verlaine and his men are an assassination unit for the Bishop!? How could you even say such blasphemy!?

Verlaine: That's right . . . We are servants of thr Bishop. Our mission is to hand out judgement on fallen priests and sinners in order to make them repent.

Billy backs away and asks –

Billy: Is that true, Verlaine? (pause) But why people from the 'Ethos'?

Both Jessie and Verlaine turn to Billy and Verlaine says –

Verlaine: The pontiff and his brethren deserve to die! They allowed greed to tempt them into abandoning their 'duties as the 'Ethos' ' to pursue world domination. They passed their own death sentences when they allowed such desires to overtake them. And that's Verlaine: The pontiff and his brethren deserve to die! They allowed greed to tempt them into abandoning their 'duties as the 'Ethos' ' to pursue world domination. They passed their own death sentences when they allowed such desires to overtake them. And that's not all. Saving orphans and refugees . . .that may seem like works of mercy. But the little boys and girls kept here were actually used as means to satisfy the desires of the pontiff and bishops. Indulging in selfish desires . . . This is not 'conduct befitting priests'! Such defiled leaven have no right to speak for god. That is why we set out on this purification work. They must atone for their sins. These are the Bishop's orders!

Billy shakes his head and says –

Billy: Even if that were true, we have no right to punish others! Judgement belongs to god. (pause) That is what we were taught, wasn't it!?

Verlaine: God? Where does such a being exist? You should know by now how the 'Ethos' came about . . . It was an organization created by Solaris aeons ago solely for the purpose of managing ignorant humans. Its doctrines are just deceptions designed to control the masses. The 'Ethos' used the two sweet fruits of 'faith' and 'technology' well to skillfully manipulate global affairs and people's zeal. Thus, they manipulated the ignorant masses to repeatedly continue their pointless wars. Eventually, battle data on 'man' and 'weapons' gleaned form these wars, were sent to Solaris itself . . . And analyzed to aid in ruling the entire Earth. These intentionally perpetuated wars caused much psychological discord. But faith in 'god' . . .salvation . . .was used as a cushion to soften the blow. It was a well thought-out system. But the choice of managers was extremely poor. Or did you think that acting the part of a faithful servant would someday yield an answer from a great god somewhere? Can't you see that such a divine being just 'never existed from the beginning'? And you don't seem to realize this, but you yourself were 'passing judgement on sinners' as much as we were!

Billy: I . . .I have been passing judgement?

Verlaine: That's right. Daily you have been dirtying your hands as an accomplice . . .

Another voice comes –

"Are you trying to take away my ultimate pleasure, Verlaine?"

Verlaine: Gha – ha!!

Verlaine crumples to the floor and view switches to one of Billy from the side where Stone and two men are visible at the far door. Billy kneels near Verlaine and says

Billy: Verlaine! Verlaine!

Stone: A good-for-nothing chatterbox such as you has no right to live.

Billy turns to Stone and asks –

Billy: Bishop! Why Verlaine!? What in heavens are you trying to accomplish!?

Stone: I am the inquisitor sent to Earth from Solaris.

Bart: The inquisitor?

Stone: The status of bishop is merely a convenience for my activities on Earth. The 'Ethos' was created as a Solaris sub – organization and given the task of managing the earth dwellers. But over the years, the 'Ethos' started to set up convenient doctrines for itself . . .It then went on to gather the ignorant masses, and created a god for them to believe in. Then, the 'Ethos' even went so far as to plot a separation from its creator, Solaris. So Solaris had no choice but to eliminate all those who defy our rule and raise the flag of rebellion. The ones prepared to 'eliminate' were . . .the Etones, 'the Atoners', the organization I established within the 'Ethos', had two purposes . . .On the surface their aim was to eliminate the 'Reapers' or –Wels- that run rampant on the earth. But, that's not their only purpose. Behind the scenes, we also had selected men like Verlaine. These were responsible for observing and eliminating any corrupt people who appeared in the 'Ethos'. You didn't have the chance to learn of this, since you left the 'Ethos' so early . . . Or actually, I just never told you. There was 'another role' I wanted you to perform!

There is a pause, Then Billy says –

Billy: Another . . .role!?

This last word is said in a rush and Stone responds -

Stone: Billy. (pauses) There are certain things in this world that you're happier not knowing. Even lies and deceptions can become the truth for some people of the earth . . . Particularly those not knowing the true nature of things, or how those systems of things works. In fact, the –god- and –faith- systems set up by the 'Ethos' were the truth itself, were they not?

Billy: Tell me! What other 'role' were you talking about!?
What did Verlaine mean when he spoke of (pauses) 'judgement'!?

Stone: So you want to know? (pause) But can you bear the full weight of the truth? Billy, if you can bear that weight, then I'm willing to tell you.

Billy: . . .

Stone: You believed that you were saving wandering souls, didn't you . . .? That's why you carried out your cleansing of the 'Reaper' -Wels- from the earth, right? In fact it was all just another control system put in place by Solaris. But what's more, your 'saving' work . . .that very activity you believed in so much, (pause) was in reality . . .

Jessie appears from the side and says –

Jessie: You're talking too much nonsense!

Billy turns to Jessie and says –

Billy: Father!

Jessie walks forward and faces Stone –

Jessie: You haven't changed at all since then . . .(pause) have you, Stein?

Billy turns to Jessie and says –

Billy: Stein?

Stone: That's a name I haven't been called for a long time . . .Hearing that name vividly brings back a pleasant twinge of pain to the 'scars on this body.' You know what I mean, Jesiah?

Jessie: Huh, your brain still isn't working right. (then he rushes out) Answer me! Why do you have such a 'roundabout way of doing things'!?

Stone: That's not worth wasting my breath answering . . .Just consider it 'my reward in life' . . .Of course, that includes watching your agonizing death. I could succumb to the desire to slice up your body here and now, and drag out your innards . . .But I can't do that now, I have a matter to attend to elsewhere. That 'duty' comes before any pleasure I could have with you here. I haven't the time to waste anymore!

Jessie draws his shotgun, saying –

Jessie: I won't let you go that easily, Stein!!

Stone: I can't be bothered by such insignificant wretches like you.

Stone backs off and the two men come forward.

Stone: Until next time! And, as a parting gift, I'll have these men entertain you!

Billy walks forward and says –

Billy: Bishop Stone!

Stone: Well then, excuse me. Oh and Billy! If you have something you wish to discuss, come see me later. I'll be waiting for you.

The battle begins! More assassins and the three win easily. Scene returns to the hallway where Jessie says –

Jessie: Stein, you aren't goin' anywhere!!

He walks to the door and the others follow. Scene cuts to a large gray metal room which overlooks a landing bay. Jessie stands at a bank of computers located on a raised portion of the floor and says –

Jessie: Just missed him. Looks like Stein's . . .

He draws his shotgun and points –

Jessie: There.

A large Gear rises from the pit near the far wall and view cuts back to the room from behind the party as Bart asks –

Bart: What (pause) is that huge Gear!?

Jessie: The mobile Gear of Solaris was . . .Alkanshel, (pauses)
wasn't it, Hyuga?

Citan turns and his hands rise briefly –

Citan: What? Yes, something like that.

Jessie: It may be big but it's slow to maneuver, so we'll be alright in our Gears. But its firepower is phenomenal. Against a bigger target, like a ship, BLAM! It'd be all over. (pauses) Ain't that right, Hyuga?

Citan nods once and says –

Citan: Yes . . .Probably . . .

Jessie: (without turning) See what I mean?

Citan: What? . . . Oh, yes. (pauses) . . .but, wait . . .(pause)
Then that means . . .

Bart: The Captain and crew are in danger!
They don't know anything about this!

Billy nods once and says –

Billy: I think the Yggdrasil can catch up with the Gear.
Let's hurry and go help the Thames' fleet.

Scene fades.

Purge from the Sky

Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as a crewman reports –

C1: I've picked up the 'Ethos' fleet and the Thames on the radar, sir. They're on the sea south of here. If we travel at full speed we can reach them in an hour.

Sig: Alright! Set sail for Thames!

C1: Aye, aye, sir!

C2: First mate! The radar sir . . .

Sig: What is it?

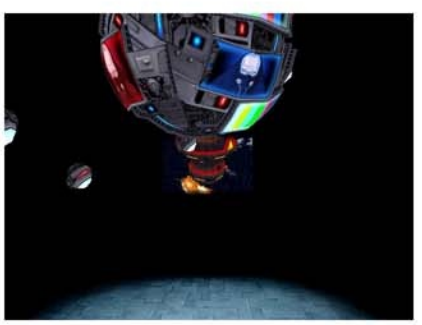
C2: The radar just detected an enormous object! It appeared straight above the fleet!

Bart: Don't tell me Stone's there already!?

C2: No, it is much bigger than that! I estimate it's at least 2000 sharls!

Billy: That's gigantic . . .What in the heavens is happening . . .?

Scene cuts to the room of the Gazel Ministry. A screen displays the giant vessel as it hovers over the smoking Thames. The orbs flash by in the foreground as they rotate and view pulls back to encompass most of the sphere as one says –



All that was needed was to fulfill the duty.
Now, I sense a thought of greed.

A selfish creed . . .I question his . . .faith.

We have no need for an organization of fanatics.

We will seek what they will . . .it's their nature.

But, too much is undue, something must be done.
A reprimand is necessary.

They are an expendable group. There is nothing we can do at this point.

Yes, there is nothing more to gain from their continued existence.

SE1: They've already done what we required. Currently, we're in the process of 'dealing' with each area responsible.

Stein is in charge of dealing with Aquvy.

Bear in mind the need for a 'fitting solution'.

Didn't we just take care of that?

Moreover, Krelian is . . .rather exorbitant. It's only a molecular machine. Why is he placing so much importance on it?

'Humans' and 'machines', it's all the same to us.

Yes, they are all the same . . .

View pulls in once more to the screen which displays the black and red giant vessel and fades to the blue sky with the huge ship off to the right. View pulls in to it and scene cuts to the interior of a bridge as a crewman reports –

C1: Main gun, 20 until the energy is recharged.

C1: Engineering, ready for a full demonstration. Main ship, military units are on standby.

View pans to the left as another crewman becomes visible and a console on the foreground. The bridge appears to have a raised pathway down the center, surrounded by the gray metal of the walls, loaded with electronics and several men stand at consoles. The crewmen are all dressed in a black helmet, all are blond and their clothes are black, brown and a touch of red. The man reports –

C2: Clean up is at 80%. Currently, our heading is clear.

The sound of machinery fills the bridge, and as the view pans to the left, a pale haired man is revealed at the center, surrounded by computers as another crewman reports –

C3: Krelian, there are several ships that have not been vaporized. What should we do?
View switches to one facing Krelian as he says –

Krelian: Lambs 03, 05 and 11 are damaged, just retrieve the non - damaged ones. Eliminate the rest of the trash. Use the t est subjects, Wels, for retrieval and elimination.

C4: We've confirmed the marker locations of Stein. Of the 130 research and excavation sites, it's in the southernmost peak.

C5: Shocktroopers are entering Zeboim now.

View switches to a close up of Krelian and he shakes with laughter, saying –

Krelian: I see . . .The thing they've searched for over 500 years . . . This should be interesting.

He nods once and a crewman reports –

C3: Releasing the Wels.

Scene fades and cuts to the metal surface of the Thames' hull and the windows through which the Captain can be seen. View pans to the left as he says –

Captain: What's that!? Did you see that huge fishbowl thing?

Hans, visible in the foreground, asks –

Hans: What are you asking me for . . .?

Captain: Weren't the other salvager fleets almost blown away by one shot? Is this the way the 'Ethos' greets us?

Hans turns to the Captain and says -

Hans: I seriously doubt that! Why do they have to attack us? We only came to help with excavations . . .

View switches abruptly to the inside of the bridge as the birdlike demi human jumps up and down, exclaiming -

BirdM: C, captain, Wels Reapers! Reapers are coming out of that fishbowl thing in the dozens!

Captain: (turns to him) What!?

Hans turns to look out the windows and says -

Hans: Why . . .? This can't be happening . . .

View pulls into them as the Captain raises his long scope to his eye and looks out.

Captain: . . . . .Launch the Gears! Load the big gun!

Hans turns to him and exclaims -

Hans: Captain!?

The Captain looks from him to the others and back out to sea as he says -

Captain: Alright, y'all! We're going to assist and rescue any of the survivors from the other ships . . . . . .if at all possible while trying to retreat! And shoot down those Wels with our two guns! Don't let those filthy Wels get near our Thames! (turns to Hans) Hans! Look alive! Take the helm! We'll show that fishbowl thing how real men of the sea retreat!

Hans: Y, yessir!

Scene cuts to the armor ground as people race around panicked beneath the umbrellas. View pulls back to reveal a Gear as it confronts one of the huge Wels - it is just like the one which Billy and the others had defeated on the Reaper's ship. Scene fades as the Wels strikes down the Gear and cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as a crewman reports -

C1: I've detected a rescue signal! It seems the Thames is being attacked by a pack of Reapers!

Bart: So this is the purging by Solaris that Stone was talking about!?

Sig, Billy and Bart turn to Citan as he says -

Citan: Let us make haste! Otherwise the Thames will be destroyed by Reapers!

Scene fades.

Deep Beneath the Ocean

Sig: Let's hurry to the Thames!!

They launch the Yggdrasil and make their way southeast in the ocean towards the Thames. They dock and make their way up to the bridge to speak to the Captain. On the bridge, the Captain turns to them and says -

Captain: Oh, Citan. You came because you were worried?

Citan: Yes, you could say that. But you seem to be better off than I expected.

Captain: Of course.

He adopts the flaring pose, arms outspread - "We are" -To the right - "Men!" -again to the right with panache!- "of the Sea!!" View rotates to the Captain from the side as he faces them once more and says -

Captain: . . . is what I'd like to say . . . . . .but the truth is the situation's been pretty bad. We've got some that are injured badly and some that are fatal. But considering what happened to the other ships, we're in no position to complain. And by the way, Citan. What the hell is up with that fishbowl thing? It came out of nowhere and kicked our butts and left behind the Wels. And then, it headed for some obscure excavation site where there's supposed to be nothing. Odd, since we were sent to go to a more deeper and bigger excavation site.

Citan ponders, foot tapping and says -

Citan: Just as I thought . . .

Captain: Some say they saw a huge Gear - like monster. It seemed like it was guiding that fishbowl thing to the excavation site. Or so I'm told.

Citan looks up and says slowly -

Citan: Stone . . .(pauses) It appears there is something there for sure.

Captain: Call it salvager's intuition, but I don't wanna get any closer. And Citan, is that fishbowl an enemy of yours?

Citan: You . . .(pause) could say that.

Captain: Well, I won't ask for revenge. But I can't just sit back and do nothing. If you're against it, we'll help any way we can. You can ask Hans anything about the site.

They go over to Hans who turns to them and says -

Hans: Fishbowl was headed due north. The north edge of that island . . .But why? There's nothing there but a small mine.

They go to the birdlike demihuman who says -

BirdM: I was surprised by the Wels. They said they came from Babel Tower.

The white haired older man near the helm says -

Om1: I've held onto this seat for 30 years. But when Wels attacked, I thought about running.

They go onto the beer hall and a little girl near the windows says -
Lg1: Men are so weak. They try to forget about their fear of the Reapers with that crap.
The dark skinned man near the bay of windows says -
M1: I didn't go ashore this time either. Even though I thought I would.
The two guys at the table near the windows say -
M2: Well, let's toast to the Thames' survival!
M3: Now we can drink some more.
M2: Amen to that!
M3: But what will our next job be?
M2: What's your job?
M3: Oh, this and that. Forget about that.
Over at the table with 4 people, a dark haired man says -
M5: They're such wimpy drinkers, that's why they got beat by the fishbowl thing.
Dr1: Hey, yush din't drink yous, dat wash mine.
M6: Hey, do something with this old drunk. He's worse company than Wels.
They go into the sickbay and see a pink dolphin with a smaller gray behind one of the partitions -
Anna: My husband was eaten by that Reaper -Wels- thing . . .We three were the only ones saved. What do we do now?
The younger one says -
Lance: Hey, are you picking on my mom?
A demihuman with along tail says -
Dh: Only I . . . . . .survived. My comrades were taken off and eaten by the Wels . . .

A mole-like demihuman nearby says -
Mole: Boy was it a shock. We were all enthused about being able to finally dig up stuff at the excavation site. Then . . .ZAP! . . .This beam went by! It was so bright, I thought my eyes were gonna burn up. But then a Gear from the Thames saved me. Boy am I ever thankful . . .! But why did that fishbowl thing attack us? Was it trying to get at the site?
They leave and go down the screw elevator to the deck and speak to some of the Gears -
G1: Having that job form the 'Ethos' ruined, I guess there's no other way for me to make a living 'cept diving . . .sigh . . .
G2: The Reapers are good from afar but afar from good. It's the biggest mistake they'll ever make if they mess with a beefcake like me.
G3: With my warm up exercises, I'll be able to save all the drowning people. Yeah . . .

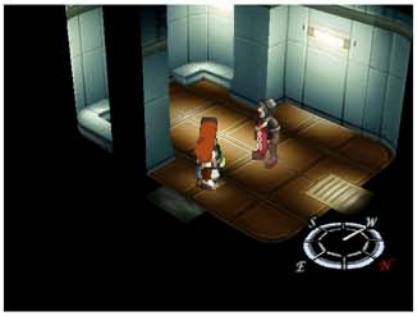
They go to the Armor Grounds and the little boy near the entrance says -
Lb1: I'm sure the Wels are followin' us 'cus of the Captain.
He rushes forward and adopts the pose - "Men!" -to the left - "of the sea!" -flashes to the right - sort of gets it . . .
"never lose . . . . . .Hey!"
He looks around and jumps up slightly, saying -
Lb1: Ah, here, yep, just a little more.
A Battler nearby with pink hair says -
B1: The Reapers . . .are scary.
They climb up on the roof of the store to the two little kids and the girl says -
Lg1: My big brother is so scared of the Wels he won't go to the bathroom alone. (as he shivers) Pathetic. Just calm down.
Lb2: My lil' sister pushed me. She always bullies me. I'm so scared. I'm scared of the Wels too.
They go down and speak to the irate store owner who says -
M1: I'm not closing down even if the Wels show up. If you need something, talk to my stupid son.

They leave the armor grounds and go to the supply entrance. They speak to a man circling a fire.
M1: That job from the 'Ethos' was ruined. Unfortunately, I'll have to delay that job . . .but I'm a bit relieved.
They go down the steps and run into a drunk -
Drunk: Yeah!!! I . . .on't nee . . .tooo . . .do . . .job . . .(he turns at the sound of "HEY!!" and he runs as his boss rushes towards him) Oh noooo! B . . .boss!!
They go over to a little girl who stands near a big gun and says -
Lg1: That's it! I'm gonna be a Wels hunter! BLAM! BAM! KABLAM! Waste 'em all! Just call me the Wels Lady Hunter . . .
Nearby, a little boy says -
Lb1: The other day, I saw a Gear fighting and it made me want to be a gear pilot . . .sigh . . .So many choices.
A man near the exit says -
M2: Man! Just when I thought I could get all the treasure from that excavation out of this supply entrance . . .
Over in the corner, near a fire, two people speak.
Dr2: Well, I got one thi - . . . . .(runs in huge circle, at last returns) . . . .pant. . . . . .pant . . . . .what was I talking about?
The dark skinned man across from him says -
M3: . . . You're awesome! You're probably the best salvager in the world . . .
Dr2: R . . .Really? Looks like you're finally beginning to appreciate my greatness.

They go to the screw elevator and down to the dock. They board the Yggdrasil and make their way to the bridge and speak to Sig who says -

Sig: Let's head to the excavation site.
We're currently anchored at the Thames . . .

They choose to leave the Thames and scene cuts to an overhead of the Yggdrasil as it sails north in the sea to the island where a small gray building is visible on the bluffs. They land on the beach and mount their Gears, making their way over to the building.



They enter a room in which a lift is visible descending down a ramp to the left. Elly says -

Elly: I heard there's nothing in this excavation site.

Billy: Citan, (pause) what is Solaris trying to do?

Citan: The main Solaris army . . .(pauses)
why . . .all this . . . Well let us get down.

They go over to the lift and take it down the ramp to the lower level. They make their way to a door across from them which is seemingly cut out of bare rock, metal plates lying all around as though discarded. The site appears to be abandoned. They go through the opening and find their way blocked by a Gebler guard, they fight some of them and these are the same as those seen on the large vessel with Krelian. They win and scene returns to a small room with its metal walls and a door to the right. They enter and scene cuts to a dark blue sea, yellow fish swimming in a school and view pans to the left to reveal Grahf's Gear as he hovers with arms crossed in the water. View cuts to a side view of Grahf in his cockpit, and a series of flashing lights precedes Miang's voice -

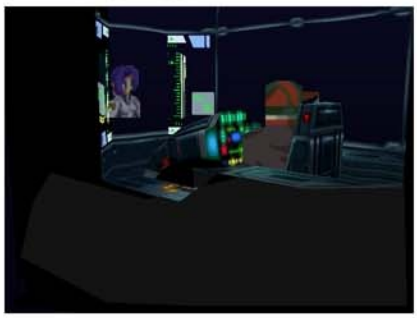
Miang: . . .Did you notice? His Gear is reawakening.
Soon, he himself will awaken also.

There is silence and view cuts to one from slightly behind Grahf as his forward screen shows Miang and she continues, light still flashing -

Miang: His friends are heading for Zeboim. It's been sealed up for 4000 years. You know what's there better than I do. He probably won't give anyone anything. But it's something we both need. You know what I mean?

There is silence and view shifts to one facing Grahf from slightly above as she says -

Miang: . . .so, please.



He remains silent and scene cuts to view of his Gear once more as it hovers within the deep blue water, small bubbles rising all around from the depths. His engines roar to life and the entire view shakes as he begins to rise.

Scene returns to the three in a lift which descends rapidly, a dull hum coming to their ears and lights flash by quickly as they descend. It halts and they emerge put into a small chamber which is dominated by the pillar in the center that houses the lift. The walls have a slight greenish tinge and there are three doors. They try the one to the side of the lift, but it's locked. The one opposite doesn't open either and they try the last, finding themselves on a suspended bridge above a vast chamber below. Dimly seen in the red glow are clusters of what appear to be buildings and streets and they walk across slowly, taking in the spectacular view. As they reach the center, the view pulls back reveal the magnificent display and they pause, looking on.

Elly walks forward and says -

Elly: . . . I know, I know it well . . . Yes... the cavern city Zeboim...
When we were buried in that vast mausoleum.

Elly nods.

Citan: Elly! Elly! What is wrong!!

Elly shakes her head and turns back to the others.

Elly: Huh? . . . What? . . . Did I just . . .

Citan: No . . . Hurry on ahead.

They begin walking once more and the city blocks seem immensely far away below them. They reach the other side and go through the door into a stairwell leading up, a dim red light far overhead. This place is full of shadows and a thick silence blankets all. They enter the door at the top and go into a room which is dimly lit, fighting more Gebler guards as they pass through. There are scattered plates of metal and old yellow tape where black shapes line the room on either side. They go through the door at the other end and find themselves in a long corridor which branches off in several directions with doors interspersed throughout. Most won't open but there are many battles as they explore and find a Gebler guard near one of the doorways. The defeat him and go through to another lift which takes them further down. They emerge out into a long narrow red lit room and walk to the other side, finding themselves in another corridor which is blocked by a Gebler guard. They defeat him and go through the other door, pausing when they find themselves in another of the red lit chambers. Citan says -

Citan: Rather strict airlock and scanning equipment . . .
It does not look operational though . . . .The inside is preserved so well, the outside probably too . . .

They go across to the other door, emerging out into another long corridor which turns to the right. They fight more Gebler guards and see two doors at the end of the hall. They go to the one at the end and find a room with green pillars along the back wall, extending out into the room.

Elly: Oh! . . .

Citan turns to Elly.

Citan: Elly . . . Do you remember seeing this?

Elly turns to Citan.

Elly: Y, yes . . . . . I wonder why . . .?
It's terribly lonely . . . and familiar.

They move over to the computer which reads out, "Emergency level 5 Presently, the central reactor is isolated. Emergency level 5. Presently, access to all main laboratory databases is denied."

They leave and go back down the hallway to the other door. Entering, they find themselves in a dimly lit stairwell descending down and they go through the door at the bottom, emerging out into one of the red lit chambers. They make their way through and out into another corridor which branches off to the right and left. The right leads to a dead end and they go left, finding another door recessed into an alcove. They go through a red lit chamber and through the door on the other end, finding themselves in another sloping corridor.

Billy: . . .This is one strange building . . .Airlocks, scanners, encircling hallway. Huh, . . .it's as though they didn't want anyone inside . . .Now it looks ruined, like some empty and hollow dream.

Citan: . . .Labyrinths are not necessarily built to protect against enemies . . .They are usually made to seal up something inside of them.

Billy: . . .I wish you hadn't said that.

They leave and go down the hall where more Gebler guards await them. They fight and move on to two more doors, one on the left and one ahead. They go ahead and enter, finding a small room with a computer to the left and a green section through a door ahead. A single suspended pillar casts the glow and they go to the computer. Finding it unresponsive, they leave and go down to the other door, entering another stairwell leading to a door below. They try the door and receive a message:

"Emergency level 5 The emergency button inside the reactor was activated 34999999 hours ago. From this point there is danger of nano contamination. When entering the room, please execute a manual scan and confirm safety. After confirming, please reset the emergency level at the nearest terminal. Execute the manual scan?"

They respond, [Execute] and it says, "Please wait."

. . . .(pause) . . . . . .Scan complete. Confirmed, no nano contamination. You can reenter the room by resetting the emergency level at the nearest terminal.

They go back up the stairs and down the hall to the right to the large computer room. The computer reads out -

" Reactor internal safety confirmed. Please reset emergency level. Reset emergency level?"

They respond, [Reset] and it say, "Please wait. (pause) Reset complete. Presently, emergency level is normal."

They leave and go back down the hallway to the stairwell. They go down the stairs and through the doorway into another red lit scanning room to the door opposite. As they enter, a siren sounds and yellow lights flash as a message says, " 'Decreasing pressure' Please wait." As the yellow flashes continue, Citan says -

Citan: This floor is completely active.

The flashing stops and the message reads -

'Pressure decreased' They walk forward and find themselves in a small chamber facing two doors. They choose the one to their left and enter a red-tinted passageway. Citan walks forward a couple of steps then stops. Elly walks away from the others a short way, then stops and looks down at her hands.

Elly: . . . Blood . . . covered in blood . . . my . . . blood . . .
There was no pain. Just . . . coldness and sadness . . .

Citan:! Elly!"

Elly: She has been here all by herself for all this time . . .

Elly turns to the far door and shakes her head. She turns and walks past Citan and Billy and out the door. Citan turns to the wall on his left, then examines all sides of the right wall, then he turns back to the front right section.

Citan: Blood . . .? It certainly is covered in blood . . . And this . . . scorching heat . . . No, maybe it is radiation? Perhaps it is an emergency disinfection system . . . These marks are evidence that it has been used . . .

A door is heard behind them. Citan turns-

Citan: ! Elly!

Scene opens in the control room next door. Elly is standing in front the computer monitors. She clicks a switch twice, and then looks down with her arms folded.

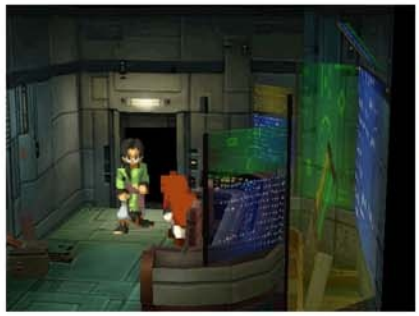
Elly: ' Oh vessel for a new soul!
May the soul who resideth in you find peace.'

Electronics are heard humming. Thr screens come to life with scrolling text. Code begins to fly up the screens at a tremendous rate. Scene cuts to behind Elly on the side opposite the door. Citan enters.

Citan: No, Elly! We do not know what could happen!

Elly turns to Citan, arms folded, looking down.

Elly: Citan . . . Who . . . am I . . .?
What am I doing? What am I saying . . .?



Scene cuts to an octoganal shaped room with a greenish glowing shape on the floor with an apparatus suspended above it. The view pulls in closer as the green tinted glass doors leading into the chamber open and the apparatus rises, revealing a blue green pillar of light. It halts and several flashes of light within slowly resolve into a human form . . . a young girl as she floats within the glowing pillar, tiny bubbles rising around her. Scene cuts back to the red lit hall as the three stand in the doorway. Citan strides forward, then stops, saying -

Citan: What the . . .

Elly and Billy come forward and the door slides shut behind them. They make their way down to the green glass doors which part at their approach. They enter the octoganal room where the small girl hovers in the blue green pillar of light. They approach and view pulls in for a closer look -

Citan: This girl appears to be an artificial lifeform created inside the reactor. She was probably assembled in the reactor by using that series in the database in the central room . . .
Her body is most likely . . .

A voice calls from the right -

Stone: . . .Constructed from autonomic machines on a molecular scale . . .In other words, a colony of nanomachines.

They turn to face Stone and his entourage of three men, One by one, they enter, two robed in purple and one in green. Stone enters last and he says -

Stone: I'll be taking that nanomachine colony with me, thank you . . .That is the existence, or key -factor-, which god will guide us by to free humanity from its yoke.

Stone looks around at his men and continues -

Stone: So, if you don't mind . . .

The two purple robed men walk to either side and the pillar of light slowly lifts, revealing the girl with green hair as she settles gently to the platform below her, dripping with water and Billy says -

Billy: Bishop . . .

Stone: Ah, Brother Billy. You're here too. This makes matters simple. I know you'll understand . . . This nanomachine colony needs to be in the hands of an honorable person. It's destined to be the 'salvation of humanity'.

Billy: An honorable person? I certainly do not think you are honorable anymore. Eliminating the 'Ethos' and any surface-dwelling humans who don't agree with your own will . . .

Stone: What is the problem with eliminating those people not fit for 'salvation'? Why, isn't our very faith based on the precept that 'only the chosen will be saved'?

Billy: . . .There is something very wrong with that.
Salvation by faith is something that everyone should have an equal opportunity at attaining.

Scene cuts back to view of room from the side as Billy, Elly and Citan face Stone. The two purple robed men stand at two large machines on either side of the room and the small girl drips with moisture in its center, faint blue light touching her form.

Stone: Are you saying that you can save all of human kind? If Krelian uses the nanomachine colony, at least we can save some chosen people. But you don't understand how to utilize this. You can't save anyone. Are you willing to take the responsibility for the loss you will cause humankind?

One of the robed men strides forward and takes the girl from the pedestal as Billy –

Billy: . . .

Stone: My job now is to bring this nanomachine colony back to Krelian. You see, unlike the 'Ethos', our aim is not the ancient weapons that lay in the city ruins. I don't think we conflict with your interests.

Elly: No! We can't allow them to take this child!

Billy: Salvation or not . . .What are you planning on doing with this girl!? I just know your deeds are not honorable. Bishop . . .I am sorry to say this but . . .I cannot be a part of what you are intent on doing.

Stone: I see that I couldn't make you understand . . .(pause) Then it cannot be helped . . .I don't have the time to convince you further. Please excuse me, as I must hurry on ahead.

As the man with the girl starts to leave, Citan calls out –

Citan: Wait right there!!

Citan starts forward then stops as the man and girl disappear. Then the other robed men leave, Stone remains behind for a moment and behind him two people wait. He turns, walks past them into the scanning room and he turns to face them, saying –

Stone: Sorry to have kept you two ladies waiting . . . It's time for you to do your job, Elements.

He turns and walks off and one of the girls says –

Tolone: Hmph!

She strides forward, followed by the other girl. Stone calls out from behind without turning –

Stone: Tolone! Seraphita! Buy me as much time as possible!

Tolone: We know, we know! Stop ordering us around, already!

Serphita turns to Tolone and shakes her head, saying –

Seraphita: Hey, Tolone. Let's hurry up and get this over with so we can get outta here! I don't like dark places!

Tolone turns to her and nods once, saying –

Tolone: Yeah, right. It's only because it is on Ramsus' orders. Jeez . . .! Now he's got us protecting this garbage.

Both girls turn to them and Tolone says –

Tolone: Well, that's how it is folks . . .It'll help us if you'd hurry up and lose.

Billy: Who in heavens are you!? We don't have time to waste talking to you!

Tolone: Well excu ~ se us! But we can't let you go just yet . . . We really don't care much for Krelian, but if we do a crappy job it'll make Ramsus look bad. But, thanks to you fools reviving her, we can get this mission over with sooner than we thought.

Seraphita: Yeah, we didn't know how to operate that machinery, so we were so confused! Thank you very much for your kind help!

Seraphita turns to the side and bows her head, laughing. Tolone turns to her, saying –

Tolone: Oh Sera . . .Don't tell them that! Just as I was building things up to make us sound psychologically superior to them! Damn. . .

Seraphita: What! . . .But . . .When people do you a kindness you should always say thank you. That's what grandma always said . . .

Puts her hand on her hips and faces Tolone –

Seraphita: But, I'm impressed Tolone! 'Psychologically superior'? Your 'Gin n' tonic Futon Brain' cyborg implants sure make you smart!

Tolone: That's 'Positronic – photon Brain', you idiot! 'Gin n' tonic Futon' . . .? You make me sound like I'm a sleepy drunk! (It's already bad enough as it is . . . 'Positronic – photon Brain Cyborg' . . .That's bound to get us into trouble with the makers of 'Star Trech'!)

Tolone looks up as Billy asks –

Billy: . . .(pauses) Do you guys just have too much free time on your hands?

Tolone: (turns to him) Uh oh!! Sorry.

Seraphita: (nods once) Sorry!

Citan: Be careful!! The Elements may look harmless! But underestimate them and it will cost you dearly!

Tolone: That's it!!

Seraphita turns to Tolone and says –

Seraphita: . . .Tolone, do we want to be called 'harmless'?

Battle begins and they are tough! Seraphita casts spells as does Tolone and there are many rounds before Tolone sinks to one knee. Seraphita says, "I'll get you."

After a long fight, the three win and scene cuts back to the two girls as the green doors slide open behind them. Tolone says –

Tolone: Seraphita!! Enough already! We've done the job that was required of us. Let's pull out!!

Tolone moves out along the red corridor and Seraphita turns to call –

Seraphita: A ~ hh! Tolone! Wait for me!

She hurries off and the green glass doors shut behind her. The three make their way out of the octagonal chamber through the scanning room and out into the anteroom. They go through the next red lit passage and halt at the far door as a message comes, "Increasing atmospheric pressure. Please wait." and flashes yellow light. Then, "Atmospheric pressure increased." and they go through.

Scene cuts to the sickbay onboard the Yggdrasil where Fei lies in bed, the room empty. The scene fades to darkness with the words -

" . . .Our cursed existence bound to the earth . . ."

The sound of a single heartbeat and scene returns to Fei in bed, this time closer, then fades to darkness once more with another heartbeat and more words appear –

" . . .Oh vessel for a new soul . . .created to remove that 'yoke' . . ."

Scene cuts to a view of the octagonal room where the girl resides in the pillar of light – fades with the sound of heartbeat to Fei in bed from the side, cuts to a red tinged scene of the scanning room outside the octagonal chamber where a woman lies on the floor. A man who looks like Fei presses himself up against the green glass doors, the girl behind in her pillar of light. The woman rises partway to look up at him through the glass, and a voice is heard –

"I just can't . . .hand our child . . . . . over . . .to you . . ."

A heartbeat and view cuts to another angle where armed men appear in the passage behind the woman.

Cuts to sickbay once more and the bed is empty! The medic stands before it and there is only the sound of the engines in the background as she –

Medic: Huh? where did Fei go . . .?

She turns and looks around and scene cuts to Elly, Billy and Citan in the stairwell as they make their way up. They go back through the hallways and up lifts to the first storage area. They go through and down a stairwell, finding themselves at the suspended bridge overlooking the city once more. As they make their way across, Citan calls out –

Citan: Bishop Stone!! Wait!!

View swings over to the left where Stone and his men have the girl. He says –

Stone: Hah. Elements, you're not even as good as they say . . .
Can't even buy me some time . . .

A voice comes –

" . . .Give it back."

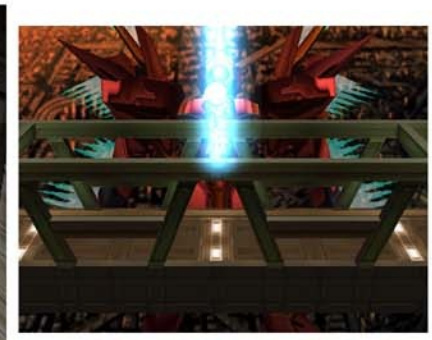
All turn, looking around and Stone steps forward –

Stone: ?

He looks around and view shifts to Citan , Bart and Billy at the other end as the voice comes again –

"Give it back, give it back . . ."

A low rumbling is heard, and then -



Man: Ha hah . . .Hyah ha ha . . .

Man: Har hahahahahaha!!

From his position on top of the bridge, the man turns to Stone and his men and says –

Man: Ha ha . . .That is mine. Give it back!!

Stone: W, what do you want? Wh, who're you?

Man: To you, it is just a used up toy. So give it back. It belongs to me . . .

Billy: Who are you . . ..!?

Man: Names do not matter . . .However, if you insist . . .
(pause) . . .Id . . .

View cuts to a close up of Id, then a battle begins! They land in a series of deathblows, some of which miss and Id fights with martial arts techniques. It is extremely tough, and -

Billy: Too strong . . .Huh?

He turns as the sound of rumbling engines shakes the bridge once more and scene switches as another Gear appears off to the right. The new Gear reaches out and wraps its fingers around Id.

Id: !! . . .You . . .? . . .

Stone: Now is our chance!! Get back to Krelian . . .

Stone and men disappear and a familiar voice calls out –

Wiseman: I got him! Hurry, go after them!!

There is a pause, then Citan says –

Citan: That voice . . .Wiseman! (pauses) . . .
. . .Go!! Everyone, hurry!

They race towards the exit and Elly says –

Elly: That Gear . . .?

After they are gone, Id says –

Id: Hmph, a little early isn't it? . . . I see, it was that woman . . .
Fine. You will do fine, as my toy . . .for today.

A deep red radiance appears around Id and Wiseman's Gear shakes, letting go of Id.

Wiseman: Huh? . . .Oh . . .no . . .

Id: Hah ha Hyah ha ha ha . . .

View switches as Wiseman rears back and Id turns to him –

Id: Hmph . . .

Scene fades and cuts to an anteroom where Citan, Elly and Billy stand as a great flash of light suddenly shakes the entire place.

Citan: Hurry!

They make their way out through the opening and up the lift which ascends the ramp. They leave the site and scene cuts to an image of the giant sphere shaped vessel which had attacked the Thames and other salvager's ships.

View switches to one of the helm, the entire ship shaking slightly beneath their feet with the proximity of the giant vessel as Billy, Elly and Citan look up at the colossal ship and Citan says –

Citan: So we are too late . . .

View pulls up to the giant black vessel as he says this, its massive engines rumbling, and Billy says as the view pans up –

Billy: Citan, This person named Krelian took that child. What now?

As the vessel begins to move away, he asks –

Billy: What in the world is a nanomachine, anyway?

Citan: Nanomachines are robots that are smaller than human cells.

The giant vessel recedes into the distance, the sound of its engines fading.

Citan: They are used to cure diseases or wounds in Solaris.

The ship disappears rapidly into a tiny black speck, then is lost from sight.

Citan: . . .She may be a colony of nanomachines made by an ancient, but advanced technology.

View switches to one facing the three as they stand on the hull, Billy looking up and asks –

Billy: . . .So what's going to happen now? It should be able to help people, right? It just too bad it's only meant for Solaris.

Citan: I am worried about what Bishop Stone mentioned. He said he needed her 'to free humanity from its yoke.' Perhaps some ancient information on human reconstruction is hidden inside of her body . . .Demihumans, such as Rico and Hammer were born from the results of the messing around with D.N.A. . . . That was done by ancient Solaris in the hopes that it would bring about the restoration of mankind. If Krelian is thinking of trying the same thing with improved nanotechnology . . .that would be frightening.

They join Citan and go down the hatch, making their way to the bridge. Entering, they talk to Sig who says –

Sig: It seems Fei isn't in the infirmary . . .But he must be onboard somewhere . . .

They leave and go down the lift, making their way to the medic who stands out in the hallway. She says –

Medic: Fei isn't here! I wonder where he went?

They go down to Margie's room and she says –

Margie: Fei? No, he hasn't come here!

They leave and go down to the Gear Hangar. They make their way over to where Weltall is stationed and can see some steam coming out of his joints. Fei stands on the catwalk behind him. staring at the Gear and view pans to the left where Bart, Billy and Citan stand behind him. Citan says –

Citan: Fei!?

Fei turns and says –

Fei: Uh, (pause) doc . . .

Citan: Fei, feeling better already?

Fei: Yeah . . .Probably . . .

Billy: Why are you up and about? I thought you were only just recovering? You shouldn't be doing that!

Fei turns and bows his head –

Fei: I don't know what I'm doing here myself . . .
I don't have a clear head, yet . . .

Fei looks up and Citan ponders, thinking, " . . ." then Fei shakes his head, saying, "Uhhh . . ." and Citan rushes to him, hands partially extended as he says –

Citan: Fei! You should not be moving around yet!!

Fei is silent and a voice announces –

"Alkanshel located straight ahead!!" Prepare Gears for launch!!"

Citan turns to look at Bart and Billy and scene cuts to a view of the overhead screen on the bridge where a large Gear is visible. View pans down to the helm where Sig stands, and he says –

Sig: Seems like they're watching us.

Scene fades and cuts to a view of Fei as he faces Citan and says –

Fei: I . . .must go . . .!!

Citan reaches out both hands and says –

Citan: you are in no condition to participate . . .
Let us take care of this!

They turn to Billy who says –

Billy: Looks like it's time to settle the score . . .
But, Fei should be resting.

Citan nods once and says –

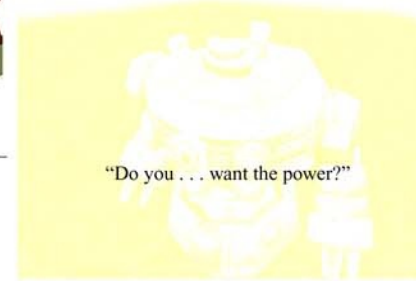
Citan: Yes. I shall take Fei to the infirmary.
Billy, please take care of the rest of things.

Scene fades and cuts to a view of the Yggdrasil in the sea off to the left. Pulls back to reveal the large gray Gear as it hovers above.

Stone: Observing . . .
What a roundabout way . . .Just take care of it and it'll be over . . .

Stone: Those who become enemies of the sacred Gazel, I will eliminate them all. Repent now.

A bright flash of white light and a voice –



"Do you . . . want the power?"

As the light disappears, Stone asks –

Stone: Who, who are you?

A sound from above and a Gear rapidly becomes visible as it plummets from the sky
Then a view of Grahf's Gear, arms outspread as he slows his descent, engines rumbling.

View cuts to the front of the gray Gear, and Grahf comes to a halt before him, seemingly effortlessly.
View switches to one of the side as he crosses his arms and then one from behind Alkanshel.
It pulls in to a closer image of Grahf as a red glow appears at his back, and he says –

Grahf: I am Grahf, the seeker of power. Doth thou desire the power?

Stone: Power? Hmph, there's power, in here!
I received this body from Krelian!

Grahf: All the power is fake. Do you think you can win with it?

Stone: What do you mean fake power?

Grahf: A fake body. A fake awakening. It is all useless!

View switches to one from just below Grahf, he says –

Grahf: I will give you the power!

A flash of yellow-white light, then view cuts to one of Grahf from the side as he extends his arm slowly, the red radiance collecting in his hand.

Grahf: My fist is the divine breath!

Grahf: Blossom, o fallen seed, and draw upon thy hidden powers!!

Grahf: Grant unto thee the power of the glorious 'Mother of Destruction'!

Stone: Aughhh, urgh, huhhhh . . .

Then white light consumes all and battle begins! Bart, Billy and Elly face the monstrous Gear and, one by one, their hits prove ineffective, "damage nullified." After a while scene fades and cuts to a view of the three as they stand on the hull of the Yggdrasil, looking up at Alkanshel.

Billy: It's no good, it's not getting through . . .

Citan calls over –

Citan: . . .(pauses) there is some kind of barrier. Some kind of negative feeling . . . hatred, somehow changed into an Ether, forming a barrier . . .If we can somehow change our strong force of will into an Ether also and throw that back at it . . .

View switches to one of Alkanshel above. Energy crackles around the Gear as Stone says –

Stone: Ha . . .son of Jesiah, are you suffering? When I took you in 4 years ago, that was proof of my old friendship with your father . . . In that hate stained friendship with Jesiah, we competed for command of Gebler!

Stone: Jesiah, like a beast, you stole the Racquel I loved, and threw away the command of Gebler that I wanted so much, then disappeared from Solaris!

Scene fades and cuts to the interior of the house where Racquel sits at the table. Stone says –

Stone: 4 years ago . . .After searching to the ends of the earth, no trace of him could be found.

Racquel turns as a Wels appears from the left and backs off as it approaches.

Stone: Racquel, dirtied by him . . .and the reminder of that taint . . .
you and your sister . . .

Racquel turns as the door opens, revealing another of the creatures. She backs off and Stone says –

Stone: Through Krelian's wisdom, using the Wels, I saved Racquel from misery . . .

The woman fades as the image shifts, she is gone and the Wels turns to face Stone who approaches.

Scene cuts back to the three on the Yggdrasil's hull, view facing them and Billy shouts –

Billy: You son of a . . .!
You used the Wels . . .against my mother . . .!

Stone: Yes Billy, let me tell you something good . . .Those Reapers that you have been purging are really all people . . .They were chosen by the 'Ethos' and converted by Krelian! You've been slaughtering people! Ha ha ha . . .A wretched son for a wretched father! Ha ha ha ha ha ha ha!

Stone: Ha, confess to me! Pay for your sins!

The view switches to one facing the three and a voice is heard –

"No, there's nothing there for you to regret, Billy!"

Billy: . . .!

View switches to one facing Alkanshel as the voice comes again –

"You say you and Racquel were in love? You always were a narcissistic self-preserving fool!!"

Stone: !! . . .This voice . . .!!

View cuts to the inside of a cockpit which shakes as Jessie sits at the console. He calls over –

Jessie: I'll take this one!! Use this, Billy!! If you use this you can rip off the barrier!!

View cuts to the three as they stand on the Yggdrasil. Citan says -

Citan: Th, that is a Buntline . . . It is an Ether gun Gear where the pilot rides directly in the bullet. If we use that we can break Stone's negative hatred power! . . . H, however . . .

Battle begins! View cuts to a close up of Billy's Gear as Jessie calls over –

Jessie: Billy, if we merge our Gears together . . . . . .then we can break through that barrier with our combined attack. I'm gonna borrow your shoulder for a moment, so start aiming now.

View cut to Alkanshel as Jessie says –

Jessie: Let's wrap this up once and for all, eh Stein? But, I want you to know that you aren't gonna see Racquel when you die . . .! That's because your destination is going to be hell!

View switches to one from behind Alkanshel and moves towards the Yggdrasil's bridge as Citan says –

Citan: I knew it! Jesiah is planning on using it! He must be stopped!
Billy, can you hear me!? (pause) Billy!? (pause)
. . .No good . . .There is no response!!

View cuts to one of Billy's Gear as Jessie says –

Jessie: Billy, you know now don't you? Stein's teachings were all a deception. That fabricated faith was just a worldly system for compensating those people with fragile souls. But, faith and god aren't things which are given to you from others, right? They are things you have to discover within yourself. Things that cannot be put into words, things that cannot be expressed . . . Isn't that what god is all about? 'Question not thy god, for thy god doth not respond.'

Switches to a rising view of Billy's Gear –

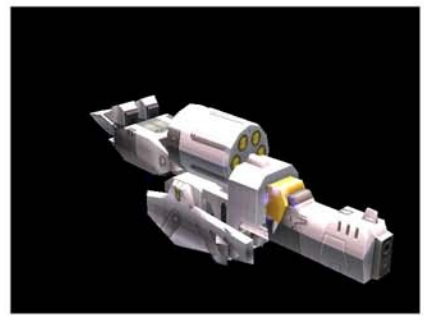
Jessie: The reason I taught you how to use a gun as a child was to save people. You say that guns are just tools for killing people. But you are wrong. 'Guns' don't kill people. 'People' kill people. Have you ever looked at the expressions on the faces of those reapers you have destroyed? It is an excruciating process to be turned into a reaper. To ease their torturous pain, they seek human blood, and attack people in order to get it. But, that does not vanquish the true pain within their hearts. There is only one way to be saved from the pain. That is by termination. Didn't all those reapers put out of their misery by you have peaceful looks on their faces? Your gun saved those people who were turned into reapers. It's not something anyone can do. The faith that enabled you to accomplish that was no deception . . .God exists within you!

After a moment, Billy says –

Billy: Father . .

View switches to one facing Alkanshel from behind, the three in battle stance and Jessie says –
Jessie: Alright, now! Let's go, Billy, go!

Billy shifts as a silvery Gear lined with yellow drops form the sky, lands on the deck and rises, becoming a large gun which rests on Billy's shoulder as he guides it carefully. Tiny sparks of light gather at the end of the gun barrel as bright flashes of light emerge. A glowing red ball shoots out and impacts on Alkanshel, a white light consumes all and the large Gear buckles, an explosion sounding. Several bright flashes and the message, "Barrier Terminated" Then Citan's voice is heard –



Citan: Too late . . .! Billy! That is a weapon that uses its pilot as the warhead!

Billy: What!? Th, then, father is . . .
. . .Oh my (long pause) god!!

Battle begins! This is an extremely tough opponent and he starts off by halving their HP. There are many rounds and he casts Seal on occasion, making it that much harder. They battle ferociously, knowing that time is short. He halves their HP again and Billy lands in a deathblow. Alkanshel sinks to the sea, smoke everywhere and explodes, damaging them slightly.

Scene cuts to the helm above the Yggdrasil facing out to sea. Elly, Primera, Billy, Bart and Citan stand staring out at the water and Billy says –

Billy: Dad . . .

Citan walks over to Billy near the helm and says –

Citan: Billy . . .(pause)
I should not have made such a thing . . .

Billy turns to Citan, shaking his head and says –

Billy: This's the best way to see father off.

He shoots his shotgun three times and there is a long moment of silence as they look out over the water. From behind, a familiar man in a brown trench coat comes up the steps to the helm and says –

Jessie: You're right . . .Thanks, son.

All turn and Billy gives a start, throwing up his arms as he shouts –

Billy: D, dad!

Citan: Old friend! Are you alright?

Jessie turns to him and draws his shotgun, responding –

Jessie: You'd better believe it! I ain't gonna leave that stupid junk alone!
I (pause) improved it! (puts gun away) Ouchy – wow – wow!!
But I never wanna do that again though . . .

Citan ponders and says –

Citan: But still . . .talking about hell . . .I am surprised to know
an irreligious person like you would believe in life after death . . .

Jessie slings his gun over his shoulder -

Jessie: Oh? So you were listening? That was a curse.
Isn't that a fitting end for him?

Citan looks up and says –

Citan: It is definitely your style.

Then Prim walks over to Jessie, stops and says, "Pa . . .pa . . .

All turns to Prim and Billy throws up his arms –

Billy: P, Prim!?

He walks towards her, stops and says –

Billy: Prim, what did you just say? Huh, Prim?

Still looking at Jessie she says –

Prim: Pa . . .pa . . .

Jessie laughs and says –

Jessie: Ha, hey did you hear that? Primera's
problem seems to have been solved!

Billy walks towards her, then kneels, waving his hand as he says –

Billy: Hah . . .! Prim talked! Prim just talked!
(Jessie continues to laugh)
Hey, Prim . . .Now say my name. Say 'Billy'!

He stands, shakes his head and covers his eyes with is hand as scene fades, view lifting up into the sky . . .

Babel Tower

Scene cuts to the bridge as Bart, Billy and Elly walk in and face Jessie and Citan.
Jessie says -

Jessie: What about the 'Ethos'? They've completely
devastated themselves! That mob just goes from bad to worse!

Citan: Do you not think it is about time you told your son the truth,
old friend? You were not just wandering around drinking and picking
fights, were you? I am sure he wants to know what you have been
up to . . . Is that right, Billy?

Billy turns to Citan and nods once, saying –

Billy: Yes, it would certainly make me feel a lot better. I now know
my dad was worried about me the whole time, but I haven't worked
out my feelings yet . . .

Jessie turns to him and asks –

Jessie: What do you mean?

Billy turns his back to Jessie and says –

Billy: Well I'm glad Prim can speak now, but she only calls out for her father . . .
But I am the one who has been taking care of her all this time . . .
What's wrong with her . . .?

Citan: Calm down, Billy . . .I am sure she is just being shy. She will start calling
out for you soon. Why, my own daughter does not even call out her father's name!

Then Citan asks –

Citan: So, old friend . . .Why were you working alone all that time?

Billy turns around as Jessie turns his back and says –

Jessie: It couldn't be helped . . .Anyway, I'll probably need your help from here on . . .

Jessie turns back around to Billy and says –

Jessie: Okay, I'll tell you more. Let's go to the gun room . . .to get something to drink.

Scene fades and cuts to the gun room facing the small table where Jessie, Bart, Billy, Elly and Citan stand. Maison listens from the bar and Jessie says –

Jessie: When I was in Solaris, I found out about the secret plan . . .That was the 'Malakh' (M) Plan. And it was done under the command of Krelian . . . In order to proceed with the plan, many Lambs were gathered by the 'Ethos', to become guinea pigs. Or, should I say, to become Reapers or –Wels- . . .

Jessie turns to the side with his shotgun slung over his shoulder and continues –

Jessie: Since I was disgusted with Solaris' methods, I decided to investigate it further. I found out that the main scientist central to the M Plan moved the true facts about it into a test – Gear. Then he let that test – Gear escape with his daughter, so that the truth would not be discovered . . .And that, I'm afraid, was the last information that I was able to obtain . . .

Jessie turns and points his gun and Maison jumps and moves off to the side. Jessie continues –

Jessie: Because of what I found out, I came down to the surface world . . .And this is where I hid, along with my wife, Racquel, and son Billy. I've been looking for that Gear and the girl ever since.

Jessie puts his gun away and says –

Jessie: Finally, I found out that the scientist's daughter and Gear may be in Shevat. All very well, except now I don't know how in blazes to get there, or even how to contact the place. Well, Shevat is protected by a strong barrier that even Solaris can't do anything about . . . So I guess you can say it can't be helped . . .It's just my luck!

A voice from behind asks –

"That girl's name wouldn't happen to be Maria . . .?

All turn and view shifts toward the door as Fei and the Shevat agent walk forward and join the others. Billy asks –

Billy: Oh, are you alright? Shouldn't you get some more rest . . .?

Shevat Agent: Yes, I can stand and can even walk now . .Thank you.

Fei: I'm alright, too.

Jessie: Maria, eh . . .? Hmm . . .If I remember right, her father's name was Nikolai?

Shevat Agent: I don't know that much . . .But I have heard rumors about a girl and a Gear.

Jessie turns and crosses his arms, bowing his head for a moment. Then he looks up and says –

Jessie: Hmm, it's got to be them. So that huge Gear is in Shevat then?

He turns to the Agent and asks –

Jessie: So then . . .how can we get to this Shevat? Is there a way to contact the place?

Shevat Agent: Unfortunately since I was taken captive I have no way of contacting them either.

Jessie turns around and says –

Jessie: I see . . .

Then, "!!" and he turns around as the Agent says –

Shevat Agent: There just may be a way . . .! Originally, Shevat was situated on top of Babel Tower. They say there is a communications facility to contact Shevat's native country on top of the tower. If only it still exists . . .

Citan: Hmm . . .There is a good possibility the facility may have been destroyed . . . Especially when you consider the fact that the tower was sealed by the 'Ethos'.

Jessie turns to him and says –

Jessie: You're being pessimistic again . . .

Citan: I am just being realistic.

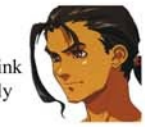
Jessie: . . .

Bart speaks up –

Bart: I guess we have no choice but try and go there. As long as the gate exists, we can't escape from Solaris' influence anyway. In other words, even if we recover Aveh back from Shakhan, it wouldn't immediately be a happy ending.

Citan: Their ‘secret plan’ bothers me, too . . .the real secret is that they are using humans gathered from earth . . .

There is a silence, then Fei says haltingly –



Fei: But I don’t quite get this secret plan (pause) and the ‘Ethos’ involvement (pause) and so on . . .What in the hell does Solaris think us surface dwelling humans are!? (turns to Elly) . . . Sorry. I totally forgot that it was your country . . .

Elly turns to him and shakes her head, saying –

Elly: What my country’s doing . . .has nothing to do with me. I myself thought something was wrong there, and that’s why I came here . . . So, don’t worry about me.

Fei: We’ve got nothing to lose, so let’s try to go there. We need to find the truth about those documents found in the ‘Ethos’ H.Q. and what Billy’s father said. And I must go to Shevat too for my own personal reasons anyway.

Elly, Bart and Billy nod once at him and scene fades and cuts to the darkened area where the Ministry resides.

You're back . . .? Well, find anything?

Krelian: Yes. I have obtained a colony of nanomachines.

How unsound.

In any case, is the M Project proceeding as planned? We need superior bodies and servants.

We've spent far too much time here. We can't afford to mistake the ultimate destination of this new civilization.

They exist because of their 'mother'.

Krelian: Hmm. You've betrayed your 'mother', your 'creator', just to sustain your own egos. You have no right to speak so . . .

That was . . .foolish, that was the past. When we were trapped in that cursed flesh . . . But now, it is different.

Krelian: I'll take no orders from you. You have lost that flesh long ago, and now reside in the SOL - 9000 as data. Did you forget who revived you in there? What may be an eternity to man is but a moment to a god. I have no need for hesitation.

Scene fades and returns to the Yggdrasil's bridge where Fei, Bart and Billy speak to Sig who says -

Sig: Some new parts were brought into our Gear Shop down below. Why don’t you go and check them out!?

They decide to do just that and make their way out and down the lift. They go to the gun room and see Jessie and the Shevat Agent at one of the small tables. Jessie turns and says -

Jessie: The keywords are Nikolai, Maria, a huge Gear . . ..eh!? (turns back around)

Shevat Agent: Originally, Shevat was a town situated on top of 'Babel Tower' . . . They say there was a communication facility to contact what now is Shevat on top of the tower. If only it still exists and still works now . . .

Over by the bar, Maison says -

Maison: My, hasn't it gotten lively around here!

They leave and move on down to Margie's room. She says -

Margie: We may not see each other for a while.

They go and speak to J'ora who says -

J'ora: . . .I admire Primera. She's only a child yet she has been through so muchu. But then you look at me . . .I'd better start chu get my act chugether!

They leave and go to the Gear Hangar. They make their way to the shop and upgrade their Gears.

Going back up to the bridge, they launch the Yggdrasil and scene switches to an overhead view of the ship as it sails through the blue sea.

They sail towards the tall tower in the distance and land on the small isle, making their way up to the entrance which no longer has an Ethos seal. They enter the ruin and find themselves on a smooth metal pathway suspended over dark waters below. The entire place is cavernous, rising up into darkness far above and little shafts of light peek through the multitude of holes in the structure.

They go to a ledge, jumping across to the first of the massive metal pillars which rise out of the water below. Off in the distance, against the far wall in the dim light from the holes above, they see more sections of torn metal and jump to it. Their Gears are surprisingly agile in this unusual environment and the terrain provides many challenges to their control of the machines.

The fight many battles with different machine typs enemies, traffic jams, and as they move through the vast structure they notice an air of sadness about the place, of forgotten, old memories.

They make their way to a large pillar with a gap running through it. They step through out to a ledge with a rope hanging before it from the twisted metal. They jump on it, swinging and then jump off at the right moment to the next ledge. They make their way up a long piece of twisted metal and jump from one of its pieces to another pathway. Going through, they stand on a ledge and view swings around to a metal protrusion on the far wall. It appears to be a room of some sort and Fei says -

Fei: That's . . .

View pans up to reveal a slightly rectangular shaped structure and Fei says -

Fei: It appears to be some kind of relay station.

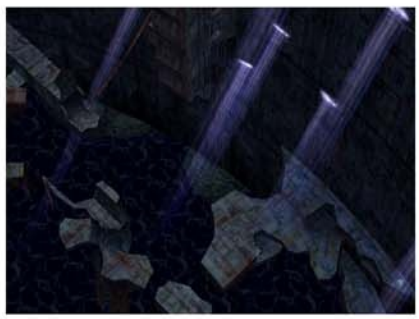
They jump up to a thin metal wire stretched between their island and the station.

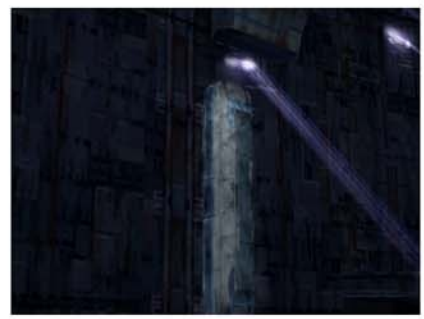
Scene cuts to a section of the station where they stand on a ledge. They see a small door in the wall and dismount from their Gears. Entering, they find themselves in a computer room, the screen still lit and active but the whole room seems kind of odd. It's at the wrong angle. To their right is what used to be the floor, and the floor the forward facing view of the room.

A chair stands out sideways from a wall nearby and they investigate the computer screen nearby.

Fei: Oh . . .

A dull rumble and view tilts to a section of the far wall where two thin strips of metal rise out of a mound of dirt near the water's edge below the station. A shape is seen through the water, then it bursts through the mound in a shower of water, rising along the tracks to the station. It's a gray metal train of some sort and it glides to a stop near the entrance.





Fei, Billy and Bart leave the room and mount their Gears, heading for the train nearby. They enter as the large windows slide away and find themselves in a storage area of the car. Large metal boxes everywhere below their feet, as though they had been crammed together in some sort of impact.

They make their way up, jumping from the boxes to a ledge. Fei looks up to a small door near the top, above a ladder which strings across and says -

Fei: It looks like we can get to the upper room through here . . .Hmm . . .
We'll need to get out of the Gears and cross via the handrails.

They dismount and climb up the sides of the handrails and make their way across to the door. They enter a smaller chamber with seats positioned facing upward. Up towards the front, they see a bank of computers, all with active screens and Fei notices a blinking red light.

Fei: Wha?

He turns to the right and says -

Fei: Looks like the driver's seat is next to it.

They go across to a chair near a display on the computer screens.

Fei: Here?

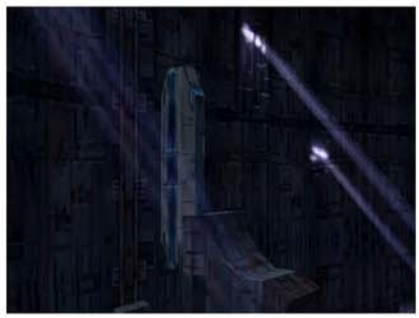
He presses a button and turns to the left, saying -

Fei: Hey! It's started!

View pills back to a wider image of the room and it shakes slightly as Fei says -

Fei: Alright. Let's go!

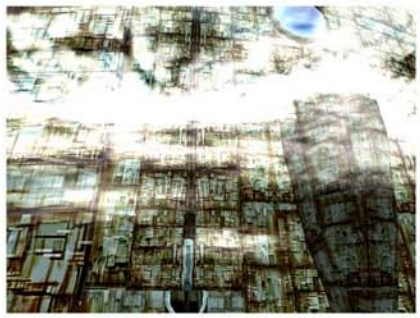
The train gives a large shake and vibrates with a low rumble.

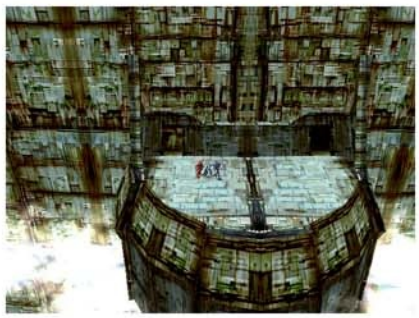


Fei: Where are we going to climb to?

The readout before him flashes a glowing display and the chamber continues to shake. Then Fei turns to the right and says -

Fei: Hey! We're going out on the outer wall.





As they pass through some white clouds, an explosion comes to the left. Then another to the right! The train halts in a shower of sparks and smoke and scene cuts to the shaking inner chamber where Fei, Elly and Citan look around and Fei says -

Fei: A shot, from where?

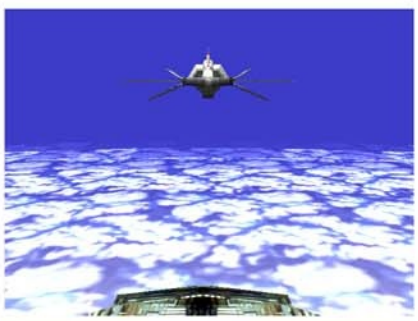
The rumbling intensifies and he continues -

Fei: Crap! The track's gone. We're goin' outside!

Scene cuts to their Gears as they fly down swiftly past the corrugated metal outer wall to the ledge below the circle. They land on the left side and make their way to the center. There are two doors to either side and they halt in the middle of the ledge. Fei asks -

Fei: What's that!?

Fei: A Gebler ship?



View switches to one of the cloud filled depths below as Ramsus, sword held out before him, Miang just below, glides up and superimposes himself on the clear blue sky far above as Fei says -

Fei: What is that Gear?

Ramsus: I've been waiting, Fei. Last time at sea, I was rendered unconscious by a surprise traitor, but that won't happen this time. I won't let you go up.

Fei: How did they know we were here?

Fei: Our back's to the wall, we can't run. I guess we have to fight . . .
(turns to Ramsus) Here we go!

View switches with lightning speed to Ramsus and Miang as they descend to the ledge and battle begins!

They land in light blows, saving their energy at first. Ramsus then rises into the blue sky, and raises his sword as beams of light glint off his Gear's chest. He slams back down in a heavy blow to Weltall with the blade, knocking him down. As the three land in heavier blows, Ramsus blocks some as Miang stands by. Miang restores his Gear at one point and they redouble their efforts, landing in heavy deathbloows.
They win and scene cuts back to the clear blue sky as Ramsus and Miang fly off towards their ship in the distance. They pause and look back -

Ramsus: It's not over! Not yet!

Miang turns to him and moves closer -

Miang: No Commander! Pull out!

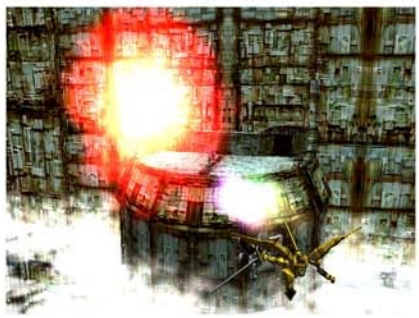
Ramsus: Let go Miang! I, I can't retreat now . . .Augh . . .guh .

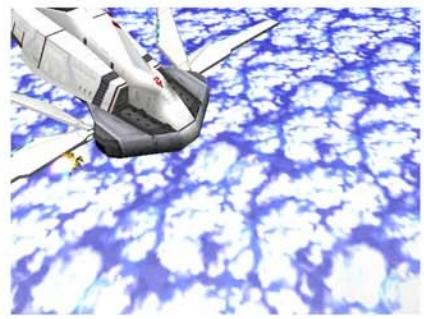
Miang: It's impossible with your wounds.

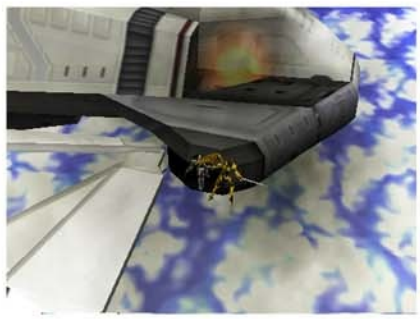
Then she calls over -

Miang: Bridge! Secure the retreat! Main gun, elevation 0. 8. Support fire 30! Fire!

View switches to one facing the tower from a distance as Ramsus and Miang fly off and a huge explosion impacts on the wall off to the left of the ledge as they depart, then another just below.







View cuts to an overhead of the Gebler vessel as it recoils, firing more shots. Ramsus and Miang appear off to the left as they approach and view cuts to the underside of the ship as they pause,an explosion rocking the vessel.

Miang: From above!? No . . .it couldn't be!? Bridge!

Scene cuts to the bridge, bathed in a red glow as it shakes. An officer reports -

01: Dimensional vibrations, level 8! A huge formation is coming this way!

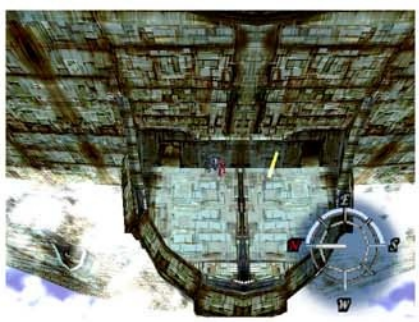
The entire scene shakes and then cuts to the outside once more as Miang and Ramsus hover beside the vessel, the flaming hole above them in its hull. Then Miang says -

Miang: . . . Just as I feared . . . Shevat! Change heading, 180 degrees. Now! All ships full speed! Retreat from this position!

She and Ramsus glide to an opening nearby and view cuts to the vessel from a distance as it turns and heads away. As they watch, Fei asks -

Fei: . . .Huh? What was that?

Bart: Looks like an air attack. Let's go.



View swings over to them from above as they stand on the ledge and they make their way to the left door. As they try to open it - "This door is completely rusted." They move on to the other door and enter, finding themselves in a long metal corridor which turns and they see many pipes lying across the floor in a pit nearby. As they make their way down, they notice a small door and dismount from their Gears. Entering, they find themselves in a large computer room which faces downward. A ring of chairs all face downward toward the consoles and they go below to investigate. They go across the 'floor' which is an entire screen with many readouts displayed.
They go over to a flashing red light at one of the consoles and Fei flicks a switch at a nearby bank. View switches to one outside where the large circle set into the walls moves out and tilts upward until it's facing the sky. Scene cuts back to the three in the computer room and it gives a brief shake. Fei says -

Fei: What the!?

Over to the left of the flashing red light, Fei tries another console and says -

Fei: Communications are up.

He toggles a switch nearby and it says "Lock clear." Then "DONE!"

The three use the chairs to jump back up to the ledge leading to the door and leave, reentering their Gears. They continue on through a corridor which branches down below and ahead and they take a gamble, falling down the shaft to a lower level. At the bottom, they find themselves in a long corridor and go to the left where a set of double doors is at the end. They try them, but they, "Won't open at all." So they go back and up a long, sloping ramp which leads to a level area and continue on, fighting more enemies. They find a pit with pipes leading up to another level. They take the one above them and fond it doubles back to their original drop point at the shaft, so they return and choose the path leading south.

They enter a strange room without a floor or a ceiling. Somewhat dark, there are several pipes and a circular partition in the center which they use as a floor, utter blackness beneath. They go across to the next opening and enter a large chamber with many partitions and huge structures. They see a Gear down at the bottom and he says,

Self Repairing Robot: Bzz ...crackle ...Refuel or resupply?

Gratefully, they do both and move on. They fight traffic jams all the way up the immense room, and, gradually, the shape of things here becomes more clear. A large glass structure in the center may have been some sort of atrium or . . . since the tower is facing down, it's hard to piece it all together. Down the center of the 'buildings' is the broken remains of what appears to have been a stone causeway. They slowly make their way up the precarious positions, careful of falling down to the bottom. At last, after a while, they reach an area with pipes leading up and Fei says -

Fei: Looks like we can climb up ...

They climb up and scene cuts to a wide open space which falls away below the raised metal island they walk across. They are at the top of the tower, and daylight falls upon the surface if the island, highlighting it against the backdrop of the depths below. All around them sections of metal struts jut out from the edges of the wall, as though something had been torn out of the tower's top. They go out to the center and view swings up and to the left, revealing the fragmented metal edge of the wall against the light blue sky as Fei asks -

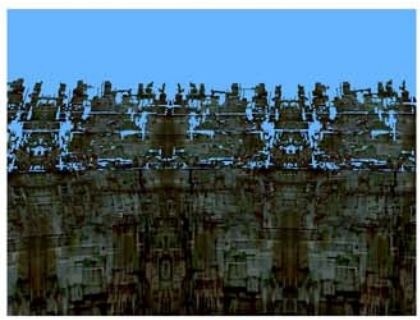
Fei: What . . . no ceiling?

Bart: It seems that it's true.
Shevat was here before. Look around.

Fei: There are marks from some huge thing . . .

Along the curving wall are some ancient streaks of a darker color. Fei asks -

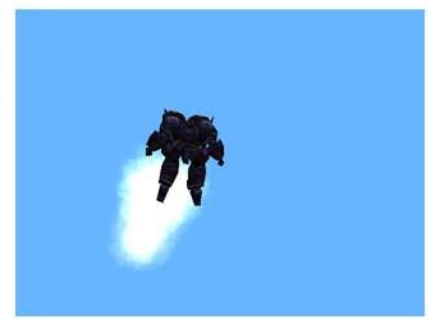
Fei: Oh yeah! Is there any comm equipment nearby?



Billy: I don't see anything else but . . .

Then -

Bart: Fei! Look up! Something is closing in! . . . It's a Gear!



View swings to the sky above as a shape is resolved off to the left. It becomes more visible as it descends into the tower, hovering just above them. The Gear is huge, and they hear a young girl's voice -

Mystery girl: From here is Shevat's territory.
Many people have tried to get in, but Seibzehn and I remove them.

Fei: Wait a minute. We just want to . . .

View pulls in closer to the massive Gear as the girl says -

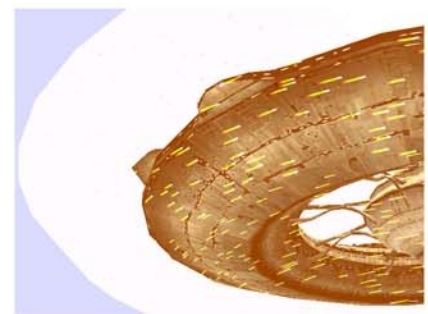
Mystery girl: Get ready!

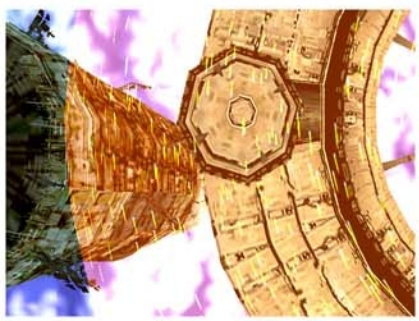
Battle begins! It is a strong Gear and there appears to be a little girl at the top, near its head. They land in a few deathblows. They win after a few rounds and scene cuts to the large Gear, Seibzehn, as it hovers above them against a backdrop of the blue sky and a glowing oval shape behind it, which draws closer. It's Shevat! They hear a voice -

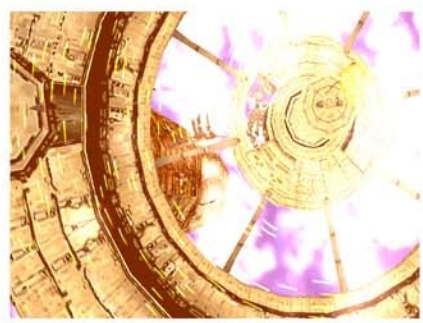
"That's enough, Maria. Bring them in."

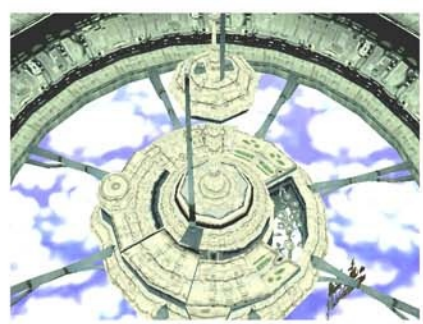
Seibzehn turns around to the approaching disk of shimmering light, through which the round disk of the city can be seen.

Mystery girl: Yes, Queen Zephyr.



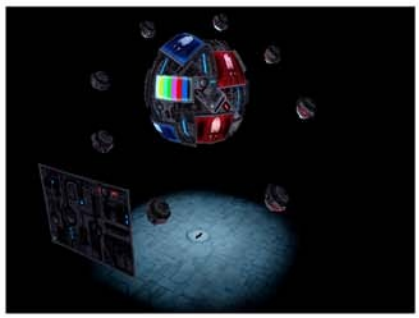






View cuts to one from below Seibzehn as it hovers against the vast backdrop if the immense city, the azure depths of the sky peeking through the gaps and around the structure. The mystery girl says -

Mystery girl: Sorry. Just wanted to test your strength.
The queen is awaiting for your arrival above.



Scene fades and cuts to the darkened chamber with the floating sphere and its attendant orbs.

. . .Useless. They allowed contact with Shevat.

There is an `Anima Relic' in Shevat . . . . . .We can't afford to have them align before preparations are complete.

It's meaningless if it is not compatible with our type.

You want to bury all of Shevat?

What of the `Animus'?

There are others. We must respond severely so this doesn't happen again!

What about the Shevat gate?
As long as it is there, we can't get in.

Easy. We just use Achtzehn's gravity cannon to compensate for the time - space warp.

Achtzehn? Is it operational?

Re-education is complete. It is ready.
The airborne squad is already assembled.

Any side effects?

The regulated 71st Airborne should have no problems.

Well then, I look forward to this.

Scene fades.

Shevat

Scene cuts to a round gray marble room with a dais in darker gray near the center.
View pans down as the mystery girl says –

Girl: This is the dock floor located at the lowest layer of Shevat.

Girl: I met you a little while ago. My name is Maria Balthasar.

Fei puts his hands on his hips and bows his head as he says –

Fei: Balthasar . . .? I've heard of the name before.

Bart: Hey, Fei. Isn't that the same name as the eccentric old man? Remember the crazy old man playing with Gears underground in Aveh?

Fei: That's right! Ol' man Bal, the hermit.

Fei: That reminds me, the Gear I saw resembles Bal's Gear, Calamity.

Maria: Calamity!? That's the prototype Gear my grandfather made.

Maria: Do you know my grandpa? Where is he now!?

Fei: I just happened to come across him in the cavern beneath Aveh's desert. I don't know him that well . . .(pauses)
So you're Ol' man Bal's grandchild.

Maria: Yes . . .but I haven't seen him for the past few years . . .
Maria: He said he was looking for something very important. And he left by himself . . .
My father was captured by Solaris and his whereabouts are not known either . . .

Bart: But, the crazy o . . . your grandpa looked just fine.
He's the kind that never dies. Don't worry, squirt.

Maria: I'm not a 'squirt'!!
Besides, my grandpa isn't a crazy old man, I know it!!

Bart nods and says -

Bart: Sorry. Don't get mad, squi . . . Maria.
I didn't mean to offend. I apologize. Sorry, sorry.

Maria: I heard you say sorry once already. You don't need to say it again.

Maria: Anyway, I'm glad Grandpa Bal's doing fine.

Maria: Please go ahead and take the elevator to go upstairs.
I still have to finish inspecting Seibzehn.

She turns back to them and says –

Maria: I'll show you the way to the Palace when the time comes.
Till then, please take a look around town.

She bows her head, closing her eyes briefly, then she says –

Maria: I'll see you later.

She goes off to a door to the left and leaves. Fei turns to the others and bows his head once more as he says –

Fei: Alright. (pause) Let's go up there.

Billy: Shevat . . . the only organization
that stands against Solaris . . .

Bart: Okay, let's bring 20-30 of those
Gears that kid was riding on, home!

They join him and, curious, they go through the door which Maria had used first, entering a darkened marble corridor which leads to a purple lit room, and two double doors. They go through and find themselves in a huge cavernous chamber, greenish dim light hiding most in shadow, but Seibzehn looms before them in the gulf beyond the ledge. They see several people, Maria as well near the edge by some consoles

They go to Maria who stands looking out at Seibzehn, two pillars of green light from above revealing sections of the massive Gear as technicians ride circular extensions out over the abyss to service it. She says –

Maria: This Seibzehn was developed by my father. At the research institute in Solaris . . .

Maria: I just turned five years old at that time, and had no clue what was happening. Using me as a hostage, they forced my father to continue the research . . . But he never showed his pain or sorrow in front of me . . . He always smiled and said . . . 'Don't worry, Maria, Siebzehn will be by your side to protect you . . .'

Maria: Five years ago, that day, when I fell behind in our escape . . .My father protected me and ended up being left behind . . .

Maria: My father's voice, his smiles . . .are leaving me. They are far away, becoming obscure . . . I believed this would never happen . . .I swore I'd never forget . . .!

Maria: Now, the only connection between my father and me is this Seibzehn . . .
But . . .I'll save my father someday! I'll bring back my father's smile! Seibzehn and I will do it, I swear . . .!! I swear . . . !! . . .

Maria: Sorry . . .I shouldn't have told you such a bizarre story . . .It has nothing to do with you . . .

Maria: It'll take a bit more time to inspect Seibzehn. Please go up there, and take a look around town.

They go and speak to a man near the door.

M1: They say the fight between you and Seibzehn was well matched? Amazing . . .There are still people from the surface that can do all that. No sweat. If we all work together, we can teach Solaris a thing or two! (pauses) Maybe . . .

A bald man near the consoles says –

M2: But, this is such a monster . . .Maria's father designed something really extraordinary. I hear he's a Solaris scientist, but I still respect him. He proved to me a genius really exists.

The man nearby with a green coat like the one near the door looks a bit like Bingo from the Yggdrasil . . . A fast talker, he says –

M3: Well, talking about servicing, it's not like we know everything about Seibzehn. Realistically, all we can do is check for abnormalities and do simple repairs. (turns back to console) Don't worry, I'll also take a look at your Gears later.

They leave and go back down the corridor to the round marble room with the elevator in the center. They step into the center and hear a soft clang and it asks, "Do you want to go up?" They respond, "Yes." And they rise as bars of turquoise light appear around them as safeguards. The octagon shaped elevator rises to the ceiling and scene cuts as it ascends a long cylindrical shaft, also octagonal and ringed with bars of the soft blue light.

Scene cuts to the impressive outer surface of the disk of Shevat, its protective envelope of lights shimmering about it once more. They make their way around the inner disk to a section which is seemingly cut out, full of floating structures. They approach the "Old Capital of Shevat Aphel Aura."

Scene cuts to a deep blue sky and a white rock pathway leading to the buildings which appear to levitate in the air of their own accord. Segments of land with grass and trees provide touches of green which offset the startling white of the buildings. They go along the path to an arch set between two trees and see an octagon shape with aqua light surrounding it from beneath it. The old man nearby says –

Oldm1: Oh, we rarely have visitors from the surface. Welcome to the wandering city in the sky, Aphel Aura.

He turns to look out over the city and scene cuts to a view of the stately white rock and marble arches and rounded pillars, through which small puffs of clouds drift by.

Oldm1: This city used to be the capital of Shevat, an independent liberal country that fought against Solaris.

As view glides among the buildings, blue sky, trees and clouds intermingled with stone and floating steps at odd intervals.

Oldm1: A place that turns yesterday's tears into tomorrow's smiles . . .That's what they called this city a long time ago . . .

View passes near a tower with a ring of steps spiraling up to a small building near some trees at the top.

Oldm1: But now, those hopes and despairs have been worn away long ago. . .Probably the only things that remain are the echoes of resentment . . .

View fades back to them as the old man turns to them and says -

Oldm1: You might be able to find something that can solve your troubles and sadness. But fate can be cruel sometimes . . .(pauses) Don't forget that. And, that stone plate floating there is called a Stepping Stone. It moves with people on it. Try and get on it and talk to the stone. It'll be glad to give three of you a ride.

They do so and it descends in a pillar of aqua light to the gray circular shaped room below. On either side, staircases rise along the curved marble wall to two doorways. A third descends to some level below. They choose one of those leading up and go through the door, finding themselves in a large circular room which wraps around the 'center' that is the chamber they had just left. They see a camel-like demihuman near a table across from them. He says -

Dh1: That large white statue of an angel at the entrance of the palace is a representation of a particular woman who sacrificed herself in that war 500 years ago. It's so sad. She was probably the beloved heroine of the rebellion back then.

They move off the right to a bald headed man near a cooking range, a single lamp shedding a bluish light from above. He says -

M1: Yo, this house is basically an apartment for us land dwellers that were saved. I've heard that there aren't that many pure Shevites in this town anymore. Basically, it's been said that a majority of them were lost in that war with Solaris 500 years ago. Well, if we're not careful ourselves, our fates may be similar too. Heh.

They go through the doorway nearby and continue on throughout the curving gray marble room, speaking to a woman who stands near a man in a green coat.

W1: Back in Kislev, I had to deal with homemade medicines. By the way, I've heard rumors that the enemy has some really cool medicines. I wanted to learn some of those techniques, so I snuck into their ship but . . . I was a little clumsy . . .heh. (turns to the side) I got desperate and somehow managed to escape and make my way to Thames - the city I had heard stories about. That's where the good people here picked me up. If they hadn't picked me up then, without a doubt, I would've been a guinea pig for their experimental drugs . . .Because I'm so cute.

The man next to her says -

M2: So where did you fellas come from? From the looks of it, I'd guess you're form the Ignas continent. Were you saved by the people here too? (pause) I understand. We were all in the same situation. Everyone's got their unique story on how they got involved in the fiasco with the Gebler and the 'Ethos' and all. The usual pattern here is that many of the people were almost eliminated for some reason they don't know but were saved by the people here before they were doomed.

The woman turns to him and says -

W1: Yeah! Even if I were to have returned back to the land, they would probably try to capture me again. It wouldn't matter how many lives I had, it still wouldn't be enough. So I've decided to stick around here. That's probably the case for the majority of the people here.

She turns and says -

W1: And anyway, don't you wanna make the bad guys pay for it? They gotta be crazy if they think we'll just take this lying down!

She turns to the man who says -

M2: That's basically it. From now on we're all on the same boat. Welcome aboard!

They make their way past a series of bookshelves set into the wall and past another of the lamps, shedding its bluish light which flickers now and again just like the others. A man in a chair with a bald head says -

M3: Yeah, they say this city used to be like any other city when it was on the ground 500 years ago . . . But after losing to Solaris, they launched just the palace block of the city up into the sky. It's basically an unbelievable story, but in reality we're riding on that part of the city, and floating out in the sky right now. In life, you never know what to expect.

They move past him to another doorway and into another section of the ring shaped room, seeing another camel-like demihuman whom they speak to as he stands near some book shelves.

Dh2: But . . .we're in an odd situation. We're picking a fight with an organization that has the power to manipulate the world from the shadows. (pauses) Heh, and to think we're all just a motley crew of rioters from the land below. We're just a bunch of people who've lived most of our lives without knowing the existence of Shevat or Solaris . . .Come to think of it, it almost sounds like a joke.

They move over to an Aveh guard who stands across from a door which leads into the central room from the other side. He says -

G1: Hey, haven't seen you before. You new? Welcome to the Shevat Liberation barracks! . . .But in actuality, we aren't as glorious as the name may suggest. Hahaha . . .

As he speaks, another man is heard working out in the next area with sounds of, "Ha" , "Ha" The guard continues -

G1: But it is true that this is the barracks for the anti-Solaris troops. Think of it as home and relax.

They leave the guard who stands near two beds and speak to the guy who exercises near another in the next area.

M4: What am I doing? . . .huff . . .puff . . .(does knee bends) Can't you tell!? . . .huff . . .puff . . . I'm working out . .huff . . .puff . .Gonna kick Solaris' butt. . . .huff . . .puff . . .I have to get pumped up . . .

They leave the guy (who is in a green uniform) and go to the next area where an Aveh guard speaks to a medic in a blue dress.

G2: This is just between you and me but, I am the one and only hope for Shevat. I am the secret agent man . . .In other words, I'm a spy! Well? Ain't I cool? . . .But, come to think of it, if you're here too, you guys are probably no different than me . . .sigh . . .

W2: Have you already met with Queen Zephyr? A very nice person she is. We are all able to live like this because the Queen saved us.

They find themselves back at their starting point and go back through the door to the circular chamber, the lift rising within a glowing column of aqua light which flickers every now and then. They go down the third staircase and find themselves in a storage room. In the second part, near some old boxes, they see an Aveh guard who says -

G3: Yow . . .!? (he turns to them) Who are you, a new face? Don't scare me . . .I was wondering if there's some drinks in here. (turns away) Are the higher ups still planning on fighting with some country called Solaris? Aren't they the scary guys who actually control the world from the shadows? Uhh . . .this is crazy. Just when I thought I was able to survive . . .I can't take it anymore.

They leave and go through a door behind the staircase out into the bright daylight on a path suspended in the deep blue sky, joining the building they had just left with another lift pad and several floating steps lead from the side to a large stone building which spins slowly. They see a man nearby at the bottom of the steps near the building and speak to him.

M1: Oh, are you new? It's been so long since last time we had a visitor form the surface. This is a 'Plant Shell'. Vegetables and fruits needed in Shevat are grown in it. (he turns to look at it) Since we live away from the land, we must put more effort to get food. Right now, it's a dusty season so only the staff members are allowed to go in. Humans are good carriers of germs, you know. (he turns to them once more) I'll bring some fresh Thunder Strawberries for you to eat. So look forward to it.

They leave and go back up the steps tot he lift pad and stand on it. After a moment, Fei says -

Fei: Uh . . .it doesn't move. Is it broken . . .? . . .? There's something small written here . . . 'The one who attains the dawn, the dusk, and the darkness shall climb the path to heaven . . .Wiseman.' What is this?

They go back through the door into the circular chamber and up the lift to the first pathway from the entrance. Here, they pause to look out over Shevat, a beautiful city of rising turrets and flowing pathways of white stone, interspersed with trees all around in the perfect blue of the sky. They go across the pathway to the central section, a staircase spiraling up along the wall to the right and a lower level visible below with a door. They jump down and go through the door and fond a large chamber full of chu-chus! They pause near the door and view pans to the left as Fei says -

Fei: Oh . . .? This . . .

As the room is revealed with its soft glowing lamps and tables scattered throughout, chu- chus are seen everywhere. A staircase rises along the far wall to an area where more of them are convened.

Billy: If J'ora saw this, she'd probably faint out of pure happiness.

Bart nods and says -

Bart: Ha, ha! Who woulda figured!
Although, J'ora and her friends might be the last survivors.

They make their way over to a table to their left and speak to the orange chu chu who says -

Chc1: Ah - a - a, a guest!? It's been a while . . .! Welcome, welcome . . .! It'd be great if you bought lots and lots of them!!

He offers them a selection of goods and they buy a few things.

Chc1: Thank you! Come again! I'll give you a discount next time!

Nearby, an old yellow chu-chu stares at one of the round blue glowing tables and says –

Chc2: They're so beautiful. These are wonderful things that nobody else sells, yes they are. But this's a very important treasurer of the Chu-chu, so I can't sell it to you. Sooorry. Please go to the counter if you'd like to buy something. Thank you, thank you.

They go over to a yellow and a pink pair, both old and one has a cane. They stand before a shelf of books. The yellow says –

Chc3: There is a rumor that the secret room of the Sage of Shevat is hidden somewhere in this town. I wonder if it's true?

The other one says –

Chc4: Wha? That's strange. You smell like soil and trees, yes, you do. Looooong ago, the Chu-chu Tribe lived in the woods, with no interference, yes they did. I wonder if someday, we could ever return to the land and live in the woods again . . .?

Over by the far wall, beneath the balcony, they speak to a gray chu-chu who says –

Chc5: I like the people in Shevat because they're all nice. They treat Chu-chus the same as themselves . . . yes, they do. But I heard people on the land are all scary. They lie, say awful things, hurt and kill each other . . .(pauses) I am wrong, right?

They choose to level with him. Fei shakes his head and says –

Fei: Everyone's not necessarily kind and good . . .

Chc5: I see . . .I hope everyone understands each other, and lives happily together someday . . .yes, I do. (pause) You're awfully straight forward. I like it. I'll give you this.

They get Aquasol S, S and DX. They thank him and move on to the left to an elderly pink chu-chu with spectacles. She stands near a circular depression in the floor with a lift stone in it and says –

Chc6: The floating rock back there will take you to the wonderful plaza, Aqua Paradise, yes it will. Sometimes it's good to get away from reality and forget the cares of the world . . .yes it is.

Over by one of the tables, a dark gray stands with an orange and says –
Chc7: Say, I have something really good to tell you, I could let you in on it. It's a deal you can't refuse!
He looks around and asks –
Chc7: Do you wanna know?
They respond, [Sure.] and he says –
Chc7: Hmm . . .I see . . .You wanna know, yes you do . . .Alright, I'll tell you about the inspirational tradition of the Chu-chu Tribe, yes I will. (turns away, addressing the crowd) Looooooong long ago, the Chu-chu Tribe had a great big guardian god, who could step over huge mountains in one step. The Wondrous Mambo god, yes he was! The Chu-chu Tribe and the Wondrous Mambo god lived happily together in peaceful peace, yes we did. A dreamy sweet existence. But one day, a huuuge red fireball rained down from the sky, and blew away our guardian god as he was asleep. Blam, kablam, boom! But don't worry! The great big guardian god became a star in the sky! He protects the Chu-chu Tribe, yes he does!!
He turns back to them and says –

Chc7: Yes, yes, it's a great story . . .No matter how many times I listen to it, I'm so moved . . .yes I do . . . Be careful now, remember: Bad guys that pester the poor Chu-chus will get punished by our guardian god, yes they will.
They go up the stairs tot he balcony and speak to an elderly pink chu-chu who says –
Chc8: The guys in Solaris pestered the Chu-chu Tribe who'd lived on this star from the beginning. So gramps and grandmas escaped with the people from Shevat, yes they did. But most of the Chu-chus couldn't escape and were killed . . .Those guys ate them, yes they did . . .that reminds me . . .I'm hungry, yes I am . . .I just remembered I haven't had lunch yet.
A younger pink Chu-chu on one of the glass displays says –
Chc9: Forget the guardian god of legend. Nobody believes such fairy tales in this day and age . . .no, no. If a great big guardian god existed, he'd have beaten Solaris to death a looooong time ago, yes he would. Just a bunch of optimistic, happy guys . . .What are we to do about them . . .
An elderly yellow Chu-chu nearby, naps –
Chc10: Zzz . . .Zzz . . .
Then he offers them a selection of armor and weaponry. They buy some and –

Chc10: Thank you, thank you! Come again, will you! I'll give you a discount!! Zzz . . .Zzz . . .
They look across at another pink Chu-chu who stands on top of one of the lamps and jump out over the balcony railing to speak to her. She says –
Chc11: The angel stood watch as the night ended. Twilight nodded off in the arms of a lost child from 500 years ago . . .And the Sea Serpent swallowed the dark. A wise gramps taught me that a looooong time ago. Don't know what it is, though, maybe a spell, yes maybe it is.
Down on the floor, they speak to an orange Chu-chu who says –
Chc12: I hear the Sage in Shevat did some research on the Chu-chu Tribe's tradition, yes he did. That's a lot of work. Even the old generation of the Chu-chu Tribe don't know many things about it.
They go over to the lift stone and it takes them down into a beautiful chamber of white marble lined with moss and a fountain in the center. The floor appears to be transparent and they can see the crystalline blue water beneath their feet as they step off the lift. A gray cat wanders around the spacious brightly lit chamber and several openings give view to the blue sky and sunshine outside. They speak to a lady near one of the doors leading to a balcony outside and she says –

L1: Yes, yes . . .I'm listening, dear.
View swings around to the fountain and they all turns to look at it as she continues –
L1: It reminds me of the good old days. This is the place you and I met for our first date, isn't it? I recall that on that day, you dear, read me a poem that you said you wrote all by yourself . . .I thought it was funny that such a romantic still exists in our day and age . . .But I was delighted by it . . .Nothing has changed here . . .(pause) Truly important things can't be taken away by anyone . . .
They pause to look at the bubbling water of the fountain, feeling a peace descend, then they move on towards the doorway, up the steps behind them. They find themselves on a ledge overlooking the vast blue sky beyond. Two people stand nearby, one of the long haired agents and an Aveh guard.
The agent says –
M1: The people in this city had dreamed of going down to the land again for a long time . . .They dreamed of the day when they could go down to the free world after fleeing from Solaris . . .I have a hunch the day may not be (pause) too far away.

G1: This city has been wandering the sky like this for 500 years . . .just watching the ever changing countries, the world, and those who appeared and disappeared . . .the people in Shevat lost power, so that's all they could do . . .Being able to observe may have been a reward for those people here.
Before they leave, they look at the exquisite view of Shevat from the ledge and the islands of green with trees floating among the fluted columns. They return to the Plaza and go across the clear glass floor to the door across the way. They find themselves on another ledge overlooking the town and a small old lady garbed in purple and pink says rapidly to them –
OldW: After all, pain only causes more pain and sadness . . .How come those guys up there don't understand such a simple thing . . .? Just relax, have fun fishing like that sage who disappeared.
They leave and go back into the plaza, up the lift pad to the Chu-chu's room. They leave and climb the steps spiraling around the column to an area with a string of stepping stones curving around further up. They jump from one to the next until they reach a door set into the stone about halfway up. They enter and find a darkened chamber which lights up as they walk in. The room appears to be a restaurant of some kind, with tables over by the curved wall and a lady behind a bar in the center. As they walk in, she says –

L1: Hello and welcome . . .As you can see, the "Deep Sea Bros" is open . . .it's just that we aren't doing any business right now.
Many multicolored birds fly around the establishment, perching on the bar and the overhead range, filling the room with chirping. They go behind the bar and speak to the woman further. She says –
L1: Look at these birds. They have forgotten how to fly during the long history of evolution. (pauses) We humans are the same. We threw away our broken wings, and forgot how to fly . . .But I doubt it will end like this. We'll remember the sky again, someday. Running into the deep, vast blue sky forever . . .The day will come again. (turns from them) Don't you think so?
They go out into the once more and notice a jukebox over by the far wall. They play a few tunes, then leave. They go up the spiraling steps outside, jumping from plate to plate carefully until they reach a green area with trees high overhead on the roof, wispy clouds trailing through the branches of the trees.

They see a man with long pale hair and a blue coat. He says –
M1: Why do humans hate and hurt each other? Everyone lives under the same blue sky . . .
As he speaks, the view pulls out so that the rooftop with its forest and a small tower are visible nearby.
M1: Will there ever be any relief from the pain of losing what was precious to us? When will it be the day we can understand what all this loneliness and sorrow was for? In short, we may be repeating the same mistake we made 500 years ago . . .
The view returns to normal and they look out at the panorama below, arching stone walkways, rounded columns and green trees intertwined with the white stone. The go back down to the beginning of the spiraling steps and greet a white shaggy dog who sits near the path leading to the entrance. They jump down to the lower level near the door leading to the Chu-chu's room and go right, up a short flight of steps and onto a balcony wrapping around the outside of the central column until they reach a pathway extending out to one of the smaller islands of masonry. They go across and enter the building, finding themselves in a semi-circular chamber, with potted plants near the entrance. They go around and down a short flight of steps to an old man standing near a picture on a table near the kitchen area. He says –
OldM: Hello, surface people. Look at this picture. It's me and my wife a long time ago. It may be hard to believe but there was a time when we were young too, (pause) full of dreams and hopes. My wife died two years ago. So, I asked the people in the world below to bury her ashes in the earth. My time will also come soon . . .Could you young people bury my ashes in the earth for me too . . .? I'm tired of . . .waiting . . .and believing . . .I want to rest in peace in the earth.
They go over to an old woman who says –
OldW: But I was wondering what it would be like to live without getting old like Queen Zephyr . . . What has she seen, and heard for the past 500 years? Did what she see and hear really bring her happiness . . .That, I don't know.
They speak to a woman near the cooking range –
W1: This country's been through a lot. We no longer have enough strength to fight Solaris . . .(she nods) You people form the world below should go to the royal palace. Queen Zephyr will listen to your wishes and show you the way. You may be the new hope for those who're against Solaris . . .
On the way out, they notice a lift stone and step on it, going down to a lower level which is filled with blueprints and spare parts scattered here and there. They go up the gentle spiral incline to a man in a green coat at the top. He says –
M1: We don't have equipment or materials like Solaris does. What the hell do they want us to do? Damn it! We aren't at a disadvantage when it comes to technology and ideas . . .
They go back down to a lower section where a bald man stands with a woman.
M2: What's the use of having a Gear if there's no one to ride on it? The only Gear that needs maintenance is Maria's Gear which is hardly ever used. (nods once) Well, to be honest with you, we don't have any chance in this fight . . .Unless a miracle happens. The battle was probably settled at the point where they let her escape in that war 500 years ago.
The woman says –
W1: This store is about to be closed. Gears aren't needed in this town except the Queen's troops . . . But, please take a look. We no longer have much business, but all the items are our pride and joy.

They do so and find a great deal of improvements for all their Gears. They buy a few things and she says –
W1: Thank you. If you need anything, please stop by again. (pause) We'll try to help you as much as we can.
They go back up the lift stone and outside once more where they make their way down the path nearby. They see an old man standing near the end and he says –
Oldm2: If you're not leaving yet, you better turn back. Oh, so you're waiting to meet up with Maria?
They respond with, [Yes, that's right!] and he says –
Oldm2: If that's the case then . . .under there is a house that no one lives in anymore.
View tilts to the lower level where a path stretches out to a house. He continues –
Oldm2: Maria often used to go there and sit all alone in the second floor of that house and think about things. Why don't you check out the place and see what you can find while you wait for her there . . .
They go over to the stone lift and it takes them down to the pathway leading to the house. They enter and find themselves in a circular room with a staircase on the right and a table covered on dust with a doll on it to the left. They go up the stairs in the stillness of the silent chamber and see two doorways, one leads to a bedroom and the other leads to a small room with a huge hole in the wall whee the bright blue sky comes through. View tilts to face the three as they stand near a child's rocking horse and Fei says –

Fei: This is...!
Fei shakes his head.
Fei: They were killed by Solaris . . .

Bart: Tch . . .! To hell with them . . .!
Fei goes to the rocking horse. It begins to rock and slows.
Fei: . . .

Fei looks up. The door opens and Maria walks in
Maria: There are a lot of people who don't care if they hurt others . . .
Maria: So, this is where you all were.
Maria: The Queen said this house was destroyed in the great war 500 years ago. This house has been kept like this on purpose as a reminder of the war.
She turns to face them and continues -
Maria: Thank you for waiting. Please come to the Palace with me.
She leaves and Fei calls out -

Fei: H . . . hey, wait!
Turning, Bart mumbles under his breath, ". . . Disagreeable squirt . . ."-

Before they leave, they take one last look at the rubble lying on the floor and approach a small wardrobe in the back. " Found a 'Child's memory from long ago'." But as they look, they see . . . "But nobody could take that away."

Bart nods and says -

Bart: Uh . . .

He looks up and she nods -

Zephyr: It should do you some good if you rest in the palace and think about it. You must think about what you ought to do. But remember, Solaris has been quite active lately. So we don't have much time for leisure.

She sits down and continues -

Zephyr: Very well, then. Now go and get some rest.

They turn and make their way across the suspended pathway and back out to the anteroom. They speak to Wiseman who says –

Wiseman: Fei, go with Shevat.
Your father, Kahn would've wanted you to . . .

They see no sign of Maria and go through the door behind Wiseman, entering a short hall and passing through into a spacious chamber, It appears to be a bedroom and books line one wall and a table with a pale white angle statuette is nearby. A bed with a glowing blue light curtain is across form them and they see an old picture on a table. Fei stands before it and says –

Fei: It's an old picture... It looks like a picture of Queen Zephyr's family. Fine looking parents and... Is that her brother next to the Queen . . .? Everyone is smiling. Only the Queen hasn't changed . . . for 500 years . . .

They leave and go out to the anteroom, crossing over to another doorway and into a brightly lit stairwell which spirals gently upward, past windows through which sun shines. They find a door at the top and go through, emerging outside into the bright blue of the sky and ascend the spiraling stairs on the outside of the tower to the gazebo perched above. They see Maria, standing at the railing, looking out over the deep blue sky and speak to her –

Maria: Are you finished talking to the Queen? What do you all plan on doing . . .? Are you going to fight alongside the people of Shevat against Solaris? Everyone is searching for a reason to live, a reason to fight. To understand better the meaning of death . . .However, that is something we must find on our own, and make it our own . . . That is what my grandfather said. Though I don't understand what he meant by it . . .

She turns to look out at the azure sky and tiny wisps of clouds trail among the pillars of the tower gazebo. She continues –

Maria: It's already been 5 years since my grandfather brought me to Shevat. Grandfather and the Queen always told me not to leave Shevat. That I must not go to Solaris alone . . . there's no way I could lose to any other Gear in my Seibzehn . . .there's no way . . .! I'll step on all those Solarians with Seibzehn . . .Beat them down, beat them all down!! (shakes head) Why does grandfather and the Queen stop me? Don't they care what happens to father . . .? (pause) Are they just going to stand by and watch him die? I can't forgive those people who tortured father, (pause) and those who silently stand by and watch . . .! Even as we speak, my father in Solaris may be . . .

She remains looking out at the sky and they leave, returning to the anteroom and making their way back to the central section of the palace. Theyspeak to the two guards on either side.

G1: How's the surface doing, lately? I'm sure the people down there are living blindly yet peacefully as usual.

G2: I seriously doubt any spy would be able to get in. And as I expected, since we have new people from the surface, there's increased security. And you never know what might happen . . .If anything ever happened to the Queen, it'd be disastrous.

They go to a lady dressed in pink over to the left of the guards near a door. She says –

L1: Welcome to Shevat. We've already heard that you are our guests. Please use this room as you please. You are welcome to use the bed to rest.

They enter a sizeable chamber which is decorated in elegant furniture. A table and three chairs are near the door and three beds line the far wall. They leave and make their way past the guards and along the marble pathway encircling the recessed section in the center. They speak to an orange Chu-chu who says –

Chc1: Looong ago, I've heard that a lone Chu-chu was taken from the town by Wiseman . . .I haven't heard what happened after that. I hope that Chu-chu is doing very well . . .

Another lady in pink stands looking out over the wide space of the center of the room. She says –

L2: The powerless are maimed and slaughtered all because those crazed leaders give out one blood-lusted order. It doesn't matter how advanced their technology or culture is. It's the same thing. Not one thing has changed over the years. It's gotten so sad, you can almost laugh! Hah! How long does this have to last . . .?

Behind her, an old man stand near a door and they speak to him –

OldM1: This is the library where many books are gathered. This place is packed with many ancient books that you cannot find on the surface. If you're a book fanatic, you'd drool over books like our first run prints, limited books, autograph . . . . . .books, banned books, and mountains of hard to find books, and more mountains and mountains of books . . .! Ahhh! It's too much! (he shakes himself) Well, setting that aside . . .If there's something you want to know about from the past, it'd be good to go in and talk to the librarians.

Don't worry. It's their job anyway to tell the new people from the surface about the past.

They enter the library and find themselves in a circular chamber with 2 rings of shelves encircling it towards the center. Several librarians are posted near the books and they begin on their right and continue around counterclockwise. The first is a woman in cream robes touched with green. She says –

LB1: You're probably already aware of this . . . . . .but this Shevat is protected by a special gate made possible by an ancient technology. Even Solaris cannot break this barrier. Because of that, we were able to avoid being invaded to this day. But even with that, we don't have the power to attack Solaris either . . . It's a stalemate. Basically, we've just been glaring at each other.

They go past her to a short haired man in light red robes touched by dark red.

LB2: After the war, Solaris used a gate, like ours, to separate itself from the surface. And then, they erased all memory of their existence from the surface dwellers. Due to this, the surface dwellers are still not aware that they've been secretly dominated by Solaris all along. To be born into a false reality, to grow up in it, and to die in it . . .without ever approaching the truth. . . .That is the life of a surface dweller.

They move past him to an old man in purple robes with white hair who says –

LB3: Surviving through the great war of 500 years ago and the Diabolos Collapse . . . . . .we and the rest of our comrades secluded ourselves on Shevat. At the time, Shevat was being constructed at the tip of Babel Tower . . . . . .but we were able to escape to the sky before Solaris once again ascended to power over the land. Since then, we've been wandering the skies, while overlooking the activities of the land below.

They go down to the second ring of shelves and start clockwise, beginning with another old man, dressed in brown and red robes. He says –

LB4: Those giants which fought long ago to save us. An existence which surpasses all other Gears. They are the legendary 'Omnigears'. One of them is the treasure of the Aveh royal family . . . . . .which is currently resting somewhere within the continent of Ignas. But, I can't guarantee that.

They go to an old lady behind him who is dressed in a pink robe. She says –

LB5: The reason mankind was able to make it through and survive certain death, 500 years ago . . . . . .was because the power of those giants created through god's wisdom. Roni Fatima and the other young fighters piloted these giants and destroyed the heart of the Diabolos. Seeing an opportunity to counterattack, mankind desperately stood up against Diabolos . . . . . .and successfully annihilated them. Roni Fatima, Queen Zephyr and the rest of the young ones put their lives on the line and won back . . . . . .the future for this world.

Bart: Roni Fatima? Isn't that my ancestor? So you're saying my ancestor, Roni, fought alongside Queen Zephyr against Solaris . . .? Hmm . . .

They go to a young man in orange robes touched with brown and he says –

LB6: Diabolos . . .The sudden appearance of the mysterious army put a full stop to the battle between the humans, 500 years ago. Those angels of death, utterly unrivaled, with no fear or mercy . . .Their only intention was to eradicate all life on this planet. Even Solaris' proudest Gear battalions were mere flies to them. Nothing stopped them as they indiscriminately slaughtered and trampled upon countless lives. At that time, people were certain that the end of the world was approaching . . . Dominated by feelings of constant fear and hopelessness, it was a dreadful life . . .

They go past him to another old man in purple robes who says –

LB7: The great war that unfolded between Solaris and Shevat, 500 years ago . . .It was a heroic battle, with the freedom and independence of the land dwellers at stake . . .The rebel army, which centered around Shevat . . . . . .was successful at attacking the inner citadel of Solaris, but only with tremendous sacrifices . . .However, before we almost made it, the unthinkable happened . . .A new enemy appeared that even Solaris had not anticipated. That was when the nightmare began. The nightmare never seen before. A nightmare that we pray we would never have to see again . . .

They speak to a woman in cream colored robes behind him who says –

LB8: At one point, Solaris and its Gazel Ministry made up of 12 elders . . . . . .dominated the world with more military might than they have presently. The people on the land were treated like slaves . . .If any of them resisted, they were quickly and mercilessly dealt with. They treated the people as if they weren't living beings. Eventually, people on the surface began to rebel from all parts and ultimately . . . . . .led to the Solaris-Shevat War of 500 years ago.

They move on to an elderly lady in pink robes who says –

LB9: After the war and the collapse of Diabolos, similarly to the land dwellers . . . . . .the heavily beaten Solaris forces began to pull back and return to their home country . . . . . .taking along with them vast numbers of land dwellers as slaves. We couldn't stop them. The only way for the war torned land dwellers to survive was to depend on Solaris . . . After the brief moment of hope, Solaris once again began to reign over our lives . . .A cold and harsh era had begun. 500 years have past and their reign still continues . . . No one knows how long this is going to last . . .

They leave the library and go to the next door on the right. They speak to a man outside –

M1: This is the tactical command room. Currently, we are keeping track of the activities of both Solaris and the land and collecting data. Lately, there's been a lot of unusual activity down on the surface. . . .Hmm. You think Solaris found something?

They enter and find themselves in another circular chamber, smaller than the library and illuminated by turquoise light coming from the glass floor. A circle of computer screens surrounds them and they see three people. A Chu-chu, a man in a tan colored robe and another in an orange colored robe. The Chu-chu is gray and he says –

Chc1: Hmhmm . . .So the Anima Relics were created by god's wisdom. I wonder if that is truly the case . . .

Below the aqua lit glass upon which they are standing, a smaller stone circle rotates slowly. The Chu-chu turns to them and says –

Chc1: All in all, that unit was meant to merge with something inorganic. That would be the proper assumption . . .It is foolish of humans chu try chu depend on such things . . .(gives a start) Oh my, I've said chu much. Forget what I said.

M1: That which the Gazel Ministry of Solaris desperately seeks . . .is the 12 Anima Relics created by god's wisdom. The merging of an Anima Relic and a Gear can produce an Omnigear . . .But, the subjects must be in suitable synchronization or else the transformation will not occur. Some of the Anima Relics have been discovered, but there are still more left undiscovered, sleeping deep in the earth. Even we have been devoting much to the search . . .but, to no avail . . .

The man in the tan colored robe says –
M2: The power of the Omnigears was so great that they could even hold back Diabolos' collapse 500 years ago. If any more of these fall into the hands of the enemy . . .Our future and even those of the land dwellers will be . . .!! I implore you, land dwellers! We require your assistance. Shevat must collect the remaining Anima Relics, by any means necessary . . .!

They speak to the old Chu-chu again –
Chc1: Uh, and, yeah . . . the relic, relic . . .I wonder where the little Anima Relic went . . .

They leave and go down the curved ledge to the next door on their right. Across from it, a man and woman stand on a small balcony overlooking the center of the palace. The man says –
M1: Balthasar has simply told Maria not to leave Shevat under any circumstances. He probably said that because he knows that if provided with the choice . . . . . .that child would immediately try to fly off to Solaris . . .all by herself, to rescue her captured father, riding on the Seibzehn . . .

The woman, dressed in cream colored robes says –
W1: Maria has truly done so much for us . . .As of now . . . . . .many of us consider her to be the guardian angel of Shevat. Regardless of how well she can control Seibzehn, she's only a 13 year old girl. She's probably worried sick about her father who's been captured by Solaris . . .

They go through the door nearby and enter a brightly lit rectangular chamber with a long table in the center. The room appears to be a lab of some sort and several people work over tubes and objects at the table. An orange robed man nearby says –
M1: This land is a testing ground for Solaris. Their objectives are genetic engineering, crossbreeding, and mind control . . .They want to collect data for the newly created organisms and general combat data. Lambs are merely livestock to be raised for Solaris' purposes. The 'Ethos' was established mainly to control the Lambs.

Bart: What!? Collecting combat data!? Then, this war
that's lasted for hundreds of years on the Ignas continent . . .
It was just a farce plotted by Solaris!?

M1: They're not doing this for fun, either. It's an important simulation. Creating appropriate organisms that can align themselves with the 'Anima Relics' is one of their important objectives. In any case, the Lambs will continue to be Solaris' guinea pigs unless someone stops them.

Fei nods once and –
Fei: . . .

They speak to a long blond haired man nearby who says –
M2: The scientists of Solaris had bitter experiences in the revolt by the Lambs 500 years ago. So they decided to do some work on the Lambs. They inserted various Limiters so that they would never be able to revolt. For the past 500 years, Solaris controlled the Lambs' consciousness, behavior and all. Naturally, the Lambs don't know anything about it. That makes it even more unforgivable!! Although, it's highly efficient . . .

They go around the work table to a man in a gray coat and short brown hair who says –
M3: A man named Krelian was the mastermind behind the planting of the Limiter in the Lambs. He was originally a Lamb. He learned molecular engineering from the sage, Melchior, personally. But he misused it for such a terrible act! An unbelievable monster!

They go across to the far wall where another man works before a table which curves along the wall. He says –
M4: The whereabouts of the three sages, Melchior, Balthasar and Gaspar have not been known since the great war. There's even a rumor that they lost faith in humans because of the tragedy in Nisan. Solaris' activities have increased once again . . .I wonder where they are and what they're up to.

An old man nearby at the table says –
Oldm: The Limiter restrains the Lambs' abilities. But there may be a way to remove it. Taura Melchior, he used to be one of the three sages of Shevat. He must know a way to remove the Limiter.

They speak to the first man once more –
M1: You land dwellers better think seriously about it. The Lambs'll continue to be Solaris' guinea pigs unless someone stops them.

They leave and make their way down a gray marble staircase which spirals down to a lower level. Down the hall, which overlooks the gulf in the center, they see a man standing guard near a door. He says –
M1: Further down is the prison. It hasn't been used for several hundred years though. It isn't anything worth seeing. Well, I guess you could say we had a similar barbaric phase like the land dwellers!

They go through the doorway and enter a large, dimly lit stairwell which descends to another door. They go through and find themselves in a darkened chamber with six cages hanging form chains on either side of the central pathway. An old man nearby says
OldM1: This is where we keep the criminals in their cells. It's been said that soldiers from Solaris were locked up in here long ago. I've heard we've even done many atrocious things at that time. War is like that. It abolishes good and bad. One betrays friends, neighbors, even his own flesh and blood . . .War turns even good, kind humans into crazed monsters.

Further down, they see a young man with long hair and a tan colored robe standing before a black cylinder of light – it appears to be a cage of some kind. He says –
M2: This is a Carbonite Cage that petrifies humans alive. Regardless of whether it was only used on criminals, it is still heinous. No matter how you look at it, they've sure thought of cruel things. (turns to them) By the way, you land dwellers know about the Nisan tragedy during the great war? Did you hear anything from the higher ups?

They respond, [No] and he turns to look back at the cage and says –
M2: I doubt they told you. Those old men probably avoid talking about it. Do they think the truth will disappear if they turn away from the past? Bunch of fools! (turns to them once more) Be careful, land dweller. You'll have a terrible time if you open up your heart to those old men. Just like they did in Nisan 500 years ago . . .

They go down to the door at the end of the path and find themselves in a short, dimly lit hallway leading to some stairs. A door is to their left and they enter a large stone circular chamber with a circle surrounding a triangle in the center. The triangle is lit form below by a greenish light and there are a couple of computer banks on the wall nearby. They see a man standing at the edge of the circle, and he says –

M1: This is a machine created to put brutal criminals and dangerous monsters to sleep. It isn't expected to be used again but it is ready anytime just in case. Anyone who has no business here should leave. Get out, right now.

They leave and go down the stairs to a door at the end of the hall. They enter a gray square chamber with a large cage at the far wall surrounding an aqua lit circle. An old lady stands at the bars, looking down at the softly glowing surface and says –

OlW1: That day, 500 years ago, that woman was definitely here . . .There was no other alternative but to be a captive . . .We could've won, at the cost of many sacrifices! Only if that traitor hadn't disappeared with the woman!! The escaped woman freed the beast. The beast sucked human blood and ate their flesh . . . And tore the world apart . . .!

The old woman turns from her vigil at the black bars of the cage and says –

OlW1: Excuse me . . .Miss . . .You resemble the girl who was like an angel, and was sacrificed in the great war . . .I can picture Zephyr and the followers' confusion. They were the ones who were actually responsible for the death of Sophia. In actuality, we are still being punished for that crime, 500 years ago! It feels almost ridiculous, hahah . . .!

They leave the prison area and return to the lower level ledge out at the central section. They make their way around the curving pathway, down a short flight of steps to where an old man stands with an orange Chu-chu looking out over the area. He says –

OldM: That great war 500 years ago, I can remember it like it was yesterday . . .That's something I can't get myself to forget. Many lives were lost . . .Much love, many dreams, friends, those . . . . . .irreplaceably important things in our lives were scarred and left to bleed . . .Are those days going to return once again . . .? I don't want my children or grandchildren to go through that nightmare . . .

They speak to the Chu- chu who says –

Chc1: You humans are truly unusual living beings, aren't chu? You're all like shattered fragments of a mirror.

They see a door nearby and enter, finding themselves on a suspended pathway of blue green light above along rectangular room filled with odd machines. Down below, they see two people and make their way down the ramp of light to the ground floor. A man near one of the large machines says –

M1: We've been flying up in the sky, right? It isn't easy getting supplies. We can't just go and get all our own supplies either. We made it this far somehow, but if the situation continues like this . . .Hmm . . .we'd better do something . . .

Another man near the far wall says –

M2: Hmm . . .this month is going to be very tight too. We must cut down on rations a little to make it . . . But everyone will probably gripe about that . . .What am I gonna do . . .?

They go back up the ramp and exit the room. Further down the pathway, they see an Aveh guard near a door who says –

G1: Uuhhh, so hungry . . .Is the meal ready yet? Whatever you do, it all goes back to food. You got that? Food! For me, I get the feeling I'm most alive when I'm eating. Isn't it the same with you guys? You eat to live or live to eat. We don't know, do we? I bet those Solarians are always eating all the good stuff. Argh! That's unforgivable!!

They go through the door and find themselves in a brightly lit white marble chamber with a dining table in the center. A man near the end of the table says –

M1: We're still running around in the sky because of the war that broke out 500 years ago. It doesn't make any sense! Why do we have to suffer for what our ancestors did? What do you think? I can't even get fresh ingredients for meals! I've had it!

They go through the arched doorway behind them into a cheerful kitchen and see a familiar woman at the cooking range. It's Yui! She says –

Yui: Oh, welcome. You look good, Fei.
The meal will be ready soon. Please join us and eat to your heart's content.

Fei: . . .!? Yui!? W . . .why, are you here . . .!?

Yui: Oh? Didn't I tell you before? I was born here. After you left the village, I decided to return to Shevat along with the survivors of the village. Because the soldiers from Aveh and Kislev were showing up around there . . .

Fei bows his head and says –

Fei: I see . . .

Yui: Welcome back.

Fei: I'm sorry for putting so much trouble on you.

Yui: What are you saying? It's not your fault. There's nothing to worry about. The people from the village understood after they came here and heard the story. They couldn't blame only you for that incident because Solaris was behind it.

Fei: Yes . . .but . . .

Bart: Excuse me. . . but . . . who's this lady?

Fei turns to Bart, says -

Fei: Oh, you've never met her before. This is doc's wife, Yui.

Bart nods slowly

Bart: The wife of Citan!?

Yui: Aha, I take it... you are Bart, the Orca of the Desert, right? I've heard a lot about you. You've been quite busy. It's nice to meet you.

Bart shakes his head and says -

Bart: Y... yes! H... how do you do!

Yui: Have you met the Queen? If you haven't, go say hello to her as soon as possible.

Fei nods once and responds –

Fei: Okay! Then I'll see you later.

Nearby, they see Midori and an orange Chu-chu youngster standing at the end of the table in the center of the room. She says –

Midori: . . .Chu-chu . . .My friend . . .

The Chu-chu says –

Chc1: Midori really talks a lot! It's amazing how much stuff you have chu talk about. (pauses) We can have a conversation without talking. Have you forgotten already?

They leave the dining area and go back out to the ledge surrounding the central section. They see that they have come almost completely around the path to their starting point. Off to their right, beside a flight of stairs which curves upwards, they see a door and enter, finding themselves in a barracks of sorts. Several beds line the walls and an Aveh guard and a Shevat agent stand before a table in the center. The Aveh guard says –

G1: You just arrived from the surface, didn't you? I've heard about you. They say you saved our colleague captured by the 'Ethos'. Thank you very much for that. (turns back) I wish they'd give me a mission! I'd teach those Solarians a lesson . . .

They speak to the long haired agent nearby who says –

A1: Oh, and you are . . .? I feel like I've met you before . . .Hmm . . .you resemble Kahn, the one who taught us the art of fighting. Nobody knows his whereabouts after he went down to the surface on the Queen's mission . . .I doubt something bad happened to him considering his skills. But, I wonder where he is?

They leave and go up the spiraling steps to the level above. They se two people, a man and a woman. She says –

W1: Krelian holds the true power in Solaris is what I'm saying . . .The irony of fate. Once, that man fought alongside Roni Fatima, Queen Zephyr and Lacan against Solaris . . .

The man next to her says –

M1: To protect Shevat from the outside, the ancient technology of the gate is used. It's fundamentally the same thing as the stuff Solaris has planted on the surface. Even with Solaris' technology, the Gate cannot be broken through. But at times, I come to think about whether this Gate is only for protecting us from Solaris? Maybe that man left this Gate behind to separate us. To isolate us from the rest of the world. If that was his intention, then Krelian is indeed dreadful . . .Does that man's resentment run that deep . . .

Up on this small level are three doors and another staircase spiraling up to the original section where they had started out. Two doors are side by side across from them and they choose the left one. Entering, they find themselves in a cozy sleeping chamber two men walk around. One says -

M1: Balthasar brought Maria to Shevat about 5 years ago, along with that Seibzehn. Balthasar said he sneaked into Solaris by himself and tried to save Dr. Nikolai and Maria. He laughed as he told me that he managed to escape with Maria and take that Seibzehn as a souvenir.

The other man says –

M2: Maria's father, Doctor Nikolai, was captured by Solaris and nothing has been heard from him since. In any case, I'm sure he's being forced to do research on Gears . . .If they develop Seibzehn further into a new Gear weapon, and start mass-producing them . . .Well, to say the least, it would be more than we could ever handle . . .

They leave and go into the room next door where three young men in red cloaks, each holding books tucked under their arm face one another. The first says –

M1: Long ago, humans were with god in a paradise in the sky called Mahanon. The place was protected by the power of god. Humans were never exposed to the fear or danger of death. However, one day, humans entered god's forbidden garden and ate a fruit which bestowed upon them tremendous intelligence and power. God found out about the incident and the humans were banished from the paradise. The prosperous times were over, an era of sorrow and hatred began . . .(he turns to them) That was the first part of the legend of genesis that was passed on from long ago. They say a legend such as this contains some truth to it . . .

The next man says –

M2: Humans banished from the paradise were foolish enough to revolt against god. In order to resist the power of god, they created twelve Anima Relics, and called themselves gods . . .For 10 days, 10 nights, the world shed its blood, Mahanon was enveloped in flames. But human strength was no match for god and the arrogant humans were destroyed by god's anger. Only a few righteous men were left on the land. However, god was also tired and wounded. He decided to rest in the deepest depths of the earth. God's rest was long. But eternity is only a moment to god. Since then, the righteous men who didn't revolt against god had to live in the harsh nature by themselves, being in constant fear of death. (he turns to them) The legend also says the following: When the righteous men's children are born again, god will awaken from his long rest and give a helping hand to them. If the legend is true, what will the awakening god bring to the people? What kind of existence is god?

The next man says –

M3: It is not known how much of the genesis legend is true . . .However, the 'Anima Relics' made through god's wisdom, do exist. Solaris' Gazel Ministry is desperate to find the 'Anima Relic' and Mahanon, a place known to be god's resting place. If Solaris attains that power, no one will be able to stop them. What will happen to the world then . . .?

They leave and go to the last door off to their right. They enter another sleeping chamber where an old man stands before a shelf of books. He says –

OldM1: Ahh . . .I see, so you're the son of Kahn. Have you met Queen Zephyr yet? She still can't forget about the tragedy in Nisan during the great war, 500 years ago. Even though it's not her fault . . .I assume she can't forgive herself for betraying and abandoning her fellow members though she had no knowledge of what was going on . . . (turns back to shelf) Oh, I may have said too much. I'm not supposed to know anything. Anyhow, keep up the good work in overthrowing Solaris, young man!

They leave and go up the stairs to the next level. They speak to a man, long hair, who says –

M1: So you're the newcomers form the surface? Hmm . . .It seems you all aren't like the usual land dwellers we get. But we're always happy to have more friends to fight against Solaris. I look forward to working with you.

They go back to the lift and back down to the main central section outside. Thinking of all that they've seen and heard They return to their room and choose to sleep in the beds.

Scene fades.

The Shafts

Scene cuts to the three in their room once more and they rise refreshed. They make their way to the throne room, having made up their minds. They do down the hall, up the steps and into the spacious throne room. They step across to the dais and the aqua glass partition slides away silently to grant entrance to the Queen's throne area. They go across and strand before her. She asks -

Zephyr: Have you decided?

They respond, [My heart is set!]

Zephyr: Alright.

Then, the entire room shakes.

Fei: Huh . . .!?

Fei shakes his head and asks -

Fei: What was that shaking all about . . .!?

A voice calls out -

Maria: Your majesty . . .!

Scene switches to a view of the door behind them as the girl calls out and she enters, asking -

Maria: Was that the enemy . . .!?

A man appears behind her, one of the Shevat agents and says -

S1: Your majesty, something dreadful has . . .!!

He strides forward and view cuts to one facing the throne and the three as the man approaches. Zephyr asks -

Zephyr: What's the meaning of this?

S1: Yes! That is . . .We have an intruder in the dock area! The Gate generator has been destroyed . . .!

Fei nods once and view pulls into the three slowly as he exclaims -

Fei What!?

Zephyr: What's the damage report?

S1: Y, yes! Sub - systems are destroyed . . .Gate generation has dropped 70% from normal! We're devoting everything to fire fighting and repairs . . .It will still take some time!

View cuts to an overhead of the throne dais as Zephyr asks -

Zephyr: What of the intruder?

View pans to the left to Maria and the man.

S1: Yes, we believe it's just a lone Gebler soldier. It seems the individual has escaped to the number 17 hangar!

Maria turns around and says -

Maria: Number 17 hangar bay!? Seibzehn . . .!!

She starts off and Zephyr calls out -

Zephyr: Maria, wait!

Zephyr: It is too dangerous to go by yourself.

Maria turns and walks forward. She says -

Maria: But . . .We can't just let the spy be . . .!

The man comes forward and says -

S1: Your Majesty, we have our hands full just trying to fight the fire on the shield generator. If someone doesn't do something, it's possible we'll have more losses . . .!

Maria nods once and view pulls in closer as she says -

Maria: I'll be fine. I can go it alone . . .!!

Zephyr: Maria, what can you do when you don't even have Seibzehn?

Maria turns to the side and says -

Maria: . . .! But . . .

View switches to the three as they face the Queen once more and Fei -

Fei: Then should we go down with Maria? It's the Gebler, right?
I'm still ticked off at them. I'll take 'em on.

Zephyr nods once and asks -

Zephyr: . . .Is it fine with you, Fei? Please take care of Maria.
And be careful out there.

The three leave the throne dais and face Maria. Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Then, let's get going, Maria.

Maria steps forward, nods once -

Maria: Then, let's all go together.

The man shifts slightly and asks -

S1: Umm, this may be asking for too much, but would it be possible to have one of you stay behind with the Queen? (looks off to the side)
We do not have the combat experience and . . .(pause) if something ever happened to the Queen . . .

Fei looks up at Maria and it is decided to leave Billy behind. The three leave and make their way down the stairs to the central area of the palace. When they step through the doors, an orange Chu-chu comes up to them and says -

Chc1: Oh my, this has gotten serious. It seems you can't get in because of the emergency security. But, you are all lucky. A legendary vendor like me happens to be here through coincidence. I've got a line of quality goods, sir . . .So, if you've got anything you need, don't hesitate to ask.

He offers them a wide selection, from items to Gear parts and they buy a few things. They speak to one of the guards nearby who says -

M1: In hopes of making contact with you and your friends on the ocean surface . . . . . .the shields were apparently dropped. That's when they took advantage of the situation. Who would've ever thought there would actually be a spy that would get in!?

The next one says -

M2: We aren't permitted to leave here no matter what. So please, take care of Maria for us!

They go to the lift and down through the shaft to the bottom. Once outside, they see the soft golden envelope of light is gone, leaving the disk of Shevat bare and vulnerable beneath the bright sunlight. They make their way to the central dock entrance and scene cuts to the lift as it hums down the shaft until it hits a gray stone blockage about halfway down. Maria looks out over the edge and says -

Maria: It's no use! The defensive shutter is closed . . .

Fei puts his hands on his hips and asks -

Fei: Isn't there another way to go down to the hangar?

Maria turns to him and says -

Maria: We may be able to go down if we use the emergency shaft.
But it's not normally used . . .

Fei shakes his head and says -

Fei:I don't care. We can't waste time here anyway.

Maria: I see. The entrance to the shaft is just above here.

She walks towards the center of the lift and it rises partway to an oblong shape cut into the metal sides, its own color slightly different. Maria turns to it and it opens, revealing darkness beyond and she turns back toward them and says -

Maria: This is it. We can go down by entering the shaft from here.

Fei: (nods) Fine! Then, let's go!

They walk through and find themselves in a smooth gray corridor which branches off to the right and left just up ahead. They go left and find a map at the left end of the hall. Maria says -

Maria: This map is of the lower layer levels in the emergency shaft.
You can use it once we get down to the floor several levels below here.

They return to the center and choose the right-hand branch, fighting odd enemies and exploring the twisting corridor of the shaft. They reach a door at the end of the hall and go through, finding a corkscrew spiral staircase leading down. They descend the stairs to another door below and go through, finding themselves in a network of corridors, and take the nearby pathway to a lift pad at the end of one of the hallways. It descends and they find themselves in an outside area of some kind, on a ledge cut into the rock face. They go over to a hole cut into the rock through which a ladder descends and go down. Standing on the ledge, they see a cylindrical stone structure with fan blades spinning slowly around at the top and an aqua colored stone protruding from the ledge nearby. As they approach, Maria says -

Maria: If you hit this switch, you can change the direction the windmill is spinning.

They turn the switch and the mill grinds to a halt, then begins turning in the opposite direction. They jump onto one of the stone blades and ride it to the next ledge which has a ladder leading down to another segment. They go down and to the lift pad and it takes them to a lower level. As they pause at the beginning of the interconnecting corridors, Maria says -

Maria: You can use the map you found earlier on this floor. It's always good to have a map to look at when you lose your way, right!?

They explore more of the corridors until they reach another lift pad and they go down to another ledge outside, jumping from outcropping to outcropping to a ledge off to the left and they climb down the ladder to the windmill below. They jump from one set of blades to another and reach another lift stone which takes them down to more corridors. They make their way to a door, down another set of spiraling stairs and out into a hallway which leads down to a door. They go through and down another spiral staircase. They go through the door below to a short hallway and down one of the branches. They see a small circle of stone set into the floor. They pause for a moment and Maria says -

Maria: Once we go through that manhole, we'll be able to enter the hangar.

They approach it and it flips up. They descend into the octognal room which they had first arrived in. A ladder stretches up into the shafts behind them. They make their way to the Gear hangar and enter the dimly lit chamber. It is empty and they halt just inside the room. Maria walks forward and looks around, exclaiming -

Maria: Where is the intruder . . .!?

They hear -

"Hmph, it's you again . . .You pests aren't making my job any easier."

View tilts up to Seibzehn, the dim light casting him into shadow and stops near the head and they see a lone figure standing there. View pulls in closer and a woman in red with white hair is revealed -

Fei: Dominia!

Dominia: Never thought I'd come across Seibzehn in my place of escape.

View switches to one facing the three from Seibzehn's shoulder, just behind Dominia who says -

Dominia: I'll take Seibzehn.

View pans over to Dominia as she says -

Dominia: Originally, this belonged to us, Solaris.

Fei shouts up to her, speaking quickly -

Fei: I can't let you have the Gear!

Dominia turns to him and says -

Dominia: Heh, then try and stop me!

Then -

Dominia: Huh . . .?

She turns to look out over at Maria and says -

Dominia: That child . . .Hey, you . . .Are you the daughter of Nikolai . . .?

Maria nods and responds heatedly -

Maria: Undoubtedly, I am the daughter of Nikolai, Maria Balthasar! What about it . . .?

Dominia: I see . . .So you're his beloved daughter to whom he offered himself to undertake that difficult task . . .

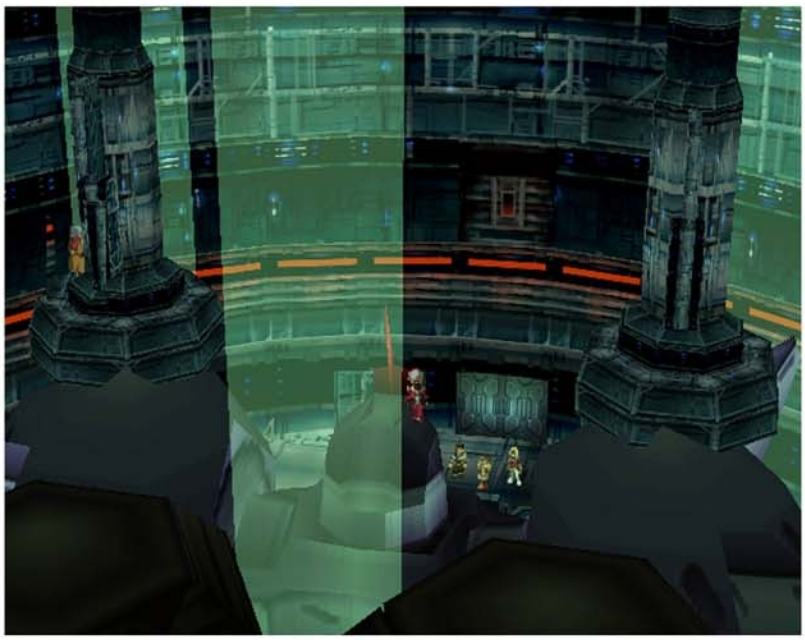
Dominia crosses her arms and turns to the side for a moment, then she turns back to the others and says -

Dominia: Hey, young girl. Want to hear an interesting story? Let's see . . . How about the cursed secret of Seibzehn?

Maria: . . .!? (rushes out) What do you mean?

Dominia: What do I mean? You'll understand it when you hear the story.

For the past several decades, our scientists had put so much effort into the research to create evolved Gears. Regardless of how great a pilot one is, as long as it is human, there will always exist a time lag and human error when interfacing with a machine. That's when your father, Nikolai was targeted. He was a genius in the field of cranial nervemechanisms. They made Nikolai search for a way for humans to go beyond humans . . .(pause) By merging humans and machines. In other words, they were trying to create a new life, an ultimate living weapon, by connecting a living human brain to a gear directly. It would've stayed as a mere fantasy without Nikolai. But that genius made the fantasy come true . . .



View cuts to Maria as she shouts -

Maria: That's a lie!! My father wouldn't do such a horrible thing!!

Dominia: I don't lie, Maria. This is the truth.

View switches to one facing Dominia once more as she -

Dominia: Your splendid father succeeded in fusing man and machine. And he opened the gates to hell for the Lambs.

Maria: . . .!!

Dominia: As a matter of fact, various data and components obtained from the war in Ignas, and the Battling in Kislev, were used as experimental materials. That is how the special humanoid mutants, Wels were born. Wels created in Solaris were tested on the surface. Only the Wels that passed the tests were dismantled, restructured, and reborn. They became the Gear's central control circuit . . .and became part of the machine . . .

View stops, looking up at the massive Gear and Dominia says -

Dominia: It's all the result of your father's great research. Seibzehn, is the prototype of a man-machine fusion Gear. In other words . . .Seibzehn was completed at the cost of innumerable land dwellers' lives.

Dominia: And in the nerve circuit of Seibzehn lies . . .

As she speaks, another's voice is heard -

"Don't you think you've said enough, Dominia?"

View cuts to one facing Dominia with the three in the foreground as she exclaims -

Dominia: Who is it!?

She turns to the side and view pulls in closer to reveal Jessie standing on a ledge nearby, partially illuminated by a beam of light. He says heatedly -

Jessie: Why are women so gossipy? They jabber about things they shouldn't be talking about. Hopeless . . .

View cuts to one facing Jessie, fully revealed in green light as Dominia says -

Dominia: Jesiah!? You . . .!? What're you doing in Shevat!? At one point, weren't you considered to be the next Gebler commander-in-chief!?

Jessie crosses his arms and shakes his head -

Jessie: Don't get so exited.

He strides forward, slings his gun over his shoulder and view cuts to a wider angle as he faces Dominia, the light touching his form while hers remains in darkness. He speaks to her across the vast gulf separating them -

Jessie: I think you've played with enough fire for today. (pauses) Just go home. Maria is the only one who can operate Seibzehn. You should be well aware of that.

There is a silence, then Dominia says -

Dominia: Hmph, fools! Don't get so cocky. The party's just begun. But, I guess it's alright. My mission is complete. All that's left is …

She turns to face the three and view switches to one from behind Dominia as she says -

Dominia: Maria, I'm afraid I must go now. Enjoy your party. Hah hah hah . . .!

She turns and jumps off Seibzehn, disappearing behind the Gear and view switches to one facing it as Fei shouts -

Fei: Wait! Dominia!

There is a long silence and view pulls back as Maria says -

Maria: . . .Father . . .

Fei turns to her and puts his hands on his hips and he says -

Fei: Hey Maria. Don't mind what she told you . . .

Maria: . . .

Fei turns and shakes his head and view swings over to where Jessie stands up above. The place suddenly erupts with the sound of a siren, lights along the walls flashing and Fei says -

Fei: . . .!? This . . .is . . .!?

View switches to one of both Jessie and the others from above as he says -

Jessie: It looks like our guests have arrived. Let's go upstairs. The Yggdrasil is also accommodated in the dock. I'm sure the other guys are making a fuss over it.

Jessie puts his gun away and says -

Jessie: I have an ominous premonition . . .I doubt it but . . .they could've . . .

View switches to one facing Seibzehn's upper body and pulls in to his face. Maria says -

Maria: Siebzehn . . .

Scene fades.

The Generator Battles

Scene cuts to the throne room from above where the entire party is assembled before the Queen. It pans over to the dais as Citan says-

Citan: The Solaris Gear units are on a high speed . . . . . .interception course with Shevat. It would be reasonable to believe that their main targets are going to be the four Gate generators. They are probably planning on finishing us off since Dominia's demolition has weakened the Gate output. We have scrambled our interceptor units, but I do not know how they will fare . . .the people of Shevat are not accustomed to Gear tactics. I want to avoid unnecessary sacrifices if at all possible.

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Yeah . . .I know, doc. We'll go! We're already involved. And, we can't just stand by and watch these people die.

Zephyr says after a moment -

Zephyr: Fei . . .

Bart nods once and says -

Bart: I don't like the idea of working for free . . . . . .but I don't like the idea of turning tail and running from tem even more! Let's do it! It doesn't matter who they are. I'll take 'em all down in my Brigandier!!

Elly nods once and says -

Elly: Yes . . .! We'll do what we can to protect the people here!

Rico shakes his head and says -

Rico: Tch. Since the day I met you all there's been nothing but trouble . . . But I've come this far with you all. I guess there's no point in bitching about it. I'll show them what happens when they tick the great Rico off.

Billy nods once and says -

Billy: I will go too! The enemy was able to get in because they let the Yggdrasil in. We can't allow the people of this country to be in danger because of us . . .

Jessie, with his gun slung over his shoulder says -

Jessie: Yeah, right on! Go for it young 'uns! We're depending on you. Especially since my life also depends on it. I have no intentions of kickin' the bucket here.

Billy turns around to Jessie and says -

Billy: Shut up! Dad, could you not say anything!?

Jessie: Alright alright, I know.

Jessie turns to the side and Billy faces the Queen.

Jessie: Why can't you be more nicer?

J'ora jumps up once and says -

J'ora: Alright! J'ora's going chu help too!

Fei turns to her and puts his hands on his hips -

Fei: . . .? Going chu help us . . .? J'ora, what're you doing here?

Elly turns to him and holds up her hands in a shrug.

Elly: Well . . .In all the bustle, she somehow tagged along.

Fei: What am I gonna do . . .This isn't a game. It's dangerous, so go back to the Yggdrasil. Okay, J'ora? Be a good girl.

J'ora turns to him and shakes her head, saying -

J'ora: Uh hmm . . .J'ora's not a good girl. I'm in that dangerous age right now. (nods once) and J'ora can help chu! I'm going with all of you. Yeah? Yeah?

Fei looks up and nods, saying -

Fei: Tch, alright . . .Don't come crying to me when things get outta hand.

Maria: Heh, so they call you J'ora also. Many of your friends live in this city. You want to go meet them later?

J'ora turns to her and says -

J'ora: R, really? they're all here? Yaaay! I finally found them!! J'ora's friends. they're here!! (jumps up once, turns to the Queen) Now, let's put everything into it. Everyone, we have chu give it our best shot!

Fei turns to the Queen and Citan ponders, saying -

Citan: Here is the breakdown of the enemy Gear units . . .As I have explained before, 4 separate units are each headed for their respective generators. From the information collected in Shevat . . .we have a good idea of the capabilities and composition of the Gear units . . .However, there is one giant Gear that they are holding back that we have no information about.

Jessie looks around and says -

Jessie: An unidentified giant Gear . . .? It can't be . . .

Zephyr: Allow me to put it on screen.

Scene fades and returns to the throne room - but their surroundings have disappeared and instead they seem suspended on the throne dais in mid-sky, a large red gear hovering just off to the upper right. They all turns to look at it and Maria says -

Maria: Th, this is . . .

Scene cuts to the massive red Gear head on and Maria exclaims -

Maria: Achtzehn . . .!?

Bart: What's with that creepy Gear . . .?
Do you know anything Maria?

Maria: Achtzehn . . .(pauses) is the 2nd Gear my father designed . . . Seibzehn's sister Gear. But Achtzehn wasn't completed . . .! Other than Seibzehn, father didn't make anymore, he was supposed to have burned the plans . . .!So . . .(pause) Why . . .!?

They hear, "People of Shevat! Hear me!"

Maria shakes her head and says -

Maria: That voice . . .(pause) No . . .Father's!?

View switches to one facing the dais from the side against the backdrop of the blue sky as the voice comes again -

Nikolai: I'd heard some interesting rats had run into there . . .
Nikolai: Just in time to test out Achtzehn. (pause) I can take you and Shevat out all at once! Hello little rats, come on out. Come on my cute little guinea pigs.

Maria: Why that . . .!! (pauses) Why is father . . .!?

Zephyr: Calm down, Maria!!
It doesn't mean that Dr. Nikolai is inside!

Maria: But . . .!!

Maria: But . . .Father's voice . . .!?

Achtzehn is behind the Queen as she exclaims -

Zephyr: Maria!! Get a hold of yourself! You intend to lose even before you fight . . .? Against they very people who made you suffer?

Maria: . . .!! But . . .

There is silence, then Citan says -

Citan: Well that is fine. Let us consider our next move!

The others all turn to him and he looks down -

Citan: We must repulse the Gear forces and protect the generator. (ponders) To do that let us split into four teams, and intercept the enemy. The four of us will attack independently and defend each generator to the death. The other two, wait here. It is dangerous . . .but we cannot turn back now. If even one generator falls it is a defeat for us.

Citan looks up and Zephyr says -

Zephyr: Maria . . .(pause) You, wait here.

Citan: . . .Please Maria.

Maria turns to him and nods once, then says -

Maria: . . .Okay . . .I understand.

She looks back at the Queen and Citan ponders once more, then says -

Citan: Next, the formation of the enemy Gear forces. At Generator 1, there are two small Gears and a complement of Solaris troops . . .If you do not hit them fast and hard you will get bogged down in a firefight. At Generator 2, there are 3 White Knights. They are very fast and maneuverable. At Generator 3 there is a large Gear and a White Knight. Be careful, the large Gear has some kind of special attack. At Generator 4, there is a large Gear and a White Knight. The large Gear seems to be a power Gear.

He asks them who will be assigned to the battles and they choose Elly, Bart, Rico and Fei. He says -

Citan: Understood. The target assignments are . . .G1 Elly, G2 Bart, G3 Rico, G4 Fei.

He looks up and asks -

Citan: Are these assignments OK?

They respond, [Yes, so let's go!]

Citan: Please hurry and get the preparations for the battle in order. Now, is this alright?

They ask, [Let me get ready] and he says -

Citan: When you are ready, we will leave for the battle . . .Please, hurry, now! The enemy is almost there!

Fei turns to Citan and nods once and says -

Fei: Got it! We've come this far, we're not gonna get beaten now!

View pans over to the right to Achtzehn's great red bulk as it hovers in the blue sky. Scene fades and cuts to the antechamber hall and they make their way out to the main hall and down to their room. Entering, they see Margie who says -

Margie: Heh heh, I came here, too! The inside of the Yggdrasil smells like a men's locker room. I can't stand it anymore. So, what do you need?

She offers them a chance to change their party and they accept, adding Bart and keeping Maria. They enter the hall and see the orange Chu-chu nearby. He says -

Chc1: Alright, then what shall it be?

He offers them a wide selection and they choose to buy Gear parts. Upgrading their Gears, they return to the throne room. Scene cuts to one facing the Queen and all assembled, the image of Achtzehn in the background. Citan asks -

Citan: Well, the enemy is almost here! Are you ready now?

They respond, [I'm ready, let's go!]

Citan: (nods once) Well alright then . . .Those defending the generators, should now depart in their gears!

Zephyr: Everyone, please. (pauses) Be careful.

View pans up to Achtzehn and fades to a view of Shevat at a distance. View swoops in and the four stand at equal corners of the disk at the outer ring. The first generator battle begins! Elly says -

Elly: I don't have anything against you, but I can't turn back now!

Scene cuts to a wide circle in which Vierge stands facing a contingent of Solaris guards and 2 white Gears. She takes many hits from the guards, then lets loose with her Aerod attack. The soldiers go down and she fights the remaining two quickly. She wins and scene returns to the disk of Shevat as the second battle begins.

Bart: Come on! Who's gonna be first? There's no way a pathetic unit like yours could ever beat the likes of me!!

Battle begins and scene cuts to a section of the disk where Bart faces 3 White Knights. Bart uses Booster to speed up the battle and he defeats them easily. Scene returns to the disk of Shevat and the 3rd battle begins.

Rico: Hmph! I'll take you all down at once!!

Battle begins as he stands before two White Knights and a larger Gear. They hack at him with little damage and he turns on Booster to speed up his response time. The large Gear proves very difficult, for he casts Sonic Boom and gel attacks which are devastating. Rico battles fiercely and he wins. Scene returns to the disk of Shevat and the 4th battle begins.

Fei: Alright, I can do it! I'm ready anytime!

Battle begins and scene cuts to a section of the disk where Fei faces two White Knights and an insectoid large Gear. He puts on booster and fights quickly. The Avalanche goes down and then the two Knights.

Scene cuts to the disk of Shevat and Fei shouts -

Fei: We did it! All four Gate Generators are safe!

View pulls in towards the center, then rises up above the angel to the palace overhead and scene cuts to throne room where the image of Achtzehn hovers in the background against a deep blue sky. J'ora, Citan, Maria, Billy and Jessie stand before the throne.

Jessie: Okay, it's ready. So, the last one is . . .this.

Jessie turns to face the imposing Gear as it hovers -

Jessie: What's Achtzehn gonna do next?

Achtzehn turns at the approach of something, and something flashes by - a gray winged Gear charges in from the left. It lands into Achtzehn with a fierce attack, its metal rods flashing against the behemoth. As it attempts to attack again, view switches to one of the throne dais once more and Jessie says -

Jessie: Shevat's Gear forces . . .!!

View pulls in to the two Gears once more and Jessie says -

Jessie: Beat it! This isn't an opponent for you!!

Achtzehn rears back and lifts its cannon to its shoulder. As he pauses, Maria shouts -

Maria: Stop it . . .!!

The Gear from Shevat buckles beneath a huge explosion and view returns to one facing the dais once more as smoke and debris obscure Achtzehn for a moment. When it has cleared, Achtzehn is visible once more, holding his cannon at ready.

Jessie: Damn it . . .! I'm gonna mess you up!

Maria: Why . . .? (pause) Why this . . .?

Achtzehn puts his gun away and faces them and -

Nikolai: So you can be test subjects for this guy.

View moves slightly to the left as the Gear aims his cannon, then all goes red as lines of force shoot out from it and -

Maria: Waghhh!

Jessie: Umph . . .!!

Citan: What was that . . .!?

Nikolai: Achtzehn's new weapon . . .(pause) the anti-Gear Psycho Jammer!

View switches tone of the dais from the side and slightly below as Fei calls over -

Fei: . . .!? Weltall won't move!?

View pulls back to a wide angle, turning to Achtzehn as Elly say -

Elly: Vierge isn't responding either!

Bart: Damn! What's going on?
Brigandier is not working right at all!

Maria: Is this his doing?

Citan: Powerful electrical waves are interfering with the Gear's response circuits. Don't worry, it will soon pass. (pauses) But . . .

View switches to one of Achtzehn from the waist up and Nikolai says -

Nikolai: That much time is enough to erase you from the face of the earth.

View pulls in on the huge Gear and Nikolai continues -

Nikolai: Humans are an imperfect, foolish life form . . .I will show the greatness of a perfect life form! Achtzehn, the combination of human wisdom and the strength of steel.

Fei: At this rate, I can't do anything! Are you saying we have to sit here and take it?

View switches to one facing those on the throne dais as Citan turns to Maria and says -

Citan: That is not what I mean. What if . . .If Seibzehn . . .

Billy turns to Maria and there is a moment of silence, then -

Maria: . . .!!

She turns away and Citan continues -

Citan: If Seibzehn is Achtzehn's sister Gear . . . then maybe . . .just maybe . . . . . .What I am saying is that it would not be surprising if it is equipped with an anti-jamming shield.

Zephyr: . . .Listen, Maria . . .If the other Gears become immobile, you and Seibzehn are the only hope. You're full of spirit . . .You can decide what to do yourself.

Jessie turns to her and says -

Jessie: More than that . . .I don't wanna say it but . . . Your father is no longer in there . . .

Maria turns to him and says -

Maria: Stop it!! You wouldn't know!!

She turns away and says -

Maria: Even though it may be, I . . .(pauses) to me . . .

Jessie turns and looks off to the right and slings his gun over his shoulder, saying -

Jessie: I see . . .oh well . . .Might as well expect the worst then.

Maria bows her head, then says -

Maria: . . .I'm sorry . . .

There is a moment of silence, then J'ora turns to look at Maria and nods once, saying -

J'ora: I'm going.

All except Citan and Zephyr turn to her and Maria says -

Maria: . . .!? What are you saying J'ora!?

View pans to the left as J'ora says -

J'ora: So . . .please let me go along. (nods once) No problem. The gods will look after us. Let's go.

J'ora turns and bounces off down towards the doors and views switches to one behind the throne dais as she makes her way to the exit, seen through the aqua crystal curtain behind the throne. As the doors open, Maria calls out -

Maria: J'ora . . .!?

Jessie turns around and Maria -

Maria: . . . . . .

Then, she turns and begins running towards the doors herself. View rises as she leaves and scene cuts to a set of stone steps as Maria climbs up to the gazebo at the top, overlooking Shevat. She pauses at the landing and sees the great bulk of Achtzehn and shouts, turning to look up at the gazebo.

Maria: No J'ora! Don't!

J'ora stands on top of the gazebo's roof, facing the huge Gear and says -

J'ora: Leave it up chu me, Maria. No sweat!

View pulls back to reveal all of Achtzehn as Nikolai says -

Nikolai: What's with this astronomically unintellectual . . .looking low level animal . . .?

View switches to one facing the gazebo at a distance, J'ora visible as a tiny bobbing speck and Achtzehn in the foreground.

J'ora: Don't chu be rude to me. I'm not a low level animal. I'm J'ora.

View switches to one of J'ora on the gazebo from slightly below and she calls out -

J'ora: Well, let's get ready chu rumble, you bad boy! Get your butt ready chu be kicked across the other end of the horizon!!

View pulls in on the Chu-chu as she speaks and a mist appears, surrounding her form. View switches to one facing Achtzehn, J'ora before him, as the mist spreads, and streamers of white light emanate from her body. View pulls back as she grows to an impressive size and the light grows to become like a small sun, radiance overwhelming all. View switches to J'ora as she stands in the light and battle begins!

Scene cuts to J'ora as she dances a jig, shouting -

J'ora: Kyow! I did it! I did the big big churansformation!

She faces Achtzehn and lands in a powerful blow. He responds with one which causes little damage. She hits him hard again and he responds with by adopting a gun stance and flies at her. He misses at each pass and she stands there unperturbed, returning the 'favor' when he stands before her once more. After the third powerful hit, he says -

Achtzehn: For a low-class, low level life-form, you're pretty good.

J'ora: I'm not a low level life-form. I'm J'ora. Don't be a bad loser! If you wanchu apologize, you had better do it while you still can.

View switches to Achtzehn as he says -

Achtzehn: Die, you pathetic animal! Die!

He lifts his cannon and a huge fiery ball shoots out. View switches to J'ora who clutches her middle in pain and she sits down and says -

J'ora: Ouchu! That hurt . . .

Scene fades and cuts to a view of both Achtzehn and J'ora, the gazebo in the foreground. Maria stands watching and she shouts -

Maria: J'ora!!

Nikolai: I see . . .you're a giant native lifeform of this planet . . .You're not . . .(pauses) a young rankar. Species name, dotesqueJ'orapolin (intellect, astronomically low) ! They still haven't gone extinct yet? But, through genetic engineering, they're supposed to have been minimized in size . . .Probably one of the survivors that had their Limiters removed by the wisemen from Shevat. Intriguing . . .You'd make an excellent guinea pig. I'll use you for many experiments!

A voice comes -

"Big sister Maria . . ."

View pans down and Maria turns and sees a small girl standing behind her. She exclaims -

Maria: Midori!? (walks towards her) No, you shouldn't be here!! It's dangerous here so stay in . . .

Slowly, the little girl speaks -

Midori: Calling . . .Your father . . .

Maria nods once and says -

Maria: What . . .?

She turns to look at Achtzehn and view pans down slightly as she thinks -

Maria: . . .

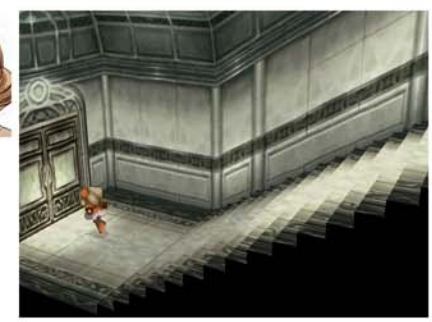
Midori turns to look at Achtzehn and says -

Midori: Uh uh . . .No . . .It's not . . . (pause)
that scary thing over there.

Maria: . . .!!

Maria turns to her and nods once, saying -

Maria: Seibzehn!!

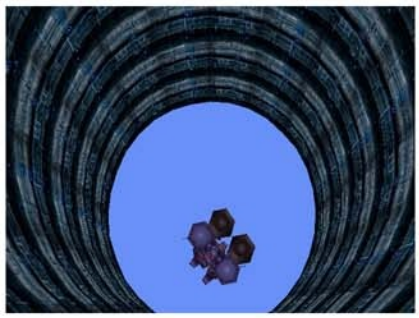


View pulls back and scene cuts to the anteroom where Maria races down the stairs. View switches to the lift as it descends, Maria visible as it goes down the shaft and again from behind her in the hallway leading to the Gear Hangar as she runs toward the doors. They slide open and scene cuts to the cavernous dimly lit interior of the Hangar as Maria approaches Siebzehn, then pauses and says -

Maria: Seibzehn!!

View pulls forward and pans up to the Gear's face as she says -

Maria: I'm sorry, I'm late . . .Let's go! Solaris' . . .Solaris' . . .enemy is awaiting!



View switches to one looking down through the darkness beneath the Gear as three heavy metal doors slide open, revealing a deep pit of blackness below. There is a vibration and view switches to a wall panel which lights up green, then to Maria who stands in a pillar of green light on the Gear's shoulder.

Maria: Seibzehn, sally forth!!

There is another vibration and view cuts to one from above as the Gear's huge bulk begins to descend into the pit of darkness. It speeds up as it falls away and scene cuts to the Gear from below as brighter light touches its form as it continues to descend. It passes by, Maria visible on its shoulder and view switches to the dark green and black of the wide shaft surrounding them as they shoot out into the bright blue circle of sky beyond.

Scene cuts to a view of Maria on the Gear's head as they fly together in the deep blue sky. View pans around to face the red form of Achtzehn as Nikolai says -

Nikolai: Seibzehn!! Is that Maria?

View pans to face the Gear as Maria says -

Maria: . . .It's true that I'm Maria Balthasar, But, you . . . (pause) who are you . . .?

Nikolai: Of course it's me, Nikolai! Look at this, Maria. The results of my research!
View cuts to a close up of Achtzehn, his huge red torso filling the view and he says -

Nikolai: This huge, powerful, forever shining body! There'll be no aging and death. (pause) I was reborn as a new breed.

Views switches to Maria perched on Seibzehn, his huge bulk behind her as she says -

Maria: . . .I loved my father in those days when he was human . . . His warm smile . . . I wanted him to be (pause) by my side forever!!

View switches to one facing Achtzehn with Seibzehn in the lower left.

Nikolai: Maria, you're my daughter. You know how stupid humans can be. You don't need to perish along with these feeble humans. (pauses) Now, come, Maria. Start a new life with me. We shall begin a new chapter in life. Let's build a bright future together. I'll be by your side and protect you this time for sure. I promise you.

There is silence, then Maria says -

Maria: . . .Father . . .

Suddenly, view switches to Seibzehn as he waves a massive arm and rears back. Maria exclaims -

Maria: . . .!! Seibzehn . . .!?

Nikolai: Seibzehn . . .What? You dare stand against me, your creator?

View switches to one facing Seibzehn and pulls in as Maria says -

Maria: T . . .this is . . .!! Seibzehn!?

The Gear vibrates and view switches to one facing Achtzehn once more, Seibzehn in the foreground and Nikolai says -

Nikolai: Interesting . . .I'll take you on. I'll show you how great Nikolai is, and the power of the Achtzehn. Come on, Seibzehn!!

Battle begins! Scene cuts to Maria on Seibzehn's head and pulls back quickly behind Achtzehn's great bulk as she says -

Maria: . . .Achtzehn! I will defeat you!!

View pulls back as both Gears stand facing each other and Maria shouts -

Maria: Seibzehn, let's go!!

Mari builds up Seibzehn's deathblows, reluctant to unleash them. Achtzehn sends out punishing energy beams. Achtzehn proves very strong indeed and at last Maria lands in a series of deathblows. Achtzehn puts his cannon on his shoulder and fires a radiant ball of light at them which does heavy damage. Seibzehn hits him hard in return and a voice comes to them -

Nikolai: Maria . . .can you hear me?

This voice is different, somehow, and the speaker is a young man with long brown hair and brown eyes, which seem full of pain. He continues -

Nikolai: I'm going to release your Graviton Cannon from its seal by remote control! Use that to defeat me.

Maria: !! Father! Have you come to your senses!? No! I can't do it!! The Graviton Cannon . . .you yourself had it sealed up because of its destructive power. Father, if I use that on you (pause) . . .

Nikolai: Fine!! It doesn't matter . . .I, Nikolai, no longer exist . . .Before I was brainwashed by Solaris, I implanted a conscience circuit in Achtzehn . . . This would respond and activate in the presence of Seibzehn. My message is coming from there. And, during the battle, I transferred all my data from there to Seibzehn. I may have lost my body, but my spirit is with you, Maria. Now and forever!

Maria: . . .I can't. I can't bring myself to do it!! Huh! Seibzehn! Don't . . .I can't control you! Father, are you doing this!? Please, don't make him shoot!!

View switches to one facing Seibzehn as he kneels down and his chest opens in a fountain of blue light, a bright flash, then view switches to a side view of both Gears as several flashes appear around Achtzehn and he seems to shrink as an orb appears around him and the surrounding light goes dim. Then, he pops back to normal size and explodes in a fiery blast, disappearing. View switches to Maria who cries -

Maria: . . .Faaaaaatheeerrr!!

View pulls back from her and Seibzehn as a voice comes to them -

Nikolai: Maria . . .I will always be with you. Now and forever . . .

She stands in silence on Seibzehn, staring out into space and she says -

Maria: . . .Father . . .

View rises away from her and Seibzehn and scene cuts to the throne room where they all stand assembled before the Queen once more. The screen is still active, the blue sky surrounding them. She says -

Zephyr: Thank you, everyone. The generator is repaired and the gate is developing as usual. And Maria . . .You did very well. It is very regretful about Dr. Nikolai . . .Solaris put the doctor through all that. We must defeat them as soon as possible and restore freedom!

Maria nods once and says -

Maria: . . .Yes.

Fei puts his hands on his hips and says -

Fei: Queen Zephyr, we will also fight to bring down Solaris. To begin with, where is Solaris? How do you get there?

Zephyr: Solaris is hidden from human eyes by three gates. One of the Gates is under the 'Ethos' H.Q. but . . .It is unreachable, even with Gears. I don't know where the other two are yet. Until we destroy the 3 gates, the path to Solaris will not open. In addition we've received some disturbing news. (pauses) Aveh has invaded Nisan.

Bart gives a start and says -

Bart: What the . . .Shakhan?

Zephyr: Their target is probably somewhere in the earth. The secret royal treasure of Aveh. An Omnigear, sealed up by Roni Fatima!

Bart turns to the others and says -

Bart: Damn!! This is no place to hesitate! I'm going to Nisan! We can't let Shakhan have his way!

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: I see. I can't leave Nisan to its fate. Okay, first let's head to Nisan!

Zephyr: Your ship has been equipped with an aerial module. Originally it was the ship used by Bart's ancestor Roni. Make free use of it.

Maria turns to the others and says -

Maria: Umm . . Can you take me along with you?

Zephyr: I have one request. Fei, take Maria along with you. This child, since her youth has been destined with no choice but to fight. Until she settles her own fights, she will not be able to move on with her life. Go Maria, and find your purpose in life . . .on your own.

Fei turns to Maria and nods once and says -

Fei: I got it. Let's go together, Maria. We're friends from now on, (pause) you and . . .you and Seibzehn too.

Maria nods once and says -

Maria: Yes.

Zephyr: One of the sages, Gaspar, has returned. Gaspar is the one who taught martial arts to Kahn and Wiseman. I'm sure he will be able to teach you new techniques that will be of help to you on your journey. I've already told Gaspar. Before you leave you should learn from him.

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: I got it. (turns around to the exit)
Okay, let's go everyone!

Scene fades and returns to the throne room, its holographic display gone and the wide windows visible beneath the dais once more. Two men stand before the Queen, one in a dark blue robe with a hood and the other in a turquoise robe, trimmed in brown,

Zephyr: Welcome back, Gaspar. What about Balthasar, or Melchior . . .?

An ancient man with a long nose and a white beard says -

Gaspar: No, I haven't seen them ever since . . .Besides, your Majesty . . . I came here to watch over them so that they do not make the same foolish mistakes again.

A man rushes up from behind and says -

M1: Your Majesty, the Omnigear underground is moving!!
The girl named Elly was nearby and it reacted to her!!

Wiseman and Gaspar turn to him and Zephyr says -

Zephyr: Just as I thought . . .

Wiseman: It's a matter of course. But the girl doesn't intend to ride it . . . Just like 'her'. She knows it unconsciously. The existence within her . . .

Zephyr: She . . .was the same as Sophia?

Without turning, Wiseman -

Zephyr: . . .Sorry.

Wiseman: . . .

Wiseman: No, I don't mind. I'm not 'him'.

Gaspar: Well then, I'll go take a look at their Limiters.

Scene fades and -

"Fei and the guys had Gaspar remove a part of the Limiter inserted in their genes.
Yes yes, and then . . ."
The sound of many Chu-chus chirping and sighing in bliss, laughter and games . . .
"J'ora and her friends got together and rejoiced over their safety . . .
It was natural for them to have a party, (pause) and their sweet, dangerous night went on and on . . .just like a never-ending dream . . .No, let's not . . .It's a whole other story . . ."
Then J'ora speaks -

J'ora: Fei, where are you going chu without me? J'ora will go anywhere, even chu the end of the world (pause) with you! J'ora's maidenly pure heart is only (pause) for you! Uh hmmm!

Scene fades.

The Mausoleum

Scene cuts to the bedroom where Fei, Bart and Maria leave and go out to the central area of the palace. They speak with the lady outside their door.

L1: . . .Sigh . . .Will the day ever come when I will be able to live peacefully on the surface?
The man standing on the balcony nearby says -
M1: Yeah, that was an incredible battle. Thanks to you all, we're somehow still here. Thank you so much. We're depending on you till the day we bring freedom back to the surface.
They go down to the kitchen and say goodbye to Yui.

Yui: Fei . . .Be careful . . . No matter what happens, never give up . . .

They leave and go down to the hall and return to the throne room. They walk along the pathway and see that Jessie is with the Queen behind the aqua glass curtain. They approach and it slides away. She says -

Zephyr: Break the Gate and open the path to Solaris. That will lead to the land dwellers' freedom. Please, Fei.

They speak to Jessie who says -

Jessie: Go get 'em guys.

They leave and go to the lift, taking it down to the central section. Upon emerging, they see that the protective shield of light is back up once more and they go down to the docks. Once down in the octogonal room, they choose the smaller lift pad and take it down to a lower level. Scene cuts to a darkened area as they descend down to a square island of stone, four lamps at each corner shedding bluish light. Off to the right is the great bulk of the Yggdrasil and they make their way across the catwalk suspended between the stone island and the ship, going down the hatch. They make their way to the bridge and speak to the crew, starting to the left.

C1: It's a small world. I already remember all the land, sea and air!!

The second shows them the ship's chart and they see that Shevat is very far south, near the pole. They speak to the next man -

C3: Shevat's communication decoder, charts of angular coordinates of the radio wave lighthouse and its pulses, table of guidance communication code settings . . .there's so many things we need to buy. Things have gotten a lot more complicated and expensive, now that we can fly!

C4: . . .Wingtip-stalls . . .hammerhead-stalls . . .the Helpst maneuver . . .grumble . . .grumble . . .

C5: In short, it flies cause it has wings, right? This is hard to understand!

They listen to some of Franz's collection.

C6: So how's the status of our ammo supplies . . . Hmm, maybe we need more anti-aircraft shells . . .

The guy in a green coat in the back says -

C7: I hope Jerico doesn't go learning any more strange things ever again . . .

They speak to Sig who says -

Sig: We are currently anchored at Shevat . . .

They say, [Let's leave Shevat.] and Bart says -

Bart: Our Yggdrasil was reborn with Shevat technology. This vessel will be named 'the Third'!

Sig turns around at the helm and says -

Sig: The operations are a bit different from the previous Yggdrasil. So you'll have to learn the workings all over again!

Near the helm, Bingo says -

Bingo: Yes! I'll do my best!

Scene cuts to an overhead view of the Yggdrasil as it hovers beside the disk of Shevat over deep blue water below. It sails away off to the west and the view is stunning as it soars through the skies among the clouds. They make their way north to Nisan, and the sparkling water and scattered islands pass away beneath them. They arrive over the Ignas continent and make their way swiftly over the desert and across the channel, landing just outside Nisan.

They enter the town and scene cuts to a wide view of the coppery roofs of Nisan, pans to the right as more and more guards are revealed. The streets are silent, empty, save for the guards and view switches to one of the streets where several guards stand watch and view pans up to where Fei, Bart and Elly stand at the edge of town, looking down inside the occupied zone.

Scene cuts to one facing the three against the backdrop of the town from slightly above as they look out over it. Fei says -

Fei: (The city's awfully quiet for some reason . . .)

Elly: (What's more, I can't see any civilians!)

Bart: (They're probably in the hidden shelter. (pause)
I dunno, but I'd like to think that everything is still okay.)

They turn around as Sig approaches them from behind and Bart asks -

Bart: (How was it over on your side?)

Sig: (Everywhere along the roads was also just as quiet.)

There is a pause, then Fei turns to look at Bart who crosses his arms and bends his head to his hand, After a while, he looks up -

Bart: (. . .What's your take on this, Sig?)

Fei and Elly turn to him as he responds -

Sig: (From what little I've seen, there isn't anything much I can say.)

Bart: (Either they haven't found what they are looking for yet . . .Or they've already found what they were looking for but have just left behind some guards . . .Either way, we still need to check on the safety of the residents before we even think of pulling out. Hey, by the way, how is Margie holding up?)

Sig: (From the looks of it, she doesn't seem much different from her usual self . . . But how she feels on the inside . . .well, who's to know . . .)

Bart nods and crosses his arms once more, putting his head in his hand for a moment, then he looks up and says -

Bart: (Really . . .Thanks for looking after her, Sig.)

Sig: (No problem. Anyway I shall go and command the other unit.)

Bart: (Alright. Be careful!)

Sig turns and walks away, then stops and looks about him, then continues on. Bart says -

Bart: (Margie . . .I thought I told her to stay put in our ship.)

Fei: (She probably couldn't keep calm just staying inside the ship.)

Bart: (Yeah, I know but . . .(pauses) Well, she's come this far, so we can't stop her now.)

There is a silence, then the three turn towards the town once more and Bart says -

Bart: (Alright then . . .Let's get movin'.)

Scene cuts to an image of one of the streets where a guard stands beside the door to one of the buildings. He, "!" and the other guards turn as Fei, Bart and Elly jump down into the street from above. Battle begins! They win quickly and proceed along the street towards the north gate, fighting more guards. After several battles, they stand in the empty streets and Fei says -

Fei: Good! Looks like we cleaned up all the soldiers who were in the town.

Scene fades and cuts to an image of the Nisan town and the lake with the cathedral in the center.

"With the help of Fei and his colleagues, Nisan was freed from Shakhan's army. However, the Fatima Jasper and the legendary treasures of the Aveh royal family were still in danger. And now, he's going to play his last card and Shakhan's true intentions will be brought to light."

Scene cuts to an overhead view of the streets of Nisan and slowly pans down to the overhanging east-west bridge as Sig appears from the right. He walks out to the middle of the bridge and turns to look out over the town. View switches to a wider angle of him from above as he stands on the bridge looking out over the silent streets of Nisan. He turns and looks in all directions and view switches to the town on the other side, still wide angle then cuts to one facing him as he says -

Sig: There are no signs of residents . . . (pause) yet.

He begins making his way off the bridge and onto the street and goes towards the council hall. He pauses outside the door and scene cuts to a view of the interior where Fei and the others stand with Margie and Sister Agnes. Margie asks -

Margie: You okay? Sister, are you wounded?

Sister Agnes: I'm fine. (pause) Marguerite and Bartholomew, I'm sorry . . .

Sig appears in the door and the others turns to him as he makes his way over to the right and faces Bart and Margie. He says -

Sig: I took some troops and searched the area, but I couldn't find anyone.

Bart: Really?

He and the others turn to Sister Agnes as she speaks, Margie remains looking at Sig.

Sister Agnes: Earlier, after everyone came out . . .

All turn to her as she continues -

Sister Agnes: Over half of the residents have fled from Nisan. After that, Shakhan's position in the country was compromised so . . .he didn't care about reputations anymore and attacked this land.

Citan: I see. A last desperate plan to reverse the situation . . .

Bart: Sister, I assume the people remaining in the town are . . .?

Fei turns to Bart as she responds -

Sister Agnes: Yes. Hiding in the mausoleum.

Margie turns to Fei as he says -

Fei: Mausoleum . . .? Hiding in a grave?

Margie: The Great Mothers and Kings of Aveh of old are revered there.

Bart turns to Fei and says -

Bart: It's not just some regular grave or anything.

Fei turns to look at Bart and Sister Agnes says -

Sister Agnes: Bartholomew, about that . . .

All turn to look at her and she says -

Sister Agnes: Shakhan and the Fatima Jasper . . .He's after the Fatima Treasure.

Citan: Treasure . . .? If he wants the treasure what is he doing attacking here . . .

Fei turns to Bart as he says -

Bart: Huh? Ahh . . .

Bart turns to Citan and says -

Bart: Actually, the Fatima Treasure is in the mausoleum. There was even father's will there, but I didn't tell anyone . . .

Fei: Treasure . . .You mean that thing in the picture scrolls you showed me earlier in your base?

Without turning from Citan, Bart says -

Bart: Yeah. If you follow that legend, you're supposed to get your hands on some great power.

Sig speaks up, without turning -

Sig: We must stop them somehow.

Bart turn to Sister Agnes and says -

Bart: There's no problem. The Jasper is . . .

Sister Agnes: They plan to use the former Mother's retinas.

There is a moment of silence, then Bart -

Bart: Wha . . .(pause) what!!

Sister Agnes: Remove the deceased Mother's retina, and break the seal.

Bart: Use the body of Margie's mother?

There is silence, then Margie says -

Margie: Mom's . . .!!

Sister Agnes: I'm sorry. They used innocent citizens and sect followers as a shield. There was no other way . . .The truth we heard previously from Margie about the Jasper's true form and how it's used. They know now . . .I am truly sorry.

Bart: Well . . .(pause) I don't blame you. They had hostages!

Citan: Wait a moment. Retinas . . .what are you speaking of?

Without turning, Bart responds -

Bart: The Fatima Jasper is the topaz blue pupils of the Fatima dynasty . . . In other words . . .our retinal pattern. The doors to the treasure are opened by that . . . (pause) Or so it is said.

He pauses, then continues -

Bart: However no one has ever used it. It's not to be used for minor conflicts. The doors are to be opened only when the kingdom is truly in danger. So neither I, (pauses) nor my father, (pauses) nor grandfather, nor my great grandfather have ever used it.

Citan: So, that (pauses) is the true form of the Jasper . . .

There is a silence, then Bart exclaims -

Bart: Damn!

Margie and Sig turn to him as he continues -

Bart: That old coot, (pause) he wants to profane a holy person's corpse? That's unthinkable!

Citan: It is a closely guarded secret but the 'Ethos' people are not holy men. They simply supervise.

Fei: Yes, of course they wouldn't feel anything! Let's go Bart! (pause) Before the mausoleum is trashed.

Bart: Alright!

Then Sig speaks -

Sig: Young master! I have a proposal.

Bart and Margie turn to Sig and Bart asks -

Bart: What is it Sig?

Sig: Currently Aveh is in confusion with Shakhan running amok. It should be very easy to bring down the center with no Gebler units around. It'll be the best time to make our return to the capital.

There is a moment of silence, then Citan says -

Citan: That is a good idea. Shakhan is most likely thinking of the Fatima Jasper as his last card. While we prevent the young one from handing over the treasure to Shakhan . . .a separate force will take back the capital. Then he will have nowhere else to go.

Bart, who is still looking at Sig, says -

Bart: I got it . . .(pause) Sounds good. We can pay everything back in one shot!

Bart: Let's split up! I'll go to the mausoleum. I'll take Fei and . . .

Billy: I'll go.

Bart: Alright. That decides it! Everyone else cooperate with Sig!

Margie: Hold on. I'm going too!

Bart turns to her and says -

Bart: Huh? (pauses) You don't have to . . . Oh, yeah. Sorry Margie. Come along with us.

View switches back to one facing the party as Bart turns to them and says -

Bart: Alright I'm counting on all of you! He's a dead man the next time I see him!

Scene fades and cuts to the street outside as Fei, Bart, Billy and Margie walk out and pause. Fei says -

Fei: Well, let's get goin'. Where's this mausoleum?

Bart: There's an entrance at the rear of the cathedral. So first of all, we have to get on the road that runs around this town and go in through the back way.

Billy: About how far is it?

Bart: The distance to the mausoleum isn't that much . . .But, I don't know how much there is to go from there.

Fei turns to Bart and asks -

Fei: You haven't been inside there yourself Bart?

Bart: Yeah . . .This is my first time to go beyond the mausoleum too.

Margie: Well, the place is all sealed up. Even I haven't been far inside of it.

Bart nods once and says -

Bart: So neither Margie nor I know much about it. Sig and them have already taken off, so we won't be able to return to the ship for a while. For now, we're just gonna have to work this out on our own.

Fei and Billy both nod once and Margie says -

Margie: Alright then, I'm going to go on ahead and wait for you at the entrance.

They turn to her and Bart nods once and says -

Bart: We'll come once we finish our preparations. So could you wait for us at the entrance until then?

They turn to the north gate and Margie says -

Margie: Okay!

She walks off and Bart says -

Bart: Alright . . .(pause) let's get prepped.

Fei and Billy turn to him and Fei says --

Fei: But, by the looks of it, I don't think we'll be able to find the tool lady.

Bart: Hmm . . .Why don't we just leave the necessary money behind then. Sure it might not be good manners, but I'm sure they will forgive me.

They make their way across the street to the shop and find it empty. They approach the counter and Fei says -

Fei: Oh well, there's nobody around. I guess I'll just leave the money here.

They buy a few items and leave. They make their way out of town to the east along the bridge and go around the lake to the tiny island behind the cathedral on the north shore where Margie waits for them. Bart says -

Bart: Thanks for waiting!

Margie: Alright, let's go in!

Scene fades and cuts to the four as they stand at the head of a flight of steps in a dimly lit area. As they start out into he darkness, Fei says -

Fei: I didn't know there was a hidden path behind the cathedral.

Bart: Yeah. It's usually closed off.

Fei: So the mausoleum's in there?

Bart: Oh yeah. If the city's ever in danger, the people are supposed to take refuge in here.

They join Fei and they make their way down the steps amid the stone carved walls in silence. They descend two flights of steps and see a door at the bottom. They enter and find still more stairs leading down. They pause and Fei asks -

Fei: Hold on. How . . .far does this go!?

Bart: Hang in there. It's just a bit more.

They continue on down, the stairway descending for a while, then leveling off, then continuing to descend once more. After a while, they reach another door and g through, finding themselves in a circular, rough hewn chamber with a gray metallic section across from them. The rock here is darker than that in the stairwell and they pause in at the entrance. Bart says -

Bart: We're here.

Fei looks around and says -

Fei: . . .So, (pauses) what's gonna happen?

Bart: Hey now, don't rush me.

There is a long silence as they stare at the black gray metal on the far wall and Billy and Fei turn to look at Bart, then back at the metal. Then both they and Margie look at Bart once more and Fei says -

Fei: . . .You haven't . . .

Billy: You haven't forgotten what we needed to do . . .?

Bart: Hey, lay off and shut up!

He shakes his head, still looking at the metal and -

Bart: . . .It's been a while, so don't blame me (pause) . . .Crap, I really forgot.

Margie: You want me to open it?

Feeling sure he'll remember, if they'll just . . .

Bart: NO! I'm gonna remember!

Billy and Fei join Bart as he approaches the curved metal slab. Streaks of rust line its surface and its lower portion is angled away so that it seems to hang heavy over them as they get closer. Two red lights shine high overhead and Bart paces the structure thoughtfully. Then, they see that "There's something that resembles a panel." And they choose to move it. They approach the right hand side of the metal structure and a screen descends out of it, brightly lit with graphics and a display. They stand before it and Bart exclaims -

Bart: Awww yeah! This is it!

Both Billy and Fei shake their heads and -

Fei: (. . .Is (pauses) everything gonna be OK . . .?
I'm beginning to have my doubts . . .)

There is a moment of silence, then Margie walks away from the rest of the group. Fei follows and they all stand in a line and watch as a crack appears in the metal structure over their heads. A line joins that crack from above and a low hum sounds as a door fall open slowly, revealing a cool gray metal chamber beyond.

The door descends, providing a ramp and they ascend. Scene cuts as they enter a wide, spacious gray metal room which curves away in a circle on all sides. They stand for a moment at the entrance and, "!" as several Aveh guards notice them. Bart says -

Bart: They've gotten this far!

Battle begins and they fight several Shakhan guards and two Etones. The battle is over quickly and scene cuts to the huge circular chamber once more as they stand there. A portly man in a tan coat comes over and says -

M1: Laddie!?

Another man approaches from the side and -

M2: It's Bartholomew! Marguerite is with him too!

He turns and calls out -

M2: Hey, everyone! It's OK!

The other townspeople approach and Bart asks -

Bart: The casket!? Is Margie's mother safe!?

Margie rushes off to the right, past the people and hurries along the curved pathway to several large brown structures and stops before one of them. Then, she turns and calls out to them -

Margie: It's fine! She hasn't been touched.

Bart bows his head for a moment, saying -

Bart: Whew . . .OK. What a relief.

He turns around, looking at the people assembled before him and asks -

Bart: Is everyone . . .(pauses) OK?

M1: Yes, somehow . . .

Bart: Shakhan . . .Where did he go!?

M1: Oh yes, Shakhan? No, I haven't seen him . . .The only people that came here were those soldiers that threatened me to stay quiet . . .I'm sorry laddie. (pause) If only I'd been braver.

Bart: He isn't here yet. (pause) . . .that's odd.

Another person speaks -

W1: The ground . . .What's happening to the town now!?

Bart turns to her and the others and says -

Bart: I took care of upstairs. It's OK to go back!

W1: Is that true!?

View switches to one facing the portly man and the others. The older man nearby says -

M2: Bartholomew, you're indeed powerful. I've seen you come and go from time to time and I didn't think much of it. Exactly who are you?

M1: . . .!

The portly man turns and walks a few steps towards the left, then turns and faces Bart once more. Bart bows his head slowly, then raises his head and says -

Bart: Everyone, I need your attention! My . . .

He stops and bows his head. He looks up once more and says -

Bart: . . .My friends are currently headed for Bledavik. They're on a mission to take down Shakhan from his seat of power

He turns to the others on his left and continues -

Bart: There is a need to rebuild this country from scratch again. I've (pause) I've inherited that task from our late king.

He turns to the people on his right and -

Bart: If all goes well, we'll soon be able to make it a reality. Please, believe me, and wait for me.

View switches to one facing the older man who stands in front of some people and asks -

M2: You're going to defeat Shakhan!? (pauses) The . . .late king . . .?

He stops and turns to look around at the others, then faces Bart once more and says -

M2: Then you're . . .

Bart turns to face him and -

Bart: . . .

View shifts to one facing Bart and the party members from the side as the portly man turns back to the others and says -

M1: The town's OK now. Let's go back up!

He looks around at them and says -

M1: Collect all your belongings!

View fades to one of the townspeople as they ascend the ramp leading out, one by one. As they file out, view switches to one facing Fei, Bart, Billy, Margie and the portly man as he says to Bart -

M1: Laddie, be careful out there! I know you'll make it ok. And when you do . . .you have to promise that you'll come out and announce who you are. I want to see you stand on the terrace of Castle Fatima, proudly!

Bart nods once and they turn to watch as the man leaves. He pauses and turns around once more, saying -

M1: You gotta win lad. You've got my support!

Then he turns and walks up the ramp, disappearing from view. Scene fades and cuts to a view facing the four as they stand at the railing which surrounds the central section of the huge chamber. They look out over the wide space towards the red lit interior of the center before them and, the silence enfolding them. Bart says -

Bart: I don't know what happened or what made me say the things I did. That wasn't like me to say that stuff . . .

Margie: You could have just told them that you were (pause) the prince.

She turns to him and he shakes his head, saying -

Bart: No, (pauses) I can't do that yet. I need to fulfill my father's last request.

They join Bart and the four make their way around the huge chamber, its cool gray metal walls ascending up into darkness. A few sconces burn at either end of the curved pathway amid several carved wooden caskets. The candles ring the entire chamber and as they look out towards the center, they see some sort of inner chamber lit in red light as seen through the glass partition. Unable to make out what it is from the ledge, they walk down a pathway to a glass enclosed cylinder before it and step on a white circle of light. They choose to go up and the glass panel slides shut behind them. The elevator rises up the glass shaft, the central section providing the backdrop.

Scene cuts to a metallic shaft as they continue to rise on the small pedestal. It stops before another glass door and it slides open. They step out into a long gray metal corridor and pause. Fei says -

Fei: . . .It's awful dark in here.

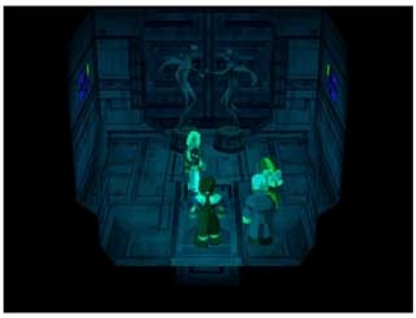
Bart: Oh, they probably have the power shut down because no one's here.

Margie: We use this lower area as a mausoleum . . .so it always has minimal power available for use. But, not even the sisters are allowed in there.

Billy shakes his head and says -

Billy: . . .That must be (pauses) why it smells like mold . . .

Bart: That's obvious. Practically no one's been in there. (turns to Fei) Let's move on! We gotta get to the treasure before Shakhan gets here.

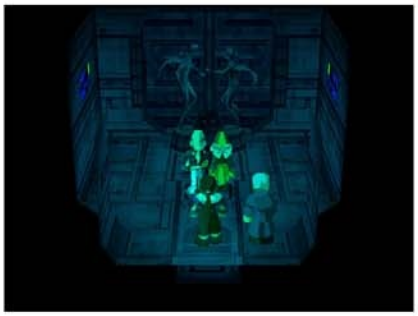


They make their way down the corridor and it curves around several times before they reach a door at the end. They press it and it slides open. They enter a small chamber dimly lit by two blue displays on either side that lend an aqua glow to the objects which stand before them. Bart walks towards the two ghostly figures, half seen in the shadows and Fei says -

Fei: This is . . .(pauses) the same angel statue at the cathedral.

Bart turns to them and says -

Bart: So this is the door that connects to the great royal treasure.



He turns once more and view cuts to them as they stand before the angels. The intertwined forms of the angels block the way to a set of double doors and as they wait, a square panel drops below in the floor and is replaced by a black box-like structure that rises up out of the metal. View switches to one facing the device as Bart says -

Bart: It's time for the Fatima Jasper . . .to do its thing . . .
Oh yeah, one of mine's closed.

Margie: I'm here.

Bart turns to her and nods once and she approaches the device and stands beside him.

They face the machine and they stand there and two beams of light emerge and touch their faces, a green light passing to and fro beneath the light. The green light flashes and they hear several tones from beyond the doors, as though something were being coded. Then, view switches to one facing the angels, Bart and Margie in the foreground as the device disappears beneath the floor once more, View pulls back as the angels slide back and two red lights appear on the doors themselves as they part, revealing a gray chamber beyond.

Fei: The . . .Fatima Jasper.

Without turning, Bart nods once and says -

Bart: Yeah. That punk, Shakhan mistook that for the royal pendant.

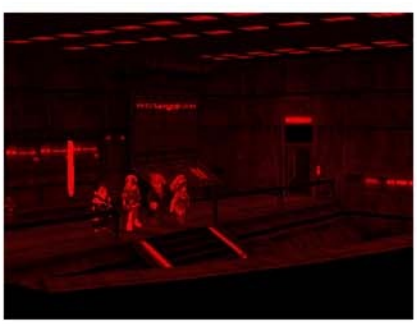
Bart and Margie turn to the others and Bart continues -

Bart: But that made it easier for us, so I kept my mouth shut.

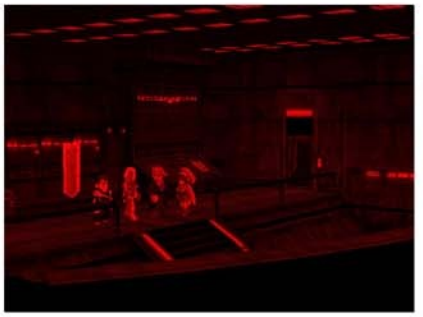
Fei: What's up ahead . . .?

Margie: Up ahead will be the control core of the fortress. It's been said that if we shine that mysterious light across our eyes, the fortress will rise to the surface. They say this was built before the country of Aveh was founded. So, you ready to go?

They join Fei and make their way between the two angel statues into the next chamber, opening the door and emerging out into another long metal corridor which branches up ahead. They take the left hand path which leads to a door. They press it and it slides away to reveal a large room lit by red lights beyond. They walk along the raised pathway along the back wall of the room. Strips of red light shed a ruddy glow. They pause and look out towards the far wall where banks of computers lie dormant and Bart says -



Bart: There sure are a lot of gauges and meters in here.



View switches to the bank of computers which curve along the far wall, their displays lit up in red and view pans to the left to where they stand on the raised pathway at the rear of the room. View switches to one facing them once more and Margie turns to Bart and says -

Margie: I wonder which is more impressive?
The pilot room on your ship or the one in here?

Bart turns to her and says -

Bart: My ship of course . . .

There is a moment of silence, then Bart turns around to face the computer banks and crosses his arms, bowing his head -

Bart: Uhh, well . . .since they are our ancestors, I guess this one's better.

He turns to her and says -

Bart: And you, quit asking mean questions like that.
Anyway, it's not called a pilot room. It's the bridge, got it?

Margie: Does it really matter?

They join Fei once more and go over to one of the consoles. They stand there and Bart says -

Bart: . . .Not moving.

Billy: Is it locked?

Bart crosses his arms and looks down at the console and says -

Bart: Hmm . . .

There is silence as he thinks, then Margie says -

Margie: Want to go check out the great treasure first?

Still studying the console, Bart says -

Bart: Hmmm . . .From the looks of it, Shakhan hasn't found the great treasure either.

Fei: Yeah . . .When we were leaving Nisan, Bart and them said they've never been here. Well, first of all let's go locate the great treasure.

Bart turns around to the others and says -

Bart: Yeah . . .I know for sure that the great treasure is somewhere inside the mausoleum. I can't pinpoint the location though. So, let's go find it then we can decide what to do next.

They make their way out of the red lit chamber and out the door across from the one which they had used to enter. They find themselves in a long gray metal corridor which branches off back the way they'd come and to the left to another door. It reads,

"No.2 elevator block
(^ Directional Energy)"

The door slides open and they enter another glass cylinder. They press the switch on the control panel behind them and rise up through the clear shaft.

They ascend up to another platform and exit, finding themselves in a dimly lit metal corridor which branches off to the left and right just up ahead. They take the right hand path and reach a door at the end which reads, "Energy block"

It slides open and they find themselves in another dimly lit corridor, but this section appears to be curved slightly and they follow it, finding a doorway to the left and entering. They enter another of the metal corridors, but this one is straight and it leads to a door off to the right. They enter and find themselves in a vast darkened chamber in which even their Gears would be dwarfed. In the semi-darkness, a ring of blue lights encircles the room which is similar to a wheel, the eight pathways leading to a large structure in the center like 'spokes'. One of the paths is lit up by the blue lights and they investigate. Other than a somewhat wider pathway between the structure's door and a larger metal door at the other end, they find nothing of importance and continue on back the way they'd come, passing a small yellow vehicle of some kind. They leave the round chamber and go back down the corridor and continue along the curving corridor once more.

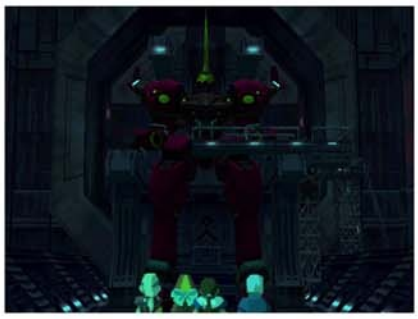
They continue along the right-curving corridor until they reach another of the doors inset into the metal walls. The dull greenish blue light lends an atmosphere of loneliness, of silent waiting . . .They travel down the corridor to a door on the right and enter another cavernous circular chamber like the other, identical in every way, including the little yellow go-cart parked at an angle to the door. After a brief exploration, they leave and continue out to the curved corridor, their course more westerly now and they reach the fourth door. Here, they find more of the same and the fifth as well. They reach a door at the end of the curved corridor and go through, finding themselves at, "No. 2 elevator block" and pass into another long corridor, the one in which they had started. It branches off ahead to the left and right and the right leads to a door that reads, "No. 2 elevator (Control Rm. Pwr Blk) They return back along the eastern curving section that becomes a more southerly one and they reach another door on their left. They enter and see that its corridor is similar to the others they had explored, but there are two doors at the end, one on the left and the other in the right hand place like the others had been.

They make their way down the corridor to the first door which is also on the left. They enter and find themselves in a small square room with 2 angel statues and another eye-reading device in the center. They approach this and the others stand around Bart as he looks at the machine and says -

Bart: There's another Jasper lock . . .

Margie: Let's try it out.

Bart turns to her and nods once and she approaches. They both stand side by side as the machine sends out two beams of light into their eyes, then a dialing sound and a chime at the end as the light on the panel shows green. The entire place shakes for a moment, then is still and they make their way out of the room to the door across the corridor from them.



They enter another of the vast chambers, except this time, the central section is gone and a ring of red lights marks the empty space where the large structure normally rests. Along the lighted path, they see the large door at the end is open and they go through.

They find themselves in a darkened chamber with a high ceiling and view tilts up as they pause at the entrance. There, just up ahead of them, something massive rests in a huge chair, waiting for them. In the half light, they can make out two wide shoulders, touched with gold and the golden crest of a truly magnificent Gear. View switches to face them as they stand before the Gear and Billy says -

Billy: . . .This!

Fei: . . .(pause) It kinda looks a lot like Bart's Gear.

Bart: Huh? Oh yeah . . . Now that you mention it . . .Well, (pause) if you trace my Brigandier's history, it was a Gear originally made in Aveh, that I customized. It wouldn't surprise me if there was some connection.

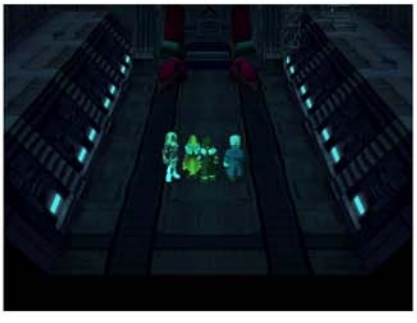
Bart turns to the others, then looks away behind Margie and says -

Bart: Yeah well . . .Looks like there's no power drawn here except for the emergency lights.

View switches to one facing them from behind.

Fei: This Gear too . . .No power in the lights. The drive unit's been sealed . . .

Bart: Hmm. The control panels down there didn't do much . . . Meaning there's probably something around here.



They approach the Gear's feet, and they see what appears to be a tablet set into the metal of the chair. They approach and Bart says -

Bart: . . .?

He draws closer and Margie stands off to the side as the others stand behind him. He says-

Bart: Something's written here.

He turns around to the others and asks -

Bart: Does anyone have a light?

Fei gives him one and he turns back around. A pale circle of light appears on the plate and writing is revealed. Bart says -

Bart: This . . .There's an inscription. It's in old Fatima. (pause) . . . . . .It's my ancestor's.

Margie: What does it say?

"Peace to all those
who come here.
Fearing great calamity,
We sealed this legacy,
entrusting its fate to you."

Scene cuts to where the four stand on the catwalk before the incredible Gear. Now its beauty is fully evident, its red body touched with gold at the shoulders and the crest upon its head. Bart says -

Bart: All right, this should work.

Margie walks forward and turns to Bart -

Margie: Now, how am I going to get this out?

Bart turns to her and says -

Bart: Yeah.

They stare at one another as Fei says -

Fei: You (pause) said it would appear above if it read the eyes. You think you can move this building?

Bart: Okay, let's go back downstairs and try it.

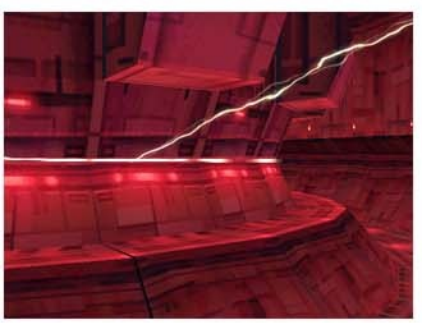
He turns to look at the Gear and says -

Bart: Father, (pauses) looks like we're gonna have to move this. Sorry, but I'll have to borrow it.

View fades to the proud face of the Gear, its golden crest lending it a powerful aura. They look at it for a moment, then go back down the ladder and out to the round chamber. Now that it's fully lit, they are truly awed by the size of the chamber

They leave and make their way back to the elevator and take it down to the lower level and go back to the bridge. They enter and see a portly man waiting for them and they approach him while Margie hangs back and looks off at one of the control panels. Then she comes forward to stand behind them as the man offers to sell them some goods, having braved danger to bring them some emergency supplies. After they have bought the items they need, they go over to one of the consoles and Bart stands before a display and says -

Bart: Well then . . .Let's do it!



Scene cuts to the central section, where it glows red behind the massive steel pylons and glass surrounding it. View pulls in to the circular section as the upper section of the device begins to spin, slowly at first, then picking up speed with a low rumbling sound as electrical currents shoot out from it. As it becomes a blur, scene returns to the others on the bridge before the consoles as it begins to shake. Bart says -

Bart: All right. I know I can do it!

A silver ship arises out of the landscape, shimmering in the sun, and Bart-

Bart: We've surfaced! Next open the sky dome.

Bart: . . .Huh?

Then -

Bart: What?

Fei: What's up?

Bart: Huh? No, (pauses) it's already moving.

Billy: Probably because of your skillful piloting.

Bart: No. That's not why.

View pulls back as a dark ring of light appears around it with a strange sound. Bart says -

Bart: No doubt . . .

A low hum rises in intensity as view backs off and Bart continues -

Bart: it's something . . .I accidentally pushed.

The view halts as the orbs of radiant light and shadow play around the round object in the upper section of the craft. The, with a loud roar, a ball of white light shoots out and a radiance fills the view as it passes by, the heat of its passing causing all to shimmer and grow dim for an instant.

Bart: . . . . . .

Then he says -

Bart: Yesss! This is the way!!

"Oh REALLY!?"

Bart: Wha? What're you talking about?

Fei: Quit foolin'! (pauses)
What the heck did you just press!?

Bart turns around to the console, then back partway, then he says -

Bart: . . .Ohhh . . .Well, I wouldn't say it was a complete success . . .but it'll do for now.

Billy: That was from a beam cannon . . .

Bart turns to him and says -

Bart: Don't worry! I've never fouled things up yet, have I? Well have I!?

There is a moment of silence and he looks from them to the console and back again, saying -

Bart: How 'bout . . .Ladies and gentlemen, behold!

View pans up to the screen above where the blurry outlines of a long shape rising out of the sea can be seen. A green lit ring is positioned just off to the side of the tall structure and Bart says -

Bart: Tis that not Babel Tower . . .over yonder?

View switches back to them once more -

Bart: Well? Isn't it way coo oool!? It floats from the Fatima Jasper . . .I call it Ft. Jasper, and you'll be able to see it from far off. I'm sure that last beam cannon could reach it!

He turns to face them and says -

Bart: Well, I guess I wanted to show you all its greatness. Have you ever seen such a cannon?

He begins to rhapsodize -

Bart: And don't mix it up with Vanderkaum's pea-shooter. This one's many times more powerful and many times more refined. After all, that's why my ancestors used it for generations to guard the treasure. Yeah, this is the real thing. And don't you forget it. Now as I was saying, I haven't fouled up yet. (pauses) So, let's go get this treasure and go home! But first, we have to open that door in the dome! I don't think the switch on this control panel will do it though.

He turns to the right and says -

Bart: Over there!

He makes his way over to the right to another console, disappearing from view. Billy thinks, " . . ." and Fei says -

Fei: (Didn't you say you hit the wrong button earlier?)

Bart: Hey, they all look alike. Ah well, let's start hitting some buttons.

Fei: Whoa whoa! Is that safe!?

View fades to one of the domes in the wide chamber outside the Gear's room. Red lights ring its inner surface and a line of brilliance appears down the middle as the two halves part with a low hum, the blue sky appearing beyond and view cuts to a wider angle looking up at the sky dome where the sign, "AREA 3" is visible below. The doors halt at either side and scene returns to the bridge where Bart stands before the third console, the others behind him, watching as he says -

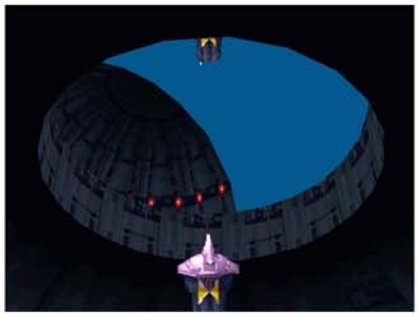
Bart: Alright, (pause) let's hurry up and get the treasure outside.

They hear a voice -

"Well done, Prince Bartholomew. Thank you for unlocking the seal."

Bart turns slightly to the left and says -

Bart: That voice, (pauses) Shakhan!



Bart: Damn you! This was all a setup!?

Shakhan: Of course.

Shakhan: You don't really believe that the door would open up for just anyone? I simply leaked the information and merely awaited for your arrival.

Bart: Crap, so that's why I haven't noticed your stench for a while!

Shakhan: Knowing your impulsive nature, I knew you would come . . . But I never thought you'd go so far as breaking the seal for me.

Bart: Son of a . . .Makin' a fool outta me!

Shakhan: My soldiers have already secured this area. If you don't like it, come here and get some! Hah hah hah!

They make their way off the bridge, back up the way they'd come and as they run down the corridor towards the elevator, troops approach them and battle begins! They win and more guards appear from behind. Margie helps by healing on occasion and they make their way up to the elevator and up to the next level. They fight more guards as they make their way to the hall leading to the round chamber and the Omnigear's room. Once in the hall, they fight more guards and, about halfway down, are surrounded on all sides. Bart -

Bart: One after the other . . . Don't these guys give up?

Shakhan: Most impressive, Prince Bartholomew. But you'll go no further.

Bart and the others turn as Shakhan and two guards appear from behind and Bart says -

Bart: The central area's gone. What can you do now? How about killing yourself honorably? What a fitting death for a clergyman.

Shakhan: There's much more to the 'Ethos' than you would know. We're not a single unit. We each have an agenda. We have no need to admit defeat just because the central area's gone. (pause) I have my own motives. And it is for them, that I used Aveh and Gebler. Now the treasure's mine.
I suggest you retreat now.

The guards step forward and Bart exclaims -

Bart: . . .Crap!

The guards rush them and Margie wriggles out between them. Bart shouts -

Bart: Margie!

As she runs off, view switches to one behind them as she races down the hall, Bart and the others pinned by the guards. Shakhan turns to watch her run by and says -

Shakhan: After her!

His two guards rush off and he says -

Shakhan: Hmph . . .You're actually trying to protect the Omnigear? What do you think one little girl can do? As they say, out of the frying pan and into the fire . . .idiot!

View switches to one from the other side as Shakhan turns to face Bart and the others. He says -

Shakhan: I'm going to take care of this once and for all! That detestable girl has made a fool of me for the last time. I'll send her and everything with her to the depths of hell.

Bart: Dammit . . .Get the hell outta my way!

Suddenly, they hear -

"You've gone far enough."

One of the guards turns and, "!". Then, all turn around and view cuts to where Sig stands in the center of the hall, Citan just behind him. View cuts to Bart and the others as Bart says -

Bart: Sig! What're you doin' here!?

Billy: Citan!

View switches to Sig and Citan as Sig says -

Sig: I left Maison in charge of the capital.
I was worried about you so I returned here.

He and Citan stride forward and the guards leap to surround Shakhan in a protective cover as Sig says -

Sig: Shakhan, (He stops, facing the others and says -)
Sig: it's only a matter of time until Bledavik returns to us.

Fei and the others face Shakhan who has retreated further back behind his men.

Sig: At this point, you have nowhere to go.

View cuts to Shakhan who says -

Shakhan: Errrgh . . .It's not over yet! I've still got Margie.
For now, she'll once again be my hostage until I get that Omnigear.

He and his guards turn and race down the hall. View switches to Fei, Bart and Billy, Sig and Citan right behind them as they watch them go and Bart says -

Bart: Wait!

He, Fei and Billy rush off towards the end of the hall as something causes the entire place to shake. Bart reaches the door first and, as the hall continues to shake once more, Bart tries the door, then turns to Fei and Billy and says -

Bart: Damn, it won't open! It's locked on the inside.

As he speaks, the place shakes again with a sound of distant pounding, then again as though a massive struggle is taking place behind the door. Bart rushes past Billy and Fei to the other door and enters. Scene cuts as he stands before the Jasper lock, the other two joining him and standing off to the left as he exclaims -

Bart: Argh! I only have one Fatima Jasper!

Sig appears in the door behind him and says -

Sig: Relax, young master!

As the place continues to shake, Bart turns to Sig and says -

Bart: Sig . . .What should I do!?

Sig walks towards him and says -

Sig: Pass the light through your good eye!
I'll do the other half!

Bart: (pauses) . . .What're you?

Sig: Just do it!

Sig joins Bart at the lock and he holds his face close to the younger man's as two beams of light touch their eyes. A dialing is heard, then a chime and Bart says -

Bart: Yes! It's unlocked.

He turns to Sig and asks -

Bart: ? Sig . . .! How did YOUR eye work!?

Sig turns and walks towards the door, then stops and turns back to the others and says -

Sig: We're running out of time! We must return to Marguerite at once!

Bart turns to look at Sig who turns once more and begins walking out the door.

Bart: . . .?

The three leave the chamber and hurry to the door across the way where both Citan and Sig wait. They go through the door and scene cuts to the large circular chamber as Fei, Bart and Billy pause looking towards the lit pathway and the Gears standing around in the middle. Bart says -

Bart: Margie! Where are you?

View switches to one of the center section where the large Gear hovers while the others begin moving down the pathway into te room with the red Gear. They see Shakhan standing with some guards near the center and he says -

Shakhan: Argh! What's taking so long!?

G1: But . . .It's still an Omnigear . . .

Shakhan: Imbeciles! She's just a child! What can she do!?
Hurry and get her!

View cuts to an image of one of the Gears pounding its way down the wide path, then to one of the side where the tiny figures of Fei, Bart and Billy can be seen off to the right. They watch as the Gear goes inside the room and a loud crash is heard, then gouts of flame and smoke erupt from the room's entrance. View tilts to the three as Bart says -

Bart: Margie . . .In there . . .!

Fei: Anyway, let's go!

They race towards the entrance and go through. Scene cuts to the three as they halt just before the red Gear, still seated in its throne. View tilts up to the Gear's face and Bart says -

Bart: Margie!? Is that you . . .
(pause)
moving it?

They are suddenly startled by a spray of gunfire and race off to the right and to the ladder leading to the catwalk. View switches to one facing their attackers and Shakhan as they pause at the foot of the ladder, looking at them. View cuts to one facing Bart and the others as he says -

Bart: . . .Crap!

He rushes up the ladder and scene switches as he bounds up the steps and along the catwalk to stand before the Gear. He leaps into the opening in the torso and scene cuts to the Gear's cockpit where Margie sits at the controls and Bart approaches her. He stops and bends his head slightly -

Bart: You okay!?

There is a silence, then she says -

Margie: My leg . . .got shot. Heh . . .looks like I'm causing you trouble again.

Bart: Stupid! Why'd you put yourself in danger like that!?

Margie: I . . .it wasn't much, I just thought this is the least I could do for you.

Bart shakes his head, saying -

Bart: . . .Dumb . . .Stupid! You're the biggest fool!

Margie: . . .heh, heh.

There is silence, then he asks -

Bart: . . .Can you move?

Margie: Uh huh . . .(pause) I guess.

They both turn and view switches to one outside the chamber's open doors as a large Gear glides in and stops. Scene cuts to an image of its great bulk, the Ethos insignia on its chest, Shakhan and two of his guards look up at it from the left. Shakhan says-

Shakhan: Minor damage can be repaired. Aim for the cockpit!

View switches to one facing the enemy Gear as it stands before the Omnigear, then cuts to the interior of the cockpit where it appears on the forward viewscreen, Bart and Margie in the foreground. Bart turns from Margie and looks out -

Bart: Dammit! (pause) It's too dangerous to go outside now. Can you hold on?

Margie turns to him and says -

Margie: Don't worry (pauses) about me.

There is a sequence, then Bart says -

Bart: . . .Damn!

View switches to one facing the enemy Gear outside and its staff begins whirling around it. View cuts to the cockpit once more, facing Bart and Margie as he turns to the seat she has just vacated, standing behind it. He steps forward and sits down at the controls, looking around in confusion. He looks at the console and says –

Bart: Wha, (pause) what the!? There's no control stick! How am I gonna move this!?

A voice comes to him –

"Are you okay, young master!?"

Bart: . . .(pause) Sig!? Ya know how to operate this thing?

Sig: . . .What do you mean!?

Bart: There are no controls! What am I gonna do?

View switches to the enemy Gear outside once more as it whirling staff halts before its chest and a beam of light comes form the Ethos insignia and passes along the rod to the red Gear. View rushes towards the red Gear, then cuts to the interior of the cockpit where Margie stands behind Bart facing the enemy. White light consumes all and Bart –

Bart: Uuuaaaaahh!

View cuts to Shakhan where he stands off the side, watching and he –

Shakhan: Impudent little . . .

View cuts to the interior of the cockpit once more, facing Bart and Margie as he says –

Bart: H, how!? How'd it move!?

A voice comes to him –

"I got it! Young one, you must think!"

Bart: That voice . . .Citan!?

View switches to one where Citan, Sig, Fei and Billy stand behind the ladder leading up to the catwalk and looking at the enemy Gear beyond. Citan continues –

Citan: Apparently, the Omnigear does not function by mechanical controls but mental ones. Remember how Elly and the Omnigear in Shevat responded?

View cuts to the interior of the cockpit, facing Bart once more as he says –

Bart: . . .But . . .

View returns to Citan and the others, the enemy's staff whirling beyond and he says –

Citan: Margie probably moved it through the same means. Young one, try and envision the Gear moving. Then the Gear should react to the image in your head.

View cuts back to Bart and he says –

Bart: Now that I know . . . . . .(pause) here goes!

The red Gear rises from the throne and two dark red wings flare out at either side.

View cuts to Shakhan where he stands with his guards and says –

Shakhan: Damn you, boy!

View cuts to one facing Citan, Sig, Fei and Billy from behind as Shakhan and his men run off to the side. Fei says –

Fei: Let's go!

Billy: Yeah!

The two run off while Citan and Sig stand, watching the red Gear as it waits for its opponents. The view cuts to one from behind as its engines blaze to life and it blasts off, charging into battle!

Fei and Billy join Bart in their Gears as they face two of the enemy Gears, Neo Etones. They are tough opponents and cast numerous spells such as Seal which make the battle even tougher. The new Omnigear, Andvari, proves to be most formidable and they win quickly. Scene cuts to a view of the large Gear in the center of the outside chamber from below, its huge bulbous lower body and shield with its Ethos insignia give it a menacing air. It hovers in place and Shakhan says –

Shakhan: I almost had it!

The Gear blasts off and view switches to one inside Andvari's cockpit, facing the forward viewscreen as Shakhan's Gear comes into view. In the foreground are Bart, at the controls, and Margie who is slumped over nearby.
As Shakhan's Gear passes by, Bart says –

Bart: Hey! You're not getting' away!

View switches to one of the open sky dome, blue sky beyond as Shakhan's Gear rises, disappearing from view. Scene cuts to the interior of Bart's Gear from the side as he sits at the controls, Margie's limp form behind his seat. He says –

Bart: That punk's not goin' anywhere!

Then he hears Citan's voice –

"Young one, please wait! Is Margie going to be all right?"

Bart: Uh . . .oh yeah!

He turns and stands, looking over at her and he says –

Bart: Hey, Margie . . . (pause) you OK?
Margie! Margie, wake up!!
There is a silence, then –

Bart: Margie!!

Scene fades and cuts to the outside of Andvari on the floor, as the others all stand around Margie. View pans down to them where they stand before the Gear and Citan says –

Citan: Fortunately, the bullet passed through. I will apply some first aid.
Later, when we return to the city, we should have it looked over thoroughly.

Bart: Good . . .I'm glad. When she passed out
I thought the worst.

Margie: . . .Bart.

Bart: . . . (pause) How ya feelin'?

Margie: . . .(pause) Okay. You know, (pause) when I passed out,
I still heard your voice. For some strange reason . . .your cries reached me.
That's why I thought I had to help you . . .

There is silence, and Bart bows his head –

Bart: . . .Oh. (pauses) We were fighting together (pause)
weren't we? You (pause) protected me.

He raises his head and turns to look up at the Gear behind them and says –

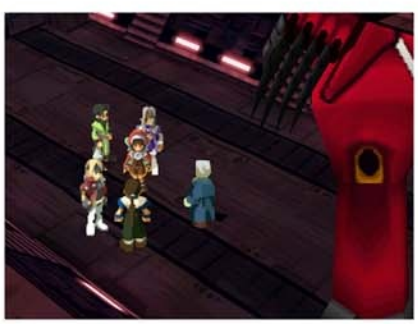
Bart: But, (pause) is this really the legendary Gear in the scroll of our founding nation?

Sig, Fei and Billy turn to look at the Gear and Bart says –

Bart: The way it handles, it feels just like my Brigandier . . .
. . .Except maybe it's a little more powerful.

Citan: Perhaps . . .The controls, output and weapons are similar
and adjust to the strength of the pilot's mental waves.

All turn to Citan except Margie and he continues –



Citan: If so, the pilot must be skilled at mentally merging with the Gear to gain its true power. Marguerite was able to move the Gear through her strong desire to help you. It was her strength that moved it.

Bart: Meaning, I'd have to get used to it?

Citan: That would be the case.

There is silence, then Bart says –

Bart: Ergh. I already went through a lot of trouble getting it . . .

Citan: Do not be discouraged. We now know that these Omnigears were used in the battle between the land and Solaris. Even now, the 'Ethos' and Solaris are seeking the Omnigears. At least, this one did not fall into their hands. Eventually, you will be able to unleash its power. Let us hope you use it for the right reasons.

All turn to face the Gear once more and view switches to one facing it, and rises up along its streamlined body to his proud face with his golden crest.

Scene fades.

Scene cuts to the inside of the villa in Nisan where Margie is resting on a bed, with Sister Agnes nearby.

Bart: No activities for you. You'll have to settle down for awhile.

Margie: What do you mean, once in awhile?

Bart: Don't get so excited. Ha ha ha ha!

Margie: Meanie!

One of Bart's men appears at the door to the anteroom and calls –

P1: Sigurd!

All turn and Sig strides forward to talk to the man After a moment, he says –

Sig: . . .(pauses) Alright. Please tell Maison we'll be here a while longer.

P1: Got it!

The man exits and Sig returns to the group and they turn to him as he says –

Sig: We've heard from our units in Bledavik. Things are unfolding smoothly. They have entered the castle. They are investigating Shakhan's private room on the top floor of the castle. One more thing, (pauses) Yggdrasil is on station nearby and has picked up several Gears on radar.

Bart: Shakhan!

Sig: Most certainly. But those Gears went to the capital then turned and came back towards us.

Fei turns to Bart and says –

Fei: He saw things weren't looking too good and ran away.

Bart: Yeah. But it sounds like he's coming back here.

There is a moment of silence, then Fei asks –

Fei turns to Sig as he says – Fei: What's here . . .?

Sig: About that, (pause) the info from the capital . . . Isn't there a –Gate- in the area?

Fei: A –Gate-?

Citan: Where?

Sig: Directly west of Nisan. Young master, do you know the big cave over there?

Bart: Cave . . .On the western continent? It's near the ocean. If I remember it's big enough for a Gear to walk into.

Sig: Yes, there. They found evidence that there is some large building inside that cave.

There is a pause, then Fei asks –

Fei: Shakhan is heading for there . . . (turns to Bart) What's he doing?

Bart: I guess we'll just have to go and see!

Fei: Okay!

There is a silence as they look at one another, grinning, then they turn to Sig who says –

Sig: I'll wait here for info from the capital.

Citan: A gate! Of course I would like to actually see it . . .but this time I will pass. There are two more left . . .And besides . . .Just in case things do not go well, it might be better if we stay here and protect Marguerite.

Bart: Got it! I leave the rest to you!

Billy and Bart join Fei and they speak to Sister Agnes who says –

Sister Agnes: Marguerite and Bartholomew . . .I'm so happy to see you two getting along so well.

Margie stands up on the bed and says –

Margie: Sister, please stop! You're embarrassing me again.

Sister Agnes: It's not embarrassing. Since long ago, the Nisan Mother and the King of Aveh have always . . .

Margie: Hey! (pauses) Enough about this . . .

Then –

Margie: Hey . . .! Ouch ouch ouch!

She sits back down on the bed and Bart says –

Bart: Just sit still like I said.

Margie: Ohhhhh! (pauses) You're a meanie!

Margie sits slumped down in bed and they leave before things get out of hand.

In the next room, they see J'ora, Maria and Rico standing around and each offers to go with them. They decide to prepare first, then think about it and come back later. They make their way out into the town and they go to the general store. Inside, the store owner's wife says –

W1: Bartholomew, I heard from my husband. Things were really tough for you! Oh . . .just thinking about Shakhan gets my goat! You get him Bartholomew!

They are offered items and Gear parts and they service their Gears, then make their way out. They go around the streets and the few people there speak encouraging words. They return to the villa and speak to Maria who says –

Maria: Soon we'll be certain of the gate's true form.

They decide that Seibzehn will be excellent in the upcoming fight so they ask her along. The three make their way out and along the street to the town's exit. Once outside, they make their way to a cave near the ocean past the forest which Ft. Jasper had risen from, a huge gaping crater beneath it. They enter the cave and find themselves in a dark cavern with a blinking light on the floor across from them at the other side. Bart says –

Bart: What the!? That hole wasn't there last time.

They join Fei and make their way in their Gears over to the far wall and see that there is a large hole cut into the rock. As they approach, scene cuts to the far end of the hallway, where some of the Neo Etones appear. Another comes from behind and Fei says –

Fei: They're survivors from the last battle!

Battle begins and they win quickly. Scene cuts back to the three as they stand before the new hole and Fei says –

Fei: Those guys, it seemed like they were waiting for us.

Maria: Could it be a trap?

Bart: Regardless, we gotta go on! It's going to be an eternal embarrassment if we let 'em get away!

They join Fei and make their way past the flashing marker set in the floor and down a rocky corridor to a pair of metal double doors. They enter and find themselves on a long suspended pathway stretching to a central pillar of light, a dull oscillating hum filling the cavernous chamber. Seeming to be made entirely of metal, it is cylindrical in shape without either a floor or a ceiling and only three pathways such as the one they are standing on, all leading to the central section. Fei says –

Fei: This is . . .(pause) the gate generator!?

Bart: Punk . . .Not only was he sitting on the Aveh throne, he also controlled this.

A dull rumbling is heard and scene cuts to a view of one of the pathways from slightly below, the shining column of light off to the right as Shakhan's Gear descends from the darkness above. The Gear halts and he says –

Shakhan: Exactly.

Shakhan: So to think you knew about the existence of the gate . . . very interesting. The gate which divided Solaris from the earth was under the supervision of . . .the 'Ethos'.

Shakhan: In the beginning, it was supervised without any true knowledge of what it did. However, over the years, the 'Ethos' did their own experiments to reveal its true nature.

Shakhan: They learned how to use it.

Shakhan: For the sake of freeing ourselves from Solaris, we discovered a new way of using it!

View cuts to one of Shakhan's Gear from slightly below as he glides forward, then stops and a metal filament extends from its body to the gleaming pillar of light. There is a low hum, then electrical currents begin to appear around it and view switches to one facing him, the others in the foreground as –

Bart: You! This was your original intention.

Fei: He probably entered through this cavern! He just wanted the energy from the gate generator!

View switches back to one facing Shakhan as the glow around his Gear begins to dissipate, and the view cuts to one directly behind the massive Gear, Andvari visible in the gap between his arm and body as Maria –

Maria: ???

Shakhan: This can't be!? This is ridiculous!? This thing should be able to pull an adequate amount of energy from the gate! There shouldn't have been any problems in the design! Why?

Shakhan: Why doesn't it move?

Bart: What, did you mess up? If my father knew I was set up by a jerk like this, he'd turn in his grave.

Shakhan: I didn't need this anyway! I'll take you myself!

Then, a flash of light and he hears -

"Do you not desire the power?"

The light disappears and Shakhan goes over to the left, turns, looking all around him for the speaker. He turns and goes to the center–

Shakhan: Wha, Who!

View switches to the darkness above as a dull roar is heard, a tiny speck of gray seen as it plummets towards them. It flashes by and view cuts to one facing Shakhan and the pillar as Grahf comes to a halt before him. View cuts to the three as Bart says –

Bart: Him again!?

Fei: How'd he get in here!?

Grahf: I am Grahf, the seeker of power. Doth thou desire the power?

Shakhan: Power? What kind of power!? I have the power of the gate! As long as I get this machine to move!!

Grahf: Your powers are merely superficial. The tools in which you produced with your immature intellect . . . (pauses) Now, do you think you can win?

Shakhan: What are you saying? Superficial power?

Grahf: The meager efforts of you land dwellers are insignificant next to the true and only power.

Grahf: I shall endow you with my true powers!

A brief flash of yellow-white light, then view switches to one of Grahf from the side as he stretches out his right hand, the red glow appearing around his hand and he says –

Grahf: My fist is the divine breath!

Grahf: Blossom, o fallen seed, and draw upon thy hidden powers!!

Grahf: Grant unto thee the power of the glorious 'Mother of Destruction'!

Shakhan: Ghuuuuuaaaaahh . . .

They face Shakhan, the pillar of light behind him and he sends out the filament and begins to absorb the gate energy. They put boosters on and attempt hit him as fast and as hard as possible while he is still immobile. They save their deathblows for when he comes off the generator, for he simply heals up any real damage. He comes off the power and they land in heavy blows, but not in time before he reconnects and begins drawing in energy to heal himself. On the second round, Fei reaches an infinity level and lands in several devastating blows, the others all rising to level three. Shakhan goes down at last and white light consumes all, then cuts to an image of Shakhan's Gear as it crumples in a shower of fire and electric currents. Shakhan says –

Shakhan: How . . .This can't be!

Bart: Shakhan!! 12 years ago, if you weren't so hungry for power, Margie would still have her family . . . . . .and wouldn't have had to live out in the desert!

Shakhan: What would you know, you throne born brat!?

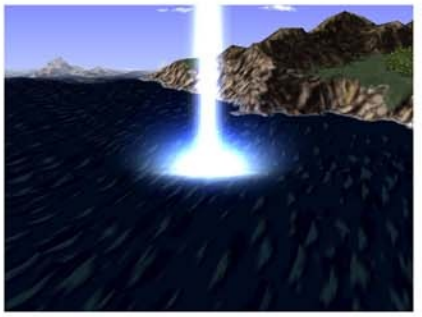
Bart: Throne? You can have it! A king's gotta carry the heaviest responsibilities of all! It's a tough racket! Something you'd never understand, punk!!

Shakhan: Uwwaaaaaahh!!

Pulls back as flame erupts beneath his Gear, then cuts to the underside of the pathways as electricity snakes along them, the entire place shaking. Fei says –

Fei: The gate's on fire . . .!

Scene cuts to the pathway outside the doors leading to the generator and the three make their way out, the rumbling heard behind them. The entire cave shakes as they head for the exit -



Scene cuts to the deep blue waters of the sea, pans up along the coastline, Ft. Jasper seen off to the left, and view pans to the left where a bright circle of white light appears in the water just offshore. A bright beam of light shoots up in the sky and black lightning strikes at the white center, then the beam is gone and yellow bolts of electricity dance around the white circle. They gain in intensity, then there is a huge explosion and the water shoots up in a spray, then settles back once more, the light gone and the water quiescent beneath the blue sky.

Scene fades.

Gate 2

Scene cuts to the courtyard before Fatima Castle where a crowd of people is assembled, their voices a low murmur and view pans up to the balcony where Maison, Sig, Bart, Fei and Citan stand just inside. View pulls in and rotates to the side, then cuts to the interior as Bart turns to Fei and says –

Bart: Fei, if anything, I'm your friend right?

Bart then turns to Sig and says as the man turns to him –

Bart: Sig . . .you won't change no matter what I do, will you?

Maison turns to Bart and asks –

Maison: What is the matter, young master . . .?

Bart: Nah . . .I guess I have to do what I was asked.

Bart turns and walks out towards the railing and view cuts to one facing him as he appears out in the sunlight. All within the balcony look at Bart and the crowd goes silent as he begins –

Bart: My good people of Aveh . . .This is Bartholomew Fatima the 19th king of Aveh, son of Edbart Fatima the 18th king of Aveh. First, one must apologize for the trouble caused by one's unavoidably lengthy absence from the palace. One especially wants to give one's condolences to those who lost family in the war with Kislev. One will immediately call a truce with Kislev and begin reparations to victims of both countries. All citizens drafted as soldiers will also be allowed to return home. Let us work together towards the rebuilding of Aveh!

There is a loud cheer and Bart speaks again, the cheers fading off –

Bart: A declaration from the will of Edbart IV who wished only for peace for his kingdom, Aveh. I Bartholomew Fatima, the 19th king of Aveh, do hereby declare . . .from this day forward I shall abandon the monarchy and create the Republic of Aveh!

The cheers rise again and both Maison and Sig "!" Scene cuts to the interior once more as Bart turns and reenters the balcony's shaded area. The cheers fade off in the background as Sig says –

Sig: Young master . . .

The people cheer again as Maison asks –

Maison: What in Aveh are you doing . . .?

Bart bows his head and says –

Bart: This is my father's wish. I am sorry. You both have worked so hard for many long years to restore me to the throne. Now I'm no longer in line to be king, nor anything else for that matter, the two of you are free to go.

Maison: What are you saying . . .?

Sig: Unbelievable.

Maison turns to Sig and Bart turns to look over at Maison as he asks –

Maison: Master Sigurd?

Sig: Can't you hear the crowd outside? They have chosen you as their king. You're going to be very busy.

Bart: Sig . . .

Bart turns to look out at the crowd and Sig –

Sig: Won't you need some capable assistance?

Bart turns to look at Sig and says –

Bart: Well . . .here goes nothing.

Scene fades and cuts to the upper balcony of Fatima Castle at night as Bart makes his way to the left, the courtyard visible through the pillars. He turns the corner and walks down the hall to the third door on the left and enters. Scene cuts to a large brightly lit room with a large dark wood table near a fireplace. Maison stands nearby and he turns at Bart's approach and says –

Maison: Oh, young master! You still haven't rested yet?

Bart: Old Maison, there is one thing I want to ask you.

Maison: What is it?

Bart: Where was Sigurd born?

Maison: Young master, that . . .

Bart: He has blue eyes . . .it's the Fatima Jasper.

Maison: . . .Well . . .(pause) It was long ago. When his Majesty and I were still young . . . Long before his Majesty knew my young master's mother. His Majesty was in love with a certain girl from a small religious sect east of Aveh. This sect was quite different from Nisan and the 'Ethos' but she was very beautiful. Then . . .she just disappeared. Later there were rumors of her having a child.

Bart: She disappeared? Did father abandon her?

Maison: As far as I know, it was the opposite.
His Majesty was abandoned.

Bart: Sig is from Aveh's eastern desert . . .

Maison: Indeed. When he was 10, he was assigned to his Majesty King Edbart, as a squire.

Scene fades and returns to Bart as he makes his way down the hall and around the corner to a small balcony where Sig stands, looking out over the courtyard. Sig turns at his approach –

Sig: Young master . . .?

He steps back as Bart joins him. Bart says –

Bart: Yeah, I can't sleep.

Sig: Yes, so much has happened at once.

There is a moment of silence, then Bart asks –

Bart: Hey Sig . . .(pauses) what was your mother like?

Sig: . . .She died when I was but a child, (pause) why?

Bart: Do you have any memories of her?
What kind of person was she?

Sig turns to look out over the courtyard and says –

Sig: Hmmm, well . . .she was very kind . . .but when I was born it seems the doctor told her she did not have long to live. She lived in constant fear of that. As a result, even if she met someone she liked, her fear of death was her drawback. She worried that she could not be with me to the very end . . .

There is silence, then Bart says –

Bart: What about your father?

Sig: He isn't supposed to know that I was born. However, even for not knowing he still treated me like a son.

Bart turns to him and asks –

Bart: Why didn't you tell him you were his son?

Sig: If my mother hid that fact, there had to be a reason.

There is silence, then Bart says –

Bart: There is more to my father's will than what I declared today.
I must share my inheritance with my brother. He also said . . .
'You must split you and your brother's share with the people.'

Sig turns to him and, "!"

Bart: That had always bugged me up until now. I didn't know what he meant.
That's all I wanted to say . . .(pause) Good night!

Scene fades as he turns and walks off, Sig looking after him.

Scene cuts to the dining hall in Fatima Castle where all the party members sit at the table. Bart speaks to the others, saying –

Bart: Thanks to you, Aveh has been taken back from Shakhan and Gebler. Thank you. Now, in order to free other lands from Gebler and Solaris . . . . . .we must destroy the other two gates and bring down Solaris. We've learned from Shakhan's notes that the gates form the points of a triangle. One point was the great mausoleum. Two others remain, but we only know where one is.

Citan: Yes, under the 'Ethos' headquarters. However . . .

Billy: It wasn't there when we followed Stone under the 'Ethos' headquarters. If it really is there . . .(pause) it must be buried deep beneath the earth . . .

Rico: How are we gonna destroy it then?

J'ora: By combining everyone's Gear power.

Rico: What are we gonna do with everyone's Gear, dig a giant hole in the ground?

J'ora: What's wrong with that?

View goes back as both Bart and Rico shake their heads and Sig says –

Sig: . . .it would take years.

Fei: What if we used Shevat's cannon . . .

Maria: If that worked, we would have tried it already.

Fei: . . .Oh . . .

There is silence, then Citan says –

Citan: So it must be something more powerful than Shevat's cannon.

Elly: And we don't have a Gebler battleship.

There is more silence as they think and Fei says –

Fei: Is there any weapon that powerful on earth?

Citan: Gebler battleships and Shevat's cannon are the most powerful weapons ever produced by man . . .

There is silence, then Bart says –

Bart: . . .but . . .I seem to remember seeing something . . .

Sig: What?

Bart: A weapon with firepower like those two . . .(long pause) Yeah! I got it! Ft. Jasper! Her gun can take out a mountain! What about that?

View moves over to Citan who shakes his head and Bart asks –

Bart: Citan, what?

Citan: However powerful the Jasper may be, how are we going to aim it at the 'Ethos' H.Q.? To damage something that deep underground we would have to attack it from directly above. But the Jasper gun is . . .

Then view moves to Sig who says –

Sig: Yes, of course . . .

Rico: What, are you sayin' we should just move Ft. Jasper on top of Babel?

Billy: Now that you mention it, Babel does overlook their headquarters. If we shoot it from there it might just possibly be able to reach that far underground.

Sig: But how could we move Ft. Jasper?

Elly: It's impossible. Something that heavy . . .

Then Fei "!" and says –

Fei: Didn't the control room in Babel control a cannon or something? I think it moved the giant mirror outside.

Bart: Maria, do you know of anything like that?

Maria: I've never heard anything about it but . . .

Fei: But it might be there. Let's go check.

There is a pause, then Bart says –

Bart: Alright . . .

Then Citan "!" and -

Citan: Wait a moment . . .A giant mirror and a giant cannon both from the same ruins? There might just be something in this . . .

There is a silence, then Bart asks –

Bart: Like what?

Citan: Ah . . .I have solved the puzzle . . .

Sig: Puzzle, what puzzle?

Citan: The Babel and Jasper ruins are from the same civilization. One far more advanced than our own . . .Do not the two structures seem similar to you? I believe they were both built with Gears and a powerful foe in mind.

Fei: Yeah, I noticed that. But what's it all mean?

Citan: It means, the people who built the giant mirror at Babel Tower . . . . . .knew about the giant gun at Jasper!

Bart: And . . .? What are you getting at?

Citan: We can probably assume the mirror was built to reflect something . . . That something being a beam. A beam shot from the Jasper gun!

Fei: Reflect? (pause) You mean that mirror can reflect a beam attack?

Citan: Yes.

Rico: Long ago Babel and Jasper must have been at war.

Citan: Not exactly. The Babel mirror and Jasper gun were combined to make one weapon.

Rico: Whaddya mean?

Elly: But those things are so far apart, how could they be one weapon?

Citan: Well the gates may be far apart, but aren't they still one device?

Elly: Yes, I see what you mean but . . .

Billy: What did they use that weapon for?

Citan: That, I do not know.

Bart: Whatever. The point is how do we use the two weapons as one?

Citan: Aim the Jasper gun at the mirror and fire. The mirror will reflect the beam on the gate.

Maria "!" and asks –

Maria: Do you think it will work?

Citan: Theoretically. It will require a few minor adjustments . . .

Sig: Adjusting the mirror is going to be rather difficult and tedious.

Citan: If the two weapons are one, then it should not be too difficult. I hope . . .

Rico: It sounds dangerous. I think it was meant to reflect shots back at the enemy. If you're wrong, it'll come back and hit you.

Citan: Yes. That is why it is most difficult for the gun crew. The mirror must be hit precisely.

There is silence, then he says –

Citan: We will need to divide into two teams. One will fire the gun . . . While the other will adjust the angle of the mirror to ensure the beam hits the 'Ethos' headquarters. Since this was my idea, I will take the dangerous part of adjusting the mirror.

There is a moment of silence, then Sig says –

Sig: Alright Hyuga, we'll let you take care of that . . . . . .It seems like your type of job.

Fei: I'll go too. Doc might need help.

Elly: It might be lonely with just Citan and Fei. So I had better go too.

Sig: Alright, you three take Babel. Now what about the gun?

Billy: I'll do it. Looks like my kind of job. Don't worry, I won't miss. I haven't been using a gun for nothing.

Bart: Well, I probably better go to the Jasper.

View moves to J'ora as she says –

J'ora: Me chu! J'ora wants to go chu!

Bart: Then it's settled. You go with Citan to aim the mirror at the 'Ethos' headquarters. We'll aim the Jasper gun at the mirror. Let's get back to the Yggdrasil and get going!

Scene fades and cuts to the darkened room where the sphere and its attendant orbs are located. The view is angled towards the circle of light on the ground, the sphere off to the right and Miang and Ramsus both stand near a shape set into the floor. The orbs spin by overhead and the first speaks –

Allowing the contact with Shevat . . . . . .

Not only Shevat. The Ignas defeat, the Thames retreat. And yes, even Elru, you . . . . . .

Useless . . .as always . . .

A failure to begin with . . .

'Trash' . . .

Ramsus gives a start and says –

Ramsus: W – what did you just say?

Hmph . . .It's the truth.

And just what is that attitude? . . .
. . .You should show some loyalty.

Ramsus shakes his head and says –

Ramsus: H, how dare you ridicule me by calling me 'trash'? Damn you!
Then –
Ramsus: Guh . . .guhaah.

Miang turns to him and says –

Miang: Calm down, Commander! It's not good for you. You still haven't recovered from the last battle!

It does not matter.

The Lambs are probably on their way to destroying the gate. But, not this time . . .

I'd like to see your 'intrinsic' powers.

If you aren't the 'trash' we think you are . . . . . .

The orbs, then the rotating sphere disappear and the two are left in semi-darkness. Ramsus crosses his arms and bows his head, resting his chin on his fist as he says –

Ramsus: Miang . . . . . .Launch the ship . . . . . .Get to him . . . . . .

He turns to her and says –

Ramsus: This time . . .I'll go myself . . .and I'll bring him down . . .

Miang turns away to the side and shakes her head –

Miang: Commander, you can't go out there like that!

Kelvena's voice comes to them and she says –

Kelvena: Commander, request permission to handle the situation?

Tolone, Seraphita, Kelvena and Dominia appear at the edge of the circle of light and Miang and Ramsus turn to them and –

Miang: You all?

Dominia nods and says –

Dominia: We'll do our best to meet your expectations.

Ramsus turns to face them as Kelvena says –

Kelvena: Commander, please, you must get medical attention . . . . . .

Dominia nods once and adds –

Dominia: To make our ideals a reality.

There is a silence, then Kelvena nods and says –

Kelvena: Well then, we are off.

Scene fades and cuts to the Yggdrasil as it hovers above the sands near Aveh. Scene cuts to the interior where Fei, Elly and Citan make their way off the bridge and down the lift to the Gun Room. Once there, they speak to Maison who says –

Maison: . . .I have nothing to look back on that I regret!

He offers them a selection of items and accessories and they buy a few. They leave and go down the hall to Margie's room. She says-

Margie: I feel kinda out of it! But the important stuff is about to begin, right!?

They leave and go to the Gear Hangar and service their Gears. they speak to an officer in the room who says –

O1: I no longer have a place in Gear combat, but I'd better be ready for it anyway! (pause) Hey, you haven't seen Maria's Gear, have you? It's too big to fit in this hangar, so it's on the deck.

They leave and make their way back up to the bridge and launch the Yggdrasil. They make their way over the deep blue waters of the ocean to Babel Tower and scene cuts to an image of the huge structure near the mirror as the Yggdrasil glides above the clouds to the ledge. It stops and view pulls forward to Fei, Citan and Elly as they disembark in their Gears. They stand off to the side and Fei asks –

Fei: Doc, what should we do?

He walks forward, toward Fei and says –

Citan: Look up.

View pans up to the great blue circle of the mirror above and Citan says –

Citan: That is a reflective mirror. The Ft. Jasper beam will be reflected off that and destroy the gate.

View returns to them one more, the Yggdrasil in the foreground and Citan says –

Citan: Let us hurry to the control room while our pursuers are still gone.

They make their way to the door on the right and pause. View switches to an overhead of the Yggdrasil as it departs, slowly gliding away from the ledge and moving off as the three watch in the doorway.

Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil where Billy, Bart and J'ora stand up at the helm. Billy asks –

Billy: Well then . . .shall we go, too?

Scene fades and returns to Babel Tower, where Fei, Citan and Elly make their way down the large gray corridor to the recessed area and exit their Gears, entering the control room. Scene cuts to the ledge above the display as they walk in, then stop and Citan turns to Fei and says –

Citan: I will control the mirror, (pause) you hold off the enemy.

Fei: Is it going to be okay, doc . . .?

Citan shakes his head, saying –

Citan: We must do it.

Then he turns and walks off to the stairs, pauses and turns to Fei, saying –

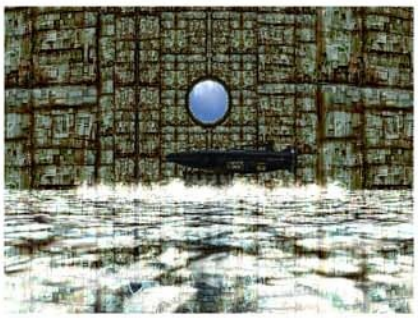
Citan: I am counting on you.

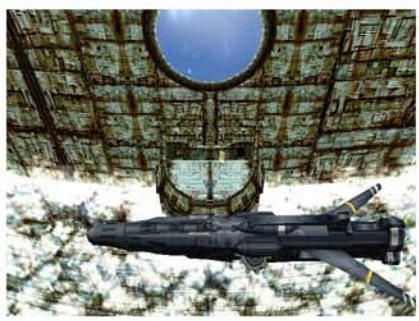
He goes down the stairs and Fei turns to Elly and nods once, saying –

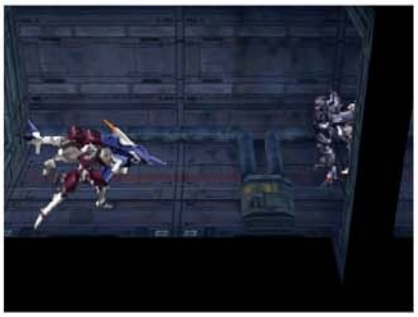
Fei: Alright! Let's do our part.

They turn and leave the room and view swings down to where Citan stands on the glowing display, then he walks over to one of the consoles and begins typing in commands. He pauses a moment, tapping his foot, then turns to the side and gives a start, then goes back to typing once more. He stops and turns to the side pushing his glasses up his nose and walks over to another console on the left, typing in more commands, then waits, pondering. He types a few things more, then turns to the side, pushing his glasses up his nose. He goes over to stand on the flashing red light in the center and says –

Citan: Billy . . .Billy . . .do you read? We are ready here. Commence firing.







Scene fades and cuts to Fei and Elly as they approach Kelvena and Dominia waiting in their Gears. Fei says –

Fei: You are . . .Dominia!? Wait, (pause)
do you suppose they figured out our plan?

Dominia: Of course. The ancient mobile gun platform floating above Ignas . . .And this reflector, here, at Babel Tower . . .I know of your plan to use them together to destroy the Gate generator below the 'Ethos' headquarters. But, of course, I won't let you do it.

Kelvena: For the Commander's honor (pause) and the pride of the Elements, you need to be more flexible.

Dominia: Here I come!

Battle begins and the two women are tough, their combined attacks very damaging. Fei and Elly realize that their time is running out. If nothing else, a battle with these two is a war of attrition. Dominia caste Ether spells on her blade and Kelvena, in her fish-like Gear, hits them with powerful water spells. Finally, Fei and Elly win and scene cuts to the silver disk of Ft. Jasper from the side, blue sky above. three tiny forms are seen descending to the surface of the disk and scene cuts to an overhead view of the topside of Ft. Jasper as Billy, Bart and J'ora walk over to one of the sky domes in their Gears and scene cuts to the bridge as they walk in and down to stand before the consoles. Billy says –

Billy: Let us begin our preparations.

They each pick a seat and scene cuts to the large chamber, Area 3, where a huge door rises up and a massive tubular shaped object rolls out of the room along the wide pathway, stopping when it reaches the raised central section.

Scene cuts to the bridge, facing the viewscreen as Bart stands before it, the green positioning ring very close to the shadowed outline of Babel Tower.

Bart: There's some time until the launch . . .I wonder if Citan's OK?
View switches to one from above as J'ora says –

J'ora: there's an image on the radar.

Scene cuts to the blue sky and a winged shape appears first, then another with reddish coloring. They hurtle swiftly towards Ft. Jasper and scene cuts to an image of the Ft's silver disk. The two Gears halt at a distance and the one on the left –

Seraphita: Tolone, Tolone!! Oh, oh, there you are!!

From the winged Gear, Tolone responds –

Tolone: Alright already. So you were serious!? You're really gonna reflect a big laser off a mirror . . .Pretty stupid.

Seraphita: Inverted pull-ups are really tough!!
But, I can do 300 pull-ups you know.

Tolone: Angling it . . .? . . .for the drop ratio? Drop ratio in the atmosphere will be huge.

Scene cuts to the bridge once more, facing the three at the consoles and Bart says –

Bart: Here they come.

View switches to one overhead, the viewscreen on the upper left and Billy says –

Billy: Argh! We're so close to launching!

Bart and J'ora get out of their seats and walk towards the steps. Bart turns to Billy and says –

Bart: I'm goin' out to return fire! Billy, you gonna be OK?

Billy: I have to do it!

Bart: Try to get a shot off while we hold them back! (pause)
Good luck!

Billy: Let me handle it!

Scene fades and cuts to the topside of Ft. Jasper as Bart in his Gear and J'ora grown to larger size wait for the enemy. Tolone and Seraphita descend out of the sky to hover before them.

Tolone: Hmmph, I can't believe you'd even think of such a stupid plan.

Seraphita: Who'd have thought?

Bart: Hey! (pause) Never know until you try.

Tolone: Keep talking while you can. Dominia and Kelvena should have taken over Babel Tower by now. You get outta here now!

Seraphita: . . .Good!

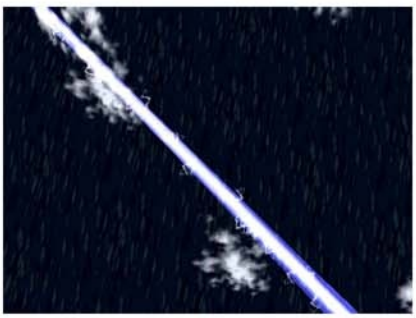
The two opponents are fierce fighters and Skyghene's swoop attack is very damaging. At last, they win and Grandgrowl and Skyghene disappear as they retreat.

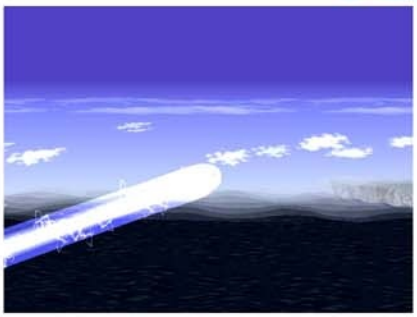
Scene cuts to an image of Ft. Jasper as the two Elements hover nearby in their Gears and Bart says –

Bart: Now Billy, shoot!

Scene cuts to the bridge behind Billy, facing the viewscreen as he says –

Billy: Fire!





View cuts to Citan where he stands on the lit screens in the control room and he says –

Citan: Whew . . .That was close. We did not get a direct hit.

Then he ponders and says –

Citan: Billy, we cannot hold out much longer. If you miss this one, it is over. Aim well.

Scene cuts back to the corridor where Fei and Elly face Dominia and Kelvena once more and Dominia says –

Dominia: I'll let you off easy this time. Next time is for real!

Fei turns to the side and says –

Fei: Damn, we blew it.

He turns back to face them and Kelvena asks –

Kelvena: How long will it hold? . . . (pause) I'm going!

Battle begins and this time it is much harder because Fei and Elly have had no time to repair damage. The struggle is fierce and they take a great many damaging hits. At last, they win and scene cuts to Billy as he sits before the consoles.

Billy: Missed!

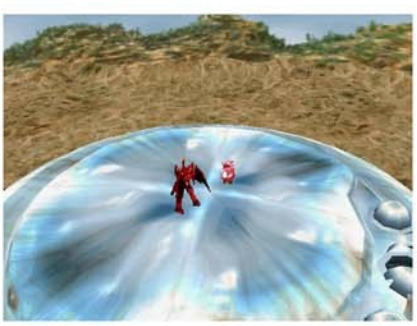
He hears a voice –

"Don't worry about it."

Billy: Bart!

Scene cuts to an overhead view of the topside of Ft. Jasper as Bart says –

Bart: Calm down and aim!



J'ora: They are back.

Battle begins. The fight is difficult, for neither Bart nor J'ora has had time to recover, but at last they win and scene cuts to the bridge, facing Billy from behind once more as he says –

Billy: GO!

View cuts to the outside as once more, a ball of radiant white light shoots put of Ft. Jasper, streaking across the horizon and the air shimmering in the heat of its passing.

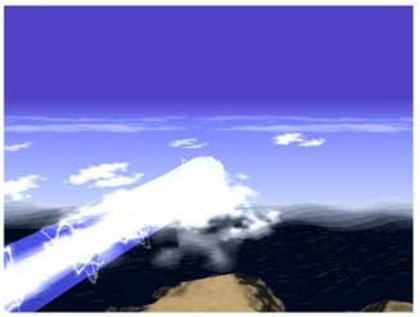
View cuts to Tolone and Seraphita as they rise up into the sky in their Gears and Tolone says –

Tolone: Ha! (pause) Lambs'- taste . . .

Seraphita: . . .Taste . . .!!

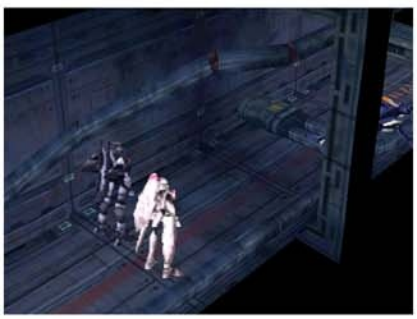
View cuts to the blue sky as they disappear, Tolone says –

Tolone: I thought I told you to shut up!



Scene cuts to Citan who clutches his stomach, laughing, and then pushes his glasses up his nose, saying –

Citan: Billy, you did it . . .
The plan succeeded!



View cuts to the corridor where Fei and Elly face Dominia and Kelvena and Fei turns off to the side and says –

Fei: Great! Somehow it worked.

Dominia: Damn . . .Too late . . .

Kelvena: What should we do Dominia?

Dominia: We'll continue this later! Let's go Kelvena!

Dominia turns and walks off and Kelvena pauses, remaining behind for just a moment –

Kelvena: Elly, I didn't want to be your enemy . . . But since our motives are different, I guess there was no choice. We'll meet again, and settle things at that time.

She turns and goes off after Dominia and scene fades.

Gate 3

Scene cuts to the Gun Room of the Yggdrasil where all the party members stand around Citan who pushes his glasses up his nose and says –

Citan: So . . .There is only one gate left on the surface . . .

Bart crosses his arms and bows his head –

Bart: The problem is its location.

Fei nods once and says –

Fei: But Queen Zephyr said there are three on earth and one in Solaris . . .

Sig crosses his arms and says –

Sig: According to Shakhan's report, each gate is placed in a triangle around Solaris . . .

Citan: Let us look at the map given by the Queen, which describes the area before the gates were placed.

Scene cuts to a map of the world, but this one is different . . . Citan says –

"This is how the land actually looks like on the other side of the invisible barrier. The gates should be set up somewhere here on this map."

A green dot appears to the north, west of Nisan in the ocean and Citan says –

Citan: First, the Ignas' Gate is . . .here.

Another flashing green dot appears on the island of the Ethos HQ and –

Citan: The 'Ethos' H.Q. in Aquvy is here, so . . .

A red dot appears somewhere in the ocean south of Ignas and Fei says –

Fei: Well, logically thinking the next place could be here, or . . .

Another appears on the northern ice continent and Fei says –

Fei: Here. One of the two.

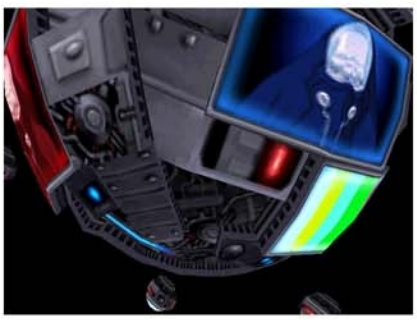
Elly: North or south, huh . . .Well at least we have even chances of guessing which.

Scene returns to the Gun Room as Bart crosses his arms and turns to Citan who pushes his glasses up his nose.

Bart: What if we try both ways? Isn't that all it takes?

Sig shakes his head and says –

Sig: That would be difficult. I doubt they expected the 2nd gate to be destroyed. So I'm sure they'll be serious next time. We'd better plan it carefully but quickly.



Citan ponders, foot tapping and says –

Citan: In any case, we will not be able to avoid Gebler's interference, will we?

Fei turns to Elly and asks –

Fei: Doc, Elly, where exactly is Solaris located?

Elly shakes her head, turning to him and says –

Elly: There is only a map of Solaris in Solaris. I didn't even know the area of this land until I arrived here.

Fei: Even in Gebler?

Elly: (nods once) The relations with earth are only revealed to commanders.

Bart nods and crosses his arms as he looks down in thought and –

Bart: If that's the case, even Billy's father may not know it.

Sig nods once and says –

Sig: Jesiah left there in the middle of it.

Citan looks up and spreads his arms out to either side, and says to Fei –

Citan: Sigurd and I were smugglers and did not have the time to look out the window. On top of that, when going through the gate from Solaris, we transferred to other places by using the environmental plane between each gate. Remember when we made contact with the Kislev gate in the Goliath? The same thing happens and we lose all sense of where we were before.

Citan drops his arms and Fei puts his hands on his hips and says –

Fei: Even if the gate divides the other space, can't you recognize its topography? Like mountains, jungles and so on?

Elly crosses her arms and cups her chin in her hand as she says slowly –

Elly: . . .I don't think there were mountains. More like we were surrounded by the ocean . . .

Bart looks up and says –

Bart: Ocean . . .Then it can't be the north? This is the pole. It's all covered with snow.

Fei looks up and turns to the side, pointing with enthusiasm and says –

Fei: Then it's settled. The location of the gate is south of here. The center of the triangle is only the ocean. If the gates are placed in the highest point in the north, the center will be the continent. Hence, it coincides with Elly's story.

Citan: You may be right.

Citan nods once and says –

Then Sig shakes his head and says –

Sig: Wait a minute. There shouldn't be any facility over the ocean.

Citan, Elly and Fei turn to him and Elly says –

Elly: Then, underwater?

Sig nods once and says –

Sig: Hmm . . .But the whole area around here is deep. If it exists, it must be deep down.

Fei turns to Bart and spreads out his arms, asking –

Fei: The Yggdrasil is a submarine, right? Then. what's the problem?

Elly and Citan turn to Bart as he gestures, raising his fist –

Bart: You're crazy! It is a submarine but not a bathyscaphe. It isn't made for deep sea exploration. The water pressure would crush us instantaneously.

Fei turns to Citan and brings his hands up to his head, then drops them –

Fei: We have a problem . . .

Citan pushes his glasses up his nose and says –

Citan: We may be able to use the bathyscaphes or Gears used by the Salvagers . . .

Bart turns to Citan and says –

Bart: 'Salvager'? Right! That's it!

Fei thinks, " ??" and Bart raises his arms in enthusiasm as he speaks –

Bart: The captain of the Thames must have tons of them. He owes us from last time. Let's go to the Thames.

Citan pushes his glasses up his nose once more and says –

Citan: It may be our best choice for now. Shall we go to the Thames?

Scene fades and cuts to the darkened chamber where the Ministry is located.

So, there's only one surface gate left.

Ramsus, he couldn't defend it . . .

What is the purpose of his existence . . .

Once 'trash', always 'trash'. How much can one really expect?

However, it must not be aligned before the 'Animus' data is retrieved.

You are right. There is a higher probability of not getting the proper type.

As it was in the past . . .

We can't allow the lambs to go free yet.

Another voice is heard and Krelian speaks –

Krelian: Who cares about the gate anyways.

View pans over to the left to a pedestal suspended in darkness as Krelian appears, seemingly out of thin air.

Krelian . . .

This can't be. The panic has spread to Etrenank.

Krelian: Those fools we call citizens are easily manipulated by the Emperor's words alone.

You think Cain will be receptive?

His body's already at the limit, he can't hold out much more . . .

Krelian: As usual a clone may be used. Those fools won't know the difference. And even if the barrier fails, it still will not be like the disaster before. Anyhow . . .if I recall, there's some very intriguing data on that memory cube.

And what is that?

Krelian: The 'mother'.

The 'mother'?

Krelian: Indeed. It is probable that the 'mother' exists among the Lambs.

Are you telling us our 'mother' is somewhere else? Why didn't we notice that sooner . . .?

Krelian: The sign of the 'mother' . . .Her persona, only appears after she reaches a certain age . . .There is also a high probability that she transmigrated into the 'Antitype'.

The 'Antitype' . . .That woman from Nisan . . .?

Krelian: Here . . .I would like to use that nanotechnology product, 'Emeralda'.

What you retrieved from the Thames? Why?

Krelian drops his arms and shakes his head, saying –

Krelian: To be sure. As 'mother' says, that nanomachine colony . . . that artificial organism, was a creation between the 'Contact' and the 'Antitype' 4000 years ago.

The 'mother's' memory . . .

Krelian nods once and says –

Krelian: Yes, that is it. We can probably attain some kind of reaction. But even if we obtain no reaction and if 'Emeralda' is destroyed, I've already gathered all the data I need. Any loss of it will have no consequence to the plan.

Scene fades and cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as Fei, Citan and Bart speak to Sig and they fly off to the Thames. Scene cuts to the dock and they make their way up to the bridge to speak to the Captain. They approach the Captain and he says –

Captain: What's wrong? What do you need? Point x1507, z1235? Hans, does that sound familiar?

Hans turns to the Captain from his post at the helm and says –

Hans: It's Sargasso point.

Captain: What? The Sargasso?

Fei: Sargasso, what's that?

Captain turns to him and says –

Captain: It's a cave formed by microbes over many years. It's supposed to have hidden treasure but no one's ever returned from there. The story is that the cave itself is alive. Are you going to the Sargasso?

Fei: It looks like it.

Captain: Your Gears can't dive that deep. If they did, you would not be able to move. Equip your underwater gear here. Then take your ship as far as you can and dive in with your Gear. I'll go wake those winos up, right now.

Fei: Really? It's okay with you? Thanks for always helping us out, Captain.

Captain: Don't mention it.

A little while later . . .

Captain: It looks like they're done.

Fei: That was fast.

Captain: Of course. We're . . .

Captain puts his scope to his eye and looks out the window ahead of him and Fei says –

Captain turns to him and says –

Fei: Men, of the sea, right?

Captain: Blimey. I think he's got it. Take care then.

Fei: Yeah.

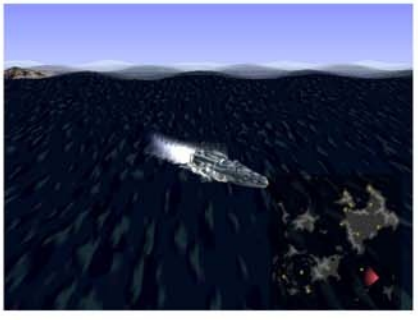
Captain: Oh yeah, I forgot to tell you how to operate them underwater. It's easy. You can jump in water without your feet touching the ground. Keep jumping to build up speed. You can swim pretty well in a Gear, but there may be places you can't get past if you don't do it well.

Fei: Got it. Thanks.

Captain: No need for thanks. Maybe you can buy something from our Gear shop. Looks like there be some new booty to sell.

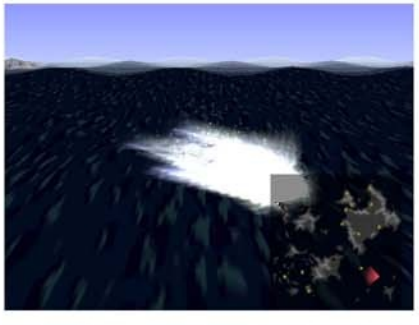
They go over to Hans who says –

Hans: Since our work with the 'Ethos' has deep sixed we've lost our 'porpoise'! Guess we'll just have to stick with wandering the seas and salvaging. Seems Thames will have to continue this haphazard lifestyle after all.



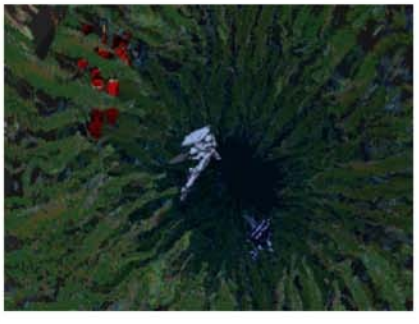
They leave and go down to the Supply Dock to buy some new Gear parts. They are surprised by the amount of new parts and stock up. All receive upgrades except for Andvari who's light years ahead of what is offered at this point. They leave and go back down to the Yggdrasil and make their way down to Margie's room to add Elly to the party. She, Fei and Bart go back up to the bridge and speak to Sig who asks –

Sig: Ready to go to Sargasso?



They reply, [Sure!] and scene cuts to an overhead view of the Yggdrasil as it sails above the southern sea on a northeasterly course and view rotates to face the vessel as it begins to submerge somewhere south of the Ignas continent, to the north of the smaller island to the south. (about halfway between Ignas and this island)

Scene cuts to an underwater tunnel which is lit by dark blue light and shimmers all around, the water gently waving all around them. The bare rock of the tunnels encloses them and they make their way through, slowly at first, then more rapidly as they get the hang of jumping underwater in their Gears. The rock walls are lit up by bluish light and the water creates a shimmery effect which fool the senses as they make their way further into the tunnels. They fight numerous electricity bearing enemies such as Mermen and other strange Gears. They travel along the twisting pathways until they see a beam of light from above. They rise and find themselves in a small rock grotto, the light streaming in from the ceiling far above and touching the pool of water at their feet with a soft radiance. They rest for a moment, then jump back down into the water to continue their search in the cool darkness of the depths. They travel along the twisting network of tunnels and find several dead ends. After a while, they find one tunnel which is filled with the sound of rushing water and they are pushed back by something powerful near the entrance to a cave further ahead. They press on and towards the left and at last make it past the swiftly flowing current to a tunnel with a beam of light which falls form an opening above. They surface into another of the grottos and explore, finding an empty treasure box. When it is opened, the entire place shakes slightly and someone says, "I heard a sound somewhere." They look around the small chamber, but find nothing of interest and head back the way they had come.



Once back out in the tunnel with the flowing jet of water, they notice the unusual silence. Carefully, they approach the large hole, covered in slowly waving green plants and they make their way forward. The tunnel is lined with green plants and they proceed cautiously, all silent, when suddenly they are sucked forward at a fast rate along the tunnel until they reach an area with a shaft of light coming from above.

They surface and find themselves in a grotto with two metal double doors at the end and they go through. Scene cuts to a chamber much like the one from the first gate and they pause at the doors. Fei says –

Fei: Is this, (pause) the 3rd gate . . . . . .?

View pulls back to a new Gear which stands before the shimmering pillar of light in the center. The oscillating hum fills the room and Fei addresses the white and Aqua colored Gear.

Fei: Who are you?

A young girl speaks –

"I will . . .kill you."

A large Gear descends from above with a thunderous boom and it has none of the elegance of the other's. A bulky, crude, rust colored Gear with a ball at the end of one arm and a wide scythe at the other. His face is that of a skull and he says –

Mysterious Gear: How do you do? I am a Rattan, one of the followers of Krelian. Please excuse me, I'd like to show you my face but as a result of the human-machine fusion . . .

Elly: A follower of Krelian!? Not Ramsus or the Elements!?

Rattan: Our current task is totally about inspection of the evidence. It'll ruin everything if someone as dead to the world as he appeared here. A person who's calm and cool like myself would be perfect for the job. Oh, but don't worry. I'll just be inspecting here. Emeralda here, will take care of you.

View pans over to the left to Emeralda and she says –

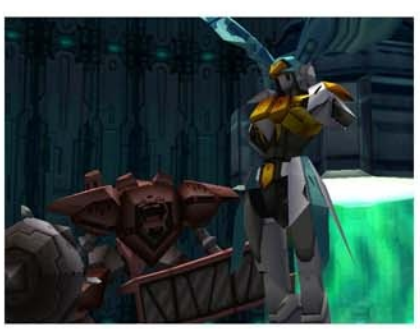
Emeralda: . . . . . .Kill . . .you.

Battle begins! They face Crescens on the dais before the gate generator and she starts off with a heavy blow to Elly. They turn on their boosters and wait, strangely reluctant to attack this new girl . . .After she has unleashed a series of spells, however, they realize the inevitable and land into her with heavy deathblows. After a while, they notice that her wings have begun to droop and they quickly win the battle.

Scene cuts back to the generator room, facing Emeralda who sags nearby and she says –

Emeralda: Ki . . . . . .m . . .? (pauses)
Ah, ah – a – a, I . . .

The room begins to shake, gaining in intensity and Emeralda lifts her wings, straightening and Rattan says from the side –

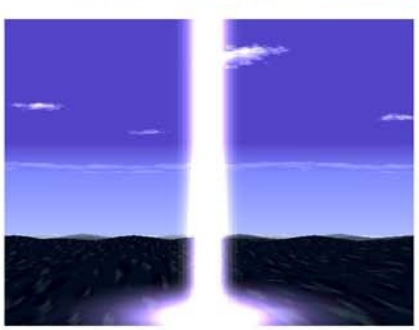


Rattan: . . .I see . . .Reckless . . .now that . . .You should view it as a release of . . .(pause) memory, or maybe a recording. It turned out just as Krelian said. It is a manifestation of the imprinting. At any rate, it is proven. With that, excuse me. I must report the results. Oh yes, go ahead and take the girl. Use her anyway you like. (pause) After all, she is your 'daughter' . . .

He leaves and the light begins to brighten as the shaking intensifies. Emeralda says –

Emeralda: Ah, a aha – a – a – a – a!!

She turns to face the pillar of light slowly and white light consumes all



Scene cuts to the blue waters of the ocean, clear sky above as a white circle of light erupts in a bar of radiance to the sky above. There is a massive explosion as the light disappears for a moment, and the water fountains up in a huge spray. Shockwaves travel in all directions and the bar of light reappears briefly, then suddenly dies away as the Yggdrasil swoops on by, flying once around the area and dipping down to touch the water, sending it up with a shower as it flies off.

Scene cuts to the Gun Room where Emeralda's small form is seen jumping up and down as she looks at Fei. Elly stands nearby and Citan and Bart are off to the left, watching. Emeralda says –

Emeralda: Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim!
Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim!

She claps her hands and Fei says –

Fei: . . .(pause) . . .Let's . . .see . . .

There is a pause, then he says –

Fei: What the hell is it saying?

Elly bows her head and –

Elly: . . .

She turns to Emeralda, her arms crossed and chin resting in her hand and asks –

Elly: Does Fei resemble someone you know?

Emeralda turns to Elly an says –

Emeralda: What do you mean by 'resemble'?
Kim is Kim?

Elly: Kim? The person resembling Fei, right? Who is he?
Is he the one who created you?

Emeralda: What do you mean by 'creating me'?
Kim is Kim! Don't you see?

She turns to Fei and nods once, saying –

Emeralda: Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim! Kim! You're really here!
I thought I was dreaming. The person in my dream. Yes, Kim!
I was dreaming! A long long dream.

Elly turns to Fei and says –

Elly: It seems you resemble him. Someone important to her (pause)
. . .probably the person who created her . . .

Fei: (still looking at Emeralda) Huh . . .?
H, hey you. My name is Fei. Not Kim.

Emeralda puts her hands to her face and looks down for a moment,
then she looks back up at Fei and nods once, saying –

Emeralda: Now I know, Fei's Kim! Listen, listen,
I was dreaming! A long long dream!

She looks up at him and he bows his head, placing his hands at his temples.
Then he looks up and says to her –

Fei: . . .Kim is fine . . .

Off to the side, Citan nods once –

Citan: For her, 'Kim' means more than just a name. . . .
More like . . . 'father'.

Fei turns to Citan and says –

Fei: . . .Father . . .?

Fei bows his head and Citan shakes his and then says –

Citan: No, no, I mean it has general meaning.

Emeralda claps and says –

Emeralda: Listen, listen, Kim! I was dreaming about really old
times. Kim was much older, and I was in some clear tube . . .

View pulls in closer to her and Fei –

Emeralda: Kim was . . .putting many candles on a white soft confection . . .
I didn't know why he was doing that . . .But I sensed he was looking forward
to me coming out of the tube . . .

The view halts facing them and she shakes her head slowly, bowing it and says –

Emeralda: . . .(pause) But . . .soon everyone . . .was gone . . .My body
disappeared . . .Then I was in somewhere dark for a long . . .long time . . .

She looks up at Fei who is still turned off to the side and says –

Emeralda: Please. Promise you'll stay, Fei's Kim!?

Fei turns to her and says –

Fei: Huh? . . .Uh yeah.

He nod once and she says –

Emeralda: Really? Really truly?

Elly turns to her and says –

Elly: Really.

Emeralda turns to her and says –

Emeralda: Don't bother me! Who is this old lady? I'm talking to Kim!

Elly: Old lady . . .! Maybe I should bury her back at the ocean floor . . .

Fei turns to Elly and says –

Fei: Hey . . .

There is a moment of silence, then Elly says –

Elly: Why don't you be her Kim? The Fei . . .Kim!!

Elly turns her back and in the ensuing silence, Fei shakes his head and looks down. Then he looks over at Emeralda, asking –

Fei: Umm . . .Oh . . .
. . .By the way, do you have a name?

Emeralda turns to him and says –

Emeralda: Oh no! You're cruel, Fei's Kim! It's me, Emeralda, Emeralda! Kim named me because I have emerald hair! Don't you remember . . .?

Fei shakes his head and says –

Fei: Okay, okay. Emeralda, right? Alright, Emeralda. I'll stay with you this time. I promise!

Emeralda: Really? Really truly? Yeah!

She jumps up and down in happiness and view swings over to face Citan who turns his back to the others and ponders, saying –

Citan: . . .I doubt Krelian acted on his own to use her as a disposable soldier. Some information existed within her which passed over to Krelian. Who knows what he will do next. We must find Solaris before that happens . . .

Then the message, "Received a telegram from Shevat!" is seen and, "Due to a weakening gate, a city that may be Solaris has been discovered!!"

Citan looks up and nods once, saying –

Citan: Perfect!! Let us go back to Shevat for now!

And so . . . Scene fades.

In the Shadow of Solaris

Scene fades into Queen Zephyr's throne room where all the party members, including Emeralda, are assembled. Jessie is off behind Billy and Zephyr says -

Zephyr: We are finally able to locate and see Solaris after destroying the 3 Gates on the surface. However, unless we destroy the final main generator on the Solaris homeland . . .
. . .we cannot completely wipeout their Gate.

Citan crosses his arms and ponders, then says -

Citan: Maria, this is where you and Seibzehn come in. Now that the Gate is weakened, we can use Seibzehn's heavy particle cannon . . . . . .to distort space and neutralize the Gate for a brief moment! Upon penetrating into Solaris, it would be best to move about . . . . . .in small groups so that we do not attract attention. Well, if possible I would like to . . .

Elly nods once and says -

Elly: Yes . . .I can guide you . . .through Solaris . . .

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: I'll go too. I'm a little concerned if it's Elly.

Elly turns to him and says -

Elly: What are you . . .? (pause) Wait, I didn't mean it like . . .

Citan looks up and says -

Citan: Understood! Then Elly, Fei and I will move about together. The rest will form a separate group to sneak in. Maria, it looks like you and Siebzehn will wait outside on standby.

Maria turns to him and nods once, saying -

Maria: Fine . . .I understand.

Citan: Well, let us break up for now. Once you are all ready, we should all meet here before we take off . . .

Scene fades and cuts to the gazebo at the top of the palace outside where Citan stands with Yui and both look out at the sky. She says without turning to him -

Yui: You're going aren't you . . .(pause) To Solaris . . .

Without turning, Citan nods once and says -

Citan: Yes . . .I have chosen my own path.
There is no turning back . . .

Yui: You will be hurt . . .They will also be hurt . . .

Citan: Indeed . . . But I could not find any other path to choose . . .
If I happen to be overcome by the dark side . . .(pauses)
At that point, I have already . . .

Yui nods once and says -

Yui: Don't say anything more. I already know . . .

She turns and approaches him, saying -

Yui: Now, here. This is your sword . . .Please . . .(pause)
Please come back alive!

Citan turns to her and nods once, saying -

Citan: Then you too . . . (pause)
Please take care of Midori.

She steps closer to him and nods once and view pans upward to the rounded roof of the gazebo, set against the backdrop of the deep blue sky.

Scene cuts to the stairwell leading to the gazebo behind Citan who walks towards the stairs. Jessie is seen further ahead and Citan pauses at the landing as he says -

Jessie: Listen, Hyuga. I'm going to Solaris, too.

There is a moment of silence and Jessie stares out the window. Without turning to look up at Citan on the landing, he says -

Jessie: Don't misunderstand me. It doesn't mean I'll help you. I don't know what you're thinking or trying to do . . .But, if you take their side, I'll kill you without a doubt. Even from the back . . .

Citan nods once and says -

Citan: Yes . . .I will be counting on that.

Jessie turns his back and says -

Jessie: Heh . . .so discouraging . . .

Solaris

Scene cuts to the throne room where all are assembled once more and Citan asks –

Citan: Are you prepped and ready?

They respond in the affirmative and he says –

Citan: Good. Then we are off. (turns to Maria) We are depending on you, Maria. Please transport us to Solaris on the Seibzehn.

She turns to him and nods once, and says –

Maria: Yes! Seibzehn is ready to go any time!

Scene cuts to the large Hangar bay in Shevat from above Fei and his crew, then cuts to above Seibzehn's dock as a clank is heard and the doors beneath his feet slide open with a low rumble. Maria is visible on top of the Gear and a light shows green. View cuts to the tiny girl as she says –

Maria: Siebzehn, Let's go!

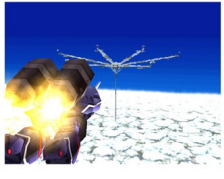
With a loud clank, the Gear shakes and view cuts to one overhead as it begins to descend into the darkness below. Scene cuts to Seibzehn as he descends from out of the dock and passes by, cutting to a view of the round circle of blue sky as he leaves the dock.

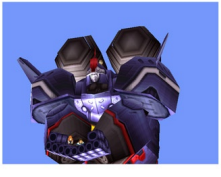
Scene cuts to the azure depths of the sky and pans over to the right as Seibzehn flies on and Maria calls out –

Maria: I'm coming, Solaris! Seibzehn and I shall be the dark wings which carry you all to your deaths!

Scene cuts to a view of Solaris, its extensions outspread and the slender rod holding it up above the clouds as Seibzehn approaches, engines blazing, in the foreground.

View cuts to one facing the Gear as it blasts forward, Fei, Elly and Citan visible in his cupped hands. With a brief flash of light, he hits something and –





Maria: This is the . . . barrier!! Please, Seibzehn!!

Maria: A grav field is opening! The space distortion correction is starting!

All goes red and a low grinding hum is heard, a loud thump is heard, then rings of blue light spread out along the invisible barrier as he hits it again and again. With a loud final sound as of breaking glass, he punches through and flies towards Solaris.

Scene cuts to a wide square of blue sky, surrounded by metal as Seibzehn approaches. As he draws near, it appears that he and the others are upside down. He halts, filling the square with his bulk and lowers his hands, stretching them out and Fei, Elly, then Citan jump off and on to the metal platform above, also remaining upside down as they turn to look at Bart and he says –

Bart: It's dangerous to move in a big group.
We'll take separate routes.

Citan: Right.

Seibzehn begins to move away, Bart held in his outstretched palms and the three watch them leave. Seibzehn rises preparing to depart and Hammer calls out as Seibzehn pauses –

Hammer: Don't worry, I'm good at gathering info!

The entire place shakes as the Gear hovers and Rico sys –

Rico: You just like to watch others' misery!
You'll just get in the way.

Hammer: Forgive me . . .!! Sorry!!

Citan calls out –

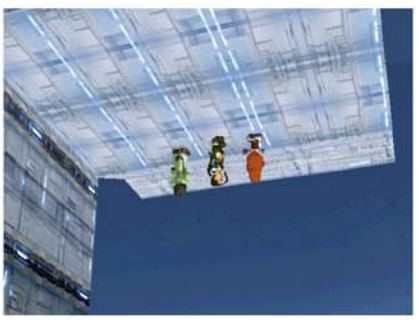
Citan: Maria . . .

Maria: Yes, what is it?

Citan: The disorder Siebzehn caused when breaking the gate has almost cleared up. You and everyone else must leave before the enemy detection system activates again. We will take care of the rest.

Maria: Okay, be careful.

Seibzehn blasts down (up) and view moves to the three as Fei turns to Elly and says –



Fei: Seems like the world's upside down, it's creepy.

Both Elly and Citan turn to him and she says –

Elly: Solaris' gravity is the opposite that of the land. We don't have time to explain, you'll get used to it. It's uncomfortable for us on the surface at first.

Fei: Hey, what's this?

Elly: It looks like some kind of storage or distribution center. I'm not sure but . . . . . .its' probably used to ship off extra supplies, materials and fuel gathered from the surface. These are the technology and products you land dwellers receive from the 'Ethos' . . .

Citan taps his foot and says –

Citan: For now, shall we gather some information.

They walk away from the landing bay entrance and it seems like they are hanging from the ceiling as they range across the gray metal floor. Across the room, they see two long tube shaped objects, open at one end and as they stand before one, Fei asks –

Fei: Is this a container from the transport system Elly was talking about?

Elly: Well . . .I'm not sure. But I think I've seen this before . . .

Fei: Shall we . . . . . .take a look?

He walks into the opening and Elly says –

Elly: What are you saying? We don't have time for that. We have to get out of here quickly.

Fei appears at the opening and says –

Fei: Didn't you say we had to gather information?
We could probably sneak in using this thing.

Suddenly, sections of blue glass begin to come together across the opening and Fei –

Fei: Wha!!

As the tube begins to move off, Elly and Citan run after it, calling –

Citan: Fei!!

Elly: Fei!!

It disappears through a hexogonal shape in the wall and both Elly and Citan halt at the opening after it is gone. Elly thinks, . . .!!

Scene fades and cuts to Fei who standas in the tiny chamber as it finally comes to a halt and view rights itself. Fei thinks, "??"

Turning to look around at the small room he says -

Fei: Where am I now . . .?

He looks around the tiny hexagonal chamber which is only big enough for the bed at the end and a small computer console near what must be the door. Cautiously, he approaches and the glass parts.

Scene cuts to Fei as he rides a green lit pedestal away from what appears to be a wall of the blue hexagon shapes and it travels further out, revealing whole metal sections which contain several hexagon pods. It descends and Fei jumps onto the metal floor as a voice comes from above –

"N, noooo!! Can't handle it anymore!!"

View pans up and to the left where a man stands on top of one of the metal structures containing the hexagons high overhead. A steel metal wall is behind him and he calls out as a mechanical object approaches him –

M1: Something's wrong with all of you! Working like machines day after day . . .

The white triangle shaped machine hovers over him as he continues –

M1: You have no will! This isn't living!! This is . . .is . . .

Then –

M1: Stop it! Let go!

The triangular mechanism carries him off the structure and as he is carried away high overhead, view pans along the interior of what appears to be a vast indoor structure containing scores of the tiny hexagon rooms, just like the one Fei had left, in compartments and the ceiling is lost from view in darkness above. The man is carried, struggling, to a point just over the abyss nearby and dropped. He –

"Uaaaaaahh!!" as he falls down into a pit of blackness below. View swings to the right where Fei stands watching and he moves along the metallic street where others pass by intent on their own work.

A man in a turban nearby says –

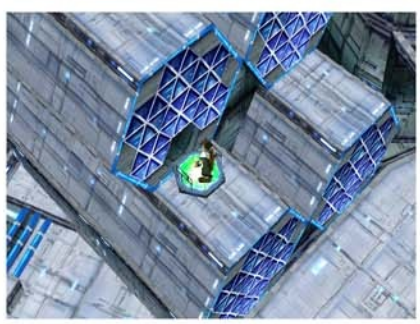
M1: A lot of people have tried to change their ID's and escape lately . . .They usually get caught and ''rearranged', or re-educated. Don't you even think of trying to escape.

Fei steps out to look over the wide gulf in the center of this strange 'town' and several blocks of the hexagon room are visible, rising in tiers high overhead as they wrap around the central pit. One of the mechanical drones passes by overhead, causing him to freeze. When it is gone, he breathes a sigh of relief and moves on to the left, to another pedestal and he steps on it. It asks, "Return to 13-6-1?" He says [Yes] and it rises to a hexagon chamber very close by in the ground level tier.

He enters and sees a tall gray-blue human-like creature with big ears. He says –

Dh1: Argh!! Because of him I'm probably going to get 'rearranged'!! God, if you're there . . .Please save me!

Fei leaves and takes the pedestal down to the ground floor. Before he can step off, the hex structure which he had just left is pulled back in its entirety and rises up out of view. All that is left is the wide tunnel where the structure had been. Fei moves on and speaks to a man out on the street nearby who says –



M2: I want to move up a rank to 2nd Class citizen. Then I can finally live with the 2nd class.

More of the drones whir by overhead and Fei sees a larger metal structure next to the hex buildings and a guard stand outside the door. He says –

SG1: You've got no business at the watchtower. Beat it.

He steps back and speaks to a man in blue who says –

M3: All our fates are tied together . . .It's malcontents like him that get us all punished. It kills me to think that all our work to raise our block's rank is ruined.

Fei moves over to another floating pedestal and he speaks to the man standing nearby. He says –

M4: How can you not be happy with all this? Do as you're told and get promoted. What is there to be discontented about?

Fei steps on the pedestal and it asks, "Return to 12-3-6?" he says, [Yes] and it rises to the second tier and over to the left. He enters the small chamber and sees a man with reddish brown hair in a muscle shirt. He turns to Fei who start, pauses and says –

Fei: Ti, Timothy!?

M5: Unfortunately I'm not Timothy. The name's Samson. But hey, I know you!

Fei crouches in a fighting stance and asks –

Fei: H, how do you know me? Who are you . . .?

The man turns his back and says –

M5: From the Tournament . . .Unfortunately, I lost in the 1st round. I passed out on the way home.

Fei rises, drops his fighting stance and asks -

Fei: And . . .?

Samson turns to him and says –

Samson: When I came to, I found myself here. Everyone else got what they call 'rearranged'. It's a cross between brainwashing and amnesia. But they messed up on me and I can still remember.

Fei: Then what about that last person . . .?

Samson nods once and says –

Samson: Yep, him too. Died in vain . . . . . .One of my few friends, too. I'm not goin' out like that. You know that guard tower near us? I'm gonna go through it past the 2nd class block, sneak into the naval port and kiss Solaris goodbye.

Fei: Can you do that?

Samson: Yeah, 'cause I got a pass. They got me working at the naval port. I'm only supposed to leave when it's my shift, but I 'solved' that little snag. Hey, why don't you come along? With your power, we'd be set!

Fei responds, [Yeah, sure] and he says –

Samson: Right, that's the spirit! But, be careful! A female Gebler just came by for some reason . . .

Fei: !? Did she, have auburn hair?

Samson: Yeeaah, that's her! What, you're friends? Come to think of it, she was looking for someone . . . She still oughta be around here somewhere. You oughta look for her.

Fei leaves and takes the pedestal back down to the ground and continues on to the left. He sees a break in the large structures and walks along a metal length to where a guard stands before a blue hexagon in the floor. He says –

G2: This is the dust chute. 3rd Class citizens have nothing to do with this. Go back where you came from.

Fei goes behind him to a large metal tower which rises above at the rear and then goes back, seeing no way out from here. He moves on to the next pedestal and steps on. It asks [Return to 11-1-1?] and he says , [Yes] It rises up to the third level and he enters. He sees a man with a turban and he says –

M1: Don't rabble-rouse here . . .Just work, eat, and sleep. Just keep doin' that, and you'll live . . .If anyone complains, our entire unit will be punished too. Which means, we all get 'rearranged'. You'll never come back.

Fei leaves and goes back down to the ground level. Then, he speaks to a man in a tan colored robe –

M5: What a fool . . .If he hadn't bucked the system, he coulda lived peacefully.

He goes over to a Battler who says –

M6: K block . . .They're all bein' 'rearranged'. Poor guys . . .and they worked so hard too.

A guy nearby speaks up –

M7: Even if we think so, that doesn't mean the Administration does . . .

Fei speaks to the man who says –

M8: It's best to follow the Administration. It could affect your rank, y'know.

Fei goes over to the next pedestal which read and it asks, [Return to 10-4-1?] He says, [Yes] and it takes him up to the second tier. He enters and sees –

Elly: Fei!?

Fei: Elly!!

He gives a start –

She crosses her arms and bows her head and says –

Elly: Fei, you're so careless. If you're trying to infiltrate the base, you have to be subtle.

Fei nods once and says –

Fei: Sorry . . .Well, where are we?

She turns her back and responds –

Elly: We're in the 'Solaris 3rd Class F Block'. There's around 20 blocks each with land dwellers living in them. We Solarians are privy to all personal info . . .Everyone's DNA structure is inscribed on a molecular level. And even their class . . .You know what these citizens are called?

Fei shakes his head, saying, " No . . ."

She turns to him and says –

Elly: 'Worker Bees'. It came from the shape of their housing blocks. These people provide the manual labor vital to the support of Solaris' core. I took a field trip here once long ago. I remember thinking that their lives had nothing to do with me. I never thought I would end up here like this.

Fei assumes a half crouched stance and says –

Fei: Which means, you should know your way around here, Elly.

Elly nods once and says –

Elly: Vaguely. We need to escape first . . .

He stand straight once more and asks –

Fei: Oh yeah, where's doc?

Elly: He took a different pod looking for you . . . He may have ended up in a different block.

Fei puts his hands on his hips and bows his head, saying –

Fei: Damn . . .we're all spread out.

Elly shakes her head and says –

Elly: I wouldn't worry about Citan. He knows this city better than I do.

Fei looks up and says –

Fei: I wonder if Bart and them made it OK?

Elly: Jessie's with them, so they should be fine.

Fei: I hope so . . .

Elly: Anyway, let's move on.

Fei nods and they leave the hexoganol room and return to the ground level. They decide to go find Samson and hear his plan for getting into the tower. They go up to his room and he says –

Samson: So, she was on our side after all. Here, take this.

They ask, " . . .What is it?"

Samson: A 2nd Class citizen work permit, just like mine. With that, you can move about more freely without arousing suspicion. Well, if she's with you, there shouldn't be any problems. Well, I'll be at the tower entrance.

They, “Received a work permit.” and he moves past them and out. They follow, going to the guard tower and speak to the guard outside. He says –

G1: (. . .hey . . .It’s me . . . .me. Ready to go?)

The door opens behind him and he goes through. They follow and scene cuts to a white room where Samson stands and says –

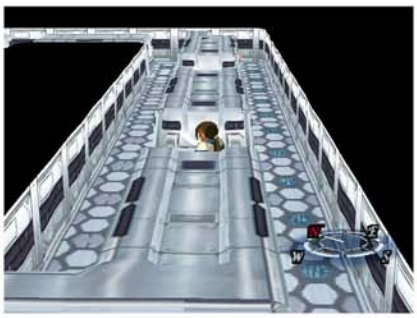
Samson: From here on, it’ll be better if we split up. It’s a maze so be careful.

Fei: Yeah, you too . . .

Samson turns and walks off. After he is gone, Elly asks –

Elly: Are we really going to be okay?

They go through the door and find themselves in a narrow white metal corridor which zigs and zags as they go through. They decide to take this elevator and see where they end up. It takes them up to another small room and they go out the door, down another narrow white metal corridor to a door. They emerge into a wide, maze-like area where several drones pass to and fro among various sections which rise out of the floor. They pause at the door and Fei says-



Fei: Let’s take care of this and move on!

Carefully evading the drones they finally make it over to another door and pass through the corridor to another of the small chambers. They go through the door at the end and find themselves in a slightly larger room with the blue and gray tiled floor where Samson waits before a device set in the floor, separating them from the metal double doors beyond. He says –

Samson: Not bad. I think I’ll let myself go on ahead!

Elly calls out –

Elly: Wait! You’re not a Gazel! What’re you going to do?

He turns to her, laughing, and says –

Samson: Not a problem. I used underground tech to re-write my ID.

He turns and starts across the green glowing plate set in the floor between two metal apparatuses. Elly thinks, “ . . .” and the machine– “> > > ID error. Eliminate.”

Lasers shoot out across the plate where he stands and Fei shouts –

Fei: Samson!!

Samson cries, “W, wait!! Ugaaahh!!” He blackens, then disappears and Fei, “!!”. He bows his head, then looks up, thinking, “ . . .” and goes over to one of the metal boxes where the lasers had been emitted and crouches down, hands moving over it –

Fei: Damn you!! I’m gonna destroy it!!

Elly turns to him and shouts, “No!” and rushes to him as he is thrown back by an electric shock. He shouts, “Waah!!” and the entire place seems to shake for a moment. Elly shakes her head and says –

Elly: It’s useless to do that. You won’t be able to get through without either a 1st Class citizen ID or a military ID . . .

He turns to her and asks –

Fei: Then what’re we going to do . . .?

She bows her head and says –

Elly: Well we can’t just stand here . . .I guess it’s going to have to be all or nothing.

She remains bowed, standing near Fei and he says –

Fei: If it doesn’t work out, we’ll worry about it later . . .is what you’re saying? Isn’t that kinda sounding like (pauses) Bart?

She looks up and says –

Elly: How rude. It’s not like I always go in without a plan.

She turns and walks over to the green plate. She stands there and the machine says – “> > > 1st Class citizen, Gazel, confirmed. Please pass through in an orderly fashion.”

Fei: (turns to her) We can get through!

Without turning, she bows her head and –

Elly: . . .

After a moment, he asks –

Fei: ? What’s wrong?

She turns and looks up at him, saying –

Elly: Huh? Uh well . . .I’ve done so much, I’m surprised they haven’t labeled me as a traitor yet . . .

Fei puts his hands on his hips and looks down –

Fei: You think it’s because they haven’t reported it? To the Gebler, it would be like admitting failure and all.

Elly: I hope so . . .

He drops his hands and looks up at her and says –

Fei: Anyway, let’s go!!

Elly: Okay. Oh, stay very close to me. That way, it shouldn’t pick up your presence.

He comes over to stand next to her and they pass through to the other side. They go through the doors and scene cuts to a view of the slim tube as they rise, the 3rd Class citizen block spreading away below them. Scene fades and cuts to a room with another of the scanning devices and they pass through together, going through the door at the other side. They find themselves in a circular chamber where a few people mill around. A guard stands nearby and he turns at their approach and says –

G1: Hey! Why are you coming out of there!? Come over here!

Elly steps towards the guard and says –

Elly: I'm an Imperial Special Forces lieutenant, Elhaym Van Houten. I have just completed the collection of the special levy of the 3rd Class level. I am now in the process of taking this surface dweller back to HQ. Any problems with that?

G1: (G, Gebler!?) N, no, no problems . . .Please, go on.

She joins Fei and they go around the circular room, noticing holographic displays near the ceiling. They speak to a man near the center of the room and he says –

M1: The one behind you is the Gebler? I heard the Lambs destroyed the gate . . .Is everything okay?

They respond, [It's questionable] and he says –

M1: Wha? Now now, quit jokin'. That's impossible!

The lady across form him, long wheat colored hair, says –

W1: You've got a lot of guts going into an area full of those barbarians . . .Only a Gebler could do that.

They hear a blond man complaining to the women behind the counter. They go over and speak to him and he says -

M2: This is the problem with government offices . . .grumble . . .grumble . . .

Behind the counter they see a few people working at consoles in the back. They leave and find themselves in an entrance surrounded by colorful lights and flashing symbols. They walk out onto the white gleaming metal street and see a few people nearby and some of the drones as they pass by overhead. White railings provide protection along some of the pathways as they go out across the lower levels in which stairs can be seen spiraling down. The place is full of activity and several brightly colored holograms line the shiny blue white metal walls of the buildings. A blond man in a blue coat nearby says –

M1: As a service to the citizens, we now are accepting data for the marriage service. The Central Control Bureau will pick the very best match for you. Our motto is 'Good matches make good descendants'. We are the seed that came from it, so of course we are the best.

They go over to the edge of the balcony and look down at a busy thoroughfare as vehicles speed by below. They go across the suspended pathway and speak to a woman standing there who says –

W1: . . .You look rather odd. 3rd Class citizens should dress more appropriate.

They move past her to a round 'island' where a little blond boy is jumping up and down. He says –

Lb1: Whaddya think of these new Pogoshoes? They were made from the newest technology. They don't put stress on your spine, they're the best. The Imperial model is a super cool ultra rare item.

More cars zoom by below and they make their way down to the next pathway to a wide area of the shiny white metal and a staircase descends to a lower level to their left. Curious, they go down and walk around on the ground floor, the railing separating them form the cars that whiz on by and around the central circle. They only add to the carnival effect and the noise and bustle is nearly overwhelming. There is a guard there who says –

G1: Danger ahead.

They go back up the stairs and back out onto the wide pathway in front of several buildings with light streaming through their revolving doors. From this vantage point, they can see that this section is roughly circular in shape, the entire collection of buildings curving in a gentle arc around the central circle. The streets below hum with cars and there is a general festive air. They go over to another blond man –

M2: You can get whatever you want here. Look, I should have lost this arm in an accident, but with Solaris' biosampling - Look no scar. There are none of the crimes, disasters or wars like on earth. Science makes everything possible for us.

They speak to a blond haired man near a glowing signboard next to the stairs and he says –

M3: The Dedication is starting soon.

They go towards a set of doors through which white light is seen and enter a large store. The rectangular room has several counters with goods for sake and potted plants line the room with benches circling them for people to sit on. There are several people here, all light haired and an idea is beginning to form . . .A little boy nearby says –

Lb1: Wow, you got me that Battling Alloy!! When I grow up, I'm gonna join Gebler too!

His father speaks up from behind –

M1: My son bugged me so much I just had to get him a Hybrid Alloy. I'll be so proud if he joins Gebler when he grows up.

He and his son leave and Fei and Elly make their way over to the counter across from them. The clerk asks –

C1: Which one?

He offers them a selection of weapons and armor and they stock up. They move over to the left where a man stands watching a blue screen on the far wall. He –

M2: . . .(turns to them) I'm so indecisive. I don't know what to buy. Don't bother me.

They speak to a woman nearby who says –

W1: There's so many Imperial models out now. It's a limited edition, so I gotta buy it!

They go over to the counter behind her and the clerk says –

C2: This is the Ticketmeister. What are you looking for?

They respond [Tickets] and he says –

C2: VIP seating for the Dedication is all sold out. Please enjoy it on Homevision.

They speak to him again and say [Buy and sell]

C2: We're giving out Dedication tickets. Please come to Room 21 in Etren Court.

They go over to the other side of room where a little boy stands with his mother by the large screen on the wall and jumps up and down, saying –

Lb2: What? They don't have any Imperial model pogoshoes? I want them so badly too!

The clerk at the counter nearby says –

C3: Sir, I'm sorry. We just sold the last pair.

Lb2: Waaggh!!

A little girl with pale hair walks away from the counter and she says –

Lg1: I want the Imperial model too!!

The little boy says –

Lb2: This 'Imperial model' is pretty nice!

Fei and Elly stand by him at the screen for a moment, then she asks –

Elly: Doesn't that say 'Impaired model'?

Lb2: Huh? Wow, it does! It must be a fake!

The woman nearby says –

W2: Hmm, what should I do . . .What do you think?

She turns to them, holding out an item and they see that she is dressed in what is apparently the typical fashion for Solarian women . . .second class ones, anyway. She is dressed in brown pants with a short purple dress over it. The men tend to wear either blue or tan colored trench coats. They suggest [What about that one?] and she says –

W2: You think so? But you like weird clothes too so . . .I'll take that one!

They speak to the clerk at the counter behind them and he offers them a selection of goods and items. They buy a few and go over to the little boy's mother, a blond lady in a bun and a red dress. She says –

W3: Service in Solaris is great, no matter how big something is, it's always there when you get home.

They see a clear glass tube behind them suspended between two metal ends and an image rotates inside it. they can barley make out what appears to be a blond woman. They think –

". . .I've seen that somewhere before . . ."

They leave and go back out to the main thoroughfare. Several boxes of planted trees line the avenue and more holographic displays glow overhead on tones of bright pink, blue and green. A man nearby says –

M5: There seems to be a big struggle on the surface. But it has absolutely nothing to do with us. As long as the Emperor is with us, we can live in peace. Jumping out of a frying pan just might land you in the fire . . .That stupid Ramsus hasn't learned that yet.

They go over to a man near the railing overlooking the traffic below and he says –

M6: Just looking down and seeing the earth I think . . .Those poor souls can't live in this fine city. Even if they destroy the gate, it's all a waste of effort. . . .Futile resistance from those who will never reach our paradise.

Another man nearby says –

M7: The Emperor will give the speech himself. He can't stand to see our confusion anymore so he went out of the way to make an appearance. We should be thankful.

They go through a revolving door across the way and enter a living area.They go to the room on the left first and find themselves in a somewhat spacious chamber with a console over to the right and a round metal circle set into the floor across the room where 2 people appear to be dancing along with a holographic image of a woman. The hologram appears above the circle and as they get closer, one of the dancers seems familiar – it's Big Joe! He doesn't say anything to them and continues to dance with the other person next to him, a Solarian woman and they both follow the instructions of he holographic woman who says, "One, two, three, four!!" again and again. The woman says -

W1: One, two, one, two!! . . .I'm practicing dancing don't bug me!!

They look for a moment at the holographic woman who wears two small red bits of clothing over her chest and butt as she swirls a scarf around. They leave the room and go past the elevator to the next one and enter, finding themselves in another residence. Three people stand around as a little girl follows and object flying around the room. Her father says –

M1: (I wanted a DK 1200 doll . . .)

They go across to where her mother, in a bun and red dress, stands before the console with it's solitary green potted plant and says –

W1: I want real plants . . .

The man calls over –

M1: You can't buy real plants unless you're a 1st Class citizen. . . .sigh . . .I'm so jealous.

The toy whizzes in a circle above their heads, its tiny engines droning and it looks like a Gear of some kind. The girl says –

Lg1: This Alloy Imperial Gear dad bought me is so cool! It really flies!! 'Purge the Lambs!!' Wow!

Over by the beds near the console, a few pictures are tacked up on the wall. They leave and go out to the elevator. They take it up to the next level, another round metallic chamber with two doors. They go to the one across from them and find another residence where two people, a man and a woman are. The man says –

M1: Even Solaris' advanced science can't halt aging. But they say the powerful have overcome it . . .They already have great descendants, what more do they want? Don't you agree?

The woman turns to them and says –

W1: I came to see the Emperor, and strained my back . . .They can cure almost anything but a bad back. And after putting up with all that to get tickets . . .Hey, you kids. Need tickets to the Dedication? Kids like you really should go see it!

They say [Please] and "Received Dedication tickets." She says –

W1: Forget the money. Just hurry or you'll miss it. I'm going to watch it one Homevision.

They leave and go past the elevator to the room across the way. They enter and find a single man over by the sofa. He says –

M1: Go and save on that memory cube. You can rest easy of you send your data to the central Control Bureau regularly. I've heard they're lying around on the ground in places for data collecting.

They leave and take the elevator back down to the ground floor and back outside once more. They go to their left and the buildings end and a low railing with trees begins. They speak to a woman who says –

W1: Are you Etrenstrolling? What? Etrenstrolling is walking along the Etrenank. You need to download the Etren guide to do it. Central Control always has fun things. It's their job to keep the citizens happy.

They go over to the metal railing and look out over the blue depths beyond. They see that a stream of water is issuing from an opening beneath them. A holographic image of the Emperor floats out beyond them over the blue water below and Fei and Elly stand between the potted trees and look out for a moment. Then they move on to a little boy who stares at the same image floating above the inner circle where the traffic zooms by below. He says –

Lb1: Yaay! The Emperor!

Behind them, a woman stands near a guard who blocks the entrance to a path beyond. She says –

W2: You have a ticket? you'd better hurry to make it on time!

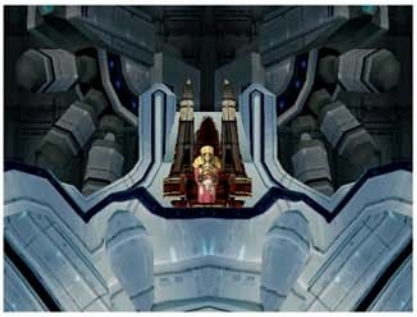
They approach the masked guard who says –

G1: You have a ticket. Alright, go on through. Better hurry or you won't make it in time.

They move past him and down the path. Scene cuts to a wide plaza of the same polished white-blue metal where a crowd of people stands among potted trees. Fei and Elly stand towards the rear and the sound of many voices rises around them.

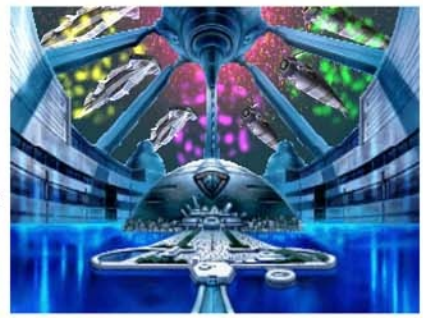
scene cuts to a wide spacious area where a central section is set amidst sparkling blue waters beneath a huge curving dome of glass, Six ships appear in the blue sky above, seen through the large segments of glass and with a low rumble of their engines line up in formation above, each positioned over a segment of glass. They halt and view pulls in towards the palace at the center, then scene cuts to a white metal dais as a throne rises up out of its depths, revealing the Emperor. His voice is heard amid cheers as he speaks –

"My beloved children, you can be at ease. The Gazel Ministry and I planned the destruction of the gate long ago. The people chosen by god . . .we, the Gazel, will return to god's paradise. To the sleeping mother god . . .The time for our immortality has come."



He continues amid more cheers –

"We have opened the door to 'Mahanon' . . . the place where god rests, the source of wisdom and power. The surface dwellers will no doubt use this opportunity to seize its power. However, there is no need to be concerned . . .As long as Solaris has this power . . ."



Scene fades and returns to the huge sky dome above the center of Solaris as the large battleships hover overhead and his voice comes again –

"Let's show stupid beasts, the Lambs our real power."

There are more cheers, then multicolored fireworks erupt from the vessels and shower sparkles high overhead, filling the sky with brilliant shades.

Scene cuts back to Fei and Elly in the crowd. Fei turns to her and says –

Fei: Elly . . .? Hey, Elly!

She turns to him and says –

Elly: Sorry . . .Did you say something?

Fei shakes his head and says –

Fei: 'Did I say something?'? Are you okay? You're zoning. Your mind's not here.

Fei turns his head as she puts her hands up to her temples and says –

Elly: S, sorry. I was just thinking. And this crowd's noisy.

She turns and walks a little bit away, facing ahead once more and he turns to look at her, thinking, "??"

Scene cuts back to the Emperor on his dais as, with a low hum, another figure rises off to the left. The crowd cheers for the man standing on a pedestal. He speaks –

Krelian: Children of the Emperor, please open your heart.

The view is still on Krelian as Elly exclaims –

Elly: Krelian!

Fei: Huh?

She responds amid the sound of deafening cheers.

Elly: That's Krelian. He's the real leader of Solaris. He doesn't appear in public very often. That's all I know.

Fei: He's . . .the leader of Solaris? What . . .
Why do I feel . . . Something seems familiar.

White light consumes all and the noise, the crowd, the cheers fade away and scene cuts to a man who appears to be Fei standing before the Nisan altar with its many candles.

He drops his hands from the dark wood and turns, coming down the steps to the ground floor. A man with dark hair approaches him from the side of the cathedral. The entire scene is touched with a golden tone as though it were a dream . . .or a memory. The soft light falling from the stained glass window high above touches the floor in warm colors and the man steps closer to him, then stops and nods once, saying –

Krelian: It's been a long time Lacan.

Lacan: Krelian, you're back?

The man is Krelian, but years younger, and his eyes swirl with unknown depths. He nods once and says –

Krelian: I just got back last night. You came back home to get paints, right? Sophia told me. Allow me to accompany you.

Lacan shakes his head slowly, then nods once –

Lacan: Is that okay?

Krelian nods, then crosses his arms and looks down. Nodding again, he says –

Krelian: Yeah. I'll leave someone else in command of my unit. Because of Solaris, things are a lot more dangerous these days. Anyway, wouldn't you feel more secure if you were with me?

Lacan: . . .Thanks.

Krelian uncrosses his arms and looks up, shaking his head and Lacan begins to walk down toward the circle of light nearby. Krelian joins him and the view pans up to the stained glass window high above. White light consumes all, then gradually fades as Lacan and Krelian walk through the streets of Nisan.

Lacan walks ahead of Krelian who pauses and he turns around to face him and nods once, asking -

Lacan: . . .What did you say? What's the name of the teacher you're studying under?

Krelian: Melchior.

View fades to one of a flight of stone steps as Lacan climbs up, followed by Krelian. Then Lacan stops and turns, putting his hands on his hips as he shakes his head and asks –

Lacan: But still, why are you studying?

Krelian continues climbing up the stairs as he responds, passing Lacan. He says –

Krelian: Sophia told me the best way to calm the heart is to read a book . . .

He stops and turns to Lacan who stands with head bowed further down. He says –

Krelian: It's a good opportunity. And it has sparked my interest in studying.

There is silence, then Lacan turns to look up at Krelian who at first shakes his head, then nods –

Krelian: . . .Now, I'm reading 3 books a day.

Krelian turns and continues up the stairs. Above, Krelian stops and Lacan continues on a while before turning and he says –

Lacan: If it can change, it will. (nods once) . . .
The art of war, that's all you think about . . . . . .

Krelian shakes his head, then crosses his arms and looks down, saying –

Krelian: Hey, that's mean. You know, I'm the best of all of his students.

Lacan raises his hands before him and says –

Lacan: I see . . . . .That's great, it sounds like you found something to put your heart into . . . . . .

Krelian drops his arms and shakes his head, saying –

Krelian: What do you mean?

Lacan drops his hands slowly, not answering and Krelian nods once, saying –

Krelian: You have something. Your pictures are splendid. You should be thankful . . . . . .

Scene fades to an overhead of the coppery roofs of Nisan and pans towards the right, then scene fades to a darkened stone room where Lacan and Krelian stand before a tube of glass. Krelian turns to Lacan and says –

Krelian: Lacan, look at this. I finally completed it. This will save people's lives.

Lacan nods once and Krelian turns to the short figure in the foreground and says –

Krelian: Isn't that right, Melchior? With this even Sophia will . . .

The short figure turns to him and a white light consumes all, returning to Fei and Elly as they stand on the white metal pathway beneath some potted trees, the crowd surrounding them. She says –

Elly: . .Fei, Fei? What's wrong with you?

He turns and shakes his head, saying –

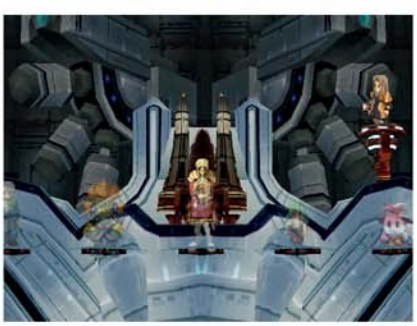
Fei: Uh, it's . . .nothing . . .But that guy, Krelian . . . I feel like . . .I've met him before . . .

Elly: Do you understand? Shall I translate?

Fei nods once and says –

Fei: Yeah, please.

He turns to face the Emperor and Krelian and view switches to one facing Krelian on the pedestal as he says –



Krelian: . . .The gate we control was removed by will of the Emperor. However, there are foolish beasts here defiling our holy land with their feet. These beasts destroyed the gate and want to remove the Emperor from the throne in the confusion. This is a grave matter, the Emperor's throne has been polluted. We cannot rest yet. Those imbeciles have been caught and shackled like the dogs they are!

He turns to his right and view pans back over to the Emperor as several flat metal disks rise out of the dais before him and spread out to either side. Holographic images of Billy, Rico, Bart, Emeralda and J'ora appear and view cuts to one facing Fei and Elly as he starts forward, thinking, "!?" and shouts, "B, Bart!" as Elly runs towards him. The crowd turns around to look at them and he says, "Ughh!" as Elly stands before him.

View swings around to a side view of them as she says –

Elly: (Don't yell! What if they find out you're a land dweller?)

Some of the crowd turns back to face the front once more as he says –

Fei: (Sorry, couldn't help it. They've been caught! Damn . . . Let's go! We gotta help them . . . . . .)

Some of the people begin moving away and Elly turns to the front as she says –

Elly: (Wait! He's still talking . . .)

She continues translating –

Elly: ('To revive our progenitors, the Gazel of old . . .The day after tomorrow, these land dwellers will be disposed of in the Soylent System'.

From behind her, Fei whispers –

Fei: (Revive Gazel? Soylent System? What's that?)

The crowd of people surrounding them have all turned back and she turns to him and says –

Elly: ('Gazel' are purebreed Solaris people . . .the word means 1st Class citizen. . . . But, in this case, it probably means 'the Gazel Ministry'. Long ago the members of the Gazel Ministry lost their fleshly bodies in order to protect the Solaris people. I've heard the Soylent System is an important support system for Solaris, but I don't know much else. Anyway, it's probably a cover for some kind of experiment . . .)

Fei adopts a fighting stance and says –

Fei: Don't tell me what to do! I'm going! Those guys won't stop me.

Elly shakes her head and says –

Elly: That's why I said wait! We don't know what's going on over there. If we just run out there brazenly, we might just fall into the same trap! The palace is on alert so we need to investigate . . .We don't even know where they were taken prisoners. We still have 2 days, I'm sure there's a way to help them. We must find it.

Fei stands and turns, walking away from her. Then he stops and puts his hands on his hips, bowing his head. With is back turned, he asks –

Fei: How do you know we have two whole days? What if they change their mind and then tomorrow . . . I mean, it is possible isn't it?

Elly crosses her arms and bows her head, saying –

Elly: Maybe . . .but there's nothing we can do, right? Citan wasn't there, which means he's probably watching the broadcast somewhere right now. First we must find him. He knows the layout of the central core of the city better than I do. So let's not do anything careless, okay?

Fei drops his hands and turns to her, asking –

Fei: Where is he? We need him!

Elly drops her arms and shakes her head, saying –

Elly: How should I know?

Fei turns his back to her and says –

Fei: Don't be a snot. You haven't thought anything out at all!

She approaches him and says –

Elly: I'm just saying, we have to be careful!

He turns to her, saying "But!" when all suddenly turn towards them and "What!" as someone else says, "Hey, what's going on?" A red guard approaches them and Fei says –

Fei: Look! We've been discovered!

Elly turns to look over her shoulder, then back at Fei as she says –

Elly: It's because you keep raising your voice!

She runs off, saying –

Elly: This way!!

And he follows after her, back down the path leading out of the gathering place. The guard, "!!" and says " . . .City alert!! . . .two suspects located! . . .Send the Security Cubes immediately!!"

Scene cuts to Elly and Fei as they run through Etrenank and make their way over to a point near the railing overlooking the water, when they are stopped by two of the security cubes. One says, " . . .you two . . .Please stop all action . . ." The other says, " . . .suspicious persons . . .sighted in Arbot Plaza . . . Investigating . . ."

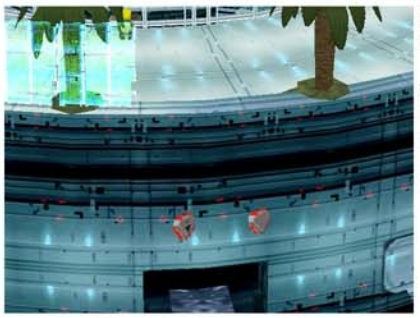
Fei turns to Elly and says –

Fei: Elly, they're here!

She turns to him and says –

Elly: If those Security Cubes catch us, we're in big trouble! Fei, this way!

She goes over to the railing and jumps over. Fei shouts, "Elly!!" and she disappears. He turns to look at the cubes as they draw closer, one says "Stop! Desist from moving!" He backs away and " . . ." then he turns to the railing, saying –



He leaps over the side, disappearing from view and the cubes, "!!" and "!!" then one turns to the other and says " . . .they . . .escaped!?" The other responds, " . . .affirmative . . ."

The first says, "Attack!!" and view pulls back as they begin spinning and go over the railing to a large opening in the side of the metal below, pausing where water streams out. One says, " . . .this way!?" and the other says, " . . .suspects, escaped . . . . . .emergency response!" They disappear into the opening and view pulls in closer.

Scene cuts to the interior where Fei and Elly stand in a white metal corridor with water running down the center and some metal debris lying about. He turns to her as she says –

Elly: Fei, are you alright?

He nods once and says –

Fei: Yeah. It was just so sudden.

He turns to look around and says –

Fei: We gotta get moving! Those weird robots are coming after us!

He turns as she crosses her arms and rests her chin in her hand. He asks –

Fei: . . .? What's wrong, Elly?

Elly: . . .So, this is the place . . .I might be able to do something. Anyway, let's try to run through here!!

Fei: Yeah!!

They make their way through the waterway and are attacked by some of the cubes. After many fights and backtracking, they find a red ladder and climb out. Scene cuts to a wide metal wall as they rise out of the opening in the ground. They can see green grass nearby and on the other side of the wall. They walk over to a gate set in the wall and Fei turns to Elly as she steps back. He asks –

Fei: Where are we?

Elly: The 1st Class citizen level. This is where the Solaris people called Gazel live. Follow me.

She begins to walk forward and Fei says –

Fei: W . . .wait.

He turns to watch her as she opens the gates and steps through. He calls after her –

Fei: The guard robot may get you again if you go in there . . .

She turns around and stops, saying –

Elly: Don't worry. This is my house.

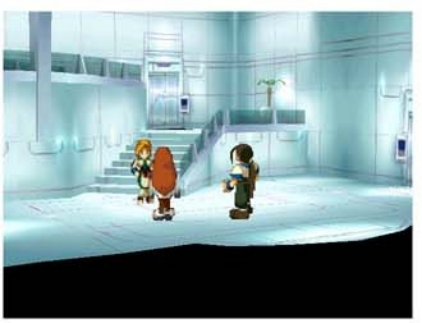
Fei: Y . . .your house? This big house is yours?

View pans up past a beautifully sculpted lawn up to a magnificent gleaming house. Then it returns to them once more and Elly –

Elly: Yep. Come on in.

He walks forward and joins her as the gates shut behind them, They make their way up to the palatial residence and enter. Scene cuts to the spacious foyer where a staircase winds up along the far wall and a woman stands near a door across from them. She turns and "!!" and calls out, "Elly!? Elly, is that you?"

The woman comes down the stairs as Elly moves forward, saying, "Mother!" and the woman stops in front of her. Now that she is closer, she is obviously a beautiful woman with blond hair and pale blue eyes. She says –



Elly's mother Medena: You . . .I'm glad . . .you're okay . . .

She turns her back for a moment and the view moves over to view them from the side. Then she says –

Medena: The military told me you were missing in action . . .

Elly shakes her head and says –

Elly: No, mother, that's not true. See, I'm alive!

Elly looks around, then asks –

Elly: Mother, where is father?

Medena turns and says –

Medena: He's still at the palace. I think he'll be back soon . . .

There is silence, and Elly bows her head –

Medena turns to Fei and asks –

Elly: I see . . .

Medena: Elly, who's this?

She looks up and says –

Elly: What? Ah . . .Um, he's from the Special Forces, the same as me. He was only recently promoted from 3rd Class citizen. It's because of him I was able to return.

She turns to Fei and says –

Elly: Right, Fei?

He turns to her then back to Medena, saying –

Fei: What? Um . . .no . . .I mean . . .

Medena: I see. That must be why he's dressed like a land dweller. But, why isn't he wearing a Special forces uniform like you, Elly?

Elly turns to her and says –

Elly: S, sorry mother. There's a report I must turn in right away, so . . . (turns to Fei) Fei, come with me.

Fei follows Elly as she walks past Medena and on up the stairs. Medena turns to look at her as she passes and Fei looks back once before following Elly once more. Elly walks along the upper balcony to her room and scene cuts to a large chamber with a glass cylinder in the center, wide windows on the left and a bed over by the far wall. There are many potted plants which give the room an airy feel and Elly turns to him and says –

Elly: This is my room . . .

She turns around to look at it and says –

Elly: Ahh, I can finally relax.

Fei looks around for a moment, then says –

Fei: This place is huge! It must be bigger than the village chief's!

Elly turns to him and says –

Elly: Heh. I'm sweaty after running, so I'm taking a shower.

Fei walks in further as she moves of to the side and asks –

Fei: You have a bathroom in your room?

Elly steps into the glass cylinder and then to him, responding –

Elly: It's pretty normal.

An apparatus descends out of the shower ceiling and Fei mutters " . . .(It's not normal . . .)"

Then Elly says –

Elly: When are you going to stop staring?

He gives a start and turns around as the sound of water comes and steam rises around her form. She turns her back as the whiteness envelops her and, barely seen through the haze, removes her clothes. Fei asks –

Fei: Hey, Elly, was that your mother?

Her form completely hidden now, Elly says –

Elly: Yes.

Fei: Oh. (pause) She sure is a pretty lady.

Elly: . . .Yes, she is.

Fei: But you don't look much like her. Do you resemble your father?

There is a long pause, then Elly says –

Elly: Haven't you noticed yet?

Fei: What do you mean?

Elly: The color of my skin, hair, and eyes are . . . different from normal Solarians . . .

Fei: I've never paid attention to it so . . .Really?

Elly: A long time ago, when I was small, I had a nanny. She was so nice to me. But she was a land dweller. And First Class citizens rarely associate with them. But the nanny lived in our house and took care of me. She lost her child when she was in the 3rd Class area . . .My dad felt sorry for her and kept her under his protection. But he never told anyone about her . . .

Fei: Why?

Elly: My father was worried about my appearance . . . He had a reason for it. She was probably my real . . .

Fei: Elly . . .

Elly: I'd better not . . .I'm sure you don't want to hear about this . . .Sorry.

Fei: That's alright . . .

View rises up towards the ceiling and fades, then cuts to Elly and Fei as they stand near the shower. She is fully dressed once more and as puffs of steam dissipate in the shower she says –

Elly: Now, it's your turn!

He steps to her, shaking his head and says –

Fei: No thanks. I don't have time for that.

She steps towards him and says –

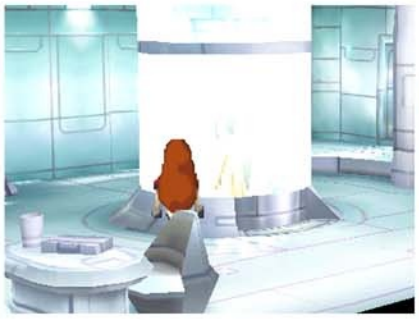
Elly: You need to relax. You don't get a chance like this very often. Please?

He steps back, the shower doors sliding open and she steps forward and he steps back again, into the shower. The doors close in front of him and he says –

Fei: Alright, if you insist!

She nods once and says –

Elly: You should've listened to me in the first place.



Fei turns and moves to the center of the shower, thinking, " . . .!!" as the water comes on and the glass fogs up. Elly moves away to the left and his clothes disappear. He says, "Wa – - a – a – a!!" and the water comes on. Elly says from over by the side –

Elly: You're fine. Just relax.
He stands there as the water streams down his form and Elly reappears from the side, looking at him as he says, his back to her –

Fei: Wow . . .feels good. There's a world of difference between this and doc's old bath tub!
Then he, "!!" and he is barely visible as he turns and gives a start, crouching down, then he turns his back once more and says –

Fei: S, stop it! Stop staring at me!

Elly: Don't worry, I'm not looking. I'm just adjusting it.
How's the temperature?

Fei: Hey, I'm fine. Go away, NOW!!

Elly: Aha, ha . . .Fei's got a cute side to him.

He thinks, " . . .??" and scene fades, then cuts back to both of them, Elly sitting at the end of her bed and Fei standing by her console as he says –

Fei: I feel refreshed . . .Now what am I gonna do . . .
There's no time to relax.
Still looking straight ahead, Elly says –

Elly: Yes, I really don't want to . . .
but there's no other choice . . .

Fei: You have any good ideas?

She gets up and turns to him, saying –

Elly: The network terminal in my father's room. He got angry with me for touching it once. There is numerous information only a handful of people have access to.

Fei: So we can find out where Bart and the others are located from that?

Elly: I . . .hope so.

They leave the room and go out on the landing to the stairs below and over to a door across from them. They enter a large room which is partially visible from the pathway by the door, a metal structure blocking the view somewhat. They move on down and around to a wide seating area where a huge bank of windows covers one wall. They speak to a Solarian woman in a red dress who –

W1: Oh! Miss Elly! You're still alive!! I'm so happy to see you. I thought you passed away . . .
Master will be so happy! Oh yes, there is a present for you from the Master!
"Received Psycho Rod!!" and she says –
W1: Please take good care of it!
They look around the spacious room, then speak to the woman before they leave. She says –
W1: It's been a while since the whole family has gotten together.

They leave and go across to another door. They enter a brightly lit eating area, a long table with chairs partitioned off in the center by a curving wall of glass and large windows shedding bright light on the room. They see Medena off to the side behind another partition as she works in a smaller kitchen area. They speak to her and she says-

Medena: Elly . . .I'm so happy . . .Let me see you . . .
Your father said you'd be back. I almost gave up hope.

Elly: . . .Mother.

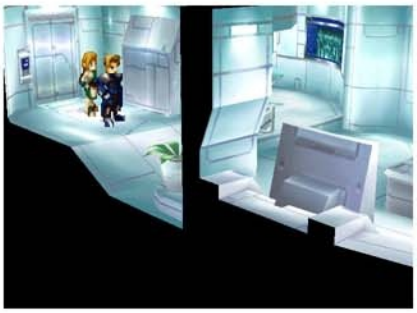
Medena: Are you staying for a while? This time you should relax.
Your father will be so happy.

Elly: Yes . . .I guess.

Medena: Let's have a nice meal. Fei, would you like to join us?
Elly never invites her friends over. I'm glad you're here.
After a moment, she says –
Medena: Well, I'm going shopping, so make yourself comfortable.

She moves around them and goes out the door. After a moment, they leave and go back up the stairs to the first landing and pause at the door to Elly's father's study. Entering, they approach the console and Elly looks down at it –

Elly: This is it. If we can break through the palace network security by accessing this . . .
She types in –
Elly: ID . . .The password would probably be something related to me.
There is a pause, then she types –
Elly: 'E L H A Y M' . . .
It reads, "> > > Access denied. Enter the correct password."
Elly: That's no good. Let's try it backwards . . . 'M Y A H L E'
It reads, "> > > Welcome to Solaris Net . . .You have 19 unread mails."



Elly: Yes! Got it! Let's see, we were here before so . . .
Wow, it connects to here!

She turns to Fei and says –

Elly: Fei, we should be able to get to where everyone is,
from a trash chute in the 3rd Class citizen level!

Fei: That means, we're going back to that first location.

Elly nods once and says –

Elly: Now we know where they are! Let's hurry!

A voice comes from the door –

"Elly, where are you going?"

They both turn and see a blond man in a dark blue and black coat standing ahead of Medena. Elly says -

Elly: Father!

This man is very handsome, but is face is stern. With hair lighter than Medena's and dark brown eyes, he is truly striking. He asks –

Elly's father Erich: What're you doing Elly . . .?
I told you before not to come in here and touch that machine.

Elly: . . .

He walks forward and turns to a console on the wall nearby. Then he says –

Erich: Is this the guard? It's me, Erich. A burglar broke in here,
yeah, come quickly.

Then he turns and walks down towards them where they stand behind the console. Elly rushes around the desk to face him and says –

Elly: Father . . .!! Fei is not a burglar!!

Erich halts before them and asks –

Erich: Then, what is he? A strange man
in my room . . .Isn't he a burglar?

Elly: There's a reason . . . !! (shakes her head)
Please! Don't shoot him! Fei just wants to save
his captured friends! They're my friends too!

Erich: No! Even if he is your friend, (pauses)
I can't overlook a land dweller who tries to
sneak into the palace!

Elly walks forward and stops, facing her father and says –

Elly: Fine. Then I'm also a traitor.
Go ahead and shoot me!

Erich: No! You're staying here! Now,
move out of the way Elly!!

Elly: No!

There is silence as she stares him down and he, " . . . . . " then he says –

Erich: You know how traitors're punished even if they're 1st Class
citizens! You'll be safe if we kill the intruders who know about us.
I'm worried about you're safety . . .

There is a moment of silence, then Elly turns her back and says –

Elly: You're lying! You just hate being in any position that endangers
you. Isn't that why you didn't want me to join Jugend? You just didn't
want everyone to see your own daughter!

She turns to face him –

Elly: Because I'm half a land dweller . . .!

View pans over to the right as Medena, "!!" and she flees out of the room as Erich strikes Elly with a resounding slap. She sinks to the floor, holding her cheek and he says –

Erich: I can't believe you still . . .? How dare you
say that in front of your mother . . .!

Elly looks up at him from the floor and says –

Elly: Because . . .!

Fei walks forward and stands in before Erich, just behind Elly and looks from one to the other . He says –

Fei: Stop it!! I don't want to see a father and a daughter fight
because of me. I won't cause you anymore trouble. I came of
my own will. I'm an intruder. If I just get out of here it'll be fine.

Elly rises and turns to look at him –

Elly: Fei!?

He turns to her and says –

Fei: Elly, you shouldn't say that in front of your mother. I don't know the truth, but she is your mother, not a stranger. Isn't that right?

She bows her head and, " . . .". He turns to Erich and says –

Fei: Now, get out of the way. I hafta hurry to save my friends. But if you intend to shoot me, I'll put up a big fight.

Erich turns and walks over to one of the windows and Elly turns to look after him. The sound of breaking glass is heard and Elly says-

Elly: ? Father . . .?

Erich: The intruder has escaped. Now get outta here. It'll be a while until the guards get here.

Fei thinks, " . . ." and Erich turns to them and says –

Erich: You may be an intruder, but the fact is, you protected my daughter. If I shoot you, I'll lose her.

Elly: Father . . .

She starts towards him, then stops and says –

Elly: Let me go with Fei . . .!

He turns to her and says –

Erich: No. I can't let you go.

She shakes her head and says –

Elly: But . . .!

View pans over to the left as Fei walks over near the path to the door, then stops and turns to her. He says –

Fei: That's alright. This is a land dweller problem now. We won't trouble you any further. I'll go by myself.

She turns to him and says –

Elly: Fei!!

He walks towards the doorway, then stops once more and turns to her, saying –

Fei: Elly, this time leave the military. Thanks for everything.

He turns and runs off through the door and Elly says –

Elly: Fei . . .

Scene fades and cuts to the busy street below the plaza in the 2nd Class citizen area as Fei runs along the white metal thoroughfare, cars passing by him. He runs beneath the staircase leading up to the shops and climbs up to the upper level. He tries to speak to some of the people, but without Elly as translator, he only get, "!%#?&+!" He goes over to the entrance leading to the building where he can get back down to the 3rd Class section. He enters and sees the guard over by the exit and a group of people waiting by a table at the center. He approaches the doors leading back to the tower, when suddenly the guard shouts out –

G1: Hey, you!! Aren't you the one from the dedication . . .?

Fei thinks, " . . ." and the guard says –

G1: You're under arrest! Get in that door!!

He walks over to the door and enters. Scene cuts to one facing Fei as the guard stands before him, the scanning device just up ahead. Fei crouches down in fighting stance and says –

Fei: What're you going to do to me . . .?

G1: As I suspected. You know nothing . . .!

Fei stands up as the guard removes his clothes – It's Citan!! Fei exclaims –

Fei: Doc!! Citan, why are you here!?

Citan: I saw Bart's image on the Birdvision in the dedication.

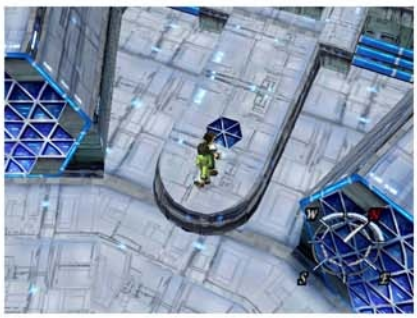
Fei: You saw that too, doc?

Citan: Yes. But I did not see either of you. Soon after, I heard there was an intruder at the 2nd floor of the Arebato Grounds. I suspected it was probably you so I waited here. After that, I did not hear anything about the capture of any intruders.

Fei: How did you know I was going to be here?

Citan turns and pushes his glasses up his nose, saying –

Citan: The best possible way to sneak into the Palace is through the dust chute. And to get back to the 3rd floor, one must pass through this observation tower. I have always been thinking . . .Do you think you could possibly be a little more subtle? When infiltrating enemy ground, the most basic thing to do is to be stealthy. With the amount of activity you have stirred up, you could even wake up the dead.



There is a moment of silence, then Fei nods once slightly and says –

Fei: Well, I was actually trying to be subtle . . .

Then Citan turns to him and asks –

Citan: By the way, what happened to Elly? Was she not with you?

Fei turns around and says –

Fei: Elly . . .She went back home. She really shouldn't have any relation with us land dwellers. She already has such wonderful parents . . .

Citan ponders, foot tapping and says –

Citan: I see . . .Yes. It may have been better for her that way. Let us head for the dust chute then.

Fei turns back and nods once, saying "Yeah!" and Citan says –

Citan: Now Fei, stay very close to me. That way it does not pick up on your presence.

Citan walks over the detection device with Fei, then "??" Fei walks away from Citan, faces him and puts his hands on his hips, bowing his head. He asks –

Fei: Doc, hold on. How can you get past here? According to Elly, only 1st Class citizens and military personnel can pass through . . .?

Citan turns to the side and puts his hand up to his chin, blinking for a moment, then says –

Citan: Uh!? Well . . .that is . . .P, probably they have not deleted my ID from the days I was in the military and it is still stored in the data bank.

He turns to look back at one of the detectors and says –

Citan: My, how the Solaris monitors are sloppy . . .Hahaha . . .

Fei turns to look at Citan's turned back and –

Fei: . . .??

Then Citan joins him and they go through the doors. Scene cuts to the tower as they descend, the 3rd Class citizen level visible outside as they stand in the tube, seen through the windows. Scene cuts to the next detection room and Citan takes Fei across the machine and through the doors on the other side, back into the maze of white metal corridors and blue and gray tiled floors. They work their way back to the large room where the drones had been and this time find it empty. They go back to the door leading to the first section of corridors and reach the exit at last. They go back out in the streets and down to the where the chute is located. This time there is no guard and they drop down below into the dark interior. They find themselves in a darkened area, dirt covering the floor and a large round metal device in front of them. They see a red light near the top and a green over to the side on the right and go over to investigate. Citan says –

Citan: We can probably get in with this switch . . .

Citan stands before the green light and runs his hand in a sweeping motion over it. A message comes on, "Card needed to activate the Vac-Sys . . .Please insert card."

Citan turns to Fei, pondering and says –

Citan: . . . . . .No go. What shall we do . . .?

There is a pause, then Fei asks –

Fei: What shall we do?? Didn't you have a plan?

Citan drops his arms and shakes his head, saying –

Citan: No, I am afraid not . . .I assumed we would just figure something out.

Fei looks down as Citan ponders once more, thinking " . . ." then a voice comes to them, "Wait!!" and both turn as Elly runs up to them. Citan says –

Citan: Why Elly, it is you!

Fei: Elly!? What're you doing here?

Both men listen as she begins -

Elly: Well . . .after that, when I was crying, my mother came to me and said . . . 'go with them' . . .

Scene cuts to Elly who sits on her bed in her room with her back to the door. Medena approaches and says, "Elly . . ." and Elly thinks, " . . ." Medena stops behind her and says –

Medena: Elly, I think you should live your life the way you wish. If your loved ones are in a crisis, you can't desert them . . .

Elly stands up on her bed, still facing the wall and says –

Elly: Mother . . .I'm sorry, for what I said earlier . . .

Medena: . . .I know. But there's no doubt that you're my child . . . No matter what happens, you're my sweetheart . . .

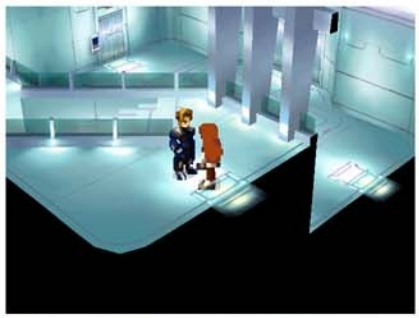
Elly turns and comes off the bed, standing before Medena and she says –

Elly: Mom . . .

Medena: Now . . .You'd better hurry . . .

Elly nods once and says –

Elly: Yes . . .Take care mom . . .



Elly goes over to the door and exits. Outside, her father stands waiting for her and she gives a start. He says –

Erich: Elly . . .Take this . . .

"Received Army Cardkey"

Elly: . . .Father?

Erich: To be human is to be able to pick your own path in life . . .

Elly: . . .Father.

He turns to look over the railing at the front door and says –

Erich: It looks like the military police are here . . .

He starts down the stairs, Elly follows and view swings around as the front door opens, admitting the guards. Erich and Elly descend to stand before them, one in red, the others in dark brown. Erich says –

Erich: The Imperial Guard? Why are you here instead of the military police . . .?

The one in red walks towards Elly who steps back, saying, "What?" and view swings around to face her as Erich says –

Erich: What are you doing? The intruder fled.
My daughter has nothing to do with this!

The red guard turns to him and says –

IG1: I can't, Lord Erich. Turn your daughter over to us, Lord Krelian's orders.

Erich: Lord Krelian? What does he want with my daughter . . .(pause)
What? You mean . . .Gazel's . . .!

IG1: You do not need to know.

He turns to the other guards and says -

IG1: Take her!

As the four guards approach, Erich says -

Erich: Leave my daughter alone! Or else!

Elly turns to him and exclaims -

Elly: Father!?

The red guard turns to Erich and says -

IG1: W, what!? Lord Erich! Have you lost your mind?

Erich: I'm perfectly fine! Leave her alone!

IG1: Lord Krelian's orders are the Emperor's orders. You realize what'll happen to your rank if you disobey this order? You'll be demoted to 3rd Class citizen!

Erich: I know. But even if it's Lord Krelian's order I will not allow my daughter to be Gazel's test subject. Elly, go! I'll take care of this!

She shakes her head, saying -

Elly: But . . .

Erich: Don't worry about me. Go help Fei.

Elly: Father . . .

She runs around the guards to the door and leaves. Scene cuts to the lawn outside as she runs along the drive and heads out the gates.

Scene fades and returns to the dust chute where she stands with her back to Fei and Citan and bows her head in her hand. She says -

Elly: Father, mother . . .

Fei walks up to her and puts his hand on her shoulder, saying -

Fei: Elly . . .

Citan crosses his arms and taps his foot. He says -

Citan: . . .the 'Ministry' . . . . . .

Elly turns and asks -

Elly: 'Ministry'!? Father said that too!! What is the 'Ministry?'

Fei turns as Citan pushes his glasses up his nose, blinking and says -

Citan: . . .You will find out.

Fei turns back to Elly and bends forward, placing his hand on her arm and looking up into her face as he says -

Fei: Let's go back! We gotta save him!

Elly shakes her head and says -

Elly: We can't ! If you go now, they'll catch you too. My parents will be fine. Their military record should protect them. . . .
If necessary I'll turn myself in after everyone else is rescued and that will settle it.

Fei stands up and says -

Fei: But . . .

Elly: Let's go. Something might happen to them while we're just talking here.

Citan turns to Fei and nods once, saying -

Citan: I am worried for Elly's family, but . . .Her father risked his life to get us this card. We must go on!

They both turn to Citan and nod, saying "Yeah!" Citan looks up and says -

Citan: But in this filthy place? Spare me. What I would not give for my old bath-tub now! Do you not agree, Fei?

Fei turns to Elly and they look at one another, then burst out laughing. Citan thinks, "?" and then Fei says -

Fei: OK, let's go!

They go over to the green switch and Citan swipes the card. They are suddenly sucked into the hole nearby with a great deal of other dust and debris with a loud roar. Scene cuts to a large metallic room with dust and debris lying in a pit below a metal device and blue strips of light line the walls, providing illumination. Fei, Citan and Elly are seen being hurled through the opening on the left and both Fei and Elly crash into the side of the pit and fall down. They rise slowly and stand with Citan in the center of the pit as Fei says -

Fei: It hurts, dammit.

They make their way up the steps at the side of the pit, to the door above. They go through and find themselves in a long narrow chamber leading upwards, a red ladder before them. They are attacked by more cubes as they make their way up. At the top, they go through a door leading into a large round chamber filled with dirt and debris, and it is filled with the whirring sound of the huge fan set in the center of the floor. Seeing no other way out, they find a piece of twisted metal and push it into the fan in order to jam the works. It falls in with a loud clang and the fan grinds to a halt. In the sudden silence, they take a careful look around and are able to see a ladder below the blades, leading to a door in the metal side. They climb down carefully, not wanting to fall into the pit beneath them and go through, They go through a network of gray metal corridors and make their way through, fighting more enemies. They find another door at the end and go through entering a large storage area full of boxes. They go down to investigate and see that some of the boxes appear to be filled with canned food of some kind. As the go towards the two metal double doors at the far end, they move over to one of the stacks of cans and Fei says -

Fei: Wow! There's some food here.

Elly turns to him and Citan stands nearby as he puts his hands on his hips, looking down at the food and says -

Fei: Let's have a bite here.

He turns to looks at Elly and she nods once -

Elly: You're right . . .We don't know what'll happen, so we shouldn't ask too much.

Fei turns to Citan and nods once, asking -

Fei: What about you, doc?

Citan shakes his head and says -

Citan: No, I am fine thank you.

Fei: Are you sure? Then, excuse us . . .

He turns around to the cans and both he and Elly nod once, saying "Let's eat."

They crouch down by the cans as Citan stands nearby and chow down. After they are done, they stand and Fei shakes his head, saying -

Fei: Whew, I'm full. (nods once) Well then, let's go!

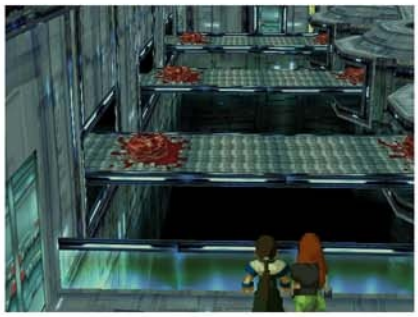
They join Fei and go through the two double doors, entering a large room filled with the sound of working machinery and partially lit by greenish lights along the floor. They stand on the ledge below what appears to be a conveyor belt and other odd machinery and climb up the ladder nearby in order to get a better look. They pause on the pathway above the conveyor belts which have cans lined up in neat rows as they go past. Fei looks down and says -

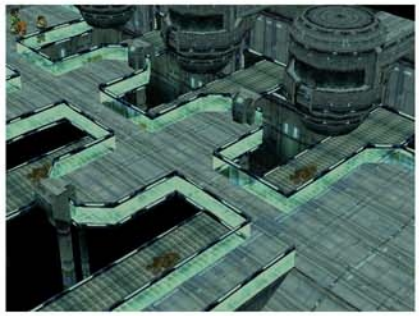
Fei: Is this . . .what we ate earlier . . .?

Elly comes over to the side and looks down, then says -

Elly: I see . . .The medicine we normally use is made here . . .

They join Fei and go down the path, past two extensions and over to the far wall where a door is visible. They enter and find themselves in a small, brightly lit metal chamber filled with computers. They go down into the recessed area before some consoles and tap in a key. The view pulls in closer as a holographic image of 5 orange squares appears above them with the message: "Input code" and "quit" There, they try several codes in the computer, trying to make the squares match the 1's and 0's. At last, after several tries, they finally get the message, "Foreign object scanner: OFF" and they go back outside and see that the belts are still moving. Cautiously, they step out onto one and make their way through the machinery to the next ledge. They walk over to the glass railing and look out at the conveyor belts where they emerge from the wall on the left. Great globs of some reddish substance comes out of the openings and travels to the apparatuses suspended above the belts at certain points where it is processed and canned.





Elly says slowly -

Elly: I wonder . . .what kind of meat this is . . .?

Fei turns to the side and shakes his head, saying -

Fei: Yeah . . .I don't want to see where they make it.

Citan stands behind them and looks off to the side, silently. Then Fei goes towards the two double doors nearby and Citan calls out -

Citan: Wait, Fei.

Both Fei and Elly turn to Citan as he shakes his head, then says -

Citan: You ate that food. (pauses) Consider that fact when you open that door.

Elly: What about that canned food?

Fei: What is it . . .? (pause) What's supposed to be . . . there, exactly?

Citan bows his head, shaking it, then turns it to the side as he says -

Citan: See for yourselves.

They enter the two metal doors and find themselves in another large chamber, filled with more machines which work steadily. Fei and Elly go over to a railing to look down at one of the conveyor belts while Citan remains behind. Fei stops and says -

Fei: Th . . .this . . .can't be . . .

Elly shakes her head, looking out and says -

Elly: No . . .You must be kidding . . .

Flash to a red lit scene of something as it falls from a machine with a dull crunch to the belt, a spray of blood flying in all directions. Switch to a scene in red of what are undoubtedly human bodies, decomposed and lying in heaps on the belts as more and more of them land with a sickening crunch. Flash to a view from above, still red, of the bodies as they disappear through the holes in the walls into the room they had just left. View switches back to one in normal lighting, pans overhead as the corpses are seen landing onto the moving belts in a spray of blood, the machines working steadily. Fei and Elly, Citan behind them are seen in the lower left as they look out at the room and view cuts in closer as Elly turns to the side and -

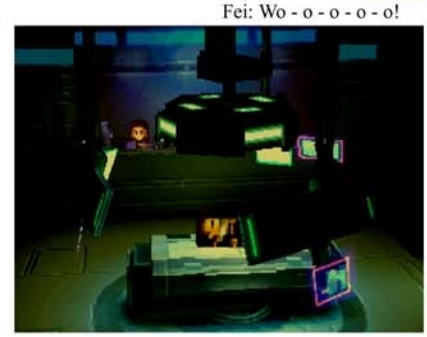
Elly: . . .Uhh.

She sinks to her knees and Fei turns around, hunching over and holding out his hands as he says -

Fei: What . . .is this . . . What . . .the hell is this . . .!!

The view swirls around him, white light consuming all as he -

Fei: Wo - o - o - o - o!



A flash of an image - a woman? Then again, flashes to a little boy on a table beneath some instruments as she looks on through a glass window, flashes white again, then returns to Fei where he sits slumped to the floor, near Elly where she crouches hunched over. Citan shakes his head and then turns to look off to the right, his head bowed as he says -

Citan: Soylent System. The organism experiment lab and its disposal facility in Solaris. And the production facility for food and medicine to maintain the Limiter seal. Aquvy's Wels Reapers were also made here.

There is a silence, then Citan looks up, crossing his arms and tapping his foot as he says -

Citan: Elly, do you remember Dominia's words during our infiltration of Shevat? Here is the answer. People of her native country served as one of the origins for Wels . . .the M plan. They were used that way because of their peculiar abilities. She is the last survivor. Elly, your father, Erich used to be the superintendent of this facility. He was involved in the research with Maria's father.

Elly stands up and turns to him, saying -

Elly: Don't be ridiculous! My father'd never take part in such a thing!

Citan shakes his head and says -

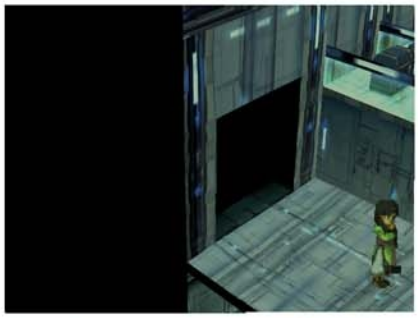
Citan: Naturally, Erich always had pangs of guilt. So he kept as many land dwellers as possible under his protection as 3rd Class citizens. Then he resigned. That's why he is on the administrative staff of the Special Forces now.

Elly crosses her arms over her chest and leans forward, saying -

Elly: My father . . .did that . . .No, it can't be true . . .

Citan speaks to Fei who is still sitting on the floor, staring off into space.

Citan: Now, get up, Fei. Get up and look it over . . .



Fei stands and turns, looking out at the conveyor belts once more and he shakes his head, saying -

Fei: Could . . .this be . . .true . . .? Doc . . .

Citan crosses his arms and taps his foot, saying -

Citan: . . .This is reality.

Then he drops his arms and nods once -

Citan: Let's go.

They join Fei and make their way across the room to the other side where another set of double doors is located. Fei and Elly go through and Citan remains behind for just a moment. He turns around and ponders, his foot tapping and -

Citan: To end a person's life, (pause) and then consume their flesh.
Is that, (pause) permissible . . .?

Then he looks up, dropping his arms and nods once. He turns and follows the others.

They are on a ledge near the entrance to the first room and they see a door to their left. They enter and find themselves in a gray metal lift room, much like the ones at both the Ethos HQ and the Ethos dig site. They step on the lift and press the switch. It rises up the ramp with a low hum and after a while, they reach the top. They go through the door and begin to make their way throughthe maze like corridors, fighting battles against creatures and Solaris soldiers. It becomes apparent that this is in fact a vast laboratory facility, with several rooms full of creatures, which are undergoing various experiments. One of the metal corridors leads to a door to the right and they go through. They enter into a vast darkened chamber, a catwalk suspended above the barely seen outlines of something large beneath them. Their footsteps echo hollowly as they make their way down to the machine set at the center of the path up ahead. Fei touches it and lights come on around them, revealing the large shape below them beneath the water.

It appears to be a large Gear, its hands folded over its breast. View pulls back so that nearly all of it is visible as Fei, Citan and Elly stand on the catwalk above the water and, to the right, Elly says -

Elly: What . . .is this thing . . .?

Fei: A . . .Gear!?

Elly shakes her head, then says -

Elly: No . . .Look! The surface of the armor isn't segmented . . .
It's the same as Bart's Gear Andvari and the Gear we saw in Shevat . . .It's an Omnigear!

Fei shakes his head and says -

Fei: But, this thing is huge!

Elly nods once and says -

Elly: Yes. It's got to be around 3 times as powerful as our Gears.

Both Elly and Fei turn to face Citan who turns to them also, pushing his glasses up his nose as he says -

Citan: So . . .This is Solaris' Omnigear.

They continue on to the left and go up the ramp to the next door. They go through and find themselves in a short black metal corridor, and go to a pair of double doors on the right. They enter a large room with metal cages on the right and a stack of boxes near some glass tubes on the left. The sound of the penned creatures fills the room with a raucous chirping and squeaking. They are surprised when a green skinned humanoid calls out to them from one of the cages. He says, "Yo! Long time." They draw close and he continues, "It's me. The one who owned that dog in Kislev . . . . .I may look like this, but the dog's doing fine . . . . .Please, don't think about letting me out . . . . .even though I'm still conscious . . .eventually . . .I'll . . .

Something in the man's eyes causes them to take his advice. Moving on, they find more chambers filled with cages of many different kinds of creatures, some nearly human, others definitely not. They go on down the metal corridor see another door to their right. They enter and go across to the far end where a console sits against the curved wall and a wide bank of screens covers their surface. Fei presses a few buttons experimentally and the left hand quadrant of the display lights up and reads, "Security system lock OFF" This unlocks the elevator system, giving them access to new portions of the lab.
They approach it and it asks, "Down?" They go down and see that they are back in one of the rooms with the cages, they go back up and continue their explorations, going across to the left hand corridor and finding that this also leads to an elevator. They go down to the next section and find a series of rooms with more evidence of extensive eperiments in progress.

At last, they find themselves in a short dark gray metal hallway with a wide black metal door at the end. It rises up at their approach and they move forward to where the corridor branches to the right and left. They take the left hand path and follow it where it curves to the right a couple of times and they reach another black metal door. When they try to open it, they see "There is a console for inputting the password." and it asks, [Input] or [Don't]. They decide to try it and see what happens. They are instructed to "activate the signal with the various control buttons. Press to [] to finish. Press 0 to exit. Please enter signal now." Experimentally, they try a few buttons and hear several tones, then they input a code and receive a buzzing alarm and the message, "Incorrect password. Please input the correct signal." They decide to quit and Fei puts his hands on his hips and asks -

Fei: What is this?

He turns to Citan and Elly, shaking his head and says -

Fei: I have no idea.

Citan ponders, foot tapping and says -

Citan: Hmm . . .There must be a password in one of the rooms.

They go back down the hall and it branches to the left twice, and they follow it down until they see a path off to the right. They go down this hallway and go through the door, finding themselves in a large rectangular chamber with three square pits in the floor, covered by black metal boxes and consoles nearby. They can barely make out the shape of something in each one and cautiously use one of the consoles. The metal box to the far left rises from the pit with a low hum, revealing something encased in an aqua colored square box of light. They peer closer and it appears to be something indeterminate, about the size of a man with a silver ring positioned over what might be its head. They raise the other two boxes and see what appears to be the different life stages of some kind of creature . . .

They notice another console behind them and go towards it. Fei presses a few buttons and they hear a series of tones in a certain order. When they are finished, Fei turns to Citan and asks -

Fei: What's that sound?

Citan ponders, foot tapping, and says -

Citan: That is . . .

He drops his arms and turns to face the wall behind them, blinking as he brings his hand up across his face. The he gives a "!" and then briefly looks over towards Fei's direction, then back at the wall as he blinks and pushes his glasses up his nose, saying -

Citan: It is probably an audio signal password.

He turns back to Fei and they make their way out of the chamber and back down the short hallway to the original corridor continuing on until they reach another of the black metal doors at the end. The go through and find themselves in a smaller square shaped room with a holographic projector in the middle and some sort of image floating above it. As they look closer, it appears to be a silver disk of some kind, only slightly similar to Ft. Jasper with a flat top and grooves running down its sides to a point beneath. It is revealed in individual sections and they can barley make out multiple layers within. The entire thing slowly rotates, presenting them a complete view of the enigmatic object. Above it hovers a smaller shape, also silvery metal but slightly darker and possessing 3 equal sections which give it a star shape.

They leave the room and go back down the corridor to try their code in the door on the other side. They try the code and hear a series of overlapping tones, then receive the message, "Audio signal confirmed. Deactivating door lock." The metal section rises and they go through, seeing a path leading off to the right straight ahead. They continue on through even more of the maze-like corridors, going down one and entering a door near the end They find themselves in a green metal chamber with a round device set in the center. Fei goes towards it and -

Fei: What is this place?

Elly looks over at the device and sees, ringed around its perimeter -

Elly: H, holograms of us . . .!?

Fei shakes his head and says -

Fei: Why are there holograms of us in a Solaris place?

They look around the machine and see that all the party members are lined up, encircling the center. They start with Fei's hologram and a larger image appears in the center and they read -

"[] Fei
Lambs Number 001589750
Fei Fong Wong
Ether Response . . .Infinite
Anima Alignment . . .Infinite
Comments
Contact.
Immediate disposal desired.

[] Elly
Minister Number 6920188 - 2
Elhaym Van Houten
Ether Response . . .Infinite
Anima Alignment . . .Infinite
Coments
Possible Antitype.
Approved for retrieval and necessary analysis granted.

[] Citan
Lambs Number 584921547
Hyuga Ricdeau
Ether Response . . .240
Anima Alignment . . .98
Comments
None.

[] Bart
Lambs Number 221589542
Bartholomew Fatima
Ether Response . . .210
Anima Alignment . . .90
Comments
Upon 'Dan' Animus' retrieval, schedule for Animus adjustment.

[] Billy
Minister Number 321658 - 11
Billy Black
Ether Response . . .290
Anima Alignment . . .92
Comments
Schedule for Animus adjustment.

[] Emeralda
Codename Emeralda
Ether Response . . .N/A
Anima Alignment . . .None
Comments
Nanomachine Colony.
Data and analysis complete.
Annul and dispose.

[] Rico
Test Mixture Number 000 - 215914
Ricardo Banderas
Ether Response . . .160
Anima Alignment . . .85
Comments
Created by the 'Ethos' as an experimental mixture. Used by the Kislev Battling Assoc. to measure battle potential. The data has been transferred. Schedule for Animus adjustment.

[] J'ora
Primitive Animal
Ether Response . . .N/A
Anima Alignment . . .N/A
Comments
Unusable.
Annul and dispose.

[] Maria
Lambs Number 54109854
Maria Balthasar
Ether Response . . .170
Anima Alignment . . .74
Comments
Unusable.

They come back around to Fei and pause, staring at the images and searching for answers . . .At last, they leave and make their way back to the original hallway and continue on. They reach a large metal door at the end and stand before it. Fei slightly ahead of Elly and Citan. He shakes his head and says -

Fei: Huh? This one won't open either.

Citan walks forward and turns to the wall, running his hand over a device. The door opens and he turns to Fei and nods once, saying -

Citan: This way.

Citan strides forward and Fei follows as Elly hangs back behind and says -

Elly: (Why . . .is the deactivation code for the door lock known?)

She follows and, up ahead, Citan pauses without turning as Fei calls out from behind -

Fei: Doc, wait.

View switches to one facing them, Citan just ahead of Fei and Elly as Fei asks -

Fei: What's this facility for?

Citan turns and crosses his arms, his foot tapping as he says -

Citan: This place was not meant to be seen since the origin of time. This facility centers around the Emperor and the Ministry's longevity experiments.

Fei: The origin of time?

Citan drops his arms and nods once, saying -

Citan: Yes . . .10,000 years ago. Beings called humans were born here. The first were the Emperor and the Ministry's elders.

Citan crosses his arms, foot tapping and Elly shakes her head, asking -

Elly: How could a human . . .live 10,000 years . . .?

Citan: Now only the Emperor is left. His destiny is to never die. However, the Ministry is different. Once, during the Diabolos Invasion . . . (pause) the Ministry elders died losing their bodies. Now, the Solaris governing Ministry exists as data in memory banks. Each of their personalities are bits of data.

Fei: It's the data on the memory bank?

Citan: Having neither flesh nor souls they are just binary numbers. They both exist and do not exist at the same time . . .

Citan drops his arms and turns away, the view moves around to the other side as he continues -

Citan: After the Fall, wanting to resurrect their bodies, and create a worthy vessel, they transferred a research facility that was once the Soylent System on the land to Etrenank. Eventually the facility was no longer only for the Emperor's life and the Ministry's resurrection, but it began producing food and drugs with additives that controlled the public. The memory cube Fei and them were using was meant for obtaining living data. Of course, the 'Ethos' also sent various data to help.

Fei starts forward, then stops, saying -

Fei: That means we were living for those elderly people of Gazel?

Citan turns and nods once, saying -

Citan: Yes.

Elly crosses her arms and bows her head. She says -

Elly: They're transferring and taking living data via memory cubes to the Ministry so they can use them to resurrect their bodies!?

Citan turns to the side and blinks, pushing his glasses up his nose and he says -

Citan: Yes.

Fei: You mean those mutants getting disassemblec at that factory were too?

Still looking off to the side, Citan says -

Citan: Basically, they wish to reuse the useless dregs.

Citan turns to them and Fei shakes his head, bowing it and says -

Fei: That's horrid . . .(pause) How could they . . .

Elly walks past Fei to face Citan and says -

Elly: Hold on, Fei! Something's not right!

Elly: Citan, how would you know that? Not even the government or the army know such things!

Fei stands between the two, off to the side and he looks from one to the other and says -

Fei: What?

Elly crosses her arms and bows her head, saying -

Elly: Come to think of it, it seems like we took the long way here on purpose. There must've been a faster way to Bart and them. Also, the route to get to this block can't be downloaded on the map. So how did we know what streets we were on?

She looks up at Citan and Fei, who is looking at her says -

Fei: Doc, didn't you also find out . . .

Elly turns to him and says -

Elly: That's impossible. First of all, that partition we took to get into this block. That panel was displayed to be a P4 facility. Even a high ranking officer of Solaris can't get in here. You think they'd leave a facility like that unlocked and open?

Elly turns to Citan and asks -

Elly: And you could open it? Who exactly are you?

Still looking at Elly, Fei shakes his head and says -

Fei: Hey wait a minute. It could've been luck.

She shakes her head, still looking at Citan and says -

Elly: Something's wrong! (pauses) You were able to get into Solaris under martial law, sneak into the palace, get through a P4 level door, and even learn the purpose of the P4 facility . . .(pause) How is that possible?

She bows her head and says -

Elly: Even father. I'm sure it was possible you were in Solaris then.

She looks up at him once more and says -

Elly: Even Jessie, who was also in Solaris then, didn't know the motive behind the M Project. So Citan, why do you know? You know even more details than Maria . . .something's not right . . .I know it.

Fei puts his hands on his hips, bowing his head as he -

Fei: Elly, uh, uhmm . . .

View swings around to face them from behind as she looks at Fei and says -

Elly: I'm not done!

She turns to Citan once more and says -

Elly: I should've noticed sooner. Citan . . .Who are you?

Fei turns to Citan who blinks, pushing his glasses up his nose.

Then the lights suddenly vanish, Elly and Citan disappearing. Fei looks up and says -

Fei: Wh, what . . .!

He turns to where Elly had been and looks around in all directions, calling -

Fei: Hey, you okay? Elly. Elly?

He starts forward -

Fei: Elly!

He runs off to the other side -

Fei: Doc . . .Citan!

He turns around and -

Fei: Damn! Got us!

He turns around once more, calling -

Fei: Elly! Citan! Where are you!

He is suddenly aware that the lights at the base of the walls are glowing dimly, allowing him to see where the hallway stretches behind and ahead. He goes forward and sees a path to the left. He goes down to the door and goes through, entering a large square chamber covered in plates of glass. They appear to be darkened screens and there is a large apparatus up near the ceiling. He turns around just as the door, also covered in screens, slides shut behind him and he turns around in the darkened chamber, making his way towards the center. He pauses and says -

Fei: Elly . . .

He walks forward and calls out -

Fei: Doc . . .You there?

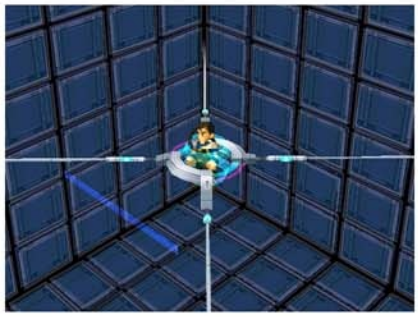
The room suddenly brightens with a low hum and he looks up -

Fei: Uh, wha, what . . .

The screens above, below and to the sides all light up with a multitude of colors in neat stripes. He looks around and then up once more, saying -

Fei: Th, this . . .

A sudden series of flashes as the view begins to rotate, faster and faster and Fei puts his hands up to his head - Fei: Uhhaaaahh



Scene fades and returns to where Fei is contained in the device above the screens which are darkened once more. He is restrained in an energy field of some kind and he -

Fei: Uhh . . .

Then he shakes his head and looks down, saying -

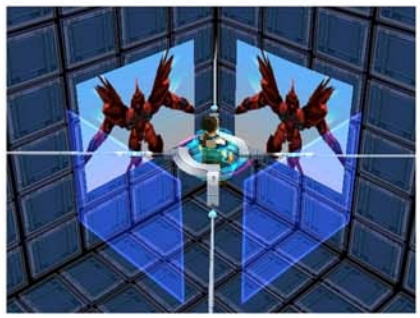
Fei: Huh!? This is . . .

Fei: Guh . . .gr . . . Can't . . .get it.

Suddenly, four holographic planes appear around him, boxing him in and, one by one, they are filled with images. The first is of Weltall amid the flames of Lahan village.

View rotates slowly and Fei says -

Fei: Uh . . .



Then the pictures switch to one of the red Gear, set against the backdrop of the blue sky.

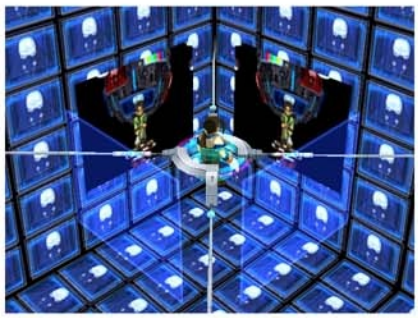
Fei: This is . . .

The images switch back and forth between Weltall and the red Gear and Fei says -

Fei: What is this!? Why are you showing me this!? Who!? Who did this!? Elly! Doc! Where are you!? Where . . .

The screens all around him are suddenly lit up with a single image, a face. One of the elders of the Gazel Ministry, his blue head repeated countless times. Fei hears -

"You brought about this spectacle. That voice is the one which haunts you . . . Cursed, untouchable one . . .Oh god's beloved child, those who prevent our prayers . . . Get . . . Destroy . . . Burn with god's fire . . ."



A single image replaces those of the two Gears on the holographic planes surrounding Fei. Here, he sees a darkened chamber with a large sphere suspended in blackness, colored screens covering its surface and smaller orbs which rotate around it. In the small circle of light below it, he sees -

Fei: Wha . . .?

He looks back and forth as the image is magnified, the person in green -

Fei: Doc!? Th, these guys? What is this!?

To the left, Fei sees the image of Citan on the pedestal below the sphere replaced by one of a young man on one of the tables, laid out beneath a bright light, his blond hair -

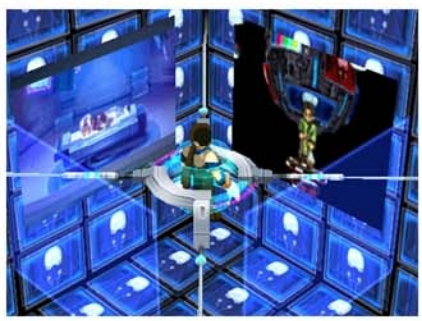
Fei: Bart!?

Then it switches to one of a young man from above, also laid out on a table.

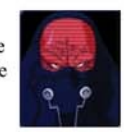
Fei: Billy!

Fei looks at the image of Citan before him and -

Fei: Doc!! What's going on!? What are you all . . .? Doc! Answer me!



One of the Solaris Guardian Angels is here, Hyuga Ricdeau.



This man is Cain . . .Receiving the orders from the one known as Emperor. You've entered his realm, and have been under his continued supervision . . .

Fei: Solaris Guardian Angel? Monitoring me?

Oh yes. We've guided Solaris and even selected the 'Animus' which have been drawn to you. And guided you here to Solaris.

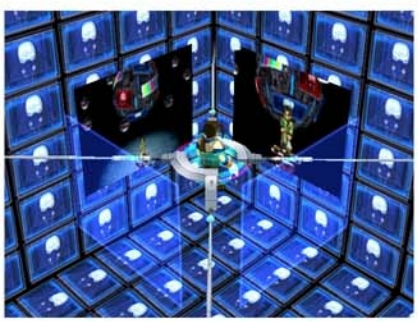
The 'Animus' is needed for our resurrection . . .
These are our bodies . . .This is what we possess.

Yes, this is the only reason we exist . . .

Fei: The bodies of Bart and the others belong to you? Is that true!? Doc! What they are saying?

Why so apprehensive? Is it that you were sold out by one you trusted?

Fei: I'm not talking to you guys! (pauses) Doc, answer me!



The image of Billy on the left is replaced by that of Citan from a distance as he says -

Citan: 3 years . . .

Fei thinks, "?"

Citan: For three years I have been by your side. I had to determine whether you were going to be our enemy or not . . .

Fei: . . .Revenge?

Yes, the enemy. Your existence is a threat to us . . .

It was necessary to keep an eye on you.

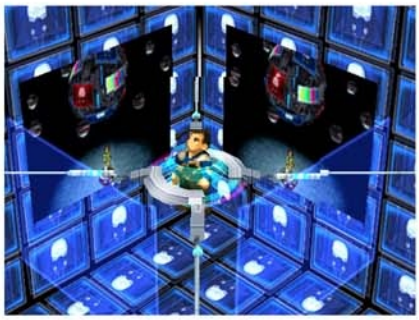
The one who ordered you to be watched was Cain . . .

We were planning on the maturation of the 'Animus', and your termination. We also sent Hyuga to you.

However, every attempt to terminate you has failed . . .
Because of that good for nothing trash . . .

Even so, we now possess the 'Animus'.
Hyuga has fulfilled his duties well.

View rotates around Fei as he bows his head and the image of Citan beneath the sphere surrounds him.



Fei: Is . . .(pause) that it . . .?

View halts facing Fei against the backdrop of 2 of the screens showing Citan at a distance and -

Fei: You were in with these guys . . .That's why you, everyone . . .
He looks upwards -

Fei: Why! You've had your way all this time with us land dwellers!
You already own the world! What more do you want?

You must know by now that we plan to resurrect god.

God will awaken from his long slumber after man has populated the land . . . Then, Mahanon too will awaken . . .

Fei: Aerial Paradise Mahanon? The place fell to earth . . .

Paradise . . .Hah hah hah. That may be a proper description . . .
Our ark . . .In the center block lord 'Mahanon' is sealed in. That is the source of god's wisdom . . .A paradise of knowledge . . .

Using that knowledge, we will resurrect the awakened god and build our 'ark' to take us both into the great universe.

The construction of our ark . . .To reign over god's forces in this great universe . . . The creation of the angel 'Malakh'. The M Project was for that very purpose . . .

Fei: What do you mean!?

We are orphans in this universe. We were thrown away onto this planet in solitude along with god.

We humans were not born on this planet. Long ago, we came from another heavenly body. We are beings from an alien planet.

Fei: That's ridiculous!?

This is true. You have seen the various regions of this world.
Why do you think there are no records of humans before 10,000 years ago . . .

Fei: . . .!?

This is the will of god. The god's revival has been fated since before the time before genesis . . .

We will be one with god. Attaining a new 'Animus' . . . We will once again return to the starry skies . . .

That is the meaning of our existence.

That is our supreme objective.

Fei: . . .So you're not planning on using Solaris' power to dominate the world?

Of course. What meaning is there in having control of a planet as insignificant as this? God has given us the right to rule over the universe.

Yes. Only we, who do not carry impure blood, have the right to a pardon . . .

So, we will resurrect god.

It's been an eternity since our exile from paradise. If the time of god's revival does not come, we will have to follow the path to destruction. But . . .

Having attained 'Animus', our resurrection is near . . .
Next is god's resurrection.

View rotates to one from behind Fei as the screen before him displays a new image. It is Krelian and Fei says -

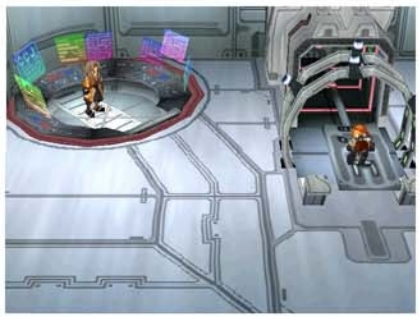
Fei: Krelian!?

Krelian: This one only waits for the awakening . . .

The screens suddenly shift to a new image -

Fei: Elly!!?

She is lying down on a flat surface and gray metal rings surround her form.



Scene cuts to an image of a dark gray circle lit up by blue and red lights and Krelian stands in the center as it descends into a large gray metal chamber with holographic charts and two glass tubes filled with a yellow green substance over by the far wall. The circle comes to a stop in a depression in the floor and Elly is visible nearby where she lies down by the strange apparatus, the rings partially obscuring the view.

View rotates as Krelian walks over to her and he pauses near her feet for a moment, then turns and moves over to the right. The view shifts over to Elly as Krelian turns to a console and a holographic screen appears before him. The rings surrounding Elly begin to move as the platform she is strapped to begins to rise and it moves to and fro. Krelian walks back over to the circle with its ring of consoles and taps in some commands. Several holographic screens appear around him and Elly turn her head in his direction and asks

Elly: Where am I . . .?

Krelian turns to face her, and says -

Krelian: I've looked into your records.

Elly: K, Krelian . . .Commander?

He nods once and says -

Krelian: Elhaym Van Houten. That incident at the Jugend one year ago . . .Case 102. The release of your latent powers from that systematic . . . . . .administration of mental enhancement drugs. In that instant, your Ether value had increased beyond 400. And in that moment, 2 were critically wounded and 3 required recycling. Am I right?

Elly: Please, stop!

He turns back to the consoles and says -

Krelian: But, this record is wrong. This wasn't the usual uncontrollable mental side effects.

Elly: . . .?

He turns back to her and says -

Krelian: This was caused by the 'awakening of your other inner self'.

He turns back to the consoles and she says -

Elly: My other self . . .?

Then -

Elly: Where's Fei? Where is everyone . . .?

He turns to her and says -

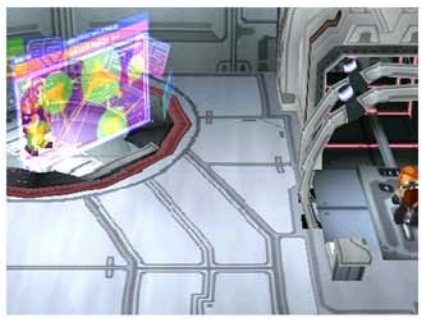
Krelian: They will be used as an offering for the . . . . . .resurrection of the Gazel Ministry. The same fate awaits that girl, the artificial organism. I've already taken enough samples from her. I'm already well into the fourth stage of my plan. All I need now is the final factor. Hence, your friends are no longer of any use to me. They're worthless. But, you are different.

Elly: You're planning on sending them to the same fate as . . . . . .those people in that research facility! Doing all this for your own selfish ambitions . . .Do you know what you're doing!? People playing with other people's lives. That's deplorable!

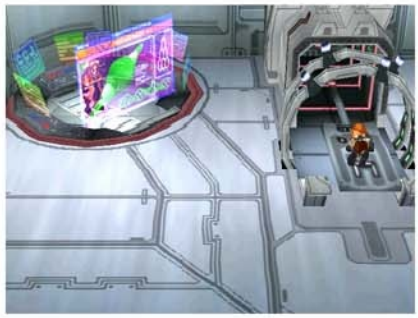
Krelian nods once and says -

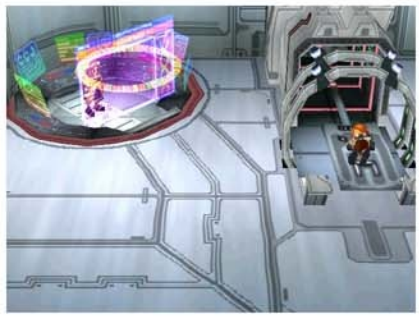
Krelian: I see . . .So you've seen the research facility. Presently, the Solaris researchers are working on genetic engineering down there. It's just a nest for fools who've learned the despicable pleasure of . . . . . .playing with their own organic creations. They seek only serendipity and inhumanity. That is not my place. I specialize in molecular engineering . . . Nanotechnology.

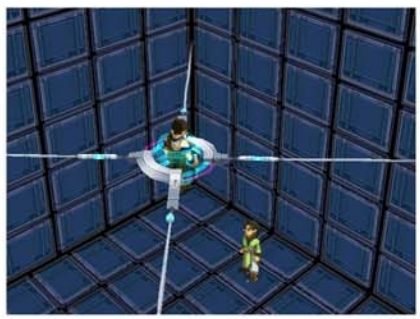
He turns to a console and flicks a switch. A holographic image of green circles with yellow triangular shapes at their centers appears before him and he turns back to her, saying -



Krelian: Do you know what this is? A nanomachine . . .a molecular machine. This is the assembler, which is one of those nanomachine machines. It can break down molecules and atoms and reconstruct it into anything. Each of these spheres are equivalent to an atom. Until recently, we were only able to produce . . . . . .materials which were several times the size of this. Thanks to that girl, the one we obtained from the ruins of the Zeboim civilization, we are now able to make it this compact and elaborate. To think that such a mechanism was created 4000 years ago. It's quite astonishing. Up until we discovered this, the work was rather crude. The best we could possibly do until now was apply amino acid solutions to wounded areas for . . . . . .amelioration or to seal up any peculiar abilities. I'm sure you've had some exposure to genetics when you were in the Jugend. Each type of those enzymes inside the DNA . . .are also molecular machines that were created by nature. That is, if we are indeed the progeny of the very first organism.







The screen displays a green twisting filament - DNA and Elly asks -

Elly: What do you think of accomplishing by using that molecular machine? What connection do I have with it?

Krelian: Although the nanomachines up until now could recombine DNA . . .

The screen displays a long green and white shape. He continues -

Krelian: . . .they couldn't uncover any information in the intron which are located in the replacements . . . . . .of the double helix. However, the newer nanomachines easily discovered this data. Data that originally 'should not have existed'. And we are about to see the results of that.

The screen before him switches to one with the helix seen near the right side. Krelian nods once and says -

Krelian: Hmm, according to the transferred record, it depicts . . . . . .a similar wave frequency as expected.

A ring of many colors appears on the display in three dimensions and slowly turns above Krelian. He says -

Krelian: And . . .yes, the Urobolus Ring . . .!

It shrinks and expands as it rotates and he says -

Krelian: That is it, isn't it . . .? Miang, and Lacan's actions . . . This explains everything. Elhaym . . .You were the 'mother' . . .

Elly: Mother . . .?

Krelian: Yes. This is what your genetic exon looked like before replacement . . . This is the conceptualized form of the intron which carries information that isn't supposed to exist. Observe. This is the Urobolus Ring which contains 'intron information' which only . . . . . .exists in 'certain people'. Urobolus . . .if we were to anatomize such a thing . . .Wouldn't you be interested in what type of information it would have to offer us?

Elly: . . .

Krelian: Elhaym, you are beautiful. When I look at you, I appreciate the artistic aspect of the human form, its elaborateness . . .I can't help but feel the importance of that. As if my molecular machine is unworthy of you. You haven't changed 'since then'. Just like the 'other one', Lacan . . .

Scene fades and cuts to Fei where he is suspended in the circular device. A door slides open behind him and Citan walks in and moves over to the far wall, facing Fei. He looks up and Fei says -

Fei: Ugh . . .

Fei shakes his head and Citan asks -

Citan: Are you conscious?

Fei: Doc . . .

Citan : It is impossible to move. This machine has physically cut your nerve signals. You will not be able to lift a finger regardless of what your mind says.

Fei shakes his head and asks -

Fei: What're you gonna do to me? To Bart and them? Where is Elly?

Citan: Do not worry . . .They have their roles . . . (pause) you have yours. I simply investigate.

Fei strains against his bonds and says -

Fei: Dammit . . .This . . .What was I . . .

Citan: So the battle has been fought . . .you say? That was discussed earlier by the Ministry . . .

Fei stops and looks back down at Citan, saying -

Fei: Godammit! We weren't born to be used by them! We didn't come all the way to Solaris for that! I, we, everyone . . .we just want to make a place where we can belong . . .That's what we were fighting for . . . But now . . .

Citan looks down and pushes his glasses up his nose, blinking and says -

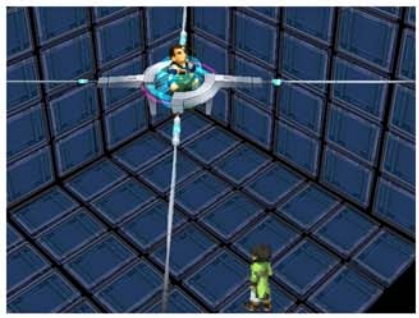
Citan: It is much easier to be given a place to belong than to make one yourself. You do not even understand a simple concept like that?

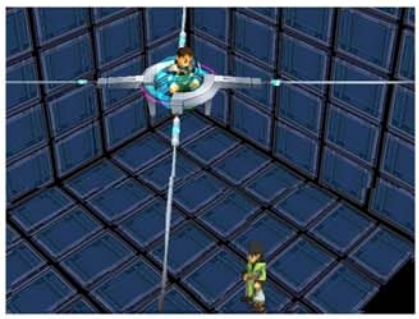
He still looks down as Fei says -

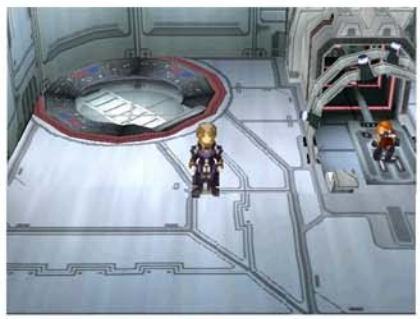
Fei: Only the true . . .!

Citan looks up at him once more and says -

Citan: Childish ideals pale when placed before reality. But actually many are satisfied with that. Being given one's place, frees one from any risks. Misfortunes may be blamed on others. Do you know why people can not exist alone but only under some bigger concept such as a group or country? People need a place to go to be themselves . . . The more stable it is the more effective it is. The Ministry gives them such a place. Under total surveillance, there is no need to bear the risk of maintaining one's own individuality. They simply live under the delusion of being an 'individual'. What could be easier? Facts are facts so let's just accept them. It will be easier for all of us. Resistance is futile. It only makes things painful.







Fei: I . . .(pause) I . . .

Citan: Do you still intend to do something about it? Look at yourself . . . What do you think you could possibly do at this stage? You cannot move. You could not even protect your friends who fought with you. You could not even protect the most important person in your life, Elly.

View swings around to face Fei and he throws his head back, saying -

Fei: Stop! Please!

Citan turns to the side and pushes his glasses up his nose, saying -

Citan: You can do nothing.

Fei: (bends head) Quit . . .it . . .

The lights suddenly vanish and Citan says -

Citan: Now, we may take our time and talk . . .(pause) Id . . .

Scene cuts to Krelian's laboratory, facing him where he stands in the circle and turns to one of the consoles behind him. The holographic displays surrounding him disappear and he turns back around, nodding once, and strides forward off the circle and over to Elly. He looks at her for a moment, then turns and heads for a door set into the wall, disappearing. The door opens a moment later and Ramsus steps through. He laughs, then walks over to stand in the center of the floor, laughing again, then he turns and makes his way over to Elly where she lies on the platform, the rings gone still. View swings around to a side view of him as he looks down at her and she turns her head to him, saying -

Elly: Commander!?

He leans over her and she says -

Elly: What're you!?

Ramsus: Wh . . .re . . .

Elly: What?

Ramsus: Where . . .? I'm asking you where!!

Elly: Th, that hurts! P, please! Please stop!

Ramsus: Where is he!? Where!? I know you know! Take me to him!

Elly: Who're you referring to when you say that man . . . (pause) Are you talking about Fei?

Ramsus suddenly turns his back to her and he says -

Ramsus: Fei, Fei, Fei . . .Fei this . . .Fei that . . .

He walks over to the center of the room and pauses, laughing, then says -

Ramsus: Fei . . .! In what way is he more superior than I? I will not accept it. I will not!!

He brings his right hand up to his mouth, and -

Ramsus: Errrg . . .

Elly: Ramsus . . .that drug . . .A mental stabilizer . . .? Why are you so shook up like that? What's forcing you to go through all this? What happened between you and Fei . . .

Ramsus turns to the facing view and laughs once more, then says -

Ramsus: Dammit Fei . . .I'll show you . . . I . . .

He laughs again, then turns and leaves the room. View moves over to Elly who says -

Elly: Ramsus . . .

Scene fades and cuts to darkness in which a voice is heard -

"Fei, hang in there!"

View fades in to where Fei sits on the blue screens, surrounded by Citan, Billy and Bart. He stands and shakes his head, facing Citan and Bart says -

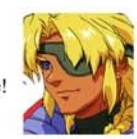
Bart: Fei, you're conscious? Now! Let's go!

Fei: . . . . . .Y . . .you traitor!!

He lunges for Citan and both Billy and Bart rush over, grabbing him. Bart says -

Bart: S, stop! Fei!

Fei: Don't stop, Bart!! He betrayed us! He betrayed us and Elly!



Bart: Stop! Fei! It's your mistake!

Fei shakes his head, struggling and says -

Fei: Let go! Lemme go!

He continues to struggle and Billy says -

Billy: Calm down, Fei! Bart isn't lying, Citan is the one who helped us!

Fei: Billy!? . . .

He stops struggling and turns to Billy who backs off and Bart says -

Bart: Hmph . . .If Billy says it you listen . . .

Then Bart walks over to stand near Billy and shakes his head, saying -

Bart: Listen very carefully! That Limiter is implanted in our bodies. Right now, this research facility is the only place where we can get them removed! Citan misled Krelian and the other guys and brought us in here to remove the Limiters!

Fei turns to Bart and -

Fei: What . . .But doc was just . . .Is that true?

Bart: Yeah!

He nods once and Fei turns to Citan and says -

Fei: Doc?

Citan nods once and Fei backs off. There is a moment of silence as they stare at one another, then Citan says -

Citan: That is not the only reason why I brought you here. Those who want to become independent from Solaris must know the actual situation and its true form. Who is doing what and why.

View switches to one facing Citan, the others standing before him as he says -

Citan: Ostensibly, I received a covert order from the Emperor to contact the body wanted by the Ministry and send the data. . .and if possible bring the body back. That was my duty. As a result, I had no choice but to deceive you. Please forgive me.

He nods once and there is silence. Then Fei says -

Fei: I see how it is . . .

He bows his head and Citan says -

Citan: Besides, I myself had a matter that had to be verified in this facility . . .

Fei looks up and asks -

Fei: For sure?

Citan: I'll tell you that after we escape from here. It is something you must know.

Fei: . . .?

View switches to one from the side as Bart strides forward and stands between Fei and Billy. He says -

Bart: By the way, Citan. You did remove Fei's Limiter, didn't you?

Citan: . . .What? Y . . .yes, of course . . .That is . . .

Bart: Alright then. Let's get out of here!

Then Fei steps forward and says -

Fei: Wait! What happened to Elly? Weren't you with her?

Citan: Elly was taken to Krelian's research lab. It could not be stopped. I am sorry.

Fei: Why only Elly . . .?

Citan ponders, arms crossed and foot tapping and says -

Citan: I do not know . . .But one thing bothers me . . .When Krelian took Elly, I had a chance to acquire Elly's cellular information. I analyzed it and found something very interesting . . .Excuse me, I mean . . .unusual. There is no Limiter implanted in her.

Billy: There's no Limiter? Isn't that because Elly is from Solaris?

Citan: Even Solaris citizens have a Limiter implanted when they are born. There are exceptions for certain people like myself and Ramsus, whose Limiters can be removed later on through the treatment such as the one I did for Bart. But you must have permission from the Ministry to do so.

Fei: Is that why . . .Elly . . .?

Citan: There must be more to it than that. I don't know the reason, but Krelian is so absorbed by her data.

View switches to one facing Fei, Bart and Billy and Bart says -

Bart: I don't care what the reason is! For now, let's help Elly and get out of here fast!

Billy: You're right. If we mess up here, I put those guys who went to help Elly's parents in danger.

He steps forward and says -

Billy: Citan, we're going to Krelian's private research lab as planned. We'll meet up at the rendezvous point.

Fei: What about doc . . .?

Citan drops his arms and says -

Citan: There is still something left to be done. I will go destroy the last gate.

He begins to walk off, then stops as Fei calls out to him -

Fei: Doc! A sword . . .?

He turns and nods once, saying -

Citan: . . .Yes. Yui gave it to me as I was leaving. I used to use it before I met her. For a long time I vowed not to use it for killing though. But now is not the time to contemplate morals. It is not fair for me to be the only 'innocent' one.

Fei: . . .I see . . . . . .But . . .

Citan: Yes?

Fei: You're always so mischievous, doc . . .

Citan: It is in my nature. I am sorry, forgive me.

He nods once, then turns and leaves and Bart turns and calls out to him -

Bart: Yo! Citan! Let me handle Fei and Elly's situation! Now that the Limiter is removed, Solaris doesn't stand a chance!

Bart nods once and Citan turns around to him and says -

Citan: Oh, yes! By the way, young one, about the effects of removing the Limiter . . .The results will not show up that quickly. Already your physical Limiters have been removed naturally. The part I have removed is the psychological section. That is . . . the subconscious fear and veneration for the Ministry and the emperor have been removed. Basically, you will be able to battle against them without any fears or hesitations. It is not that you have suddenly become more powerful.

Bart: A . . .are you serious . . .?

Scene fades and cuts to Fei, Bart and Billy in a narrow metal corridor as they go from a circle set in the floor to one just like it at the other end. Then Fei and Bart stand before it and Billy approaches, saying -

Billy: According to Citan, Krelian's private laboratory should be below us.

They lift the hatch and scene cuts to the inside of the lab where Fei stands before Elly who sits perched on the edge of the platform near the machine. Bart and Billy are over by the circle where the consoles and displays are located.

Fei: Elly!! . . . . . .you okay?

Elly: Fei . . . . . .Yes . . .yes, I'm fine.

She jumps off and shakes her head, then view moves over to where Bart and Billy stand at the edge of the circle, Billy kneeling near one side of it and Bart calls over -

Bart: Sorry to interrupt you two, but this is not the time for a heartfelt reunion.

Billy straightens and says -

Billy: Quickly, this way.

The circle rises and a depression in the floor is revealed. Inside is a hatch and they lift it. Scene fades and cuts to the interior of a large chamber where Jessie and Citan stand near a pillar of aqua colored light, laser fire surrounding them on all sides. Jessie, with his gun over his shoulder, stands near Citan on a metal dais as the other man works on something near the circle's edge. Citan walks over to the side and ponders as the gleaming bars of red light pierce the air around them and Jessie returns the fire. Then Jessie says -

Jessie: What took you so long!? I've only got so many bullets! Hurry up and blow them away!

Citan ponders, foot tapping and Jessie raises his gun, shooting at the unseen enemies. Citan says -

Citan: I am sorry. I have other matters to attend to.

Citan nods once, then ponders. Jessie asks -

Jessie: . . .What the hell are you doing?

Citan: To His Majesty's . . .

He nods once and Jessie says -

Jessie: You mean the Emperor . . .? Are you sure, Hyuga . . .?

Citan walks over to the edge of the circle working on something and Jessie continues to exchange fire with their attackers. Citan responds -

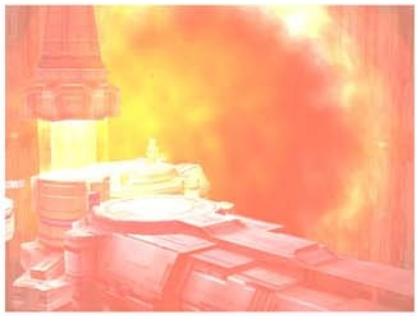
Citan: Yes. His Majesty understands the situation. . . . He says to leave it up to 'them' . . .

Then, arms crossed he stands back and says -

Citan: There! It is done!! Sir!!

Jessie puts his gun away and says -

Jessie: . . .Yeessss! We're outta here!! . . .Huh!?



View switches to one facing the doorway at the far wall to Jessie's right where a figure steps through. View pulls in closer and he halts, the firing gone silent. It is Ramsus and he says -

Ramsus: Where is he . . .? Hyuga . . .

Citan climbs up to the circle and looks out towards Ramsus, saying -

Citan: . . .Kahr . . .?

Ramsus: So . . .you too (pause) . . .you are also betraying me.

Citan: Kahr, we are just in different situations. I did not mean to betray you. I decided to stick with Fei's group.

Ramsus starts forward, then halts. He says -

Ramsus: Did you say 'Fei'!? You too . . .are on his side . . . I'll never forgive you! NEVER!

Jessie turns to Ramsus and says -

Jessie: Kahr, you're an enemy but why are you so attached to one kid!? You weren't like that before!

Ramsus: Shut up! I've got to get him with my own hands . . .And all of you working with him are my enemies! Enemies stealing 'my things'! Enemies! Enemies, Enemies!!

Citan: K, Kahr . . .

Jessie turns to Citan and says -

Jessie: Hey, we're going! I don't know what went on, but I don't have time to deal with him now!

Citan turns to Jessie and says -

Citan: But . . .

There is a moment of silence, then Jessie says -

Jessie: Hyuga!!

Citan: . . .(pause) I see . . .

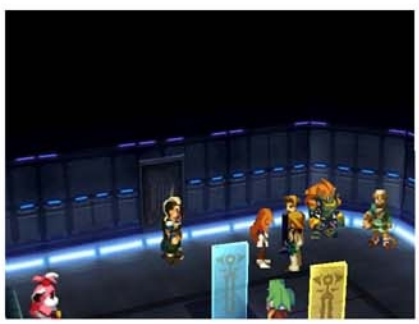
He turns back to look at Ramsus, then walks off towards the right, Jessie turning to look at Ramsus as well, then following suit a few moments later.

There is a sudden explosion, bright light filling the chamber and Ramsus turns to look in the direction of the pillar of light as the entire place rocks beneath several huge explosions and the path behind him erupts in a shower of flame. He disappears from view as the room is filled by the inferno and in the midst of the flaming torrent, he calls out -

Ramsus: You, traitors!!

White light consumes all and scene fades.

Escape from Solaris



Scene cuts to Fei, Bart and Billy as they make their way down a metal ladder leading down from Krelian's lab. They see if it will open again and they receive the message,"During the alarm, the maintenance hatch will be closed." Elly follows them a short distance behind and they make their way along the narrow tunnel lined with pipes and metal plating until they reach a door recessed into the wall on their left at the end. They go through and enter a large dark gray metal chamber. All the other party members are there, including Elly's parents and Emeralda says -

Emeralda: Oh, that's Fei!! Fei's Kim is here!!

Elly turns and sees her parents off to the right and -

Elly: Father! Mother!

She walks towards them and stops, bowing her head as Medena turns to her and says -

Medena: Elly!!

There is a moment of silence, then Rico speaks up from the side where he stands beside Hammer -

Rico: You should thank Hammer! Hammer got your parents at the right time. Right, Hammer!?

Hammer turns to Rico who looks at him and says -

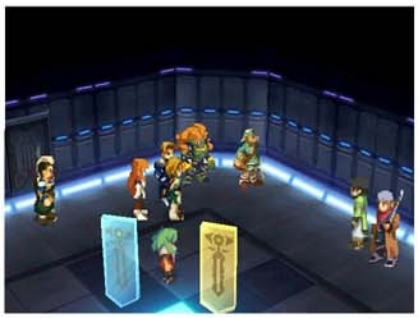
Hammer: Y, yes . . .(pause) Yes . . .exactly . . .

There is a silence, then Elly looks up at Medena and they look over at Hammer. Elly says -

Elly: T, thank you, Hammer.

Erich turns to Hammer and says -

Erich: We'd like to thank you, too. I never thought I'd see my daughter again . . . Thank you, Hammer.



View pans over to the right where Jessie and Citan stand side by side over by the wall. Jessie has his shotgun over his shoulder and Citan says -

Citan: Listen, everyone, we have no time to waste.

Citan: So that we do not stand out, we should split up into two groups. Fei, you have done a lot, but I would like to have you move one ahead and take two more members with you. Move along southwest of here and cross two mobile contact bridges. There you will find a hangar that will lead to the outside. We will meet at the footbridge near there. If you talk to the blue memory cubes you will be able to make contact with the other party members. You can thus change which members you wish to have in your current party.

Jessie: I shut down alarms here and there when I was breaking gates. But it's still dangerous. Be careful!

Erich: I'll go to the hangar beforehand, and arrange a ride for us. Solaris is in confusion now, so if I go alone I can pull some strings.

Citan: . . .Okay. Please do not overdo it.

Erich: Yeah, I know.

He turns to Elly and says -

Erich: Elly, Medena . . .See you again.

Medena turns to him and says -

Medena: Dear . . .Please be careful . . .

Elly turns to Erich and says -

Elly: Father . . .

There is silence, then he walks off, disappearing from view. Fei, Bart and Billy speak to Elly who says -

Elly: I have to get my mother and father to a safe place quickly . . .!

They speak to Medena who says -

Medena: Fei, now we're in the same boat as you.

They go over to speak to Jessie and he says -

Jessie: This country wasn't like this long ago . . .I think . . .
Well, maybe I was just too young.

They speak to Citan and he says -

Citan: Fei, let us hurry!! They will find us here easily!

They go over to Hammer who says -

Hammer: H, h, hurry, run away . . .Yeah, run away. Yeah, that's right! Better make proper preparations before you flee, so . . .Consider this Hammer's last closing down sale!

He offer them a selection of items and accessories and they restock.
Fei, Bart and Emeralda go towards one of the two exits. They choose the one leading southwest and enter a network of dark gray metal corridors. They quickly realize that they are in a maze of some kind and fight many enemies as they search for the way out. At last, they make it out to the hangar and see the others waiting for them. They are in a large gray metal chamber and up ahead they see the wide opening leading to the blue sky beyond. They speak to Billy nearby and he says -

Billy: Even if we make it back home . . .will Prim and her friends be safe?

They go over to Elly who stands with Medena and she says -

Elly: I'm so glad . . .everybody is safe and sound . . .
What about my father . . .?

Medena: Saying good-bye to Solaris . . .is hard . . .
This is my home no matter what . . .

J'ora: Whew, the sky is blue . . .

Jessie: This is the last of the last.
Don't let your guard down yet!

Citan: The hangar is just over there.

Rico: All right! Almost there, Hammer!

Hammer stands looking out towards the open entrance beyond and says -

Hammer: Here I am. I came all the way . . .

They move ahead into the hangar and scene cuts to a view of all of them as they stand on the wide pathway extending out to the open landing bay doors beyond. Suddenly, Hammer calls out -

Hammer: St . . stop!!!

All turn and see that Hammer is holding Elly with a gun in his hands. Holding the gun aimed at the others, he says -

Hammer: I'm asking Miss Elly to return with me!!

Elly struggles in his grip and asks -

Elly: W . . .what are you doing? Hammer?

She struggles once more and he says -

Hammer: Don't move! I'm serious!!

Fei steps forward and Hammer backs up with Elly. He stops and says -

Fei: Don't be silly! What happened? Hammer!?

Hammer: I promised to a man named K . . .Krelian. He won't 'change it' if Miss Elly is returned . . .

There is silence, then Rico comes forward, saying -

Rico: Hammer!! Damn you!!!

Hammer backs off with Elly and says -

Hammer: I really don't want to do this to Miss Elly either. Really, I like her very much. But, but I . . .I . . .have no other choice! Because I'm no good . . . I don't have the strength like bro, or the smarts like the doc!

He pauses, then says -

Hammer: I, I know . . .everyone thinks of me as some annoying handyman who talks too much . . .(pauses) I know that . . .

He steps forward once and Rico shakes his head, saying -

Rico: Hammer . . .

Hammer: I'm different from you all! I'm not special like you! A 'normal' guy like me has no choice but to this!!

Medena steps forward and view switches to the side as she approaches Hammer, then stops a short distance away. He turns in her direction, the gun poised and says -

Hammer: D . . .don't move!! Stop! Stop!

He pulls Elly closer and Medena says -

Medena: I won't stop. Ever. . . .My child is in danger . . . and I'm her mother!!

Hammer: . . .(pause) Hy a . . .

She continues, facing him -

Medena: I was born and raised in a normal family. I'm not a soldier like my husband and daughter. I never touched a gun before, much less have one pointed at me . . .(pauses) That's why I'm shaking . . .But I can't stop it. I'm a 'normal' mother. (pauses) So there are things I must protect . . .

There is a silence as she and Hammer stare at one another, then she says -

Medena: Elly, slowly come here. Don't worry. I'll protect you no matter what.

Elly: M . . .mother . . .

Medena: Elly, come here. It's alright.

Slowly, she begins making her way forward towards her mother and Hammer says -

Hammer: . . .No! Don't move! No! No!

Elly stops when she reaches her mother and stands with her back to Hammer.

Medena: It's alright, Elly.

Medena steps forward, towards Hammer and view switches to one from behind, as she faces Hammer. Elly walks towards Fei and says -

Elly: Fei!

Hammer moves towards Elly's retreating form and is blocked by Medena. He says -

Hammer: . . .No!! Don't go! No . . .no . . .!

There is silence, the sound of the wind from beyond the open hangar doors filling the chamber and -

Hammer: . . .Don't . . .Don't go . . .don't . . .

There a flash of light as the sound of a shot comes from behind. Elly turns around and the scene goes red. She says -

Elly: Mother!?

View switches to one of Medena as she slowly falls to the ground, her eyes closing as she topples. Hammer stands with the gun held out before him and starts forward, saying -

Hammer: . . .Hya . . .hya . . .(pauses) Hya-a-a-a-a-a . . .(pause) a . . .a . . .

He backs off, then turns, the gun disappearing and -

Hammer: . . .Wa - a - a - a - a - a - a - a . . .

He runs off and Elly rushes over to her mother's body where it lies on the cold metal, her eyes forever closed. She kneels down by her and says -

Elly: Mother?

A long silence, in which the mournful howl of the wind is heard, then -

Elly: . . .Mother . . . . . .mo . . .th . . .er . . .

Scene switches to one above her and pulls back, the other visible as they watch and she throws her head back -

Elly: M . . .mother.

Scene fades and cuts to a view of the ramp further down towards the open landing bay doors. A pillar of blue energy appears and a robed form materializes, followed by another more familiar person - Grahf!

Grahf: Leave the girl here.

There is a long silence as they regard one another across the gray expanse of the ramp. Then Fei says -

Fei: Grahf! Damn! At a time like this!

Fei: . . .Everybody, get ready!

At last they defeat both and scene cuts to one facing both he and the Executioner. Grahf says -

Grahf: You've gotten better. . . .However!!

The sound of a Gear's engines being fired comes from above and a Gear flies by and positions itself between Grahf and the others. The Executioner says -

Executioner: Oh . . .?

Erich's voice comes to them from the Gear's cockpit -

Erich: I'll take care of this. Everyone, escape now!

Elly calls out -

Elly: Father!

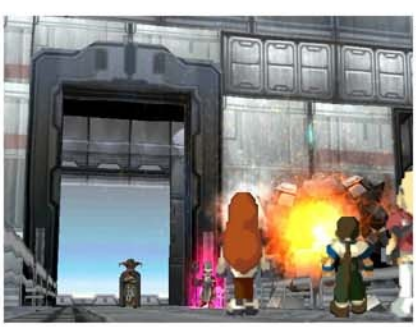
Executioner: Hahaha . . .You both dote on your child . . .

A dark nimbus appears around her form, then a white radiance with streamers of purple energy within. A red glow appears around her and a ball of energy ignites in the Gear's chest and expands, a grinding electric hum emanating from it. Erich -

Erich: G, gha!

The Gear is convulsed by steamers of electricity as the energy ball grows brighter and Erich says -

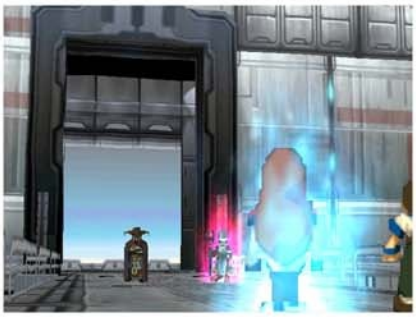
Erich: E . . .Elly . . .Go . . .now . . . Elly, no matter what happens, believe in yourself and go on. We'll be happy to help anyway we can. That's the least I can do to make it up to you . . .Elly . . .You're Medena's daughter, my daughter, no matter what. So . . .



Something explodes within the Gear's chest and a wave of energy expands outward, the Gear falling towards the edge of the ramp and over into the abyss below. As it disappears over the side, flames erupting from it, another explosion comes, then he is gone.

Elly: Father!!!

Executioner: Oh, have I over done it? You had no time to say good bye. But, don't worry. I'll let you meet again on the other side . . .



Elly turns to the side, looking out at where her father had disappeared and says -

Elly: . . . . . .How could you do that . . . . . .to my father!

A pale blue radiance appears around her form with the sound of shearing metal and she turns to face the Executioner,

Executioner: . . .To have that much Ether control in a non-awakened state. Impressive. However . . .

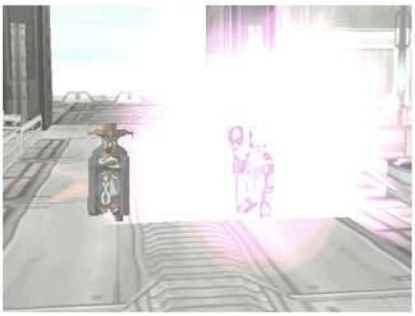
Her own dark magenta radiance increases in intensity and the electric energy builds to almost unbearable levels. Elly -

Elly: Ah - h - h - h - h - h - h - h!!

Bright light fills the chamber along with the grinding electric hum and Rico, Bart, Billy, Emeralda and J'ora all cry out in agony.

Then, amidst the brightness, view switches to one from just behind Fei as he turns around to the others and says -

Fei: Ggh . . .! Elly . . .everyone . . .



The heartbeat continues as white light consumes all and Fei -

Fei: Wa - a - a - a - a - a - a - a - a - a -!!!!

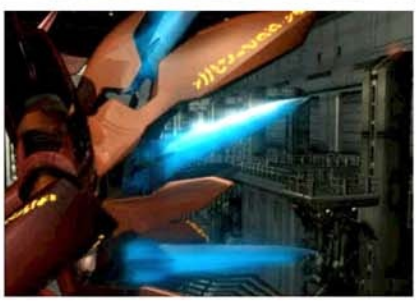
There is the sound of shearing metal, then white light consumes all.

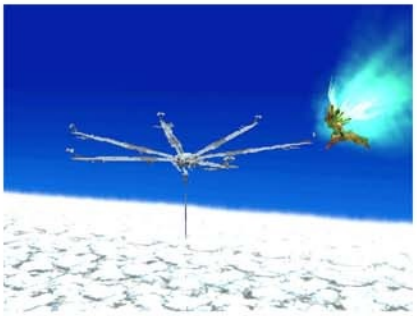
Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil, where sirens are wailing and crewman reports -

C1: Sir!! The Gear's moving by itself in the hangar . . .

As the lights start flashing red, Sig turns and calls over -

Sig: What? More details!





Scene cuts to a view of Solaris above the clouds. A low roar of engines is heard as something red flashes by overhead and the red Gear is seen a moment later as it appears from the right and heads for Solaris. As it draws close, it bores through the remainder of the shields and silvery balls of light float around the area after he has gone through.

Scene cuts to one facing Wyvern, its engines roaring and Ramsus says -

Ramsus: Come on, come on, come on! You devil . . .I'll be sure to kill you this time!!

As he waits, the sound of approaching engines growing louder, Ramsus says -

Ramsus: That's it, that's it . . .Heh heh . . .
He came all this way, just to be killed . . .
ugha - a - a - a - a - a -!!

With a rushing sound, white light consumes all and scene cuts to the ramp in the hangar, where two figures stand at the edge of a flaming gap. It is Krelian and the Executioner. As black smoke and swirls of flames pour from the twisted remains of the end of the pathway, Krelian says -

Krelian: There he was . . .

Executioner: Yes, it's clear. It's nothing like the half - assed stuff we've dealt with before.

View switches to one facing Krelian and Executioner at the ramp's edge as a pillar of blue light appears around the Executioner's form and the robes disappear, revealing - Miang!

Miang: I don't think he'll get off the stage easily this time.
Fei's mental energy seems to have been weakened and . . .
it's similar to 'the old days' now . . .

There is only the silence, punctuated by the soughing of the wind and she turns to Krelian who stares out over the edge and -

Miang: Ha, ha . . .

Slowly, he turns to her and -

Krelian: What's so amusing?

Miang: His feelings haven't changed over the years.
Maybe you have mixed feelings?

Krelian turns to look out over the edge once more and says -

Krelian: Hmph, don't be stupid. By the way . . .
what about Ramsus?

Miang: You want him to bring her back? Too late. Kahr has left already.

Still looking out, Krelian says -

Krelian: I really want to say it's a waste of time . . .but, I guess it's alright. He probably made it easier to control it . . .
Nevertheless . . .

Miang: What?

Krelian: How can you continue to fight without a chance of winning . . .

Miang turns to look out over the edge as well and says -

Miang: Isn't that what you want? Though I induced you to feel that way . . .
But, we're almost there. Our only actual example of success. Let's take good care of him.

Krelian: What her true intentions are . . .
I don't even know.

There is silence, then he says -

Krelian: We're going. This place will soon be gone.

He turns and begins walking away towards the interior and Miang turns to watch him go, saying -

Miang: I agree. We should do Kahr a favor and save him . . . Shouldn't we?

She waits a moment, then follows after him.

Scene cuts with a sound of blasting engines to utter darkness, and a voice is heard -

"Elly! Are you okay? Elly!"

View fades in to one of Elly, Bart and Citan, cupped in Seibzehn's outstretched hands and Citan says -

Citan: Elly? Have you come to your senses yet?

Elly: . . .(pause) . . .Citan . . .Maria . . .?

Bart: Yeah, we were saved when we were thrown out into the sky. The rest of my crew were already picked up and they're in the Yggdrasil right now.

Elly: Oh . . . . . .Fei . . .? What about Fei? . . .Is he on the Yggdrasil too?

Then -

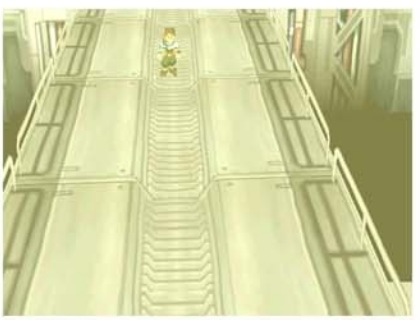
Elly: Solaris!! . . .That red Gear!? What is going on, Citan? What's happened to Fei?

Citan: Calm down, Elly. Fei . . .is alright.

Elly: So he's already in the Yggdrasil, right . . .Maria?

Citan: Calm down, Elly. Listen! Fei is riding in that Gear. That Gear is actually Weltall in its true form after transformation.

Elly: What!!



Citan: Another Fei within him has awakened. Fei and Id are the same person . . .

Elly: !? You're kidding!? I don't believe that!

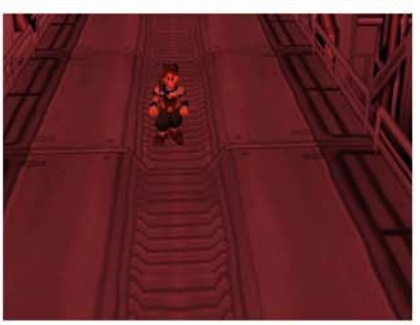
Then Bart speaks up -

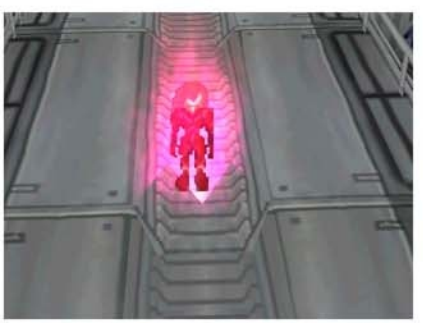
Bart: I'm not lying . . .We saw it with our own eyes. The very sight of him turning into Id . . .

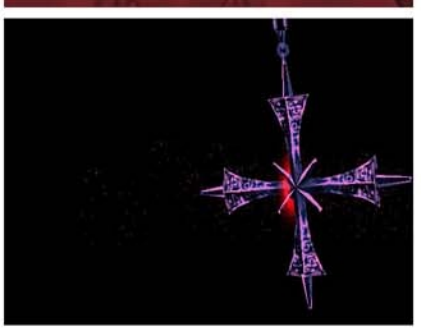
The sound of Seibzehn's engines fades as white light consumes all, then cuts to a scene in which Fei stands on the gray metal ramp, the electrical attack filling the chamber with its grinding resonance. There is a heartbeat, then another and the entire scene fades with yellow/white light as view moves in towards Fei. He says -

Fei: . . .Stop! Stop!!

Fei: Wa - a - a - a - a - a - a - a - a - a - a - a!!!

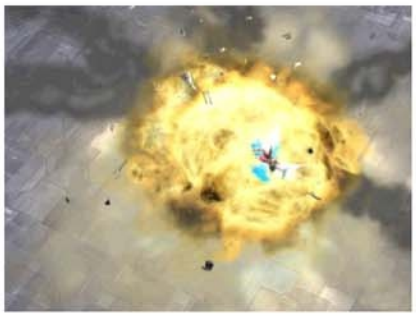






The sound of the heartbeats is heard, then scene returns to Elly, Bart and Citan in Seibzehn's cupped hands as Elly says -

Elly: Fei . . .is . . .Id . . .(pause) Don't be ridiculous!



Citan: Quick! Take cover! The Solarian based energy descending from the upper atmosphere is equivalent to a reactive weapon!

Scene cuts back to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as it heaves under the stress and a dull rumbling is heard. Citan, Bart and Sig are up at the helm and Bart says -

Bart: We're gonna get caught up in it!? Yggdrasil!! Get moving!!

Scene cuts to a view of the massive central section of Solaris as it falls towards the rocky coastline, flames pouring from its broken remnants as it plows into the ocean, raising a spray of water as it impacts. It grinds along the rock in its descent and view cuts to one far above as a bright yellow fireball blossoms in the deep blue water, a round shockwave spreading outward as it goes from yellow to white, the brightness consuming all.

Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as the lights continue to flash red. The rumbling intensifies, then gradually subsides, the lights returning to normal as all grows still. Bart drops to one knee, and -

Bart: . . . . .Phew . . .!
We made it . . . . . .Somehow . . .!?

Then, the shaking begins once more, a low rumbling is heard and Bart rises to his feet, saying -

Bart: Wha, what the!?

Franz reports -

Franz: It's that red Gear . . .!! It's coming this way!!!!

The bridge continues to shake and a red light fills the room as it increases. Bart says -

Bart: Damn! We're spotted!!

View switches to one facing Elly behind the others and she turns and heads for the door, leaving. Citan turns and -

Citan: . . .Elly? . . .!

Then Bart turns to Citan and says -

Bart: Citan! What now? What should we do?

Citan turns to Bart and says -

Citan: Huh? What . . .You are asking me what to do?

He crosses his arms, holding his chin in his hand and then Franz reports -

Franz: There's someone on the deck . . .It's . . .Elly!?

Bart: What!?

Scene cuts to Vierge as she stands on the hull of the Yggdrasil, the entire vessel shaking. Citan's voice comes to her over the 'comm. He says -

"No, Elly! Return immediately!!"

As the vessel heaves and bucks beneath her, she says -

Elly: I'm going to do this . . .So please, allow me to do it!

"It's too dangerous!"

Elly: I know . . .But, it's just like when Fei put his life on the line to save me . . .It's my turn to save Fei . . .As long as it helps him. I don't care what happens to me!

"Elly . . ."

Battle begins! Scene cuts to one facing her as she stand before the red Gear. She says -

Elly: . . .Fei.

Id: Heh. You. You've come to die, eh?

View pulls in closer to Elly and she says -

Elly: . . .Yes. If that is what will satisfy you, then kill me. (pause) Now . . .

She adopts a ready position, her rod held at her side and view switches to one facing the red Gear as it rises into an attack position. Id says -

Id: Hmph . . .(pause)
Good girl . . .Now, die!

View switches as he moves towards her, then rears back and slams his fist into her Gear's chest. Before he can move away, however, she pins his right hand to her side and he struggles as he tries to break away, then says -

Id: !? Let go . . .

From where she is hunched over in her cockpit, Elly responds -

Elly: Guh . . .Fei . . .I, I won't ever let go!

She rises up to face him and says -

Elly: Fei . . .Please, return to the real Fei!!

View moves in closer as he tries to free his right arm and she strikes him in the chest.

His Gear's flaring spikes spread out and he -

Id: Errgaah!! W, what!?

A powerful lightning spell in unleashed, streamers of electricity twisting about both their forms.

Elly: Uuaaahhh . . .
Fei! Please!

Once again, the spell is unleashed, its fiery intensity filling the space around them. This time, Elly falls back and hits the deck of the Yggdrasil, Id above her. View pulls into him as he steps back and says -

Id: Tch . . .This woman . . .I knew it . . .

Then -

Fei: . . .Uuuhhh . . . El (pauses) . . .ly . . .

Id: . . .Damn . . . it . . . He's . . .awake . . .ning . . .

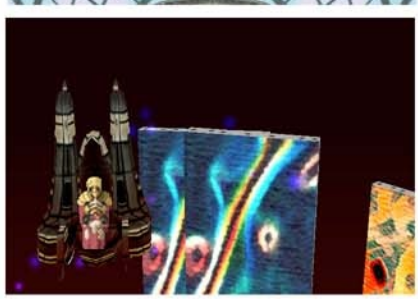
View pulls back as he topples to the deck and scene fades.

The Dark One's Wings

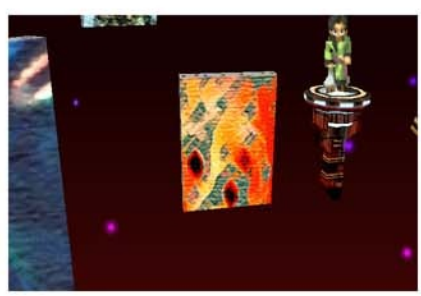
Scene cuts to the throne room where all except Fei are assembled. Citan crosses his arms and rests his chin in his hand, foot tapping and says -

Citan: I am sorry. I did not want to say anything until I was sure. I was on a secret mission by orders of Emperor Cain to monitor Fei. He ordered me to determine whether Fei would be a threat to the world or not. 'The Contact' . . .That is what the Emperor calls Fei . . .

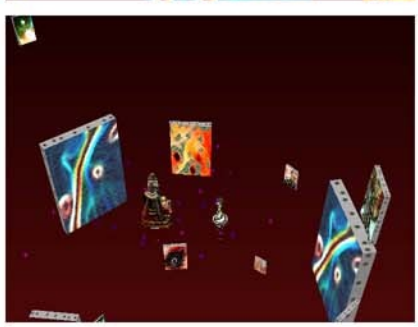
Scene fades and cuts to a series of floating pictures circling in a reddish tinged void. Off to the left is a throne in which a skull faced man sits amid the swirling images. The only sounds are the soft soughing and creaking of the pictures as they move in their eternal dance. The Emperor speaks -



Emperor: This is your conclusion . . .?



Citan: Yes, your Majesty. This is the answer that I chose myself.



Emperor: Anonelbe . . .You think you can do it?

Citan: Yes. Humans have the potential. Managers are no longer needed.

Emperor: The contact is not our enemy?

Citan: Yes, as you say your Majesty, if Fei is . . .

Emperor: Then I leave it up to you . . .
I atone for my crime by doing so . . .

Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil, as Citan stands with Sig and Jessie up at the helm.

Citan: 'Anonelbe' . . .The long awaited man of god, who will take the people born in this world with him to a new horizon. Such is the destiny of the 'Contact'.That is what the emperor called Fei . . .He did not tell me why he called Fei that though . . .

Sig: Who the heck is he then?

Citan: He is Fei. But he is also the one who . . .destroyed Elru, caused Kahr serious injury, sank the Yggdrasil, killed Rico's subordinates in Kislev . . . . . .Need I continue further? He is . . . . . .Id.

Sig drops his arms and -

Sig: What did you say!? Id!?

Jessie: What do you mean?

Citan blinks and pushes his glasses up his nose, then says -

Citan: He . . .Fei that is, has Disassociative Identity Disorder . . . Also known more commonly as multiple personalities.

Jessie: D . . .disas . . .?

Citan turns to him and says -

Citan: Disassociative Identity Disorder . . .or multiple personalities. It is a mental disorder where one person has multiple personalities.

Sig crosses his arms and says -

Sig: That can't be real . . .

Citan turns to him and nods once, saying -

Citan: Oh but it is very real! Fei is living proof of it. I have been watching over Fei, who has a destroyer personality within him named 'Id'.

Citan crosses his arms and says -

Citan: In the beginning he was stable . . .His disassociation did not occur at all while he lived in Lahan for those three years. But then, after Lahan was attacked, things changed. Little by little, the number of incidences of his disassociation and their length began to increase. And then at Solaris, a complete manifestation of Id occurred.

Sig: What brought it about? He was fine when he was in Lahan, right?

Citan taps his foot, pondering and says -

Citan: My guess is that . . .the appearance of Grahf affected Fei somehow. You probably know that Fei worked with Grahf as the assassin 'Id' before he was brought to live in Lahan. It was then that Elru, the homeland of Dominia, was utterly obliterated. Grahf was intentionally provoking the manifestation of Id (pause) 'within' . . .for want of a better word . . .Fei.

Jessie: For what purpose?

Citan drops his arms and pushes his glasses up his nose once more.

Citan: To destroy God . . .That is what Grahf was saying . . .That's all I know . . .Although there might be more to it . . .But one thing is certain . . .Grahf was encouraging the manifestation of Id, but did not have adequate control over him.

Sig drops his arms and says -

Sig: In other words, it was too much for him to handle?

Citan nods and says -

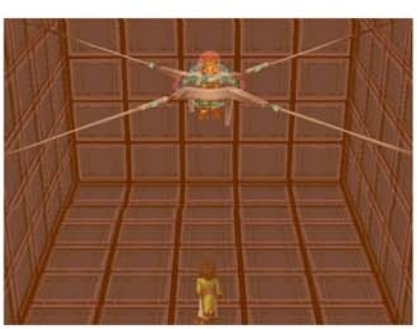
Citan: Yes.

Jessie: You said, 'That's all you know, although there might be more to it,' . . .What did you mean by that?

Citan holds out his hands to either side and says -

Citan: I shall go on to explain that now. Actually, that is the most important part.

Scene fades and cuts to a reddish tinged view of the room full of screens, facing Fei in the device above and Citan standing below. He says -



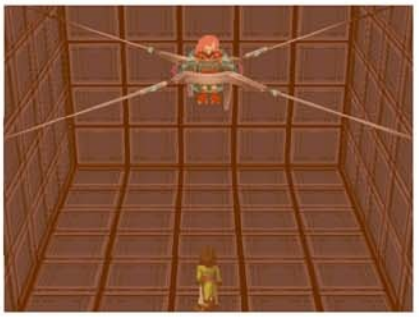
Citan: . . .There is nothing you can do.

Fei's form dissolves into Id and the two continually overlap as he says -

Id: You understand well. Just as I expected, Citan, . . .or is it 'doc'?

Citan: I have been wanting to meet you, Id. I wanted to talk with you. I guess it is all due to this machine which cuts the nerve connections. Anyway, what is Fei doing now?

Id: Fei? Which Fei do you mean?



Citan: There is more than one?

Id: . . .

Citan: Id?

Id: The one you call Fei is asleep.

Citan: Sleeping?

Id: When I am awake, he sleeps. That is why he has no memory of what I do.

Citan: Why does he not know?

Id: It's obvious. He is my subordinate. He cannot peer into my memories.
He should not, in actuality, even exist. That man forcibly created his personality.
Fei is a tenant in the room of cowardice . . .

Citan: That man?

Id: Our father, Kahn. He sealed up my personality in the deepest recesses of my consciousness. Through some inexplicable reason, that is when the present Fei was born.

Citan: When you said cowardice, what did you mean?

Id: . . .Why ask about him? You think you can do something?

Citan: It is rare to be able to talk to a real schizophrenic.
As a scholar, I am extremely intrigued.

Id: With friends like you . . .eh, doctor? I like you, Citan. But, he's insignificant. After all, he is just a failure. A coward like him does not deserve to be 'Fei's existence'. A pathetic one who has always fled from reality. He never did one thing against me when I control him. A coward who refused to live. He should've been erased!
But he continues to exist! Why won't he disappear? Damnit . . .
it makes my skin crawl just being in the same body as him.

There is a moment of silence, then Citan says -

Citan: Let us change the subject. I would like to know how and why your personalities were split. Since you are the one in control, I would assume you would know the story. Normally, personalities do not split as they did with you. Unless there was some sort of past trauma.

Id: You want me to talk about my memories? Don't misunderstand.
I haven't given you the right to question me. Just because I'm held down by this machine, don't push your luck. If I really wanted to,
I could break the restraints and crush you. Don't you forget it.

Citan: Then why not do it?

Id: . . .

Citan: Shall I tell you why? You do not have complete control over Fei do you?
Your control of him is incomplete. To break those bonds would require a tremendous amount of mental energy. Having used up your energy, Fei would return again.
Basically, you would have to leave the stage. Obviously, the day you would be able to return is indeterminate. Hence, you will not do it. Am I mistaken?

Id: So you know me too well. I don't have complete . . .

Citan: What is wrong, Id?

Id: You forced me on stage. He's waking. Under normal circumstances,
I would've been able to hold on. But I can't. This is all that woman's fault.
Her existence makes Fei resistant.

Citan: You mean Elly?

Id: That woman . . .the same.
Everyone. Must . . .eliminate . . .

Citan: I do not understand. I do not understand, Id.

Id: You don't need to understand. But when the time comes, just take it as it comes.
Reality and death . . .I'll eventually get to you . . .Be seein' ya.

Scene fades and returns to the throne room as Citan continues -

Citan: The emotional portion of Fei's present personality was sealed up by . . . . . .his father through some method . . .And now with the cleared foundation of Id's personality . . . In computer terms . . .it is like constructing a mock personality on top of the compatible portion of the OS. That is the reason Fei has no memory of his past. Those 10 or so years of memories are under the supervision of Id. As long as Id does not willingly hand over the memories . . .There is no way for Fei to know since he did not even exist before the time Id was sealed up. The present Fei's personality is an underdeveloped one which was built upon within . . . . . .the three years of living in Lahan, studying and acquiring other people's reactions. Hence, he does not know how to fully cope with sudden or emotional situations. Elly, you are the one who has spent the most time with Fei so I would assume you would understand this. Were there not times when he would be psychologically unstable? For example, he would be manically depressive and then have sudden fits of rage . . .

Elly nods once and says -

Elly: . . .(pause) Yes . . .

Then Jessie speaks -

Jessie: Then his present personality is but only a temporary one?

Citan: That is not what I am saying. The present Fei is one single personality. It is just that structure-wise, his personality was constructed on top of Id's . . . . . .hence placing Fei at a lower hierarchy. That is why when Id is active, Fei has no recollection of it.

Jessie: Then that means he might eventually be overtaken by Id?

Citan: Yes, if it were only Id and Fei. But that does not seem to be the case. Id only manifests when Fei's mental energy is in a weakened state. It is a mystery in itself that the lower level personality of Fei . . . . . .has any control over the upper level personality of Id. It is obvious that there exists a third personality. Id calls this existence the coward. In my observation, this coward may be the fundamental personality of Fei. In other words, Id's manifestation is not controlled by Fei . . . . . .but is controlled by the personality known as the coward.

Jessie: . . .Then that means, what?

Citan: At the same time Id resents the coward, he also obviously fears it. From a certain point of view, this coward is the one assisting in keeping the present Fei in control. I do not know the reason why this third personality, excuse me . . . . . .Fei's fundamental personality, does not come out . . . If this one awakens, it will become one with Id. In other words, there is a possibility that the complete original personality . . . . . .may be restored.

Jessie: Is that for sure?

Citan: Probably. But I do not know how to awaken it. Before I had the opportunity, Id disappeared and he has been like that since. Basically, as long as nothing happens to Fei that would challenge his existence . . . . . .Fei can be himself. But his surroundings do not allow him that opportunity. It would be best for him to live in a place that is peaceful . . .

Scene fades and cuts to Shevat's tactical command room where the party members and some of the Shevat elders are assembled with Queen Zephyr and Gaspar standing nearby. Holographic images surround them and one of the elders says -

E1: That is Lacan . . .No, the dark one. Grahf's second advent! We must restrain and seal him up otherwise we don't know what may occur!

Zephyr: Cease this at once! May we at least wait for Wiseman to return before we make any resolutions?

One of the other elders speaks, asking -

E2: Although a tactician, why do you place so much importance on him? I have been silent all this time since Khan's death, since he was directly recruited by the Queen. However, I question why you would use such a person whose principles lack any understanding of sacrifice?

Zephyr: Well, that is . . .

E2: You must look at reality! The existence of that power!

Then Bart speaks up -

Bart: Hold on, hold on. What's this Grahf's second advent?

E3: The Day of the Collapse was brought upon by Grahf. Grahf manipulated Diabolos into destroying this world. And that power within Id is far too similar to Grahf's. We cannot allow such a hazard to be set free. We ought to immediately freeze him in carbonite. Otherwise, expect the worst at any moment . . .

Then Elly says -

Elly: No . . .! But isn't the present Fei the real Fei? If that's the case, then why . . .

E3: But he is still far too dangerous! Think about it. He single-handedly annihilated the Solaris capital! We can't set him free!

Jessie: Not only that. In the past, there were countless other cities that were destroyed by Id. I don't know their intentions, but Grahf and Krelian were always involved somehow. And one of those incidents was Elru. It was Dominia's homeland. Solaris' purging of the rebelling city of Elru was done through the use of Id. To test his capabilities. As a result, not only was Elru taken down, all the Solaris units present were wiped out . . .

Bart: He's responsible for the Ygg's . . .and our . . .

Rico: So he was the one who killed my subordinates in the sewers . . .

Elly: What's wrong with you all? Aren't we supposed to be his friends!?

Then Citan speaks -

Citan: It appears everyone else is in agreement . . . The risks are just too great.

Elly: Citan!? No . . .That is terrible!

Zephyr: . . .

E1: It's decided then. He will be scheduled for carbon freezing tomorrow.

Scene fades and cuts to a darkened area, the sound of water dripping somewhere in the distance, its noise hollow and empty. Fei's voice comes in the gloom -

Fei: I heard about it from doc. Id . . .

Fei: . . .Who would've ever thought within me, lies another me . . .

Elly: But you're the same Fei I've always known.

Elly: You returned to your old self. Please don't be obsessed with it.

Elly is seen standing before the cage he is in, looking up at him and he says -

Fei: They say I'm the second advent of Grahf. The one who destroyed all of this world . . .

Fei: It seems Grahf used to be a land dweller named Lacan . . .

Elly: They're not thinking about what they're saying! They're just confused by your powers!

Fei: Grahf called me the one who would destroy god. In a way, I can understand what he means now. Though my Id power isn't good enough, if it has the same quality as Grahf's . . .I . . .

Elly: Let's escape. If Grahf, or the war brings out Id, let's go to a place where no wars exist.

Fei steps towards her and says -

Fei: If you did that, you'd be . . .

She looks to the side and says -

Elly: That's alright . . .I don't have a place to go back, either . . .

She looks up at him and he turns away. Then he says -

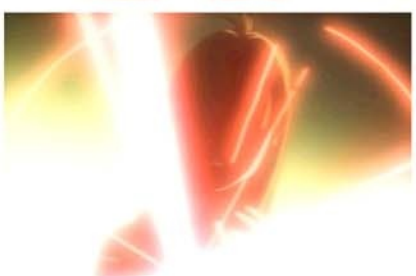
Fei: Thanks Elly, but no. Even if I left the battlefield, there's no guarantee that Id'll never appear again. Besides . . .I tried to kill you . . .You're still okay with that?

She looks up at him and shakes her head, saying -

Elly: Then you could've killed me if you really wanted to, right? The other you, Id's power is nothing like that. (pause) But you still didn't go through with it. You knew when it was enough. Isn't that because your will was in effect?

There is silence and she nods once, then says -

Elly: If you're to be controlled by Id and all those around you became your enemies . . . I'd still be by your side. (pauses) . . .Because . . .(pause) Because . . .I know it's lonely to be by yourself.



For a moment, Fei sees a brief vision of a woman who reaches out, and he hears " . . .must be lonely." The woman has red hair and something red glitters at her chest, catching the light as she holds out her hand and -

Scene returns to the prison area once more as Elly says -

Elly: I'll open it now. Let's go, Fei.

He turns to her and says -

Fei: Elly . . .

He steps forward and scene fades. Cuts to an image of Weltall's face, shadowed in darkness. The view pulls back to reveal the Gear back in the dock on board the Yggdrasil. The lights are out and all is silent. View pans down to where Fei stands on the catwalk before the Gear, facing Elly. He nods once and then she turns at the sound of a voice -

"I thought it was almost time for you to come . . ."

View moves to face Fei and Elly from the side and Citan becomes visible at the lower right. She faces him and adopts a fighting stance as she says -

Elly: It's no use trying to stop me. Even if it is you, if you get in my way, I have no choice but to . . .!!

Citan shakes his head and says -

Citan: That is no way for a lady to speak. I just came here to see you off.

She steps back and, "?" He nods once and says -

Citan: I refueled Weltall. We are ready to go anytime.

There is a pause, then Elly says -

Elly: . . .Citan.

Citan: . . .But, Elly, you cannot use your Gear while it is under repairs.

Elly: what? Then what am I . . .?

Citan: You know that Omnigear . . .What if you borrow it . . .

She bows her head and Fei shakes his, saying -

Fei: No way. I can't take Shevat's property without permission . . .

Citan shakes his head and says -

Citan: Elly is the only appropriate person for the Gear. Nobody else can operate it.

Softly, she says, "No . . ." and then turns to Fei, shaking her head as she says -

Elly: Never!! I won't ride it, ever!!

Fei steps towards her and asks -

Fei: Elly . . .? What's wrong?

She kneels down to the floor, hunched over and says -

Elly: I'm so scared . . .That's why . . .I'll never want to do it!!

Fei kneels down beside her, and Citan says -

Citan: This is a problem . . .

Then, another voice is heard -

"How about if I ride with you?"

View pulls back to reveal Bart, standing next to Billy and Margie off to the side. Fei says -

Fei: Everyone . . .?

Bart strides forward, then stops, bowing his head as he says -

Bart: Sorry . . .Fei.

Billy nods and says -

Billy: I'm sorry . . .

Margie: Sorry . . .

Bart looks up and Fei shakes his head, saying -

Fei: No . . .Thanks, everyone.

Citan crosses his arms, foot tapping as he says -

Citan: Now, I know you hate to leave, but we should get going before dawn. I did some work on the radar, so it should work fine!

Scene fades and cuts back to one facing Billy, Bart, Citan and Margie as they stand in the darkened hangar looking out at where Weltall had been. Citan says -

Citan: . . .They have left.

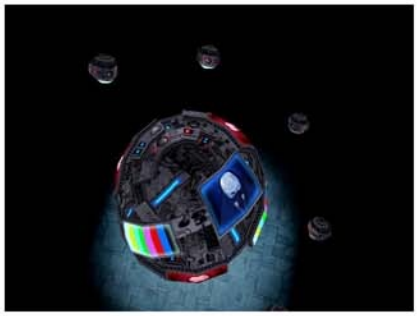
Emeralda appears from the left and she walks over to stare out at the empty Gear pad. She says -

Emeralda: Fei . . .where . . .

Citan: They went far away.

She steps towards the edge of the catwalk -

Emeralda: I . . .go . . .



Scene fades and cuts to the darkened chamber in which the Ministry is located.

Cain . . .Making a ridiculous setup with Hyuga . . .

He certainly has his deficiencies compared to our digitized existence, which permits us to use a higher level of logical thinking . . .

He is restricted by his human form.

Regardless . . .with just one machine, he annihilated Etrenank. His powers must not be underestimated . . .

We're already short of time. The key, use the key . . .

Krelian: Even you are beginning to feel the pressure?

A pedestal becomes visible, followed by Krelian and he stands before them.

Krelian . . .What is Cain's situation?

Krelian: The usual life extension treatment. He'll hold out for . . . a little longer . . .

Does that mean we may not make it in time . . .?

Krelian: I wouldn't know . . .You spoke of using the key. Can you be sure he can be eliminated?

That we do not know. You know who he is . . .

If he is the 'contact', there is a possibility he may not transmigrate.

It's an organism composed of multiple generations. It's a matter of probability.

That does not mean we can just remain idle.

Yes. At this rate we are bound to make the same mistake. But we can't fail a second time.

Krelian: Well don't worry. I've sent Ramsus to deal with him.

What can a failure like him do?

He couldn't even defend Etrenank. What can you expect from 'trash' like him.

Krelian: Even if he has the 'Anima Relic'?

The 'Relic' . . .

Krelian: The relic we recovered before has been aligned with his Gear. There shouldn't be any problems now. He should be able to use his full power.

You're going to take the task yourself? Although he transmigrated, wasn't he once one of you? I don't understand you.

Krelian: I've thrown away all feelings of human emotion. All I need is 'her'.

But isn't that also an emotion?

Krelian: . . .Of course.

Is that a blunder . . .

Krelian: You are irritating . . .Do you wish to cease your existence?

Fine. We shall leave it at that.

Scene fades and cuts to the interior of a Gear's cockpit from behind its pale haired occupant, the blue sky ahead and the distant roar of its engines all around. The view darkens slightly and Ramsus says -

"Elhaym . . .?"

Krelian's voice is heard over the 'comm and he says -

Krelian: Yes. This is the place. I want you to bring her here. She is an important woman to me.

Ramsus: Don't be ridiculous. Why do I have to listen to you? If you need her, go get her yourself!

Krelian: You're quite right. But, can you say the same thing after looking at this?

Ramsus: Th, this is . . .

Krelian: Your Gear and the Anima Relic have been aligned . . .
This is the Omnigear. Now, she is with Fei now.

Ramsus: What!?

Krelian: Losing those battles against Fei again and again . . .I believe it's because of the difference in the performance of the Gears. I think you'll be able to use 100% of its abilities. So how about it? However, if you still fail with this, you are truly 'trash'.

Ramsus: . . .

Krelian: Ramsus, will you go?

There is silence, then Miang's voice is heard -

Miang: Kahr, are you going?

Ramsus: Yes. I must get rid of him with my own hands.

Miang: Be careful. I believe in you no matter what others say.

The view brightens once more, wispy clouds passing by on either side as Ramsus says -

" 'Fei'. What a loathsome name. I worked my way up on my own. But he ruined it again . . ."

A tiny black speck becomes visible just up ahead and Ramsus -

Ramsus: !? That signal . . .! It's him! I'm not trash! I'm not worthless!

The shape grows steadily larger and scene cuts to Weltall's cockpit, A winged shape appears behind them, bright light surrounding it from its engines. Fei -

Fei: What kinda . . .Gear is that . . .?

Then Elly, "!!" and she turns around to face the approaching Gear as it gets steadily closer. She says -

Elly: Omnigear!! And according to the readings . . .It's clearly different from the one Bart's using or the one in Shevat . . . . . .You think it's the!? Perfect Gear!?

He says, "Perfect Gear . . .?" and she turns around to him and says -

Elly: Remember what Citan said? He said that the Omnigears are controlled by mind waves. The power . . .the potential varies depending on the rate of synchronism. The numbers indicate complete synchronization.

The winged Gear rapidly approaches and view switches to one inside his cockpit, facing ahead where Weltall is visible in the forward viewscreen and Ramsus says -

Ramsus: Slow, too slow!

View cuts back to Weltall's cockpit as Elly turns to face the Gear and says -

Elly: They're catching up with us!!

Cuts to Ramsus' cockpit as Weltall grows larger in the viewscreen and Ramsus says -

Ramsus: Your performance is sad!

Scene cuts to one outside both Gears as Ramsus' Omnigear approaches Weltall.

Ramsus: Hmph . . .I knew you'd be there.

Fei: Ramsus!?

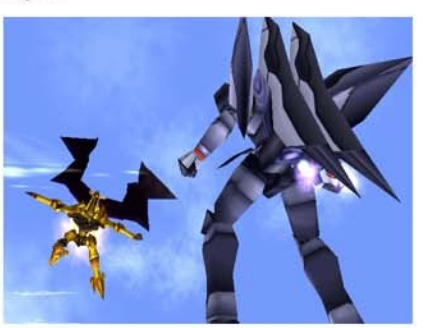
Ramsus: Turn Lt. Elhaym over to me, Fei!

Fei: What!? Why do we have to turn Elly over to you . . .!? Oh, I get it, it's Krelian's idea isn't it? I don't think so! You can't expect me to comply!

Ramsus: I can take her by force, if you wish. But then, don't ever expect to be able to hold her in your arms (pause) ever again!

Elly: Fei!!

Then Weltall halts and turns around, facing Ramsus. Fei says -



Fei: Don't worry. I'll protect you.

Ramsus: Impressive words.
Fei, I intend to take everything
away from you!!

Battle begins! Scene cuts to a close up of
Ramsus' Gear as he calls over -

Ramsus: This is your final warning!
Hand over Lt. Elhaym, now!

Fei: I refuse to!

Ramsus: Are you sure you want to refuse me?
It'll be too late for you to change your mind later!

Fei: Stop your stupid boasting!

Ramsus: Humm . . .Well then, I'll have to show you
if I'm boasting or not! So be it. No holding back!
And no holds barred!

Ramsus approaches Weltall who adopts a defensive stance. Instead of a sword, Ramsus uses flails of energy against Weltall and they prove devastating.

Scene cuts to one facing Ramsus' Gear as he says -

Ramsus: Come on, come on! What poor form! What's wrong, Fei!?
In the presence of my 'Vendetta', your Weltall is but only an infant!

Ramsus: Incredible! This undeniable difference in power! Miang!
Are you watching this!?

Ramsus: At this rate . . .And with this power, I can defeat him!

Ramsus: Hm Hm Hm Hm Hmm . . .Wah hah hah hah hah!

Elly calls over -

Elly: . . .Ramsus, listen! I surrender!!
So please stop attacking us this instant!

Fei: What are you saying!? If you do that . . .

Elly: It is me he wants! I can't drag you into danger just over me!

Then Ramsus flails out with his energy sword and -

Elly: Eeeeyaaah!

View cuts to Weltall from the side off to the left as he guards against the onslaught and Elly says -

Elly: Stop attacking! Ramsus! If I'm what you want, then just take me!

Ramsus: Hyah hah hah hah hah! Win! I can win!
I am not the worthless one!!

Fei: Ramsus . . .!? Can't you hear us . . .?

Elly: He's lost himself in the overwhelming power
of that Gear of his . . .Fei, we had better run!

View pulls back to both Gears as they hover above the clouds and Ramsus says -

Ramsus: It's over for you!
Fei Fong Wong!

With a blast of his engines, he approaches Weltall once more and lashes into him. Then, view cuts to one of Vendetta from the side as he hold his hands before him, gathering energy around them and discharges a beam of energy into Weltall. The Gear falls back beneath the onslaught and view cuts to one further back as Weltall disappears below the clouds.

Fei: Uuaaaaaahhh!!

Elly: Eeeeyyyaahhh!!

View cuts to a close up of Vendetta as Ramsus says -

Ramsus: Nuah hah hah hah hah! I am not the worthless one!
Hah! Uha, haah . . .haah . . .Huh?

View switches to one just behind Vendetta as he looks out at the empty sky.

Ramsus: !! I've even taken out the lieutenant too . . .Damn, I forgot my orders . . .
Hmph . .Oh well . . .to hell with Krelian's orders . . .

With a great sweep of his wings, he flies up and disappears.

Scene fades and cuts to darkness as Fei's voice is heard -

"Damn . . .The bleeding . . .The bleeding won't stop . . .If things don't change . . .
At this rate Elly's not gonna make it . . .!

Scene cuts to a view of a forest, the endless trunks receding off into the emerald hued depths. The view pans down to the rigth near a hillock as Elly's voice is heard -

" . . .Uh . . ."

The view moves down to where plumes of smoke rise to the verdant canopy above and Fei's voice is heard once more -

"Elly! Hang in there! Elly! I'll save you, I promise!"

The view moves down to where Fei and Elly are visible near the flaming twisted wreckage of what was once Weltall. Elly -

" . . .!!"

Fei is carrying her and blood pours form a wound in her abdomen. As they move slowly past Weltall's remains, flames billowing out of the cockpit, the view moves down to where a ghostly form watches them from the trees. Fei makes his way slowly with Elly as the figure turns to watch them in silence.

Scene fades.

Taura's House

Scene cuts to where Fei sits in a chair beneath a pool of light. Surrounding him is a field full of stars set against the backdrop of the darkest depths of space. The pendant is seen swinging to and fro behind him to the upper left and -

"Dreaming . . .
I was dreaming . . . Perhaps it may have been but a long forgotten memory . . .
A dream . . . A memory . . .Things remembered when one is asleep . . .Things forgotten when one is awake . . .
Where the deepest layers of memories become the utmost layers of one's dreams . . .
Which are reality? Which are illusion? One cannot tell until one awakes . . .

Or perhaps they are at the same time, both truth and fiction . . . A vast nebulous . . .
with no boundaries . . . an emptiness equivalent to my own existence . . .
I dreamt such a dream . . . A long . . . never-ending, dream . . .

White light grows, then consumes all and a voice is heard, " . . .La . . .can . . ."

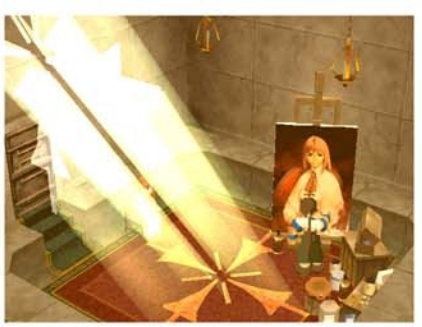
As the whiteness fades, a window through which sunlight streams becomes visible, and the voice comes again -

"Lacan, what is wrong?"

The light fades and the window is revealed to be shaped like the pendant, warm radiance shining through in glowing bars.

"Lacan?"

"In that dream, I was called 'Lacan' . . .
I was an artist . . .
I had become recognized as a talented artist and now was painting the portrait of the Nisan Mother, 'Sophia' . . .



View fades to one from above a red haired woman who is seated before a man who paints her portrait a little distance away. He is surrounded by the tools of his trade as he works.

Lacan: Huh . . .no, it is nothing.

He hears her say -

" . . .Let us finish for today. You look rather tired. . . .Are you alright?"

Lacan: I am fine, thank you . . .But, now that you mention it . . .

He stops his work on the portrait and looks over at her, saying -

Lacan: Shall we stop for the day? You must be the one who is tired, 'Mother Sophia'?

Sophia speaks, and her warm blue eyes are framed by golden red hair, and she says -

Sophia: Enough of that, now. When it is just the two of us, would you stop calling me that. Just call me 'Elly' . . .As you used to do in the old days . . . (pauses) And you don' have to be so stiff and formal.

Lacan shakes his head, then nods once, looking down at the picture and says -

Lacan: Oh, errh, alright. Very well . . .no, I mean . . . Yes, let's do that 'Elly'!

He look over at her once more, and scene fades, white light consuming all. It returns to the field of stars and Fei continues -

" ' Elly' . . .
It was a time when she went by such a name. A time when we had met up with one another . . .
A time when nothing mattered between us . . .
It was better that way . . . Just two people, together . . .
It was better to have left it that way . . .

White light fills the view, consuming all and scene returns to the chamber once more as Lacan stands before the portrait, and he slowly shakes his head.

Lacan: I think I might go back home . . .Only for a week or so.

Elly: Oh, really? What is the matter?

He looks down briefly, then straight ahead, and says -

Lacan: I ran out of paint. So . . .I, erhh, need to go make some more.

Elly: You're going all that way . . .just to do that?

He leans his head back, letting the light touch it briefly, then nods and says -

Lacan: If I don't go now, I won't be able to get the right pigments.

He look over at her as she rises from her seat and approaches him, saying -

Elly: Oh . . .Then how about I have one of my followers, the - Kahal -, take you in one of our Gears? You'll arrive quicker (pause) and you'll be much more safe.

The view darkens, the light draining away and Fei says -

"I lied . . . I wasn't out of paint. I just feared I would finish the portrait.
I wanted to keep on painting . . .forever.
So I wanted to buy time . . . She'd probably despise me for that . . .
No, she'd probably just give me her usual smile.
She was that kind of woman . . .

View fades and cuts to the star field once more. The pendant swings beyond and Fei once more sits beneath the circle of light. He continues -

"Dreams . . .
A life of a man named Lacan . . . and the lives of countless other men . . .
All but dreams . . .
Now that I am awake, those countless numbers of long, heartrending dreams are almost impossible to remember at all . . .
In those dreams, I loved one woman . . . no matter the day, no matter the era . . .that did not change . . .
Nor did her name . . .

View fades and returns to Fei in the chair once more. This time, the image behind him is of Elly.

"That dream changed me . . . That dream was the catalyst for me to resolve what my purpose was.
I think I know now . . .what I have to do . . .
That long, long memory of a dream . . .
Perhaps it was the memory of my soul . . .

White light consumes all, then cuts to the endless field of stars, but this time it is Elly who is in the chair beneath the circle of light.

"A dream . . .
I was dreaming a dream . . . or perhaps it was a memory from a distant past . . . a dream . . .a memory . . .
Those words I was unable to convey . . .that day . . .that time . . . those thoughts I was unable to carry out . . .words and thoughts . . . the connection between the two . . .
Without words, thoughts cannot be conveyed . . .without thoughts, there are no words . . .
They are both as vital as each other . . . they can never be divided . . .like the wings of angels . . .
Like a man and woman . . .
An unchangeable destiny . . . feelings one wishes one could change . . .
Meeting with the person . . . who would change me . . . and watching myself change . . .

I dreamt such a dream . . . a long . . .never-ending, dream . . .

View fades as white light consumes all and in the midst of the brightness, a voice is heard -

" . . .La . . . can . . ."

The light slowly fades to a pendant shaped window through which beams of sunlight fall. The voice comes again -

"Lacan, what is wrong?"

Then -

"Lacan?"

"In that dream, I was called 'Sophia' . . . Mother Sophia . . . a symbolic name . . . crowned upon the person who would be the people's hope . . . a name I was destined to have whether I wanted it or not . . .

Lacan: Huh . . .no, it is nothing.

" . . .Let us finish for today. You look rather tired. . . .Are you alright?"

Lacan: I am fine, thank you . . .But, now that you mention it . . .

He stops and look over at her, saying -

Lacan: Shall we stop for the day? You must be the one who is tired, 'Mother Sophia'?

Sophia: Enough of that, now. When it is just the two of us, would you stop calling me that. Just call me 'Elly' . . .As you used to do in the old days . . . (pause) And you don't have to be so stiff and formal.

He shakes his head, then turns to look back at the portrait and nods once, saying -

Lacan: Oh, erhh, alright. Very well . . .no, I mean . . . Yes, let's do that 'Elly'!

He turns to look at her and brightness fills the view, white light surrounding all and scene returns to Elly who sits in the chair. She says -

" 'Elhaym' . . . I've always liked that name . . . Because, when I first met him, that is what he called me . . . That is my true name . . .

White light consumes all, then scene returns to the room once more where she is seated before Lacan who shakes his head, then turns and walks towards her, stopping in the center of the floor. He looks up into the warm beams of sunlight and -

Lacan: I think I might go back home . . .only for a week or so.

Elly: Oh, really? What is the matter?

He looks down at the floor briefly, then looks over to her and says -

Lacan: I ran out of paint. So . . .I, errh, need to go make some more.

Elly: You're going all that way . . .just to do that?

He faces straight ahead and nods once, saying -

Lacan: If I don't go there, I won't be able to get the right pigments.

He turns his head to look at her once more as she rises from her seat and steps towards him. She says -

Elly: Oh . . .Then how about I have one of my followers, the - Kahal -, take you in one of our Gears? You'll arrive quicker (pause) and you'll be much more safe.

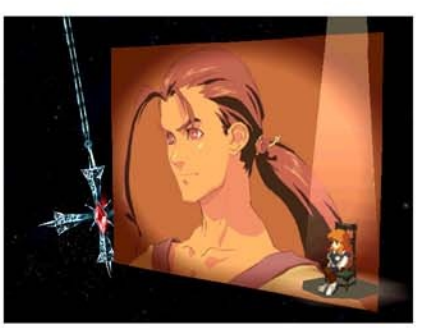
View darkens and Elly continues -

"I wonder when it started . . . that he started refusing me . . . the walls between us . . . Our 'positions' . . . our 'circumstances' . . . he refused to recognize these . . .

No . . .maybe it was me . . .

Therefore . . . I didn't want them . . . I wanted the two of us to be ourselves . . .that is what I wished for . . .

So, I had him paint me . . .the way I really am . . .



Scene fades and cuts to the velvety blackness of the star field one more, the pendant swinging slowly in the background and Elly sitting in the chair beneath the circle of light. She says -

"Dreams . . .

A life of a woman named Sophia . . .and the lives of countless other women . . .all but dreams . . .

Now that I am awake, those countless numbers of long, heartrending dreams are almost impossible to remember at all . . .

In those dreams, I loved one man . . .no matter the day, no matter the era . . .that did not change . . .

Only his name . . .

"That dream changed me . . .that dream was the catalyst for me to resolve what my purpose was.

I think I know now . . .what I have to do . . .

That long, long memory of a dream . . .that perhaps was the memory of my soul . . .

White light consumes all and scene cuts to Fei who floats naked in a glass tube filled with a bubbling greenish yellow substance. Fei's eyes open and view pulls back. An old man works over to the side . The sound of a buzzer is heard and he says -

Mysterious old man: Hmm . . .He's finally awake . . .

The old one comes around the table where a single candle burns and makes his way over to the tube where he works at a console set near the bottom section. Then he says -

"Here you go . . ."

And the lid is raised from the tube as scene fades. Scene cuts back to the same room as Fei stands, fully clothed near the tube, the old one if front of the table near the shelves. Fei holds his hands out before him and says -

Fei: I'm . . .healed.

He looks up at the old one who says -

Mysterious old man: You've been sleeping in this Nanoreactor for three weeks.

Fei: Nanoreactor? Who are you . . .?

Mysterious old man: Me . . .?

The old one turns and moves towards the shelves, his back to Fei and he says -

Taura: I forgot my name . . .Some people call me Taura . . .

Then he turns back to Fei once more and says -

Taura: You seemed to have recovered completely. Those were terrible wounds, but maybe your youth and strength helped . . .

Taura continues, making his way around the table and towards the left side of the room.

Taura: But your friend's wounds are more serious and may take a while longer . . .

Fei turns to watch Taura between the tubes, and sees Elly in the next tube, completely naked in the bubbling yellow green substance. He says, "My friend . . .?" Then -

Fei: Elly!!

Taura stops behind Elly's tube and faces it and Fei says -

Taura: Hey! Quit staring at the naked girl and come over here!

Fei: Elly . . .

Taura turns towards the door on the left and goes into the next room, and Fei "!!"

Fei turns around, his back to Elly and view pulls in closer as her body moves to face in his direction, even curled up as she is. He turns around once more, asking "Elly . . .?"

Fei goes towards the door, entering another chamber brightly lit. He sees a familiar person over by the other end of the room. It's Citan! He calls out -

Citan: Fei!!

Citan comes towards him and he says -

Fei: Doc!!

Citan stops a short distance away and says -

Citan: I heard from Taura and hurried right over here! Boy, was that lucky. You were fortunate to have come down near Taura's research facility . . .

They hear Taura's voice from somewhere in another part of the room -

Taura: Hm . . .This is no research facility. It is 'a man's hideaway'!

Both Citan and Fei walk over to where Taura stands near a central stone fireplace, a pot over the flames and something cooking within. He says -

Taura: Citan told me about you. I was shocked to see a couple lying down with blood all over them.

Half to himself, Fei says, "A couple . . ." Then Citan says -

Citan: At any rate, you had a narrow escape. Fei, make sure you thank Taura!

Fei looks at Taura and nods once, saying -

Fei: Taura, thank you very much for helping Elly . . .
Both Elly and I were hurt so badly . . . (pause)
What is that machine . . .?

Taura turns to the side, facing off in the direction of the other room and says -

Taura: It's called a Nanoreactor. It is a device that can rebuild substances at the molecular level. Not only can it just heal humans, but theoretically it should also be able to create many substances.

Fei: Is that the same thing as that guy in Solaris . . .?
I mean . . .Is that the same thing as Krelian is studying?

Taura turns to him and says -

Taura: Yes, that's right.

Then he turns his back to them and there is a moment of silence. Then he says -

Taura: I was the one who taught Nanotechnology to him . . .

Fei: You did?

Then a buzzer is heard and Taura turns toward the other room and says -

Taura: We shouldn't waste time talking about such an (pause) unimportant subject. Looks like her treatment is done.

Taura goes over to the door leading into the adjoining chamber and Fei turns to watch him go, Citan off to the side. Fei starts forward and Taura turns back to him, saying -

Taura: Oh, you don't need to come. Just wait there.

He turns and goes through the door and Fei makes his way over to the side, and -

Fei: . . .

Citan: Fei . . .

There is silence, then the door opens and Fei turns as Elly comes through, fully clothed. Taura is behind her and Citan steps forward. Fei says -

Fei: Elly!!

She says -

Elly: Fei . . .I . . .

There is a moment of silence, as they stare at one another, the Taura says -

Taura: Ahem! Now, why don't you two go get some fresh air outside? It ought to ease the shock of the change.

Scene fades and cuts to where Fei and Elly stand facing each other surrounded by trees. They stand on a mound and Fei turns around, his back to her as he says -

Fei: I knew it was you . . .

Elly: Fei . . .?

Fei: When you came in the room just then . . .I was afraid you may have forgotten about me and everything else . . .

Elly: What do you mean . . .?

Fei: I mean . . .because . . .Elly, you seemed a little different than before . . .

She turns her back and asks -

Elly: Has my face . . .changed?

He turns back around to her and shakes his head, saying -

Fei: No, that's not it . . .It's more like . . .

He bows his head and says -

Fei: I mean your atmosphere or impression is different . . .(pause) just a little.

View swings around to face them from the side as he turns and puts his hands on his hips, looking down at the ground. He says -

Fei: But, I felt something familiar . . .I felt the same way when I met you for the first time . . .Some peculiar feeling like we've met before, somewhere . . .

There is silence and she walks a little ways from him and then stops, bowing her head.

Elly: Fei . . .

He turns to her and asks -

Fei: Yes?

She looks up, staring out over the forest and says -

Elly: I don't remember much what happened after we were shot down . . .

He nods once and says -

Fei: It's better that way.

She turns to him, shaking her head and says -

Elly: But I heard someone calling my name . . .I felt I was covered with something very warm . . .I remember that clearly . . .

Fei: . . .

She nods once and says -

Elly: Thank you, Fei.

Then he says, "Elly . . ." and view moves in closer as he steps towards her and she moves towards him, saying, "Fei . . ."

Then, they hear a voice from below -

Taura: Hey, it's almost time for you to come back. There's something important we need to talk to you about.

Fei thinks, " . . ." and turns towards the direction of the voice, nodding once and calling down -

Fei: A, alright, we're coming!

Then he turns back to her and says -

Fei: Well, Elly, shall we go see what's up?

She nods once and says -

Elly: S, sure . . .

They make their way down off the roof of Taura's house and make their way to the door and into the main room. Finding it empty, they go into the laboratory where Taura and Citan are.

Taura: How do you feel now? The fresh forest air should have refreshed you somewhat, heh?

Then -

Taura: Anyway . . .It's about the removal of the seal . . .I found out it can be released by using the Nanotechnology that regenerated you two. The Nanoassemblers are enclosed in this pod.

Citan: If only we could scatter them all over the world . . .

Taura turns to him and says -

Taura: There's an ancient military installation nearby . . . We might be able to use the 'Mass - driver' located in there to launch this pod into the upper atmosphere. Once the Nanoassemblers are released up there, the convection currents should spread 'em over the world!

He turns back to Fei and says -

Taura: I wish I could go do it . . .but I am getting much too old for that type of thing. Then again, it's for your future. An old man should not butt in. You young ones must do it for yourselves!

He steps towards Fei and -

Taura: Here. And, of course, I'm not asking you to do it for free. Try this wrist band on.

Fei, "?" and takes the band from Taura, turning to the side as he slips it on. Citan asks -

Citan: What is that?

Taura turns to him and responds -

Taura: This is an 'Emotion Control Device' in which nanotechnology is applied. From this machine shaped as a wrist band, nanomachines are infused through your epidermis into your brain. There they refine the SSRI intracerebral substances, such as Serotonin, that control emotions.

Fei drops his arms and "??" Taura turns to him and -

Taura: Well, I suppose it's rather difficult for you to understand . . .But in short, it means that the manifestation of your second personality, 'Id', can be supressed

Fei turns and walks away a few paces, then shakes his head, saying -

Fei: Id . . .

Elly steps towards him and says -

Elly: Fei . . .

Taura: Well, it's all theoretical though . . .Oh, and I did one more thing as well . . .I installed the same control device in your Gear . . .

Citan: You mean, it can release Id at will . . .?

Fei turns back around as Taura responds -

Taura: Yes. I called it 'System Id'. But of course it should not be over-used. Use it only as a last resort.

Fei turns back around, looks at the end of the chamber, then says -

Fei: Elly, doc, I . . .

Citan: Fei, there was nothing you could do . . . It will never happen again with Taura's technology though. He is one of the three Shevat sages.

Taura: Whether you believe it or not, it's up to you.

There is silence and Fei thinks, " . . ."

Then Taura says -

Taura: Oh? It sounds like we have a guest!

Elly joins Fei and they go out into the adjoining chamber where a man waits. He says -

Shevat Emissary: Fei . . .! We've got problems!!

Fei and Elly walk forward and stand near the table. The Emissary says -

Shevat Emissary: Today, a peace settlement between Aveh and Kislev is being held at Shevat . . . But, Solaris' mobile weapons are approaching Shevat as we speak! Please, help us!

Taura appears at the door leading to the other room, behind Fei and Elly and he says -

Taura: That has nothing to do with this young man!!

Shevat Emissary: Taura!!

Taura approaches the Emissary as Citan enters from the other room and says -

Taura: You're getting on my nerves for being so selfish. Citan told me about you. You showed up after finding out that Id is now controllable . . .Aren't you ashamed? You haven't changed since then. You only care about yourselves.

Taura turns around to where Fei and Elly stand side by side and says -

Taura: Fei! You don't need to listen to these guys who once tried to kill you!!

Fei: But . . .

Behind him, Citan thinks -

Citan: . . .

There is silence, then Elly turns to the side, her back to Fei and says -

Elly: Please go. I'll go to the Mass - driver . . .

Fei turns to her and says -

Fei: Elly?

She walks a little distance away, and says -

Elly: No matter what happened before, Shevat needs your help now. Although you may be saving some selfish people . . .there is still the world and its countries with many more innocent people. Please, don't forget that.

She turns to Fei and asks -

Elly: Bart and his people are fighting to protect those same lives, aren't they? So, please go help them!

Fei: Are you sure? What about you?

She shakes her head and says -

Elly: Don't worry about me. I'll manage somehow.

Fei: But, all by yourself . . .

There is silence, then Citan says -

Citan: I will accompany Elly. You do not need to worry. I have brought along my own Omnigear.

Fei turns to him and says -

Fei: Your own Omnigear . . .?

After a pause, Citan responds -

Citan: Yes my Omnigear, 'Fenrir'. It is the same one I brought from Solaris. I left it with Gaspar in case of emergencies.

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Doc . . .Alright. Please take care of her for me.

He then turns to Elly and says -

Fei: Elly, be careful.

She nods once and says -

Elly: I will.

Shevat Emissary: We are truly grateful for your kindness, Fei!!

Taura: Hmph! Suit yourselves.

Fei follows the Emissary towards the door and pauses, asking -

Fei: Ignas, right?

The Emissary turns and says -

Shevat Emissary: Yes. The goal of the enemy is to destroy the cities in Ignas. They have already destroyed half of Bledavik and will probably reach Nisan in about four hours. Shevat will try to drive them back with all the power it has!

Fei: Four hours . . .That's cutting it close!

Taura turns to Fei and says -

Taura: No need to worry. Balthasar and I fixed your Gear with the nanomachines. It's much more powerful than it ever was before. Why, you should get there in half the time.

Fei turns to him and says -

Fei: What? Is old man Bal here?

Citan speaks up from over by the door to the lab -

Citan: Emeralda is here as well.

And so . . .

Scene fades and cuts to an image of a black Gear where it stands against the backdrop of the trees' canopy high above. He is truly an awesome Gear, the black plates of his armor blending in with his over all shape to give him a powerful air.The view pans down to where Balthasar stands at his feet, Emeralda, Fei, Taura and the Shevat Emissary standing before him and the Gear. Fei steps forward, looking up at Weltall in his new incarnation and says -

Fei: This is incredible!

Old man Bal: We meet again!

He turns to look at the Gear and says -

Old man Bal: The host for the spirit of the slayer of god . . . I didn't think I would ever work on it again . . .!

Fei turns to look from Taura to Bal and asks -

Fei: But why are you both helping me . . .?

Taura turns to Fei as Bal turns back around and he says -

Taura: There are some things you just can't explain with the word . . .fate. You're just going to have to see it with your own eyes.

There is a moment of silence, then Emeralda says -

Emeralda: Fei . . .Going?

He turns to look at her and nods once, saying -

Fei: Yeah, I'd better hurry!

She walks off to the left and he starts forward, calling -

Fei: Hey! Where are you going?

The Shevat Emissary turns to him and says -

Shevat Emissary: Fei, please hurry!!

Fei turns to him and nods once, saying -

Fei: A, alright.

Scene fades and cuts to a view of Weltall 2 from behind as his engines fire with a low roar. Then, with a lunge of its powerful frame, the Gear vaults up into the sky with a blast of its engines, the heat of its passage shimmering the view of the three below.

Scene fades and cuts to where Elly and Citan are standing on the roof of Taura's house. He turns to her and says -

Citan: Are you sure you want to go through with this? You wanted to live quietly away from the battle field did you not?

She turns her back to him and bows her head. She says -

Elly: I noticed myself running away from reality . . .At first, I thought my situation was similar to his. I thought Fei would understand my feelings . . .I didn't know if my love for him was real . . .I might have been desperate after losing my mother and father . . .

Citan: Elly . . .

She turns back around and looks up at him, saying -

Elly: Despite all that . . .I may still love him . . .That's why, I want to see what Fei can do and what I can do. I want us to be apart and think about ourselves again.

She turns to look out over the forest and she says -

Elly: I want to see . . .how I really feel . . .

Citan: . . .

You have changed a lot, Elly. What happened to you in the past three weeks?

She turns to face him and crosses her arms, saying -

Elly: Really? I don't think I've changed . . .

Citan: Yes, you have. I should say . . . you have matured . . . . . .Like a mother . . .

She gives a start exclaiming -

Elly: Excuse me! I'm only 18 years old! I'm nowhere near the age of being your mother!

Citan turns to the side and holds his arms over his middle, laughing, then he says -

Citan: Sorry. You gave me that impression. That is all.

Then he stops laughing and turns to her once more as she says -

Elly: Anyway, Citan, I'm going now.

He nods once and says -

Citan: Alright. I will follow you as soon as I finish off here . . .

Then, Emeralda appears from the right, she says -

Emeralda: I, I go, too.

Elly says, "What?" and Emeralda says, "I go!" Elly approaches her and kneels down, saying -

Elly: Emeralda, I can't take anyone else along with me for something like this. I'll be fine on my own.

Emeralda turns her back and says -

Emeralda: If Elly go, I go too. Emeralda have to go with you.

Elly stands and says -

Elly: Emeralda . . .?

Emeralda turns and jumps up, saying -

Emeralda: No! Emeralda go too!

Citan looks at Elly and holds out his hands, saying -

Citan: Why not let her go? I am sure Solaris has a hunch about the Limiters. They may interfere, so you may feel uneasy going it alone. (pause) I think Emeralda is cut out for this job.

Elly turns to him and he blinks, turned slightly to the side then pushes his glasses up his nose, as he says to her -

Citan: (. . .Besides, she is going to want to go no matter what. Take care of her until I can join you, please?)

Elly nod once, then turns back to Emeralda and kneels down beside her, saying -

Elly: Okay, you win. Let's help each other, alright?

Emeralda: I can do it alone. You just watch.

She rushes off and scene fades as they turn to watch after her.

Scene cuts to Taura's lab where he works over by the shelves, night noises come through the open window and as Taura bustles along, he mumbles, "Mmm . . ." then turns and lays something on a nearby chair, his hands busy. He says, "Hmm . . .hmm . . ." and then goes back over to one of the shelves.

Then a shape is seen of to the right, mostly obscured by the Nanoreactor but for a small portion of his robe. Taura thinks, "!!" and without turning from his place by the shelf, says -

Taura: I thought so . . .

There is silence, and the lone candle on the table flickers slightly. Then Taura says -

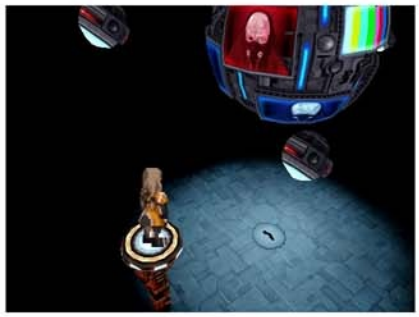
Taura: So, you were the one who brought Fei and his girl to me . . .
I realized it the minute I saw the two of them. Why, how could I help but notice . . . They looked the spitting image of you and her. Yes, just as you yourselves looked way back then . . .

Taura turns around to face in the person's direction and view moves around so that Grahf, his form transparent, is seen near the window and Taura says -

Taura: Right, Lacan . . .?

Scene fades.

Breaking the Seal



Scene cuts to the darkened chamber in which the Ministry is located.

What do you mean . . .he's still alive . . .!?

Krelian: Yes.

Ridiculous. Didn't Ramsus shoot him down?

Krelian: She was also on the Gear that Ramsus shot down.
I won't have her die.

But, there is already a 'mother' . . .Although she may be the 'Antitype', as long as the current mother exists . . .

Krelian: As far as I see it, that is not complete.

Quite picky aren't you . . .? Didn't you say you threw away all human emotions?

Krelian: I don't care what you think. Anyway . . .As far as he is concerned, I will put Ramsus onto him. Any objections? Where is he presently?

Etrenank is destroyed, but part of the memory cube is still active.
We should still be able to locate individuals.

Wait a moment . . .He has left the crash site and is heading towards Ignas.

Krelian: I see. So he has left the area . . .
(That means . . .it is only a matter of time before the seal is broken . . .)

Did you say something?

Krelian: It's nothing. Just sit there and wait for the good news.

What about retrieving the girl? The key is already beginning to resonate. The time of the resurrection is near.

Krelian: We can get the girl anytime. It doesn't have to be now . . .Let's take our time . . .

Scene fades and cuts to a forest where Fei in Weltall 2 faces Ramsus amid the trees and his voice is heard as he recounts -

"Kahran Ramsus. Ramsus once again stood in my way, in his Omnigear 'Vendetta' . . ."

"It was an unavoidable battle. I released the new function that was added to my Mark II Gear . . . 'System Id'!"

Battle begins! Now, with System Id, Weltall's attack level is at infinity and the ridges along his back crackle with unleashed power. He lands in a deathblow, but Ramsus evades and sends a ring of blue fire in his direction. It causes no damage and Fei once again presses to the attack. He lands in a good series of hits, ending with blue energy beams which slam into Ramsus' Gear. Ramsus retaliates with the energy flails and after a few rounds, Vendetta sinks to the ground with electricity crackling about its form. Fei's voice comes once again -

"Ramsus' absolute confidence was shattered . . .
Leaving only his cry of disbelief and resentment,
Ramsus' machine disappeared into a sea of foliage.
Why he was so fixated on me . . . I know not why.
But he did say this . . ."

Darkness fills the view and the words -

"If only you didn't exist . . .

White light consumes all and returns to Elly who is seated in the chair. She says -

"In order to disperse the nanomachines, Emeralda and I headed for one of the ruins of the Zeboim civilization . . . the Mass - driver facility.

"Fortunately, the facility was still active which allowed us to proceed on to the central control room with little difficulty.

"Along the way we saw various missiles and giant rockets that were created during the Zeboim era . . . They stood like tombstones of that ancient civilization. It was a graveyard for a race of people who destroyed each other over pride and arrogance.

"Once arriving at the central control room, we met up with Citan who helped us activate the Mass - driver. We succeeded in launching the capsule containing the nanomachines which would release the seal - Limiter-.

"The nanomachines that were scattered into the upper atmosphere began to multiply and spread throughout the whole of the world.
The nanomachines glittered in the sunlight. Flowing like a large river in the sky . . .
That glitter would remove the 'bonds' restraining everyone.
It was to be our light of hope for regaining back our true freedom . . .

Scene fades and cuts to Fei who continues -

"Solaris' 'Mobile Surface Supremacy Weapon' invaded the area with great force . . .
Shevat's and Nisan's standard Gear Battalions were no match against it.
It was only a matter of time before the Solaris Mobile Weapon arrived in Nisan.
After we pushed back the Solarian Gear units, we headed for Nortune . . to the Kislev capital's administrative district.
We went there to obtain our one and only means of standing up against the Mobile Weapon."

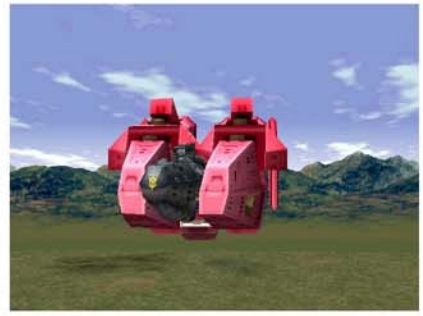
White light consumes all, then scene cuts to an overhead view of Nortune, Fei continues -

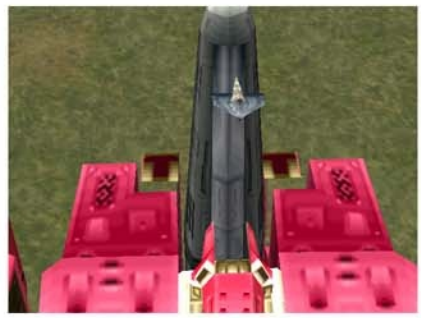
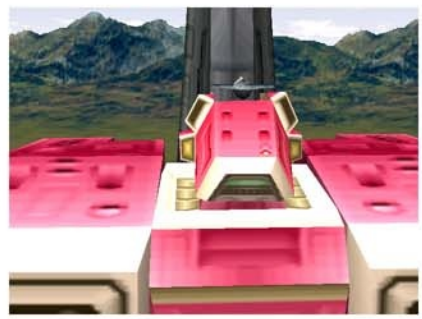
"The Kislev capital's, Nortune's 'Central Administrative District' itself was a secret battleship constructed by Bart's ancestor, Roni Fatima, after the Great War with Solaris many hundreds of years ago.

"The existence of the secret battleship remained hidden. Later, the ship was turned into a section of the Kislev Imperial capital during the founding of the Empire.

"Uncovering this truth from some ancient records, Bart activated the secret battleship in order to fight against the Solarian Mobile Surface Weapon.

"The 'Sand Cruiser Yggdrasil' was actually the center of command and also the main secret weapon of the craft . . . Awakening from 500 years of dormancy, its true form appeared before us. Commanded by its 'new master', the secret battleship stood before the Mobile Weapon with all of us inside of it.



"Super Dimensional Gear
Yggdrasil IV

Bart: Aaaalriiight! Transformation complete!
C'mon monster, let's go!

The Weapon is called FT. Hurricane and it begins by lashing out with its spikes against the Super Dimensional Gear, which has an HP of 99,999. It absorbs the hit with little damage and responds with a blow of its own, using its fists. The Weapon spins and then flattens out its spikes, unleashing a powerful beam of white/blue fire at the Super Dimensional Gear. It responds with two heavy blows with its fists, one above and one below the Weapon's central section. One of the options which the Super Dimensional Gear has is to use the Yggdrasil Cannon. Scene switches to one from behind the Super Dimensional Gear as it takes the Yggdrasil off its back and hold it like a gun at Ft. Hurricane. A bright sphere of light with beams shooting out from it appears at the front of the Yggdrasil and a wide beam of energy slams into the enemy. It goes down with crackling electricity and scene cuts to Fei where he sits in the chair, the field of stars surrounding him where he sits before an image showing Ft. Hurricane above Aveh and he says

"The Solaris Mobile Weapon was destroyed . . .which brought a sigh of relief to the continent of Ignas. Peace was signed and after some 500 years of division, the land of Ignas once again became united.

"Excitement spread throughout Aveh, Nisan, Kislev, Shevat . . .

Image switches to one looking down at the streets of Nisan where the people are gathered, tiny balls of aqua colored light in their midst.

"The sky shimmered as if to celebrate. By the hands of Elly, Citan, Taura and Emeralda, the nanomachines had been dispersed into the atmosphere.

That was when disaster struck.. . .Our songs of victory were replaced by the sounds of total pandemonium . . .

"In the beginning we had no idea what had transpired. We . . .witnessed inexplicable phenomena. People, from all parts of the globe began to mutate into abnormal forms.

"It seemed to be triggered when the nanomachines removed the - Limiter – seal that was placed on humankind by Krelian in the past . . .
. . .The 'human' form with its innate abilities released. That's when I remembered what Hammer had said back in Solaris.
His words were . . . "What becomes of the normal humans . . .?

White light consumes all, then fades to the Gazel Ministry.

So, they are naturally germinating because the resurrection of god is near . . .

Those who will become the body of our servant . . .
I never knew so many would exist, even without using the key . . .

But, some of them still have not yet begun to germinate . . .

Are they not destined to be the flesh of god?

Or, perhaps those are the enemies of god . . .

Let us reactivate the strategic points of the Soylent . . .

At any rate, they are just incomplete mutants.
They are useless now in their half-finished form.

God's apostles. There cannot be any harm in having too many of them . . .

Scene fades and cuts to where Krelian stands in a darkened chamber before a cyliner of glass. A figure approaches from behind as he stands staring at the empty cylinder and view pans around to reveal Miang standing a little behind him.

Miang: The chains that restrained humankind have been removed because of you.

Krelian turns to the side, crossing his arms, still not facing her and says -

Krelian: But that doesn't mean there is anything wrong with our plan . . .Everything is still under control.

Krelian: In the event of the explosion in the capital of Solaris earlier . . . . . .I had set up a nano-machine virus to diffuse into the atmosphere. I knew they were eventually going to break the seal . . .But the timing was a little close for comfort . . .The current mutations of the humans are an initial response to the virus . . .Once the virus we spread over the world germinates inside of the humans they are no longer the same. They change into a controllable form. We need humans that do not depend on the key's invocation in order to awaken. In other words, a being to take the place of the original body of god . . .

Miang looks down, her arms crossed and says -

Miang: It's like a trojan horse released at the time of the assimilation with god . . . A literal virus . . .But . . .isn't it different from what they intended . . .?

Krelian turns to her, shaking his head, then nods once and says -

Krelian: Of course. We can't let them have it their way. The 'Ark of god' is mine.

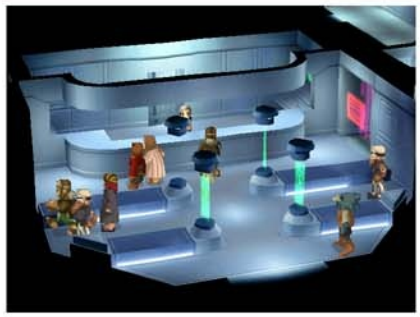
Miang brings a hand up to her face, shoulders shaking with laughter and she says -

Miang: . . .Either way is fine by me.

She stops laughing and -

Miang: I will just side with whichever is the more certain one anyway . . .

Scene fades.



Scene cuts to the interior of a gray chamber in which people and demihumans are gathered among benches lined up before a counter behind which a woman in a uniform works as the people mill around.

"The Soylent System . . . A group of facilities formerly created by Solaris.

View fades to one of the hallway beyond the waiting room, glowing red bars of light surrounding one of the hallways as they range around the room. Children huddle by their mothers as the view pans down the hallway along its gray metal length to a door.

"These facilities existed all over the earth. It is said that, originally, these were used for biological experiments and brainwashing.

The door opens and view pulls in, then switches to one of a gray metal chamber where more people are gathered. They are from all parts of the world. Some of the people have begun to twist and change, their flesh becoming distorted beneath the tidal changes taking place from within.

"The people who mutated into what were called Wels . . .or the true form of humans . . . gathered at these facilities . . .

The view pulls back and the Wels among the humans writhe and convulse, their misshapen limbs reaching out towards the others, their faces upturned.

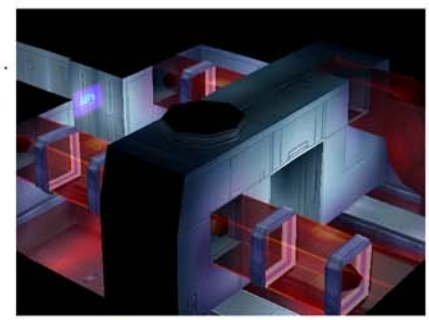
"Some of the humans turned Wels were attacking healthy humans and devouring their flesh and blood.

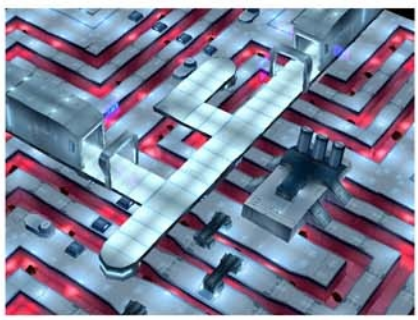
"That is because healthy human flesh and blood eased the pain of their sudden molecular changes and let them live longer. Their lives were so short . . .

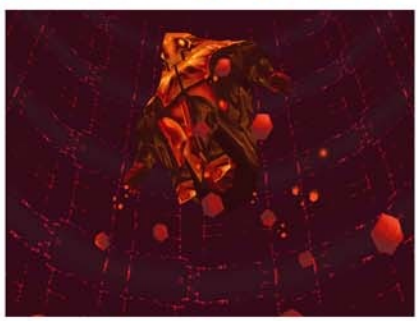
"Soon after, severely mutated beings started to seek the flesh and blood of the less mutated beings.

"The Soylent System divides and merges those mutated bodies on a molecular level . . .

"A set of facilities that recreate a more perfect single life form to be used as . . .a 'weapon'.







"This was the truth behind the Gazel Ministry's 'M Plan'.

View pulls in towards the octogonal window through which red light is seen and scene cuts to the vast interior of the metal structure, and view pans along the interior wall as red shapes become visible, moving up towards a large creature suspended in the red murk above. View switches to one of the side of the creature as more and more of the red blobs reach it, merging with it and causing it to grow.

"Go to those facilities and you will be freed from the unbearable agony . . .

"So people gathered, seeking a fulfillment of this promise.
There is salvation there . . . The news spread . . .although no one actually uttered it.

"Their mutated blood probably told such people to 'gather' there . . .

"We went there to destroy the Soylent System . . .

Scene cuts to a room lit by blue light, facing a door which slides open and Fei, Citan and Elly walk through. The view pans over to the right where people, mutants and normal alike are gathered and the three stand and look out over their numbers.

"It was an ugly battle to keep on living.
Or so it may have seemed to the casual passerby . . .

"But to me they were desperately trying to live.
It was each person's 'natural human form'.

View moves around as Elly, Fei and Citan walk over to the left and -

"There were the 'haves'and the 'have-nots' . . .
And . . .among them . . . were some of my former friends from Solaris . . .

"They wanted our flesh and blood. They told us, the 'haves' should share with the 'have-nots'.
They asked if a 'have', such as myself could understand their pain . . .
Elly is seen shaking her head and -

"I couldn't answer . . . No matter what I said it would have sounded like a conceited 'have' speaking . . .
Even so, I wanted to relieve their anguish . . . And I decided to do so.

Elly is seen nodding once, the twisted shapes of the humans before her.

"Just like the person in the memory of my dreams . . . in the distant past . . .

A flash is seen and a loud roar and view switches to one facing the structure as a large form rises from its depths. It is the creature seen in the red liquid. Fei, Elly and Citan are seen with the line of people in the foreground as it leaps out and lands on the other side of the people, facing them and Elly continues -

"Then suddenly the System went out of control!
The 'Sufal Mass', a monstrous organism still in the process of amalgamation, broke through the barrier of the life-support facilities and stood before us.

It bends down towards the people and the scene goes red, flashes of red as it wreaks havoc.

"No longer of human form . . . that which was once human began eating the people gathered there seeking relief . . . We had to fight it . . . in order to save the people and in order to save 'him' . . .
The eyes of that which was once human looked at me, pleading for . . .death . . . to take away the agony.

Scene fades and battle begins. They face the Sufal Mass and the four Sufals. They take out the smaller Sufals first, then concentrate on the larger one. At last it falls and scene cuts to where the Sufal Mass lies on theground, Fei and Citan on either side. They watch as Elly approaches and she turns to Citan and says -

Elly: Citan . . .(pauses)
Please lend me your sword . . .

He brings his hand up to his chin, looking down as she asks this, then she turns towards the Sufal and scene fades as he turns to watch her.

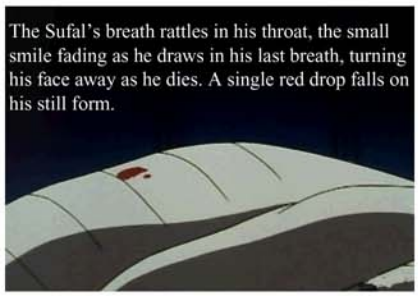
Elly kneels down beside him, her arm held out and view cuts to his parted lips as a single drop of blood falls in his mouth. A small smile touches it briefly, his breath a mere sigh.

Elly: I'm sorry . . .I guess I couldn't help you after all . . .

Elly: All I can do for you now is ease your wounds . . .

Elly: I'm so sorry . . .

Fei: Elly . . .? . . . You . . .



The Sufal's breath rattles in his throat, the small smile fading as he draws in his last breath, turning his face away as he dies. A single red drop falls on his still form.

While the others watch, Elly brings her hand up to her breast and turns her face to the side as scene fades.

Scene returns to the darkened chamber once more, the machine's upper partitions stretching up into the gloom overhead like metal trees and the view pulls back as Elly says -

Elly: Please! Listen to me! Stop fighting among yourselves. We are all humans!

View moves to the right as Elly becomes visible, standing in front of the machine before the people. They all turn to look at one another and she continues -

Elly: This facility was built by the Solaris Ministry . . .

The people are mixed with the misshapen forms of others who have further mutated. But they all listen -

Elly: It was created to implement their 'no waste' plan. Such facilities were to convert mutated humans into weapons that serve as tools for their ambitions. Just one part of their overall plan of racial purification.

There is a flash of yellow light, then scene becomes touched by a soft yellow radiance. Elly is subtly changed, her clothes cream colored, her smile soft and her eyes gentle as she looks out among the people. She speaks -

Sophia: Of course, once you enter their umbrella of protection . . . . . .you can avoid absolute death. But is that human life? Even if you are the only one left, if you're devoid of a heart, what does it all mean?

There is another flash and the light returns to normal. Elly stands beside a ghostly image of a woman in cream colored robes and -

Elly: All of you, want to be loved . . .needed by someone, so we look to others . . .By ourselves, we are lonely, so we try to draw close together to live . . .That's what it means to be human . . . That's how people live.

Elly: A single hand cannot clap.

Another flash as the yellow light once more fills the chamber and -

Sophia: To relieve your pain, I'll give however much of my flesh you need. Therefore . . .(pauses) don't throw away your dignity as humans . . .Don't let go of your human heart . . .

A flash and the woman disappears, replaced by Elly as the light returns to normal once more. She topples and Fei leaps in from the right, kneeling beside her and -

Fei: Elly . . .! Are you okay? What are you doing?

She begins to rise to a sitting position, her head bowed and she asks, her face turned away from him -

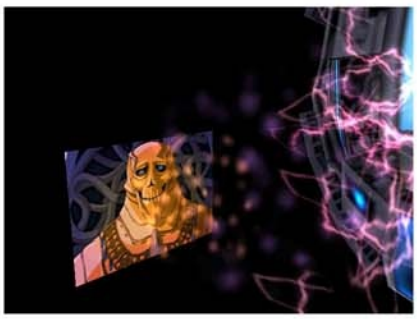
Elly: You think I am doing something . . .foolish?

Fei: No . . .

Elly: I only did what I could. Maybe I'm a hypocrite. A well-to-do 'have'. Maybe it's only pity for the 'have-nots' . . .But if I can know the joy of giving out a little of the life within me . . .Then maybe someday it may just be possible that one human can truly give love to another . . .People can do it . . .I truly believe they can. That's why . . .

Scene fades as Fei approaches her and kneels down, placing his hands on her shoulders as he says -

Fei: Elly . . .



White light consumes all and scene returns to the field of stars, Fei sits in a chair beneath a pool of light and he says -

"After that, we went from place to place, destroying all the Soylent System facilities located on the surface of the earth and freed the people held at each of the locations.

All the people that had been mutated were taken in by Nisan where they received treatment.

"Those who had mutated only mildly were treated with Taura's nanomachines, which reconstructed and revived them. They were able to return back to their normal bodies.

Unfortunately, there were some that had such accelerated symptoms that their treatment was not as promising . . . Trying to bring them back to a form that resembled a human was the best that could be done. However, mysteriously, they no longer fought each other for survival as they did when they were held by the Soylent System. Of course, their recovery from the physical pain of the mutation may have played a factor, but it wasn't only that . .

"The majority of the people received by Nisan were those that had been admonished by Elly and had regained their humanity.

"Between her work in destroying the Soylent System facilities, Elly also went around and nursed the people in Nisan. She aided the bodies of the mutated and lent an ear to those who had no other place to go for help . . .She was the very image of the woman who created Nisan . . .

'Mother Sophia' . . .

It became rumored that Elly was a reincarnation or a second advent of Sophia.

Go to Nisan and you will receive salvation . . .

The news seemed to spread further about and people came from all over to be saved, both physically and spiritually. Free from the supervision of Solaris, the surface dwellers began to unite in one place.

White light consumes all then scene cuts to the darkened room,

The germinating of those destined to be the body of the servant of god.

As before, the humans are gathering in Nisan. At this rate . . .

Not to fear . . .This might actually be helpful for us.

The time is near. Should we not prepare for those who are to become the fleshly body of god, and those who will awaken god?

The time has come to activate (pause) the 'Gaetia Key' . . .

Then, from behind, particles of force reach out and wrap around the sphere, sending crackling electricity along its surface.

A grinding electric hum is heard.

Wha, what!?

Cain!?

View swings to the Emperor's face as he sends out the energy force.

Emperor Cain: What more do you intend to do? I can not allow you to use the 'Key'!

Cain! What are you doing?

Without the resurrection of god, our purpose cannot be fulfilled!

Or . . .are you planning on perishing with god, Cain . . .? Without fulfilling our purpose . . .

Emperor Cain: Your purpose . . .? You were fated to it from your birth. Why haven't you realized that it does not arise from your own free will?

I've heard enough . . .

Yes. This is of our own volition . . .

If you still insist on opposing us . . .

Then, as the energy intensifies -

Guuaaaaaaaaah!

Emperor Cain: Have you forgotten? You are my subordinates! I can destroy you if I so desire.

The attack intensifies, the electric resonance grinding throughout the chamber and -

Nnnuuuuuuuhh . . .

Emperor Cain: We have already done our part. It's time to pass the helm to the next generation. The people will not perish . . .

Scene fades and white light consumes all.

Scene fades to the wide star field and Fei sits in a chair beneath a circle of light, the pendant swinging in the backgorund.

"Although the initial impact of being released from the -Limiter- seal caused some momentary chaos, everything slowly began to settle down.
We then began to search for the 'Anima Relics' . . . the catalyst to transform Gears into Omnigears. In the past, ten Relics had been recovered . . . It is said that about half of these are in the hands of the Ministry. According to Zephyr, there should be several more Relics hidden in the land. We knew that Solaris would most certainly be searching for them. There was no way we could allow Solaris to have them.We visited the place where, using archaic records, Zephyr and the people had been able to get clues on the where-abouts of the Relics.
Following the information we obtained from there, we headed towards the ruins of what seemed to be an ancient civilization.

Fei, Bart and Citan arrive at the site. Scene cuts to where their small figures are seen in a vast structure of corrugated metal, smaller metal structures with blue lights surrounding them off in the distance. They make their way around what is truly a colossal cavern, hewn into the earth by titanic forces long forgotten by man. They hear only the sounds of the wind and the crashing of waves somewhere beyond. They make their way over to a Gear that stands against one of the large metal walls and decide, given the size of the place, to get in their Gears. They approach the strange Gear and he says -
SJ: Whoa! I'm not the enemy! My family's been merchants for generations, and we got our own ways to fight. And this is my battle.
Then -
SJ: Wanna buy something? I even service Gears.

They find that they are flush after their fighting in the Solaris tunnels and they look over his impressive array of goods and Gear parts. Each of them upgrades their Gears and those of the other members as well, and after they are done, they leave and begin exploring the huge cavern. Off to the right of Shopkeep Johnny, they see a large octoganal metal structure lined with blue lights. They decide to include Elly in the party and continue exploring for now and go north and west to another cluster of buildings across the wide metal area and go back behind the metal structures to look around. Finding only blocked areas, they go back out to the wide area and remount their Gears, going down a concrete causeway with a white strip down its center that leads to the north, across the depths below with the half seen blue lights, past a glowing signboard which reads, "100K ^" and to a large octoganal metal building on an island suspended over the chasm below. They make their way around the structure outside of their Gears, then enter and find themselves in a black metal corridor similar to the ones throughout Ft. Jasper. Lines of blue lights run along the base of the walls and they fight many enemies as they reach a branching just up ahead, to the left, right and straight towards a door. They try the door and hear a brief alarms go off and read, "Door Lock System Area B"

They make their way through many passageways until they reach a small darkened chamber and make their way in the gloom to a lifeless console. They turn to it and inspect it, realizoing that the fuse has burnt out. They explore more areas until they find a replacement. Afterwards, they enter a small room at the end and go through. They enter a small chamber with several darkened consoles and a series of metal boxes stacked up over by the wall. They try the first console to their left and Fei toggles a switch.

Fei: Huh?

An alarm sounds and he turns to the one over by the far wall.

Fei: Is this the one? How about that one?

They try it and it says, "Please activate the main system!"

They decide to try a couple of codes. Picking up hints from the old boxes, they go to the main system and input, "0320" and watch as the console lights up with the message, "Activating main system." Fei throws his head back , laughing. They go back to the console on the wall facing the door and it reads, "Door Lock System is now operational." Then, "Door Lock Area B deactivated." Fei says, "Done!".
They leave the room and go back down the hall to the elevator, taking it down to the wide octogonal shaped room. There, they try the door across from them and find that it provides a shortcut back to the original hallway near the entrance. They go back and to the other door, finding themselves in a tiny rounded chamber lined with glowing readouts and displays. They go to the one straight ahead and toggle a switch. A blue octagon is shown on the screen above with data to either side and it reads, "Booting up the elevator's lock system." Then, "Releasing the central elevator's lock. . . ." A distant clang is heard, then Fei says, "Done!" They look around at the console on the right and they receive the message, "To unlock Anima Relic: Lock-off codes must be inputted into terminals A to D which are situated around the area. Upon completion, the main system will be engaged." To the left of the entrance, the console reads, "Anima Relic lock off code: Input numbers so the vertical and horizontal sums are equal without reusing the same numbers."

They leave the chamber and go over to the central octagon in the floor. It asks, "DOWN?" and they accept.
The elevator descends from the ceiling and Fei, Bart and Elly walk out. They go across one of the metal ramps leading to the surrounding pathway where they see several consoles placed at equal intervals. They go to the first and it reads, "Enter the code, Address D" and they are given a series of choices, 1-9. They decide to look at the other consoles before trying anything and see that there are three others, A-C and a metal box which reads, "Current code condition, Code Address, Release Lock."

They see that in order to unlock the Relic, the codes must add up 'right' so the machine will accept them. They settle down to figure out which numbers to choose and at last, think they have come up with a working system. Traveling clockwise, they start with A and input, "A-2, B-4, C-8, D-5" They go to the main console and collate their input and it reads, "Anima Relic Released!" Fei laughs, then they see the message, "Ride in the center of the lift." They go back to the octagon shaped lift and this time, when they enter, they are given the option to go up or down. They choose to descend and scene cuts to the metal enclosed area below the island as a beam of light travels up to the underside of the lift. It attaches itself and view moves up to where Fei and the others stand on the octagon as the surrounding framework lifts around them, receding back up into the ceiling and leaving them on the single octagon, an island amid the light. They are taken down, and view moves with them as they ride in the pillar of light.

Surrounding the island which they stand on is a series of blue lights, a single path leading to a set of double doors ahead of them. These open at their approach and they step through, finding themselves in a gray metallic hallway lines with strips of greenish light below the raised pathway. They see a square metal door ahead and they approach and touch the circle in its center. Four squares located at each corner of the seal shoot out with a puff of air and a square section in the door rises, granting them entrance. They find another seal ahead and repeat the process twice more, each time the squares at the corners shoot out with puffs of air. At last, they go through and find themselves in a large cavernous metal room with a pathway leading out to a large pillar of light in which a dark golden oblong swirls amid shifting pyramids of yellow light and a sound of a single resonant tone is heard at intervals as it spins slowly. They see a console at the path's end and go towards it. Elly and Billy appear behind them and come forward, Billy facing out towards the object and Fei says -

Fei: This is . . .

Billy: The Anima Relic . . .

View pulls back as the console rises out of the pedestal and a light distant clang is heard. The metal ring surrounding the wide pillar of light moves back with a loud rumbling hum and the object at the center becomes more visible. It is a golden oblong with a single turquoise eye in the center. The light brightens, filling the chamber and the resonant tone comes more frequently. Billy asks -

Billy: Who is it? Who's calling me? I don't know.
I don't know . . .What should I do . . .? You were waiting?
For me . . .?

Fei turns to Billy and -

Fei: Billy?

View moves around to face the group, granting a view of the Relic as its pyramidal light fields spin faster and faster, the resonant tone coming more frequently as the light fills the chamber. Greenish electricity reaches out from it and a low vibration is heard, rising in pitch as it grows white and a ring of radiance passes out from it. There is a sound of slashing metal, then the light disappears and is replaced briefly by an image of - a Gear? It vanishes and a green glow appears in the center of the vast chamber before it too vanishes. Billy looks out at where it had been and says -

Billy: Did you see that? It looked like . . .my Gear?

Fei: Maybe something has happened to your Gear. Let's head for the exit and see if any change has taken place.

Scene fades and they cuts to where the group, Fei, Bart, Elly and Billy walk down the hall leading to the exit. Ahead, waiting for them, are the four Elements.

Fei: You girls again!?

Billy calls out -

Billy: Elements!

Dominia: I see you've gained a new Gear that has been aligned with an Anima Relic.

Kelvena turns to her and nods once, saying -

Kelvena: You know that we should have been the ones to have it . . . We need stronger powers in order for Commander Ramsus to realize his long - cherished desires.

Kelvena turns back to face them and Tolone nods once, saying -

Tolone: Yes, for the building of our ideal country, we can't allow you to take it.

Seraphita: So, c'mon . . .let us have it!

Fei shakes his head, then says -

Fei: You knew what Solaris was doing to the surface dwellers . . .
And you know what the situation is like now on the earth . . .
And yet you . . .

Dominia: What the Gazel do or whatever happens to the Lambs, are not my concerns. Each of us have our own obligations to fulfill. We don't have time to deal with affairs concerning you weak and inferior people.

Elly: Dominia . . .Do you truly believe that?

Dominia: Yes. Look at yourselves, for instance . . .You, the strong and the superior, were the first to preserve yourselves, without any mutations. Is that not right?

Fei: Power and ability have nothing to do with it.
It was pure coincidence that we didn't mutate.

Billy nods once and says -

Billy: People are people. Nothing more or less. I admit that there are the weak and powerless. But that's no reason for us to forsake them. We are all the same human beings!

Dominia: So . . .You wish to give a
hand to those who would be saved?

Behind her, Seraphita shakes her head and look off to the side, saying -

Seraphita: You're so ni ~ ce and ki ~ nd!

She turns back to face them and Kelvena look over to them and says -

Kelvena: How commendable. But . . .(pause)
is that really what's best for mankind?

She looks over at Elly who says -

Elly: You were all once surface dwellers. Weren't you all forced to live under the oppression of Solaris? I KNOW that you know how it feels to be a 'have-not', so why do you . . .?

Kelvena: People must be able to stand on their own in any circumstances they are in. Overprotection only stunts the will to be independent. This stunts the growth of the people and the world. We've experienced that first hand. Live by one's own strength, stand on one's own feet! It's sad but true that the weak will be weeded out . . .But we cannot look back. That is the providence of human existence.

Elly: That is just the providence of those who are the 'haves'!

View switches around to face the girls as Dominia bows her head slightly, looking off to the side and says -

Dominia: Hmph. So be it then, show me this providence of yours that wishes to save the meager 'have-nots'!

She turns to face them and says -

Dominia: Here I come!

Battle begins! Knowing they are facing a sowrd-fighter, they choose to call in Citan. They go for Kelvena first who is the most powerful of the Ether users. Dominia slashes at them with several different kinds of elemental swords and Kelven sinks to the ground after a powerful deathblow by Fei. They concentrate on Seraphita next, and she taunts them, stealing some of their EP. Tolone hits them with wind attacks and Dominia continues to form elemental swords out of the void, water, air, earth and fire. Seraphita goes down and they concentrate on Tolone. Fei's powerful deathblow finishes her off and they turns their attacks on Dominia who lashes out with her sword in a series of complex counter strokes. She goes down after a few rounds and scene cuts to the hallway once more, behind the girls as Tolone walks off towards the exit, Kelvena and Seraphita following. Dominia remains behind for a moment and says -

Dominia: Hah . . .We may have fared poorly when we fought in the flesh, but we will finish you off in our Gears!

She turns around and says -

Dominia: Come! Follow me!

She walks off, the others watching, then scene cuts to the concrete pathway outside as Fei, Bart and Citan travel along it in their Gear towards the wide area where the girls are ranged before the cavern wall in their Gears. They stop, facing them and view swings to the other side, towards the girls as Dominia says -

Dominia: What took you?

Fei: What meaning is there in fighting again!?

Dominia: Silence! Now we have no choice but to fight. Now we will show you the true power of the Elements! Get ready . . .because here we come!

Kelvena: Let us merge and combine our forces!

Dominia calls out -

Dominia: Elements in unison "Elements - Formation!"

They rise up into the air together and the girls' Gears begin to merge. The finished product is a truly massive Gear, each part complementing the others and it blasts off into battle!

Scene cuts to Fei, Elly and Citan as they face the "G Elements" and a Kishin sword appears in its hand in a blaze of light, its wide silver blade gleaming. As the battle begins in earnest, each girl takes her turn, bringing her skills to bear. Fei activates System Id and Citan and Elly begin to build up their deathblows, hoping to reach an infinity level attack. Citan's sword fighting technique is truly spectacular. As the G Elements attempt to block his thrusts, he takes his blade and slashes it down the Gear in a sawing motion. Fei uses 'Kishin' the most powerful of his infinity attacks. At last, after several rounds, the huge Gear goes down and in a pool of radiance, electricity crackling around its form. The light fades and the Gear disappears, the Kishin blade lands quivering, point down in the ground.

Scene fades and cuts to one facing the girls in their individual Gears once more, Elly and Billy standing in their Gears with Fei.

Elly: Some things only the weak can feel . . .But weakness does not make them servile. It's because they are weak, that they can develop kindness . . .and never look down on people. That is where real human interaction comes from. Everyone has weaknesses. Even you did at first. Your weakness drew you to each other . . .And made you grow strong. Never forget those feelings. When you all lived together side by side . . .

She and Billy join Fei who walks away from them and Dominia calls out -

Dominia: Are you trying to show us mercy? Or are you just trying to show off . . .?

Elly turns and says -

Elly: You've got us all wrong, Dominia. Our paths may be different, but our goals are the same. That's why I can't fight you anymore. There's no reason for me to . . .That's all.

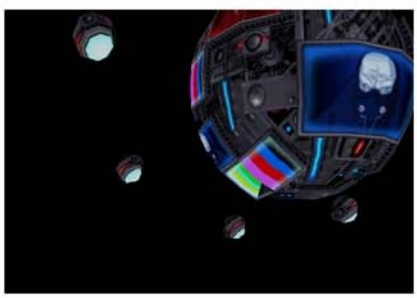
There is silence, then she turns and walks off, and view moves over to face the girls as Kelvena says -

Kelvena: Well . . .it looks like they sure showed us a thing or two!

Dominia: Hmph . . .

Scene fades and white light consumes all.

Soul's Fire



Scene returns to the endless field of stars, the pendant swinging in the background as Fei sits in a chair before an image. It shows him in Weltall-2 as he walks away from the four girls in their Gears, the cavern wall behind them.

"Having fled from the Elements, who tried to take the Relic to be used as a power to fulfill Ramsus' desires . . . we once again initiated our search for information . . . on the whereabouts of the last known Relic . . .

White light consumes all and scene fades to the darkened chamber where the Ministry resides.

He is no longer one of us . . .

Yes. He dares to go against our objectives. Just like the other one . . .

We can still activate the key . . .

We must do something about the one who stands in our way . . .We must eliminate Cain . . .

But, we can not stand up to his power.

Only 'Cain' can destroy 'Cain' . . .

So 'Mother', will you do it for us?

Miang: Maybe . . .Did Krelian say anything?

Something concerning the potential ability as a countervailing existence . . .With everything focusing towards a single point . . .

Miang: I see . . .But Kahr is still shaken up by . . .yesterday's defeat against Fei. We are almost ready. I need just a little bit more time.

Then we'll wait. We'll wait till the time is ripe . . .

Scene cuts to one of Dominia who stands in a blue green metallic hall near a door and she says -

Dominia: Krelian . . .? (pauses) A countervailing existence . . .?

She thinks with arms crossed then says -

Dominia: That Miang . . .what's she up to . . .?
I had better warn the Commander . . .!

She turns and walks down the hall away from the door and scene cuts to the bridge on the aerial battleship facing a door where two blond men in uniform stand. Tolone and Kelvena are on either side of the raised area where the helm is located. Ramsus is seen walking towards the door and the two girls come forward, blocking him. He says -

Ramsus: Out of the way! Let me through!
That bastard! I'll hunt him out myself . . .!

Kelvena: Please calm down, Commander!

Tolone: We'll take care of him and his friends!

Ramsus: What could you fools do? Imbeciles! (pause)
Only I can beat him! Only I, who transcends all other humans, can possibly take him down!

The two part and he walks towards the door and it opens admitting Dominia. He shouts -

Ramsus: Move!!

And thrusts her out of his way, going through the door as she turns to watch him go. As the door shuts behind him and scene fades, she calls, "Commander! Wait!!"

White light consumes all, then cuts to where Elly sits in a chair beneath a pool of light, endless stars beyond and the pendant as it swings in their midst. She says -

"While Fei and the others searched for the resting place of the last known Anima Relic, I temporarily returned to Nisan.
I don't know why I went back. Just . . . I had this stirring within my heart . . .that some danger was awaiting the people there . .

White light consumes all, the returns to Elly in the field of stars, an image behind her. It shows the inside of the villa where people rest on the beds, tended by Elly, Margie and the nuns. She continues -

"All the people accepted into Nisan were on the road to recovery. There were still those who were not able to completely recover, but Taura's nanomachines continued to evolve from day to day. Thanks to the nanomachines, the treatments were becoming more and more successful and the day when everyone would regain their original bodily form was approaching.

White light consumes all, the image changed to one showing the streets of Nisan where the people look up at a golden, black winged Gear as it stands there, towering over them.

"A trembling . . . There was a sudden explosion in the city of Nisan. Within the burning fire . . . stood a gold Omnigear . . . It was Ramsus. He assaulted Nisan so that he could defeat Fei. His purpose of existing was at stake . . .The Nisan and Shevat militia, even Renk and friends from Solaris who now served to protect Nisan, could not thwart the assault.
The people were evacuated into the cathedral. Continuing to search for Fei, Ramsus put the militia to rout and pressed on toward the cathedral . . .
He was . . .ruined . . .
He had his mind set solely on getting at Fei . . . I stood before him.

Ramsus: Where! Where is he!? I know it!
He's here! Why does he not come out!?

Elly appears before him, facing him and she shakes her head, holding out her hands -

Elly: Ramsus! The Fei you seek is not here!
So please, stop this meaningless violence!

She drops her hands and he says -

Ramsus: You . . .Yes . .You will do . . .

She vanishes and white light consumes all. Scene shows his Gear holding her up in its hand, a crowd watching from the bridge beyond as flames and black smoke rise into the blue sky.

Ramsus: Come out! Fei! If you will not come out, I will crush Elhaym!

Margie and five men in gray and silver uniforms appear before him in the star field and Elly says -

Elly: Uuhg . . .!

Margie: Elly!

One of the uniformed men who stand in a group off to the left calls out -

Renk: Boss . . .

Elly: Keep back . . .

Ramsus: Not coming out, eh . . .Have it your way. Then from tonight on you will be crying with this woman's dead body in your arms!

Elly: Uuuaaahhh!

There is the sound of shearing metal, then view cuts to one of Margie close up as she faces the image, then white light consumes all and returns to one facing the image in the star field, Margie standing before it and Elly sitting on the ground, off to the side, propped up on one arm.

Ramsus: H, how the!? What happened!?
Why can't I move!?

Margie: Elly!

Renk speaks up over from the side where he and his men become visible.

Renk: Are you okay!?

Ramsus turns to face the five uniformed men and says -

Ramsus: H, how could I . . .to the likes of you . . .?
Ramsus: N, not only to him, but I am also inferior to you . . .!? Me!?

Elly: What happened to you, Ramsus . . .? Why are you caught up with Fei so much . . .Why are you so bothered by who is more superior?

Ramsus: I was originally created to be the integration of all human abilities . . . . .To be able to align with all of the Anima Relics . . . I was created to have the powers equivalent to those of Emperor Cain. You could say I was to be the ideal form which all people strive to become . . .However . . .once he was born . . .I was . . .rejected . . . . . .I was given life in a pile of trash . . . . . .Born in the dark, cold abyss of worthlessness . . .

Ramsus: But I was able to crawl out of there! I was able to survive on my own strength! In order to get back at all those who have forsaken me! Despite all of that, I was able to get this far! I was able to provide myself with the warmth that I required to continue living! But, he had to come and intervene in my life one more time! He tried to take that very warmth away from me again! (pauses) As long as he exists . . .I don't belong anywhere . . .

Elly: I think I now know why you are so fixated with Fei . . .You do not really know what you should be doing with your life right now. You're simply trying to protect yourself by attacking Fei . . .By attacking others, you are confirming your own existence. That's why you strive to be above everyone else . . .Because, otherwise, you'd be enveloped by a void . . . Because you yourself will disappear . . .Because that emptiness within your heart will only grow . . .Because you want to hang on to love . . .

Ramsus: Silence! Even you are trying to take it away from me!? . . .
That warmth! That very warmth I've finally obtained!

Elly: Ramsus . . .No one is attacking you. No one is trying to take away what is so precious to you . . .No one is threatening your existence . . . It's all in your mind. So don't hide the feelings that are in your heart . . . Don't fear love . . .

Ramsus: Y, you . . .Now you . . .Aaarrrgghhh!

Ramsus slowly fades from view. Then white light consumes all and returns to Elly where she sits in a chair beneath a pool of light, the star field beyond.

"Ramsus was in fear.
He feared losing the place he belonged to . . .He feared that Fei was the one who would take it away from him . . .
He believed love was something you take . . . He craved love more than anyone else . . .

Scene fades and cuts to the chamber of the Gazel Ministry.

Worthless . . .

Trash . . .

Reject . . .

Why even bother existing . . .?

Defect . . .

Be gone . . .

We have no use for you . . .

Hah! Trash is of more use to us than you . . .

Then, the sphere disappears and in the silence, Ramsus -

Ramsus: . . .

Miang: Kahr . . .Don't worry. I'll always be by your side.
No one knows you better than I do. So don't . . .

He turns to her and asks -

Ramsus: Miang! Is this . . .Is this all I can do? Is this the extent of my strength and abilities? I couldn't beat him . . .And in front of that woman, I couldn't even do a thing . . .Is this the limit of my existence!? (pauses) My abilities . . .!?

A figure materializes in the foreground. It's Krelian and he remains semi-transparent as they turn to him. He says -

Krelian: . . .You're the same as Cain. An archetype that surpasses all humans. I made you in the same way. But he is the one who is preventing you from fully releasing your powers. Divided powers . . .That man was your original form. The primordial superior being . . .If you could defeat him, then you would be . . .

Miang turns to Ramsus and says -

Miang: Yes. Even with your superior constitution, the existence of the original being hinders you. If you could eliminate the divided power, then it would all be yours . . .(pause) Don't you agree, Kahr . . .?

View pulls back as scene fades.

Anima Relic 2

Scene cuts to the star field where Fei sits on a chair beneath a pool of light, the pendant swinging beyond. He says -

"Having completed the alignment of the first Anima Relic with Billy, there was a remarkable change in the appearance and structure of Billy's Gear.
They were units that merged with the inorganic . . . Of course we had no idea what purpose these ancient Anima Relics were created for. But the fact that they played some kind of role as weapons was blatantly obvious.
Eventually their true power will be released . . . And we cannot allow this power to fall into the hands of evil.
In order to obtain the final Relic, we headed for a ruin that is believed to be almost 10, 000 years old. . . .The remains of the first civilization on our planet.
And . . . a reunion with an old 'friend' awaited us . . .

White light consumes all and scene cuts to a large rock cavern where the figures of Elly, Fei and Citan are seen below. They range out over the large cavern, fighting enemies such as the 'Croaker Tribe' and Mammoths as well as Gryphons. After fighting for a while, they decide to switch out Elly for Emeralda and see what her Gear's ether attacks can do against these enemies. The three go along the rock floor to where it ends in a ledge, revealing a ravine below. Several overlapping rock shelves provide a safe descent and they go down, searching among the tiers of rocks below for a way up to the ledge on the opposite side, but find nothing.

After many false trails and backtracking, they work their way into another large cavern discovering evidence of earlier human habitation in many of the smaller caves.

At last they find a door at the bottom of the tiered rock and go through, finding themselves in another large rock cavern with a bridge leading over an endless chasm below. They cross the narrow bridge of rock to a door set into the cavern wall and go through, finding themselves in a metal corridor lit by green strips of light below the raised pathway. It leads to a metal seal with four squares set in each corner. They press the circle at the center and each square shoots out with a puff of air and the door lifts. They go through and repeat the process two more times and go into a wide metal chamber with an Anima Relic in the center, suspended in a pillar of blue light. They approach the console at the end of the pathway and view swings around to face them as Elly and Rico appear from behind and says -

Elly: So there is an Anima Relic in these ruins.

Rico stands looking out at the Relic and the ringing tone is heard now and again. He says -

Rico: Hmph, so ancient people worshiped meaningless things too, huh?

Rico: Who's that? Wha'd you say? Say something I understand! Who're you!? Get outta my head!

Fei turns to Rico and asks -

Fei: Rico, are you okay?

The Relic begins to spin faster and faster, the tone coming more frequently as streamers of green electricity shoot out from it. The light grows incandescent and a ring of white light passes out from it. A brief momentary glimpse of - a Gear? is seen, then it too vanishes and Rico says -

Rico: I've seen that shape somewhere before.

Fei: Wasn't that Rico's Gear? So it looks like it was your turn, Rico! Well anyway, we'll soon see when we go outside.

Scene fades and cuts to the cavern outside where Fei, Rico (in his new Gear!) Emeralda and Elly make their way across the narrow rock bridge and they pause at the other end, staring out over the chasm where the low roar of engines can be heard and Fei says -

Fei: Whoa! What the . . .?

A new Gear rises into view, its engines low rumble filling the cavern. He speaks -

Hammer: Hey, bro . . .

Hammer: Heh heh heh. It's been a long time no see, bro!

Fei: Hammer, is that you? What are you doing in that outfit?

Hammer: I was finally able to get it . . .Super-strength . . .Just like you, bro! It feels so good . . .being one with your Gear. Krelian did this for me. Anyway, just leave that Gear and Miss Elly for me. Resistence is useless. I'm much too powerful for you now . . .

Fei: What are you saying, Hammer?

Hammer: What? You're not handing them over? . . .I see. Then I'll just have to use force and take the girl and the Gear from you!

Rico: Stop it, Hammer!

Hammer: Even you, 'Champ', won't win against me now.

Hammer: Here I come!

Battle begins! Fei, Citan and Emeralda face what appears to be a disembodied metallic torso, but as they fight, his Gear grows extra appendages and becomes more powerful as a result. They land in several deathblows until Hammer says, "I've a really bad feeling . . ." His Gear droops and red light flashes and they decide to escape the battle.

Scene cuts to one facing Hammer as he hovers over the chasm, the others standing at the ledge and Elly behind them as he says -

Hammer: Heh heh . . .That's my bro . . .Far too strong . . . Even for me . . .Just when I thought I finally got powerful enough to beat you too!

Black smoke rises from his Gear and Rico calls out -

Rico: Hammer . . .!

Hammer: Champ . . .Promise me you'll go back to Nortune one day . . . You are . . .the next in line . . .to be the Kaiser . . .

Rico: You knew?

Hammer: Don't underestimate the power of my information network . . . But . . .it's no use now . . .I . . .For a bit player . . .(pause) like me . . . this is probably . . .the end . . .(pauses) I deserve . . .

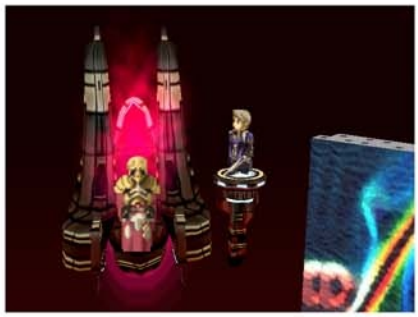
View moves up to follow him as he falls down into the chasm below and Fei shouts -

Fei: Hamme ~ r . . .!

Black smoke pours from the chasm and he is gone.

Scene fades and cuts to where Fei sits in a chair in the endless field of stars

"Hammer disappeared into the chasm with a look of satisfaction . . .
Was he happy because he had been able to attain it . . .? 'His brief moment of power' . . .
Hammer's smile . . . Was that the look of joy from attaining power . . .? Or was it the look of relief from the pain that was brought upon him by his mutation . . .?
Ultimately, we had no other choice but to defeat our 'friend' Hammer, for the sake of our own survival . . .
Was there any other way around it . . .? I've never felt that fighting was so futile, until now . . .
Elly cried continuously . . . She hated herself for not having the power to be able to do something to help him.
When I saw her like that, I couldn't help thinking . . . I can no longer allow her to fight like this . . .
We returned to Ignas . . . feeling that this had become much more than we could bear . . .



Scene fades and cuts to the Emperor's throne room.

Emperor Cain: What do you want . . .Ramsus . . .?

The Emperor acquires a red glow around his form and Ramsus says -

Ramsus: You . . .If you didn't exist . . .I . . .That's why . . .I must . . . get rid . . .of you . . .Only then will I be able to beat him . . .

Emperor Cain: What do you think you're doing? Ramsus . . .!?

Ramsus' pedestal moves forward and there is a sharp sound of shearing metal, then the glow surrounding the Emperor disappears.

Emperor Cain: That's absurd! Do you think you can neutralize my power!?

View moves up to where Krelian watches from a pedestal above and he says -

Krelian: Of course he can. He was made to be able to do so.

Emperor Cain: Krelian . . .!? Surely you're not on their side now!?

Krelain: Oh, really now . . .I don't care about a group of old geezers who are so obsessed with clinging onto their dear little lives . . . . . that they had to resort to turning themselves into data on the SOL - 9000 in order to survive. That's not why . . .Your existence obstructs me from reaching my goal. That's all . . .

Emperor Cain: Haven't you been working for humanity's future . . . for humans to live longer? That is why I assisted you . . .

Krelian: Yes, that's right. I try to lead the people in 'my own way'. That hasn't changed in the least.

Emperor Cain: Krelian, what's got into you . . .!?

Krelian turns his back and says -

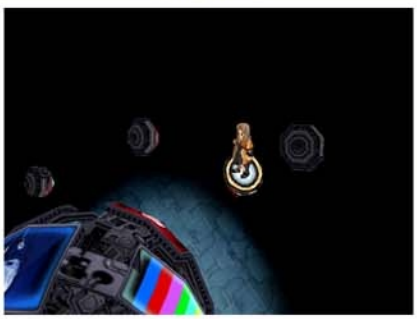
Krelian: Kill him, 'Ramses'!

View switches to one facing the Emperor, Ramsus off to the side with sword drawn and point down. He cries -

Ramsus: Uuuuaaaahhhhh!!

He reaches over and plunges his sword into the Emperor's neck and there is the sound of shattering glass as the force of the blow turns the body of the Emperor to face Ramsus. The skull mask falls off, revealing - a black rotted face, two empty eye holes, all recognizable features gone. As Ramsus stands frozen, poised in his death strike on the pedestal, a low howling wind rises from the depths of the void and view pulls back as the red glow fades, the pictures halting in their ever spiraling circles, Krelian visible on the pedestal above as they recede into the distance, then scene fades.

Mahanon



Scene cuts to the darkened chamber where the Ministry resides.

So . . .Cain is dead?

Yes.

The final fate for one bound within everlasting flesh . . .

If only he had just accepted our logical ideals too . . .

A fitting end for someone who had become dominated by needless flesh. Excellent work, Krelian.

Krelian: . . .

Now there is nothing that can stand in the way of us accomplishing our objectives.

The 'Anima Relics' have been awakened and have aligned with their respective 'Animus' . . .Dan, Joseph, Gad . . .have each been aligned with a surface dweller as their 'Animus' . . .

Hyuga's Asher, Ramsus' Zebulun, Krelian's Judah, Sophia's Dinah . . .

Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Issachar
were already aligned 500 years ago . . .

And finally . . .Grahf's Naphtali . . .
All of the 'Anima Relics' have now been activated.

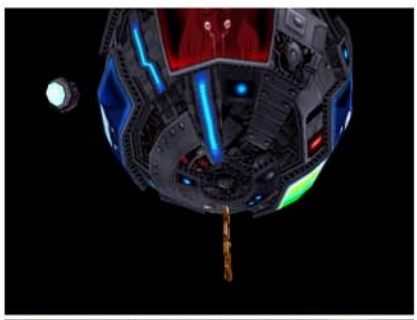
The identity of the -Persona- mask
of the 'mother' has also become clear.

The time has come.

Now is the time to open the door to god's domain
to attain the fleshly body and the wisdom of god . . .

The time of the true awakening . . .To carry us to new
horizons . . .Yes, the time of the gospel has come . . .!

Now, humans! Extol the awakening of god!

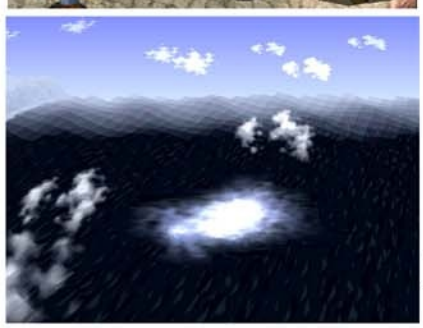


White light consumes all, returning to Fei who sits in a chair amid the field of stars.

"Suddenly, the howling erupted. Even the people who had not mutated were being turned . . .
into Wels. They howled out like war cries, as if to call out to something.

"That was because Ramsus had been manipulated into assassinating the Emperor.
Now, with nothing else holding them back, the Ministry had put into use the 'Gaetia Key' . . .
The effect of which was to alter those people who had been destined by god.

"Those people destined by god, regardless of whether they were surface dwellers or Solarians, began
to change shape, one after the other . . .
The howling was the people who had filled the
earth, calling out to god.
"Once humans have filled the earth, god will awaken
from his long sleep . . . And the awakening of
Mahanon, the paradise in the sky, will soon follow . . ."
The true meaning of what the Ministry had spoken,
the true nature of that legend, was at last beginning
to be realized. This is what they meant when they
said, "Once humans have filled the earth" . . .
Eventually, 'Mahanon', the resting place of god,
woke from its long slumber and began to rise . . .
. . .almost as if responding to the call of the people.
It appeared before us in all its majestic glory . . .



Scene fades and white light consumes all, then returns to where Fei sits amid star filled sky beneath a pool of light.

"Solaris' Gazel Ministry sent a massive force there to obtain "god and his wisdom."
. . .But, by now, neither the nation of Solaris, nor the organization known as Gebler existed anymore.
The only thing that was left there was an innumerable accumulation of weapons.
Almost all of the Solarians had been transfigured into weapons . . .
The Gazel Ministry now reigned over them as their commanders.
There was no way we could allow god or god's wisdom to fall into the hands of the ministry.
We decided to assemble all the forces we could and head toward Mahanon.
It was a perilous battle. There was no guarantee that we would make it back alive.
We were to carry out the plan at dawn. Here, I had to stiffen my resolve concerning 'her' . . .

White light consumes all, then scene cuts to the Gun Room of the Yggdrasil, and Fei faces Elly, who adopts a fighting stance and says -

Elly: Wait a minute! You want me to stay here?
No, I'm going with you!

Fei shakes his head and says -

Fei: No. It's too dangerous.

Elly: Why? I've been in many dangerous situations. This isn't the first time!

Fei turns his back to her and shakes his head.

Fei: I said NO! We can't take you. Please understand!

Elly stands straight once more and shakes her head and says -

Elly: No, I want to go!

She crosses her arms and bows her head, saying -

Elly: We've been fighting together all this time! And suddenly you're telling me not to go!? I just don't get it!!

Fei turns to her and clenches his fist, shaking it briefly and says -

Fei: This isn't like any other fight! It's a battle for the wisdom created by god. It's life or death. Whoever controls it, becomes the true dominator of the world! It's obvious the Ministry will bring the strongest possible troops. There's no guarantee you'll come back alive!

Ely drops her arms and walks towards him, saying -

Elly: That's exactly why I want to go . . .

Fei turns to her, holding his outstretched hands to either side and says -

Fei: You don't have the slightest idea . . .

Elly: What don't I understand!?

Fei turns to her, dropping his arms and says -

Fei: If the enemy were only the Ministry or just mechanical weapons it would be okay. But most of the enemies will be made up of what were once humans . . .Humans just like you and I!

Elly thinks, "!" and he steps closer to her, waving his fist for emphasis, then he cups her chin in his hand, saying -

Fei: I saw them at those facilities . . .Gears that were made out of humans. They were the same as Hammer . . .Could you now destroy them after knowing this!? In order to save ourselves, can you truly say that you could kill those who were once our friends!? So, do you still want to go now!?

Elly backs away -

Elly: W, well . . .

She turns around and bows her head and he does so as well, putting his hands on his hips and closing his eyes as he says -

Fei: You can't even kill one person. Your presence would be a burden during the fight.

She looks up thinking, "!?" and brings her hands up to her mouth. Fei turns back to her and looks down, saying -

Fei: You'll just get in the way . . .

She turns and runs off around the table and view pulls back as her boot steps sound on the metal of the floor. The others turn to watch her go and there is the sound of a door opening and closing a moment later. They all turn back to Fei and Bart bows his head slightly and says -

Bart: Hey, Fei! Don't you think you went a little too far there?

Citan ponders on the other side, foot tapping and says -

Citan: We cannot blame her. At least we should understand her feelings . . .

Fei turns around to Bart and says -

Fei: I know how Elly feels. I knew she wouldn't have listened to me if I had just said, 'You're not coming!' . Seeing as she has worked together with us for such a long time and all . . .That's why I had to explain it to her like that . . .

Fei turns to Citan and says -

Fei: The people gathered in Nisan need Elly. She's gotta realize how much people are depending on her. I can't put her in a dangerous situation . . .

Citan drops his arms and looks up as Margie steps forward behind Bart and says -

Margie: But the way you said it was a little harsh.

Billy speaks up from further back and says -

Billy: You didn't have to be so cold. She was crying, you know?

Fei turns towards the wall and bows his head, placing his hands on his hips as he closes his eyes and says -

Fei: But . . .

Citan nods once and says -

Citan: I am sure she realizes that.

Bart nods once and says -

Bart: I agree. Maybe you are the one (pause)
who doesn't (pause) understand?

Fei looks up and turns to the side, holding out his hands in front of him as he says -

Fei: Me? . . .I don't understand?

Margie turns around to face Billy behind her and says -

Margie: A lady's . . .heart . . .?

Billy: She wants to go, to be with you, Fei . . .Until the end.

Margie turns back around and says, "Yeah" as Fei lowers his hands slowly. Then Bart jumps up onto the table nearby, saying -

Bart: If I were you . . .I'd hold her tight and say . . .
'Let's go together!' . . .Just like that!

Margie turns to him as Fei does so as well and says -

Margie: Really?

He turns around, shaking his head and fumbles out -

Bart: Um . . .no . . .I mean . . .errh . . .

From over by the bar, Maison calls out -

Maison: Young master, don't overdo yourself now . . .

Bart turns around from his perch on the table and says, "Ah, shut up!"

He jumps down and faces Fei, saying -

Bart: Anyhow, why don't you go ask her to come with you?
Whether she'll go or not, you should express your feelings in words.
If you really care about her, you have to go tell her.

Citan: Express your feelings . . .right?

Fei holds out his hands, looking at all of them and -

Fei: I, I didn't mean . . .!

Bart: Too late now. Everyone knows it.

Citan ponders, foot tapping and says -

Citan: You are not being true to yourself, are you?

He drops his arms, looking up and Margie turns towards Fei and says -

Margie: I agree.

From the other side of the table, Emeralda says -

Emeralda: Fei . . .say it . . .straight out . . .

Margie steps forward then, and says -

Margie: Go ahead . . .Go chase after her! What are you waiting for?

Feeling very chagrined, Fei makes his way down the stairs to Elly's room, the others watching him as he goes. He enters and finds her in the darkened chamber over by the far wall, her head bowed and back turned. He steps forward, then stops, putting his hands on his hips and bowing his head as he says -

Fei: Ah . . .sorry about what just happened . . .Forgive me . . .But, I want to explain . . .
Now (pause) for the first time, people, on both earth and Solaris, are becoming one.
But then, not all of them are strong like the crew of this ship, or the people in Shevat.
Even we almost lose sight of our future at times . . .so you can imagine what regular people go through. That's why people need someone like you to depend on . . .
As a light to guide us. You freed the hearts of the people that have been used as tools by that Ministry for hundreds of years. Elly, it was you! And now your body doesn't just belong to you alone anymore. That's why I can't let you be in any danger.
And that's why I don't want you to fight anymore.

Without turning, she says softly, " . . .It's funny, isn't it?" He drops his hands and looks up at her, saying "Huh?" She raises her head, still facing the wall and says -

Elly: We used to be enemies, but now we're together like this . . .

She turns to the side and continues -

Elly: In the beginning . . .I think I saw myself in you. We seemed to overlap . . .You being in a similar situation as I was in. When I was with you, I didn't feel alone or apprehensive. That's why I thought I liked you . . . But, it wasn't that. I simply didn't have the courage to look at my true self. I turned to you to run away from it all . . .I mistook that for love.

She turns to face him and says -

Elly: But, it's different now. I can face my own problems. I am me . . .and you are you. It has all become clear to me now. I also learned that I really do need you . . .It's not because I need you as a sanctuary for my problems. I need you because I truly love you.

He looks down and says, "Elly . . ."

Elly: I know what you're saying, Fei. I know why you're so concerned for my safety . . .But you know, I'm . . .(pause) scared. I fear we may never see each other again . . .I just have this feeling.

Fei looks up, shaking his head and he says -

Fei: Don't worry, I won't die.

She shakes her head and says -

Elly: No, it's not that . . .It's something completely different . . .It's as if I'm being torn apart by something I can't resist . . .That I'm no longer me . . . Even if you come back safely . . .It still . . .(pauses) It just feels so uneasy . . . That is why I need to go with you. I can't bear to be away from you.

Fei nods once, looking at her and says -

Fei: I feel the same way . . .Ever since the time I met you in that forest . . . I think it's the same feeling that you've been having . . .I was also running to you. But I have to solve my own problems.
I can't throw my problems onto you.

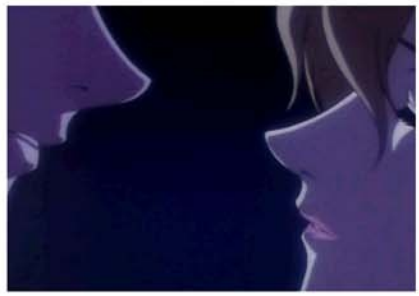
He brings his hands up and looks at them.

Fei: There is another me . . . 'Id' is within me. I fear that at any moment Id may awaken within me. You're the only one that has been able to keep me from giving in to Id. It was because you were always by my side that I was still able to keep from losing myself.

He lets his arms fall, looking up to her, then he approaches her and stands close to her. He says -

Fei: I promise you that I will return. So . . .that is . . .Elly, I want you to be my reason to return . . .To be my home that I can return to . . .Elly, if you will wait for me to come back . . .even if we are in totally different places . . .As long as you will stay by my side . . .I know I'll be able to do anything . . .

Elly says softly, "Oh, Fei . . ."



Scene returns to the chamber at dawn as Fei stands by the end of the bed, looking at Elly. As she rises, he turns his back and she asks, "Are you going now?" He turns around and says -

Fei: Yeah, sorry. Did I wake you?

Elly: It's okay. I've been awake all along . . .

Fei asks, "All along?"

Elly: Uh - huh. I was watching you while you slept . . .
And before I realized it, it was morning . . .

Fei turns to the side and bows his head, thinking, " . . ." Then he looks up , saying -

Fei: W, well, I'm off.

Elly: Alright then . . .Do be careful . . .

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Yeah, I will . . .Oh! Could you hold on to this for me?

He takes something from around his neck and hands it to her. She asks -

Elly: What is this? Is this a . . .pendant?

Fei: I don't know whose it is. It seems it was on me when I was brought into Lahan. It may be mine, or it could be . . .

She asks softly, "It could be . . ."

He shakes his head, saying -

Fei: Oh, nothing . . .Will you just hold on to it for me?

Elly: Alright. I'll hold on to it for you.

Fei: Thanks. . . .Well, I guess it's goodbye!

He turns to the side and she says, "Oh . . .Fei . . .." He turns back to her, asking "Yeah?"

Elly: Thank you . . .

He nods once, then turns and walks towards the door, looking back at her once more before he leaves.

Scene fades and white light consumes all, cutting to the bridge where Elly stands. Margie appears from the right and walks over to stand beside her. She too looks out over the green hillsides beyond, then says -

Margie: Elly. Are you okay about this? Don't you want to be with him?

Elly: Yes . . .But, it's because I believe in him. Just being close to a person is not in itself an indication of love, is it?

Margie: But . . .men are selfish . . .When something big happens, they say . . . 'It's too dangerous . . .You can't come!' They treat women like we are weaklings.
Although, it is true I can't help Bart and friends much anymore . . .

Elly looks up into the sky, her hands clasped and held up to her chest and she says -

Elly: That's not true. Everyone, wants someone special waiting for them. Someone who will protect a place they can return to. If you don't have that peace of mind, then you would not be able to get anything done . . .
Men try to tough it out as much as they can, and then some . . .
They're cute the way they do that, aren't they?

Margie: Yeah, you're right . . .

Elly drops her arms and turns her head to look over at Margie and says -

Elly: Anyway, we have things we have to do too, now.
And, while we do them, let's pray that everyone comes back safely.

Margie: To god?

Elly shakes her head, then turns to look up at the sky, bringing her hands up to shield her eyes and says -

Elly: No . . .To your own innermost feelings that everyone believes in . . .

Margie turns to her, walks forward a few steps, then stops, turning to look out at the horizon once more. Elly turns her head to look over at her and asks -

Elly: What's wrong?

Margie: I knew it . . .Yes, that must be it!

There is a moment of silence and Elly says -

Elly: What?

Margie: Elly, it's like everyone says! You must be a reincarnation of Sophia! You have no way of knowing the Nisan Sect's teachings, but what you say . . . . . .well, it's exactly the same as what Sophia always said.

Elly turns and look out over the vista beyond, pressing her clenched fists to her breast and says -

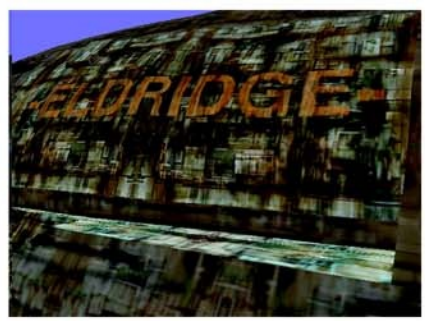
Elly: Yes . . .That might be it.
"The first time I visited here I had the most amazing feeling."
"Familiar . . .Sad . . .Like I had visited here many times in my dreams . . .
"I know where each room is and what's in them. I just know I must have been here in the distant past . . .
"Before, if you had spoken of this I'd have brushed it off with a laugh. But now . . .
Now I can more or less believe it.
"The things I couldn't do then . . .I'm probably trying to do now . . ."

Margie: Things you couldn't do . . .?

Scene returns to them once more and Elly nods once, turning to look over at Margie and she says -

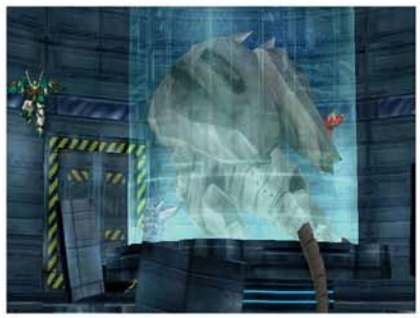
Elly: . . .Yes. Things I couldn't do . . .

View fades to one of the sky beyond, green trees and the coppery roofs of Nisan behind and light fills the view, white light consuming all. And -



"Driving back the Solarian interceptor forces, we took to the floating continent, Mahanon.
"It was the central hull of a colossal spacecraft with a diameter of at least 40 kelts.
"Judging from the condition of the hull, we estimated the ship was thousands of years old.
"It was determined, by examining the inside of the wreckage, that some kind of accident occurred on this ship about 10,000 years ago . . .which caused it to crash onto our planet.
Alien beings that came to our planet from a far off galaxy, aeons ago . . ."
"Could it possibly have been that our ancestors were the passengers of this ship and had crash landed here on this planet . . .
View fades and in the darkness.
"Seeking god and his divine wisdom . . .'Razael's Tree' . . . which, it is said, lie here in Mahanon, we proceeded further.

Scene cuts to a wide metal chamber as a set of double doors grinds shut behind them. A glass structure begins to rise. They watch as the creature rises before them.
"In the depths we saw an alien form. It was partially rotted and petrified . . .a giant, grotesque being . . .
'It' gave off an inexplicable air of intimidation.
Perhaps it was more than a gut reaction.
"Perhaps it was the fear of the 'Absolute' that came from the very depths of our inherited instincts . . ."
A flash of light comes, then scene darkens as the entire room begins to shake and the creature moves. The three quickly leap out of the way as it shatters the glass, charging straight for Fei.

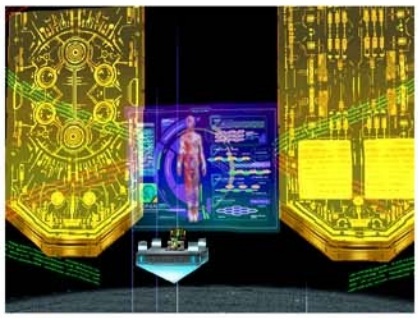


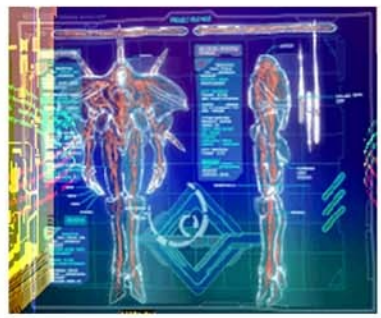
The battle begins! After hitting it hard at first, they soon see that careful planning will be needed to take it down at just the right moment. At last, they defeat it, and it sinks to the ground, gray as ash.

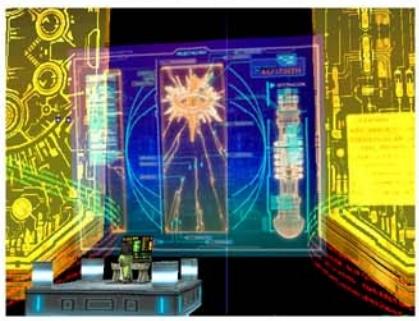
Fei: That . . .was the ultimate power?
The metal rings move back and the creature's dais descends below and scene fades to darkness.
"The partially rotted thing eventually self - disintegrated.
We proceeded even further . . .

"We came to an enormous cavern that was big enough to swallow the whole capital of Aveh.
In its center were two gently glowing objects. It was the source of divine wisdom . . .
It was 'Razaels's Tree'.
"And the cavern itself was a giant computer called Razael.

Citan is seen working over a console near the center of the circle and the golden glow begins to travel further up along the two objects.
As they watch, Citan continues to type in commands at the console. Then, the area where he stands rises from the floor, up to a point between the lower ends of the two glowing objects and halts, there is a distant thunder as the entire place shakes slightly, then a blue holographic plane emerges from the floor before him and rises up to a point just up ahead. It stretches from one of the objects to the other.







"The wisdom of god, hidden within Razael . . . We found the unthinkable when we accessed its data.

"A large unmanned strategic weapon and its battalion of terminal interface weapons, traveling from star system to star system. And a gargantuan mothership used to carry them . . .

The image changes to one of a reddish creature.

"The creation of the - Malakh - angel . . . God's army to reign over the vast universe with . . .
And the construction of a divine ark . . .

"These weapons were called, "Yabeh", the inter - planetary invasion weapon system . . .

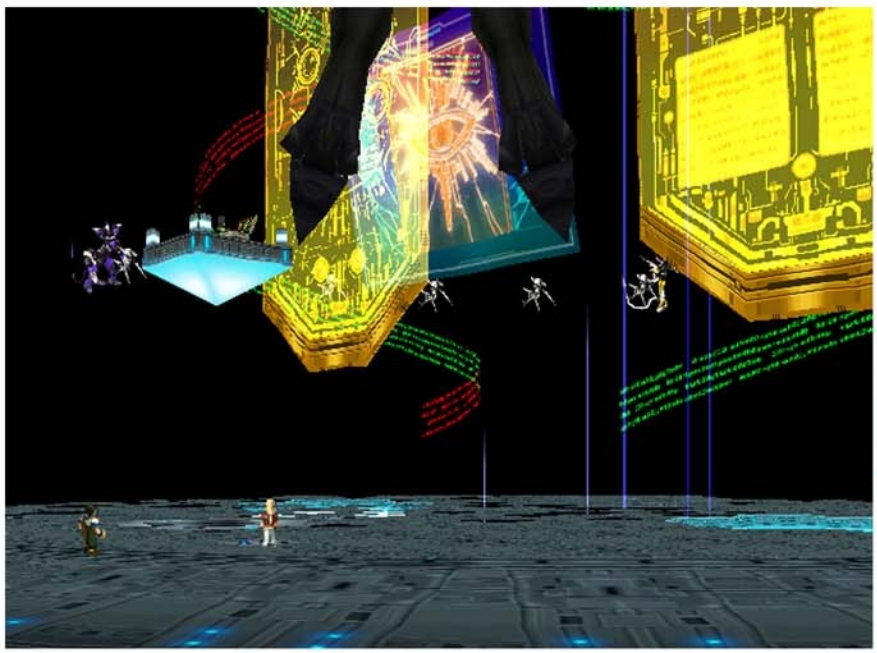
The image changes to one of a vessel in the shape of a three sided star, the three sections joined at a circle.

"What the Gazel Ministry was pursuing was right here.

"According to the data, the giant, rotting organism we just defeated was in fact the nucleus of this system.

"We were on the verge of accessing the data for the object called . . .
'Zohar'

" . . .the central neural circuit and power source controlling the entire system, from the weapons to the mothership . . .



There is a flash of white light, then view switches to one facing the tiny figures of Fei and Bart below the glowing tree of Razael as Gears begin to descend from above.

"When suddenly, 'HE' appeared.

A ring of Gears descends all around them. One is oddly shaped, purplish in color, another appears to have along tail. Grahf is in the center in the foreground, wings outspread. Krelian speaks from the left -

Krelian: Ah, the hidden data from Razael's Tree . . .
Move away from there. This matter is far too weighty for the likes of you.

Grahf and the others hover in a circle above the floor, surrounding Fei and the others

Fei: We must protect it with our lives! We can't let them have the Razael data!

View cuts to one facing Citan where he sits before the console, Citan says -

Citan: You handle them! I will try and extract as much data as I am able to! If anything goes wrong . . . I will destroy this place!

He taps in commands and view moves towards Grahf. Battle begins!

They face Grahf on the wide metal floor below Razael, as Grahf glides forward and lands in a severe blow in Alpha Weltall to Fei's Gear. It proves devastating and as he stands, Grahf rises into the air, pummeling him with glowing shields of light. Fei returns the attack, but he is near the end of his rope and the attack does little damage. Bart's whip proves just as ineffective and Alpha Weltall kicks him down, landing in several devastating blows. Now, both Fei and Bart are at the end their strength and they lash out without any real hopes of winning. Grahf's winged Gear is just too strong. Grahf finishes them both off with several deathblows and they topple to the floor.

Scene cuts to where Grahf's Gear hovers with arms crossed as he stands over the fallen Weltall-2. Fei kneels, panting, outside his Gear and -

Fei: Uhhh . . .

Grahf descends from his Gear, landing on the ground before Fei and says -

Grahf: I guess that's all you can take for now. (pauses) Are you frustrated? But that is . . .'only natural'. After all, you are imperfect.

From his place, crouched down on the floor, Fei looks up at him and says -

Fei: Imperfect!?

View moves in towards them and Grahf says -

Grahf: Yes. You are lacking now. The absence of wrath is an impediment to you utilizing your true strength!

Fei: W, wrath . . .?

Grahf: The drive to massacre an annihilate, the compulsion to destroy your opponent . . .Such wrath is power for the soul! By eliminating your foe, you attain your first sublimation of that drive. It is this very sublimation that draws out the hidden powers within oneself! But, clinging to reason . . . . . .suppressing your wrath and desire, makes releasing your true power a dream within a dream for you. You already know this . . .When wrath appeared in your heart, the machine responded, did it not? What drew out such power from your machine was truly the desire of your soul . . .It was your 'Id'. The sign of the purpose you've been seeking . . . The mark of a natural born assassin!

Fei rises to his feet, facing Grahf and says -

Fei: You're wrong! That's absolutely untrue!

He bows his head and says -

Fei: I, I am not 'Id'! I . . .

Grahf: The time has come . . .I'll take your soul, and draw its power out to the limit!

He approaches Fei and view pulls back to reveal Krelian and the Executioner as they stand watching from the side. Krelian says -

Krelian: Enough!

Grahf stops. Then he turns to Krelian and says -

Grahf: Huh? What are you stopping me for!?

Krelian walks forward as Grahf turns back to Fei, then stops a short distance away and says -

Krelian: He is bait. If you kill the bait, the precious bird we wish to capture will fly away. You know . . .a very important bird . . . 'needed to fulfill my earnest desire' . . .You understand, don't you, (pause) Lacan . . .?

Grahf turns from Fei and nods once, then walks away, saying -

Grahf: . . .Suit yourself.

He walks off to the left, disappearing and Krelian says -

Krelian: We shall crucify them. In the land of Golgoda, to the west of here. Collect all the broken Gears!

View moves up to Alpha Weltall, Fei, Krelian and Executioner standing before the fallen body of Weltall-2, then scene fades.

Scene cuts to the council hall in Nisan , where Margie stands with some of the mutated humans, Elly visible off to the left on one of the upper levels and a nun who paces to and fro.

"When Fei and the others arrived at the deepest part of Mahanon, I was looking after the newly mutating people in Nisan . .

"People mutating, one after the other . . .

"Like some eternal nightmare that made me wonder just how long we would have to keep on nursing them.

Elly walks among the people near the side of the chamber. She stops and turns to face the others, bowing her head. Then, she turns to the side towards the far wall and goes up to the raised level to look out one of the small round windows.

She stands there and Margie comes up behind her and asks -

Margie: Are you okay?

Elly turns to her and Margie says -

Margie: You haven't had any rest have you? I can handle things on my own for a while. Why don't you go out for a walk?

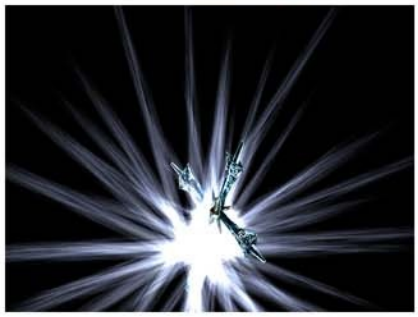
Slowly, Elly shakes her head and says -

Elly: Thank you. But I'll be alright. I'd rather keep busy so that I won't worry about things too much.

Margie: Is that it?

There is silence, then Margie says -

Margie: Hey! Elly, what's that?



Elly looks down at her chest, then back up to Margie and -

Elly: This?

Margie: Can I see it?

Margie steps closer and then says -

Margie: Just as I thought . . .It's the Pendant of Nisan.
But, why do you have it, Elly?

Elly: It's Fei's. I'm holding onto it for him . . .(pauses)
But . . .It feels as if I have always worn it . . .

Margie: Hmm . . .

Margie walks away a few steps, then turns to look back at Elly and -

Margie: When you wear that, you look even more like Sophia!

Elly shakes her head, then says -

Elly: Really? Hmm . . .Flattery won't get you anything, you know?
Anyway, we need to hurry up and test the new mutation suppressant assembler on those other people there. We can't afford to have them change any further.

Elly starts to walk away towards the center of the room, when suddenly she halts and looks down at her chest.

Elly: Ah!

Scene cuts to an image of the pendant as it falls in a dark void, spinning and a bright white ball of fire shines like a small sun where the red gem usually is. With a sharp sound, it rears off to the right, flashes of light following it from the shiny metal. Scene returns to Elly where she stands looking down at the pendant where it lies on her breast. She looks up and says -

Elly: Oh - no . . .Something has happened to Fei and the others!

View switches to the door below as Elly runs towards it, going through and scene fades, white light consuming all.

Golgoda

"Overcome by indescribable fear, I decided to ascend to Shevat which was stationed in the skies above Nisan. Awaiting me there was a transmission from Krelian . . . he told me that if I wanted to save Fei and the others, I would have to come to Golgoda. Krelian wanted me. In order to save Fei and my other friends, I departed in the last Omnigear left remaining in Shevat.
My previous fear of riding in this machine was surmounted by my desire to rescue the people dear to me.

Elly vanishes from the chair and scene fades. . Elly appears before the image, her back to it and two other silver and gray uniformed men appear behind her. One says -

Renk: Are you serious about going it alone!?

The others appear as she turns to them and says -

Elly: Krelian told me to come by myself.

She looks around at them, then nods once -

Elly: I can't afford to break the agreement. So please, stay behind and protect everyone here.

From the right, Helmholz speaks -

Helmholz: But, it's a trap!

There is a brief silence and she brings her hands up to her chest, saying -

Elly: I know.

Stratski: Then why!?

Shaking her head, she responds -

Elly: If I do not go, Fei and them will be executed for sure . . .
Krelian isn't concerned with anyone else but me.

Renk: So what makes you think he's going to hold his part of the bargain? Do you have any way of knowing that you will definitely save your friends by doing this?

She holds her hands up, and says -

Elly: No . . .

She drops them and Vance says -

Vance: Then it's suicide!

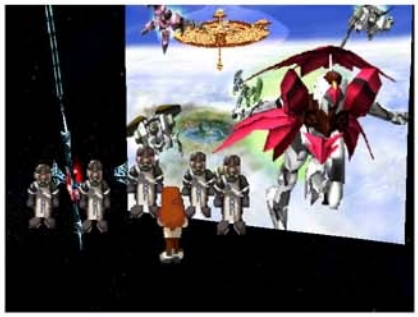
Elly turns her back to them and crosses her arms, saying -

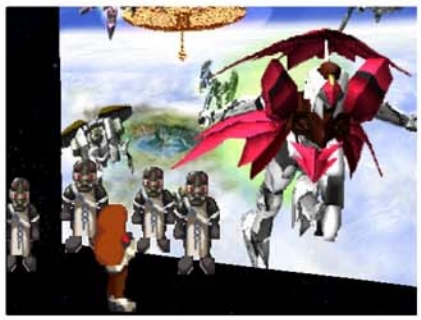
Elly: It might be.

Dropping her arms, she bows her head, then looks up above, her hands to her face.

Elly: But, I've made it this far because of Fei and the others . . .
Because they accepted me as their friend.

Renk: If you go away . . .what about us . . .? What about all the people who have assembled in Nisan that you leave behind?
Everyone's depending on you for their spiritual support.





She drops her hands and turns back to them, shaking her head and says -

Elly: The people in Nisan will be fine. They can stand on their own two feet without any support from me . . .(pauses) This is also true of you all, right?

From the center of the men, Broyer speaks -

Broyer: But why do you do so much for him . . .?

She bows her head, her hands at the pendant on her chest and she says -

Elly: I don't know . . . I guess it's a woman's prerogative to be selfish . . .perhaps.

Helmolz: A woman's prerogative . . .?

She looks up at them and crosses her arms, saying -

Elly: I'm not a holy woman of any sort. I'm just a regular woman. I get angry . . .I cry . . .I laugh . . .Although at times I can resent others, I also know how to love others. Loving whole masses of people at times . . . and loving just one person the rest of the time . . . I am in supreme bliss when I am embraced by the man that I love.

She turns, and holds her hands up to her chest, clasping them together as she says -

Elly: Giving what I have to him, and receiving what he gives me, we become one flesh . . . That is the moment when I am most at peace.

She turns to them and says -

Elly: It is my prerogative as a woman to simply want to save the man that I love!

Vance: Boss . . .

She shakes her head and says -

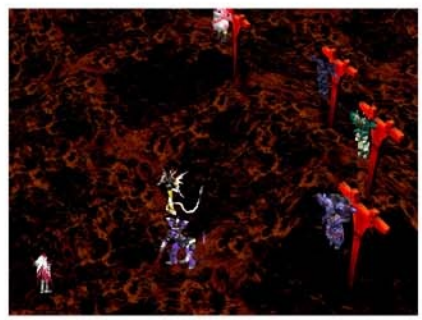
Elly: I'm sorry . . .for saying such selfish things.

There is a moment of silence, then she nods once and says -

Elly: I'll go and do all that I can do for my friends. So I want you all to do whatever it is you can do for our friends here.

Renk: . . .

Elly: Well, I had better get going now . . .



Scene cuts to the star field and the pendant swings slowly behind an image off towards the center, her Gear and those of the other two shown in the blood red landscape, surrounded by other Gears beyond and the four poles and crossbeams seen against the dying flame of the horizon beyond.

Elly appears from behind and walks towards them. Citan sees her and throws out his arms to either side, exclaiming -

Citan: Elly!?

He drops his arms and Fei shakes his head, saying -

Fei: You idiot! Why did you come here!?

Fei shakes his head once more and says -

Fei: Krelian's after you! Forget about us! Run and save yourself!!

The Executioner turns around to Elly and -

Elly: I came as I was told. I'm the only one you need . . . They have nothing to do with this. So let Fei and the others go!

Krelian turns to her, and says -

Krelian: How gallant you are, Elhaym. It's as if 'that scene from the past has been brought back to life in the present.' So, you came in an Omnigear. (pause) That too is . . .'her Gear'. Hmmm . . .(pauses) Allow me to confirm something.

Two more Executioners appear to either side. He says -

Krelian: I'll consider what kind of treatment your friends will receive . . . on one condition. . . .That you first defeat these two men here with that Gear you came in . . .How about it, Elhaym?

Fei: Forget it, Elly! He's up to something! Don't accept it!

Citan spreads out his arms and calls to her -

Citan: Fei is right! Krelian is not a man of his word . . .And he always has ulterior motives when he sweet talks someone! What's more, those men are fighting machines created by Krelian. Their combat skills are immeasurable! They are not opponents you can handle by yourself! Do not take him up on his offer! Escape while you can!!

He drops his hands and Krelian shakes his head, saying -

Krelian: My my . . .Such harsh criticism. I am not that brutal. So, what will it be Elhaym? Even if you were to try to flee now, it is not likely you would be able to . . .You see . . .I have this whole area surrounded by my guards! Wouldn't it be logical to take the choice where you may still stand a chance . . . . . .No matter how slight it may be?

From behind Krelian and the Executioner, Fei says -

Fei: Don't do it, Elly!

Elly: Alright then . . .I'll do what you say.

Krelian nods once, then crosses his arms and says -

Krelian: Good. You are indeed my precious little bird. Now, get on with it!

White light consumes all, then scene cuts to where Elly stands in the blasted plain, as she stands before her opponents. She says -

Elly: If it gives Fei and them even the slightest chance of escape . . .
Then I will fight! I don't care if it even costs me my life!!

View pulls back so that the first of the enemy Gears is seen briefly, then moves to one overhead as it approaches. She says -

Elly: They're too fast!!

View switches to one behind Elly's Gear, the enemy a green insectoid-like Gear with six legs. It rears back and pummels her, the other Gear visible to the right. The insectoid lashes her several times with his barbed tail and the impact strikes sparks off her Gear's armor.

The view switches to one facing the other enemy Gear, Elly's Omnigear off to the right in the foreground as she turns at his approach. He is equipped with a large metal ball on the end of one arm and a shield on the other. He rears back and slams his ball into her Gear, jumping up in the air and hitting her again. She stands there, her scepter in her right hand and begins to droop as the enemy moves back.

Elly: Outmatched . . . Even in my Omnigear . . .
But . . .I can't just . . .No . . .
not like this . . .

View pulls in close to her as she straightens, her scepter held upraised and she says -

Elly: I can't lose!!

She rushes them and lands in a powerful kick. View pulls back as she slams her scepter into the Gear with the skull face. She moves back and says -

Elly: M, must . . .somehow . . .
stop . . .movement . . .

View pans to the right to the insectoid Gear as she bounds forward and hits it with her scepter, lashing out in a kick which it blocks. Then she lands in a series of blows along its midsection. It falls back and sinks to the ground. She says -

Elly: Stopped!? Now's my chance! Haaaaaaaaah!

View switches to face her as she raises her scepter high overhead and hovers above the ground as a low rumbling shakes the earth, surrounding the enemies with grinding rock. The spell completed, the skull faced Gear falls as well and view switches to one where she stands before them.

Elly: Did I do it!?

After a moment, first one then the other of them rises once more .

Elly: H, how could that . . .!?
I thought it had some sort of effect . . .

View switches to the two enemy Gears as one says -

"Girl, that hurt! I'll get you back!! It was wrong of you to underestimate our power!"

Both approach her and she turns to the skull-faced Gear as the other lands in a powerful blow. The other slams his metal ball into her Gear with a loud crash, sparks flying from its armor. They begin to pummel her with crushing blows, one after the other until finally, she falls back to the ground.

View cuts to one of her Gear where it lies on the blasted earth and she says, "Gaah . . ."
Then she rises and vaults toward the two enemy Gears, but stops before she reaches them, her scepter dangling in her grip as she hunches over -

Elly: Guh . . .! . . Huff . . .Huff . . .

A voice is heard -

"Hmm, I'm getting no results. It can't be helped, Mugwort. It's about time to finish the job."

View pulls in to her prone Gear, then swings around to face the two enemies as she straightens, meeting their approach. Once again, they lash into her, holding back nothing, until at last she falls back to the earth. View cuts to her Gear from above where she lies on the pitted wasteland and pulls back as one of them says -

"Gahahahahah! Downed yet!? It's to be expected. Multiple fractures, major blood loss . . . I wouldn't be surprised if the cockpit is a sea of blood. At worst, death! Gah hah hah hah!!"

Then suddenly, there is a deep rumbling and her Gear rises, the view pulling in on her upper body, scepter raised.

"What the . . .! There's no way you could stand after taking that much damage . . ."

View cuts to one of the green insectoid Gear, his claws waving as a bright flash of light is seen. He explodes and vanishes, the other calls,
"M, Mugwort!?"

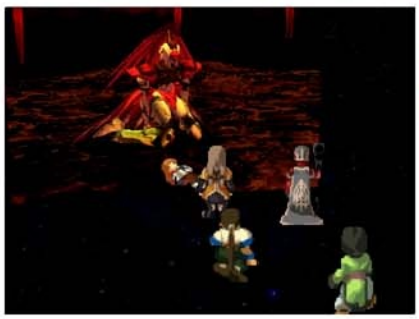
View swings over to the skull like Gear and he says, "Why you! How dare you do that to my partner!"

View switches to one facing the enemy Gear as Elly rushes forward and pummels him with heavy blows, leaping back. Then, white light appears and a single beam of white hot energy shoots out from her chest.

All is silent as the white light appears once, then again, shooting from her chest along her arms as she vibrates with the force of the energies. It slams into the enemy Gear and view switches to one behind her as she unleashes another of the white blue beams of light.

He disintegrates to the ground and she remains standing a moment more, then sinks to her knees, the sound of wind rushing.

View pulls back so that the poles and crossbeams are seen, all empty and scene fades.



Fei: No way . . .! Elly . . .!

Krelian and the Executioner appear ahead of Fei and Citan, facing her limp form.

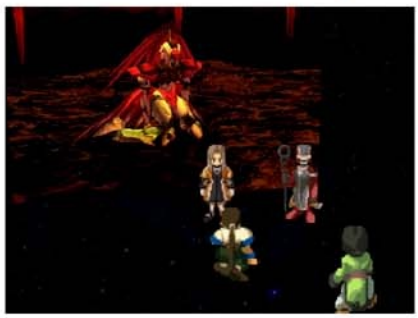
Krelian: Her true awakening . . .?
Or just merely . . .'protecting her master' . . .'

Krelian: Either way, it does not alter the fact that she is the -Mother- existence that I have been searching for!

After a moment, Krelian says -

Krelian: Now men . . .recover that machine. Place priority on the safety of the pilot. Use whatever it takes to preserve her life!

Elly disappears and Krelian and Executioner turn to Fei and Citan. Krelian nods once -



Krelian: Well then, I shall be taking this girl with me! As for the rest of you . . . Why don't you just wallow there pathetically while you meditate on your own lack of any real power.

He laughs, then he disappears, followed by Executioner, then finally, the image itself, leaving Fei and Citan alone in the endless night around them. Then, another figure emerges form the darkness, materializing before Fei. It's Grahf. He leans down to look at Fei and says -

Grahf: Pitiful . . .

There is only silence and he continues -

Grahf: You can't even protect a single woman. It is not even worth the effort of putting a spineless wretch like you out of your misery!

Then, he stands and vanishes. Scene fades.

Scene returns to where Fei sits in a chair in the field of stars, the pendant swinging beyond.

"Elly was taken away . . . And, as Krelian had told her, we were left alive . . .
Was Krelian just keeping his promise . . . No, that can't be it . . .
There had to be another 'real' reason why he allowed us to live . . ."

Scene goes dark and Fei continues -

"And we had to find that out . . .

Scene fades.

Scene cuts to the Gazel Ministry as Krelian stands on a pedestal facing them.

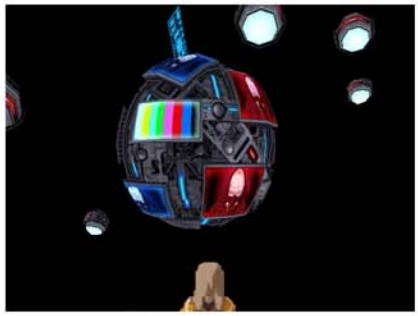
The fleshly body of god has been recovered . . .

The Anima and the Animus have all been obtained . . .

All that is left for us to do is change into the Animus, and become one with the mother -Persona- . . .

There is a moment of silence, then Krelian speaks -

Krelian: . . .That is incorrect.



What? What do you mean, Krelian? What did you just say?

View pulls back so that Krelian becomes visible in the foreground and a low grinding hum mixes itself with the oscillating hum of the sphere and its circling orbs. -

What are you doing!? Krelian, have you gone totally insane!?

The hum rises to a pitch with a grinding sound, then cuts off, only to begin once more.

What are you doing to the memory banks!?

Do not touch them! We cannot survive without them . . .!

Krelian: You were the only ones who could have activated the key . . .

One by one, the orbs begin to disappear, winking out of existence and Krelian says -

Krelian: But now that it has been activated, I no longer need you.
I am having you all erased.

How dare you!

As the sphere turns, it can be seen that some of the screens have vanished.
The low grinding hum rises in frequency, then cuts off, beginning again.

Krelian: The only obstacle that kept me from my goals was Cain.

Krelian: He was the one person who had total control of the people and thus was my greatest nemesis. But the only person who could terminate Cain was Cain himself. That's why I created . . .'a copy of Cain'. Ramsus acted exactly as I predicted . . .killing Cain. Now, there is no one who can stop 'me'. And I'm not interested in your power or authority. Did you really think you were acting on your own free will? You are all just parts of the system. Created only as weapons of invasion and oppression . . .You are just terminal interface weapons.

View moves around the sphere as more and more of the screens go blank, the orbs winking out of existence one by one

We . . .can . . .become . . .god! And . . .you're . . .

As the sphere rotates, another screen goes blank.

Krelian: God? Who said you'd be god! What impertinence! We are 'humans'. We were created to be terminal interfaces of god. It is the same for you, who were once humans. 'Man cannot become god'. . . .
We can only entrust ourselves to god.

More screens are blank as the sphere with its remaining orbs circle above.

Ri . . .diculous . . .Going . . . a . . .gainst the . . .Mother . . .

Krelian: I have not gone against her.
This is the will of the 'other mother'.

You . . .think . . .you . . .can . . .elim . . .inate . . .us . . . .and . . .
still . . . . . .revi . . .ve . . .god . . . ?

Krelian: It can be done. Your genes were scattered in order to keep the world alive after the 'Fall' in days of destruction. Those genes live on today within humans. The -Anima- vessels . . .and the recipients of their alignment, the -Animus- . . .and also the -Persona- . . .

Krelian: By combining these with my nanomachines, humans will become living beings very much the equivalent of you. Actually, they may far surpass you in becoming worthy terminal interfaces for god. So you are no longer of any use to me. -Deus-, the physical manifestation of god, only wants results . . .The means are insignificant to him . . .
So this is my 'Ark Plan' . . .My -Project Noah-!

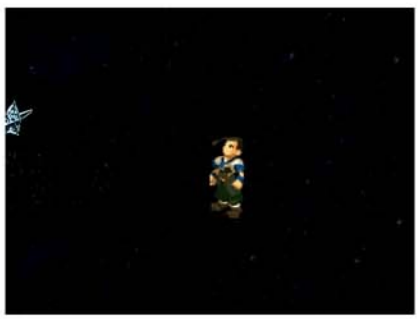
Another low grinding hum is heard and -

SE1: K . . .re . . .li . . .

Krelian: May all your worries cease. Rest in peace . . .
ancestors of mortal man!

Another of the orbs disappears and now, there is only one left. Then, it too disappears, the last screen vanishing and view pans down to the glowing circle below. The view looks down at the glowing circles, the golden key protruding from the middle and Krelian says -

Krelian: Now, it is just you and I . . .Sophia!



Light fills the view, consuming all and scene returns to Fei in the endless field of stars,

"I was powerless . . . All I could do was stand by and watch as they took Elly away from me . . .
I . . .am powerless . . .

White light consumes all, then scene cuts to Fei who sits huddled amid the field of stars, his face in his hands and the pendant swinging in the background. Wiseman appears behind him, and walks forward, turning to face him from behind. He asks -

Wiseman: What are you doing there?

Fei remains hunched over, without turning to look at Wiseman and says -

Fei: Oh, it's you . . .I . . .I wasn't able to beat Grahf . . .I didn't stand a chance against him . . .It was obvious from the start. It was impossible to try to defeat a monster machine like that to begin with . . .And . . .Elly . . .Why was she do damn foolish . . .? I implicitly told her not to come . . .I told her to run away . . . She had to have known it was a trap.

Wiseman: . . .Hmm . . .

Wiseman turns his back to Fei and shakes his head, saying -

Wiseman: Yes, you won't be able to defeat him like that . . . As long as you continue fighting with this kind of an attitude, that is.

Fei: . . .?

Wiseman walks around to face Fei who remains huddled and says -

Wiseman: The reason you lost and that young lady was taken was because of your pride. Weren't you depending far too much on the power of your machine? . . .Not to mention that new 'Id Power' you're now able to control! What is Grahf's source of power? His machine? His technique? His experience? I do not think so . . .(pauses) It is his feelings. His heart, his feelings, are dominated by his resentment and hatred of this world. That hatred is his source of power. Your feelings weren't focused enough to fight off Grahf. That is why you could not win. Your feelings must be in the right place. That (pauses) is strength.

Wiseman turns his back, facing the view and shakes his head, saying -

Wiseman: I'm not surprised you lost . . . . . .seeing as you do not understand the true meaning of strength . . .

From his position on the ground, without looking up, Fei says -

Fei: Wiseman . . .

There is silence, then Wiseman turns off to the side and says -

Wiseman: That young lady . . .The only thing in her heart was her desire to save you all. She set aside her fear and piloted that machine. It was because she had such strong feelings that you are all still alive . . .That is what I think. Of course you have been defeated. However, that doesn't mean it's over.

Then Wiseman turns to Fei and asks -

Wiseman: How do you plan on responding to her feelings? It is now your turn to save her (pause) . . .is it not?

Fei: . . .

Wiseman turn and walks back around Fei, facing him once more as his robes blow in an unseen wind. He addresses Fei's turned back -

Wiseman: Well, what are you going to do? (pause) . . .Fei . . .

He vanishes and Fei remains huddled in on himself and the view moves around to face him against the backdrop of the stars beyond. Then, he stands and bends his head back, looking up.

Fei: I, errh . . .I'm going to . . .

White light consumes all and scene returns to Fei in the chair as he recounts -

"In order to save Elly, we began to search desperately for her whereabouts . . .
And two weeks later, we found her.
Using the data obtained from Razael and his own nanomachine technology, Krelian had begun the construction of god's ark, 'Merkava'.
Its completion was imminent.
To prevent its activation, and to rescue Elly . . . we headed for Merkava!

White light consumes all and scene fades to one of the stars, the image showing the Elements' combined Gear and Weltall visible beyond as they approach a large structure. View pans towards one facing the image as the Elements appear one by one before it, Fei in the foreground, facing them and he says -

Fei: You again . . .? Are you girls thinking of going in there too?

Dominia: Don't get any wrong ideas there. We are here to help our Commander. Miang and Krelian have been manipulating his emotions for the sole purpose of eliminating the Emperor. We simply want to free the commander from those bonds so that he may be saved! It's neither for the sake of the world . . .nor for the sake of your girlfriend, Elhaym!

There is a pause, then she says -

Dominia: We have no intentions of fighting on the same side as you!

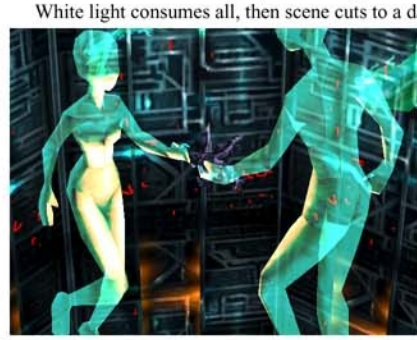
Fei shakes his head, then nods once and says -

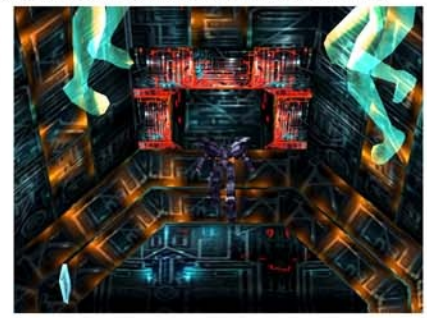
Fei: . . .Fine. You have your own battles to fight, and we have ours . . . Let's leave it at that. (pauses)
But . . .if things get out of hand, you head back. We'll handle it.

Dominia turns to the side and says -

Dominia: Hmph . . .We'll make you eat those words . . . You wait and see!

One by one, Kelvena, then Tolone and Seraphita disappear, then Dominia. White light consumes all and scene cuts back to the star field once more, Fei in the chair and he says - "We entered inside of Merkava and, while fighting back units of weapons that self-regenerated through the use of nanomachines, we headed for the central core . . .
And then . . . once again, Ramsus appeared before us.
White light consumes all, then scene cuts to a darkened black metal chamber as Weltall descends.





Scene cuts to where Fei, Citan and Bart stand in the midst of the black chamber in their Omnigears, its octagon shape outlined by ruddy golden lights. They go to the wide door ahead of them and the first metal section parts with a low grating hum, followed by others further down the wide passageway in succession. They go through to the next chamber, and a voice comes to them -

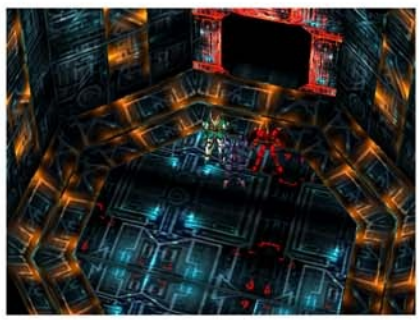
"I've been waiting for you, Fei!!"

Fei: Ramsus!?

View pans up and to the left high above where a purplish Gear stands on a ledge, slamming its fists together and Ramsus says -

Ramsus: Fei . . .If only you hadn't have been born . . .

Ramsus: I . . .I . . .We're going to settle this now!!



Fei: Stop it, Ramsus! What reason is there to continue fighting me!?
Who are you fighting for!? (pause)
Why do you always have a bone to pick with me!? Tell me why!

Ramsus: It is all because of you . . .If only you hadn't come in and destroyed my prospects in life . . .

Ramsus continues -

My life . . .was given to me within a Nanoreactor in Krelian's laboratory.
To be born as the superior being, above all humans . . . But then . . .

Scene fades and cuts to Krelian who stands in a large darkened chamber before a green pillar of light, a tiny creature suspended within it. Krelian turns around to the surrounding darkness beyond and says -

Krelian: Hmm . . . 'This time' your body is young.

A woman in a blue dress approaches, partially seen through the green cylinder, her face obscured by it as she halts and says -

" . . .The previous one got too old."

Krelian: . . .And the name?

"Karen . . .but individual names have no meaning to me."

Krelian: So . . .what brings you here?

The woman steps forward and Krelian moves aside as she approaches.

Karen: Is that thing inside the Nanoreactor there (pause) . . .the one?

Krelian turns to the creature and nods once, crossing his arms as he says -

Krelian: Huh? Oh . . .Recognition code 0008191 - 'Ramses'.
The Emperor's been told it's a prototype for an artificial 'Contact'.

Karen turns to him and asks -

Karen: What's its status?

Krelian walks over to the side, turning to the creature and nods once, then he says -

Krelian: It has entered the so - called first growth stage. From now until the binding, the growth will be several times faster than that of an ordinary human. But its psychological development will be a little difficult to control . . .

Krelian shakes his head, closing his eyes as he says -

Krelian: It is a replica . . .so that is to be expected.

Within the glass cylinder, the creature convulses and Karen turns to look at it, saying -

Karen: It is moving . . .Can it hear us?

Krelian opens his eyes and nods once, crossing his arms and he says -

Krelian: Yes . . .It already has a will of its own.

Karen: Then . . .I have a better way . . .Let us dispose of it.We do not need this . . .We have my child. My child will be 4 this year.

The creature moves within the fluid and Krelian says -

Krelian: Your having a child is . . .significant?

Karen turns to him and says -

Karen: Yes . . .I checked it out . . .
There is no mistake, it's a 'Contact'.

Krelian nods once and asks -

Krelian: What's its name?

Karen: My child's name is . . .(pauses) 'Fei'.
So . . .you understand what this means?

Krelian: A corresponding 'Antitype' is . . .

Karen: Yes . . .(pause) probably already born somewhere. . . .The final one!

Krelian leans his head back, closing his eyes, and he nods then says -

Krelian: Then . . .this thing is . . .worthless.

Karen: Yes, totally useless.

The creature moves once more in the cylinder, and view moves down closer, Krelian's eyes are closed as Karen turns to the creature and says -

Karen: Ha - ha . . .Chase after it, 'boy'. A love that's unattainable for you, no matter how hard you try to pursue it.

Scene fades to darkness and Ramsus says -

"Until then . . .

There is the sound of the heartbeat as the creature moves in the liquid, then scene returns to Ramsus in his Gear, fists slamming together as he says -

Ramsus: Because of your existence, I was discarded . . .! I was destined to be the representative of god . . .having the might of the Emperor. I was destined to be the ultimate existence, having the power to exercise absolute control over all! But . . .(pauses) I lost it all . . .because of you!!

View switches down to Fei where he stands with the others and he says -

Fei: M, my mother . . .? How . . .do you know her . . .? Ramsus!

View cuts to one facing Ramsus' Gear from the side and moves to the left so that Dominia in Bladegash becomes visible on another ledge. She says -

Dominia: Commander! Please stop this! Commander, if what you say is true, then that is even more of a reason not to fight! You were just used by Krelian and . . .

Ramsus turns to her and says -

Ramsus: Silence! You . . .even you . . .dare to censure me!? I saved you from nearly becoming a test subject and now you turn on me!?

Dominia: You are mistaken! We are only thinking of your best interests . . .

Ramsus: Silence!! Ultimately, only I can help myself! I'm the only one that can correct this!

He turns back around to face Fei and the others down below.

Ramsus: This is the end for you!! En garde! Cause, here I come, Fei!!

He leaps off the ledge and view switches to one behind Fei, Bart and Citan in their Gears as he lands on the metal floor in front if them. Battle begins!

After an extremely long and grueling battle, Amphysvena at last goes down and scene cuts to one facing the three as Ramsus moves off to the left, out of view. There is a tremendous flash of light and a thunderous roar as -

Ramsus: Ghuuaaahh . . .!!

The entire chamber shakes for a moment, then is silent and Fei asks -

Fei: What's this . . .?

He steps forward and sees that a huge hole has been torn in the wall just to their right just up ahead, darkness beyond. They go through and scene cuts to a large chamber beyond, green lights lining the ledges to either side and the fallen form of Amphysevna seen on the ground before them off to the side. They halt in the center and Fei -

Fei: What is this place?

He hears -

"This is where Kahr was born. And where his hatred of you was forged . . ."

Fei: Who's there!?

The door opens ahead and scene cuts to a large circular chamber of gray metal in which something large rests in the center, surrounded by a ring of green light at the edges. Fei, Citan and Bart look out into the room and view moves down to face the thing. Fei says -

Fei: What is this . . .? . . . !! That's Elly!!

Down below, near the massive object is a pole and crossbeam, tiny by comparison and outlined against the thing's glowing form. He steps forward and scene cuts to one closer to the pole, Elly hung from it where it is lodged in a red glowing pedestal. Fei, Bart and Citan stand facing them, outside their Gears, as Fei steps forward, looking over at Elly. He calls out -

Fei: Elly!!

Krelian nods once and says -

Krelian: I would have liked to have been able to commend you for making it here . . . But your efforts were all in vain. The resurrection of -Deus- is imminent. Sacrificing this girl will bring about the awakening of 'god'.

Fei: What are you talking about!? (pause) Why does Elly have to be sacrificed!?

Krelian: There is no need for you to know. (pause) For all of you, it will all end here . . .

Suddenly, a huge Gear rises out of the pit of glowing liquid where the huge object rests and rises into the air before them. Fei -

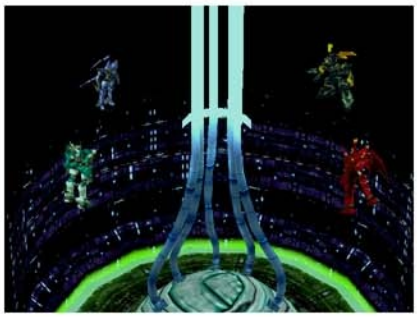
Fei: Ah!?

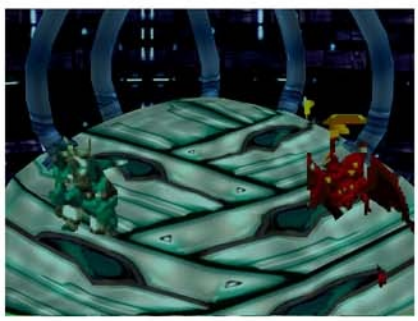
Battle begins! Miang says -

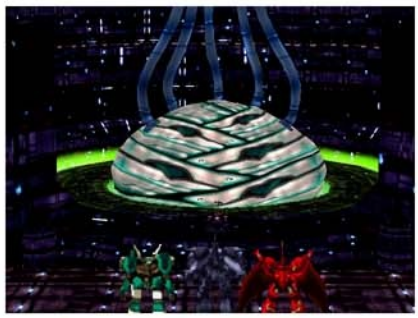
Miang: . . .Hehem . . .(pause) Adieu, boys . . .

They begin attacking, but see that every blow causes her Ether attack and defense to go up. Plotting ahead, they try to build up to third level deathblows and reach infinity level attacks, aware of their depleted fuel from the fight with Ramsus. They conserve fuel and every other turn, they unleash infinity blows. She falls back with streamers of black electricity crackling about her Gear and view moves down to look on her as she says -

Miang: My, (pauses) aren't we powerful . . .







Scene fades and cuts to where her Gear lies on the floor, the view pulls back as it rises once more and Miang says -

Miang: Heh . . .Well then . . .let's start over from the beginning again. You think you can beat me this time?

Fei: What the. . .!? I thought I defeated you . . .!?

They hear Krelian say-

Krelian: Unless you can decompose her atomic structure, you don't stand much of a chance. Normal attacks are futile against one who has the ability to regenerate using nanomachines.

View fades and scene cuts to one facing Miang's Gear as she stands against the backdrop of the huge glowing object beyond, Fei, Bart and Citan watching from the foreground. She says -

Miang: Now, the time has come for the great awakening!

The entire place begins to shake, the lights flashing blue, disappearing before coming back again as a resonant oscillating hum is heard. Bart says -

Bart: W, what the!? M, my body . . .
It feels like it's bein' torn apart!!

Citan: It is our . . .(pauses) Omnigears!?

Bart: It, it's . . .pulling me in . . .!!

Fei: Damn, what's going on!? Huh!?
Hey . . .Is that . . .!?

View cuts to one above the glowing object, its tubes trailing up high overhead and the Omnigears, Stier, Fenrir and Andvari are seen above as they hover above it, the shaking and grinding oscillating hum continue.

Fei: Our Omni . . .? No, that's not it!! Is that . . .our Anima Relics!?

Citan: Is it trying to detach the Anima Relics from our Omnigears!?

The view moves in closer as the Gears begin to be pulled down past the blue glow of the tubes above and Fei -

Fei: Deus is . . .swallowing up our Anima Relics!?

The giant spheroid object appears down below as the Gears get closer, the lights continuing to flash with a greenish tinge. The Gears disappear under the layers of the thing and, after a moment, the shaking stops and the lights stop their flashing as the round layered sphere begins to glow.

Bart: What's going on!? My Omnigear . . .
won't move!? It's like it's dead . . .!?

The view pulls back and Miang speaks -

Miang: This is the true meaning of the -Anima Relics- . . .
To attain their respective -Animus- and return to the -Persona-.

Miang: The Anima Relics are really one set of parts that make up -Deus-, the physical manifestation of god. They regain their original powers or functions by aligning themselves with their destined partner . . .An Omnigear that has lost its respective Anima Relic, is but a puppet. It becomes a mere vessel or container in which there are no contents.

Krelian: And this girl too was destined to become one with god . . .
You see . . .Elhaym is really one of the parts of god as well . . .

Fei: What the hell are you talking about!?

Krelian: Put simply, you served to help bring all the parts of god together, here, for me. You're a bunch of stupid fools. It's as if you're all clowns . . .

Miang: You believed the legend of how our world and the universe was created . . .But the Ministry and I fabricated that very myth a long time ago to suit our purposes.

Fei: That's a lie!! (pauses) How can that be true . . .?

Miang: I think you'll find that your friends' Omnigears are all dead too . . . I'm talking about your friends who split up and took a different path than you into this place . . .They were all parts of god that were disassembled in the past, but once again, are all gathered here.

Krelian: Yes. It is indeed the time for the resurrection of god.

A voice asks -

"W, what was it all for . . .
Everything that I have
done up until now . . ."

Scene fades and cuts to Ramsus who stands at the end of the path leading down to where the pedestal and pole are lodged. Fei, Bart and Citan are in the foreground, and -

Fei: Ramsus!?

Krelian turns to look at Ramsus as he approaches Elly and says -

Krelian: Hmph . . .It's just you . . .

Miang turns to Ramsus and asks -

Miang: What are you doing here, (pause) Kahr?

Ramsus jumps off the path leading down to the area where Krelian and Miang stand. He walks forward, then turns to Miang and says -

Ramsus: What about me . . .?
My existence . . .What was its purpose?

Miang: There was only one purpose to your existence . . .
To eliminate Emperor Cain.
Cain's will had become too much like that of humans'. He was too concerned about them. He had forgotten his mission to revive god. That is why you were created.
You were only made to remove our main hindrance . . .Cain.
But, as the original living being, Cain had absolute power.
To make you turn on Cain, it was necessary to focus your mind on a single point.
However, being an artificial life form, you were mentally unstable. That is why . . .
(pause) we used Fei's existence. Resentment . . .That is the source of you strength.
And you have excelled superbly at fulfilling our expectations of you.
But . . .we no longer have any more use fore you. Haven't you realized that yet?
You're a piece of trash. And being the reject that you are, why don't you just leave? Hah hah hah.

Ramsus steps forward towards the red pedestal containing the pole and he says -

Ramsus: I . . .I . . .What was I born for?
What was I living for?

He slumps by the pedestal and Krelian says -

Krelian: A pathetic excuse for a life.
Why, you aren't even human!
Kahaha . . .Hah hahaha . . .!

Miang faces out towards where Fei and the others stand watching and says -

Miang: Now, what to do with the rest of you . . .Well, I can't just kill you all . . .seeing as you have served me so well. So, as a reward, I'll allow you to be sacrificed too . . .
To be assimilated into Deus along with this girl . . .

Suddenly, Ramsus moves to the side towards Miang, then view cuts to one closer up, facing Krelian, Ramsus and Miang as he plunges his sword into her back. She -

Miang: Guhh . . .!?

Fei: Ramsus!!

She falls to the ground and Ramsus stands over her. Then, she speaks -

Miang: Good . . .This is how I wanted it, Kahr . . .I am fated so as not to be able to kill myself . . .Now . . .all . . .my . . .wishes have . . . come . . .true. (pause) Thanks . . .to . . .you . . .!

Ramsus: . . .(pause) Miang . . .

Then, he slowly turns and facing Krelian -

Ramsus: Uh, uhaaaaaahhhh!!

He rushes over and brings his sword down in a gleaming arc, and Krelian clutches his middle and topples face down to the ground. Ramsus stands there a moment, then turns and makes his way over to Miang, kneeling down beside her as Fei and the others appear.

View cuts to one facing the entire party, Fei at their head and he turns around to them as Rico says -

Rico: Too bad we missed the action. Our Omnigears gave out on the way here. Anyways . . .Let's hurry up and save Elly!

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Yes, I know!

He turns back toward Elly and they make theirway forward.

Scene cuts to where they all stand around Elly who hangs above them, and Fei reaches up to her and says -

Fei: Hang in there, Elly!
I'm letting you down now.

He takes her down off the pole and holds her up before him, when there is a sudden shot. Fei sinks down to his knees.

Scene fades and returns to where all stand at the base of the red pedestal. Elly now stands above on the pedestal, Fei -

Fei: Ghaah!

Fei kneels to the floor and Citan kneels down beside him, saying -

Citan: Fei! Now you hang in there!

Billy: Sh, she took my gun . . .!?

Bart: W, why did you do that, (pause) Elly . . .?

Citan stands and looks to her and asks -

Citan: Elly!? What happened to you!? (pauses)
How could you!?

Bart: Don't tell me she's been . . .brainwashed!?

Then Krelian speaks from behind -

Krelian: It has nothing to do with brainwashing . . .

All except Fei and Ramsus turn and Krelian rises from the floor and says -

Krelian: The majority of my body is composed of a nanomachine colony.
Not only for longevity . . .but also to unify with the 'mother' . . .
So don't be surprised. This much damage can be recovered rather quickly.

Citan: Unify with the mother . . .?

Krelian: That girl . . .Elhaym, is our 'mother'.

Then Elly speaks from above -

Elly: Yes. I am the mother of all humans . . .

All except Ramsus who remains kneeling beside Miang turn to her and there is a moment of silence, then Fei says -

Fei: Elly . . .!?

Bart: What are you babbling on about!? (pause)
Snap out of it, Elly!!

Elly: You're as dense as usual . . .(pause)
But, I don't blame you . . .So be it. I will explain to you all about it.

Elly: This Deus, the one you call god, is an 'inter - planetary invasion weapon system' that was built in ancient times by humans from another planet.

Elly: It was created as an automatic weapon which could act upon its own will to take control of a targeted planet. But you should've known this much from looking at the Razael records. Anyway, during a test run, Deus became uncontrollable. It released its power and annihilated a whole planet. The creators of 'Deus' found its immeasurable power to be too much of a threat and hence forcibly shut it down.

Elly: In order to analyze the cause of the problem, its core was dismantled and placed on an inter - planetary emigrant passenger ship to be transported to another planet. Becoming aware of this, the disassembled Deus resisted. It tried to take over the passenger ship that was transporting it. However, as a last line of defense against the escape of Deus, its creators, unexpectedly destroyed the whole ship, sending it crashing to this planet. Deus knew that it would not be able to get away from the explosion or the imminent impact and it detached its core from the 'Zohar' power reactor.

From the base of the pedestal, still kneeling, Fei asks -

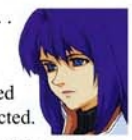
Fei: Zo . . .har . . .?

Elly: Yes, 'Zohar' . . .It is what drives all of the Gears on this planet. It is the master generator that transmits its energy to the slave generators in our Gears. It is also the source of all the Ether power that the inhabitants of this planet utilize. By utilizing the energy displacements caused by actualizing potential future phenomenon . . . . . .this 'Zohar Modifier' has the ability to produce infinite amounts of energy.

Bart: The source of all our Ether power!?

Citan: Are you saying all our energy comes from that one power reactor or engine?

Elly: Yes, but there is more . . .



Elly: The core that was detached from Zohar, the 'Biological Computer Kadomony' crashed onto this primitive planet. It activated -Persona-, its life support plant, that can generate organic material. Using this it prepared for itself a genetic-based system for the day when Deus would be resurrected.

Elly: Thus, the first humans were created from there . . . Emperor Cain and the elders of the Gazel Ministry.

Rico: Are you saying the Emperor and those Gazel geezers were people born from Deus!?

Elly: Do you know why the Gazel Ministry desired the Anima Relics and your bodies? Well, here's the reason . . .Before becoming human, the bodies of the Ministry were once part of the organic elements in the core circuit that made up 'Deus'. There were two types of organic elements. The female type was called 'Anima', while the male type was called 'Animus'. They were also created with the added ability to become mobile weapons by merging with machinery that was suited for use as terminal interface weapons for Deus. In other words, those Omnigears you were using were one form of such weapons. The Ministry, which were Animus, were to become one again with their separated Anima at the time of the resurrection of god . . .But, in a war 500 years ago, they all lost their physical bodies. It was then that they decided to extract their own genetic factor from certain individuals of their human descendants who carried the appropriate sets of D.N.A. All so each of them could become one with their respective Anima again.

There is silence and view switches to one facing them as they stand around Elly from further off, Deus looming large in the background and Weltall seen to the right in the foreground. Maria asks -

Maria: Descendants!?

Bart: Then we're all . . .!?

Elly: Yes, you humans are all descendants of Cain and the Gazel Ministry . . . they were born from the -Persona-, gave birth, and propagated.

Elly: They followed their inbuilt program to someday resurrect the heavily damaged Deus.

Citan: All the people in the world were created solely to resurrect Deus!?

Elly: Yes. But it wasn't just to restore its old body. More than half of Deus is constructed of biological parts. Do you remember those mutated humans? Those are all people who were destined to become replacement parts for Deus.

Billy: We humans are . . . (pauses) parts for god . . .

Elly: Yes, almost all the people are destined to become parts for Deus. But you people gathered here are all different. You could say . . .you escaped that destiny by existing through multiple generations . . .

Elly: In actuality, there wasn't enough parts for Deus . . . But, Krelian compensated for what was lacking. The reductions in the number of parts, was due to humans living through multiple generations . . .But that deficiency in the human factor, was made up for by the nanomachines created by Krelian. Not only that, but his nanomachines added additional functions. Deus has thus evolved into the perfect weapon.

Fei: Elly . . .What has happened . . .? (pause)
Why . . .do you know all . . .(pause) that . . .?

Elly: I am Miang. The keeper of time. The representative of our god -Deus-. I was born to guide the people toward the path of the resurrection of Deus.

Bart: That's ridiculous! Miang was just . . .

Elly: You're limited in your ability to understand . . .Miang's factor exists within all women. The one who transcends the generations, the caretaker of humans. When the previous one dies, somewhere another Ming is awakened. It is programmed into all women's DNA to be that way. Who inherits the duty is just a matter of probability, Fei. That Miang over there and I are the same existence. We are all parts of Deus . . .All caretakers of humans.

There is silence, then view cuts to one facing Elly and the others. She says -

Elly: Let us end this discussion now. (pause) Deus has awakened. I am one of the parts that compose Deus. Hence, I must become one with it.

Then Citan calls over from the right -

Citan: Elly! Why did it have to be you? If Miang is a part for Deus, why did it not happen earlier . . .?

Krelian: It's still not enough for her just to have awakened.
Although she may be Miang, she still isn't the 'true Miang'.

Citan: The 'true Miang' . . .?

Elly: Let's go, Krelian. All that is left to do is to vanquish this planet's civilization and return it to how it was. Then I can complete my unification with the final fragment of Deus . . .the 'Zohar Modifier' . . .
The power reactor that fell upon this planet and became our genesis, and now, our apocalypse . . .

Citan: The eradication of civilization!?
What is the purpose of doing that!?

Elly: Who knows . . .? (pause) The creations of god will someday be a hindrance.
That is why they must be eliminated. I am just programmed to act in this way . . .

Krelian walks to the left around the others and moves to stand behind the red pedestal, facing Elly and the others. He says -

Krelian: Come . . .It is time for the awakening of the true 'mother'.

Elly turns and jumps off the pedestal, walking over to stand by Krelian. Then, she turns and faces the others and Fei says -

Fei: Please . . .wait . . .Elly . . .!

Elly: Farewell . . .Fei. May you have a peaceful 'awakening' . . .

View moves up as she and Krelian turn and begin walking towards Deus, then scene fades.
Scene cuts to the chamber in which Deus is contained,as the entire place begins to shake, the tubes separate from the body of Deus and it sinks into the glowing green liquid surrounding it as the chamber continues shaking, Deus disappears into the white radiance below. Fei calls out -

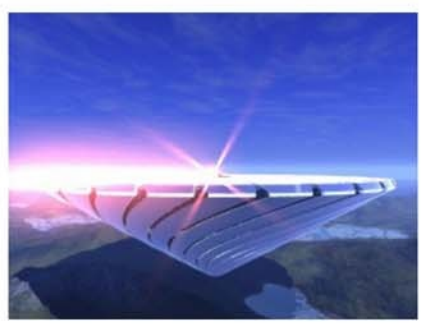
Fei: Elly!!

Weltall moves and suddenly leaps into the glowing pool, and the lights begin flashing as the resonant hum increases.

Citan: Wait!! Fei! Do not release the system!!

Bart: Citan, wait!! We are only endangering ourselves!
Let's get outta here for now!!

Scene goes black and cuts to a landscape with blue sky overhead as a silvery disk rises out of the land, ridges spiraling down to its tapered end. View cuts to the edge of the immense silver disk as a beam of energy shoots out of it, striking the earth below, cutting into it along a line and scene fades.



White light consumes all, then scene cuts to the star field once more and this time, it is Citan who sits in a chair before an image. The image shows a section of the vast silvery disk which is open, revealing a complex of metal structures inside and a multitude of shimmering beings fly out from its depths, each with a silver ring about its head.

"God . . .the inter - planetary invasion weapon -Deus- . . . had awakened and its ark, Merkava was activated.

"Deus began to absorb, one after the other, the mutated people, destined to be its parts . . . While the non - mutated, would eventually, only become a threat to it. To exterminate us and our civilization . . . it set into action.

"The planet's surface was devastated . . .
. . .by Merkava and the weapons born from out of it, called . . .
'the Seraph - angels'.

"While pursuing the newly awakened Deus, we chanced upon Fei, whose whereabouts had hitherto been lost . . . along with his Gear, Weltall . . . Discovered together at the place where 'Merkava' was originally located . . . We were overjoyed by Fei's return . . .but it was short lived . . . For some unknown reason . . . Fei was found in a state of suspended animation. He did not regain consciousness.

"The people of Shevat, and we ourselves, feared a relapse of Fei's, no . . . Id's power . . . and had no choice but to put Fei into . . .'Carbon Freeze'.

Citan vanishes from the chair and white light fills the view, consuming all.
Scene cuts to the endless field of stars, and view pans down and stops as Citan appears in their midst, facing off to the right as Zephyr appears before him. He addresses her -

Citan: . . .Your Majesty. Why do the people of Shevat fear Fei so much? Even if Grahf and Id's power are comparable . . .

Zephyr: . . .It is not that we fear him.
She shakes her head, then nods once and says -
Zephyr: We fear the error we ourselves committed. And now we are simply trying to put a lid on it . . .

Citan: The error that you yourselves committed?

Zephyr turns and begins walking to the right, Citan following a moment later and she says -

Zephyr: Shevat instigated a battle 500 years ago to gain our independence from Solaris.
She pauses, staring out at the panoply of stars beyond and she says -
Zephyr: However, we became overcome with the lust for power . . .
The view halts to one facing her back and Citan stands watching her. She continues -
Zephyr: Fearing the war - torn people's will would no longer be with Shevat, but with the Nisan Mother . . .and that the people would assemble under Sophia . . .
. . .the Council of Elders of Shevat back then, made a deal with Solaris.

Citan holds up his hands and leans forward, asking -

Citan: A deal?

He drops his hands as she turns to him and says -

Zephyr: Yes . . .At the time, Solaris . . .or the Gazel Ministry to be exact . . . . . .were at odds with a woman who held the real power behind the scenes.

Citan: . . .Would that happen to have been Miang?

Zephyr: Most probably it was.

The view darkens and she says -

"Fearing the increasing power of the masses assembling in Nisan, the Gazel Ministry schemed to hand over to us their antagonist, Miang, and promised a division of the rulership over the earth's surface. But in exchange . . .
We had to give them the rebel army that had assembled in Nisan and also their patron, Sophia . . .

Zephyr: The leaders of Shevat accepted . . . . . and it was decided that Nisan would be the location of the final decisive battle with Solaris.

Zephyr turns around and an image appears against the backdrop of night before her.

Zephyr: Shevat did not participate in that battle . . .Thwarted by the awesome numbers of the Solarian army, and with their path of retreat cut off . . . . . .the Nisan rebel army ran out of options and was destroyed . . .Caught up in the middle of all this was Lacan, Bart's ancestor Roni, myself . . . (pauses) and 'Krelian'.

Citan: You were also there?

Zephyr turns around to him and nods once, saying -

Zephyr: Yes . . .Surrounded on all sides . . .we were prepared to die. And then, the rebel forces' flagship appeared with Sophia on board. She sacrificed herself so as to create a path for our retreat . . .Sophia's ship headed straight for the enemy's main ship on a suicide attack.

White light consumes all then scene cuts to a faded black and white movie reel of a ship as it appears out of a cloud of smoke in the sky off to the right, the image brown and faded with age. It travels to the left and view follows it as it goes towards the horizon beyond. A sleek vessel, with wings outspread to either side and both its engines in the rear burn brightly. The film cuts to an image of the enemy vessel's insignia, the Solarian circles evident, flames and smoke partially hiding it. View cuts to one above the vessel, a three sided 'star' shape, the equal triangles joined at a circle and a bright light blooms out of its side. View cuts to the rebel flagship as it approaches the enemy vessel, laser fire tearing into it as it plows on, explosions all along its hull. View cuts to one of the enemy vessel's gun turrets as they take aim and a blaze of light shoots out from them. The ship flies amid the flaming inferno, ever closer, a fireball erupting along its hull. View cuts to one of the ship and its own penumbra of flame as it careens towards the enemy vessel, view cuts to its insignia of circles and pulls in, then cuts to an image of the rebel flagship as it breaks apart, flame erupting out all along the enemy vessel's hull. It explodes and view cuts to one at a distance as a tiny sun flares among the clouds against the dying sunset and it spreads out, white light consuming all.

Scene cuts back to Zephyr and Citan where they stand before the image of the battlefield, and Zephyr shakes her head, then nods once and says -

Zephyr: Thanks to Sophia's sacrifice, we were able to survive. However, her death forever changed the fate of two men . . .

The view darkens and she says -

"Krelian, who followed closely under her as the leader of the Nisan sect's militia, completely lost faith after calling out to a god that would not respond.

"I will create god with my own hands!" . . .were the last words he uttered before he disappeared. And Lacan . . . He resented himself for not having the power to do anything while she died in front of him . . .

. . .so he began to search for the 'Legendary Power'.

View brightens and Citan asks -

Citan: Legendary Power?

Zephyr nods once and says -

Zephyr: God's resting place, 'Mahanon' . . .The source of divine wisdom, 'Razael' . . .And the 'Anima Relics' which were created by that very wisdom . . .Besides these . . .(pause) there is one more legend.

Citan: And that is?

Zephyr: 'Zohar' . . .

Citan holds out his hands and says -

Citan: Zohar!? (pause) That has the same name as the 'Zohar Modifier' . . . . . .the power reactor that Miang spoke of, saying it was the infinite energy source of god -Deus- . . .What she claimed is also the source of our Ether powers and the driving force of all our Gears.

He lets his hands drop back to his sides and she shakes her head, then nods once.

Zephyr: It would have to be one and the same thing . . .It is the place that contains the ultimate source of this world's power. It is said that only he who has the correct destiny would be able to discover its location . . .

She pauses a moment, then shakes her head and -

Zephyr: Losing all faith in humanity, Lacan sought after its power . . .Lacan became Grahf . . . and the world collapsed . . .This tragedy happened because of the people's lust for power . . . I must take part of the responsibility for not having been able to stop it . . .And now, Fei . . . the one who has the same power as Grahf . . .We just wanted to seal up that dreadful power that arose from our own sinful deeds . . .

Citan turns to look at the battlefield, then scene fades to him where he sits in the chair and says -

"Grahf, the man once known as Lacan, sought after the 'Power of Zohar' . . .
The one who has the same power as Grahf . . .Fei . . .
I had this premonition that Fei too would awaken and seek that power.
And that presentiment became reality.

Citan vanishes from his chair, Fei following a moment later, and white light consumes all. Scene cuts to the prison area of Shevat, the only sounds are a distant hollow dripping from somewhere and view moves past the cages lined up along the central pathway to a section of the far wall where a black oblong can be seen, Fei encased inside. View moves in closer and a heartbeat is heard, then Fei's form lights up with the sound of a silvery tone.

Then, the heartbeat goes silent and scene fades.

Fei walks alone amidst a sea of dark blue nothingness.

"Where . . .Am I?"

"Who . . . am I?

View moves around Fei, so that he walks towards the distance beyond, the pendant appearing before him, further ahead, its form seen against the backdrop of the blue surrounding him.

"This is . . . my memory?

The pendant slowly swings, trailing sparkles of light in its wake and the sound comes again as an image far off appears. It shows he and Citan standing outside the doc's workshop and a ghostly image of Fei passes out from him to the image and he says -

"Doc . . ."

The image winks out of existence with the sound of a tiny bell struck once. Another appears off to his left up ahead, the square cut into the blue void as he continues to move forward. It shows he and Bart on the bridge of the Yggdrasil and another ghostly image of Fei passes into this image as well.

"Bart . . ."

One by one, he is shown his meetings with his friends.

"Rico . . ."

"Billy . . ."

And others -

"Wiseman . . ."

"Grahf . . ."

The half seen form of Fei is seen as it walks into this image and it vanishes, leaving Fei in the dark blue void as, one by one, half seen images of himself form a circle, all facing outward around him, the pendant swinging beyond in the darkness.

"Everyone . . . My . . .memories.

White light appears briefly, filling the void and Elly is seen emerging from Fei and she goes to the center of the circle, turning to him.

"Elly?"

The white light appears again, fades, as another woman passes out from him, her image becoming superimposed over that of Elly.

"Mother?"

White light fills the view and all the images of Fei turn towards him and come together, returning to him once more as the white light continues to grow, filling the view. Then, it vanishes, leaving Fei alone in the void, the pendant seen beyond as it trails silvery sparkles, its gem catching the light with the metallic sound and, as it turns, a small sun ignites at its center, a radiant ring of light spreading out from it and the pendant draws closer as its white heart burns brighter, sending streamers of light all around into the void. Then it disappears and is replaced by an image of a small boy in shadow, his form upside down in the square before Fei. The image switches to show that same boy's face closer up, his hair covering his face and a small smile barely visible in the shadowed features as the image hangs before Fei.

The entire scene, including Fei, ripples as though a stone had been cast into still waters and the image before Fei disappears with the sound of a single struck bell. Behind him, a pool of white light appears and he turns around to see- himself. Huddled on the ground, his legs drawn up to his chest and his back to him. Fei asks -

"Who are you?"

Fei walks forward to stand in the light behind the other Fei and he hears a voice -

"I'm surprised. That's pretty clever.

Fei turns to the left as a small boy appears and walks towards him, long tangled hair covering his eyes. Fei says -

"You are . . . Id?

The boy comes over to stand at the edge of the pool of light, facing him and says -

"I misjudged you. I didn't expect you, the fake personality, would create a fourth persona.

Fei asks -

"Fourth persona?

Id responds -

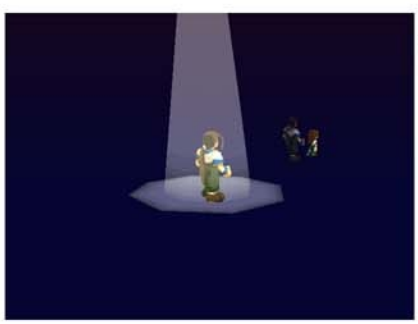
"He can't feel anything. He's shut up inside your ego.
The pressing facts and truths you won't face.You're afraid of them, so you desired to completely shut yourself off from the outside world.

View moves as Id walks towards the huddled form and stands beside him in the circle of light from above. He faces outward -

"And so you formed a fourth persona. A fourth 'Fei'.
The name . . .doesn't matter. He's the one on stage. He's the one who's in control of our body.
But it is a useless form of resistance.

The boy/Id turns to Fei and says -

"Come with me!"



He takes the Fei who had been huddled and they move off to the right, out of the circle of light and Fei calls out -

"Wait! What are you doing?

Id stops with the other Fei and now Fei stands in the center of the circle of light, looking out to them, their backs turned as Id responds -

"He has the key. I merely want to borrow it. I've got to go somewhere.

View moves around behind Fei as they walk off, then they vanish. Fei hears -

"Are you . . . coming too?

All disappears into darkness and scene fades.

Scene cuts to a large metal structure against the backdrop of stars, lit by red light from below and view pans down to the right where four men are seated around a campfire before a transport ship, A blond man with a long braid and deeply tanned skin stands before the flames on the far side near Lacan who sits staring into the fire and Krelian is seen sitting to the left on the other side of the fire across from Lacan, looking out towards the edge of the light, lost in thought. Another man stands nearby in the foreground with is back to the view, his brown hair gathered at the nape of his neck. The blond man who has startling blue eyes says -

Roni: C'mon guys, eat up. You haven't been able to get this kinda food around here lately, have ya?

The other man walks towards the fire and sits down, and Roni continues -

Roni: Well, this is also due to my business savvy.

There is silence as the flames crackle and the man seated before the fire turns to Lacan and asks -

Rene: . . .What's wrong, Lacan? You look kinda down. What's bothering you? Are you worried about something?

Roni walks forward and sits down at the fire and Lacan says -

Lacan: It's nothing . . .I'm just thinking about painting Sophia. I don't know why I agreed to do her portrait . . .

Rene: Sophia . . .You mean your childhood friend who's now the Holy Mother of Nisan?

Lacan: She's not really a childhood friend . . . . . .I just made her acquaintance at the monastery near my home when I was a child . . . She went to the clinic there for convalescence. She was frail.

Rene: So . . .what are you worried about painting her for?

Lacan: She does not wish (pause) herself to become a symbol of her sect. . . .Actually, it seems she wasn't interested in having her portrait painted at first. But, when she heard I would be the painter, she turned around and agreed. That's what I don't understand . . .

Roni turns to Lacan and says -

Roni: I see . . . Then she must like you . . .

Lacan turns his head to look over at Roni and says -

Lacan: What are you talking about?

Roni: That's how women are . . .Right, Krelian . . .?

He turns to look over at Krelian and says -

Roni: Hey, Krel!

Krelian turns to him and says -

Krelian: Huh?

Rene turns to him and asks -

Rene: . . .What's up? You're not having any? It's ready to eat.

Krelian: Ah, yeah . . .

There is a moment of silence, then Roni turns back to Lacan and says -

Roni: The Holy Mother of Nisan, huh? What, are you out to offend divine providence or something, Lacan?

Lacan turns to look at the fire and says -

Lacan: Cut it out . . .! It's not . . .like that . . .

Then Roni stands, crossing his arms, then he sits down beside Lacan, on his right and the other man says -

Lacan: Wh, what?

View halts at the stars and fades, white light consuming all. It fades and cuts to Krelian and Lacan who stand in the streets of Nisan beneath the bright sunlight and Krelian says -

Krelian: Sophia first showed me that books are the best way to calm the heart . . . . . and now I'm hooked on reading. I'm not trying to brag . . .but I've learned a lot of things I never knew before. Lately, I've been reading this.

Lacan: What is it?

Krelian walks towards him and says -

Krelian: Something I borrowed from Melchior. It's about a form of molecular engineering . . . nanotechnology. I believe it's a book found in the ancient ruins of the Zeboim civilization. It's a copy of someone's research report, but it's incomplete. I think there were even more wonderful things written in it, but we'll never know now . . .

White light fills the view, consuming all, then scene cuts to the portrait room where Elly is seated before Lacan who stands painting. Elly speaks, her blue eyes warm -

Elly: What's wrong? You don't look so good.

As he continues to work, she says -

Elly: Lately, you've seemed melancholy almost everyday.
Has something happened?

Lacan stops and shakes his head, saying -

Lacan: I don't know. I just can't paint right now.
Sorry, but do you mind if we stop here for today . . .

He brings his hands up and looks down at them and she says -

Elly: I see . . .It is not good to push yourself too hard . . .
Why don't you rest up for a little while? I'll have Krelian take you . . .

White light fills the view, then scene returns to the four men seated around the campfire near the transport. The others are turned toward Krelian who says -

Krelian: Even so, there was a time when I did some pretty vicious things.
I lashed out at random . . .Everyone around me feared me . . .Even my friends.
I lived a life surrounded by people who looked at me with fear in their eyes.
But she was the only one who wasn't afraid of me. She would just smile.

Krelian: Peace of mind . . .She was the one who taught me
what that was and how I could receive it . . .She taught me how to live as a human . . .

Scene fades and cuts to the portrait room where Lacan works alone, and then as he kneels on the floor near his supplies, he hears -

Krelian: What are you doing Lacan?

The door opens as Lacan rises and walks towards the center of the room. Roni and Krelian walk in. View moves around to face the two men as Lacan says -

Lacan: Oh it's you, Krelian . . .I was thinking . . .
I'd stop painting the portrait . . .

Krelian walks forward a few steps, then halts and asks -

Krelian: Why stop now . . .?

Lacan looks down and says -

Lacan: It's the circumstances. I shouldn't be painting her at a time like this.

He looks up and says -

Lacan: Eventually she too must stand at the front lines. So . . .

Krelian: Is that really the problem?

Lacan turns his back, shaking his head, then he looks down and -

Lacan: . . .

Krelian: Lacan . . .?

Lacan slowly leans his head back and says -

Lacan: . . .Her smile . . .it's killing me. The more she smiles at me, the more I . . .
I feel my very being become insignificant. Inside my heart there is this empty existence. Other than painting, I have no worth . . .Yet, she continues to accept my presence. I feel like I'm getting smaller and smaller.

He turns towards the portrait and hold his hands up, looking at them and says -

Lacan: I didn't have this feeling in the beginning. I just wanted to paint her one more minute . . .
one more second longer . . .I wanted to keep on painting forever. But, suddenly I couldn't.
As the picture neared completion, the empty part of me started to manifest itself in my brush strokes.
I was meant to be painting her as she really is . . .(pauses) but . . .this picture is . . .
my own self . . .My empty self has begun to appear within there. That's why . . .I've got to stop now.

Krelian: Your own self . . .?

Lacan drops his hands and Krelian comes closer and says -

Krelian: You're just running away! You can't bear it when she smiles at you. By painting her portrait, you noticed the gap between your own inner emptiness and her inner abundance. And you could not fill that gap . . .That's why you are quitting your painting. You are refusing her! Even so, you still can't bring yourself to leave her, can you? In spite of that . . .why is it that she continues to smile at you? You who can't accept her feelings . . .(pause) You who won't accept her feelings . . .

Lacan bows his head, fists clenched and Krelian moves off to the left, facing away from Lacan and -

Krelian: Tell me why!? If it was me . . .
(pauses) who was receiving . . .
such feelings . . .

View darkens and scene fades to a blood red battlefield, Sophia stands looking off to the side, Krelian behind her. He says -

Krelian: You're neglecting yourself too much!
Why aren't you kinder to yourself, Mistress?

Scene cuts back to the portrait room as Roni walks over to the portrait, Lacan standing with head bowed and Krelian off to the left, staring at the nearby wall. Roni pauses and looks at Lacan, then turns to the portrait nearby and studies it. Then, he turns around to Lacan and asks -

Roni: . . .Is this really her true expression?

Lacan raises his head and turns it to look over at Roni and says -

Lacan: Yeah . . .To people who don't know her that well . . .I guess . . .

Roni turns back to the portrait and says -

Roni: Her smile . . .I don't know . . .The smile in this picture is somehow different from the one she usually shows us. I realize Lacan's feelings are in there, but . . .I don't think she has ever opened herself up and shown her inner self to others like this before.

Krelian turns around to Roni who is still looking at the portrait and he continues -

Roni: You've been painting such a beautiful expression of Sophia . . . I just can't see the reason why you want to stop.

Roni turns around to Lacan, his arms crossed and Lacan shakes his head, still facing towards the wall ahead and says -

Lacan: Beautiful . . .? Forget it.
This picture . . .!? It's anything but beautiful . . .

Roni drops his arms and says -

Roni: Lacan, you say you're empty. (pauses) Then why do you come along with us? What we've been doing up till now, are not just acts of mercy . . . It's a fight for freedom. Time and again you've been through life threatening situations with us . . .A man who has nothing in his heart couldn't do that kind of thing . . .(pauses) right?

Roni crosses his arms once more, looking at Lacan who shakes his head and looks down, saying -

Lacan: Roni, you're giving me too much credit. As long as you do something to keep yourself occupied . . .you can ignore the hollowness inside. From the beginning, my very existence itself was an emptiness. It wouldn't matter if I were to die right now . . .You live, you die . . .That's all . . .

Roni drops his arms and says -

Roni: Pessimistic as usual, Lacan . . .And now you're lying.

Lacan raises his head and turns it to look over at Roni, then he bows his head once more and -

Lacan: . . .

Roni walks to the left, then turns, arms crossed, to Lacan and -

Roni: It is just that you're not good at expressing your own feelings. You're not empty. She knows that. That's why she shows only you her true smile.

Lacan looks up and shakes his head, saying -

Lacan: I don't deserve to see her true smile. She is the hope of the people. Their support. There is so much more for her to do.

He turns around to look at Roni and averts his face, looking down at the floor near his feet as he says -

Lacan: Why would she open her heart to a mere artist like me . . .

There is silence, then Roni turns at the sound of a voice and view moves to the left to face the door as Rene calls out -

Rene: Bro! Bro ~!

The door opens and Krelian turns to it as Rene strides through, followed by Queen Zephyr .

Rene: Hey, bro . . .What are you doing here?

Roni: What's up?

Zephyr shakes her head, then nods once and says -

Zephyr: The Council of Elders of Shevat issued a decision. Tomorrow we will leave for Soylent.

Lacan turns to Roni who says -

Roni: Soylent? That's in Solaris . . .

Rene: Yes. And . . .Sophia will be coming with us.

Krelian: That's ridiculous! The refugees are still increasing! We can't afford to have Sophia leave Nisan! And going to Soylent! That's plain foolish! It's too dangerous! What are the elders thinking?

Zephyr shakes her head, then nods once and says -

Zephyr: No. It wasn't the council's wish. It was Sophia's will. It appears that she expressed this desire herself.

Lacan shifts, still looking off to the side and -

Krelian: That can't be . . .What is she thinking?

Rene: Originally, we talked about it being just us . . .

Krelian: Just us . . .?

Krelian turns around to look at Lacan who bows his head and -

Lacan: . . .

Scene fades and cuts to where Lacan kneels beside Sophia who lies on the battlefield, her Gear kneeling beyond with its scepter in its hand. Krelian's voice comes -

Krelian: Sophia!

He hurries over from the left and pushes Lacan out of the way, looking down at her limp form and saying -

Krelian: Sophia . . .

View switches to one from behind Lacan as Krelian whirls and backhands him. He says -

Krelian: Lacan! What are you doing?

Then he shakes his head, Lacan looking off to the right, his face averted and -

Krelian: You keep back! I knew we couldn't leave Sophia in your care! I'll protect her . . .even if it costs me my life!

Scene cuts to a sickbay onboard a vessel. Roni paces back and forth to the right near the door, then goes to look over at Krelian near the bedside and says -

Roni: Why don't you go get some rest, (pause) Krel . . .You haven't slept since the day before yesterday have you? You shouldn't do that to yourself!

Krelian steps back once, still looking at Sophia in the soft light shed by the lamp on the table near the door. Then he steps back again and without turning he says -

Krelian: I'm fine, it's not a problem . . .

Roni walks towards him, then stops and says -

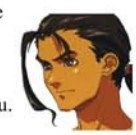
Roni: Look, I'll watch over her, so you go sleep. What will we do if you also fall ill? Do not forget you are the head of the sect's military forces.

Krelian turns to him and says -

Krelian: Okay . . .I suppose you are right.

Roni steps back and Krelian moves past him to the door with a halting gait. Roni turns to watch him as he leaves. When he is gone, Roni turns to look at Lacan, then moves towards the door himself, looking over at Sophia once, before he too turns and leaves.

There is only silence as Lacan stands with bowed head behind the partition, then he moves over to her and kneels by her bedside.



Lacan: Elly . . .I am so sorry.

There is silence, then he says -

Lacan: I . . . It was my misjudgment that did this to you.

He is silent, then -

Lacan: I was terrified . . .It was like you could see right through me . . .Your eyes . . .That look . . . That was me that was being reflected back in your eyes . . .I was looking at myself . . .And thus painting myself . . .I couldn't stand it! So that's why . . .Oh Elly . . .What in the heavens did you find inside of me? When you wake up, I think I will ask you that . . .(pauses) On second thought, no . . .No, I don't want to burden you with my concerns . . .

Besides I wouldn't be able to ask you . . .One look into your eyes and
I can't say a thing . . .(pauses) I wouldn't even be able to tell you how I feel . .

There is silence, then she says -

Sophia: You are the sweetest person . . .

He stands and says -

Lacan: Elly . . .!

She rises to a sitting position and says to him -

Elly: You are someone who cannot bear to see others hurt by your
own actions. So you hold everything in and bear all the burden.
If you get hurt in the end, you think that is fine . . .

Then, she pauses and -

Elly: That's . . .what I like about you.

He shakes his head and says -

Lacan: Stop! Don't say that. If you become just
another human, everyone will . . .

Elly: Humans . . .aren't all that frail you know. They don't need a symbol
who is just appearances only. I believe that if you have light in your heart,
you can overcome any hardship. What I have been doing is simply showing
people that such light exists in the hearts of everyone.

Lacan bows his head as she continues -

Elly: I'm just a woman. And to fulfill my womanhood I am prepared to throw away
anything . . .even this position. I'm just playing the role of Sophia. But I am still me.
I haven't changed . . .a cowardly, selfish crybaby . . .I am still the same. Could you
live a lie like that and still be happy . . .? I . . .don't want to do that.

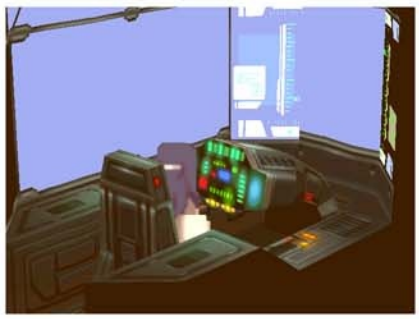
He looks up at her and view switches to one from the side from the vantage point of the door,
facing them as she says -

Elly: Oh, Lacan . . .I want to live more honestly with myself . . .
To be able to tell the man that I love that I do love him.
And I don't care if I get hurt or rejected. You only have one life.
I don't want to turn around later and regret not having done such things . . .

He shakes his head slowly, saying -

Lacan: I . . . I . . .

Then, over by the door, Krelian appears, his back to them.



Scene fades and white light consumes all and cuts to the inside of a Gear's cockpit where Krelian is
seated before the controls. Flashes of light and explosions come from outside, the Gear shaking and
he says -

Krelian: Do you think I'll let it
end here!?
We are not their possessions!

Another explosion shakes the Gear and white light
fills the view, consuming all, then scene cuts to the
bridge of a vessel which is bathed in red light, the
encircling consoles all empty.

Scene returns to the bridge which shakes and view
moves around as a low rumbling is heard. Krelian's
voice is heard -

"Sophia!!
What are you doing!?"

Explosions rock the vessel and view switches to one facing the helm where Sophia is seated.

Sophia: I am ending this . . .You won't need to fight anymore . . .
So Krelian . . .Please open your fist . . .and with your open hand gently
hold the people who will continue to live . . .

Explosions rock the ship. View switches to one facing the holographic image in the center as smoke and flames fill the place, all going red. Lacan's voice comes -

"Don't be foolish!
We'll help you escape!
So please stop . . .!

Sophia: Thank you, Lacan . . .
But . . .sorry . . . There's no other way . . .

His voice comes over to her as another explosion rocks the ship -

"Elly!"

Explosions rip into its hull and it becomes a fireball as it travels toward the enemy vessel.
Scene cuts back to the bridge, looking down at Sophia at the helm, the entire place bathed in red and the explosions come more frequently now. She says -

Sophia: People support each other to live . . .It's what brings us
happiness . . .So share that happiness . . .and please . . .Lacan! Live!

More explosions come, then white light fills the view -

The white light fades slightly to reveal the bridge where Sophia sits, and all is silent at the brink of forever -

Lacan calls -

"Ell ~ y!!"

Then the light brightens once more, consuming all.

Scene cuts to a red horizon and pans along a blasted landscape, Queen Zephyr, Rene, Roni and Lacan stand on the rubble and view swings around facing towards a mound which rises among twisted metal wreckage nearby. From somewhere ahead, Krelian speaks -

Krelian: We were sacrificed as pawns . . .

View pans upward, the others in the foreground as Krelian stands by a piece of charred metal which juts out of the ground nearby to his right and looks out towards the blood red horizon and says -

Krelian: In order to protect their own authority . . .Sophia was . . .
Is this the ideal world we've been searching for? What have we been doing?
Heading toward Sophia's ideals . . .? Is this our salvation?

He pauses, then -

Krelian: This isn't fair . . .Sophia was sacrificed for those bastards . . .
Sophia said, if you just have faith the path to what you hope for will open.
But look at reality. God didn't answer our prayers . . .Is that because we
didn't have faith? Even if we didn't have faith, Sophia did. Why did she
have to be sacrificed? Is god dead . . .? Is he just not there . . .?
Maybe god never even existed to begin with!

The view brightens, white light filling it and Krelian is seen standing at the crest of the black mound, outlined against the ruddy glow of the dying sunset, then white light consumes all.

Sophia:
"Faith in god . . .
Do not look for it on the
outside . . .
For it is something one must
build from within oneself . . .

White light consumes all and returns to the wasteland as Krelian stands atop the mound, looking out towards the ruddy horizon and -

Krelian: Ha, ha, ha, ha . . .I see . . .That's it . . .If god doesn't exist
in our world, then . . .I will create god with my own hands!

From behind, looking up at Krelian, Lacan says -

Lacan: Krelian . . .

Krelian stands on the mound, looking out and he says -

Krelian: Sophia . . .Please guide me . . . I will destroy
all such false pretenses of love, for you . . .

He vanishes, the blasted landscape bathed in red extending out in all directions towards the horizon. View fades to one behind the others as they look at where he had stood and view moves up and to the left as the others turn and meet near Lacan who stands staring out at the mound. Roni faces Rene and the Shevat agents look on. Zephyr also looks out at where Krelian had been.
Roni says -

Roni: We need to gather all our surviving
comrades. We'll never beat them if we
fight them individually . . .So let us
create a country that can some day stand
up against them . . .

Then he turns to Lacan and asks -

Roni: What are you going
to do, Lacan . . .?

Lacan: I . . .

White light fills the view and scene cuts to the darkened portrait room once more as he works alone on the portrait. Suddenly, he drops the brush and bows his head, bringing his hands up and looking at them, then he vanishes and the portrait is left behind, unfinished.

View switches to a closer one of the portrait and it is indeed magnificent, her warm eyes and soft expression going red for a moment, then light returns to normal and scene fades.

Scene cuts to where Lacan stands in the prison area of Shevat in the large room with a pool of aqua light behind metal bars. The view faces him as he looks around, then nods once, stepping forward slowly. He looks around again and holds his hands out towards the caged area and says -

Lacan: . . .Elly!?

View moves around to the right of Lacan, looking down into the restraining field and Elly stands in the center of the circle down below, the aqua colored curtain of light surrounding her. Then her image changes to that of Miang who stands, looking at him. She steps forward and says -

Miang: If only you had power . . .you could have saved her.

There is a flash of white light and the image of Elly appears behind Miang who starts laughing and says -

Miang: You want it, don't you?
Unrivaled power . . .!

The ghostly image of Elly steps forward, through Miang and superimposes itself over her as she speaks.

Miang: Don't you want to become . . .the absolute being . . .!?

View fades to one behind Lacan who is still kneeling, Elly/Miang before him and another flash of white light comes and Elly slowly fades.

White light appears and view pulls back as a rushing sound is heard, then white light consumes all.

Scene cuts to a snowy landscape as Lacan is seen running through the torrent of snow, wind howling, towards a radiant colossal pillar of light beyond. He says -

"There . . .That's what I have sought after . . .

View moves up as he approaches the light and it flashes as he draws near, mountains looming beyond in the distance, the shimmering light pillar outlined against them and the swirling snow. The white light flashes again and the pillar can be seen to extend up into the sky, but Lacan pauses and says -

"But wait!
That's not what I want!
He walks forward again and -
"No!
This is my desire!
White light fills the view and he hears -
" . . .Live!

Scene cuts to darkness and a voice is heard amid the slow dripping of water -

"So this is where Fei's being held!? He deserves it!"

View fades in to show Dan at the end of the pathway in the darkened prison area of Shevat as he makes his way over to where Fei is encased in black carbonite on the far wall and says -

Dan: Let me pray on his weeping face as if it were an idol!
Heh, heh . . .As if I would!

He stands before Fei and view swings around to face the carbonite block, Fei's form barely visible inside and Dan says -

Dan: Yech . . .! What, what is this . . .!?

View pulls in closer as Dan looks at him, then he nods once and says -

Dan: . . .This is terrible . . .

Dan turns to the side and closes his eyes briefly as he nods once more and says -

Dan: No matter what, this is going way too far . . .He's still . . .alive . . .?
How could you possibly be!? You're human too, aren't you !? Darn . . .!

He turns back to look at Fei and says -

Dan: . . .Fei . . . Oh, Fei . . .!?

A soft voice comes from behind -

"Crying . . .

Dan: Huh . . .!?

He turns around and view switches to one from the side, Fei in the foreground as Midori approaches from the left and stops before Dan. He turns back to Fei and says -

Dan: Midori, it's you . . .Phew . . .Don't scare me like that!

Then he turns back to her and nods once, saying -

Dan: Crying . . .? Who's crying? . . .!?

He turns back to Fei and says -

Dan: You mean our friend Fei is crying?

There is a pause, then she says -

Midori: Angry . . . Hurt . . . He'll wake up soon . . .
It's calling him . . .

Dan turns to her and asks -

Dan: What do you mean!?

Fei's form grows brighter within the carbonite and view switches to one facing him, Dan off to the right as the sound of a heartbeat grows louder. Then, from Fei's heart, a small sun shines out as the room grows brighter, filling the chamber with a loud grating rushing noise and Dan -

Dan: Whoa . . .! What the . . .!?

The entire place shakes and view moves closer to Fei who says -

" . . .Gah! Argh . . .!!
St . . .stop . . . Stop . . .it!!

Dan: Fei!?

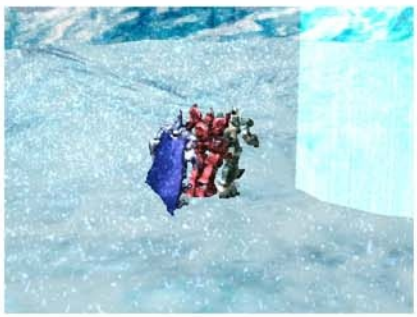
Fei's voice comes to them -

"D a n . . . Mi do ri . . .!
R . . . run . . . Hurry . . .
Run a . . .way!!

Dan: Yikes . . .!?

And white light spreads out from the radiance in Fei's chest, consuming all. There is the sound of something shattering and scene fades.

Alpha and Omega



Scene cuts to the field of stars where Citan sits beneath a pool of light in a chair.

"He broke through his carbonite casing . . .
'Id' . . .Fei took his Gear Weltall and went in search of Zohar. We followed Fei's trail.
Eventually, we arrived at the location where Zohar had fallen to earth . . . so very long ago . . .
Nothing could have prepared us for what we were about to see there . . .

Citan vanishes from the chair and scene fades.

Scene cuts to a snowy plain, the wind softly blowing and snow flurries dancing around Bart, Citan and Billy's Gears as they make their way north. they pause and Citan asks -

Citan: What is that . . .?

View moves up amid the swirling snow to a shimmering curtain of light just up ahead and they walk towards it. View swings around to them from the side, mountains visible beyond as they stop and Citan says -

Citan: This must be the place . . .

Scene fades and cut to where Fei walks in the blue void towards the pendant seen far off ahead and the two figures of himself and Id. He calls out -

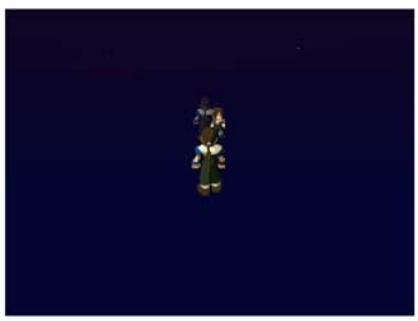
"Wait for me!

And slowly catches up to them, then there is a flash of light as he hits some sort of barrier and he halts while Id and the other image of himself, partially transparent, walk forward a few more paces then stop. He hears -

"This is as far as you can come.

Id turns around to him and says -

"From here on is my world. You can't enter.



The pendant vanishes, leaving only a trail of sparkles and Fei asks -

"What do you mean?

Id responds -

"You're a subordinate, fake persona . . . that's why.

"A subordinate fake persona?

"Yes . . . He has part of my memories from back then . . . He has sealed away the very meaning of my existence . . . my drive . . . my motivation . . . my subconscious -Id-.
Because of that, I became a basic, blank persona. And on top of that, I constructed a new persona based on my experiences since then . . . That is what you are now!

"Him? You mean father?

"You call him father? He who never did anything for you?

Id turns to the side and -

"It was because of his cowardly behavior . . . If only he had been able to protect me . . .

Id turns back to him and -

"If he had done that . . . mother wouldn't have died . . .

Fei steps forward and shakes his head, asking -

"Didn't my mother die right after I was born? What really happened to my mother? Tell me Id!

"You don't need to know. You'll only disappear soon. Along with your basic persona, the 'coward'. I'll rule my being through the power of the Existence.

"??"

"Of course you don't know. But it is etched in my metempsychotic memory.

"Your persona is fake, so you'll never stand on the 'stage' of consciousness. You'll never be able to take charge of the memories from our past lives.

Fei holds out his hands, turning to the side as he says -

"I know the dreams and hallucinations! I've seen them many times!

Fei turns around to face Id as he says -

"Then . . . I showed them to you on purpose. To break the seal, I chose to weaken the power of your existence. If your mental energy is weakened, I can become free to do as I wish.

"What?"

"There are still things inside you which you haven't been shown yet . . .

Then Id turns around, facing outward and says -

"Huh?"

Then he turns back to Fei and says -

"Someone's coming! It's probably your friends. They must have followed me.

Id turns and begins to walk away, when Fei steps forward and calls out -

"Where are you going?

Without turning, Id says -

"I came here to reestablish contact with the Existence.
To tie together all the threads of your memories since ancient times . . . and then cut them off . . .
That is the fate of the Contact . . .All is ready. It's time for the true awakening! I will eliminate all those who were full of hypocrisy from the very beginning.

He takes the other Fei and begins moving up and off to the right. Fei turns to watch them go and says -

"Wait! Wait for me, Id!

Sudden darkness envelops all and Id says -

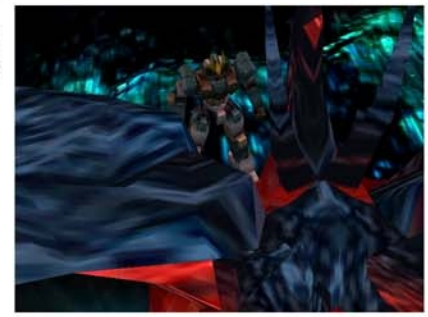
"You just stay here and observe!

Scene cuts to the interior of a vast icy cavern, as Citan, Bart and Billy descend from the darkness in their Gears to the ground below, tiny shimmering balls of light hovering above its surface. They land and walk forward a few steps to the right, then stop and Citan -

Citan: W, what is this . . .?

Scene fades and cuts to where Citan looks up at a black and red shape above him with extensions spreading outward in the foreground. He thinks -

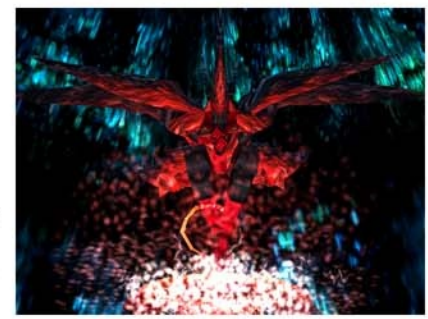
Citan: . . .



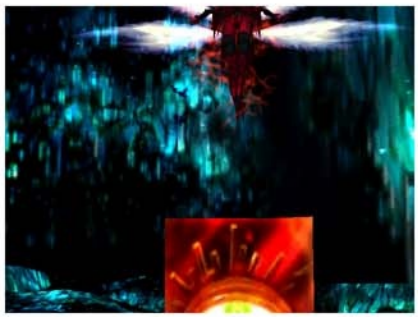
It pulses and the image of Fei standing in darkness is seen, then view returns to the Gear suspended in the glowing sphere and it pulses again.

Citan: Fei!? This must mean this is Weltall's transformed appearance!?

The membrane pulses again and the white balls of light flare briefly around him. Then, it begins to break open with a shower of liquid, the entire thing falling away to reveal a red Gear with several extensions rising out of its shoulders.



View fades and cuts to one of the surrounding cavern as first one, then another red hot fissure appears in the ground, orange lava spraying up in geysers in a circle around the new Gear. The entire place shakes with a low rumbling as the ground heaves and view cuts to a wide section of the cavern floor where the rocky floor begins to buckle, red circles appearing along its surface and a beam of white light shoots upward as something red and oblong shaped rises from the depths.



Battle begins!

The red Gear glides forward with a low resonant hum to slash out at Brigandier with a blast of pure energy. The three then turn on their boosters and begin building up their attack levels. All the while, the red oblong with the staring green eye watches in the background, orange lava all around

Suddenly, from above, a new Gear appears, hovering before them in battle stance as he faces Id.

Wiseman: Are you okay?

Citan: Wiseman!?

Wiseman: It's already too late! Assist me!
For I am about to . . .exterminate Id.

Citan: !?

Wiseman: Zohar is Deus' core.

Wiseman: The slave generators and ether . . .it's the source of all their energy. After attaining its power, the freshly awakened Id intends to annihilate this world! The contact with Zohar was meant to have been done after the unifying Fei's true personality!

Id moves towards Wiseman who -

Wiseman: Hah!? Keep back!

Id: Hmm, you again? You are always getting in my way. But I cannot be stopped by you. You who couldn't even protect his own wife and son! You can not even bear to show your face to your son. That's why you wear a mask, isn't it . . .(pauses) Khan!?

From behind, Citan speaks -

Citan: Son!?

Wiseman: . . .

Id: That's right! This man is Fei's . . .no, I mean, my father, Khan Wong!!

This last is said quickly, as though forced out and Wiseman's Gear slumps, white light flashing several times.

Khan: What happened to Fei . . . (pauses) Id!?

Id: Too bad. The new personality of Fei that you gave birth to . . .
. . .and all that work that your persona did to make him one, perfect, unified whole has been wasted. He will be swallowed up by me!

Khan: I won't permit it! I will destroy you first!

Id: As if you could . . .sissy! Mother died because of your cowardly behavior.
And as a result, he ran away from that reality by entering into his memories!
And now I continue my existence bearing all that hatred.
You wouldn't be able to imagine what it's like!

Khan: I wasn't simply working to unify Fei's personality, you know!?
All that you and I feel . . .the sadness, the hatred . . .Even though he also experienced such things . . .Fei needed to be encouraged to build himself up in order to be able to comprehend all of this. Fei should be able to understand all of your feelings now! But now you want to erase the one who understands you . . .to kill Fei! What is it that you want?

Id: Why ask me such a thing now? My purpose is the same as his . . .
total destruction! That and that alone!

Khan: Is this world so bad a place . . .that there is only hatred inside of you?

Id moves towards Khan and says -

Id: You're the ones who made me this way . . .
You and that woman! Admit it!

He begins lashing at Khan with red beams of energy and Khan brings up his arms reflexively. The view moves around to face him from the side as he bends beneath the onslaught, the glowing red oblong beyond and Citan, Bart and Billy watching behind to the right. Khan -

Khan: Argh . . .! Fei . . .!! Can you hear me?
Please take this fist full of memories I am giving you . . .
Become one . . .with yourself . . .and with me!

Khan rears back and blasts towards Id, the view moving to the right to face the three in their Gears as they watch, the glowing river of lava behind them. Citan calls out -

Citan: Fei!! Where did the real you go?
Remember! Were you not going to help Elly?

View moves up as the struggle between the two Gears continues and darkens, then scene fades.

Scene cuts to where Fei floats face down on an endless waving sea of blue, a purplish expanse above and he -

"Yes . . . This is inside Id.

He lets himself drift and the blue surrounds him, the dim purple disappearing from view as it moves to face him.

"A world filled with hatred and sadness. That's all that's here . . .Yes . . .
Now I understand, Id.

Fei drifts and the view slowly circles him as the purple dips down into visibility now and again as he floats between the two.

"Why you hate the world. Why there is nothing inside you . . . Nothing . . ."

He continues to let himself drift, the purplish hue vanishing above as he faces down into the blue and -

"Nothing was given to you . . .Deprived of . . . all the happy memories . . ."

Fei floats, letting the gentle waving motion carry him as -

"And yet . . . It feels pleasant . . .It almost feels good . . ."

The purplish appears once more as he drifts and -

"Now I get it . . .! There's no need to resist. I was originally just an existence that was created as a cover to hide Id. So it would be better to return to that place . . . Let's come together . . .
To wipe away everything . . .
Including ourselves . . ."

Then, the view brightens slightly and he hears from far off -

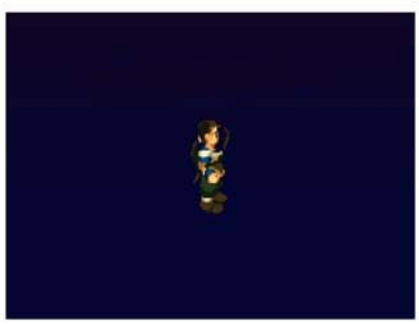
"Remember!
Were you not going to help Elly?"

A flash of white light, then it disappears and Fei -

"Elly? That's right . . .!
Elly . . .!

The purplish expanse disappears as he slowly straightens, facing off towards the right and the blue around him solidifies, the waving motion gone.

"I've got to save Elly!



View fades to darkness, then slowly brightens as Fei stands before a large square which shows a flickering image, the ghostly form of a little boy seated before it as it plays the same scene over and over again. Fei -

"What's this place . . .?

He walks towards the little boy, then turns at the sound of a voice -

" . . .What's he done now!? He only called you in here for his own sake . . .

View moves down as the boy Id comes towards Fei from the left, the movie behind them showing Fei and his mother playing ball over and over.

"This is inside the shell of your basic character, the room of the 'coward'. I'm sure you've been here many times before.

Fei turns and steps towards the image as it shows him as a little boy bouncing a ball to his mother and she passes it back.

"I see . . . I remember now . . . In my dreams . . .

The boy/Id steps towards Fei, halting and faces the picture and -

"Everything despised and unwanted he pushed onto me, while he shut himself up in his own little shell . . . the 'coward' Fei. The basis for our personalities.

The ghostly little boy rises and turns to them as the view moves up, more of the image revealed to the right as it continues to show him and his mother playing, the image faded and worn. The boy says -

"Who are you? . . .Ah, you're my . . ."

The little boy turns back to the image and says -

"Hey . . .let's watch this together! This is my most treasured possession . . ."

Id speaks -

"Hah . . .! By repeatedly replaying the times he was full of happiness he lives in his own happy little world."

Id turns away and walks to the left, the view moving with him as he faces out towards darkness, Fei looking at him and he says -

"While I'm still alive only because of what's in those left over dregs."

Id turns to Fei and view moves in to the blackness beyond as he says -

"Here! I'll show you . . . 'everything' about me."

Scene cuts to a movie reel which counts backward: 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 = = == Then darkness and Id's voice comes -

"Ours was an ordinary family.

View brightens to show Fei as a small boy seated at a wooden table in a small but cozy house and he turns at the sound of an opening door behind him, leaping down and bouncing with glee as a man enters and looks down at him.

"A strict but reliable father."

Khan turns as a woman in a blue dress appears from the left and Fei turns to her, jumping up and down.

"A kind and loving mother.

Scene darkens as Fei runs to his father, his mother behind him. In the darkness, Id says -

"Up till then, it was (pause) complete happiness.

But one day . . .

Mother suddenly changed.

View brightens to show Fei as a small boy standing before his mother whose back is turned to him, darkness surrounding them except for the shifting pool of light at her feet, almost like an inverted shadow and as Fei moves towards her, a flash of white light is seen, stopping him. He backs off as she slowly turns, the oval of dim light at her feet moving off to the right and elongating as she faces him. View darkens as she circles off to the right, Fei turning to watch her as she disappears and scene darkens once more.

"She was like a totally different person.

From that day on . . . 'Fei' lost his home.

Scene slowly brightens as Khan is seen walking towards a door, and he goes through, shutting it behind him as Fei runs, trying to catch up. He faces the closed door and -

"Father was away often.

He had some important work.

Fei turns as a woman, his mother approaches from behind and he backs up as she draws near, the wan pool of light reaching out towards him . . .

"The tests (pause) caused Fei much pain.
He shouts -
"Mom, help me!"
And white light flashes, then view switches to one looking down at Fei on the left -
"What are you doing?"

Another flash of white light, cuts to his mother's face as she watches from the window, flashes white again -
"No!"

Then view cuts to one of the glowing table form above, the device hiding Fei's body as -
"Nooo!"

"Mother (pause) didn't come to his assistance.

View halts facing the table with its tiny occupant, and the machines with their glowing readouts all around him.

"Young 'Fei' had no way of resisting.
But he was able to endure."
View darkens and in the blackness -
"Eventually, the experiments became unbearable.

"Many people gathered around 'Fei'.
These people had a high compatibility with the Anima Relics.
This psychic contact with Fei was to force him to awaken."
One by one, the men vanish and -
"But no one could make contact with Fei.

"The power drawn out of 'Fei', regardless of his will, destroyed them all."
View darkens and Fei asks -

"This is unbelievable! Mother allowed this to take place . . .?
Psychic contact? What do you mean by 'awaken' me?

The view darkens further, everything seen in a dull red as Id responds -
"To awaken god, everything had to be in perfect order, with nothing lacking . . .
Things divided in the past must become one complete whole again . . .

The view brightens, and this time, more people stand around the edge of the circle.
"Countless people died before Fei's eyes."
One by one, they disappear -
"Men, women, the old, the young, even demi-humans . . .
Suffering, grief, fear, ecstasy . . . A variety of emotions and words lingered . . .
And tumbled about Fei like broken dolls . . ."
View darkens and in the blackness -

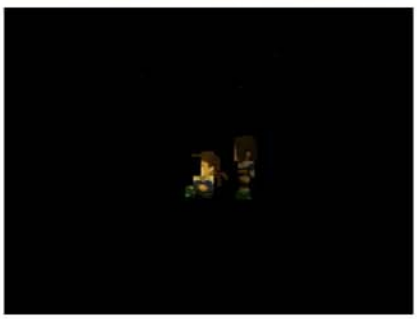
"It was a scene . . . from hell!

Scene cuts to one inside Fei's home as Khan stands before his mother.

"In front of father she acted normally."
Khan is seen turning towards the door and Fei approaches him.
"When Fei tried to tell father about mother's strange conduct and the experiments, father's mind was taken up by his work and he didn't really listen."
Khan is seen to shake with laughter, then he turns towards the door, leaving.
"He thought it was just childhood fantasies."

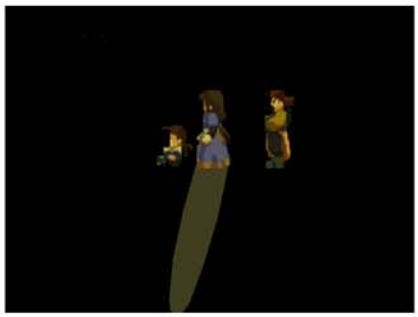
View darkens as Fei turns from the closed door to his mother and in the darkness -

"But he didn't have to endure the pain much longer . . ."
Fei as a boy appears in the darkness and -
" 'Fei's' subconscious discovered a way to escape from the trauma."



"He formed a separate persona to deal with things he didn't like or couldn't bear."

There is a flash of white light, then view moves around to one behind the boy standing, the seated Fei moving away in the void beyond.
"He removed himself from out of harm's way. My role was to have all the things he hated forced upon me, the moment they arose."
View moves closer to the boy, his hair covering his features and he becomes bathed in red light and -
"From the time of my division from him, I was dominated by hatred. That hatred naturally turned into destructive impulses."
The image of the boy/Id fades and -
"I wanted to destroy everything.
Mother, father, the entire world . . ."



"Finally father noticed mother's odd behavior, but it was already too late.
I had completely separated from that coward . . . my original self.

The view moves down to where Id faces Fei and -

"The puppets were broken
. . . and . . .
'Fei's' heart was too . . .
The view brightens as Fei stands before the boy/Id and -

"What would make mother do such a thing . . .?
"Mother repeated the experiments to study the power she knew existed within me.
Yes, that woman . . . mother, (pause)
was Miang.

"That's a lie!

"No, it's true.

Fei and Id blink out, leaving darkness behind and -

"Mother was Miang.

Scene fades and cuts to where Khan stands on the blasted red earth, the red oblong with its staring eye behind him and Citan, Bart and Billy seen in their Gears off to the right side. The view moves to the right and halts as Khan says -

Khan: That's right . . .Karen had become Miang.

Citan: What is that you say?

Khan: It's nothing special. Miang does not have only one host body.
Miang's roots are sealed in the genes of all women. Any one of them could become Miang.

Id: It just happened to be mother's turn.
Only Elly was 'special' originally!!

Id moves forward, lashing out at Khan with a red energy force and he gives way, shouting -

Khan: Noooooooo!

He rears back and slams his fist into Id's chest. Id responds with another red energy blast and Khan falls back as the view moves around to face him from the side once more, clutching his chest.

Khan: Karen, -Miang-, noticed that Fei's memory time axis had increased 2 or 3 fold. She then became convinced that Fei was the 'Contact'!

From over by the right, Citan asks -

Citan: Contact!?

The view darkens and he answers -
". . .Yes, I was the Contact. That's why HE called out to me . . .
And why the time had come . . .

Scene fades to a grassy hillside near Fei's home as Grahf stands off to the left, facing Khan who slumps to the ground nearby, Fei and Karen watching from beyond and -

"Stop it! Cut it out!

"Dad? Dad!
Fei turns to Karen and pulls at her.
"Mom! Help dad!
Hey mom! Why aren't you helping dad?
Dad . . . Dad's gonna die!

"Grahf came seeking the power that exists within me. To return to his own body.
You understand now, don't you . . .? Grahf is . . .(pause) Lacan.

"We, his descendants who inherited his lingering thoughts and memories from him, know only too well . . .
Divided 500 years ago . . . He would become a part of us both . . .Lacan became Grahf.
He destroyed everything on the face of the earth. He then mastered how to possess the bodies of others by dwelling in their minds.

He was probably enabled to do this after his contact with the 'Existence'. The bodies died but Lacan's spirit continued living by possessing others. He had come that day to return his soul, at last, to the perfect reincarnation of his physical body . . . The body of 'Fei'.

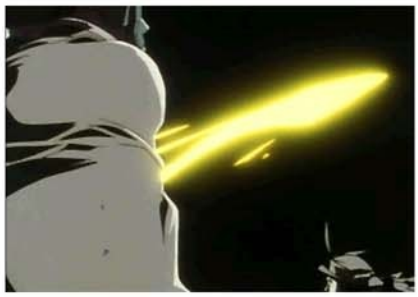
View moves down, the image of Grahf and Lacan ending in an edge, beyond which is the black void, where Fei stand with Id.

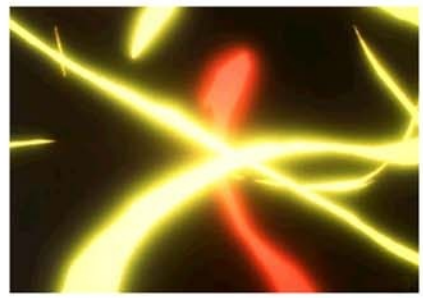
"Father . . . forget him.

View halts facing the two and -

"But he couldn't protect mother or I. He pitifully fought on while coughing up his life blood.
Grahf made a mockery of father and mother would not even help him when he needed her the most.

"As for their son . . . 'He' couldn't take what was happening any more . . .





Scene returns to darkness and -
"He gave into his feelings and released his power.
And as a result . . ."
View brightens and the pendant is seen.
" . . .Mother died.
It moves off to the right and -
"Mom!"
The view moves over to where Fei, Id and the little boy stand in blackness, the small boy on his knees.
"And 'he' off-loaded the results of his actions onto me."
The small boy trembles and -
"To avoid taking the responsibility for killing mother, he used me as a shield. "

Fei turns to Id as all their forms go red and view fades as it pulls into Id.

"I (pauses) also killed mother.

Scene cuts to where a large image of Fei's face as a child is seen, wide eyed, splattered with blood and view pulls back to show the movie of he and his mother playing next to it, the two images side by side, suspended in the darkness as Fei stands before Id.

"He pushed all the bad things onto me . . . but kept all the memories filled with happiness and mother's love to himself.

"And he shut himself away with those memories inside his own little shell . . .forever.
This is the place.

"What you see before you, is what he made. He just keeps hanging on to those memories."

View moves closer to Fei where he stands before the two images.

"That's what this is . . .

Fei looks from one to the other of the images, then turns toward Id and shakes his head, saying -

"Stop it! Just stop it! This . . .These scenes . . .
Are these all there is to us?"
Fei bows his head and says -
"Enough already! There is nothing here! Just a world filled with deception and pain."

The view moves towards Id and darkness.
"It can't be helped. This is our world . . . This is 'everything' . . .

Scene returns to Khan where he faces Id and view moves to the left as he says -

Khan: I was a fool. It was all my fault. I was so busy with my duties in Shevat that I didn't notice Karen had changed. I couldn't save you when you needed my help.

Id: Save me? . . .Hah! Why bother saying such nonsense now? It's not going to change anything! The only thing you can do now is die by my hand!

He blasts forward and slams his fist into Khan who -

Khan: Urrggh!!

View moves around to the side, where Khan is hunched over Id's fist and he says -

Khan: Even still . . .I'll show . . .you . . .that I can . . .save you . . .!

View pulls back and down to darkness where Fei stands looking towards the others, Id and the small huddled boy behind him. He shouts -

"Dad!!

Then he turns around to Id and view pulls in closer.

"Stop it! Id! Father has done nothing wrong!

Id turns to the half seen boy seated on the floor and -

"I know. This one is the real culprit.
Mother and father had no choice.

View moves in closer as Fei turns around once more in the direction of the others and scene fades, cutting to a gold tinged view of a stone house where Fei stands on a grassy lawn before it, looking towards it. A ball comes bouncing form the right and he turns as the little boy comes running after it, stopping when he sees Fei and saying -

"Thanks. Pass it back to me.
I'm playing with mother.

View moves down as Fei turns to look at the house, its gabled roofs and chimneys becoming visible against the backdrop of utter blackness beyond and -

"This is not . . . reality!!

A white flash of light comes with a rushing sound and view swings around the house,

"It's all lies!

A flash of light, and view of house from the trees as it whirls by -

"It's all fake!

"It's all a trick!!

View cuts to one behind Fei as all the images flicker and merge, passing into one another as he stands before the house, the little boy nearby with the ball.

"All of it! All of it! All of it . . .!

The scene fades to darkness as view pulls into the house and suddenly cuts to where Fei stands facing the black void beyond and the ghostly image of the little boy rushes forward and hits him repeatedly, saying -

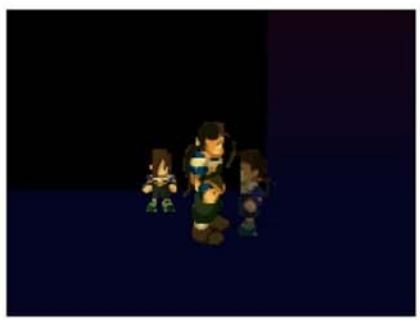
"No! Get out!
This is my room!
I thought you would always be with me!"

View moves to the left as Fei shakes his head, Id becoming visible off to the left and -

"Why won't you see reality?
Happiness . . . Sadness . . . Aren't these all parts that combined to make the whole?
Why don't you show him? Why don't you also show Id what you always watch!"

The boy stops hitting him and turns away, saying -

"No! That's mine!



"I don't want to show it to the person who killed mother!!

Id speaks -

"You should talk. You're the one who killed mother!

The boy turns to Id and -

"No I didn't, you did! I did not kill her!
Mother didn't care for you . . . Father didn't notice either . . . That's why you killed her!
I didn't kill her! I didn't! I didn't . . .!

The little boy turns and Fei steps forward, the view moving around to the right as he says -

"Knock it off!!

The view stops as he faces the little boy, Id seen watching beyond and Fei looks down at the boy and -

" . . . 'We' killed mother. It's no one's fault but ours.

He shakes his head and says -

"It's not because she became Miang or because father didn't notice.
Don't look outside for the reason. Don't blame anyone but yourself.
Yes, mother was Miang, and I know that you suffered. No one could have endured it.
But you can't push it onto Id alone. We are all one person.
We must all become one. Right? Fei . . ."

The view begins moving towards the right and the three disappear from view -

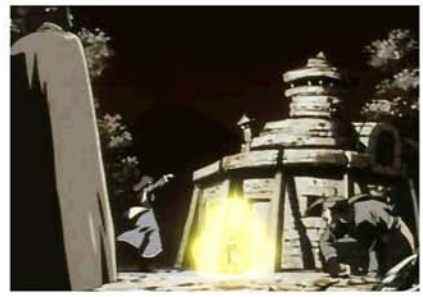
"Walk on your own two feet! Face up to the reality that you don't want to see!

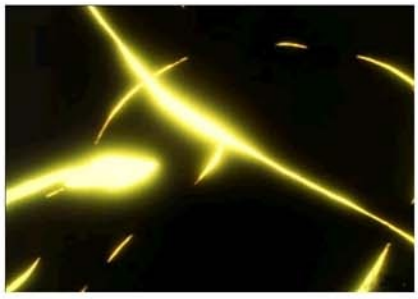
In the darkness, he continues, the view moving to an image on the right -

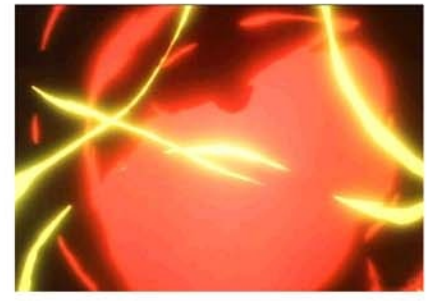
"Show them to Id. Everything you took for yourself . . .

The image hung in the void appears and view turns to face it as the film begins to count down.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 = = = = =







Scene cuts to the image of Karen's face, the warm smile unmistakable on her features as she looks down at him, the blue sky behind her. View pulls back to where Id, Fei and the little boy stand before the image, looking at it and -

"Lies! That woman . . . This scene . . . All illusions he made up!
I, my consciousness, can see through this trick. I won't be swayed!
"I . . .!
I . . .!

Fei turns and walks back towards Id, the image in the background, saying -

"Id . . .that's enough! Doing that isn't going to solve anything.
Mother saved us at the last moment. That is the truth.
Right?
The reality isn't all grim, Id . . .

View moves down to face Id and Fei, the little boy staring at the image behind them.

"My power . . . couldn't save anyone. It only destroyed.
I thought that I could only make a connection with others through destruction.
So I had to destroy it all. People . . . The world . . . Even Elly . . .

Fei shakes his head and says -

"No . . . That's not the case. We can save others just as our mother, despite being Miang, saved us. Our power . . . can save people . . . We can save Elly!

Id steps towards the image and view pulls back as he looks at it and says -

" . . . That's a first. Mother being so warm . . . To me . . . she almost seems . . .too warm . . ."

The little boy turns from the image and faces Fei as Id turns to him as well, and says -

"Fei. Take the memories I have within me. You must know what it used to be like up until now.
Know our identity . . . about who we are. Then figure out what ought to be done.
Our integration is not yet complete."

White light fills the view and consumes all, then scene cuts to a stormy landscape at night as rain falls in torrents.

A crackling energy ball of white radiance arcs out slowly striking Elly in the back and passing through her as Fei stops running and turns to her. He shouts

"Elhaym!"

And she falls to the ground. Fei sinks to his knees in the mud, drawing her close to him. She rises partway and says -

"Abel . . .!
Live . . .!

He looks into her eyes as blood pools around them both, then he bows his head over her still form, the rain pelting down all around them.

White light consumes all and scene cuts to the round chamber in Zeboim where a pillar of aqua glass containing the form of a small girl is seen. View fades to one of Fei leaning against the glass doors which separate him from Elly who falls to the floor outside. Elly rises partway from the floor and says -

" . . .I just can't . . . hand our child . . . . . .over . . .to you . . .

View switches to the red lit hallway behind Elly where armed men in uniform are lined up behind her. View fades to one inside the round chamber behind Fei at an odd angle, the girl floating in the cylinder in the foreground as he presses his fists against the glass, Elly seen on the other side as she faces the armed men from the floor. There is a sudden flash of light and view switches back to one facing Fei through the glass at a normal angle as the entire place begins to shake. As she looks up at him through the glass separating them, he hears -

" . . .Live . . .!

Scene cuts to the bridge of the rebel flagship as it heaves beneath massive explosions, smoke and flames everywhere, Sophia seated before a console nearby. All goes red and amid the shaking she says -

"Lacan! Live!

Scene fades and cuts to where Lacan, Zephyr, Rene, Roni and the Shevat agents stand on the blasted plain looking up at where Krelian stands on the mound ahead, looking out towards the horizon, dark twisted remnants of metal rising up to the sky against the backdrop of the ruddy glow. He hears -

"If god doesn't exist in our world, then . . .
I will create god with my own hands!

White light fills the view, then scene fades to darkness and Lacan's voice is heard -

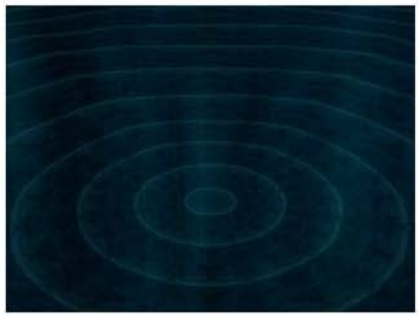
" . . .What . . .is . . .this . . .place . . .?
. . .My execution site . . .?

White light fills the view and he hears -

" . . .Live!"

Id's form vanishes and is replaced by that of Grahf. He turns and looks out over the wasteland says -

"Even if I go to hell,
(pauses)
I will live till the end of this world.
And if the world does not come to an end . . .
I will destroy it with my own hands!



Scene cuts to a vast, never ending sea of shimmering light, a flat plane of blue radiance which resides in infinite variability, A pool of many shades of blue spreads outward in a series of blue circles from the center and a single resonant tone is heard as a voice speaks -

. . .Fei
. . .Fei . . .

The ripples vanish and the blue waters grow calm as view pulls back to where Fei stands in the midst of the shifting blue shades and

"Who is it?
Who's calling me . . .?

The quiet stillness surrounds him and he turns to look out across the smooth blue surface as once more, the ripples appear in the center and move outward, passing beneath his feet as the view moves around and then a radiant object is visible hovering above the pool and the ripples, its own light refracted into a multitude of rings about its form. He hears -

"I . . .am . . .Har . . .

The rings move out from the white radiant source, appearing and disappearing where it hovers against the shifting shades of blue and -

"What is this light . . .?

The resonant tone comes again and the ripples spread outward -

"I . . .I reside in Zohar. I am the beginning and the end.
The first and the last.

View moves around Fei to the right as he faces the radiance.

" . . .God?

The ripples spread outward from the center and,

"God . . .
Some would refer to me as that. From a certain point of view, it is right to view me as such.
But at the same time, I am not. I . . .am also a part of you.

"A part of me?

"I am defined by how people observe me. You are actually talking to a virtual version of me that you yourself create . . .I am 'your perception' of me.

Fei shakes his head and -

"I don't understand what you are talking about.
Who, or what, are you?

The resonant tone comes again and the ripples spread outward as -

"In one word . . .
. . .EXISTENCE.

"Existence?

"In actuality, I do not have a physical form. I am an 'Existence' of a higher dimension.
A place you cannot perceive . . . But in terms you understand, it is a world where everything acts as kinds of waves . . .
It is the source of this four - dimensional universe . . . The place where time and space is controlled . . .The fluctuating void . . . The 'Wave Existence'.

"What does such an 'Existence' . . .(pause) have to do with me . . .?

The resonant tone is heard and the ripples spread outward from the center as -

"Long ago, a 'modifier', or a pseudo - perpetual, infinite -energy engine was created.
That engine was named 'Zohar'. That reactor was created by an ancient people from another planet to attain what is considered to be the ultimate energy possible within this four - dimensional universe.
Eventually, those people used that same engine to create the ultimate inter - planetary invasion weapon, 'Deus' . . . Zohar was used as its primary source of power.
But the unexpected happened . . . During the connection tests of Zohar with the newly completed deus, the engine started to examine infinite potential phenomena . . .

Requiring energy, the engine connected this dimension to the higher dimensional space.
As a result, that reactor 'merged' or 'synchronized' with the wave existence in that higher dimension . . .ME.
I 'descended' from the point of contact created by the machine through the 'Path of Sephirot', or the domain you are in right now, and incarnated in the four - dimensional world.
After I 'Advented' to the four - dimensional world, in order to stabilize myself here, I had to exchange, or materialize, my form and enter into the 'modifier' engine . . .
In other words, I became bound in 'Zohar' . . .the 'cage of fleshly existence'.
Since the time I was bound in Zohar, I have always wanted to return to my own dimension . . .
And I came to a conclusion . I had to reverse the process I went through to arrive here.
I must be released by the one who instilled within me a special feature of this dimension – the 'will' . . . That one is you.

"Decided it was me? A special feature??

With a resonant tone, the ripples spread out from the center and -

"Yes.
I was given a special attribute of a human by you, the Contact, when you observed me . . .
I was given . . .(pause) a mother's will.

"A mother's will?

"I'm sure you remember. After my descent, you had contact with the modifier engine, 'Zohar'.

"As a contact, being but only a child, you defined my existence with your desire to return to your mother. Thus I came to prepare the mother's will . . .
That will is Elhaym.

"Elly's disposition was influenced by me?

The resonant tone is heard as the blue pool beneath Fei's feet ripples outward from the center and -

"Yes.
My will was incarnated through a bio - computer which was vital for Deus.
After combining with me, the bio - computer evolved its functions, and that bio - plant generated a central element. That is her.
I was split by your contact. My physical form or flesh stayed in Zohar, while my will went into Elhaym and my power went into you. That's why I waited to unite with you.
And now, it is fulfilled.
My only remaining desire is to break this 'cage of fleshly existence' . . .
In order to do that, I must become perfect by combining with Elhaym, as well as my other split physical form, 'Deus'. The only way to return to my original dimension is to destroy this physical body. In the four - dimensional world, Zohar is perfect, so in order to destroy Zohar I need the strength that was attributed to you . . .
Zohar can only be destroyed by the hands of the 'Contact'.

"What about Elly? If Zohar is destroyed, what will become of Elly!?

"Zohar and Deus are one. She is bound to the system by another's will to become one with me.
In order to release her, it is necessary to destroy that very system that serves as the Deus weapon . . .
However, having been created as a weapon, the Deus system seeks to unify itself with all of you for a different purpose than that of mine.
Originally, her release should have been performed by me, the one who desires to return back to the Higher dimension . . . But, I am also bound to the system just as she is, so I am unable to participate.
You are the only one who can release her from the spell. Just as Deus and I are inseparable, you and her are also inseparable.

Fei nods looking up at the radiant light and saays -

" . . .Alright. I'll destroy Deus and the Zohar modifier. And I'll save Elly.

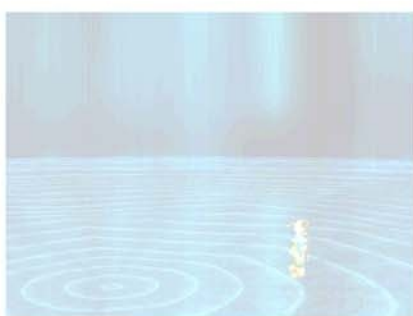
The resonant tone comes again as the light object brightens briefly and ripples spread outward as -

"You have experienced much loss and deprivation in your life. It is very tragic.
Our contact, and the resulting transference of power and will between you and I, most likely played a factor in splitting your personality.

Fei shakes his head in the quiet stillness and -

"I disagree. I can't blame anything or anyone besides myself. Regardless of what may have happened in the past, with the passing of time the cause becomes more remote.
It is a problem that comes from within myself, that I myself must deal with . . .

The resonant tone comes again, and view moves towards the radiant object as ripples spread outward in the pool below it.



"I see . . .You have managed to accept those tragedies, to tolerate all things, to comprehend and find where you stand in this world. If you have succeeded to do all these things, I am sure you will succeed in what awaits you now.

The resonant tone comes more frequently as the radiant being -

To liberate all of us . . .
Use . . . the . . . Xe . . .no . . .gears . . .des . . .troy . . .Zohar . . .

Fei steps forward as the ripples pass beneath him and calls out as the radiant object vanishes, leaving green sparkles of light behind.

"Wait!
There's more I need to ask you . . .

White light fills the view and he hears -
"The system . . . is awakening . . . Ask . . .her . . .later . . .

White light fills the view, consuming all, then scene cuts to one facing the new Gear as a radiance begins in its chest and spreads outward, a ring of light passing out from the source. When it fades away, the new Gear's colors are changed, instead of being red, now it is pure white with touches of red and black. The new Gear descends to hover above the pitted earth and view pulls in and scene goes dark. Fei calls -

"Dad!

There is the sound of a Gear's cockpit being opened and view cuts to one above Khan where he slumps in his seat in his Gear's cockpit and Fei appears, moving towards him He says -

Fei: Dad! Are you okay? Dad!
I'm sorr y . . .this is all my fault . . .

Khan: Fei . . .?

Khan: You've returned to your own self . . .
You've become one . . .

Fei: Yes, thanks to you all. If all of you hadn't called out to me . . .

Khan moves slightly and -

Khan: Urgh!

Fei: Dad!

Khan: Don't worry . . .This is good . . .
This is, (pause) after all . . .I . . .

Fei: Dad?

Khan: You and . . .

There is a sudden flash of white light and the sound of shearing metal, then all goes dark and Fei is seen in red with another who reaches out to him and -

"You and I must become one!!!

The view brightens as Grahf picks up Fei by his neck and lifts him off the ground and -

Fei: Huh!? G, Grahf!? What's going on . . .?

View moves closer to them in the red lit cockpit and Fei struggles in his grasp. Grahf says -

Grahf: Ha ha . . . 'I' reached the limit of the body I possessed, on that day 3 years ago . . . 'I' required a body that would tide me over until your true awakening. That is why 'I' acquired the body of your father. Regardless of your awakening, your merging, and the inherited memories you had acquired . . . . . .there was no way for you to know of this, since you had lost you memory at that point . . .At that point in which 'I' merged with your father.

Fei looks down at him, still struggling and says -

Fei: Impossible . . .! What about Wiseman . . .?
What about father . . .?

Grahf: Of course they were just parts of me . . .I couldn't hold on to Khan totally. His ego was far stronger than I imagined. When my control weakened he showed himself to you as Wiseman.

Fei struggles harder and -

Fei: Arggh . . .

Grahf: You have awakened. This body is now useless to me.
Now I must return to my original body . . .the reincarnation
of my body that you inhabit.

Fei: Stop it . . .! Dad . . .!

Grahf: I hear you Fei . . .You see, he and I are one. I am Khan,
Khan is me. He has become one with me, so you too should open your heart and unite with me. Then we can go on to eliminate everything!

Fei stops struggling and forces out -

Fei: No . . .I . . .can't . . .allow . . .you . . .to . . .control . . .me!

White light fills the view with a rushing sound, consuming all -

Grahf: Hmph. Protecting your master? Then so be it. I'll merge with both you and your machine then. Now come, Fei! Fight me!

View moves around to face Xenogears as Fei says -

Fei: It's no use! I know you're Lacan, and that you're a part of me. But that doesn't change you being my father. I could never really fight you!

Grahf: You're so naive! Why don't you understand that your naivety is what killed Sophia, what killed your mother, 'Karen'?

Fei: I already know that! That's why I swore never to run away again . . . . . .that I must rescue Elly. So don't get in my way! Wake up! Open your eyes, father . . . -Lacan-!

Grahf: If that's the case . . .then fight me! Fight me!!!

Fei: I can't!

View halts so that Bart and Citan are visible off to the right as they watch in their Gears and Grahf says -

Grahf: I see . . .Then there's no choice.

He moves forward and view swings around to face Citan, Bart and Billy as Fei -

Fei: !?

Grahf: Since you are so unwilling to fight, I believe I'll have to use them as bait.

View moves forward towards the three and Citan, "!" Fei turns to look at them, then rushes forward and says -

Fei: Stop it! Don't we have the same memories? Can't you also remember that sadness you felt way back then? Why then . . .why must you destroy everything? If we stop Deus, won't this all be over!?

Grahf: You still don't understand . . even after your contact with the Existence? I came to understand after my contact with the Existence that, even if Deus was destroyed . . . . . .as long as humans still inhabit this land, Miang . . . Elhaym, will be born time and again.

Grahf: Then all living things may as well perish along with Deus itself. That's the only path to freedom. The path to release us from the eternal cycles of life, the tragedies of history and the spell of fate! Once I awaken Deus as a weapon, I'll obliterate all living things . . . Then I'll use your awakened self and that machine to return everything to nothing . . . That's what I concluded. Miang and Elhaym . . .are not just Deus' mouthpieces. That 'woman' is its main body! Why can't you see that?

Fei: That's not true. She gave her life for me by shielding me from harm! Her eyes weren't Miang's! Mother came back at the last moment! Miang, mother . . .even Elly, were all humans born on this planet! Deus doesn't matter! You'll see . . .I will bring Elly back! Father . . .No, Grahf -Lacan-! If you won't back down . . .

Grahf: Never!

Fei: Then I have no choice . . .!

As they face one another, Grahf says -

"The time has come to truly become one!

Scene cuts to where Xenogears hovers before True Weltall who is seen in front of the modifier with wings outspread. Fei hears him ask-

Grahf: Why don't you finish me off? If you don't get rid of me, then you cannot get what you want.

Fei: It's alright . . .dad. I understand. You are not Grahf. You are my father. You and Grahf are one. Your will and purpose never change. I knew that once we fought. But let's stop now. Our objectives should be the same. It is the same as our becoming one. We don't have to fight.

There is a flash of white light and scene cuts to the inside of Fei's Gear's cockpit as he struggles beneath massive forces and -

Fei: Arrgh! What . . .! My body . . .!?

View switches to one behind him, looking out the forward viewscreen at Grahf ahead where he stands before the modifier, obscuring its eye. He says -

Grahf: Zohar is after you! The last piece to combine with Deus' system. It seeks to unify with you . . .the first to have been divided from it.

View fades and cuts to one facing True Weltall as it moves back against the glowing red oblong of Zohar where it rises out of the earth. View pulls in closer to Weltall, wings outspread as -

Fei:What . . .!?

Grahf: This is what Lacan wanted all along. After all, I'm an imperfect existence. It was inevitable that it would come to this . . .considering what had happened in the past. Lacan's imperfect secondary contact with the Wave Existence split his personality into two. Eventually his body died, but the original Lacan transmigrated . . .Bringing the destiny of becoming a Contact with him, he was reborn as your present body. The remaining persona, just his desires, lived on separately by possessing the bodies of others. That is Grahf . . .that is me. I may have inherited Lacan's will, but I'm not the same as the 'Contact Lacan'. It is impossible for me to make real contact. There would be no true melding and release. Even though our bodies may be different, I am still half of you. That fact remains. Although I'm imperfect, I can merge temporarily with Zohar, and thus may be able to buy you some time. This is the only way I can be one with you.

Grahf: This is all I can do. Deus' system will start to look for you again. Before then, you have to destroy the newly perfected Deus and this Zohar modifier. You're the only one that can destroy the physical barrier that encases god's body

Fei: Dad!

Grahf: As you said, that was Karen. Through many generations Miang is beginning to break free of her bounds. Now that Elhaym has merged with Deus, she has all of her memories back. All the memories from her original birth as the Contact's complement up to her current transmigration. That includes all of the lives she has lived as Miang, and her substitutes, over the centuries. And of course, that includes your mother's memories too.

Fei: Mother's memories . . .?

Grahf: Fei, cut away all the binds on mankind . . .You should be able to do that now. Save her and all the other women bound with her!

View moves to face Grahf, his back against the modifier, and -

"I'm begging you Fei . . ."

White light grows, filling the scene, then slowly fades away, taking Grahf and the modifier with it. All that remains is the buckled earth where it had emerged. View pulls back and Xenogears appears in the foreground.

Scene cuts to the cavern floor where Bart and Citan stand outside of their Gears, and they watch Fei who walks ahead of them across the pitted earth. He bows his head and asks -

Fei: What's this . . .?

He kneels down to the ground and -

Fei: This pendant . . .Is this Sophia's . . .or my mother's . . .?

He stands and Citan, "?" Then Fei turns to them and says -

Fei: It's nothing . . .I'm just talking to myself. I'm sorry, for all the trouble I've caused everyone. Thank you all so much! Anyway, let's get going! There is little time left now . . .for me . . .and for our planet!

Scene fades.

Scene cuts to where Fei, Bart and Citan stand on tawny earth touched with green, bright sunlight all around and the sound of the wind as it blows gently.

Citan: What is this place . . .!?

Fei: This is where it all started. (pauses) This is our genesis! We . . .no, humans were born here.

He starts forward and Citan and Bart follow as he heads closer to the structure.

Fei: . . .Long ago, Deus crash - landed on this planet in an interplanetary colony ship. In order to revive itself someday, Deus detached the Zohar Modifier's core . . .After this core unit came down here, a single woman awoke and arose from out of it.

Fei: She's the mother of all humanity . . .After she awoke, she used all her power to bear several beings. These would become the ancestors of the whole of humanity. These were the Emperor and the Gazel Ministry.

The others look on as he stops in front of the central section and says -

Fei: Finally, she gave birth to replicas of herself to be humanity's caretakers.

Fei: Two selves . . .The - human - Mother and the weapon . . . The Subject and the Complement. That is Elly and . . .Miang. I, the sole survivor from the colony ship, met Elly and . . . Everything started from there . . .The land of genesis, - Kadomony - . . .This is that place.

Bart speaks -

Bart: Yeah, but Fei . . .Even with your shared fate with Deus, why do you have such ancient memories . . .

Fei turns to him and shakes his head, saying -

Fei: Usually, human memories cannot be passed down through the generations. Humans do not normally have the ability to compress and store memories in their introns.

Fei looks over his shoulder at the structure and says -

Fei: But Elly and I . . .and Miang . . .are different.

Fei turns to the metal structure and looks down, saying -

Fei: Due to our connection with the 'Wave Existence' . . .That is, due to Zohar's ability to change possible phenomena, we can clearly store data in our introns. In other words, we can leave behind memories to be inherited by our descendants.

He looks up and raises his hands, looking at them and says -

Fei: Just as the Wave Existence is bound inside of Zohar . . .the information is affixed to me, so to speak, by some of the power of the Wave Existence.

View fades to one looking towards the metal structure, as Bart steps towards it and view moves in closer as Citan walks forward as well, Fei continuing to look at his hands. Citan looks up and says -

Citan: Then this is . . .!

Fei looks up, nods and says -

Fei: This is the form from when Elly and Miang were still one being . . .This is the first woman of our world . . .

Scene cuts to the bridge of a vessel where all the party members are gathered, including Zephyr, Sig, Margie, Maison and Taura. All stand around a central square set in the floor as Bart crosses his arms and bows his head, saying -

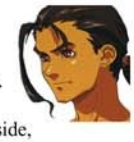
Bart: . . .So if we destroy that Zohar thing, everything will be over, right?

To his right, Citan nods once and says -

Citan: Yes. The source of our Ether powers, and the source of power for the generators that make our Gears work . . .It all comes from the 'Zohar Modifier' engine which can control any potential phenomena. If we destroy it, Deus . . .and the - Seraph - angels . . . will all be deactivated . . .And then we should also be able to free Elly, who has become bound to the Deus weapon system as 'Miang'.

He turns to look across at Fei and says, "Right, Fei . . .?"

Bart drops his arms and turns to Fei who nods once, he says -



Fei: Yeah. That's what the 'Wave Existence' said.

Citan crosses his arms, chin propped in his hand as he looks off to the side, tapping his foot, and says -

Citan: But then there is the downside . . .it will also mean that we will no longer be able to use our Gears or our Ether powers anymore.

Rico: What are those - Seraph - angels all about anyway? That odd appearance as if they lack something . . .as if they are neither living beings nor mere weapons . . .

Citan turns to him, chin still propped and says -

Citan: Zohar senses the human consciousness and incarnates the - Seraphs -.

There is silence, then from across the square from Citan, Billy asks -

Billy: Human consciousness . . .?

Citan turns to him and drops his arms, saying -

Citan: Zohar itself involves the principle of uncertainty. The observer's perception of Zohar determines the entity it actually becomes. In other words, I believe that those angels are incarnations of the spirits of people . . . . . .The people who have been absorbed by Deus to become parts of it.

Bart crosses his arms and bows his head, saying -

Bart: So what merit is there for them to join in eliminating all of civilization?

Maria turns to Citan on her left and asks -

Maria: Is it some kind of hatred for those humans who have survived?

Citan turns to her and shakes his head, saying -

Citan: Of course not. Those people who were created and assimilated as parts for Deus would not have such intentions. Try to remember what Elly, when she became Miang, said.

Citan turns to look across the square to Fei who says -

" 'The creations of god will someday be a hindrance . . .
That is why they must be eliminated . . .'

Citan crosses his arms once more, foot tapping as he says -

Citan: Yes. That is why Merkava is being used to begin the destruction.

His foot stops and he continues -

Citan: But . . .Deus is not following its programming of exterminating all of civilization . . . The - Seraphs - , which are terminal interface weapons of Deus, are using their bodies composed of . . . . . .nanomachines to absorb massive numbers of people regardless of whether they are dead or alive. It is not discriminating between the mutant and non - mutant people. This is highly peculiar . . . . . .The fact that the people who are meant to be destroyed are being taken in as well . . .That is the absolute opposite of what it is supposed to be doing.

He looks up and Fei asks -

Fei: Maybe there aren't enough parts?

Citan shakes his head and says -

Citan: That is unlikely. Aside from those bodies that were destined to be parts for it . . . . . .Deus, who has already acquired the abilities of the nanomachines, can just about use any material . . . . . .to construct its body. It is obvious, it has other intentions in mind.

Citan crosses his arms and taps his foot once more as -

Citan: Those intentions . . .Krelian has called Deus the mother. If god is the mother, then those motives are coming from the Great Mother . . .Impeding the growth of its child, enveloping it, to bring the child back to the womb to become one with it. That is the motive. Such a program does not exist within its design though. It was probably given this unique will by someone. Either from Elly who has merged with the Deus or . . .

Fei adopts a fighting stance and says -

Fei: Either way, it doesn't change the fact that we have to fight. Regardless of what their intentions are. The problem is how we're supposed to deal with them. You think we can do it in our current state?

Fei straightens and Zephyr turns to them and says -

Zephyr: This secret battleship, Excalibur, will also take part in the final battle. Additionally, the military potential of all the surface forces will assemble here.

Bart looks up and spreads out his arms, saying -

Bart: Even if we can put together a massive force . . .
. . .we still have the problem with the main armament of the Merkava. We need to know how to take that out. As long as we don't do that . . .

Citan turns to look over at him on his right and nods once, saying -

Citan: Merkava's ultra - long - range cannon has the ability to vaporize any substance. On top of that, they have a barrier around their perimeter that nullifies all attacks.

Zephyr turns to him and says -

Zephyr: We've fought against the Merkava many times to try to stop its onslaught. However, we cannot even get close. Hence we have had to withdraw every time.

Fei turns around and thrusts out a fist, saying -

Fei: Dammit! No matter how much we want to save Elly . . .
. . .if we can't get inside the Merkava, it's meaningless.

Sig speaks from behind Citan and Bart where he leans against the bulkhead, arms crossed.

Sig: To add to that, there is the problem of those - Seraphs -. . . . They function as the terminal interface weapons for close defense. I can easily say that their attack power is equivalent to the Omnigear class.

Bart crosses his arms once more and bows his head, saying -

Bart: They even have the regenerative ability due to the nanomachines.

Taura turns to him across the square and says -

Taura: Don't be concerned about that.

All turn to Taura who continues -

Taura: I was able to obtain some data from Xenogears . . .You see, Xenogears has mutagenically evolved due to its contact with Zohar. Using that data, all of your new Gears ought to be completed soon. Additionally, all the other weapons and armaments are being modified to implement the 'Dissassembler - Device'.

Billy turns to his left and aks -

Billy: Dissassembler - Device?

Taura turns to him and repsonds -

Taura: In contrast to the Nanoassemblers, which create matter to repair with . . . . . .the Dissassemblers have the ability to dismante or destroy matter. They can even deactivate the nanomachines' restoring ability by disengaging their repair programs. This should be sufficiently effective even against the Deus' - Seraphs -.

Fei puts his hands on his hips and looks down, saying -

Fei: Alright, even if we can deal with the angels . . . . . just how are we gonna deal with that Merkava? We can't even get close to the thing . . .

Citan turns to him and holds out his hands to either side, saying -

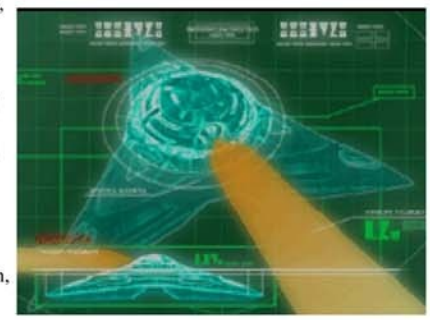
Citan: There is no such thing as a perfect defense. There is a way.

All turn to Citan as he says -

Citan: Look over here.

All turn as the square in the center lights up with a holographic image which hovers above their heads, a single globular sphere.

View moves forward as it switches to a one of a schematic showing Merkava, Citan says -



"Merkava's main gun requires a 1.2 second interval to reload because of its tremendous output. Upon firing, although it is only sectional, there will be a portion of the barrier that will be opened. There is a 1.87 second delay before the barrier reforms in that area. If we can use this window of time to target and destroy that cannon, it will be possible to close in on it. If we can get close enough, we can break through with gravitational - spatial correction.

View fades and returns to them as they stand around the glowing holograph as it flattens and disappears. Citan says -

Citan: Well, this is the rough idea.

Sig: Unfortunately, we don't have such a long range cannon . . .
. . .that could acquire a target in such a brief time frame.

Bart turns around to him and raises an arm, saying -

Bart: So what you're sayin' is we just need to shut that annoying cannon up, right?

All turn to Bart and scene fades to darkness. Fei says -

Fei: . . .You want to go head on into Merkava!?

Billy: Now you're being reckless again . . .That's suicide.

Bart turns to him and says -

Bart: No, listen. We're not just going to rush in. The Yggdrasil IV and the Excalibur are also equipped with barriers. That's what we'll use. Although only for a short time, we can withstand a direct hit from Merkava's main cannon. Then we can close in and watch for that part of the barrier to go down and then destroy the cannon.

Fei puts his hands on his hips and looks down, saying -

Fei: How long will our barrier last?

Bart crosses his arms, propping his chin in his hand and looking down. He says -

Bart: About 20 or so seconds.

Fei holds his hands out to either side and turns to the others, saying -

Fei: That's all? It wouldn't matter how fast we fly. In that amount of time, we'll be without a barrier before we can get within firing range. And those numbers are valid only if the generator is at full drive, right? You can only get those numbers if we sacrifice all other output and propulsion.

Bart looks up and flexes his right arm, turning to Fei and -

Bart: I'm not suggesting we go in with guns blazing knowing we're gonna lose. We're going to physically put a lid on it, directly!

He drops his arm and Fei, "?" Bart puts his hands on his hips and says -

Bart: As you've said . . .The Yggdrasil IV or Excalibur's barrier can't sufficiently defend against Merkava's attack. At least with one generator that is . . .

Bart lets his arms drop to his sides and Billy asks -

Billy: Meaning . . .?

Bart shakes his head and says -

Bart: Meaning, we can defend against the Merkava with twice the amount of time . . . . . .40 seconds, if we couple the 2 generators together. This way, we can make it into the heart of Merkava.

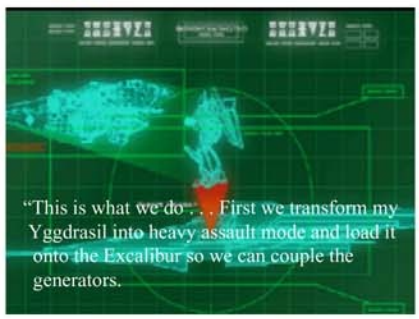
Nearby, Maison asks -

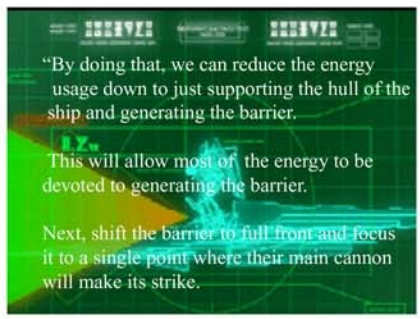
Maison: Then, what about the propulsion . . .

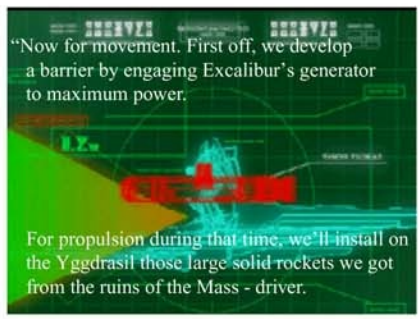
Bart turns to him and says -

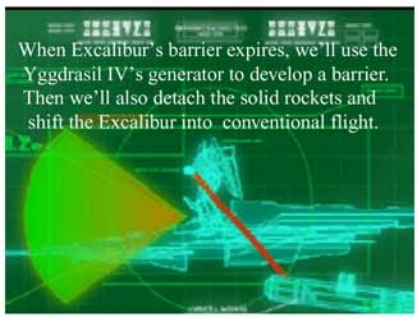
Bart: Just hear me out.

View swings around to face the large display on the curved wall above the consoles behind Fei and a large holographic image appears above.









Scene returns to the gathered members, as the holograph shrinks and disappears, and Bart says -

Bart: . . .That's what the plan is all about. The combination of the barriers of both ships . . .storming the Merkava . . . The timing of the cannon fire of the Excalibur . . . These are all going to be critical. Mess up any one of these and the consequences are going to be severe. Hence, it will be necessary to have both crews in synch with each other. That's why I'd like to place Sig in command of the Excalibur.

He turns to Sig who drops his arms and nods once, saying -

Sig: I have no qualms with that . . .

Bart turns to Zephyr and says -

Bart: What do you think, Queen? Will you lend us your battleship?

Zephyr: Since there appears to be no other alternative, let us go with that. Please use it as you see fit.

Citan ponders, foot tapping as he looks towards Bart and -

Citan: But are we not cutting it uncomfortably close . . .? . . .When you calculate the arrival time and the barrier generation time, you will see what I mean! One minor mishap will put us in a situation where we could run out of barrier power before our arrival.

Sig crosses his arms and says -

Sig: Also, we will be devoting both generators to keeping the barriers up . . .Won't that leave us without perimeter defenses? We won't stand a chance if we get engaged by the - Seraph - angels on our way to Merkava.

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: We'll hold them off. You can count on us!
You guys just concentrate on taking out that main cannon.

Bart turns to him and says -

Bart: Thanks. We're depending on you.

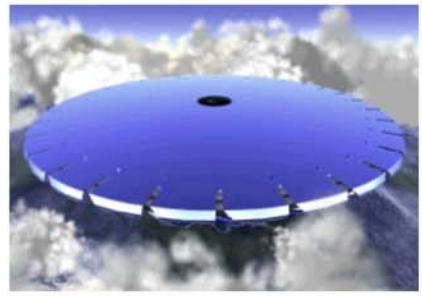
Then Fei turns around and raises his right hand clenching it into a fist, and shaking it as he says -

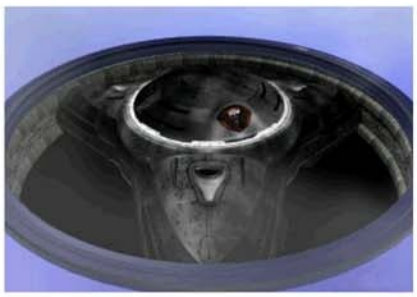
Fei: Already, everywhere else has been taken out. This is the only place that's left. This is going to be the true 'final battle'.

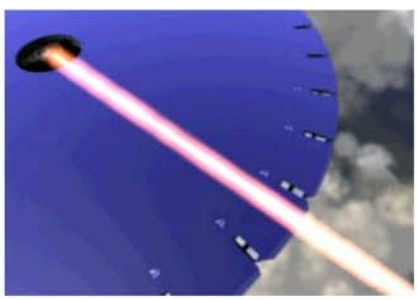
Scene fades.

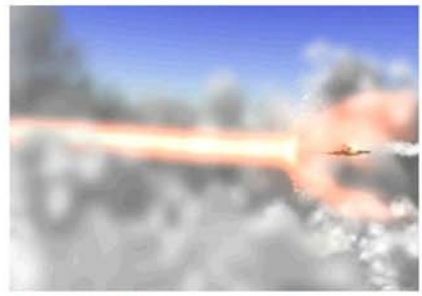
Scene cuts to where Fei is seated in a chair before an image in a field of stars. He says -

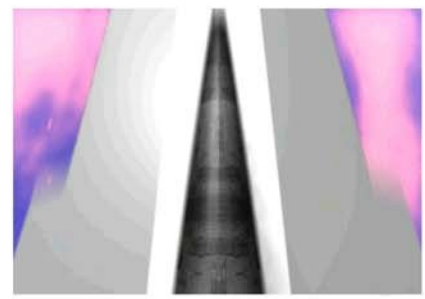
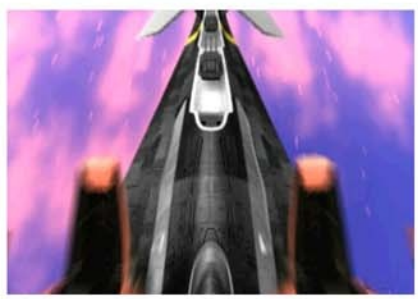
"We set out to silence god's ark, 'Merkava', which was the epitome of offensive and defensive power . . . and then storm inside it . . .
We initiated the operation to destroy 'Zohar'.

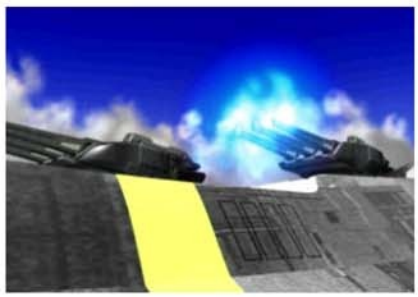


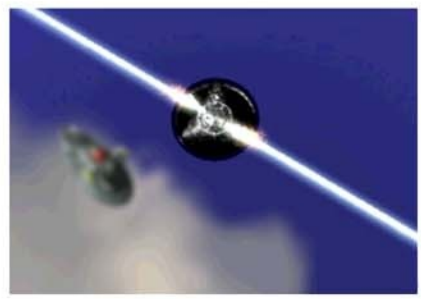










Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as it cants at an odd angle, sirens wailing. Citan stands near the helm behind Bingo who steers the vessel as it slowly rocks back and forth. Fei calls over -

Fei: That can't be!

Billy: A secondary explosion . . .!?

Citan raises his arms over his head briefly, covering his face for a moment, then drops his arms except for a single balled fist which he holds up before his face and he says -

Citan: Oh no! I should have known better. What a miscalculation!!
The explosion was too big. It reacted with the main condenser right
under the main cannon . . . . . .and induced a secondary explosion . . .
How could I have been so stupid!?

Bart's voice comes over the 'comm and he says -

Bart: You mean, we overdid it?

Citan: Why did I not realize it sooner? This means . . .
We might have . . .Oh no, Elly . . .!

Fei: Oh . . .oh my gosh . . .Elly . . .!!

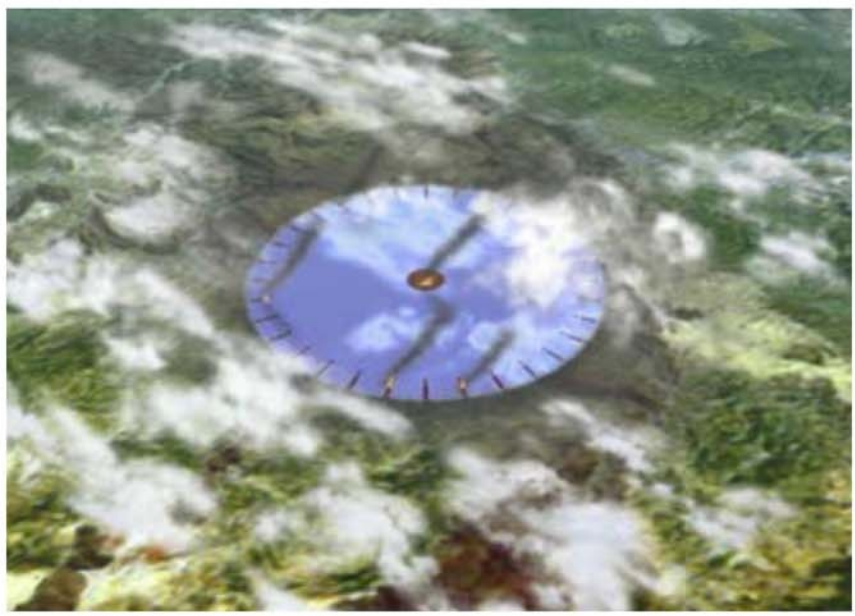
Billy: W, what is it, this time?

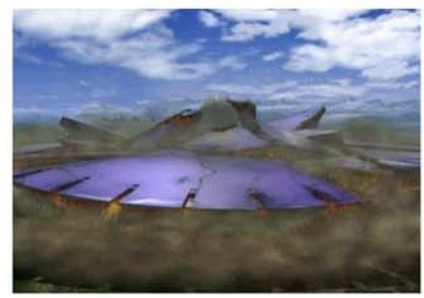
Citan lowers his arm and ponders -

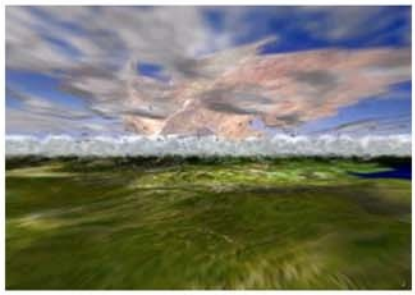
Citan: Something is happening in the center of Merkava . . .
What could it be . . .!?

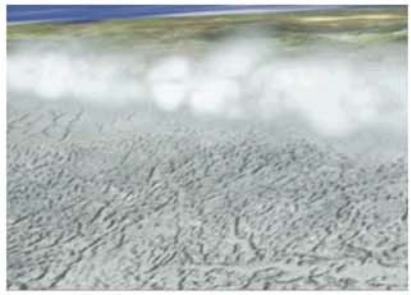
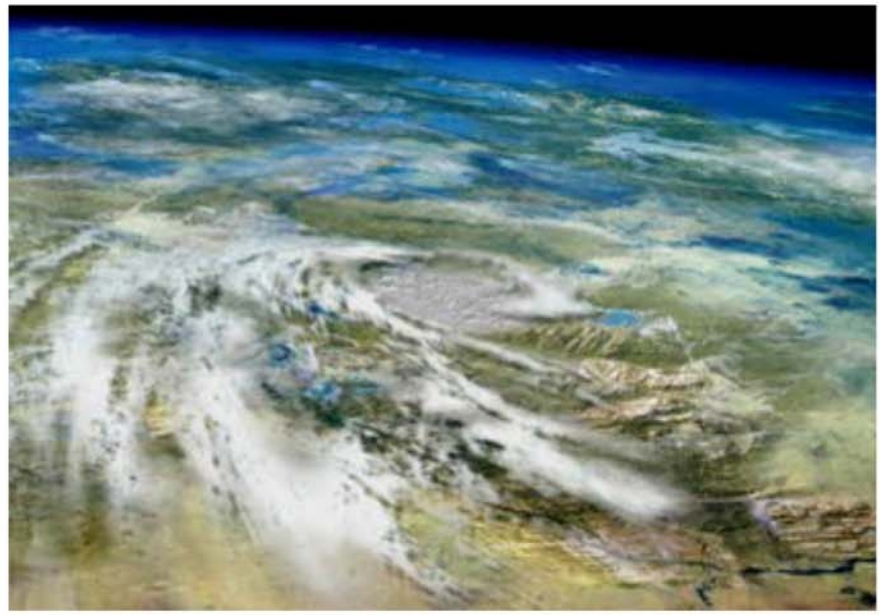
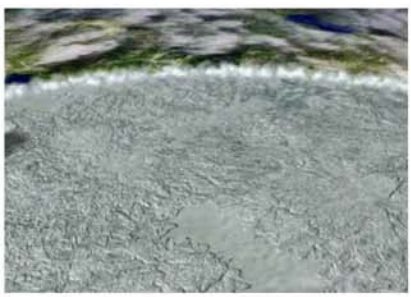
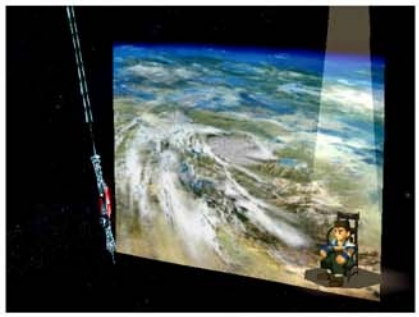
Bart: Hey, Citan! What more is going to happen!?

Citan: Why did I not realize it.







"At that time the earth quaked and shook. And, from the location where the Merkava crashed, a giant object appeared.

It was Deus' final form.

The Merkava was merely it's vessel. Deus evolved through the use of Krelian's nanomachines into a planetary scale weapon and began terraforming.
It was attempting to convert this entire planet into a weapon . . .
We retreated back to the base at the snow plains to form a new strategy . . .
We decided to go back into Deus. Time was running out for us.

Scene fades.

Scene cuts to where Fei, Bart and Citan stand in a small rounded marble chamber in the ruins of what had once been Shevat. Near the door at the far end is a cow which moos at them as it chews contentedly. They go through and find themselves in a wide circular chamber, the floor blue ice and the can see the broken remains of what had been a fountain in the center. People from all parts of the world are gathered here, some behind counters selling their wares, and others huddled into groups, talking. They speak to a Shevat agent.

SA1: Though this base is the last refuge for humans . . .(pause) as you can no doubt see we have almost no supplies. Anyway, we're using a fallen piece of Shevat as the main base . . .(pauses) But you probably could have guessed that, huh. If we can take out Deus even one day sooner . . .We can't hold out much longer like this.

They look out over the chamber and see that it was once the central plaza of Shevat, its glass floor with the water beneath now all turned to ice and several new doors having been added along the walls. They go over to the old woman on the right of the door and -

OldW1: Hey - hey, welcome . . .What can I do for you, hey?

She offers them a variety of items and they buy a few, then leave. The go through the door nearby and find themselves on the vast snowy plain outside the hideout, the fragmented remains of Shevat rising out of the snow behind them. The Yggdrasil is stationed nearby and they can see the sea to the north beyond the snow drifts, the blue sky arcing overhead. They decide to go back inside for now, and finish talking to the people. The return and make their way in the central chamber to where a lady in a short blue dress stands beside one of the lift stones which has several birds on it, all different colors and chirping. She has a pitcher in her left hand and they recognize her as being the lady from the restaurant, the Deep Sea Bros. In Shevat They speak to her and -

W1: Hey, aren't these Picotiles cute? They're going 'cheap cheap' too! How about it? Wanna buy my Picotiles?

Curious, they choose to [Buy Picotiles] and wince when she names the price -

W1: Alright! 20,000G for the lot! (pauses) And no haggling for a discount! So pay up!

They are [Forced to pay 20,000G] and the lady says -

W1: Thanks. They're really delicious if you grill them . . .

Suddenly, in a huge chirping bunch, the birds all fly off and she, "Aaaaaaah . . .!!" She then turns her back, the pitcher still held in her hand and says -

W1: I know nothing! . . .Nothing!

She turns back around and they speak to her once more. She says -

W1: I'm not giving you your money back! They ran away after I sold them to you.

They go through the door on the left of the lady who had sold them the birds. They go through and find themselves in a tiny rock chamber, a man in green and orange clothing witha shovel ahead of them.

M1: Hmmmm . . .I think I smell treasure over here.

He turns to them and asks -

M1: Hey, don't you have a gold nugget? If you give it to me, I'll dig some more here. I'm sure something good will come up. How about it?

They decide to try it and give him the nugget.

M1: Alright, got it! Well, I'll try digging around here then . . .Expect something good!

They leave and go to the left past the woman with the pitcher and see a squared out section of the wall where dark metallic machinery fills the gap and a counter where one of the Shevat scientists in a blue coat stands. He says -

M2: Hey buddy! You need something? Hey, hang on a minute!

He turns around as a metal apparatus extends out of the machinery behind him with a low hum and comes to a halt with a great clatter They are given the opportunity to upgrade their Gears and do so, finding extraordinary things, new engines, armor and parts. They see that all their Gears are upgraded to their Omnigear status as well and figure they'll ask about that later. They run out of cash before they are finished and leave for now. The man says -

M2: Thanks. Come again and I'll give you a better deal. (Yeah . . .Better you than me . . .Haha!)

They see that behind the counter, off to the left is a gap in the machinery, leading to darkness and they go through, finding themselves at the head of a rusted metal lined stairwell which leads down to a corridor of rock and dust, blue lights strung up near the ceiling. They go to the end and see a hole in the ground and go through.

Here, they emerge out into a vast chamber, what must have been a landing bay of some kind, a hole in the colossal metal pipe behind them leading up to the rock corridor, while the rest of it extends out over the floor below, another just like it off to their left. The two pipes lead out across the shadowed chamber and at the other end, they see a narrow metal extension an with a single man standing at the end. They go over to where he stands. He says -

M1: I'm a celebrated Gear weapons specialist . . .But lately there's been no interesting work . . .There are no men with enough guts to ask me to forge them a weapon to fight Deus . . .If you bring me a nifty sword, I can forge it into something truly amazing for you anytime . . .But I won't work for anyone rude enough to ask me to check a weapon while it's still equipped to their Gear!

Taking the hint, they remove the Kishin sword from Fenrir and speak to him again. This time he turns to them and -

M1: Ohh . . .the Kishin! You sure have a novel sword. Looks interesting! Lemme take a peek!

View fades to darkness as the sound of hammering comes to them, then returns and the man says -

M1: This came out great! It was like turning plowshares into a sword! Use this sword and make Deus and his legions pay!

They see that the ['Kishin' sword was enhanced!] and [receive 'Kijin' sword!] They equip the sword and are astonished at the improvement. They go across to the second pipe and back to the opening in the first and leave, climbing back up to the rock chamber and returning to the central room once more. To their left is another door and they go through the door and enter into a narrow sloping stone corridor, leading down to where they can see a snow filled passageway where they hear the shouts of "Yahoo!" and, as they move further down towards it, they see a child playing up ahead near a man seated in the snow, another running around with an orange Chu-chu to the right up a snowdrift.

They go down and speak to the man seated, a boy standing near him and see that he is the flying saucer guy from Aveh. He says slowly, in a sonorous tone -

M1: We are to be judged!! The last day is nigh . . . You too should be careful. It's all according to prophecy . . .

They turn to the little boy who stands nearby and he has a blue backpack strapped to his shoulders. He says -

Lb1: Just when I thought I could ride the UFO, it's not flying anymore!! On top of that this guy keeps saying annoying stuff!

They move past him along the snow to where the child and Chu-chu are playing and see that the broken remains of masonry around them with glowing bars of aqua colored light was in fact one of the lift passageways, now in its side. Through the broken gaps in the walls, they see a rock facing and approach the spot where the child and Chu-chu slide down the snow drift to land against pieces of gray marble which jut out of the snow at the bottom. They speak to the girl who says -

Lg1: Dis is the first time for me to see snow and boy is it cowld, shlippery, and fuun!!

The orange Chu-chu says -

ChC1: I don't wanchu think . . .what am I doing at a time like this . . .If I don't do this, I can't keep my composure!

They go back down the drift and see a passageway off to their right near the man and boy and go down it. They find a woman and a gray haired older lady standing in the short stone hall near a door and the woman says -

W1: Just when I thought Prince Bartholomew would return and bring peace to the land of Aveh . . . Just goes to show, you never know what might happen in this world . . .

The older woman says -

OldW1: I've heard rumors that a part of Nortune, the old capital of Kislev survived! I wonder if they're still conducting that barbaric 'Bartelling' thing . . .? Really, I ask you, what are we to do with our menfolk these days . . .?

They go through the door at the end and find themselves in what was once Zephyr's bedchamber, still intact and standing in the center of the room are Dan and Midori. They speak to Dan first, knowing there is much to be addressed and he turns to them and says -

Dan: In the prison, when I saw you change into a monster, I understood everything. Living inside of you, Fei, there is a monster that's not you . . . He's the bad one . . .He's to blame . . .

Dan turns to the side and nods once, saying -

Dan: So . . .to forgive you, or not to forgive you . . .Well . . .that's not the problem! It's not like it's gonna turn back things the way they were . . .but . . .errh, it's just . . . I don't know how to say it properly, (pauses) but (pause) I'm sorry . . .I . . .I, errh . . I . . .!

Fei bows his head and says -

Fei: It's alright, Dan . . .Enough already. I understand. It is my fault. I'm sorry I caused you such pain . . .

Dan's shoulders shake and -

Dan: . . .

Then Fei says -

Fei: I'm just glad that I could finally make peace with you. Take care, kiddo.

They turn to Midori who stands nearby and she turns around to them and says -

Midori: Fei . . .I was scared a little, but not really scared. Cause I knew that inside of that monster, you were doing all you could to fight it, Fei. I knew it.

Suddenly remembering something, Fei kneels down beside her and says -

Fei: Midori! I had better give this back to you . . .It's your precious ring, right? Be a good little girl, and listen to your mother, Yui, alright, Midori! Oh and . . .look after Dan for me, OK!?

Midori: Yep, we, (pauses) are all fine. Fei, you be careful too. I'm sure your voice will reach her too, Fei . . .

He stands and says -

Fei: Yeah . . .I guess you're right!

Fei: Okay . . .Well, I'm going now. So see you later!

She says -

Midori: Here . . .I got this from Chu - chu. Fei, you can have it. I'll trade you for my ring.

They get a Hurcules Ring and look around the room, seeing the white Angel statue on the table nearby . . . all the more poignant now that the meaning is understood. They leave the room, returning to the short hallway and going out to the snow filled passageway beyond. They turn to their right, traveling down to where one of the lifts lies in the snow, a portly man in a gray coat standing on it near a plank of wood which leads up to an opening. He says -

M3: Oh Queen . . .What do you see with those eyes . . .That look of sorrow, as if you've lost something . . . But within that, there lies a kindness which would forgive all . . .

They move on up the plank and enter out into the stillness of the snowy outdoors, soft flakes falling gently all around them and broken remains of stone masonry rising from the white in a circle all around. Behind them, they see part of one of the palace's tower sections, steps spiraling around it, leading up to the gazebo above. They climb up, the soft mournful sigh of the wind the only sound.

Up at the top, they see the Queen staring out at the mountains beyond and go over to her. As she speaks, the view moves up to the mountains beyond.

Zephyr: The snow keeps falling . . .Softly covering up everything in this world . . .

Zephyr: Our sorrow, our defilement, our mistakes . . .If only we could wipe away these things as easily as that . . .What have we . . .have I . . .been doing . . .(pause) been pursuing . . .for these past 500 years?

She turns to Citan who stands a short distance behind, and says -

Zephyr: By the way . . .How is the person you rescued from Merkava? I heard he recovered consciousness . . .

Citan nods once and moves to stand at the edge, looking out at the falling snow and he says -

Citan: Yes, well, at first, he had lost faith in himself but now he is better. Kahr has revived himself, and has found some real meaning in his life. If he decides to fight on our side then our total fighting power shall be greatly increased.

Scene fades and cuts to the sickbay of the Yggdrasil, facing Ramsus who stands in the center of the room, Citan before him and Sig off to the right, a partition at the end if the bed behind him partially hiding the door. Citan faces Ramsus and holds out his right hand, and says-

Citan: Kahr . . .Please listen to me! Right now, we must forget about being friend or foe. We all must support one another, regardless . . . Right now, we need your help!

Ramsus: . . .I . . .am . . .just trash . . . . . .a . . .reject . . .

Citan moves forward and slaps Ramsus who kneels to the ground, his face averted and he says -

Citan: Stop feeling sorry for yourself and pull yourself together man!!

Sig steps forward and -

Sig: Hyuga!? What are you . . .

Citan stands over Ramsus and holds out his hands, leaning forward and -

Citan: Trash . . .Reject . . .You can take pity and call yourself that all you want, but what about them!?

View swings around to where the four girls stand watching behind the partition near the door and Ramsus remains kneeling, his head bowed and hand held to his forehead, his face averted. Citan turns his back and walks away a few steps, saying -

Citan: Are these women stupid, or trash, or rejects too for believing in you?

Citan stands with his arms crossed, his chin in his hand and Sig looks at Ramsus where he kneels. Then Citan says -

Citan: The reasons why you helped the girls, who had no one to turn to, may not have been that noble . . . But in spite of that, they stick with you. Do you know why?

Citan turns around and holds out his hands, looking at where Ramsus kneels with head bowed and says -

Citan: They know you better than anybody else. They know the true kindness that exists (pauses) inside your heart. They know because they want to be loved. That is why they won't leave you. Kahr . . .Do not make them into the trash or rejects that you speak of.

The girls stand before Ramsus and Dominia says -

Dominia: Commander . . .

Without raising his head, Ramsus says -

Ramsus: All of you . . .

Then Citan turns around and pushes his glasses up his nose, blinking and says -

Citan : Needless to say, you are not trash or a reject . . . We know that better than anyone does.

Still bowed, Ramsus says haltingly -

Ramsus: I . . . I didn't realize that what I've been looking for . . .was so close to me . . . I'm . . .sorry . . .for not realizing sooner!

Dominia stands looking down at him and she says -

Dominia: Oh, Commander . . .!!

The view moves up towards the ceiling and fades to blue light. Scene returns to the gazebo, facing Fei who looks out over the vista, and he says -

Fei: So much has happened between him and I . . .When this battle ends, I want to face Ramsus one on one in sport, not war, as a martial artist.

From his left, Zephyr speaks -

Zephyr: I am sure he wishes the same thing too.

Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Perhaps . . .

Zephyr: Fei . . .May I ask you something? About Elly . . . What if, even if we break Zohar's spell, she doesn't return to normal . . .

Fei: Elly will be back to her usual self! I will go on believing that. But even if that doesn't happen . . . I will still . . . . . Well, let's just say I'm prepared for that too!

Zephyr: You don't have to do this if you don't want to, you know. Your opponent is the person you love . . .If you decide to quit now, no one will blame you.

Fei: To quit would be meaningless. All that I have fought for, and all that I live for, would come to have no meaning at all . . . People should be free. With no one bound by others, and no one binding others . . . Inside of me, there is a part of me that desires that freedom, and a part of me that gives me hope. So, I shall fight to win true freedom!
For we are still alive! We fight to live. That is the reason why I fight.
It's proof I'm human. I promised my father, and myself too, that I would free Elly from Deus' binds, that I would save her . . .

Zephyr: I understand. So, let's keep believing . . .
And hope for a miracle . . .

Bart and Citan join Fei and they make their way down the steps back to the ground and go down the ladder which rises out of the hole seen in the white snow. They return to the main chamber and go to their left to the raised area where an old man stands by a bier, books piled up all around him. He says -
OldM1: Argh! Burning! Burning! All of my rare first edition books and valuable autographs!! I know supplies are short, but I can't believe they are burning my treasures!

They go over to where an old woman stands by another of the biers and she says -
OldW1: Burn, burn . . .! Burn up this whole world . . .! My home, my whole family, everything's been destroyed by them . . .Who cares anymore, burn it all up!! Hahahaha . . .

They speak to the Aveh guard next to her and he says -
G1: So many have died . . .If this continues, even more will die. It's the same as 500 years ago. That tragedy and hardship is being repeated again . . What's going to happen to our world . . .(pause) What's going to happen to us . . .!?

They go through the door nearby and find themselves in a short silver metallic hallway leading to a larger chamber beyond, many people and a few cats milling around. They speak to a little girl nearby who is bundled up in clothes and she says -
Lg1: It's not bad. There are a lot of people, and it's fun to play in the snow.

Further down the hall they see a man and woman in Aveh clothing. The woman says -
W1: After losing our home in Kislev . . .we lost our home in Aveh, too. So we decided to stay here for a while. But next time, I want to live somewhere that's green.

The man next to her says -
M1: I never thought I'd live here . . .(pause) I wanted to make my parents happy.

They go into the chamber beyond which is done in silvery metal where many people are gathered, cats roving around. Over by the wall is a round glass door, aqua colored and they speak to some of the people gathered near crates of supplies. A little girl standing in the center of the room says -
Lg2: It's tremendously lonely without cats.

They speak to a lady in a gray dress and white apron seated on one of the boxes and she says -
W2: We had a hard time evacuating because my daughter begged us to take all the cats with us.

The speak to the man standing against the wall nearby and he says -
M2: This isn't bad at all compared to military camp and the cat house.

An old man in a gray robe is seated by a pylon on the other side of the room and she says -
Oldm1: I don't know why but recently, families keep increasing.

They speak to an old woman seated on one of the crates nearby, who says -
OldW1: I wasn't planning on living here, (pause) but my son's family is with me.

They go towards the rounded glass doors and go through. They find themselves in a wide marble chamber filled with people, and consoles are ranged around the curved walls. They see two men deep in discussion, a holographic display in the air before them -
M1: . . .It's a different system from what humans have been creating. In other words, it should be called a machine made by non - humans.
M2: It wasn't made by humans, that I can see . . .

He is interrupted as two children race on by, shouting and the man in the red robe says -
M1: Be quiet! Sister!

He turns to two Nisan nuns who stand behind off to the side and -
M1: Please take the children elsewhere.

The view moves forward to a nun in a red dress who says -
N1: You want the children to stand in the cold hallway!? This is the warmest room. Why can't they stay here?

View moves back to the man as he says -
M1: We're having a very important meeting. They're disturbing us.

A matronly nun in a blue dress says from the side -
N2: Please don't get so upset. I really appreciate that you're trying to protect us. But you know those people are the only ones who can change our fate . . .(pauses) don't you?

Fei and the others go over to speak to the man in the red robe, an Aveh insignia visible on the sleeve. He says -
M1: There may be a few things we can do. But I've been a soldier all my life. I can't sit still as long as there are people to protect and enemies to fight.

As they turn to look at the blue holograph suspended in the air above their heads, the two children run by, shouting "I am Yggdrasil X! Come on! Catch me if you can!" and "Hey! Give my candy back!"

They speak to the man in the turban who says -
M2: I'm prepared to protect everyone here.

In the center of the room is a round metal table with a hole in its center where aqua light is seen. Around it, a couple of Imperial guards sit across from two Aveh guards. They speak to the first on the left who says -
IG1: I want to help people. But all I know how to do is fight.

The guard next to him says -
IG2: I had doubts about fighting before, but not about protecting the people here.
They go around the table and speak to one of the Aveh guards who says -
G1: You think it's just going to sit there while we gather all of Aveh's and Kiselv's armies . . .?
The man next to him says -
G2: Reallly, how can we fight against an enemy like that?
Near the table is a machine with a round holographic display, behind it, two children are seated. They speak to the little boy who says -
Lb1: This is the first time I've seen snow. It's so light and white, and a beautiful pattern appears for an instant then it melts in my palm. It's amazing . . .
The little girl on the metal seat next to him says -
Lg1: I wanna see my mom and dad.
Over by the wall to their right, as the two kids continue to circle around, chasing each other with their shouts, they see an Aveh guard and a Kislev soldier seated at a console and the Aveh guard says -
G3: The children are annoying, but, they're the reason why I'm here.
A little boy stands between the two and he jumps up and down, saying -
Lb2: What is it? Can I do that too?
The Kislev soldier says -
IG2: Kids are all the same in Kislev, Aveh and Nisan.
Nearby, the see a little girl and one of the dragon tribe standing facing one another and the little girl says -
Lg2: Her outfit is so cute, isn't it?
They speak to the dragon girl wh has a red scarf, covering her ears and she says -
Dg1: My grandma made this for my mom when she was a child. It's really warm.
They go on to where a demihuman boy stands near the two men in front of the holograph and he says -
Dhb: Good luck to you too. I . . .will protect these people, so don't worry.
They move to the other side of the room where the nun in red and the matronly one on blue stand near a mole-like demihuman who -
Mdh: Uh . . . (pauses) I'll play with the sister.
They speak to the nun in red who says -
N1: Now more than ever I feel as if each child is very important.
The nun in blue behind them says -
N2: We both no longer have anything to lose. Do as you wish. (pauses) I hope you'll have help from heaven.
They leave and go back through the metallic room where people sit on crates of supplies, cats milling around and go back to the central chamber of the hideout.
They speak to an Aveh guard who stands looking at the 2 banners in the center of the room and he says -
G1: Aveh, Kislev, Nisan . . .We've been feuding for such a long time, but finally we are coming together as one like this . . .But it's probably already too late . . .(pause) It's always the case. By the time we notice anything, it's way too late. How could we possibly stand up to god's army? The situation's really hopeless.
They go across to another door on the right near the raised area and go through, finding themselves in a narrow rock corridor which descends in a set of stairs to a stone doorway, the bluish lights placed at intervals along the ceiling. They go through and find that they are in the prison area of Shevat, the cages lining the central pathway to wither side. They see an old man standing by a huge hole in the wall further up, to the side and he says -
OldM: There's nothing here. He's long gone already. But, wow, to make a hole this big . . .
The old man turns back to look at it once more and they go down to the door at the end of the pathway, finding themselves in the darkened marble hallway leading to the carbon freezing room and, down a flight of steps, to the room at the other end. They go down to the door on their left and enter, the carbonite room with its triangle suspended in aqua light at the center of the circle. One of the Shevat Elders stands off to the side, looking at the circle and he says -
E1: I guess I wasn't supposed to used this . . .I'm sorry I caused you so much trouble. Your lil' brother was really mad at me. He asked us whether we had hearts or not. I envy you having a brother with enough guts to be honest.
He turns back to face out over the device once more and they leave, moving down the stairs to the lower hallway and finding an old woman near some fallen masonry which blocks the door ahead. She says -
OldW: I have a stupid son you know. He used to fish for a living but one day he said he saw a merman city on the sea floor . . .Since then he hasn't gone out to sea, he's become a landlubber . . .We haven't seen him these past few years, I don't know what he's doing now.
They turn around and go back up the stairs and down the hall, and past the prison area, returning to the central chamber once more. To the left they see a Shevat agent and an old man seated with an Aveh guard over by the right at a table, an old woman working behind it. The Shevat agent says -
SA: It's gotten awfully cold. I hate the cold! It's killing me . . .If the temperature keeps dropping like this, we'll all be frozen before Deus can finish us off.
The old man next to him says -
Oldm2: Us people of Shevat have always dreamed of coming down to live on the planet's surface . . . But we didn't ever imagine this would be how we would realize that dream! . . .This is unbearable!
They speak to the Aveh guard on the right who says -
G4: Hey, I've got all kinds of good stuff here. Hey, you need anything?
He offers them a selection of items and they buy a few things. Then they speak to the old woman behind the counter who says -
OldW2: It's not like we're born just to die . . .? What's going to happen to us now? To this world . . . We can't carry on without at least drinking . . .It's scary and lonely . . .
They go behind the counter and through the door behind the old woman and find themselves in a narrow rocky corridor which slopes down to a rounded chamber below. A man lies nearby with a bottle in his hand and he says -
M1: Everyone's gonna die!! Booze!! Bring booze - e - e - e - e!!
They make their way down to the chamber below, boxes piled up and a few people standing around. -
M2: Plenty of good men are dead now . . .What kind of doctor am I if I can't save people dying right in front of me!? Why should an old man like me survive that . . .
They see a blue haired Amazoness by the far wall near some piled boxes and she says -
A1: Hey you, it's freezing in here. Can't you do something? This is not good for my complexion!

One of the Kislev security guards walks around and he says -

G1: A town without prisoners . . .How boring. But then again, the world itself is like a prison.

They go through the door leading down a narrow passageway to the right and as they approach the chamber beyond, they hear a young boy's voice, "You're not my dad!!" They see a group of dolphins in the room and a woman's voice comes, "Lance!!" The young dolphin turns and races by them where they stand in the hallway. They turn to watch him leave, then go forward into the room where a blue dolphin stands near a pink and a smaller gray. Fei stops before the blue and says -

Fei: Hans! Is that you!?

Hans: You . . .! You're alive!?

Fei: Yeah, you too . . .But if you're here that means the Thames was . . .

Hans: The Thames . . .sank. The 'Angels' attacked . . .The Thames withstood the onslaught of Reapers, but was defenseless against those 'Angels' . . . Hardly anyone got out in time . . .They went down with the Thames . . .

Bart speaks up from behind Fei -

Bart: Wha . . wait a minute. What about the Captain? He's okay, right?

Hans turns around, his back to them and says -

Hans: The Captain . . .said . . .he'd watch the end of the Thames with his own eyes . . .

Bart: Y, you're kidding, right? That ol' guy died . . . No way . . .

Hans turns back and says -

Hans: No! The Captain is alive. He is the kind that never keels over . . .

Fei thinks -

Fei: . . .

Then -

Fei: So, what's happened with you lately. I didn't know you had a son? The kid who just left . . .seemed pretty angry about something.

Hans: I'm embarrassed you just saw that. I got married just before the Thames went down.

He turns to look at Anna and she turns to look at him as he says -

Hans: Her name is Anna. She's my wife. She was saved by the Thames when the ships were attacked by Reapers. Unfortunately, that's when she lost her husband . . .Don't misunderstand me. It wasn't out of feeling sorry for her or anything like that . . .Or . . .Well, perhaps it was . . . I just wanted to protect her, that's all. If you call that feeling sorry, then I suppose I don't mind. The Captain teased me mercilessly. He said . . . 'What! A cold guy like you, seducing a widow? Just make sure the kid doesn't hate you . . .' Ha, ha . . .I guess the Captain was right. My stepson doesn't like me yet. But I'm hoping someday . . .

Fei: I see . . . (pause) Boy, you've changed!

Hans: Ha, ha. You've changed too, Fei. I don't know how to explain it, but . . . As for me . . .well, I don't know what it is . . .I guess I've always had someone protecting me . . .

Fei: Hans . . .

Hans begins speaking as the view moves to the right towards the door and he says -

Hans: Fei, I believe . . .

Hans turns to the doorway and the echo of a step is heard in the corridor beyond as -

Hans: I believe that one day, the Captain will come down that stairway . . .

A ghostly image of the Captain appears, walking through the door and -

Hans: Tap - tap - tapping with his cane . . .

The image of the Captain halts -

Hans: And he'll say . . . 'Haaaans! It looks like we'll get our hands on a priceless treasure! What kind of face is that? You don't believe me, huh? This time it's true . . .honest!'

Hans turns his back and says -

Hans: . . .Maybe (pauses) someday . . .

Then, they hear -

Captain: Haaaans! It looks like we'll get our hands on a priceless treasure!

All turn around and see that the ghostly image of the Captain is replaced by - the real thing! All "!!" and -

Captain: What kind of face is that!?

Hans moves forward slowly, then halts, saying -

Hans: Ca, ca, cap . . .

Then he rushes forward and throws himself on the Captain, trying to embrace him and -

Hans: Captain - - - - - -!!

Captain: What's this shouting out 'Ca, ca captain - - - - - !!'? Cut it out, you fool!

Hans stops trying to hug him and -

Hans: Do, you know how much I was worried about you!?

Captain: Hans! I've been telling you all along. Don't you get it? Now listen . . .

The Captain turns to the right with a flare!
Captain: Men . . .!
To the left -
Captain: Of the sea . . .!
View cuts to one behind him and pulls in as he finishes -
Captain: Never say die!
Then he shakes with laughter -
Captain: Gha, ha, ha, ha - a - a - a!!

View fades to one inside the room once more as Hans, standing before the Captain, says -

Hans: You . . .are . . .such . . .a . . .

The Captain turns to him and says -

Captain: Hans! This time it's true! It's an island with buried treasure. It's called 'Duneman Isle'. An ancient hero defeated a monster there, and now legend has it, his fabled sword rests there.

Hans: What info. Do you have . . .? Do you know where the place is? What about a ship?

Captain: Don't know where it is! Don't have a ship! Don't worry with details! Don't you know that attitude of yours is why that kid won't take to you?

Hans: That's none of your business!

Captain: Well, by the time that kid actually decides to like you . . .I'll have managed to get a new ship. Till then, give it all for your family, lad!! Give your family the love they need while you still have the chance.
Ghar, har, har!!

The Captain shakes with laughter, then turns and moves off down the corridor, Hans staring after him. They speak to him and he says -

Hans: Geez . . .When it comes to him . . .

They turn to the little gray dolphin near the pink and she says -
Kanna: Some flashy woman in Thames taught me a card game. Do you wanna play?
They decide maybe some other time and say [No thanks]
Kanna: Chicken.
They speak to the pink dolphin next to Hans who says -
Anna: It hasn't been that long since my husband died . . .Please don't think I'm a loose woman . . . But it's because of this man that I . . (blush) . . .

They see a man standing near the doorway and he says -

M1: Everyone's down, and they're the only ones looking happy. Annoying, isn't it?
They go back down the corridor to the round room where they see the Captain standing with Lance. They hear -
Lance: I wish you were my dad. Can I call you Dad?
The Captain turns to the side, shaking with laughter and he says -

Captain: Ghar, har, har! That's a laugh . . .
A walrus with a penguin for a son! Ghar, har, har!

The Captain turns back to Lance as he exclaims -

Lance: I'm not a penguin! I'm a dolphin!!

Captain: Oh? Hans is a penguin.

Lance: My dad is a dolphin, too! Oops . . .Forget what I just said. I didn't mean to call him dad! Who would want a father like him!

The Captain turns to the side, laughing once more -
Captain: Ghar, har, har, ha - a - a!!

They speak to the Captain who says -
Captain: What? How did I survive? Don't worry about those minor details!
If you worry about such things then kids'll hate you, just like they hate Hans, heh!

They speak to Lance who says -

Lance: He is teaching me about the spirit of the men of the sea!

They leave and go up the rocky corridor leading up to the central chamber once more. There, they decide to go out into the world and begin preparing to meet Deus for the final battle. Also, they are curious as to the changes that have occurred since the last time they were able to explore. They go out to where the Yggdrasil is stationed near the remains of Shevat nearby, and they board the vessel. It rises into the pale blue sky, the snowdrifts gleaming in the sun below and scene fades.

First and Last

Scene cuts to the bridge of the Yggdrasil as Fei, Bart and Citan approach Sig at the helm. He turns around and says -

Sig: Deus integrated with Zohar and awoke . . . But we've found out Deus is in the center of the giant structure created out of the fallen Merkava. The only way we can think of to destroy Deus is to penetrate into there and make our way to the center. That structure used to be Merkava itself, but we must assume the inside has changed significantly. We don't know what dangers await inside of there. Please be very careful.

Fei nods once, and says -

Fei: Yeah, thanks Sigurd. Let me take care of it. I will destroy Deus. (pauses) Even if it costs me everything I have . . .

From behind, Bart says -

Bart: Fei . . .Are you sure about this?

Fei turns to him and says -

Fei: Bart . . .?

Bart: I know what you must be thinking now. If you destroy Deus . . .
. . .the proliferation of the nanomachines that are out to turn this planet itself into a weapon will stop . . .But, if you end up losing Elly who was united with Deus for that very purpose, then what good will it be?

Fei: But . . .

Fei turns to Sig as he says -

Sig: That's right, Fei. She's our friend who's been through a lot with us too. I think that saving a dear friend is just as important as protecting our planet or saving the world . . .What better reason is there to fight? If you can't even save your friends, then how could you save the world? Don't you agree?

Bart nods once and says -

Bart: Yeah, Sig's right! Don't you ever give up, Fei, no matter what! You're the only one who can release Elly from Deus' spell. But, we'll give you as much backup as we can. So . . .

Still facing Sig, Fei nods once and says -

Fei: Thanks a lot. Bart, Sigurd . . .I won't give up.

Sig crosses his arms and says -

Sig: You volunteered to fight for the young master and the rest of us. So it's our turn to fight for you and Elly. Let's go, Fei . . .to gain true freedom!!

Citan and Bart come forward to stand with Fei as Sig asks -

Sig: Shall we launch the Yggdrasil?

They respond [Go ahead!] and scene cuts to one overhead as the Yggdrasil flies over the blue depths below, crossing a large landmass and then they range out across the waters once more, noting some changes. Now that they are free to explore once more, they take their time and go back to the bridge in order to check out the ship's charts and see what the world looks like now, since all that's happened. The first crewman on the left down below the halm at his console says -

C1: The map needs to be rewritten because of what's happened!

They go to the man near the charts and he says -

C2: Our maps are not much of a help anymore . . .

He shows them the ship's chart and they see many changes. Over by the Ignas continent, a new island has appeared to the west, near where Bart's hideout used to be. To the northwest, an icy land mass has appeared, restoring what appears to be a chain of islands arranged around a circle just like those in the Aquvy region. Deus is located on the larger continent which forms the southern end of the circle pattern. Far to the south, they see where the Snowfield Hideout is located on a new icy continent and where before, the eastern sea had been largely empty, now there is a long landmass where Taura's house is located, the island to the south where the first Anima Relic had been found.

Before going up to the helm, however, they speak to the other crewmen and the next one down says -

C3:All I've heard is static since then . . . I hope people are still alive out there . . .

The next one works at his console and says -

C4: . . .Let's put more oomph into it!!

The next crewman says -

C5: I'm finally getting used to being in the sky . . .But I shouldn't get too relaxed yet!

Next to him, Franz turns at their approach and says -

Franz: Oh, sorry . . .I didn't realize that you were there!

He offer to play some sounds he has recorded and they listen for a while, then speak to the next crewman.

C6: The ship's missiles might not work on that monster . . .

Over in the rear, the see the crewman in a green coat and -

C7: That Jerico is serious! I should put more oomph into it, too!

They go up to the helm and speak to Bingo who says -

Bingo: If Sigurd passes away, I will . . .

Then -

Bingo: Yggdrasil III can fly now, thanks to Shevat's technology but . . .The operations have changed a little so I've gotta study them all over again.

He shows them his notes and , when they are done, he says -

Bingo: I can't wait until I become a fully - fledged helmsman . . .

Before they leave, they go to the exit and down the lift, making their way to the Gun Room to speak to Maison. As they get out of the lift, they speak to the man near the potted plant and he says -

M1: You may not have noticed it, but ever since the time you guys came here, that tree's grown a little bit. It may only be little by little, but it still means our hopes and dreams are also growing to fruition too!

He turns back round and they go to the Gun Room door, speaking to the pirate standing outside and he says -

P1: Gawd . . .I've been standing here for such a long time . . .Was I of any help to you?

They respond [Hmm, I dunno] and he says -

P1: Oh yeah . . .!? Well . . .there are a lot of people who get lost around here, y'know . . . Hah! (Now where was I . . .!?)

They go through the door nearby into the Gun Room and over to the bar to speak with Maison.

Maison: It appears the final hour is approaching . . .If need be, this Maison will also take up arms and come to your aid!!

He offers them items and accessories and they buy a few things. They go over to the far side of the room where Billy stands near one of the guns displayed on the wall and he says -

Billy: It was a long journey . . .But what we did
was not in vain. Let's prove it!

They go back to the railing and down the corkscrew stairs to the lower level to the room Maria shares with Emeralda. They speak to Maria who says -

Maria: The bonds between my father and I . . .can't be broken!

Over on the bed to the left of the door, Emeralda says -

Emeralda: Emeralda . . .go too . . .

They leave and go to the room next door and speak to Rico who says -

Rico: I'll never forgive what they did to him . . .
He did nothing wrong!

They leave and go back up the stairs and out to the hallway, where they go into the sickbay. Here, they speak to the doctor who says -

Doctor: Fight to your heart's content and go get injured to your heart's content!

They see the sick man over by the wall and -

SM: Oh yeaahh!! We're going to give it all we've got for the young master!!

He jumps up and scene goes dark briefly as he "Whoa!" and returns to normal once more as he says -

SM: Argh . . .If only I wasn't wounded, I'd also be able to . . .!

They leave and go across the hall to the sleeping chamber where they speak to a man near the door.

M1: It's beyond my ability to understand, but . . .(pause) regardless, I'm counting on you! No one else can do this!

They speak to a pirate standing near one of the bunks and -

P1: I've got to work hard for my daughter's future!

The woman at the end of the room says -

W1: As long as you're alive, I'll be happy.

They leave and go down to Margie's room. They speak to Marige and she says -

Margie: You're the only ones who can save us . . .
We're counting on you!

After a moment, she says -

Margie: Young master . . . You better not die! Promise me!!

Bart: Of course! I'm not going to die! Quit sayin' such weird stuff!

Margie turns her back and says -

Margie: Sorry . . .Yeah . . .you're right . . .You'll make it back . . .
When you come back, I'm going to . . .well . . .I just thought . . .
. . .maybe I could be (pause) closer to you. . .you know . . .

Bart: Hey, whoa! Quit it. Do you know what you're saying!?

She turns around and says -

Margie: Heh, just kiddin'!! Young master, you're all panicked!!

Bart turns around and, " . . ." and there is a moment of silence, then Margie looks around and says -

Margie: Funny . . .I don't see J'ora anywhere! Where'd she go off to?

They try to think of where she might be and decide to go to the Gear Hangar and have a look.

The man near the entrance says -

M1: We couldn't get as many Gear parts as we would have liked . . .but, by all means, use them!

They go across to the shop and speak to the officer over by the far wall.

O1: If something should happen, I'll go too! That's the spirit of Yggdrasil Gear troops!

They go over to the counter and look at the Gear parts for sale and buy a few things, then leave and go back out to the Hangar, seeing as they walk around that their new Gears are all stationed and ready to go. They also see across the way a familiar shape where Elly's Gear used to be and they make their way over and approach the catwalk surrounding the open space. J'ora's huge transformed bulk fills the space and they go over to the tech nearby. They ask to hear "the lowdown on the Gear: and he -

T1: This is . . .J'ora!? What in the world are you doing here! You don't need any maintenance work!! You're in the way! Go eat some food and take a nap or somethin'!

View pulls in close to J'ora's enlarged form and she turns and blinks her huge green eyes, saying -

J'ora: I'm exhauschued chu! Since you're here . . . I'd like a massage!!

Then -

J'ora: Just kidding . . .

She turns and they hear her voice as she says -

J'ora: Elly, she was so kind . . . I know I'm not the only one chu miss her.
I know Bart, Margie, Billy, Citan, Rico, Maria, Emeralda, and Fei all do chu . . .
Although they don't say it, I can feel it . . .Standing here, I remember her kind
and gentle smile. Elly will return, won't she?

Fei: . . .Thanks, J'ora . . . Thanks for trying to reduce all this
tension in the air for me. I'll remember this . . .Anyway . . .
Elly's gotta be alive! Right?

J'ora turns around and says -

J'ora: Fei . . .

Fei: Let's go back to the room. Margie seemed worried.

J'ora: Okay. I'll come chu!

Scene fades and cuts to the Gear Hangar near the now empty spot where Elly's Gear had once stood. They make their way back to Margie's room and see that J'ora is moving around as usual. She says -

J'ora: I . . .may have been getting in everyone's way up chu now. But, I can't stand chu think Fei and all his friends may perish away like us . . .I'm going chu fight so that this kind of thing never happens chu anyone again!!

Prim: . . .

They see Prim hoding a note, but she won't show it to anyone but Billy, so he comes in and speaks to her.

Primera: 'PriMemo' Big Brother, hang in there . . .

Sighing, they leave, thinking of Prim and other children like her . . . They make their way back to the Gear Hangar and hear the info about all of their new Gears. Starting with Xenogears, they approach the tech who stands on the catwalk behind the Gear and he says -

T1: This is Xenogears. It is Fei's Gear. Height 19.8 sharls Base Weight 18.9 kahnns Full Weight 21.4 kahnns when fully equipped. Weltall-2 was transformed after its contact with Zohar. Detailed specs cannot be ascertained by the measuring devices here. But then again, I wonder whether this Gear has a limited ability to measure at all? It almost seems that this Gear gets stronger and stronger as Fei's mental powers increase . . .Anyhow, the engine seems to have been left in there from before, so it should require fuel as before . . .But it wouldn't surprise me if this thing doesn't actually need fuel anymore!

They leave and go down to where Andvari is stationed and the tech there says -

T2: This is Andvari, the young master's Gear . . .Height 18.3 sharls Base Weight 15.2 kahnns Full Weight 19.1 kahnns when fully equipped. It was created by two of the sages of Shevat, Balthasar and Melchior . . .They made it using the data on the Omnigear left by Roni Fatima, an ancestor of the young master, and the data obtained from Xenogears. It is a combination of the latest Gear technology and nanotechnology. But the performance is the same as when it was an Omnigear. Even when it was found hidden in the underground in Nisan, its basic weapon equipment was the whip. That must mean, the young master's ancestors must've used whips and rods too . . .I guess it's in the blood, huh!?

They leave and go down to where Citan's Gear, Fenrir is stationed. The tech there says -

T3: This is Fenrir, Doctor Citan Uzuki's Gear. Height 18.6 sharls Base Weight 17.2 kahnns Full Weight 20.4 kahns when fully equipped. It was created by two of the sages of Shevat, Balthasar and Melchior. They used the data from the Omnigear, Fenrir, brought from Solaris by the Doctor, and Fei's Xenogears. It is a union of Gear and nanotechnology. But the performance is the same as when it was an Omnigear. The default equipment is the sword . . .which seems to be the doctor's weapon of choice.

They leave and go across the way where Rico's Gear is stationed. They speak to the tech there who says -

T4: This is Stier. It is Rico's Gear. Height 19.2 sharls Base Weight 22.2 kahnns Full Weight 26.7 kahnns. Like the other Omnigears, it was at one point an Anima Relic absorbed by Deus and deactivated . . .However, using the data taken form Xenogears as a base, the sages of Shevat, Balthasar and Melchior, reconstructed it. Thanks to that, its capabilities have increased compared to the prior version, It's standard weapon is the same as it was before its reconstruction.

They leave and go down to where Billy's Gear is stationed and speak to the tech there who says -

T5: Renmazuo This is Billy's Gear. Height 18.8 sharls Base Weight 14.9 kahnns Full Weight 19.3 kahnns Like the Omnigears it was at one point an Anima Relic tha was absorbed by Deus and thus deactivated. However, using the data taken from Xenogears as a base, the sages of Shevat, Balthasar and Melchior could reconstruct it. Thanks to that, its capabilities have increased compared to the prior version. The standard weapon is the same as before reconstruction. Billy's father's Buntline Cannon can still be used too.

They go down to where Emeralda's Gear is stationed and they speak to the tech there who says -

T6: Crescens It's Emeralda's Gear. Height 15.4 sharls Base Weight 9.7 kahnns Full Weight 13.3 kahnns This Gear's controls are quite unique. The colony of nanomachines from Emeralda's body physically merges with the Gear for direct control. Theoretically, this Gear shouldn't require repairs but it seems they don't try to repair anything except Emeralda herself. So, we're left with no other choice but to have to maintain the Gear. The surface hovering and flight capabilities are quite impressive.

They choose Emeralda, J'ora and Billy to deal with the first orb and check their equipment, then fly off across the vast expanse of shifting colors, the grinding resonance all around them and head towards one of the orbs circling the main body

Battle begins! Sundel starts off by casting an Ether spell which provides a counterattack against one member, this time J'ora. They immediately start building up their deathblows, hoping to reach an infinity attack and see that the enemy is capable of dodging most of their blows, turning on its side to use its lower section to hit its chosen target. Sundel then heals itself for around 1000 HP and they see that they had better attack it quickly, or they will be fighting a long battle. Now, when it heals, it does so for about 8000 HP, probably in proportion to the damage and they continue to hammer at it. Finally, they see, "Defeated Deus Pillar Sundel" and "sealed Deus' Healing" The enemy explodes in a series of fiery rings and scene cuts to the wide area as the orb flares out, then explodes.

They move on to the next orb and Battle begins! Harlute casts"Space+Time/move 1 at a time" and two of them are frozen, leaving only one to fight. It chooses J'ora and she lands in a heavy deathblow, coming up several times as Harlute is much slower and causing a good deal of damage. The other two are unfrozen and now J'ora repairs while they pummel the enemy and after a few rounds, Harlute casts the time spell again, this time choosing Billy and he builds up his attack levels. He finishes off Harlute with the infinity attack Holy Soul.

Now they switch out Emeralda and Billy for Maria and Rico for the final two battles. The next enemy is completely flat, golden and almost like a serpent in appearance. This enemy uses fuel drain, stealing their fuel in one tidal wave of force that washes over them. Because they are equipped with Tank guards, however, this has no effect and they begin to attack the thing in earnest. Marlute returns their hits by curling up its tail and striking out at Rico, but the damage is slight and they press on. Because it's flat, they are unable to use any of their deathblows, relying on the heaviest of conventional attacks. At last it is over and they move on to the last orb.

This time, they face an elongated Gear type enemy, Metatron, which has extraordinary Ether ability. Before they even have a chance to land in a blow, it hits them with "Earthly Anointment". A series of fiery pillars which flash up from below, leaving their Gears with about a third less of their starting HP. They build up their attack levels and Rico uses an infinity attack to finish it off.

Now, it is the time for the last battle and they exchange places with Fei, Bart and Citan. They check their equipment, unsure of what they will be facing, and head off towards the shimmering sphere of light ahead - Deus.

Scene cuts to where they stand in a wide reddish glowing area, spots of color beneath their feet and Deus ahead. Instead of the amorphous rounded shape which they had seen before, Deus is very slender, a winged angel resting in each hand. Looking closer, it appears that Deus is an elongated version of Elly's Gear mixed in with something else. View pulls in towards Deus as the angels fly off to either side, leaving Deus in the center. They begin fighting the creature ahead, as the angels swoop by, lashing out with energy attacks.

They begin the fight in earnest and land in a few more heavy blows as the angels fly by overhead, blasting them with energy. Deus then draws up its legs,spreading out its arms as it sends a blast of raw power into Fenrir, a series of circles briefly seen as it explodes. Bart lands in a 3rd level attack and the angels swoop by once more, pummeling them with the energy blasts. Then Fei comes up to 3rd level and goes to Infinity, the radiant white wings flaring out behind him. He moves towards Deus and rears back, then view cuts to a close up of Xenogears from behind as he stands before Deus, pulling in radiant bars of energy as he brings his hands to his chest, their surroundings disappearing. Now, galaxies and nebulae swing around them in the infinite vast reaches of space as lines of power stream from Xenogears' chest and he pummels Deus with a series of devastating blows. Then raising his left hand high overhead, he gathers blue light into a ball of radiance and slams it down into Deus, red circles spreading outward from the point of impact.

Finally, white light consumes all with a loud resonating sound and scene cuts to one above Deus, the white light fading slightly, its form rocked by multiple explosions.

View cuts to one from the side, stars beyond as more bright yellow explosions appear along its form, the view moving so that first Bart in Andvari, then Xenogears, then Fenrir become visible as massive tidal forces erupt from it. Then, view cuts to one facing Deus against the torrent of flames and moves down as a high pitched sound is heard rising in intensity, Xenogears appearing in the foreground and white light builds around Deus, hiding it from view. Then beams of light form a pillar of circling blue radiance, and white light consumes all.

Scene fades.

Scene cuts to the wide area of coruscating shades of light where the party is now seen in their Gears, the glowing sphere above, all silent. View pulls back as the light of the sphere darkens and the shifting shades of color fade all around them, leaving them in darkness with only the merest glow of scattered lights around them and the dimly glowing sphere which had contained Deus. Then, Fei speaks from inside Xenogears, which hovers while the other's Gears have gone still. He says -

Fei: What . . .happened?

Rico: My Gear won't budge anymore.

Behind Fei to the left, Citan speaks -

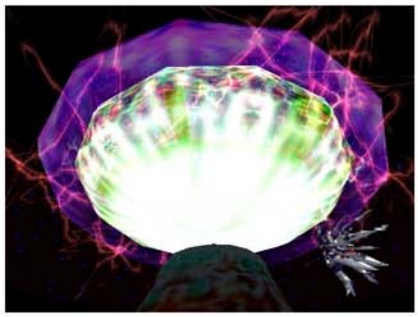
Citan: The Zohar Modifier has ceased functioning. That is probably the reason why our Gears cannot move anymore. There is only a slight energy response coming from the core now.

Fei: What about Elly? What's happening to her inside of that thing? That Deus system's bind on her should have worn off now. So why aren't we getting any kind of response!? You don't think we hurt her in that battle too . . .!?

In the silence, Citan says -

Citan: Fei, calm down! The sensors are picking up a response from a life form within Deus. It is probably Elly. So do not worry . . .I believe she is okay!

Fei: Elly! Can you hear me, Elly!? Deus is no longer active. It's all over now . . .So come out of there. Show me you face! Elly! Elly!



Suddenly, bright spots of white light appear on the surface of the sphere and it begins to turn once more with a low rushing sound. Bart says -

Bart: W, what the . . .? What's happening . . .!?

Lines of force appear around it, the envelope of magenta light surrounding it once more as it slowly begins to brighten, the oscillating hum returning and Fei says -

Fei: Doc!? What's going on ? What's wrong?

Citan: I am now detecting a tremendous amount of energy coming from within Deus. It seems as if something that was sealed up till now has suddenly been freed and is growing enormously . . .

Fei: It couldn't be . . .the 'Wave Existence'!?

Bart: The 'Wave Existence'?

Fei: That's gotta be it. The 'Wave Existence' was just freed from its 'cage of fleshly existence' in Zohar . . .It's probably attempting to return to the higher dimension that it originally came from.

Citan: Which means . . .this is the aftereffect of the dimensional shift!?

Rico: What do you mean . . .'aftereffect'!?

Citan: It is like a shock wave that is induced by the dimensional displacement. But . . .so much energy!? If this much energy is unleashed here now . . .

Fei: . . .If so much energy is unleashed . . . then what will happen, doc!? Tell us!

Citan: . . .Then this planet will be annihilated! These numbers indicate that it has more than enough energy to take out a whole planet!

J'ora: Whatchu mean!?

Bart: You can't be serious!?

From the left, Billy says -

Billy: We all fought so hard . . .only to see this happen . . .!?

Fei: Isn't there . . .isn't there anything we can do? Can't we stop the aftereffect!?

Citan: Unfortunately, there is nothing we can do . . . Almost all machinery, including our Gears, are out of commission due to Zohar having been shut down. This time, there is nothing we can do . . . To put it to you straight (pause) . . .this is the end for us!

Bart: This is freakin' stupid! How the hell could it all end like this!? What were we all fighting for up to now!?

Then, there is a flash of white light, then another with a rising sound and Billy -

Billy: Th, the vibrations are intensifying . . .

The flashes come more often, each time with aloud sound and Rico -

Rico: Hold on a sec . . .! No, these vibrations are different!
It has to be something else causing it . . .

View moves around to the right as the sphere begins to move, and Maria says -

Maria: Look!

Bart: Deus is . . .!

Fei: Deus is rising!?

J'ora: What is it this time!?

As the sphere slowly begins to move away, Citan says -

Citan: Deus is releasing its remaining energy and is beginning to accelerate . . .If it continues to accelerate at this rate, it will soon leave the atmosphere . . .

The flashing sounds grow fainter as it moves away and -

Fei: You don't think!?

Bart: Think what!?

Fei: That it's Elly!? Elly is moving Deus . . .!

The sphere is now much smaller, moving up into the blackness above and Rico says -

Rico: Are you sure!?

Fei: I'm sure of it! Elly is trying to save us by moving Deus away from our planet! She's going to sacrifice herself . . .

Maria: That can't be . . .Oh, Elly . . .

The flashes are no longer heard as Deus continues to move away and Billy says -

Billy: Can't we do anything . . .?
We can't just sit here and watch this happen, can we?

Citan: . . .

There is silence, then Fei says -

Fei: Wait . . .There is still something I can do!
J'ora speaks from behind, asking -

J'ora: What is it, Fei!?

Fei: My Gear still works. Without Zohar, the power source for your Gears, the only Gear that now remains active is mine. Just like Deus, my Gear and I made contact with Zohar. We are the only ones who can move now. I am going to go save Elly!

Citan: That is absurd! Even if you were able to catch up to Deus, you will not have enough energy to make it back!

Still looking out towards the rising sphere, Fei says -

Fei: Even so, I still must go. Elly's taking the whole burden upon herself! If anything happens to her . . .I want to be there with her . . .

Then, just behind Fei, Bart says -

Bart: Hey! Just wait a minute! You know I'm not gonna stand by and let you commit double suicide . . .if that's what you're planning!

Fei: Bart . . .

Bart: . . .You better come back alive, you hear!? Promise me!!
Promise me that you will come back . . .Then I'll let you go!!

Fei: . . .Thanks, Bart. I promise.
I promise you that I will return . . .with Elly!

Bart: You better.

Fei: Yeah, of course!

Bart: Alright! Then get goin'!

Citan: But . . .!

Bart: Let's let him go, Citan. At this point, Fei's the only one that'll be able to bring Elly back. There's nothing we can say or do about it.

Citan: . . .You are right. Fei, keep your promise . . .

Billy: No matter what . . .

Maria: Fei and Elly . . .

Emeralda: Both of you . . .

Rico: Come back home . . .

And -

J'ora: We'll be waiting for you chu!

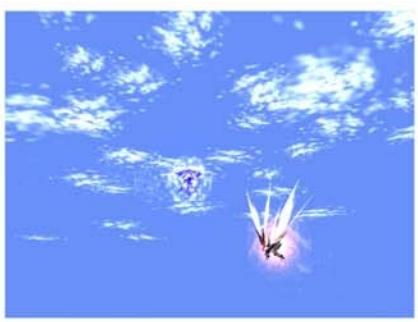
Fei: I appreciate this . . .(pauses) Bart . . .and the rest of you . . . Well I had better get going now . . .But don't worry! I will be back soon!

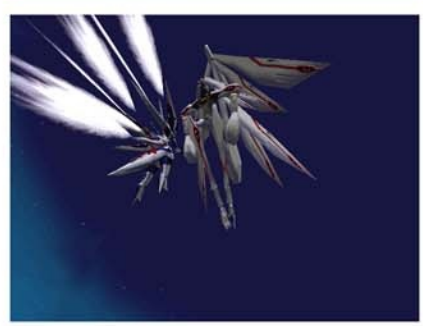
View then switches to one facing Xenogears against the deep blue lights scattered all around, almost like stars and Fei says -

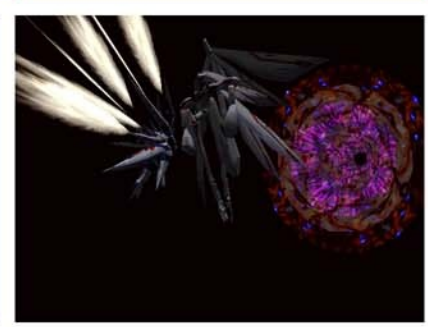
Fei: I guess this will be the last journey you and I make together . . . I'm counting on you . . .partner!

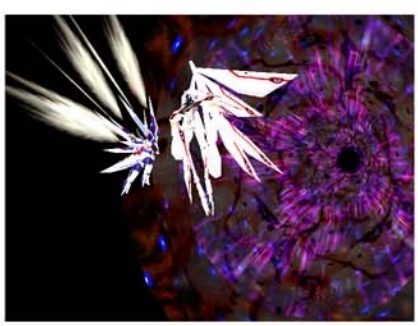
View moves around Xenogears as he begins to glow and the white wings flare out behind him. Then, he blasts off towards the darkness high above, white light consuming all.

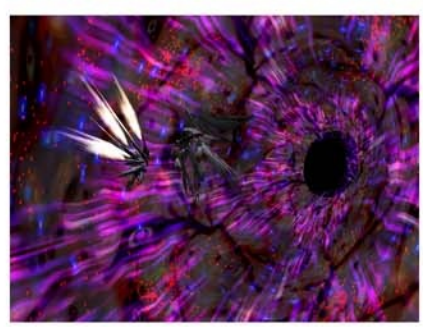
Scene cuts to the blue sky, scattered clouds above as Xenogears appears from the right, heading towards the elongated form of Deus up ahead, its body surrounded by a sphere of tiny white lights. View moves around to one behind Xenogears as he heads towards Deus, engines roaring and gradually, he draws nearer, his white radiant wings outspread. View moves closer as he approaches the form of Dues and -











View pulls into them, white sparkles streaming by as the sound of their engines fades and the blue of the sky becomes sheer white, then turns to deepest night beyond, the atmosphere falling away behind them. All is silent and the white wings stream out behind him as stars appear all around them.

Then, with an unusual folding sound, a purplish magenta circle appear to the left up ahead. They pass into the shifting corridor of color, a low grinding hum sounding all around them as they approach the black circle at the other end. Then white light appears and it fills the view, consuming all.

Scene cuts to where Fei stands on the shifting pool of blue light, shades of blue all around him. A glowing sphere hovers above the reflective pool ahead, containing Elly who is curled in upon herself, also naked. Fei -

"Where am I . . .!?

View moves to the right, behind Fei and faces Elly's form across the rippling pool of blue. He nods once and -

"That's Elly! This must mean that I am inside of Deus!?

A voice answers, a view moves to the right as Fei turns -

"Not exactly.

View moves to a half seen face hovering above the pool, its features indistinct and view halts with the globe containing Elly off to the left.

"Your actual body is but a physical object . . .It has merely been absorbed into Deus' outer - shell. Only your consciousness is here.
Of course, the girl you perceive in front of you is also not a true being.
Your consciousness is merely creating her image.

"!?

The 'Wave Existence' . . .? No . . .that's not you . . .!! Who are you . . .?

The features of the waving blue image are blurry, but something about the eyes, the set of the jaw . . .After a long pause, Fei -

It can't be . . .!? Is that you Krelian!? That's right, isn't it . . .!?
Krelian! It was you who did this to Elly!

"The 'Path of Sephirot' has been connected. No one can stop god from returning to his world now.
So what have you come here for, Lacan?

"I came here to take the person I love back with me! So set Elly free!
The Deus system has been destroyed. It's all over now!
So instead I ask you . . . What are you hoping to achieve now!?

"The time when all things started . . . The place where all things were one . . .
I am going to return there!

"What place?

"Before the beginning of the universe, in the undulating waves of the higher dimension, all things were one.
"It was the waves spilling out from there that created this four - dimensional universe of ours.'Humankind' and the 'Souls of Humankind' that were born from there, are merely leftovers of those spilled waves.
So . . .

"You're going back there?
Is that what you desired?

"Lacan . .
Why such reluctance to become one with the god? What attachment could you possibly have to this wretched old world? What meaning can be found in living out such a short existence . . .hurting others, hurting yourself, grinding one another down . . .only to inevitably die and return to dust?
Why, everything we could ever desire is here . . . No need to be troubled by the need for love . . .
For this place is filled with the love of god.

"I have not lost hope in humans as much as you have, Krelian . . .
Someday humankind will come to understand one another!
I sincerely believe that!

"How can you be so sure? Humans will never come to understand each other.
You said that she is the person you love. But can you say that you even truly understand each other?
All humans do is place themselves at a comfortable distance from each other and call that 'mutual understanding', 'spiritual unity', or 'true love' . . .
but it is all lies!
Man cannot associate with others without first deceiving themselves.
That is the way that they were created.

"But one being's ego can't determine everyone's fate!
People have the right to choose their own destiny!
That is why humans have free will!

"And what if that 'will' itself was predetermined? What then?

"Oh, what folly!?! Humans are just primitive life forms that have no such things as free will . . . Mankind has merely been allowed to live in an imperfect state . . .
"as is", "as will be" . . . It is for this very reason . . . because humans have this wretched 'will' or whatnot . . .that humans must experience sadness and loss.
For someone to gain something means another must lose it . . . It is impossible to make humankind share limited "things" and "affections" . . .
So I came to the conclusion that everything must be reverted back to where it all began.
To go back to when all was one . . . waves, and nothing else . . .It is not my -Human's- ego . . .It is the will of the 'Waves' . . .the will of -god- . . .

"Well that's alright, too . . . We don't have to be perfect. Actually, being imperfect makes mankind live by helping each other . . . That's what being human is . . .

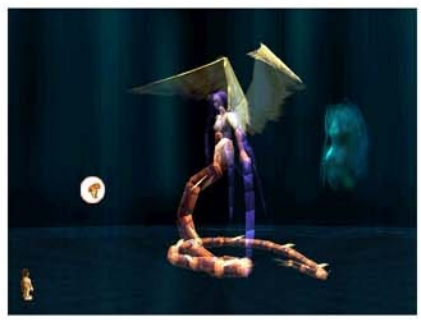
"That's mutual understanding! That's 'unity' and 'love' . . . I'm glad . . .no, I'm proud . . . to be human!

"Elly placed the future, -tomorrow-, in our hands, based on our choice . . . And she is working to keep Deus far from our planet. She is also trying to heal your heart . . . you, who wants to journey, all alone, to be with god . . . Can't you understand Elly's feelings!? Do you have to become one with god before you are able to comprehend all of this?

I understand . . . I know her feelings . . . as if they were my own . . . Yes . . .she and I are one! We don't need god's help!!

"Well then, prove it to me . . . Show me this power of humans! Show me this -love-, that you say can make you independent of god . . .

The ripples spread outward from the center more rapidly and view moves up to Krelian's features as a rushing sound is heard and the ripples spread outward more quickly. View halts facing Fei from behind as the shifting pool rises up, a figure emerging from its depths. It breaks through, spraying water in all directions, Elly seen off to the left, Krelian to the right behind it as it stands before Fei.



Then Fei rises into the air as a white light fills the view, Xenogears appearing around his form with the sound of shearing metal, Elly between them.

Battle begins! He faces Urobolus and it moves forward, wrapping its tail around him and sending out crackling lines of energy, causing some damage. Fei turns on boosters and builds up to infinity level attack, facing the creature which dodges one of his blows, then moves forward on its reddish sinuous tail to slash repeatedly into Xenogears. He reaches an infinity level attack quickly, the radiant wings of light extending form his back and he uses the most powerful, once more causing space to whirl about them as he slams into her with forceful blows, culminating in a single ball of energy held in his left hand and he flings it into her form. At last, she begins to droop and white light fills the view, consuming all.

Scene cuts back to the vast shifting blue realm, facing Elly suspended in the glowing globe, white light filing the view and Fei says -

Fei: Elly . . .

She comes down to hover just above him and he look up at her, the view moving to face them from the side and after a moment, she says -

Elly: Fei . . .It was Krelian . . .Krelian released me . . .

Fei: Krelian . . .?

Elly: Yes. I came to understand after becoming one with Krelian . . .His heart was so full of sadness. That is why he desired for he and I to become one with god . . . Because that would be the return to the beginning of everything . . .(pause) He told me . . . "You should be with him . . ." That is what he said . . .You see . . . He already knew!

Elly: Yes, he already knew . . .how I felt, how you felt . . .But there was nothing we or he could do . . .He had no choice but to go forward . . .even if it meant he lost all feelings, lost everything that was human! For all humankind's sake . . .There was no going back . . . Even looking back held too many memories . . .And he would have . . .(pause) just wanted to go back . . .(pause) Even though he couldn't . . .So please forgive him . . .Krelian loved people more than anyone else . . .

Fei shakes his head as the pool beneath them moves slowly, shifting and he says -

Fei: I . . . I, somehow . . .knew it all along . . . I just knew he was really that kind of person . . .

Elly: . . .I am so sorry . . .Please forgive me! I was wrong . . .I thought sacrificing myself in order to save others was the right thing to do . . . But my actions only brought sadness to all the people who I left behind. And that sadness gave birth to even more sadness. As long as 'I' still live within you, my life is not just mine alone.

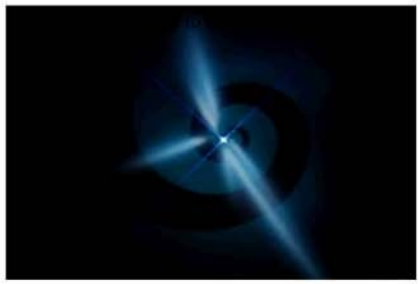
Fei: Elly . . .That isn't wrong. To sacrifice yourself for others is a noble thing . . . Even if it were to benefit yourself, it's no problem. There will always be a person healed . . .One or the other . . .Love gains its original shine only when there's an interrelationship between the giver and the receiver. It is incomplete when one or the other is missing . . .The two are one. It was you, Elly, who taught me that. I believe that is what it means to be human . . .I can now understand the true importance of it. I don't know if it's the right answer or not . . .But we have a lot of time to think about it . . .What Krelian himself was looking for all along . . .We will find the answer to it all . . .ourselves . . .

Elly: Thank you . . .Fei!

His face upturned, he says -

Fei: Elly . . .

White light fills the view and scene fades.

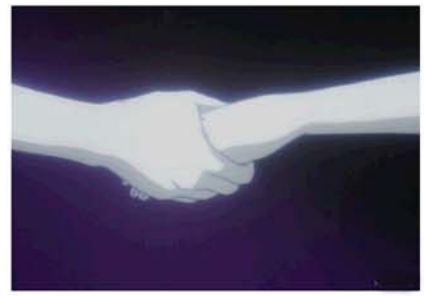


Fei: That light . . .

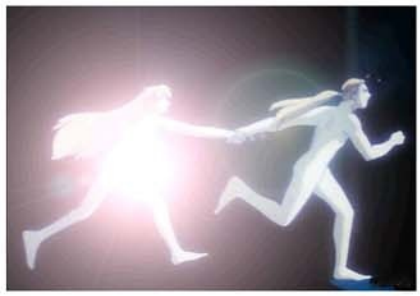
Elly: It's the point of contact with our world.
But the dimensional shift has already begun.

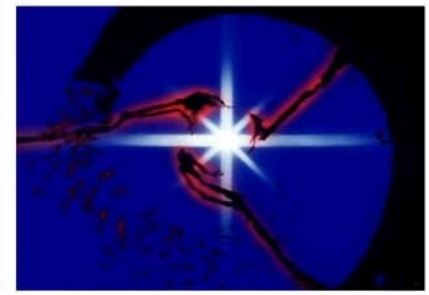
Fei: Can you run?

Elly: Will we make it in time?



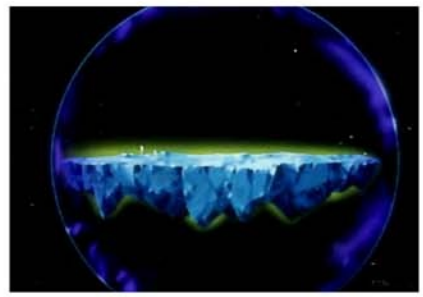
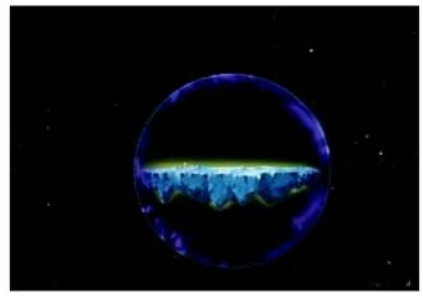
Elly: If we're together, I can.





Elly: Ahh!

Fei: Elly!!

Fei: Krelian . . .You . . .!

Krelian: There's no time. This place is about to be destroyed.

Krelian: Now, there is no more god . . .
This is no longer their planet."

Krelian: This is your home planet,
that you are now standing on."

Fei: Krelian . . ."You aren't going . . .

Krelian: No . . .

They leave the Gear Hangar and go back up to the bridge and launch the Yggdrasil in order to see for themselves the changes that have been wrought in the world. They are hovering over the large continent in the Aquvy seas and fly around its edge. They see the lighthouse down below them and keep it in mind for later, continuing on around the landmass. They notice that in the center, a huge crater has appeared, stretching almost all of the way across in the brown earth in the northern section. From the looks of it, it appears to be the place where Merkava first rose to the surface. They continue on east across the sea to the new landmass to the north of the small island far to the south. This long stretch is where Taura's house is located and, up at the northern tip, are the gray metal rings of the Mass- driver down below. They land the Yggdrasil and get out in order to investigate in their Gears, but find nothing of importance. As they range around the perimeter, they are attacked by new enemies, Sufals and Wind Seraphs. The Seraphs cast a deadly spell called Halo which blasts them with white hot energy. They fight a few of these, then return to the Yggdrasil and fly over the rest of the landmass, seeing Taura's house tucked in the woods down below.

They land and dismount from their Gears in order to make it through the forest on foot. They approach Taura's house, its rounded walls and cheerfully lit windows touched by emerald radiance from the overhanging canopy of trees above. They enter and see that the front room is empty. They look around, going past the long table in the center with its stone pot above the glowing coals and a couple of bottles nearby. Behind it, over by the far wall, a lamp suspended from the ceiling above shedding soft light and they see a bed tucked into the corner. They go past a shelf lined with books to the door leading into the next room and enter. Here, they see the old one over by the shelves at the back and they make their way past the two Nanoreactors with teir bubbling contents and speak to him. He turns around and says -

Taura: Thanks for visiting. You're looking mighty healthy. I want to help you more . . . but this body can't survive unless it breathes the air here . . .Looks like I'm just about ready to meet my maker, huh . . .Ho, hah, hah!

There is a moment of silence, then one of them says softly, "Oh, Taura . . ."

Taura: Don't worry, I'll stop my moaning. Besides, I have a nice present for you.

He then gives them two excellent pieces of armor and they thank him, then leave. They return through the forest to their Gears and then back to the Yggdrasil and fly down to the south past the tip of the land mass and across the narrow channel to the island where they see a deep canyon gorge in the earth. They land and go to investigate, finding that this is the location of the first Anima Relic and have a look around. After a while, they return to the Yggdrasil and head north to the Ignas continent to see what they might find. They pass over the desert and land near Aveh. They get out in their Gears and find that the town is empty. They fight some of the enemies in the desert and see that these too have changed, consisting of Sufals and the semi-trans parent form of the Seraph angels. They see that the Nano Dissassemblers are quite effective and they spend some time working in the desert before they head across to where Bart's hideout had been. It too is empty and they make their way to where Dazil is seen peeking over the horizon, its gray rooftops reflecting the blazing sun but they find that it is empty and return to the Yggdrasil.

They fly south across the mountains and Blackmoon forest to where the remnants of Lahan village lie in the valley below and disembark. They climb up the mountain side to Citan's house where it rests at the top and see that the only inhabitants are the chickens which squawk at them indignantly, pecking at the ground. They leave and go back down the mountainside to the Yggdrasil and head north to Nisan, knowing what they'll probably find. This town is empty as well and they continue on northeast to Kislev, where they had heard rumors that some survivors might be located. They land outside the town and enter the shadowed streets, making their way past the empty D and A Blocks to the center where a large gulf is located, the place where the Yggdrasil IV had been. They go past this to the northern edge of town where they can see the arena and find that there is life here, of a sorts. The women in their uniforms stand behind the counters in the darkened entrance way leading to the arena itself. Near the door, on the right is a Kislev soldier who says -

Former Imperial City Guard: What inhumed our world that day was . . .an angel . . .a, a so - called messenger of god? My sister, my mother, my father . . .they are all dead! I, I am a soldier of the military empire of Kislev! And yet, (pause) . . .and yet, . . .and yet, I could do nothing!!! Damn it! . . .Damn everything!

In the small area off to the side of the Gear paddock entrance, they see several people, including Big Joe, gathered there. They speak to Big Joe who waves his arms and says -

Big Joe: Destruction was poured out onto our entire world . . .Death poured down on all the living . . .It was fate, unavoidable fate! Allow me to show my appreciation for all you have done fellas. I brought this here from the Wildcat bar in what was the Imperial capital Nortune. I also fixed it up a little. It should be a lot more friendlier now. But you'll never know unless you try, so give it a listen, huh! It was hard to get rid of the elegant old grain look it had when placed in the 'Wildcat', but . . .well, anyway, don't you think the new faux marble design is kinda groovy?

He flings his arms out, adopting a pose and they take a look at the jukebox next to him, listening to the old tunes for a while, then they go to a blond Amazoness nearby. She says -

A1: The continent of Ignas and its countries . . .the Empire of Kislev and the Kingdom of Aveh . . .these all no longer exist. Our world lost such names on that day . . .The survivors have gathered in the snow field far to the south . . .It's 'the last stand of the living'!

Thr blue haired Amazoness next to her says -

A2: I abandoned this place once, but it's the city in which I was born! I can't turn my back on it that easily! That's why I came back . . .Back to what was once the Imperial Capital. Even if destruction was to come on this world, I'd go on protecting it!

Over by the wall nearby, they see a familiar lady, wearing a brown dress - it's Diana. She says -

Diana: From that day on, peace has disintegrated. (pause) But, we're alive . . .That's a truth that can't be changed. It's not that everything has ended. Our planet has just returned to its original state . . .And we're still alive. All has not been lost . . .Looking at your eyes, I know you too haven't lost your hope . . .(pause) Hehe . . . I remember the day you came to the Imperial Capital.

They turn to a blond Battler nearby and he says -
B1: Oh, so you too heard the rumors and came to try out Battling, here, at this place once known as Kislev? The world has been shattered by angels of death but we still live on like this. This isn't the end for us! I'm a 'Battler', a warrior! I'll fight , fight, fight on to the end, unto death do me part!
They leave the small area and go across to the ladies behind the counter. They choose to enter into a match and pick the first mode. They find they are able to choose to fight an ally and have a wide range of selections, their old Gears, Bladegash, Weltall-2, Xenogears, the Omnigears (denoted 'El -' including one that is familiar, elly's Omnigear, entitled El-Regrs. They choose to fight a few battles and then move on to where they can fight for parts, for they will need to earn some of the more esoteric prizes in order to have an easier time in actual battles. They fight for a while, building up their skills, then decide to leave and continue on with their explorations of the world.
They leave Kislev and go back to the Yggdrasil, heading west across the ocean and up to the northern ice continent. They out across the white snow plain to the west where they find a large hole in the snow. They realize that this must be where Zohar was located. They return to the Yggdrasil and head south, past the continent where Deus rises out of the earth, the gray winged form visible from far off. Knowing they have many things to do to get prepared, they go down to speak to Margie and switch out Bart for Emeralda, for this last battle will need a powerful Ether user. They go back up to the bridge to launch the Yggdrasil and see Bart there, standing up at the helm behind Sig and he says -

Bart: We went through a lot together . . .But this one's going to be really tough. . . .But, we won't die! We'll come back alive! I'll be asking you to join me again when this is all over!

They speak to Sig and launch the Yggdrasil, taking it to the place where the lighthouse is located. If this is what they think it is . . .They land the Yggdrasil nearby and approach the structure in their Gears, finding that the wide metal door is now standing open and they go into the space beyond. They stop for a moment outside the structure and Citan says -

Citan: The base of this light house was built several thousand years ago. Islanders added a light to make it into a light-house.
But no one knows what it really is.

Scene cuts to one facing them as they ride a lift downward in a large stone pylon, yellow lights spaced at intervals along its length. Scene cuts to a large waterfall and view pans to the right past numerous gray square buildings to where the three stand in their Gears. They are in a vast underground cavern, the square buildings all around them and a network of streets running among them. The occasional colored sign is visible on the roof of some of the buildings and Fei pauses at the entrance to the lift and says -

Fei: . . .The city we saw from Emeralda's ruins . . . . . .(pause)
We've come a long way from there . . .

They stand on a wide swath of black tarmac with a series of white lines running down the middle. They see that it forks to the right and left up ahead, a large building with many blank square windows across from them. They begin moving along the street in the semi-darkness and there is nothing but silence all around them. They choose the right hand path and go down the street past more of the buildings. They fight griffons along the way as well as black dragons and the time spent in the battle arena as well as Emeralda's Ether ability pays off. They travel to where the street curves to the left and see a large waterfall up ahead beyond the buildings. They go to the left and see the streets branch to the right and left again and choose the right, taking it to a dead end. They return and choose the left hand path, seeing a lighted doorway down below near their feet and Fei says -

Fei: . . .It looks like we can get out of our Gears and go in here on foot.

They dismount from their Gears and enter, finding themselves in a dusty chamber filled with shelves lined up in rows and boxes containing ancient remains of books along the center of the floor. Near the entrance is a counter with a machine set on its surface and they go around to the other side where they run across an old note which reads,
"A discussion on the excavated Slave Generators and their special effects. Strange engines discovered in structures buried underground in ancient times, the "Sub-" or "Slave Generators" (hereafter abbreviated as S.G.'s) have, after diverse study, become widely known to have their output divided into 3 levels. However, it has been ascertained that a higher mode exists that far surpasses these output levels. For convenience's sake we shall call this 'Hypermode'. Hypermode is invoked at a certain probability when an S.G.'s attack level reaches three. The explanation below covers the various conditions and probabilities for invocation, that we have been able to ascertain at present, assuming that a S.G. has been installed into a humanoid fighting machine (or "Gear").
In all case, a basic constant exists, which we observe to be approximately the value of 5. The probability is computed by multiplying this constant by one tenth of the percentage that the HP have been reduced.

For example, if a Gear's HP has been reduced by 50% of its total, then the chance of invocation would be 5 X 50/10 = 25 (%) So this is the case, when the Attack Level reaches 3, there is a 25% chance that Hypermode will set into motion. Also apart from this, there are modification values, which are added to the basic value accordingly with the release of each attack from levels 1 to 3.

In other words, the chances of Hypermode being invoked increase the more a Gear attacks and the more a Gear is attacked. The S.G.'s Hypermode induced by the aforementioned probability can emit immeasurable amounts of energy, so from that aspect may appear ideal for use as the master - engine of a fighting machine. However, in reality they have not yet progressed to the level of use as a power for actual warfare due to reasons such as their unpredictability and the fact that no Gear-frame exists that is rigid enough to possibly endure these energy emissions."

They return outside to their Gears and continue down the street to another lit doorway and enter, finding themselves in a room and over by the far corner - Big Joe! They go over to him and he says -

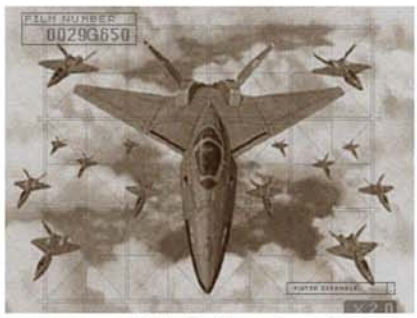
Big Joe: How do ya like my shop? Pretty good, huh?
It's Joe's shop, so of course it's all Joe brand.

He offers them a selection of items and Gear parts and, curious, they look at what he's selling. They are astounded at the quality of the Gear parts and items which will enhance their success in battles to come. But they are expensive, so they are only able to buy a few and begin considering the best way to make more money in the future. He says -

Big Joe: How do ya like it? Come again sometime!!

They decide to look at his Gear parts and are even more amazed when they see that these are the most powerful they've run across so far, the upgrades on engines and armor phenomenal. But, they see that they will need more money for these as well and set about forming a plan for doing just that. For the moment, they decide to continue on through the city . Once outside, they make their way around another corner where they see another ligthed doorway and dismount, finding themselves in a wide gray chamber with wires and floodlights hanging from the ceiling above, ancient dust lying everywhere. In the center of the room is a square dais with two chairs behind a desk and a sign above which reads "ND News" To the right of this are a series of cameras scattered around and they see a metal staircase behind the chairs. They go up and find themselves in a dusty narrow landing and go through the door ahead to another metal chamber where several darkened consoles with chairs ranged before them are seen lined up throughout the room. They approach one of them to their right and tap in a few keys experimentally.

They hear a click and scene cuts to an ancient black and white image of what appears to be a flying vessel of some kind, headed straight for the view and others like it down below seen against the clouds.



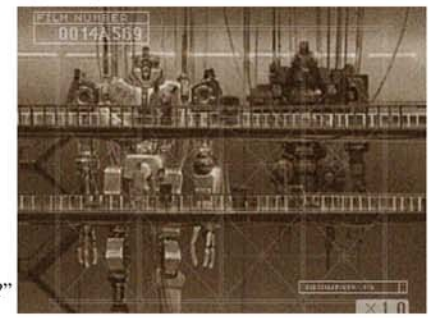
"What's this movie . . . ?

"A record of the Zeboim culture that died out 4000 years ago."

"Stop it! Who is this woman . . .?

"Miang, as she appeared in the Zeboim era.
But I don't know who her host body was.
She resided at the side of the Prime Minister,
manipulating the world behind the scenes."

"To resurrect Deus?"



"In the beginning, yes. But later it was different.
Many people then, couldn't have children.
They were defective humans . . .
So . . .she did it over again."

"Right before man was about to be killed out by war, a new being was born to foster the next generation. Remember the missiles in the Mass - driver facility? That was the most important thing to the Zeboim people. Because of that, we now are descendants of the few strong people who survived."

The image fades to one of a crowd pf people, theiir mouths opened as though they are shouting, then switches to darkness and scene returns to where Fei, Billy and Emeralda stand before the console and Fei says -

Fei: A slipping economy . . .Rising crime . . .Urban blight . . .A nation of fanatics looking for their own living space . . . . . .believing in religious sect leaders and gathering around totalitarian leaders. These people were cut off from the next generation thanks to genetic damage . . . . .and would have died out, if left to their own devices. So, Elly and I took the hopes of the people and created Emeralda. . .

They return outside once more and remount their Gears, going to the left along the street until they reach a wide open space, a fenced off area to their left and the wide concrete bearing white stripes of paint in rows. They go past the fence to the building beyond, but the doors are all locked and they go out and across the wide open space which is surrounded by more of the square structures until Fei notices something on the far side.

Fei: . . .It looks like we can get out of our Gears and go in here on foot.

They see a small concrete extrusion rising out of the black surface and they dismount from their Gears, going down the ramp inside to an area below. The find themselves in a wide concrete corridor, the floor covered by metal rails as it curves around to the left. They follow it for a while in the shadowed passageway until it leads to a large chamber with a ledge rising up off to their left and a metal vehicle of some kind blocking their way forward on the tracks. They step out onto the ledge and go to the stairs rising up to their right. They ascend into darkness and find themselves in a large room where they emerge out onto a wide balcony overlooking a wide shadowed plaza below, large blank windows visible beyond They make their way along it past ancient banners hung from rods near the ceiling along the wall to their left, curving around to their right where the balcony overlooks the area down below, a raised section visible on the ground at the center. Fei walks over to the left, facing out over the plaza below and Emeralda follows a moment later. She stands and looks out across the darkened chamber with him as he says -

Fei: . . .Where are we (pause) . . .

Two ghostly figures appear on the balcony before them.

Scene fades and cuts to the plaza, but this time it is full of light and life, the sound of many voices ringing off the marble and a large green tree festooned with lights in the center of the dais, blue light at its base and floodlights picking out sparkles within its branches. People mill about below and the windows beyond glow a soft yellow. View pulls back as a blue sparkling light becomes visible at the top of the tree, then view moves down to where the man and Elly stand on the balcony, this time fully real as they look down at the tree below. Kim speaks -

Kim: Congratulations Elly. Another year has come and past.
She turns to him and says -

Elly: Yes, Happy New Year, Kim! I don't know what it is, but just now . . . you sounded like an old person speaking.

Kim: No, well, (pause) this time last year I never thought the war would come this far.

Elly: . . .Yes. (pause) But we managed to get by without getting involved.

Kim: But, it's not over yet. Why, at this very moment people are still dying.

Elly: . . .Let's stop talking about this . . .
Let's not dwell on the past year . . .
Not at the start of a new year!

Kim: Yes, well . . .today, at least, I want to spend a day without worrying.

View swings around the edge of the balcony to the glittering tree across from them, then scene fades.

Scene cuts to a chamber made entirely of glass. Kim becomes visible between two potted plants in the foreground, seated at a table across from Elly. He exclaims -

Kim: Stupid idiots! A bunch of fools!

Elly sits across from him with her head bowed and says -

Elly: Kim . . .you're too loud.

Kim: I don't care if they hear me. All the people here are also fools!

Elly: Kim!!

Kim: Think about it. What's the purpose of fighting each other on such a tiny planet as this? Fighting out of fear of being hunted into a corner . . .Rushing in to fight as if there were only so many 'reserved seats' to the right of life . . .

Kim: Starting a war is stupid. Inciting it is also stupid. Killing people as an act of terrorism or as a protest against wars that kill people is just as stupid. You're all fools!

Elly: . . .Kim, I felt sorry for that child. But I don't think people in Ravine destroyed the generator with that intention. They didn't have any other ways to express themselves. The government is the one to blame.

Kim: Is that a good enough reason for that child, or those dead people? It wasn't much of an operation. It was difficult but there was enough chance to win . . .We'd have won if we had better equipment . . . That child would have been saved if there was electricity . . .

There is silence, then he says -

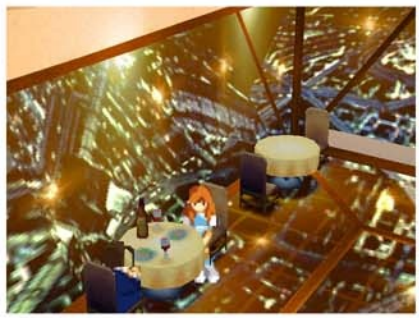
Kim: It's not just that child. Five people died in my hospital. The ICU didn't function . . .

Kim: Stupid. Just fools. Humans, creatures are meant to live. Why do they want to die out? Why do they strangle themselves? Humans are defective creatures. A bunch of fools!

Kim: That's why genetic damage is up lately. The birth rate is also going down. Only 30 years to live . . .Nature, this planet, won't allow humans to live any longer than that.

Elly: . . .

Elly: Am I . . .a fool, too?



Kim: Huh . . .?

Elly: I had a physical at the hospital today . . .They said I can't have children because of hereditary genetic damage.

There is silence and she looks up -

Elly: . . .I can't create life. I am a creature waiting to become extinct. . . . Am I also a fool?

Kim: . . .

Scene fades and cuts to the interior of a gray square chamber with a wall near the bed made of glass and an aquarium filled with fish behind it. The fish swim in slow lazy movements among the verdant plants and Elly lies with a white blanket wrapped around her naked form. Kim, clad only in his dark blue pants, thinks -

Kim: . . .

Then he stands and makes his way over to the left and view switches to one behind him as he looks out over the cityscape beyond from the wide window, an easel seen off to the right. While looking out to where the city spreads out towards the horizon, he says -

Kim: . . .It's no good . . . . . It's not gonna work . . .

Kim: Somehow we must break the spell or the humans on this planet will die out. No, I don't care about humans . . .Life itself will be ruined if we don't do something . . .

There is silence, and he says -

Kim: Some . . . pure life . . .not cursed . . .

Kim: A pure life . . .

Scene fades and cuts to where he and Elly stand in the round chamber, the small girl in the green cylinder before them. Kim says -

Kim: This, this is the new spirit vessel that will break the curse.

Kim: It hasn't awakened yet. The form was created by nanomachines, but neural simulation hasn't been done by the Assembler Tower yet. It's physically stable, but still doesn't function as a living creature yet.

Elly: A nanomachine colony . . .

Kim: No matter how many times we rewrite the hereditary codes . . .
. . .the impressions imbedded in our bodies cannot be stopped. It was necessary to pursue this further. We had to recreate the molecular . . .no . . . . . .actually the atomic level, by referring to the structural patterns of you and I. This child . . .holds our futures and possibilities . . .

There is silence, then Elly says -
Elly: Can this child be the angel who can give us more time?

View pulls back above them as they stand around the cylinder. Scene fades and cuts to one facing the ancient gray masonry of the balcony and pulls back to where Fei and Emeralda stand looking out over the darkened area below as she says -

Emeralda: . . .I, remember . . .long ago . . . you . . .Kim, . . . died . . . right before town died . . .It was because soldiers of town . . . tried use me . . .

Fei: . . .That's right . . .The memory in my soul . . .
It was left in me for your sake . . .

Emeralda: While I being held . . .Krelian told that I . . . '. . .the ultimate 'work of art' that technology gave birth to . . .' Yes, I knew I was thing. Look, my body . . . Different from Maria, Margie . . .and Elly. . . .Human imitation . . . . . .but different. Kim and Elly said . . .I was angel . . .

Fei: . . .Yes, you are the child I, or Kim, wished for. Kim has been a part of me, in my blood- passing his memory down the generations- for the past 4000 years. Existing for the day that the child, who Kim was never able to embrace for so long, would be born.

There is silence, then Emeralda turns to Fei and says -

Emeralda: Fei! Thanks for being substitute Kim till now! But, it's okay . . .I be strong and make Kim and Elly proud that I their child!

Then,

Emeralda: . . .W, wha . . .? Fei . . .body . . .so . . .h . . hot . . .
She steps towards him and says -
Emeralda: Fei . . .(pause) hold me . . .tight . . . Don't let go.

A blue radiance ignites around Emeralda and there is a flash of aqua light, filling the chamber. When it fades, Emeralda is revealed standing near Fei - greatly changed! She steps back and now her eyes meet his from a higher vantage point, her body tall and graceful, a young woman's, and her emerald hair falling in waves to her shoulders. The scarf which had hidden her face has fallen away, revealing startlingly beautiful features that are an echo of both Fei and Elly. She says -

Emeralda: Fei . . .body . . .

She turns around a few times, looking down at herself, then back at him and she says -

Emeralda: . . .I became adult . . .adult . . .
I . . .I not get in your way anymore!!

She and Citan join Fei and they make their way out of the chamber, back along the balcony to the right towards the stairs leading below. The head back along the tracks to where some piled rubble provides a way out and climb up, returning to their Gears. Now that Emeralda has changed, they notice that the performance of her Gear has as well and they decide to begin pursuing their program to earn the money to upgrade their Gears to their fullest potential. Also, some of the items which provide boosts in Ether ability, while expensive, will increase their chance of success in the upcoming battle with Deus.

They work hard at building up their strength, traveling back and forth among various landmasses, battling various enemies until they finally reach their goal. Now, they feel they are ready to face the ultimate test - Deus.

They go down to Margie's room and switch out Emeralda for Bart, then the three make their way up to the bridge and launch the Yggdrasil, taking it to the large gray structure that rises out of the earth below them, its wings outspread as though about to take flight.

Scene fades.

Deus

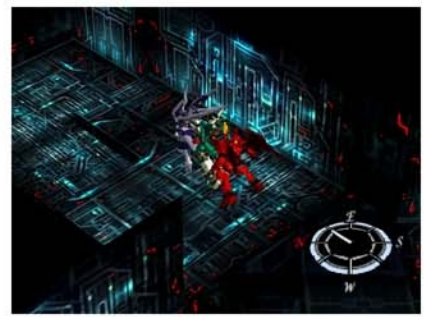
Scene cuts to where Fei, Citan and Bart stand on a silvery corrugated metal surface where a blue circle is seen in the pattern. They make their way past it to a large square hatch and it moves back with a low sonorous grinding noise into the surrounding framework, revealing a dark entrance below.

They jump down and scene cuts to where they land in a square shaft of light from above, a wide black metal corridor stretching before and behind them, blue lines of light providing shadowed illumination. Fei says -

Fei: The mapping of the inside of Deus is now complete.
Okay! Let's go everyone!

They make their way south and use the map as they begin fighting some of the enemies, making their way through the twisting network of black metal corridors, as they explore, they frequently find themselves blocked by a raised section which is too large for them to jump to, so they have to backtrack, all the while fighting Edins, Seraph angels ands other Gear type enemies. The angels cast devastating spells such as Halo and as soon as they win special armor that defends against it, they equip it.

They travel the network of hallways, jumping from ledge to ledge, squares of metal seeming to rise out of the floor for no apparent reason and occasionally, the pathways themselves cant at an odd angle.

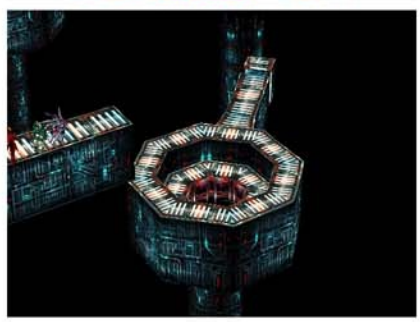


The Seraphs are extremely tough enemies, their semi-transparent white forms dodging their heaviest blows and wreaking devastation with their Halo attacks. The maze of corridors plays games with their sense of direction and, making them go down one of the corridors, thinking they've been here before, when they are suddenly faced by a sharp drop and have to turn back. Finally, with the aid of the map and after countless battles they reach an end to the corridors where a door is outlined in red beyond.

They step through and find themselves on a pathway extending out to the center of a round chamber which descends below to darkness, the sound of wind from somewhere far off sounding hollowly from the depths. Taking a chance, they leap out into the abyss and find they are pulled through a wide tunnel which twists and turns, orange bars of light across it so that they have a split second in which they can move out of the way as they travel through the wide tunnel.

It deposits them on a black structure rising above a network of glowing white pathways, utter darkness surrounding them. They see that the structure they are standing on is at the center of an octagon framed by the pathway surrounding it and the gap between is filled by a multicolored hologram, through which they can see a lower level. Other such islands of brightness are picked out against the black beyond, stretching off into the distance. They make their way off the structure they are standing on to the pathway below and see that they have a choice of using the lift in the structure to take them down to the lower level, or continuing on.

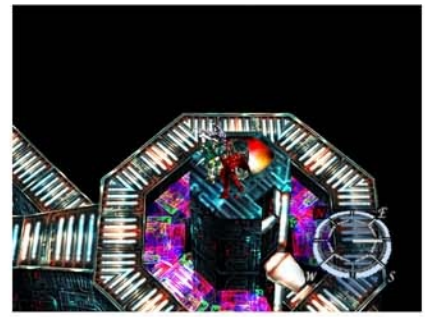
They choose to remain on this level for now and see what they find. They use the map to see that they are in the approximate center of the huge area in which the islands and their connecting pathways are located. Some of the pathways end in red marks near the edge of the map and they decide to travel out along the extension to the northeast where it overlooks an octagon marked on the map with a red center. As they travel along the pathway suspended over the other octagon islands in the darkness below, Citan pauses and looks over to the right where the central octagon is visible and says -

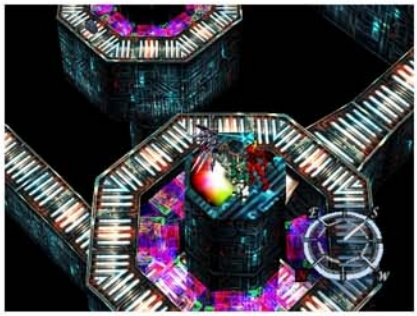


Citan: Fei, over there . . .

View moves off to the right, pulling back so that its red lined opening leading to darkness is seen in the center.

Bart: It looks like we can go down through there.





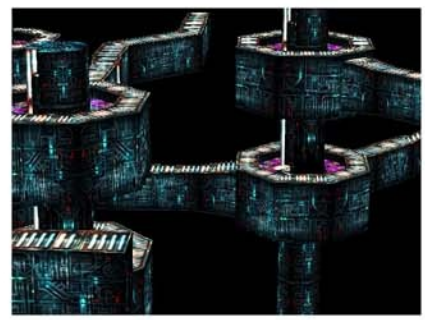
On the structure above the lower level leading to the door, they notice a device set into the top and jump up to investigate. Citan says -

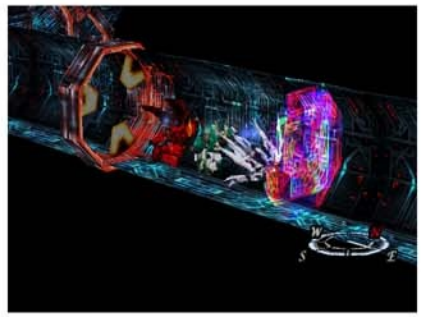
Citan: What might this be . . .?

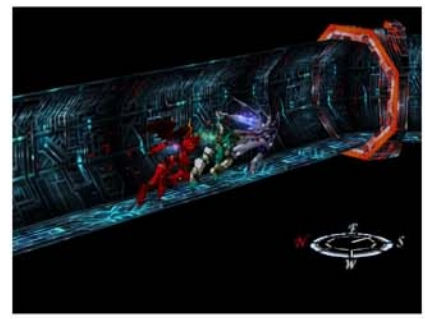
Bart moves forward and says -

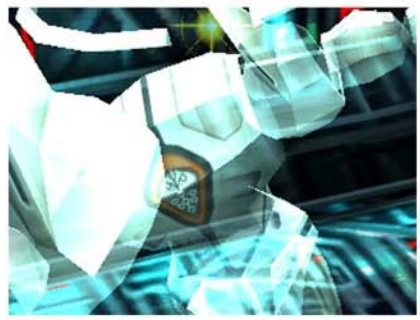
Bart: Let's check it out.

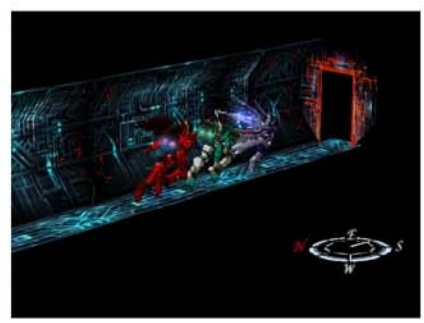
They stand behind it and push, seeing that it moves the pathway they are standing on to another location. Using the map, they try and align the various pathways so that eventually they will reach the center section. They begin to make their way through the tunnels and passageways once more.

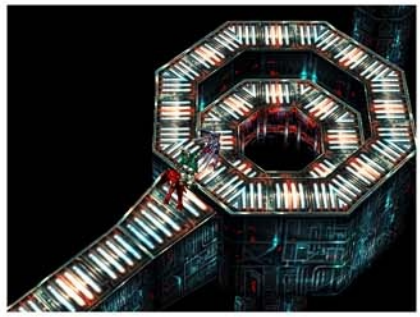








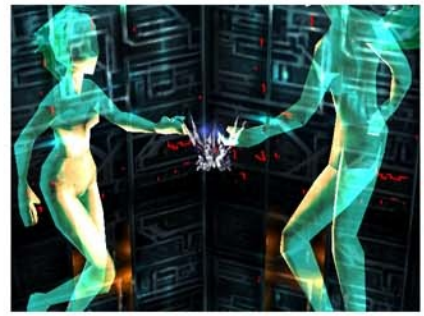




They go back and try the northeast section and this time find they are on the pathway leading to the octagon with the red mark in the center. They make their way to it and pause at the edge. Bart says -

Bart: Fei, let's go.

They choose to jump in the gate and once more they are pulled along a twisting tunnel lined with blue light, the bars of orange light across this one as well and they dodge these as they hurtle along the tunnel. The view moves around them and faces them, then scene fades as they begin to rise towards an opening above.



They go to the doors at the other end of the chamber, finding themselves in the large cavernous area where Deus had gone beneath the glowing green substance, the pool in the center. One by one, they leap inside and white light consumes all. Scene cuts to the vast interior of something which shifts with a multitude of colors all around them and the center rotates slowly, an oscillating grinding hum all around. View moves down to where Fei and the others face the large object in their Gears.

Fei: This is . . .Deus!?

From below, the radiant orbs can be seen to be circling the larger, slightly flattened out sphere of rotating color, black lightning crackling around its form. J'ora says -

J'ora: What are those four orbs spinning around it?

Maria: It seems as if the power of those four things is supporting the center.

Rico: So that means that thing in the middle is the core of Deus?

Citan: Probably.

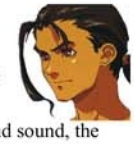
View moves past them to the radiant orbs and -

Bart: Who cares about those orbs. Let's just crush the core.

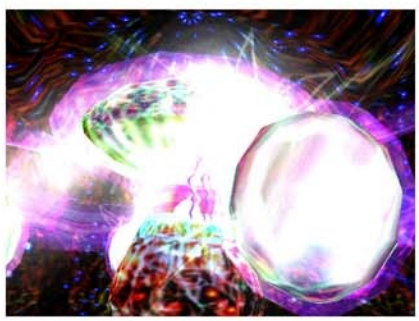
Citan: Striking directly at the center rather than using fuel unnecessarily . . . That is one strategy. But, I believe another plan of attack would be to defeat its surroundings first. If we decide to attack the supporting orbs first, then it might be wise to leave the battles up to us. We should be able to do something about them without using up Fei's power.

Emeralda: That'll allow him to use the full power of Xenogears . . . . . .To defeat Deus. (pause) And yes, of course, to save Elly!

Billy: Whether we do a direct strike to the to the core or take down the supports first . . .I guess that is best left up to Fei to decide . . .

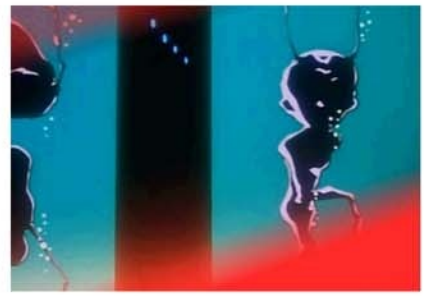


Fei: . . . (pauses) Thanks everyone. To attack Deus directly . . . or, to take out its supports first . . .I wonder which is best?



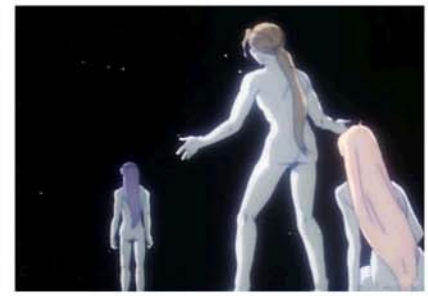
View moves back to Fei, Bart and Citan as they hover amid the swirling colors, light and sound, the coruscating light circling around them on all sides. After careful deliberation, they decide that it would be best to take out the supports first, leaving Fei, Bart and Citan to finish off the main core.

Krelian: Since that time . . .I have stopped being human.
I have committed so many sins . . .



. . .that any attempt at living like a human . . .
. . .is impossible.

Krelian: The only one who could have
forgiven me . . . is god.



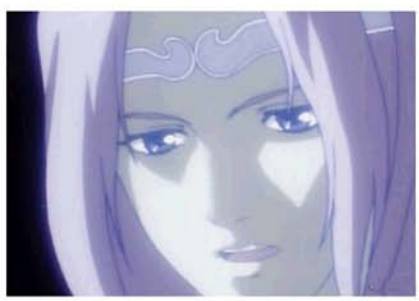
Fei: That's not true . . .! I know they would
understand. There's still plenty of time to atone
for your sins. You of all people could do it . . .!

Krelian: Always the peacemaker, eh Lacan?

Krelian:Perhaps that's what it means to be human . . .

Krelian: But, regardless . . .I cannot go

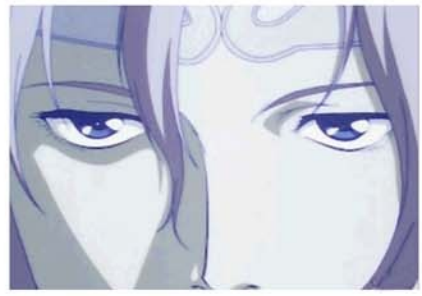
Krelian: It's something I've already decided . . .



Krelian: I go to walk with god. Even
if there's no place left for me . . .

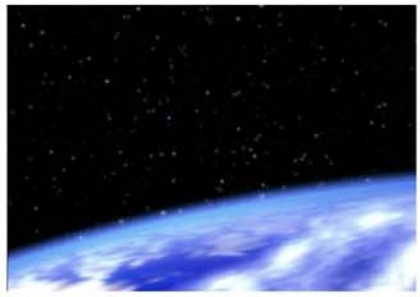
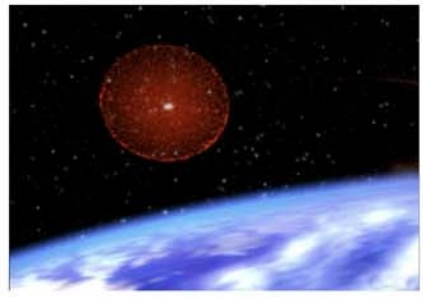
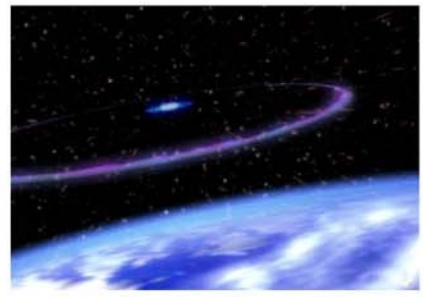
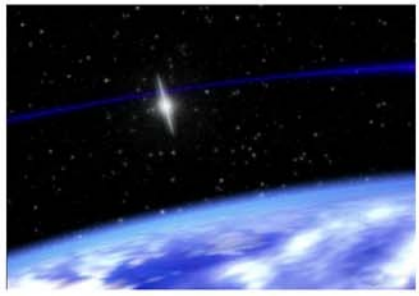
. . upon my return.

Krelian: I must go now.



Fei: Krelian . . .

Krelian: Actually . . . I envy you two.

Citan: Fei!!!

Citan: What happened?

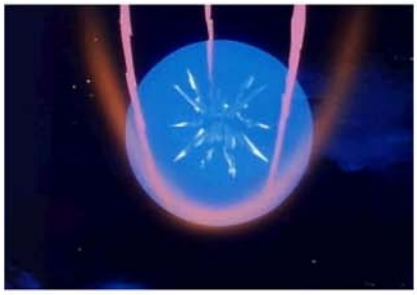
Operator: Waves from the explosion disrupted the ionosphere making it impossible to get a visual.

Operator: They were probably caught up in the explosion -

Bart: That's a lie!

Bart: He'll come back. He promised he would!

Bart: I know it!



Xenogears Episode V - END